N. Jayaraju
G. Sreenivasulu
M. Madakka
M. Manjulatha *Editors*

Coasts, Estuaries and Lakes

Implications for Sustainable Development

Springer

Coasts, Estuaries and Lakes

N. Jayaraju • G. Sreenivasulu
M. Madakka • M. Manjulatha
Editors

Coasts, Estuaries and Lakes

Implications for Sustainable Development

Springer

Editors
N. Jayaraju
Department of Geology
Yogi Vemana University
Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

G. Sreenivasulu
Department of Geology
Sri Venkateswara University
Tirupati, Andhra Pradesh, India

M. Madakka
Department of Biotechnology
and Bioinformatics
Yogi Vemana University
Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India

M. Manjulatha
Department of Floriculture
National Institute of Horticultural
and Herbal Science
Seonghwan, Republic of Korea

ISBN 978-3-031-21643-5 ISBN 978-3-031-21644-2 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-21644-2

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Dedicated to the family members of the Editors

Foreword

Congratulations on putting together such an impressive set of papers that examine our coasts, estuaries, and lakes! Please accept this brief foreword that aims to synthesize and shine light upon this important book:

Coasts, estuaries, and lakes are critical zones globally where humans interact and often conflict with nature. These Earth features are complex in morphology and inherently dynamic as a result of a multitude of processes that shift their form and change their functioning. Communities depend on the water and shoreline for sustenance, revenue, and countless aspects of life. The challenges of living in coastal zones, of both lakes and marine areas, are ever increasing as shoreline populations continue to climb and demand for food and financial sustainability increases. Moreover, climate change is creating new threats and perturbations that require humanity and governments to react, often rapidly, to water surpluses or shortages or shifting land and seascapes. Research is required to advance our understanding of these complicated systems and human impacts, and around the world, people must strive to share insights and to learn from each other. Beyond research, communities need wise planning and smart public and private action that is rooted in and driven by science. In addition to reading and studying about Earth processes and systems, scientists and students are encouraged to engage with governments and communities to help them understand our evolving world and guide careful decision-making.

The book *Coasts, Estuaries and Lakes: Implications to Sustainable Development* is an excellent collection of 29 chapters in 7 parts that delve into critical science and related challenges. From processes to pollutants, the chapters examine fundamental aspects, but are too numerous and detailed to review or attempt to synthesize succinctly here. Led by Dr. N. Jayaraju from the Department of Geology at Yogi Vemana University, the experienced editorial team includes Drs. Sreenivasulu, Madakka, and Manjulatha. Part I addresses two immediate and important topics, flooding and pollution. Water quality and sedimentary aspects are explored in Parts II and III, respectively. Parts IV and V address biodiversity and climate change which are key concerns for coasts, estuaries, and lakes, and Parts VI and VII examine socioeconomic considerations and geospatial tools that are essential to and will inform sustainable development. The compilation of papers is truly impressive, covering a wealth of information and including examples at varying scales – from local and national studies in India, Kuwait, and elsewhere to global insights from past and recent work.

In summary, the book collection will provide an excellent resource for years to come, and the various chapters will serve as invaluable references for experts and students around the world. The unfortunate reality is that our coasts, estuaries, and lakes are facing unprecedented challenges. Science must be used in partnership with continuous stakeholder engagement and wise governance to allow our shores and seas to sustain society for future generations.

Director, Coastal Resources Center & Professor J. P. Walsh
Graduate School of Oceanography, URI-GSO Bay Campus,
Narragansett, RI, USA

Foreword

Coasts, estuaries and brackish lakes support an important biodiversity and large human populations, and they deliver many ecosystem services from which society gains goods and benefits. However, at the same time, they are the sites of many hazards which give rise to risks and threats to natural and human populations. These threats have been summarised as a “triple whammy” – that the areas are subject to three major threats: an increasing urbanisation and industrialisation; an increasing use of resources such as fish, water and space; and a decreasing resistance and resilience to external, wide-ranging factors such as climate change. These threats and risks may be even greater in developing countries which may have a lesser capability to deal with them.

Given the above features, there is the need to summarise the characteristics of all areas and to gain better information and data to help us manage the areas sustainably. In this way, both nature and society benefit from a healthy environment. This requires natural and social scientists to work together and to work with policymakers and policy implementers. It requires gathering knowledge and data at local, regional, national and global levels and summarising these for a greater benefit. It requires us to be clear about why we need information and how it can be used, often based on studying and monitoring the areas.

Against this background, in its five parts, this book integrates the science and management and gives attention to various features for many Indian areas, including hot spots within those, although other geographical locations are also mentioned. The editors and many authors have done an excellent job of bringing together information and data on local and regional processes and dynamics. These cover sediment contamination and its effects, and coastal flooding, thereby covering physico-chemical interactions, water quality and hydrological processes for the coastal and catchment areas. Using evidence from various regions, and as well as on different spatial scales, it covers temporal scales including long-term natural and anthropogenic forcing on marine, coastal and estuarine ecosystems and multi-year biogeochemical observations.

It is axiomatic that we cannot understand the ecological structure and functioning of an area unless we understand the physical and chemical structure and interactions. Hence the book covers saline water intrusion, and sediment physical, chemical and geochemical features. The seasonal and spatial features of local beaches, the substratum and suspended sediment dynamics and mineral chemistry give a background to a greater understanding. This in turn will enable environmental management which has to be based on fit-for-purpose science and good analytical techniques, which are also described.

The physical and chemical background then allows an interrogation of the biological and ecological features. As such, the contributors give the background with greater information on biodiversity and ecology. The chemical conditions then result in contamination of the biota, reflected here in studies on a range of taxa from foraminifera to molluscs and fishes. This contamination often leads to pollution effects, defined as a decline in the health of organisms, their populations and communities, and indeed a reduction in their fitness-for-survival. Understanding these aspects requires us to define and apply bioindicators and follow this with detailed monitoring. As shown here, chemical contamination can have biochemical effects in organisms and lead to the sequestration of the contaminants in shells and other hard structures of organisms.

As shown in this book, the features of an area may be affected by pressures, defined as the mechanisms of change on the natural and human systems. These may relate to local factors and activities, such as industrial discharges, leading to what may be termed endogenic managed pressures, where the causes and consequences of environmental change both occur in a given area being managed. However, all areas are also exposed to what may be called exogenic unmanaged pressures, in which the causes of change are outside the area being managed but the consequences have to be managed locally. The most important example of this is global climate change which may be manifest as alterations in weather patterns, storminess, sea-level rise, flooding and erosion, all of which increase the vulnerability of our coasts, estuaries and brackish lakes. Hence, although the causes of climate change have to be managed on a global scale, the consequences have to be managed locally.

The editors and contributors summarise these local, regional and global effects and look at the implications of climate change for the geographical regions covered by the book. These features are important and so have an interest beyond the local areas. In particular, it is important for all natural and social scientists and policy-makers to understand such changes in wider global areas. Because of this, the book will be of interest to coastal and estuarine scientists worldwide.

Chair in Estuarine & Coastal Sciences, Research Professor, Mike Elliott
Department of Biological and Marine Sciences
The University of Hull
Hull, UK

Formerly Director, the former Institute
of Estuarine & Coastal Studies (IECS)
Hull, UK

Director, International Estuarine
& Coastal Specialist Ltd
Beverley, UK

Co-Editor-in-Chief, Estuarine Coastal
& Shelf Science
Hull, UK

UNIVERSITY
OF HULL

University of Hull
Hull, HU6 7RX, UK
Mob. +44 (0)7946 533938
University Tel. +44 (0)1482 466773
Email Mike.Elliott@hull.ac.uk
Alternative Email Mike.Elliott@iecs.ltd

Foreword

In 2015, the United Nations General Assembly established its position on Sustainable Development Goals (SDG). These 17 inter-linked global goals are designed to be a "blueprint to achieve a better and more sustainable future for all" and should be in place by 2030. While some of the goals (*e.g.*, gender equality, peace, justice and strong institutions) are exceptionally broad in outlook, several relate to environmental issues, especially No. 13 (Climate Action). This goal is designed to "take urgent action to combat climate change and its impacts". Geoscientists have, for many years, been presenting evidence to the Inter-Governmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) that there was a clear separation of "natural climate change" from modern, "anthropogenic" climate change. Meetings, such as COP26 (Glasgow, 2021), have identified a number of changes consequent on a global temperature rise of 1.5–1.8 °C (*e.g.*, sea level rise, coastal erosion, reduction of dissolved O_2 in the oceans, ocean acidification, coral bleaching, loss of biodiversity and extreme weather events). Many of these outcomes of climate change require geoscience awareness to resolve the potential problems, sustain ecosystem services and provide leadership in areas such as flooding and coastal zone management.

Many of these topics feature in this volume, where sustainable development is considered from a geoscience perspective. Our lakes, estuaries, and coastal seas are archives of the Pleistocene, Holocene and "Anthropocene" and provide an understanding of the rates of change involved. This volume is also a contribution to SDG No. 4 (Quality Education) in communicating the sustainability issues.

To some, geoscience *is the problem* (*e.g.*, mining and mining pollution, oil exploration, and coalfield development) but it is also clear that, in many aspects of environmental understanding, *geoscience knowledge will also be part of the solution*.

Malcolm Hart
Emeritus Professor of Micropalaeontology
University of Plymouth
Plymouth, UK

THE GEOLOGICAL SOCIETY
CGeol
CHARTERED GEOLOGIST
Fellow No. 10224

University of Plymouth
Plymouth, U.K.

UNIVERSITY OF PLYMOUTH
School of Geography, Earth and Environmental Sciences

Foreword

This volume titled *Coasts, Estuaries and Lakes: Implications for Sustainable Development* covers a wide range of topics in coastal science, primarily in reference to the Indian subcontinent. The studies cover topics including coastal and estuarine water quality, suspended sediments and trace elements, beach morphology and sediments, biodiversity and marine pollution in coastal waters, the impacts of climate change on coasts in this region, consideration of sustainable development of coastal resources, and the usefulness of geospatial tools for monitoring and investigation in the coastal zone.

The wide range of topics, study locations, methods and authors involved in this volume is indicative of an extremely vibrant community of coastal researchers working in this field and who care deeply about preservation and future management of coastal and estuarine environments around the Indian subcontinent. The editors have done an excellent job in pulling this volume together, and I expect that it will become essential reading for researchers interested in the breadth of work being undertaken within coastal science in this region.

Sarah Woodroffe

President of the INQUA Commission,
(INQUA= International
Union for Quaternary Research)
Coastal and Marine Processes, Department
of Geography, Durham University,
Durham, UK

Durham University
Department of Geography

Inspiring the extraordinary

Foreword

Coastal communities are prone to a range of hazards that can result in the loss of life, damage to infrastructure, economic hardship, and the degradation of ecosystems. While coastal issues of this nature are influenced by a range of biological, chemical, and physical processes, and increasing anthropogenic pressure, many scientific works focus on a subset of these contributors to coastal change. The book *Coasts, Estuaries and Lakes: Implications to Sustainable Development* is a timely and multidisciplinary synthesis of physical and biological processes impacting coastal environments and examines the role they play in sustainable development. The chapters cover a broad, yet well-integrated, spectrum of Earth science disciplines ranging from coastal environments, Earth system processes, and the link between socioeconomics and sustainable development. That sets this volume apart from related books is the multidisciplinary aspect, not only regarding the book as a whole but also the individual chapters. The case studies focus mainly on the vulnerable coastlines of India, but they can be applied globally as they explore issues and solutions that are both relevant and informative to many of the world's coastlines. As co-leader of IGCP Project 725 "Forecasting Coastal Change," I am particularly pleased to see that this book provides a comprehensive understanding of many of the drivers, processes, and scale of coastal change and how this improved understanding enhances a community's ability to manage the coastal zone and better support sustainable development. Researchers, students, practitioners, and enthusiasts alike will find value in this book that is carefully organized and edited by Drs. N. Jayaraju, G. Sreenivasulu, M. Madakka, and M. Manjulatha.

Co-Leader, UNESCO/IGCP 725&, Tier II Canada Research Chair
Department of Earth Sciences, Simon Fraser University, Burnaby, BC, Canada

Jessica Pilarczyk

Preface

Global warming and climate change continue to pose a severe threat to the coasts and the fragile marine marginal fringes. Coastlines need to be managed effectively and responsibly. Considering the fact that the Earth's surface consists of about 70% water, oceans are crucial for the existence of life on earth. It is indispensable for sustaining all life forms, hence conservation of coastlines is key towards protection of the vulnerable ecosystem as well as human life.

The Earth has around 620,000 km of coastline. With the growing human population and an increasing number of people living near the coasts, it is all the more reason to conserve and look for new ways to protect the natural ecosystems, which is often home to a wide range of spectacular and species-specific biodiversity. On land, they harbor key ecosystems such as freshwater or marine marginal wetlands, which are considered to be vital for migratory bird sanctuaries and other terrestrial biota. In wave-protected zones, they house mangroves, salt marshes, deltas, and sea grasses, among others, all of which can support replenishment and reproduction of aquatic biosphere. Rocky shores along coasts support for a wide range of both benthic and sessile species and several types of seaweed. Colonies of coral reefs are usually found at depths of around 50 m along the shores of tropical regions in clear and warm water.

Other coastal attractions like beaches, tourist islands, and seaside resorts spin a huge economy through coastal tourism. The coastal fragile ecosystems generally provide protection against erosion, rise in sea level, and natural tsunamis, if planted and protected with mangroves and marine vegetation. In several countries, mangroves are the main source of firewood for fuel and domestic usage. Ecosystems such as mangroves and sea grasses have a much bigger ability for carbon sequestration over several well-known terrestrial ecosystems. Thus, they can play a vital role to mitigate, monitor, and manage the impact of climate change by uptake of anthropogenic carbon dioxide pumping. However, because of how economically significant coasts are, many of these communities are susceptible to climate change, which increases the frequency of extreme weather events, sea level rise, and related problems like beach erosion, saltwater intrusion, and marine transgression, which includes flooding. The anthropogenic uses of the coast are further complicated and its vulnerable marginal coastal zones are threatened by a number of additional chronic coastal challenges, including marine trash, microplastic waste, coastal development activities, and marine ecosystem dispersion.

Globally, coastal ecosystems are in decline as a result of the combined effects of climate change, bio habitat imbalance, uncontrolled overfishing, and water pollution (microplastic pollution). This decade (2021–2030) has been designated as the UN Decade on Ecosystem Restoration by the UN. Rare attention has been paid to the rehabilitation of delicate marine habitats. This is due to the fact that coastlines are always changing, making it impossible to calculate their precise perimeter. Today, however, coastal regions are home to the majority of the world's population. Forty-four percent of the world's population, according to the United Nations' atlas, lives about 160 km from the ocean. Many huge cities are situated near harbors and have lavish access to port facilities. Some countries defend and safeguard their coasts against military attacks, marine smugglers, and illegal migrants. This has added a crucial importance to the coasts. Therefore, research on this fragile and economically vital part is mandatory at the present juncture.

The Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (IOC) of UNESCO, which focuses on ocean observations, data, services, and associated capacity building. The International Decade of Ocean Science for Sustainable Development, or 2021–2030, has been designated by the United Nations. The 2030 Agenda, which the United Nations endorsed in 2015, was closely related to the idea of an ocean decade. It is intended that the decade would inspire the ocean community to take action on crucial issues including the preservation and usage of the ocean, including research and technology advancements in oceanography. In order to support this sincere and scientific endeavor, we have taken the responsibility of bringing out this edited book to mark the IOC–UNESCO Ocean decade celebrations.

With this background, a humble beginning has been made by us to compile and edit research papers on several burning issues related to the marine marginal bodies including marine pollution. This endeavor has attracted several investigations dealing with the most basic to critical issues like coastal resources, pollution, erosion, restoration, and so on.

We hope that the research, recommended study, and suggestions will provide the needed baseline data for the researchers, stakeholders, policy makers, students, and others who are in constant touch with the coastal zone for science, survival, sightseeing, tourism, economy, and preservation of fragile marine ecosystems. Ocean protection and responsibility at regional and global level is paramount for healthy sustenance of life in the waters. It is imperative to prevent further ecological degradation that in turn affects human well-being and the environment at large.

Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India N. Jayaraju
Tirupati, Andhra Pradesh, India G. Sreenivasulu
Kadapa, Andhra Pradesh, India M. Madakka
Jeonju, South Korea M. Manjulatha

Contents

About the Editors

N. Jayaraju is a professor of Geology, Yogi Vemana University, India. His research interests include of environmental geosciences, marine ecology, marine pollution, coastal zone resources, sediments of marine marginal water bodies, viz., lakes and estuaries. He was awarded gold medal for being a university topper in his master's degree course and later received University Merit Fellowship for pursuing PhD. He worked as PDF for UGC, CSIR, DST, and all central government prestigious funding agencies. He has published more than 60 research papers in various national and international journals. Jayaraju has attended more than 50 international conferences abroad and 40 in India. He is an active member in many scientific associations/organizations. Moreover, he is serves on editorial boards and reviewer boards for many prestigious journals. Jayaraju has travelled widely on his research endeavor, visiting over 60 countries like Australia, China, Japan, Germany, France, Italy, Middle East, the UK, and the USA.

G. Sreenivasulu received his MSc (with university top rank and gold medal) and PhD from the Department of Geology, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, India. He worked as a Research Associate at the National Centre for Earth Science Studies, Thiruvananthapuram, India. Currently, he is working as Dr. D. S. Kothari Postdoctoral Fellow in the Department of Geology at Sri Venkayeswara University, Tirupati, India. He was awarded DST-INSPIRE, a prestigious fellowship, for 5 years for PhD program by the Department of Science and Technology (DST), Government of India. Thrust areas of his research include micropaleontology, marine pollution, coastal morphodynamics, and application of geospatial tools. He has attended many scientific events related to his relevant area of specialization both within India and abroad. He has published more than 25 papers in international and national journals. He is an active member in many scientific associations/organizations. Moreover, he serves on editorial boards and reviewer boards of many prestigious journals.

M. Madakka is currently an associate professor in the Department of Biotechnology and Bioinformatics, Yogi Vemana University, Kadapa, AP, India. She received her MSc and PhD degrees in microbiology from Sri Krishnadevaraya University, Anatapur, India. Her research interests are in the fields of environmental biotechnology and environmental microbiology. She was awarded Rajiv Gandhi fellowship for PhD from UGC, New Delhi, India. She secured DST-SERB fast track young scientist fellowship during 2012–2015, New Delhi. She has over 17 years of research and 14 years of teaching experience in the university. She has published more than 40 research papers in peer-reviewed national and international scientific journals and presented several papers in national/international conferences.

M. Manjulatha, Senior Research Associate, is currently affiliated to the National Institute of Horticultural and Herbal Sciences, RDA, South Korea. She obtained her PhD from the Department of Biotechnology, Sri Krishna Devaraya University, in collaboration with the Department of Crop Physiology, University of Agricultural Sciences, GKVK, Bangalore. She worked as a research associate in DBT-supported Center of Excellence program and ICAR FIST-DST niche area of excellence for drought research in UAS, GKVK, Bangalore. She has 14 years of research experience in the area of plant molecular biology, biotechnology, transgenics, gene editing, and molecular markers. She has published 25 research papers in peer-reviewed journals and 4 book chapters. She has been a reviewer for various international journals.

Nanotechnology in the Life Sciences

Vishnu Kirthi Arivarasan
Karthik Loganathan
Iddya Karunasagar *Editors*

Nanotechnological Approaches to the Advancement of Innovations in Aquaculture

Springer

Nanotechnology in the Life Sciences

Series Editor
Ram Prasad, Department of Botany
Mahatma Gandhi Central University
Motihari, Bihar, India

Nano and biotechnology are two of the 21st century's most promising technologies. Nanotechnology is demarcated as the design, development, and application of materials and devices whose least functional make up is on a nanometer scale (1 to 100 nm). Meanwhile, biotechnology deals with metabolic and other physiological developments of biological subjects including microorganisms. These microbial processes have opened up new opportunities to explore novel applications, for example, the biosynthesis of metal nanomaterials, with the implication that these two technologies (i.e., thus nanobiotechnology) can play a vital role in developing and executing many valuable tools in the study of life. Nanotechnology is very diverse, ranging from extensions of conventional device physics to completely new approaches based upon molecular self-assembly, from developing new materials with dimensions on the nanoscale, to investigating whether we can directly control matters on/in the atomic scale level. This idea entails its application to diverse fields of science such as plant biology, organic chemistry, agriculture, the food industry, and more.

Nanobiotechnology offers a wide range of uses in medicine, agriculture, and the environment. Many diseases that do not have cures today may be cured by nanotechnology in the future. Use of nanotechnology in medical therapeutics needs adequate evaluation of its risk and safety factors. Scientists who are against the use of nanotechnology also agree that advancement in nanotechnology should continue because this field promises great benefits, but testing should be carried out to ensure its safety in people. It is possible that nanomedicine in the future will play a crucial role in the treatment of human and plant diseases, and also in the enhancement of normal human physiology and plant systems, respectively. If everything proceeds as expected, nanobiotechnology will, one day, become an inevitable part of our everyday life and will help save many lives.

Vishnu Kirthi Arivarasan
Karthik Loganathan • Iddya Karunasagar
Editors

Nanotechnological Approaches to the Advancement of Innovations in Aquaculture

Springer

Editors
Vishnu Kirthi Arivarasan
Department of Microbiology
School of Bioengineering and Biosciences
Lovely Professional University
Phagwara, Punjab, India

Karthik Loganathan
Department of Synthetic Biology
Salem Microbes
Salem, Tamil Nadu, India

Iddya Karunasagar
Center for Science Education & Research
Nitte University
Kotekar, Karnataka, India

ISSN 2523-8027 ISSN 2523-8035 (electronic)
Nanotechnology in the Life Sciences
ISBN 978-3-031-15518-5 ISBN 978-3-031-15519-2 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-15519-2

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Preface

Nanotechnology is a cutting-edge science and technology with numerous scientific and technological applications. Rapid breakthroughs in nanosciences and nanotechnologies have opened up new possibilities for many industrial and consumer sectors, including aquaculture and agriculture and associated fields, which have recently been considered a hotspot of a new industrial revolution.

Aquaculture, or the farming of aquatic organisms in inland and coastal settings, is the world's fastest expanding food-generating sector, thanks to technological advancements and diversification. It is widely perceived that the high-quality proteins found in fish are superior to that found in meat and fowl. Annually, the aquaculture industry generates substantial advances in the creation of technology to boost food production.

Nanotechnology has played an important role in the development of an economic and sustainable pathway for different aspects of aquaculture for benefit of the human race. It has led to the development of new tools for aquaculture, fish biotechnology, fish genetics, fish reproduction, and aquatic health, among other things. The fisheries and aquaculture industries can be changed by integrating nanotechnology with new tools such as rapid disease diagnosis, improving fish's ability to absorb medications such as hormones, vaccinations, and nutrients, and so on.

In this book, we have tried to put together a detailed account of the different roles nanotechnology plays in the fast-developing and progressive path toward aquaculture growth. The different aspects of nanotechnology in aquaculture have been amalgamated into a single book. This book will be beneficial for young researchers, postgraduates, and of course the general populace to know in detail about the topic of nanotechnology and aquaculture.

Phagwara, Punjab, India — Vishnu Kirthi Arivarasan
Salem, Tamil Nadu, India — Karthik Loganathan
Kotekar, Karnataka, India — Iddya Karunasagar

Contents

Shalini Dhyani
Dibyendu Adhikari
Rajarshi Dasgupta
Rakesh Kadaverugu *Editors*

Ecosystem and Species Habitat Modeling for Conservation and Restoration

Springer

Ecosystem and Species Habitat Modeling for Conservation and Restoration

Shalini Dhyani • Dibyendu Adhikari •
Rajarshi Dasgupta • Rakesh Kadaverugu
Editors

Ecosystem and Species Habitat Modeling for Conservation and Restoration

Springer

Editors
Shalini Dhyani
Critical Zone Research Group, Water Technology and Management Division
CSIR-NEERI
Nagpur, India

Dibyendu Adhikari
Plant Ecology & Climate Change Science
CSIR-National Botanical Research Institute
Lucknow, India

Rajarshi Dasgupta
School of Public Policy
Indian Institute of Technology
Delhi, India

Rakesh Kadaverugu
Cleaner Technology and Modeling Division
CSIR-National Environmental Engineering Research Institute
Nagpur, India

ISBN 978-981-99-0130-2   ISBN 978-981-99-0131-9 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-99-0131-9

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

Foreword

Origins

The field of distributional ecology revolves around the question of why a species is where it is, and why is the species not where it is. This question may seem simple, in the sense that ranges of species have been a central focus in biology for more than a century. Now, for many species, it is quite easy to find a range map, or occurrence data, or some source of information about the "where" question. So why should answering this question be so difficult?

These challenges of obtaining high-quality distributional information for species have been approached using myriad frameworks and tools. Early approaches centered on so-called habitat suitability modeling (e.g., Scott et al. 1996), and saw application of several multivariate statistical approaches to the question (e.g., Austin et al. 1990). A next generation of progress brought the many advantages (and disadvantages) of machine learning approaches (Stockwell and Peters 1999; Phillips et al. 2006), which had the in-hindsight-dubious quality of being able to fit more complex response types (Elith et al. 2006).

Curiously, at least in my own humble opinion, a next (and key) major advance was that of bringing a more rigorous conceptual underpinning to distributional ecology. Building on the foundational work of Grinnell (Grinnell 1917a, b) and Hutchinson (Hutchinson 1957, 1978) and a few subsequent authors (Austin 1987; Austin et al. 1990; Austin et al. 1994; Pulliam 2000), a consortium of authors published a first conceptual framework for the field (Peterson et al. 2011). Based on this framework, many additional advances became possible, such as comprehending the importance of accessible areas in fitting models (Barve et al. 2011; Machado-Stredel et al. 2021), establishing appropriate approaches for evaluating models (Peterson et al. 2008), etc.

Key Elements in the Process

The typical niche modeling application is a multi-step process, which (to be honest) is not laid out in any standard methodology in any one textbook or standard reference book. Nonetheless, it is generally a process of (1) assembling point occurrence data for the species in question, (2) assembling relevant environmental data for the region in question, (3) choosing a region over which to fit models, (4) actually fitting the model, and (5) post-processing and interpretation of model outputs to respond to the questions that were originally posed. These steps have been achieved via standard statistical tools (Guisan et al. 2017), modular sets of tools (Cobos et al. 2019), or via standalone platforms that package many or all of the necessary steps (Kass et al. 2018). Beyond these basics, however, a few points remain important to emphasize, as follows.

A key emphasis is on the use of *primary* biodiversity data—i.e., data that document the presence of an individual of a species at a particular place at a particular time—as the basis for these modeling efforts. Although it is certainly tempting to appeal to easier and more readily available sources of occurrence information, such as range maps or atlas summaries, use of secondary sources of biodiversity data for model inputs introduces significant noise into the results. In essence, the primary occurrence data and the environmental data should go hand in hand in terms of spatial grain and resolution, such that neither is too general, and such that discords and mismatches are not pervasive in the modeling effort. The subjectivity introduced by secondary data sources is an additional source of uncertainty and confounding effects for the models, such that important features of the distributional ecology may be lost from the analysis.

A further emphasis should be on the use of methods that are quantitative, repeatable, scalable, and portable, at all points in the process. Although many present-day analyses simply provide general, text-based descriptions of methodological steps, program code (e.g., in R) or full-blown workflows can now be developed or implemented that make the methodology entirely portable, transferrable, and scalable. The code can be shared as part of the publication process, which makes the methodology repeatable, and ready for application in any other analysis by any investigator.

Challenges

Although this methodology has now been used in thousands of analyses and thousands of published papers, its development is not complete. That is, a number of advances remain to be explored and documented, so that the approach is as maximally informative and useful as is possible. The following are several such areas that remain under exploration and development, but that can certainly be seen as fruitful areas for future research.

Estimate the Right Sort of Object Fundamental ecological niches are likely to be relatively simple, convex objects in environmental space (Maguire 1973). Nonetheless, the methods in vogue currently in distributional ecology often estimate objects that are quite a bit more complex, with gaps, holes, and infoldings—in this sense, workers in this field are using inappropriate tools for the task. As such, an important step forward will be to develop and use tools that estimate objects that "look like" fundamental ecological niches, and are simple and convex, and that do not have bimodal environmental responses, or any other such complexities. Some initial steps have been taken toward such a methodology (Jiménez et al. 2019; Jiménez and Soberón 2022), but much work remains to be done.

Use the Right Environmental Information Workers in the field of distributional ecology have long used environmental information in the form of long-term average values to characterize species' occurrences in terms of the environments that are manifested at the site of occurrence. It is well known, however, that an average can be a poor representation of the conditions at any particular moment, and an individual or a population can be extinguished with even a short period of time spent under unsuitable conditions. As such, recent research efforts (Ingenloff and Peterson 2020) have explored the potential for representing environmental conditions associated with occurrences of species as a function of latitude, longitude, *and time*, such that conditions specific to an occurrence are identified more precisely.

Consider Dispersal Ecological niche models, if done well, present a view of the area that is suitable for a species in terms of abiotic conditions (note that the next item in this list refers to the question of suitability in biotic terms). A crucial consideration, however, is that the ability of the species to access those suitable sites is not generally considered. As a consequence, too often, conclusions in ecological niche modeling studies are based on rather simple assumptions about dispersal ability (e.g., no dispersal or universal dispersal). A few efforts have now been made to incorporate dispersal processes more powerfully into these methods (Engler and Guisan 2009; Machado-Stredel et al. 2021), but applications have been relatively few—adding this component into modeling efforts and interpretations is crucial to making this methodology and the resulting conclusions more powerful.

Incorporate Biotic Interactions A further dimension that is too often left out of ecological niche model-based studies is that of biotic dimensions—in essence, the set of biotic considerations that makes a site suitable or unsuitable for a species. As has been pointed out in several conceptual treatments, consideration of the full dynamics of the broad suite of potential biotic interactors for any given species may prove to be impossible. Nonetheless, it is feasible to incorporate at least known interactor species in two- or multi-species models (e.g., Anderson 2017; Ashraf et al. 2021), and network analysis approaches may be relevant to identifying such interactor species more rigorously (Fath et al. 2007).

This Book

This volume, entitled *Ecosystem and Species Modeling for Conservation and Restoration: Mainstreaming Modeling Approaches in Policy Planning*, comprises a set of papers that revolve around models of ecosystems and species, and their niches and distributions, in the context of guiding policy. Although I have not yet had the opportunity to read each of the contributions, the list of titles, topics, and authors is impressive—this volume will create a rich picture of the state of the field and will illustrate many of the possible applications of this methodology. As a consequence, I am so very pleased to have been invited to preface the volume with a few thoughts, ideas, and comments.

University of Kansas Biodiversity Institute A. Townsend Peterson
Lawrence, KS, USA 28 October 2022

Literature Cited

Anderson RP (2017) When and how should biotic interactions be considered in models of species niches and distributions? J Biogeogr 44:8–17

Ashraf U, Chaudhry MN, Peterson AT (2021) Ecological niche models of biotic interactions predict increasing pest risk to olive cultivars with changing climate. Ecosphere 12:e03714

Austin M (1987) Models for the analysis of species' response to environmental gradients. Vegetatio 69:35–45

Austin MP, Nicholls AO, Doherty MD, Meyers JA (1994) Determining species response functions to an environmental gradient by means of a beta-function. J Veg Sci 5:215–228

Austin MP, Nicholls AO, Margules CR (1990) Measurement of the realized qualitative niche: environmental niches of five *Eucalyptus* species. Ecol Monogr 60: 161–177

Barve N, Barve V, Jimenez-Valverde A, Lira-Noriega A, Maher SP, Peterson AT, Soberón J, Villalobos F (2011) The crucial role of the accessible area in ecological niche modeling and species distribution modeling. Ecol Model 222:1810–1819

Cobos ME, Peterson AT, Barve N, Osorio-Olvera L (2019) kuenm: an R package for detailed development of ecological niche models using Maxent. PeerJ 7:e6281

Elith J, Graham C, Anderson RP, Dudík M, Ferrier S, Guisan A, Hijmans RJ, Huettmann F, Leathwick JR, Lehmann A, Li J, Lohmann LG, Loisell BA, Manion G, Moritz C, Nakamura M, Nakazawa Y, Overton J, Peterson AT, Phillips SJ, Richardson K, Scachetti-Pereira R, Schapire E, Soberón J, Williams S, Wisz MS, Zimmerman NE (2006) Novel methods improve prediction of species' distributions from occurrence data. Ecography 29:129–151

Engler R, Guisan A (2009) MigClim: predicting plant distribution and dispersal in a changing climate. Divers Distrib 15:590–601

Fath BD, Scharler UM, Ulanowicz RE, Hannon B (2007) Ecological network analysis: network construction. Ecol Model 208:49–55
Grinnell J (1917a) Field tests of theories concerning distributional control. Am Nat 51:115–128
Grinnell J (1917b) The niche-relationships of the California Thrasher. Auk 34:427–433
Guisan A, Thuiller W, Zimmermann NE (2017) Habitat suitability and distribution models: with applications in R. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge
Hutchinson GE (1957) Concluding remarks. Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol 22:415–427
Hutchinson GE (1978) An introduction to population ecology. Yale University Press, New Haven
Ingenloff K, Peterson AT (2020) Incorporating time into the traditional correlational distributional modeling framework: a proof-of-concept using the Wood Thrush (*Hylocichla mustelina*). Methods Ecol Evol 12:311–321
Jiménez L, Soberón J (2022) Estimating the fundamental niche: accounting for the uneven availability of existing climates in the calibration area. Ecol Model 464:109823
Jiménez L, Soberón J, Christen JA, Soto D (2019) On the problem of modeling a fundamental niche from occurrence data. Ecol Model 397:74–83
Kass JM, Vilela B, Aiello-Lammens ME, Muscarella R, Merow C, Anderson RP (2018) Wallace: a flexible platform for reproducible modeling of species niches and distributions built for community expansion. Methods Ecol Evol 9:1151–1156
Machado-Stredel F, Cobos ME, Peterson AT (2021) A simulation-based method for selecting calibration areas for ecological niche models and species distribution models. Front Biogeogr 13:e48814
Maguire B (1973) Niche response structure and the analytical potentials of its relationship to the habitat. Am Nat 107:213–246
Peterson AT, Papeş M, Soberón J (2008) Rethinking receiver operating characteristic analysis applications in ecological niche modelling. Ecol Model 213:63–72
Peterson AT, Soberón J, Pearson RG, Anderson RP, Martínez-Meyer E, Nakamura M, Araújo MB (2011) Ecological niches and geographic distributions. Princeton University Press, Princeton
Phillips SJ, Anderson RP, Schapire RE (2006) Maximum entropy modeling of species geographic distributions. Ecol Model 190:231–259
Pulliam HR (2000) On the relationship between niche and distribution. Ecol Lett 3:349–361
Scott JM, Tear TH, Davis FW (eds) (1996) Gap analysis: a landscape approach to biodiversity planning. American Society for Photogrammetry and Remote Sensing, Bethesda, MD
Stockwell DRB, Peters DP (1999) The GARP modelling system: problems and solutions to automated spatial prediction. Int J Geogr Inf Sci 13:143–158

Acknowledgments

Without the constant assistance and contributions of numerous devoted expert authors, reviewers, copy as well as language editors, it would not have been feasible to compile a book on the somewhat futuristic subject on Ecosystem and Species Modeling that is relevant in the present context and has been mainstreamed in many international and national decisions to understand plausible future scenarios. Despite all the challenges and limitations, we have put together this important scientific contribution. We owe a debt of gratitude to the numerous subject matter experts, academicians, scientists, researchers, and practitioners who agreed to contribute, sacrificed their time away from their grueling academic obligations to write as well as many others who facilitated a thorough review of the submitted book chapters within constrained time frames. Many of our diligent and committed research academics also deserve our sincere gratitude as without their prompt assistance, our efforts to publish this book on time would not have been possible. We would also like to especially thank Mr. Manu Thomas (CSIR-NEERI) for his assistance in overseeing formatting and language correction to avoid significant errors, record keeping of all email interactions prior to the book's completion, and Ms. Radhika Sood (CSIR-NEERI) for formatting a few chapters. Finally, we would also like to express our gratitude to the Springer Nature production team, in particular Mrs. Aakanksha Tyagi and Mr. Jayesh Kalleri, for helping us with our submissions and also being kind with extending the deadline to ensure that we submit our best effort. Despite our best efforts to ensure accuracy, it is still possible that a very small number of mistakes possibly typographical or syntax-related may have crept in because of the quick pace of production and the deadlines we had to adhere to. Chapter authors and co-authors were mostly responsible for finalizing their chapters with active guidance and review comments from editors and reviewers. The editors have read through all of the chapters and personally reviewed them in accordance with international standards, including publication ethics that specifically aim to reduce plagiarism and resemblance from existing publications. If readers of this book have any helpful criticism or ideas to help us improve our future releases, we would be eternally grateful to all of them. The editors and chapter authors are jointly responsible for any inaccuracies that may be present in this book. We express our gratitude to our researchers and families, especially our spouse and children in particular, for their support, understanding, and encouragement as we continue and successfully complete this mammoth task.

We conclude by expressing our deep gratitude to Prof. Townsend Peterson, University of Kansas Biodiversity Institute Lawrence, Kansas, for authoring the foreword for this book.

Contents

Editors and Contributors

About the Editors

Shalini Dhyani is a Senior Scientist with the Critical Zone Group of Water Technology and Management Division of CSIR-NEERI, India. She is a seasoned ecologist with two decades of experience. She uses observational, empirical, and modeling approaches to investigate and understand issues related to the environment, loss of natural and urban greenspaces, and interlinkages between ecological and social systems through sustainability science approaches. She is Asia Vice Chair member of CEM (Commission on Ecosystems Management) and also Steering Committee member.

Dibyendu Adhikari is a Principal Scientist at CSIR-National Botanical Research Institute (NBRI), India. He is a seasoned researcher with over 15 years of experience in ecology and environmental science. He is skilled in terrestrial ecosystem restoration, threatened plant conservation, forest carbon assessment, ecological data analysis and modeling.

Rajarshi Dasgupta is Assistant Professor at IIT Delhi. He was previously with the Institute for Global Environmental Strategies (IGES), Kanagawa, Japan. He holds diverse research interests in the field of landscape ecology and planning, which include Ecosystem-based Disaster Risk Reduction (Eco-DRR), spatial quantification of ecosystem services, land change simulation, development of socio-ecological scenarios, participatory conservation, and social forestry.

Rakesh Kadaverugu is a Senior Scientist associated with CSIR-National Environmental Engineering Research Institute. He has more than 10 years of research experience in environmental systems modeling and his is work is focused to better understand the socio-environmental systems at multiple spatial and temporal scales using geospatial, soft-computing, and process-based modeling approaches.

Contributors

Rovshan Abbasov is the head of Khazar University's Department of Geography and Environment. He is a member of the IPBES's Multidisciplinary Expert Panel and ICOMOS National Committee and Coordinating Lead Author in the National Ecosystem Assessments.

C. S. Abhijitha is from WWF, India, with proficiency in the research areas related to biodiversity, conservation and geospatial applications.

Santoshkumar Abujam is currently working as a Research Associate under a DST-funded research project in Rajiv Gandhi University, Rono Hills, Doimukh, Arunachal Pradesh (India).

Prasannajit Acharya is a Ph.D. Scholar at the Institute of Technical Education and Research, Department of Chemistry, Siksha 'O' Anusandhan (Deemed to be University), Bhubaneswar, Odisha, India.

Dibyendu Adhikari works as a Principal Scientist in the Plant Ecology and Climate Change Science Division at CSIR-National Botanical Research Institute, Lucknow.

Peerzada Ishtiyak Ahmad is Assistant Professor cum Scientist at Faculty of Forestry, Sher-e-Kashmir University of Agricultural Sciences & Technology of Kashmir, India.

Mohammad Alizadeh-Noughani is a graduate from Ferdowsi University of Mashhad-Iran.

G. Areendran works at WWF, India, and is addressing conservation issues occurring in various landscapes, with a high focus on tiger, elephant, and rhinoceros to overseeing several institutional GIS-based projects.

A. Arunachalam is the Director of the ICAR-Central Agroforestry Research Institute, Jhansi. He is also Project Coordinator for the All India Coordinated Research Project on Agroforestry, and Task Force Coordinator for the National Mission for Sustaining Himalayan Ecosystem (NMSHE).

A. Arya is pursuing her Ph.D. in Bits Pilani G BITS, Pilani, Goa campus.

Ratul Baishya is associated with the Department of Botany, University of Delhi, as an Associate Professor.

Aritra Bandopadhyay is pursuing his Ph.D. in Climate Change and Ecology in the Department of Humanities and Social Science in BITS-Pilani, Goa Campus.

Harish Barewar is currently working as project Associate-II in CSIR-National Environmental Engineering and Research Institute (NEERI), Nagpur.

Rajesh Biniwale is a Senior Principal Scientist in CSIR National Environmental Engineering Research Institute, Nagpur.

Milben A. Bragais is a Licensed Forester and Environmental Planner with a background in hydrological modeling, watershed characterization, and vulnerability assessment.

Manish Kuntal Buragohain is currently working as a Project Associate-I in CSIR-National Environmental Engineering and Research Institute (NEERI), Nagpur.

Dhoni Bushi is currently pursuing a Ph.D. in the Department of Geography, Rajiv Gandhi University, Arunachal Pradesh.

Joseph G. Campang is an Assistant Professor at the Institute of Biological Sciences (IBS) of University of the Philippines Los Baños (UPLB) with research specialisation on lakes.

Yves Christian L. Cabillon with a bachelor's degree is an experienced researcher in water quality assessment, plankton taxonomy, environmental impact assessment, and environmental awareness.

Bipin Charles is Consultant at the Institute for Biodiversity Conservation and Training, Bangalore, India.

Sudipto Chatterjee is an Associate Professor at TERI School of Advanced Studies. He is the Principal Investigator of this study supported by UNU ProsperNet. He is the Co-Lead for the South Asia Nitrogen Hub (SANH) project on the study of impacts of pollution on biodiversity with Lichens as an indicator.

Rajiv Kumar Chaturvedi is an Assistant Professor at BITS, Pilani, Goa campus, and is an UN expert on GHG inventory in the land-use and forestry sector.

Arun Chettri is working as an Assistant Professor at Sikkim University.

Shahid Ahmad Dar is working as a postdoctoral fellow at Zoological Survey of India, Kolkata.

Mira Das is a Professor at the Institute of Technical Education and Research, Department of Chemistry, Siksha 'O' Anusandhan (Deemed to be University), Bhubaneswar, Odisha, India.

Vedika Dutta received a Master of Science in Environmental Studies and Resource Management at TERI School of Advanced Studies, New Delhi, India.

Shalini Dhyani is a Senior Scientist in CSIR National Environmental Engineering Research Institute, Nagpur.

Piyali Dias has a Master of Science in Biodiversity and Taxonomy of Plants from the University of Edinburgh, UK.

Wisdom M. D. Dlamini is an environmental and geospatial scientist at the University of Eswatini.

Jennifer D. Edrial is a postgraduate from the University of the Philippines Los Baños and is currently a member of the Sustainability Team of Ayala Land, Inc.

Azita Farashi is Associate professor at the Faculty of Natural Resources and Environment, Ferdowsi University of Mashhad, Iran.

Marlon Flores leads the global sector-centered economic valuation approach Targeted Scenario Analysis (TSA) at UNDP's Food and Agricultural Commodity Systems (FACS) Practice.

S. A. Gangoo is Dean at Faculty of Forestry, Sher-e-Kashmir University of Agricultural Sciences & Technology of Kashmir, India.

Anjaly George is a Ph.D. scholar at the Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies.

Sonali Ghosh is a Senior Indian Forest Service Officer with more than 25 years of work experience at state and center and specialization in wildlife. She has also worked at UNESCO C2C on World Natural Heritage Centre at Wildlife Institute of India.

Shailendra Goel is Professor in the Department of Botany, University of Delhi.

Kiran Hungund is a Project Assistant working on air quality changes and their visualization with the Energy, Environment and Climate Change Programme at National Institute of Advanced Studies, Bangalore.

Tanvi Hussain is a Research Scholar in the Department of Environmental Science, Gauhati University, and presently with World Agroforestry (CIFOR-ICRAF).

Nazrul Islam is pursuing his Ph.D. in Eastern Swamp Deer Ecology in Manas National Park from Gauhati University and working as biologist with Wildlife Trust of India in the Greater Manas landscape.

Jonson M. Javier is an Assistant Professor of Agricultural Economics and Environmental Science at the Western Philippines University.

Aroma Caroline John has completed an M.Sc. in Geographical Information Systems and Remote Sensing.

Karun Jose is pursuing his Ph.D. in Climate Change and Forest Phenology in the Department of Humanities and Social Science in BITS-Pilani, Goa Campus.

Shijo Joseph is an Assistant Professor and Coordinator of the Centre for Climate Resilience and Environment Management at the Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies, Kochi.

Ashok Kadaverugu is Head of Civil Engineering department in a Government Polytechnic college, Nalgonda, Telangana.

Rakesh Kadaverugu is a Senior Scientist in CSIR National Environmental Engineering Research Institute, Nagpur.

Sarbeswar Kalita is the Former Head and expert of seismology, climatology, and meteorology from the Department of Environmental Science, Gauhati University.

Sharanjeet Kaur worked as a DBT Senior Project Fellow in the Department of Botany, University of Delhi.

Siddhartha Kaushal is associated as a Ph.D. research student with the Department of Botany, University of Delhi.

B. S. P. C. Kishore is a Ph.D. scholar in the Department of Geoinformatics, Central University of Jharkhand, Ranchi, India.

Amit Kumar is working as an Assistant Professor in the Department of Geoinformatics, Central University of Jharkhand, India.

Gajendra Kumar is a Ph.D. scholar in the Department of Geoinformatics, Central University of Jharkhand, Ranchi, India.

Sudip Kumar Kundu is a Ph.D. scholar at Manipal Academy of Higher Education (MAHE), Bengaluru.

Bibhuti Prasad Lahkar is a Senior Scientist with Aaranyak, Assam. He has extensively researched grassland ecosystems in the Indian state of Assam.

Suvha Lama is currently working as a Scientist in CSIR-National Environmental Engineering and Research Institute (NEERI), Nagpur.

Felino P. Lansigan is a Professor of Statistics at the Institute of Statistics, UPLB. He specializes in stochastic modeling and crop insurance under climate change.

Jeoffrey M. Laruya is from College of Forestry and Natural Resources, University of the Philippines Los Baños, Laguna, Philippines.

Linda Loffler is an independent consultant with vast experience in botanical research in Southern Africa.

Nethanel Jireh A. Larida holds a Master of Science in Botany degree from the University of the Philippines at Baños (UPLB) and works on diversity of aquatic macrophytes and riparian diversity in freshwater lakes.

Damasa B. Magcale-Macandog is a Professor of Plant Ecology at the Institute of Biological Sciences, College of Arts and Sciences, University of the Philippines Los Baños.

Kristina S. Mago was a Student Assistant at the Ecoinformatics Laboratory of the Institute of Biological Sciences, University of the Philippines Los Baños.

Ranjit Mahato is currently pursuing a Ph.D. in the Department of Geography, Rajiv Gandhi University, Arunachal Pradesh.

Marc Bryan Manlubatan is a Research Associate in the NRCP-Funded project with a degree in Agricultural Engineering, University of the Philippines Los Baños.

Teodorico L. Marquez Jr is Student Assistant at the Ecoinformatics Laboratory of the Institute of Biological Sciences at the University of the Philippines Los Baños.

T. H. Masoodi is Registrar at Sher-e-Kashmir University of Agricultural Sciences & Technology of Kashmir, India.

Abhinav Mehta is CEO at the Geographic Information Lab (TGIS), Gujarat.

Pradipta R. Muduli is presently working as a Scientific Officer at the Wetland Research and Training Centre (WRTC), Chilika Development Authority (CDA), Dept. of Forest and Environment, Govt. of Odisha, India.

Tahir Mushtaq is Assistant Professor cum Scientist at Faculty of Forestry, Sher-e-Kashmir University of Agricultural Sciences & Technology of Kashmir, India.

Jerry Naayos is Field Guide in the research and survey experiments in Banaue.

Anukul Nath is serving at UNESCO C2C at the Wildlife Institute of India with an extensive experience of work in the Manas landscape.

Gibji Nimasow is Professor in the Department of Geography, Rajiv Gandhi University, Rono Hills, Doimukh, Arunachal Pradesh (India).

Oyi Dai Nimasow is Assistant Professor in the Department of Geography, Rajiv Gandhi University, Rono Hills, Doimukh, Arunachal Pradesh (India).

Mir Muskan Un Nisa is a M.Sc. Forestry student at Faculty of Forestry, Sher-e-Kashmir University of Agricultural Sciences & Technology of Kashmir, India

Sarath Nissanka is a Professor in Crop Science at the University of Peradeniya, Govt of Sri Lanka. Sarath implements the SANH project in Sri Lanka.

Jaderick P. Pabico is a Professor of Computer Science at the Institute of Computer Science, UPLB.

Vasundhara Pandey has a Master of Science in Environmental Studies and Resource Management at TERI School of Advanced Studies, New Delhi, India.

Ma. Grechelle Lyn D. Perez is Master's in Environmental Science at the University of the Philippines, Los Baños, Laguna, Philippines and affiliated with the University of the Philippines Rural High School handling biology, earth science, field study courses, and capstone research.

John Vincent R. Pleto is an Assistant Professor at the Institute of Biological Sciences, College of Arts and Sciences, University of the Philippines Los Banos and specializes in freshwater ecology.

Randy Porciocula is administrative staff of the NRCP-Funded project at the University of the Philippines Los Baños.

Aditya Pradhan is currently working as an Assistant Professor at SRM University Sikkim.

K. Preeti has a Master of Science in Environmental Studies and Resource Management at TERI School of Advanced Studies, New Delhi, India.

Sarena Grace L. Quiñones is a Development Communication graduate from the University of the Philippines Los Baños (UPLB).

Marc Anthony F. Rabena is an Assistant Professor at the Institute of Biological Sciences, College of Arts and Sciences, University of the Philippines Los Baños.

Krishna Raj is a Specialist in Geospatial Application and has done a Master's in Geography from Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi, India, and has been working in various major research projects of WWF-India.

Shrey Rakholia is Consultant at the Geographic Information Lab (TGIS), Ahmedabad, Gujarat.

Hemanthi Ranasinghe is a Senior Professor in Forestry and Environmental Science at the University of Jayewardenepura, Govt of Sri Lanka.

Kumar Ranjan has completed his postgraduation in GIS and Remote Sensing, and his expertise lies in varied fields of allied disciplines of geospatial analysis.

Kottapalli Sreenivasa Rao is Senior Professor and former Head, Department of Botany, University of Delhi.

Marlon A. Reblora is the Research Associate at the University of the Philippines Los Baños.

Mohan Reddy is Lead in Carbon & Sustainability Division at Nurture Agtech Private Limited, Bellandur, Bengaluru-560103, India.

Uttam Kumar Sahoo is a Professor at the Department of Forestry, School of Earth Sciences and Natural Resource Management, Mizoram University.

Purabi Saikia is working as an Assistant Professor at the Central University of Jharkhand, Ranchi.

Arnold R. Salvacion is an Associate Professor at the Department of Community and Environmental Resource Planning, College of Human Ecology, University of the Philippines Los Baños.

R. Sanil is currently working as an Associate Professor at the Department of Zoology, Government Arts College, Udhagamandalam, India.

Harini Santhanam is an Associate Professor and Head, Department of Public Policy (DPP), Manipal Academy of Higher Education (MAHE) Manipal, Bengaluru Campus, Bengaluru, India.

Thekke Thumbath Shameer is working as a scientist (APO projects) at the Centre for Conservation Education Advanced Institute for Wildlife Conservation, Tamil Nadu Forest Department.

Jahnavi Sharma is an independent researcher working on Energy and Environment policy and is based in Bangalore.

Prachi Sharma is working as a Ph.D. research student in the Department of Botany, University of Delhi.

Shilky is a Ph.D. scholar in the Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand, Ranchi, India.

Alolika Sinha is Senior Wildlife Biologist with Aarnyak, Assam, with a Ph.D. in endangered cervid—the hog deer.

Anshu Siwach is pursuing her Ph.D. in the Department of Botany, University of Delhi.

P. A. Sofi is Associate Professor at the Faculty of Forestry, Sher-e-Kashmir University of Agricultural Sciences & Technology of Kashmir, India.

Radhika Sood is AcSIR PhD at CSIR-NEERI, Nagpur working on ecosystem health and mapping cultural ecosystem services.

Sundaram Suresh Ramanan is a scientist at ICAR-Central Agroforestry Research Institute, Jhansi.

Rajesh Tandon is a senior professor in the Department of Botany, University of Delhi.

Malsha Thejani is doing her BSc at the University of Jayewardenepura, Govt of Sri Lanka.

Keshia N. Tingson is an Assistant Professor at the College of Forestry and Natural Resources, University of the Philippines Los Baños.

Prem Lal Uniyal is Senior Professor in the Department of Botany, University of Delhi.

Kalidas Upadhyaya currently works at the Department of Forestry, Mizoram University. His research interests are agroforestry, soil ecology, and restoration ecology.

S. Varshini is a Project Assistant with the Energy, Environment and Climate Change Programme at National Institute of Advanced Studies (NIYAS), Bangalore.

Buddhika Weerakoon is a Ph.D. scholar at the University of Peradeniya, Govt of Sri Lanka.

Macrina T. Zafaralla is a Professor Emeritus at the University of the Philippines Los Baños. She specializes in freshwater ecology and phytoplankton.

Abbreviations

3-PG	Physiological Processes Predicting Growth
3Rs	Reduce, Reuse, Recycle
AAQMS	Ambient Air Quality Monitoring Station
ABA	Abscisic acid
ACF	Autocorrelation Function
ADB	Asian Development Bank
AEKOS	Australian Ecological Knowledge and Observation System
AHP	Analytic Hierarchy Process
AIC	Akaike Information Criterion
ANN	Artificial Neural Network
ANOVA	Analysis of Variance
AOD	Aerosol Optical Depth
AR4	Fourth Assessment Report
AR5	Fifth Assessment Report
AR6	Sixth Assessment Report
ArcGIS	Aeronautical Reconnaissance Coverage Geographic Information System
ASCII	American Standard Code for Information Interchange
ASTER	Advanced Spaceborne Thermal Emission and Reflection Radiometer
AUC	Area Under the Curve
AZN	Manat (Azerbaijani currency)
BAU	Business as Usual
BBA	Blue to Built-up Area
BCC	Basic Carrying Capacity
BCVs	Bioclimatic Variables
BFAR	Bureau of Fisheries and Aquatic Resources
BGM	Generalized Boosting Model
Bio	Bioclimatic Variables
BIOCLIM	Bioclimatic Models
BNF	Biological Nitrogen Fixation
BoB	Bay of Bengal
BOD	Biological Oxygen Demand

BP	Background Points
BRT	Boosted Regression Trees
BSIP	Birbal Sahni Institute of Palaeosciences
ca.	circa (meaning around)
CAAQMS	Continuous Air Quality Monitoring Stations
CART	Classification and Regression Tree
CASA	Carnegie-Ames-Stanford Approach
CBD	Convention on Biological Diversity
CC	Carrying Capacity
CCi	Actual Carrying Capacity Level
CCimax	Carrying Capacity Limit
CEM	Climate Envelope Model
Chl-a	Chlorophyll-a
CHL-A	Chlorophyll-a
CI	Consistency Index
CLUP	Comprehensive Land Use Plan
CMFRI	Central Marine Fisheries Research Institute
CMIP	Coupled Model Intercomparison Project
CO2	Carbon dioxide
CPCB	Central Pollution Control Board
CPT	Conditional Probability Tables
CR	Consistency Ratio
CR	Critically Endangered
CRD	Completely Randomized Design
CS	Central Sector
C-SDM	Correlative Species Distribution Model
CSi	Carrying Capacity Level
CSI	Consortium for Spatial Information
CSR	Corporate Social Responsibility
CTA	Classification Tree Analysis
CTI	Compound Topography Index
CV	Cross Validations
CWC	Canopy Water Content
CWE	Corrected Taxonomic Weighted Endemism
CWPE	Corrected Weighted Phylogenetic Endemism
DBF	Day Before Fish Kill
DEM	Digital Elevation Model
DENR AO	Department of Environment and Natural Resources
DGVM	Dynamic Global Vegetation Model
DO	Dissolved Oxygen
DOST	Department of Science and Technology
DOT	Department of Tourism
ECC	Ecological Carrying Capacity
EcoSIS	Ecological Spectral Information System
EDA	Exploratory Data Analyses

eDNA	Environmental DNA
ENFA	Environmental Niche Factor Analysis
ENM	Ecological Niche Model
ENM	Ecological Niche Modeling
ERA	European Center for Medium-Range Weather Forecasts Re-Analysis
ES	Ecosystem Services
ESD	Eastern Swamp Deer
ESM	Earth System Model
ESRI	Environmental Systems Research Institute
FAO	Food and Agriculture Organization
FAPAR	Fraction of Absorbed Photosynthetically Active Radiation
FARE	Food Analysis and Research
FARMC	Fisheries and Aquatic Resource Management Council
FDA	Flexible Discriminant Analysis
FF	Favorability Function
FGD	Focus Group Discussion
FHWAR	Fishing, Hunting, & Wildlife-Associated Recreation
FSLF	Friends of the Seven Lakes Foundation, Inc
FvCB	Farquhar, von Caemmerer, and Berry
GA	Gibberellic acid
GAM	Generalized Additive Model
GARP	Genetic Algorithm for the Rule Set Production
GBIF	Global Biodiversity Information Facility
GBM	Gradient Boosting Machine
GBR	Green Blue Ratio
GCM	Global Circulation Model
GCS WGS	Geographical Coordinate System World Geodetic System
GDEM	Global Digital Elevation Model
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
GEF	Global Environmental Facility
GEMS	Global Environment Monitoring System
GHG	Greenhouse Gas
GI	Green Infrastructure
GIOVANNI	Geospatial Interactive Online Visualization and Analysis Infrastructure
GIS	Geographic Information System
GIZ	German International Cooperation
GJAM	Generalized Joint Attribute Model
GLCF	Global Land Cover Facility
GLM	Generalized Linear Model
GLR	Generalized Linear Regression
GNF	Global Nature Fund
GOI	Government of India

GPP	Gross primary production
GPS	Global Positioning System
GSA	Global Sensitivity Analysis
GSI	Geological Survey of India
H+	Hydrogen ion
HCA	Hierarchical Cluster Analysis
HEC	Human-Elephant Conflict
HII	Human Influence Index
HL	Hidden Layers
HN	Hidden Network
HPP	Hydropower Plant
H-SDM	Hybrid Species Distribution Model
IAA	Indole Acetic Acid
IAP	Invasive Alien Plant
IBIS	Integrated Biosphere Simulator
ICAR	Indian Council of Agricultural Research
ICH	Indian Central Himalaya
IHR	Indian Himalayan Region
IL	Input layers
INCOIS	Indian National Centre for Ocean Information Services
INSAT 3D	Indian National Satellite 3D
IPBES	Intergovernmental Platform on Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services
IPCC	Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
IRMS	Isotope-Ratio Mass Spectrometer
ISA	Impervious Surface Area
ISRIC	International Soil Reference and Information Centre
IUCN	International Union for Conservation of Nature
JSDM	Joint Species Distribution Model
JULES	Joint U.K. Land Environment Simulator
KAP	Knowledge, Attitudes, Practices
KARB	Kura-Araz river basin
KfW	German government-owned development bank (Reconstruction Credit Institute)
KII	Key Informant Interview
$kJ\ m^{-2}\ day^{-1}$	kilo joules per square meters per day
km^2	square kilometers
KML	Key Markup Language
KMZ	Keyhole Markup Language
KRC	Knowledge Resource Centre
LAI	Leaf Area Index
LD	Land Degradation
LDN	Land Degradation Neutrality
LGU	Local Government Unit
LID	Low Impact Development

LLDA	Laguna Lake Development Authority
LPI	Largest Patch Index
LPJ-DGVM	Lund Potsdam Jena—Dynamic Global Vegetation Model
LPJ-GUESS	Lund Potsdam Jena—General Ecosystem Simulator
LPJmL	Lund-Potsdam-Jena managed Land
LPX	Land Surface Processes and Exchanges
LULC	Land Use Land Cover
m.s.a.l	meters above sea level
MARPOL	The International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships
MARS	Multivariate adaptive regression splines
MaxEnt	Maximum Entropy
MAXENT	Maximum Entropy
MDP	Master Development Plan
MDS	Multi-dimensional scale
MF	Mixed Forest
MFA	Marine Fishery Advisories
Mg ha^{-1}	Megagram per hectare
MINARS	National Programme of Monitoring of Indian National Aquatic Resources
MIR	Model Improvement Ratio
MIROC5	Model for Interdisciplinary Research on Climate Version Five
ML	Machine learning
MLP	Multi-Layer Perceptron
MNP	Manas National Park
MODIS	Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer
MOEFCC	Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change
MOSES	Modular Observation Solutions for Earth Systems
MPA	Marine Protected Area
MPCA	Minnesota Pollution Control Agency
MRF	Material Recovery Facility
M-SDM	Mechanistic Species Distribution Model
MSE	Mean of squared residuals
MT	Metric Ton
MUSIC	Model for Urban Stormwater Improvement Conceptualization
MV	Market value
MVLR	Multivariate linear regression
N2	Nitrogen Gas
NASA	National Aeronautics and Space Administration
NAT	NbS Aiding Technologies
NBM	Naive Bayesian Model
NbS	Nature-Based Solutions
NCAP	National Clean Air Program
NCP	Nature’s Contributions to People
NDVI	Normalized Difference Vegetation Index

NFF	Nature Future Framework
NGO	Non-Governmental Organization
NH3-	Ammonia
NMPB	National Medicinal Plants Board
NMSHE	National Mission for Sustaining Himalayan Ecosystem
NOAA	National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NOx	Nitrogen Oxide
NP	National Park
NPK	Nitrogen, Phosphorus and Potassium
NPP	Net Primary Production
NPP	Nuclear Power Plant
Nr	Nitrogen
NRCP	National Research Council of the Philippines
NS	Northern sector
NSM	Niche Suitability Models
O3	Trioxygen
OC	Outer channel
OCM	Ocean Color Monitor
OECD	Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development
OLI	Operational Land Imager
OM	Organic Matter
OOB	Out-of-bag
ORCHIDEE	Organizing Carbon and Hydrology in Dynamic Ecosystems
p	probability value
P10	10 percentile training presence
PA	Presence-Absence
PAGASA	Philippine Atmospheric Geophysical and Astronomical Services Administration
PAUC	Partial Area Under ROC curve
PB	Presence-Background
PBL	Planetary Boundary Layer
PBM	Process-Based Model
PCAMRD	Philippine Council for Aquatic and Marine Research and Development
PCC	Percent of Sites Correctly Classified
PCC	Potential Carrying Capacity
PD	Phylogenetic Diversity
PET	Potential Evapotranspiration
PFT	Plant Functional Type
PFZ	Potential Fishing Zone
pH	Potential of Hydrogen or Power of Hydrogen
PHIVOLCS	Philippine Institute of Volcanology and Seismology
PK	Pundasyon ng Kalikasan
PM	Particulate Matter
PM10	Particulate matter having size less than 10 μm and more than 2 μm

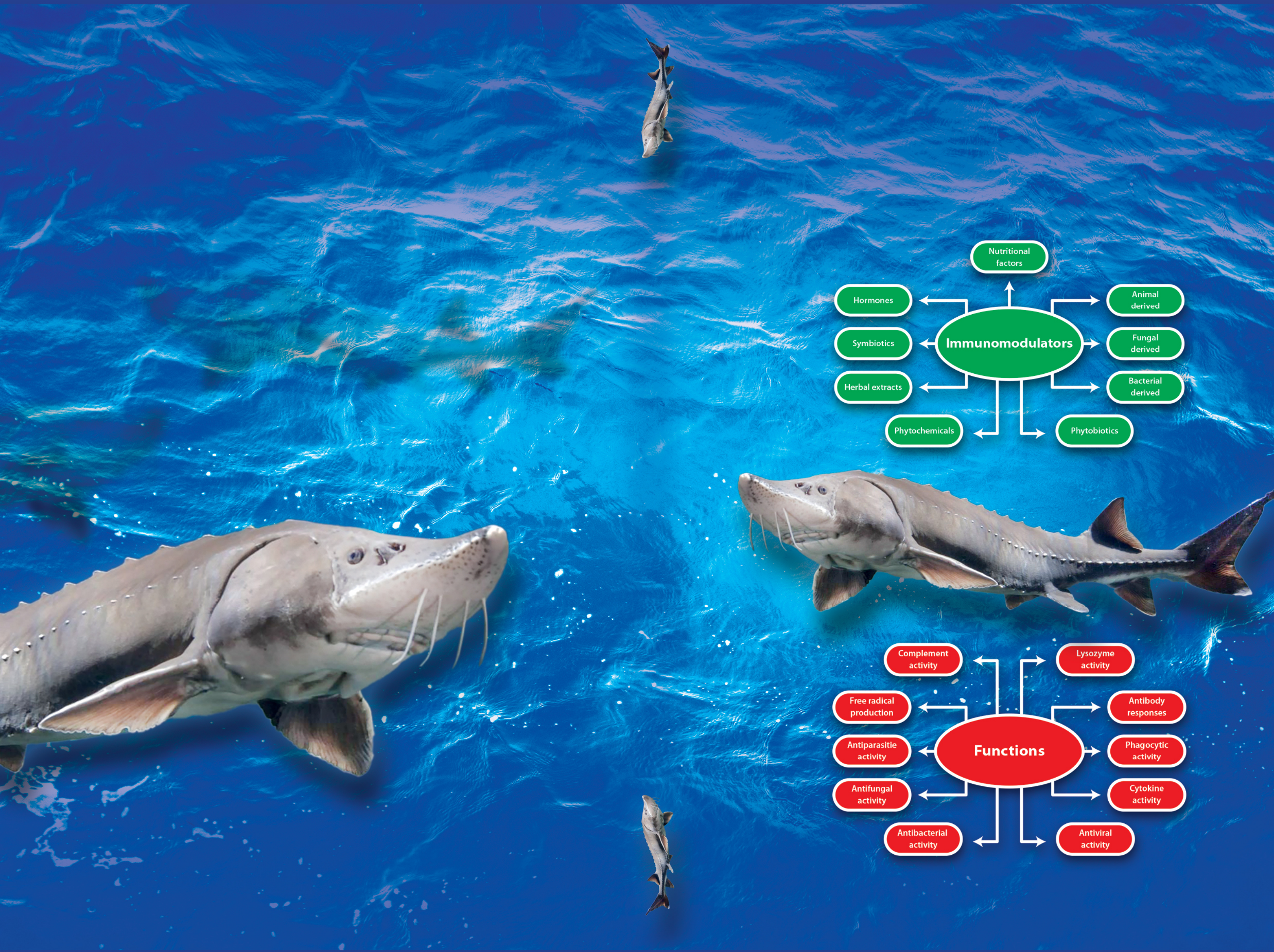
PM2.5	Particulate matter having size less than 2 μm
PNET (C.N)	Photosynthetic/Evapotranspiration model (Carbon Nitrogen)
PPM	Parts Per Million
ppmv	parts per million by volume
PRA	Participatory Rural Appraisal
pROC	partial area under the Receiver Operating Curve
PSA	Philippine Statistics Authority
p-value	Probability Value
QGIS	Quantum Geographic Information System
R&D	Research and Development
RA	Republic Act
RC	Rotation Coefficient
RCC	Real Carrying Capacity
RCI	Random Consistency Index
RCM	Regional Circulation Model
RCP	Representative Concentration Pathways
RET	Rare Endangered Threatened (Species)
RF	Random Forest
RF	Regularization Factor
RMSE	Root Mean Squared Error
RoA	Republic of Azerbaijan
ROC	Receiver Operating Characteristic
RS	Remote Sensing
RSFs	Resource selection functions
RTI	Right to Information
SAFAR	System of Air Quality and Weather Forecasting and Research
SCLWMC	Seven Crater Lakes and Watershed Management Council
SCS	State Committee of Statistics of Azerbaijan
SD	Secchi Disk Depth
SD	Standard Deviation
SDBM	Simple Diagnostic Biosphere Model
SDG	Sustainable Development Goals
SDGVM	Sheffield Dynamic Global Vegetation Model
SDM	Spatial Distribution Modeling
SDM	Species Distribution Model
SDMs	Species distribution models
SDVD	Secchi Disk Visibility Depth Index
Se	Sensitivity
SECC	Socio-economic Carrying Capacity
SEDAC	Socio-economic Data and Applications Centre
SEIB-DGVM	Spatially Explicit Individual Based-Dynamic Global Vegetation Model
SEM	Sustainable Ecosystem Management
SES	Social-ecological systems
SESAM	Spatially explicit species assemblage modeling

SFSLR	Step-wise Forward Selection Logistic Regression
SHPP	Small Hydropower Plant
SIMWAL	Simulated Walnut
SMLP	Samahang Mangingisda ng Lawa ng Pandin
SOC	Soil Organic Carbon
SOI	Survey of India
SOx	Sulfur Oxide
Sp	Specificity
SPCB	State Pollution Control Board
SpThin	Spatial Thinning
SR	Species Richness
SRE	Surface Range Envelop
SRES	Special Report on Emission Scenarios
SROCC	Special Report on the Ocean and Cryosphere in a Changing Climate
SRTM	Shuttle Radar Topography Mission
SS	Southern Sector
SSDM	Stacked-SDMs
SSE	Sum of Square Error
SSP	Shared Socio-economic Pathway
SST	Sea Surface Temperature
SVAT	Surface Vegetation Atmosphere Transfer
SVM	Support Vector Machine
SWM	Solid Waste Management
TAR	Third Assessment Report
TCC	Tourism Carrying Capacity/Total Carrying Capacity
TDS	Total Dissolved Solids
TECM	Terrestrial Ecosystem Carbon Model
TEEB	The Economics of Environment and Biodiversity
TERN	Terrestrial Ecosystem Research Network
TIRS	Thermal Infrared Sensor
TL	Total Length
TLI	Trophic Level Index
TN	Total Nitrogen
TOF	Trees Outside Forests
TP	Total Phosphorus
TPP	Thermal Power Plant
TRIFFID	Top-down Representation of Interactive Foliage and Flora Including Dynamics
TS	Total Sensitivity
TSA	Targeted Scenario Approach
TSPCB	Telangana State Pollution Control Board
TSS	Total Suspended Solid
TSS	True Skill Statistic
TSS	True Skill Statistics

TURB	Turbidity
UC ANR	University of California Agriculture and Natural Resources
UNDP	United Nations Development Program
UNEP	United Nations Environment Program
UNFCCC	United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change
UPLB-FEWS	University of the Philippines Los Baños—Fish Kill Early Warning System
USAID	United States Agency of International Development
USD	United States Dollar
USDM	Uncertainty Analysis for Species Distribution Models
USGS	United State Geological Survey
UT	Union Territory
UTM	Universal Transverse Mercator
UYRDC	Uttarakhand Youth Rural Development Centre
VIF	Variance Inflation Factor
WB	Water Body
WE	Taxonomic Weighted Endemism
WECC	Water Ecological Carrying Capacity
WG	Western Ghats
WGS84	World Geodetic System 1984
WHO	World Health Organization
WPE	Weighted Phylogenetic Endemism
WQBCC	Water Quality and Biodiversity Carrying Capacity
WT	Water temperature
WTO	World Tourism Organization
WTTC	World Travel and Tourism Council
WWF	World Wildlife Fund
XGB	XGBoost Model

Immunomodulators in Aquaculture and Fish Health

Edited by
Preetham Elumalai
Mehdi Soltani
Sreeja Lakshmi



CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group

Immunomodulators in Aquaculture and Fish Health

This reference book provides updated information about different immunomodulators for managing fish health and sustainable aquaculture. Immunomodulators are dietary additives that enhance innate defense mechanisms and increase resistance against specific pathogens and diseases. The book covers the different types of immunostimulants, their modes of action, and their efficacies. It also reviews safety concerns, ethical regulations, limitations, and outreach to farmers. It discusses the application of herbal immunomodulators, antioxidants, and pre- and pro-biotics in disease management.

Features:

- Reviews the pressing topic of reduction of antibiotic use in aquaculture
- Discusses herbal immunomodulators, nutrients, antioxidants, and pre- and pro-biotics
- Covers the topic of progressive immunomodulation using nanotechnology
- Discusses fish health management in the ever-growing aquaculture industry
- Includes natural and synthetic immunomodulators

The book is meant for researchers and industry experts in aquaculture, fisheries science, and veterinary medicine.

Immunomodulators in Aquaculture and Fish Health

Edited by
Preetham Elumalai
Mehdi Soltani
Sreeja Lakshmi

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
Boca Raton London New York

CRC Press is an imprint of the
Taylor & Francis Group, an **informa** business

Design cover image: image courtesy Preetham Elumalai, Mehdi Soltani and Sreeja Lakshmi

First edition published 2024
by CRC Press
2385 Executive Center Drive, Suite 320, Boca Raton FL 33431

and by CRC Press
4 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4RN

CRC Press is an imprint of Taylor & Francis Group, LLC

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Names: Elumalai, Preetham, editor. | Soltani, Mehdi, editor. | Lakshmi, Sreeja, editor.
Title: Immunomodulators in aquaculture and fish health / edited by Preetham Elumalai, Mehdi Soltani, and Sreeja Lakshmi
Description: First edition | Boca Raton, FL : CRC Press, 2024 | Includes bibliographical references and index. | Summary: "This reference book provides updated information about different immunomodulators for managing fish health and sustainable aquaculture. Immunomodulators are dietary additives that enhance innate defense mechanisms and increase resistance against specific pathogens and diseases. The book covers the different types of immunostimulants, their modes of action, and their efficacies. It also reviews safety concerns, ethical regulations, limitations, and outreach to farmers. It discusses the application of herbal immunomodulators, antioxidants, pre- and pro-biotics, in disease management.
Features: Reviews the pressing topic of reduction of antibiotic use in aquaculture Discusses herbal immunomodulators, nutrients, antioxidants and pre- and pro-biotics Covers the topic of progressive immunomodulation using nanotechnology Discusses fish health management in the ever-growing aquaculture industry Includes natural and synthetic immunomodulators The book is meant for researchers and industry experts in aquaculture, fisheries science, and veterinary medicine"-- Provided by publisher.
Identifiers: LCCN 2023015962 (print) | LCCN 2023015963 (ebook) | ISBN 9781032407388 (hardback) | ISBN 9781032420905 (paperback) | ISBN 9781003361183 (ebook)
Subjects: LCSH: Fish culture. | Immunological adjuvants. | Biological response modifiers.
Classification: LCC SH151 .I46 2024 (print) | LCC SH151 (ebook) | DDC 639.3--dc23/eng/20230726
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2023015962
LC ebook record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2023015963

ISBN: 978-1-032-40738-8 (hbk)
ISBN: 978-1-032-42090-5 (pbk)
ISBN: 978-1-003-36118-3 (ebk)

DOI: 10.1201/9781003361183

Typeset in Times
by MPS Limited, Dehradun

Contents

Foreword

It is my great pleasure to write this foreword for a very timely book, "**Immunomodulators in Aquaculture and Fish Health,**" edited by my colleagues, Preetham Elumalai, Mehdi Soltani, and Sreeja Lakshmi.

As a believer in identifying opportunities and linking scientific evidence, innovation with improved sustainable aquatic production, together with my professional commitment in the aquaculture industry of over 40 years, I have found this volume of work to be a very extensive review. The wealth of information on the potential therapeutic and preventative roles of immunomodulators, in combating diseases in farmed aquatic species is truly insightful.

The importance of this book defines an era, where the performance of aquatic foods has been greatly recognized and concerted efforts have been initiated to enhance production and to bridge the ever-expanding supply-demand gap, for aquatic blue foods worldwide.

The burden of disease is high in aquatic production and currently estimated as $10 billion USD annually. With the decades of experience and lessons learned in aquatic animal health management, it is convinced that prevention is better than cure for aquatics and investing in prevention is more cost-effective than investing in therapy.

In this regard, I believe we should be aiming for more tools and procedures such as vaccines and vaccination and more research efforts should be supported, both at academic and commercial levels.

I congratulate the editors for this comprehensive volume and hope it will serve the purpose of increasing awareness of immunomodulators towards the implementation within aquatic animal health management.

Dr Rohana Subasinghe
Founder + Director,
FUTUREFISH Co. Ltd.
www.futurefish.org

Aquaculture plays a vital role in global food security and economic development. It is the fastest-growing food production sector in the world and has been for some considerable time, with an average annual growth rate over the last 50 years of 8%. The latest FAO State of the World Fisheries and Aquaculture Report (2022) estimated global aquaculture production of aquatic animals at a record 87.5 million tonnes, with a value of USD 264.8 billion; this equates to 49% of total aquatic animal supply by volume and 65% by value. Approximately 2.5 million people are directly employed in the aquaculture sector around the world, with most of these in Asia, followed by Africa and Latin America. Women comprise 28% of these employment figures, slightly more than the average of 25% for the agriculture sector as a whole.

Infectious diseases represent a major constraint to the continued growth of global aquaculture, with estimated annual losses of at least USD 6 billion. The industry is particularly prone to disease outbreaks because of high stocking densities which increase pathogen transmission rates and reduce water quality, and also because of low genetic diversity in many breeding stocks, which may compromise the immune response to infection of cultured animals. Antimicrobials and antiparasitics are used therapeutically and prophylactically, but these treatments are often expensive and there is concern over the potential adverse effects of their widespread use, particularly the promotion of antibiotic resistance. Vaccination is another option for disease control, but vaccines often have limited efficacy, particularly for juvenile fish which do not have a fully developed immune response. There is therefore increasing interest in alternative approaches to disease control in aquaculture.

Immunomodulators are substances that affect the functioning of the immune system. A range of natural and synthetic products have been used or proposed, with varying degrees of scientific evaluation, to control infectious diseases in aquaculture. This book provides a very comprehensive and timely exploration of their efficacy and potential role in an aquatic animal health management system. The various sections of the book provide an overview of immunomodulators and their mode of action; the potential of immunomodulators to provide a more sustainable approach to disease control; the current use of immunomodulator products in aquaculture; and finally, their efficacy, limitations, and future prospects for the aquaculture industry. The book will be of great benefit to researchers in aquatic animal health, aquatic veterinarians, aquaculture managers, and all of us who wish to promote an economically viable and environmentally sustainable aquaculture industry.

Professor Alan Lymbery
Director, Centre for Sustainable Aquatic Ecosystems
Harry Butler Institute, Murdoch University
Australia

Editors

Preetham Elumalai, PhD, is an associate professor at the Department of Marine Biology, Cochin University of Science and Technology, Kochi, Kerala, India. He earned a master's degree from the University of Madras and a PhD in biochemistry and molecular immunology from the Institute for Immunology, University of Regensburg, Germany. His research practice includes bioassay-guided identification of novel marine compounds, unveiling fish lectins in innate immune defense, aquatic vaccine development, evaluation of cost-effective feed additives and nutrigenomics, and effects of environmental pollutants on marine ecosystems. He has been a partner in numerous EU-, Indian-, and UK-funded projects (e.g., IVVN, BactiVac). He has written more than 70 peer-reviewed articles and has two patents in his name apart from editing five books (Springer, CRC Press) and has presented his work at more than 60 national and international conferences. He has been awarded the prestigious INSA fellowship (2018); MASTS, Fellowship (2019); IVVN award, UK (2020); FRSB award (2021); and BactiVac award, UK (2022).

Mehdi Soltani, PhD, is a distinguished professor at the University of Tehran and an adjunct professor at Murdoch University, Australia. He earned a DVM from the University of Tehran and PhD in aquatic animal health from the University of Tasmania, Australia. Professor Soltani has an international reputation for research on aquatic animal health, with 290 published scientific papers, collaborations with researchers throughout the world, and editorship of scientific journals in fisheries and veterinary science. He chaired government advisory committees in fisheries and aquaculture and has also worked closely with the aquaculture industry. He developed and patented a number of fish vaccines, which are registered throughout the Middle East. He also taught numerous undergraduate courses and supervised many higher degree students. His research interests include vaccine development for fish pathogens; immunopathogenesis of infectious agents in fish/shellfish; and development of alternative therapies such as immunostimulants, probiotics, and phytobiotics for disease control in farmed fish and shellfish.

Sreeja Lakshmi, PhD, is a postdoctoral research scientist in collaboration with Moredun Research Institute (MRI), UK. She graduated from Calicut University and earned a PhD in biochemistry and functional genomics from the Institute for Molecular Biology, University of Regensburg, Germany. She has published research articles in peer-reviewed international journals and authored books and book chapters. She has been awarded prestigious research grants from the Bavarian Research Foundation (Bayerische Forschungsstiftung), Government of Bavaria, Germany; an HRD-Fellowship for Women Scientists from the Department of Health Research, Government of India; and a MASTS (Marine Alliance Science and Technology, Scotland) Award for Postdoctoral and Early Career Research Exchanges (PECRE). She has visited the University of Aberdeen, Scotland, and received an IVVN Fellowship grant from the International Veterinary Vaccinology Network (IVVN), UK.

Contributors

Maram H. Abduljabbar
Department of Pharmacology and Toxicology, College of Pharmacy
Taif University
Taif, Saudi Arabia

Catherine Alexander
Jayaraj Annapackiam College for Women
Thamaraikulam, Periyakulam, Tamil Nadu

Manal E. Alosaimi
Department of Basic Science, College of Medicine
Princess Nourah Bint Abdulrahman University
Riyadh, Saudi Arabia

Babitha Rani A.M.
Aquaculture Division
ICAR – Central Institute of Fisheries Education
Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Yaser Arafath
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences
Pondicherry University
Puducherry, India

Palanichamy Ayyappan
Department of Botany
Government Arts College
Melur, Madurai, Tamil Nadu, India

Paulraj Balaji
PG and Research Centre in Biotechnology
MGR College
Hosur, Tamil Nadu, India

Ramalakshmi Balasubramanian
Department of Zoology
Lady Doak College
Tallakulam, Tamil Nadu

Sajna Beegum
Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry, School of Marine Sciences
Cochin University of Science and Technology (CUSAT)
Lakeside Campus, Fine Arts Avenue, Cochin, Kerala, India

Ankeet Bhagat
Aquatic Toxicology Lab, Department of Zoology
Guru Nanak Dev University
Amritsar, Punjab, India

Faggio C
Department of Chemical, Biological, Pharmaceutical and Environmental Sciences
University of Messina
Messina, Italy

Thongam Ibemcha Chanu
Aquaculture Division
ICAR – Central Institute of Fisheries Education
Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Hethesh Chellapandian
PG and Research Department of Biotechnology and Microbiology
National College (Autonomous)
Tiruchirappalli, Tamil Nadu, India

Azubuike V. Chukwuka
National Environmental Standards and Regulations
Enforcement Agency (NESREA)
Nigeria

Owias Iqbal Dar
Aquatic Toxicology Lab, Department of Zoology
Guru Nanak Dev University
Amritsar, Punjab, India
and
Department of Biosciences
Chandigarh University
Gharuan, Punjab, India

Sweta Das
Department of Aquatic Animal Health Management
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Panangad, Kochi, Kerala

Maderi Velayutham Dassprakash
Department of Biochemistry
Sri Sankara Arts and Science College
Enathur, Kanchipuram, Tamilnadu, India

Ashutosh D. Deo
Fish Nutrition, Biochemistry and Physiology Division
ICAR – Central Institute of Fisheries Education
Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Dipanjan Dutta
Aquaculture Laboratory, Department of Zoology
The University of Burdwan
Golapbag, Burdwan, West Bengal, India
and
Post Graduate Department of Zoology
Hooghly Mohsin College
Chinsurah, Hooghly, West Bengal, India

Hiam Elabd
Aquatic Animals' Medicine Department, Faculty of Veterinary Medicine
Benha University
Moshtohor, Toukh, Egypt

Gehad E. Elshopakey
Department of Clinical Pathology, Faculty of Veterinary Medicine
Mansoura University
Mansoura, Dakahlia, Egypt

Preetham Elumalai
Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry, School of Marine Sciences
Cochin University of Science and Technology (CUSAT)
Lakeside Campus Fine Arts Avenue, Cochin, India

Falco F
Institute of Marine Biological Resources and Biotechnologies, National Research Council (CNR)
Mazara Del Vallo, Italy

Caterina Faggio
Department of Chemical, Biological, Pharmaceutical and Environmental Sciences
University of Messina
Messina, Italy

Aifa Fathima
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences
Pondicherry University
Puducherry, India

Femi John Fawole
Fish Nutrition and Biochemistry Unit, Department of Aquaculture and Fisheries
University of Ilorin
Ilorin, Nigeria

S. Ferosekhan
Department of Aquaculture
ICAR – Central Institute of Freshwater Aquaculture
Bhubaneswar, Odisha, India

Koushik Ghosh
Aquaculture Laboratory, Department of Zoology
The University of Burdwan
Golapbag, Burdwan, West Bengal, India

M. Divya Gnaneswari
Department of Zoology
Gargi College
New Delhi, India

Tamilselvan Gokul
PG and Research Department of Zoology
Vivekananda College
Tiruvedakam (West), Madurai, Tamil Nadu, India

Aseem Grover
Department of Chemistry, Biochemistry and Forensic Sciences, Amity School of Applied Sciences
Amity University Haryana
Panchgaon, Haryana, India

Saqib Hassan
Department of Biotechnology, School of Bio and Chemical Engineering
Sathyabhama Institute of Science and Technology
Chennai, Tamilnadu, India
and
FutureLeaders Mentoring Fellow
American Society for Microbiology
Washington, USA

Ramchandran Ishwarya
Mandapam Regional Centre, ICAR – Central
Marine Fisheries Research Institute
Mandapam, Tamil Nadu, India

Rengarajan Jayakumar
ICAR – Central Institute of Brackishwater Aquaculture (CIBA)
MRC Nagar, Chennai, Tamil Nadu, India

Ramaraj Jayakumararaj
Department of Botany
Government Arts College
Melur, Madurai, Tamil Nadu, India

Manish Jayant
Fish Nutrition, Biochemistry and Physiology Division
ICAR – Central Institute of Fisheries Education
Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Sivakamavalli Jeyachandran
PG and Research Department of Biotechnology and Microbiology
National College (Autonomous)
Tiruchirappalli, Tamil Nadu, India

Divya Jyoti
School of Biological and Environmental Sciences
Shoolini University
Solan, India

Mian Adnan Kakakhel
MOE Key Laboratory of Cell Activities and Stress Adaptations, School of Life Sciences
Lanzhou University
Lanzhou, P.R. China

Gbadamosi Oluyemi Kazeem
Department of Fisheries and Aquaculture Technology
Federal University of Technology
Akure, Ondo State, Nigeria

Tejaswini Kinnera
Fish Nutrition, Biochemistry and Physiology Division
ICAR – Central Institute of Fisheries Education
Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

George Seghal Kiran
Department of Food Science and Technology, School of Life Sciences
Pondicherry University
Puducherry, India

Arathi Kollath
Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry, School of Marine Sciences
Cochin University of Science and Technology (CUSAT)
Lakeside Campus, Fine Arts Avenue, Cochin, India

Devasree Ganesh Kumar
The Madura College (Autonomous)
Vidya Nagar, Madurai, Tamil Nadu

Kamatchi Ramesh Kumar
PG and Research Department of Zoology
Vivekananda College
Tiruvedakam (West), Madurai, Tamil Nadu, India

Sreeja Lakshmi
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies, Panangad
Kochi, India

Banaee M
Aquaculture Department, Faculty of Natural Resources and the Environment
Behbahan Khatam Alanbia University of Technology
Behbahan, Khuzestan Province, Iran

Mauro M
Department of Biological, Chemical and Pharmaceutical Sciences and Technologies (STEBICEF)
University of Palermo
Palermo, Italy

Heba Mahboub
Fish Diseases and Management Department, Faculty of Veterinary Medicine
Zagazig University
Zagazig, Sharkia, Egypt

R. Dinakaran Michael
Centre for Fish Immunology
Vels Institute of Science, Technology, and Advanced Studies (VISTAS)
Pallavaram, Chennai, Tamil Nadu

Shamna Nazeemashahul
Fish Nutrition, Biochemistry and Physiology Division
ICAR – Central Institute of Fisheries Education
Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Hussain Nottanalan
Fish Nutrition, Biochemistry and Physiology Division
ICAR – Central Institute of Fisheries Education
Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Neha Omgy
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies, Panangad
Kochi, India

Lokesh Pawar
College of Fisheries (Central Agricultural University – Imphal)
Agartala, Tripura, India

Nikhila Peter
Fish Nutrition and Feed Technology Laboratory, Department of Aquaculture
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Panangad, Kochi, Kerala

Chinnathambi Pothiraj
Department of Botany
Government Arts College
Melur, Madurai, Tamil Nadu, India

Chiranjiv Pradhan
Fish Nutrition and Feed Technology Laboratory, Department of Aquaculture
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Panangad, Kochi, Kerala

S. Kalaivani Priyadarshini
Department of Biotechnology
Lady Doak College
Hakim Ajmal Khan Rd, Tallakulam, Tamil Nadu

Neha Qureshi
Fisheries Economics, Extension and Statistics Division
ICAR-CIFE, Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Priyatharsini Rajendran
Department of Zoology
Lady Doak College
Tallakulam, Tamil Nadu, India

Akshay Thuruthiyil Rajesh
Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry, School of Marine Sciences
Cochin University of Science and Technology (CUSAT)
Lakeside Campus, Cochin, Kerala, India

Subramanian Ramya
Department of Zoology
Yadava College (Men)
Madurai, Tamil Nadu, India

Einar Ringø
Norwegian College of Fishery Science, Faculty of Biosciences, Fisheries and Economics
UiT, The Arctic University of Norway
Tromsø, Norway

Nimai Chandra Saha
University of Burdwan
Purba Barddhaman, India

Shubhajit Saha
Fisheries and Ecotoxicology Research Laboratory
Department of Zoology
The University of Burdwan, Burdwan
West Bengal, India

Parimal Sardar
Fish Nutrition, Biochemistry and Physiology Division
ICAR – Central Institute of Fisheries Education
Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Joseph Selvin
Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences
Pondicherry University
Puducherry, India

Arun Sharma
Aquatic Animal Health Management Division
ICAR – Central Institute of Fisheries Education
Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Sunil Sharma
Aquatic Toxicology Lab, Department of Zoology
Guru Nanak Dev University
Amritsar, Punjab, India

Reshma Sinha
Department of Animal Sciences
Central University of Himachal Pradesh
Kangra, India

Subramaniam Sivakumar
Department of Biochemistry
Sri Sankara Arts and Science College
Enathur, Kanchipuram, Tamilnadu, India

Hamed Mousavi Sabet
Department of Fisheries, Faculty of Natural Resources
University of Guilan
Sowmeh Sara, Iran

Mehdi Soltani
Centre for Sustainable Aquatic Ecosystems, Harry Butler Institute
Murdoch University
Perth, Australia
and
Department of Aquatic Animal Health Faculty of Veterinary Medicine
University of Tehran
Tehran, Iran

Parasuraman Aiya Subramani
Centre for Fish Immunology
Vels Institute of Science, Technology, and Advanced Studies (VISTAS)
Pallavaram, Chennai, Tamil Nadu

C. Shanmuga Sundaram
Department of Microbiology
Hindustan College of Arts and Science
Kelambakkam, Chennai, Tamilnadu, India

Baskaralingam Vaseeharan
Biomaterials and Biotechnology in Animal Health Lab, Department of Animal Health and Management
Alagappa University
Karaikudi, Tamil Nadu, India

Karthikeyan Venkatachalam
Faculty of Innovative Agriculture and Fishery Establishment Project, Prince of Songkla
University Surat Thani Campus
Makham Tia, Mueang, Surat Thani, Thailand

Rantham Subramaniam Venkatesan
Lakshmi Bangaru Arts and Science College
Melmaruvathur, Chengalpet, Tamilnadu, India

Section I

Immunomodulators: An overview

1

Immunomodulators: An Introduction

Falco F[1], Banaee M[2], Mauro M[3], Faggio C[4], Arathi Kollath[5], and Preetham Elumalai[5]
[1]*Institute of Marine Biological Resources and Biotechnologies, National Research Council (CNR), Mazara Del Vallo, Italy*
[2]*Aquaculture Department, Faculty of Natural Resources and the Environment, Behbahan Khatam Alanbia University of Technology, Behbahan, Khuzestan Province, Iran*
[3]*Department of Biological, Chemical and Pharmaceutical Sciences and Technologies (STEBICEF), University of Palermo, Palermo, Italy*
[4]*Department of Chemical, Biological, Pharmaceutical and Environmental Sciences, University of Messina, Messina, Italy*
[5]*Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry, School of Marine Sciences, Cochin University of Science and Technology (CUSAT), Lakeside Campus, Fine Arts Avenue, Cochin, India*

1.1 Introduction

Before going into detail about immunomodulators, it's important to understand how immune systems work and how different variables can stimulate the immune system in different ways. Many substances are known to exist in our environment, and they are always capable of affecting the immune systems of living beings. For example, it has been shown that the immune system plays an important role in aquatic organisms subjected to various physical stress conditions (Mauro et al. 2021), noise pollution (Mauro et al. 2020), drug pollution (Mauro et al. 2022), or bacterial activity (Vizzini et al. 2021). Several biomarkers are also used to evaluate the health status of important animals in aquaculture (Mauro et al. 2022). In addition, aquatic organisms are also an excellent source of molecules with antimicrobial and antitumor activity (Mauro et al. 2022). In this chapter, we briefly introduce the function and role of immunomodulators, especially in the fish immune system. Fish have an immune system that is similar to that of higher vertebrates. As a result, every living entity must preserve its integrity and health status when challenged and must be able to recognise and distinguish between "self" (its molecules, cells, and tissues) and "non-self" (all other organisms or substances). The purpose of the immune system is to recognise the millions of non-self organisms that are potentially harmful to the self and to eliminate them or reduce their impact so that no damage occurs to the self (Takx-Köhlen 1992). This chapter does not explain self-immunity or self-tolerance phenomena that lead to suppression of the immune system and the spread of many autoimmune diseases in fish. We prefer to divide the immune system into two broad categories based on function, namely the innate immune system (non-specific immune system) as the first line of defence against pathogens (Carbone & Faggio 2016) and the adaptive immune system (specific or acquired immune system) (Marshall et al. 2018).

1.2 How Do the Immunostimulants Work in Fish?

Since their embryonic life stage, fish have relied on their innate immune system, and their survival depends on it. The skin is the principal non-specific defence in fish and plays a key role in protecting and preventing the entry of pathogens into the epithelium through the secretion of a mucus layer involved in the immunity system (Salinas et al. 2011). The cells and mediators involved will differ depending on the time, the trigger, the anatomical location (inflammation can affect any tissue), and the severity of the inflammation (Calder et al. 2013). Teleosts have a cellular defence system that includes macrophage-like phagocytic cells, neutrophils, and natural killer (NK) cells, as well as T and B lymphocytes, as well as various humoral defence components like complement (classical and alternative pathways), lysozyme, natural hemolysin, transferring factor, and C-reactive protein (Watts et al. 2001). Furthermore, teleosts and elasmobranchs are the most primitive groups that possess the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) and T-cell receptors, which are the primary components of the immune response against

DOI: 10.1201/9781003361183-2

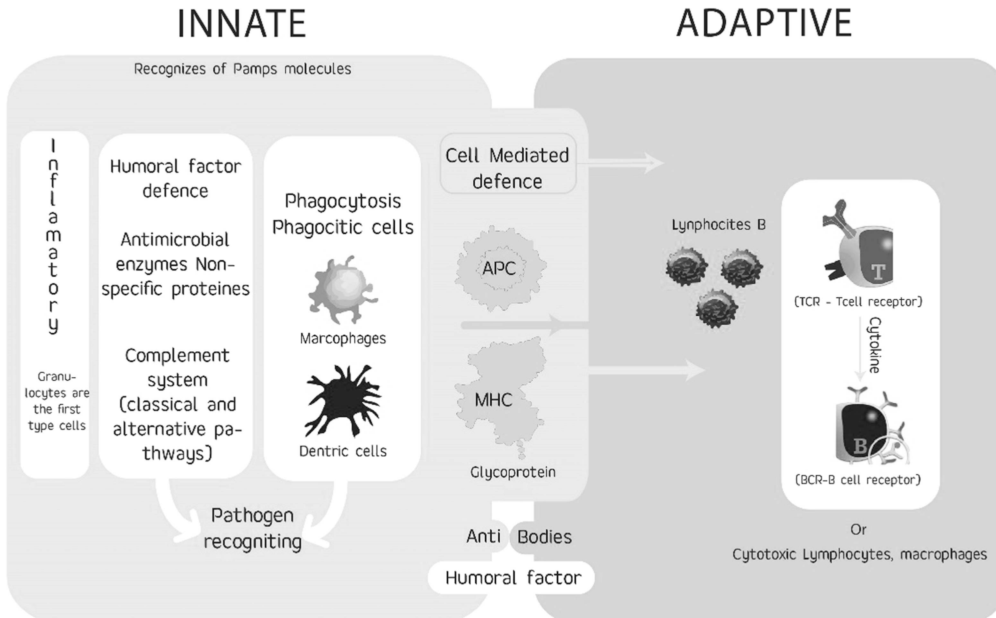


FIGURE 1.1 The immune system assumption in teleostfish.

The above figure represents types of immune system in fish. Innate immunity provides primary defence against pathogens by activating phagocytosis and antimicrobial, complement activation. On the other hand, adaptive immune system functions by stimulating specific lymphocytes.

pathogenic organisms (Zou & Secombes 2016). Sakai et al. (2021) investigated the role and function of cytokines in fish (interferon, interleukin 2, and macrophage activating factors), whereas among the lymphoid organs found in fish to mediate the responses have been the thymus, spleen, and kidney (Zapata 1996). The collaboration of fish innate and adaptive (memory) immune systems to eliminate intruders or activate defensive mechanisms is now well recognised; these two systems are classified into cell-mediated defence and humoral components (soluble substances). Figure 1.1 describes their main functions.

The innate system is made up of three parts: the tegument (skin and mucus), cellular components (granulocytes, monocytes, macrophages, and natural killer cells), and humoral components (granulocytes, monocytes, macrophages, and natural killer cells) (the complement system, antimicrobial enzyme system, and non-specific mediators such as interferon and interleukin). Furthermore, inflammation is thought to be an innate immune response driven by complex interactions between cellular and humoral components. Granulocytes are the first cells to arrive at the site of inflammation and are responsible for killing infections. Innate and adaptive immune systems normally work in concert, with innate responses serving as the host's first line of defence and enabling adaptive responses by antigen-specific T and B cells to produce antibodies in the presence of specific humoral components called histocompatibility molecules and glycoprotein receptors encoded by genes in the major histocompatibility complex (MHC).

1.3 Immunomodulators

The immunomodulators are all antigens (chemical or physical) that manage to vary the immune system's activities. When an agent depresses the immune system, also known as an immunosuppressant, they can cause a negative response. Immunosuppression is described by Dohms and Saif (1984) as "a state of transient or persistent dysfunction of the immune response resulting from insults to the immune system and increasing susceptibility to disease," and the qualifier "and frequently a suboptimal antibody response." Otherwise, if an immunomodulator can increase or promote activity, it is called an immunostimulant. Finally, another category is immune adjuvants, which hold the promise of being the actual modulators (De Paula Barbosa 2014) of the immune response, especially to enhance the vaccine's efficacy. An example in this regard is Freund's complete adjuvant, which is being used to enhance the potency of poor immunogenic substances (Tengjaroenkul & Yowarach 2011). Very often, the same agent can have both immunostimulant and immunosuppressive effects on an organism. Studies showed that the physiological response of fish to different doses of immune system stimulants could be different (Petit 2019). In other words, in some cases, excessive use of several immunostimulants simultaneously may cause immunosuppression in fish (Raa 1996).

1.4 Immune Suppressors

Immunosuppressive compounds are chemical, biochemical, and physical agents that suppress, decrease, or disrupt the immune system functions in fish. Studies show that all immunosuppressant compounds carry a severe risk of infection. Various types of immunosuppressive materials may change the immune response in fish when challenged by pathogens (Hidasi 2017). Most immunosuppressants may weaken the immune system by altering the gene expression of immune parameters. However, some immunosuppressive materials may decrease the absorption of vitamins and dietary supplements. Furthermore, immunosuppressive compounds reduce the ability of fish's innate and specific immune systems to respond to foreign objects. The interaction of immune suppressants with drugs may also reduce their effectiveness. The following part explains some immune suppression effects on the fish immune system.

1.4.1 Environmental Stressors

The functions of the immune system of fish depend on nutrition, environmental conditions, health, gender, and ontogeny. Temperature, dissolved oxygen, salinity, pH, and hardness ranges may also differ between fish species. Therefore, environmental fluctuations could alter the fish's physiological status and immunological response. For example, hyperosmotic stress could decrease the immune system response of *Scatophagusargus* to bacterial infection (Lu et al. 2022). In hostile biological conditions, fish may not be able to feed properly. As a result, they will not have enough energy to allocate to the immune system (Estensoro et al. 2012). Moreover, breeder malnutrition may lead to epigenetic changes in the offspring's immune and metabolic genes. Improper fish nutrition under stressful conditions can also lead to impaired immune priming by dendritic cells and monocytes and impair the function of effective memory T-cells. Acute and chronic stress are critical agents in suppressing the immune functions of fish (Guo et al. 2021).

Environmental stress can suppress the immune response in fish. As a result, fish that live in stressful environments may have a weaker immune system than fish that live in normal conditions. Guo et al. (2022) discovered that exposing Wuchang Bream (Megalobramaamblycephala) to ammonia nitrogen reduced immunoglobulin M (IgM), interleukin 1 (IL-1), and tumour necrosis factor (TNF-) levels while decreasing TLR mRNA expression. Following exposure to ammonia, there was a considerable drop in IgM and component C3 levels and lysozyme activity in the spleen and head kidney of Pelteobagrusvachellii (Qi et al. 2017). Moreover, those latter authors showed that high ammonia concentrations in the environment could disrupt the expression of immune-related genes in crucian carp (*Carassius auratus)* (Mazini et al. 2022). It was observed that the immune system's response would be decreased when fish were exposed to the stress of transporting between different farms. They discovered that an increase in corticosteroids was linked to immunological suppression in fish. Corticosteroids may affect the effectiveness of the immune system by altering mRNA expressions implicated in immunological parameters. Therefore, to better understand the impact of environmental stressors, each of the stressors has been discussed separately.

1.4.1.1 Agrochemicals

Agrochemicals include fertilisers, phytohormones, and pesticides (e.g., insecticides, pesticides, herbicides, and fungicides) used in the agriculture industry. Agrochemicals also include medications, disinfectants, hormones, and growth stimulants used in cattle, poultry, and aquaculture. Suppression of the immune system in fish exposed to agrochemicals can increase the susceptibility and vulnerability of fish to various pathogens (Banaee et al. 2019; Farag et al. 2021). Changes in intrinsic and specific immunological indices are perhaps the most important reason for suppressing the immune system of fish exposed to agrochemicals (Hassan et al. 2022). This section explains the reasons for the decay of the fish immune system after exposure to agrochemicals.

Due to their lipophilic nature, most pesticides easily cross biological barriers and enter the aquatic body. Pesticides can suppress the immune system by interacting with immune agents or causing oxidative damage in tissues involved in the immune system (Farag et al. 2021). Previous studies have shown that fish exposure to pesticides can cause changes in haematological parameters, including a decrease in leucocytes and an alteration in the differential count of white blood cells (Banaee et al. 2008). In fish treated with pesticides, decreased total immunoglobulin, C3, and C4 complement activities have also been reported (Hatami et al. 2019). A significant decrease was reported in lysozyme activity, respiratory burst activity, and total immunoglobulin levels in Nile tilapia (Oreochromis *niloticus*) exposed to cypermethrin (Abdel-Tawwab et al. 2020). Exposure to pesticides can also lead to changes in the gene expression of inflammatory cytokines such as TNF-, IL-1, and IL-6 (Acar et al. 2021; Wang et al. 2020).One study found that glyphosate exposure altered the levels of interferon- (IFN-) and IL-1 in the hematopoietic tissues of common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*).

1.4.1.2 Heavy Metals

Exposure to heavy metals at levels higher than the accepted dosages could suppress the immune response in fish. Also, the transmission of heavy metal contamination through the food chain can affect fish immune systems (Mohiseni et al. 2017). A significant decrease in immune functions of Vardar chub (*Squalius vardarensis,* Karaman) may be due to histopathological damage to the kidney and spleen (Jordanova et al. 2017). Bernier et al. (1995) demonstrated that bioaccumulation of heavy metals could cause suppression of the immune system, autoimmune diseases, increased susceptibility to pathogens, and inflammation reactions in fish. Banaee et al. (2019) demonstrated that alterations in humoral immune parameters in fish exposed to heavy metals indicated quenching of innate immune responses. Manganese reduced lysozyme activity and IgM levels while increasing the expression of tlr3, tnf-, il-1, and il-6 in juvenile yunlong groupers (*Epinephelus maureus* and *E. lanceolatus*) (Wang et al. 2022). Heavy metals were exposed to *Centrarcus lal.rax.* changes in bactericidal activity in the skin mucosa of gilthead seabream (*Sparus aurata*) after heavy metal exposure have also been reported (Guardiola et al. 2015). A significant decrease in HK-B cell proliferation, IgM level, and serum bactericide potential was observed in catfish exposed to arsenic (Ghosh et al. 2007). Heavy metal exposure in fish may affect leucocyte counts. Furthermore, changes in the granulocyte/granulocyte ratio suggest that heavy metals trigger the fish immune system. A significant increase in monocyte and neutrophil numbers and a significant decrease in lymphocyte numbers were reported in goldfish (*C. auratus*) after exposure to manganese (Aliko et al. 2018).

Genotoxicity may be linked to oxidative stress, DNA damage, and changes in mRNA expression. Indeed, Ghazy et al. (2017) found that the gene expression in the immune system changed in Nile tilapia that lived in waters contaminated with heavy metals. Heavy metals altered the expression of IL1, TNF-, IFN, Mx, Lyz, C3B, and CXCL-Clc in zebrafish (*D. rerio*) embryos (Cobbina et al. 2015). Moreover, significant changes in the mRNA transcription of immune-related genes were observed in the leucocytes of European sea bass exposed to cadmium, lead, and mercury (Morcillo et al. 2015).

1.4.2 Other Xenobiotics

Segner et al. (2021) showed that xenobiotics could bind to the aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AhR) as a vital transcription factor. Then, complex AHR and xenobiotics were set on sequence response elements and changed immune-related gene expression. Suppression of the immune system in aquatic animals exposed to xenobiotics may be due to energy shifts for detoxification. Decreased energy allocated to the immune system may reduce its performance.

1.4.3 Natural Toxins

Qiao et al. (2013) investigated the immunotoxicity of cyanobacteria in Crucian carp. The immunological fish response might be boosted by blood cyanobacteria, according to authors Rymuszka and Adaszek (2013), who assessed the effects of microcystin derived from cyanobacteria on carp leucocyte proliferation under *in vitro* conditions. They showed microcystin could increase apoptosis rates in white blood cells. Rymuszka and Sieroslawska (2018) showed that carp leucocytes' half-life decreased after exposure to nodularin, a cyanobacteria toxin. Contamination of food with aflatoxin toxins can reduce the potency of non-specific immune systems in fish (Bitsayah et al. 2018). In common carp fed with aflatoxins-contaminated feed, Bitsayah et al. (2018) found a substantial shift in complement C3, C4, and CH50, lysozyme activity, and total immunoglobulin content.

1.4.4 Anti-nutritional Agents

Some antinutritional compounds in the diet can suppress the immune system in aquatic animals. However, the immunodepressive effects of anti-nutritional compounds on the immune system depend on their bioavailability and their dosages in feed. By generating cytotoxicity, anti-nutritional substances may have an impact on immune function. Furthermore, by producing inflammation or modifying the quantity of inflammatory markers in the blood, these substances may impair immunological function. Inhibiting the absorption of micronutrients in the intestine by anti-nutritional compounds can also play a role in suppressing the aquatic immune system (Abdel-Tawwab et al. 2018). The immune system may be harmed by phytotoxins such as cyanogenic glycosides (Cho et al. 2013). Glycinin is a dietary allergen in soy, which can harm an animal's immune system (Sun et al. 2008). Gossypol, an anti-nutritional compound found in cottonseed, can cause apoptosis by activating caspase-3 (Sadahira et al. 2014).

1.4.5 Diseases

Increased inflammatory cytokines in chronic diseases may be a reason to suppress the immune system. Furthermore, toxins and enzymes secreted by the primary pathogen can reduce the immunity of fish against secondary pathogens (Ilgová et al. 2021). Simultaneous fish infection with two or more pathogens can weaken the immune system (Shameena et al. 2021). Ilgová et al. (2021) found that chronic pathogen infections could significantly delay the immune system response of fish. They showed that infection with monogeneans could increase the susceptibility of fish to secondary pathogens. Ilgová et al. (2017, 2020) demonstrated that infection with *Eudiplozoon nipponicum* reduced TNF-gene expression in common carp macrophages in vitro.

1.4.6 Sex Hormones

Hormone manipulation and changes in the steroid hormones may affect gene expression in a fish's immune response. Therefore, a decrease in the immune system capacity of adult fish may be related to changes in sex hormones. Szwejser et al. (2017) found that fish leucocytes have receptors and cytochrome P450 aromatase. As a result, oestrogen levels in the blood might affect the fish's immune system. Cabas et al. (2018) found a link between oestrogen levels and autoimmune illness and chronic inflammation in fish and discovered that fluctuations in sex steroids affected the immune systems of spotted snakeheads (*Channa punctatus*). They found that increased sex steroids could mitigate innate and cellular immune responses. Dietrich et al. (2021) showed that hormone therapy in common carp could change mRNA expression in hematopoietic tissues.

1.4.7 Drugs and Antibiotics

Antibiotics can suppress the fish immune system by disrupting the regulation of NF-B signalling and immunotoxic pathways (Qiu et al. 2020). Yang et al. 2020 indicated that antibiotics are toxic to fish at high dosages. They also showed that treatment with a high dose of antibiotics would suppress the fish's immune system. Increased mortality and an inflammatory response were observed in zebrafish treated with 260 ng of L-1 sulfamethoxazole (Zhou et al. 2016). Common carp exposed to sulfamethoxazole has reportedly seen a similar outcome (Iftikhar et al. 2022). Liu et al. (2020) found that exposure of zebrafish larvae to high doses of sulfamethoxazole could change the mRNA expression of cytokines such as IL-1, IFN-, IL-11, and TNF-. The genotoxicity effects of antibiotics on leucocytes could mitigate the efficiency of cellular immunity in fish (Grondel et al. 1985).

1.5 Immunostimulants

Immunostimulants have a crucial role in activating the non-specific defence mechanism in fish protection against pathogens, and they are valuable for controlling fish diseases. Previous studies have shown that numerous immunostimulants may be useful to fish cultures in aquafeed. Particularly for enhancing and improving the immunity and disease resistance in fish, increasing non-specific defence mechanisms immune stimulants may also be an effective strategy to increase fish performance. Although the use of immunostimulants in the aquaculture industry has been successful in some cases, research in this field is still ongoing (Jadhav et al. 2006).

Chemical agents, bacterial components such as probiotics (Abdel-Latif et al. 2022), polysaccharides (e.g., from plants) (Faggio et al. 2016, 2015), animal or vegetable extracts (plant-based) (Rashidian et al. 2021), feed additives and herbal extract (Elumalai, as pointed out above, immunostimulants) might mainly facilitate the function of phagocytic cells and increase their bactericidal activities (Abarike et al. 2019). Moreover, natural killer cells, complement, lysozyme, and other antibody responses may be stimulated by different types of immunostimulants. Immunological function and activation are associated with improved protection against infectious diseases in aquaculture due to their ability to serve as an alternative and supplement to vaccination. Moreover, they also have additional effects on growth performance and the survival rates of the fish under stress (Heo et al. 2001) (Figure 1.2).

1.5.1 Chemical Agents

Since immune system stimulants contain many chemical compounds that may affect the function of the aquatic immune system, they can be administered alone or in combination with vaccination. Some immunostimulants have been shown in studies to improve vaccination efficiency. Shahbazi and Bolhassani (2016) found that some biochemical compounds such as vitamin C and E, lactoferrin, interferon, growth hormone, prolactin, and recombinant cytokines can act as immunostimulants. The chemical agents could disrupt immunological structures and functions, making animals more susceptible to both infections and non-infectious agents. A wide range of substances target the immune system and prolonged exposure to these compounds can result in immunological dysfunction (Koller 2001). For example, levamisole is the most useful chemical agent used and is a

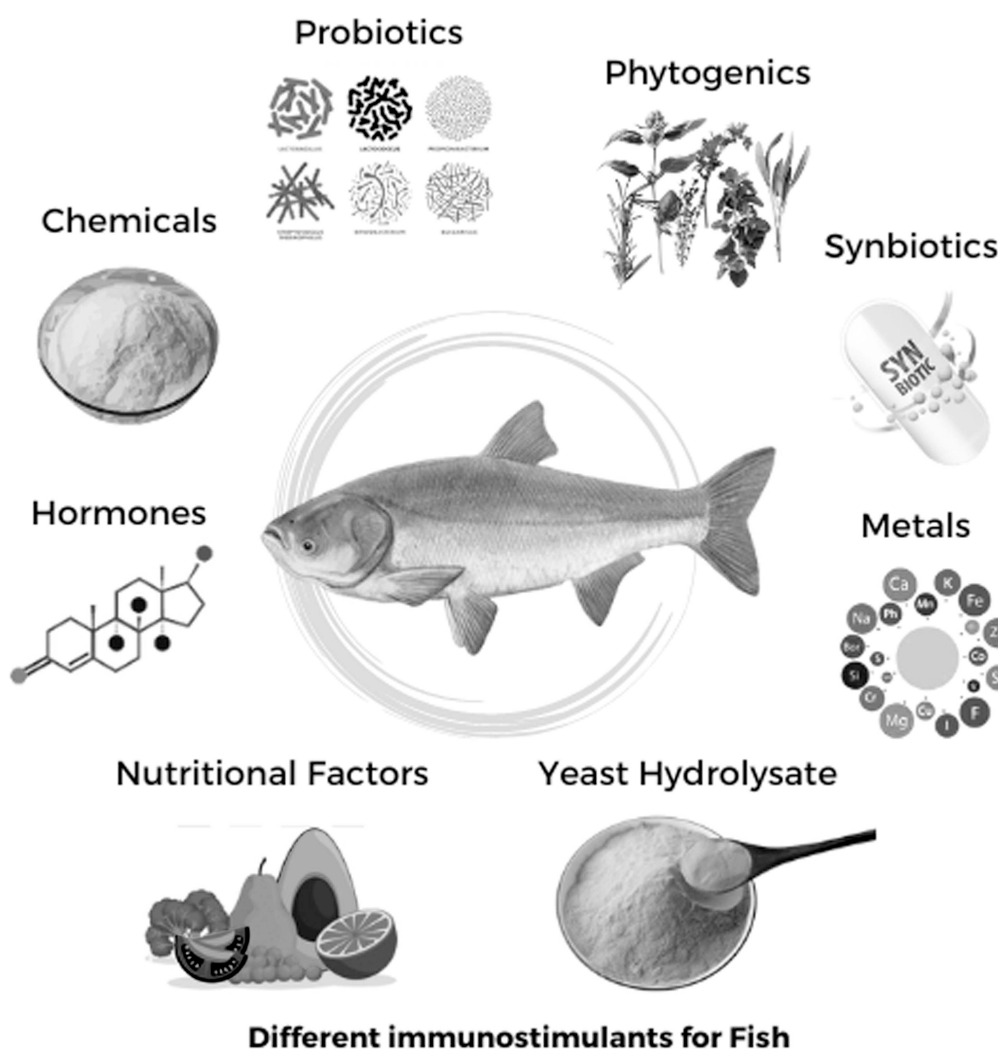


FIGURE 1.2 Different categories of immunostimulants for fish.

Various natural and synthetic agents that enhance immunological activity in fish are depicted in the figure. Bacterial agents, specifically prebiotics and probiotics are of high potential, along with immensely used phytochemicals, yeast derivatives, chemical agents and metals.

levo-isomer of tetramisole (Findlay & Munday 2000). It is a polysaccharide that can increase macrophage activity and provide resistance to specific harmful microorganisms. On the other hand, chitosan is a de-N-acetylated version of chitin. Both chitin and chitosan have the potential to be significant components in aquaculture. Chitosan treatment by injection or immersion was found to enhance brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) resistance to an *A. salmonicida* infection. Chitosan treatments had a substantial influence on the non-specific immunity and immunological response of both healthy and cortisol-treated *Labeo rohita* (Barman et al. 2013).

1.5.2 Biological Substances and Bacterial Derivates

The most common biological substances are bacterial derivatives, also known as killed pathogens, and their products. The use of immunostimulants such as probiotics and prebiotics has always been considered (Bachère 2003). Probiotics are a collection of non-pathogenic microorganisms often found in aquatic animal digestive systems. Oral administration of probiotics can change bacterial flora, boost the immune system, and stimulate growth performance (Villamil et al. 2002). Previous studies show that the administration of probiotics can significantly increase antibody production and non-specific immune parameters in fish (Abareethan & Amsath 2015). Therefore, it is essential to identify and isolate different strains of microorganisms to produce probiotics. Among the different probiotic strains commonly used in fish are *Bacillus,* e.g., *B. subtilis* and *B. licheniforms*; *Lactobacillus* sp. such as *L. delbrueckii subsp., L. bulgaricus, and L. acidophilus*; and *Bifidobacterium* sp. Numerous reports on the use of probiotics in aquatic environments have been published (Van Doan et al. 2020; Jahangiri & Esteban 2018; Chauhan & Singh 2019), and for more details, readers are referred to Chapter 10.

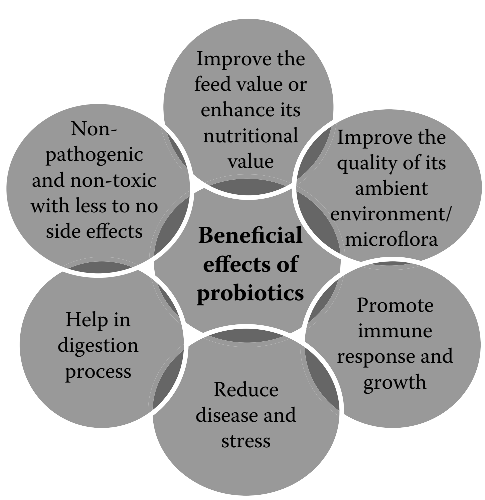


FIGURE 1.3 Benefits of probiotics.

Figure 1.3 illustrates the functions of probiotics as an immunostimulant in aquaculture. Probiotics promote immunity, growth, digestion, reduce stress and improve the feed value and quality of microflora in fish.

1.5.3 Lipopolysaccharide

Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) is the main component of the outer membrane of gram-negative bacteria such as *Salmonella typhimurium* and *Escherichia coli* (Miura & Mizushima 1968), and its preparations include O-antigens and endotoxins. The biological activity of LPS is a consequence of both hydrophobic domains known as lipid A (or endotoxin), a "core" oligosaccharide, and a distal polysaccharide (or O-antigen) (Neidhardt 1996). Moreover, LPS has been used as a potential immunostimulant. Toll-like receptor (TLR)-4 is mainly involved in the activation of the immune system by LPS through the specific recognition of its endotoxin (lipid A) moiety. LPS studies were made on fish both in vitro and in vivo, and they reported that LPS influences the growth and health status of fish. (Guttvik et al. 2002) showed that Atlantic salmon fry fed with LPS-coated feed (0.1% LPS) for 63 days had a reduced survival rate when challenged with a virulent strain of *A. salmonicida.* Furthermore, Paulsen et al. (2003) discovered that LPS stimulates plasma lysozyme activity originating from macrophages in various organs (e.g., blood polymorphonuclear and cells isolated from the head, kidney, and intestine) in their experiment on *Salmo salar*. In an in vitro experiment, Paulsen et al. (2001) in *Salmo salar* found that in head kidney macrophages grown in the presence of LPS, there was an increase in lysozyme production in the culture supernatants, which coincided with an accumulation of lysozyme gene transcript in stimulated cells.

1.5.4 Hormones and Cytokines

Hormones and cytokines are part of the neuroendocrine system. Their role as immunomodulators in the immune system has been studied in recent years. Acute stress may often be associated with fish life stages and have an impact on fish immunity and health (Figure 1.4). An example could be stress (resulting in potential advantages), thus involving short-term challenges resulting in immune activation or enhancing processes. Hormones generally can directly affect macrophages, lymphocytes, NK cells, and mitotic activity. Cortisol, growth hormone (GH), prolactin (PRL), reproductive hormones, melanin-concentrating hormone (MCH), and pro-opioid melanocortin (POMC)-derived peptides have all been shown to affect immune function in many fish species (Harris & Bird 2000). The growth hormone (GH, or somatropin) is a hormone from the family of prolactin and somatostatin; the main role of GH and insulin-like growth factor-I (IGF-I) is in the regulation of body size in growing animals. Previous studies showed that the administration of exogenous growth hormone (GH) improves many aspects of immune function, for example, cytotoxic (Sakai et al. 1996), phagocytic (Yada et al. 2006), haemolytic (Kim et al. 2013), and lysozyme activities (Harris et al. 2000) as non-specific defences, and immunoglobulin production as specific defences Yada (2007) observed that the activation of immune function during seawater adaptation was closely associated with increased plasma GH levels in some euryhaline fishes. Moreover, a previous study (Yada et al. 2006) showed that ghrelin (an important regulator of GH

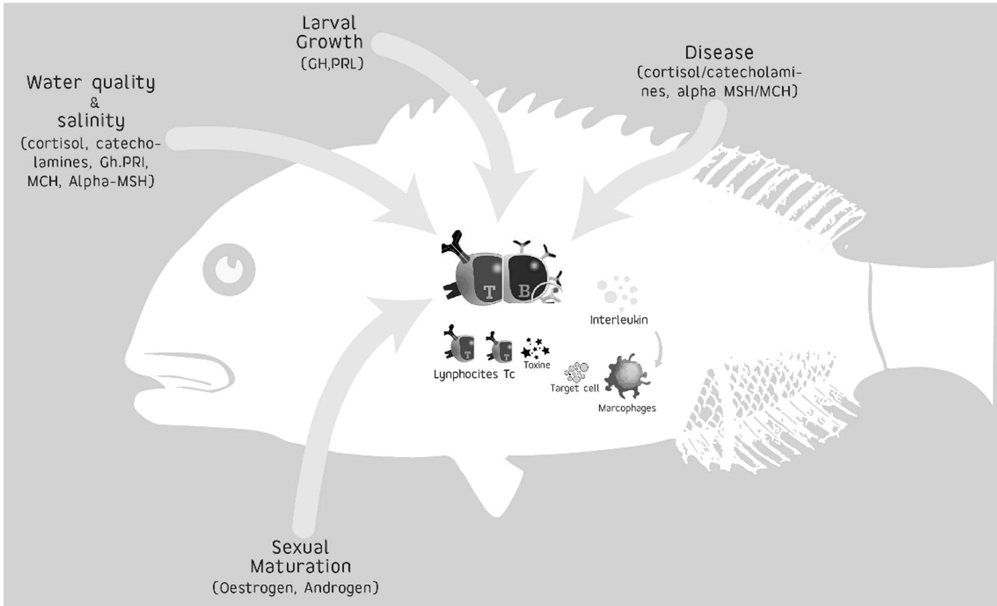


FIGURE 1.4 Interconnections between the general immune system and the endocrine system about environmental processes and fish life stages.

secretion) stimulates superoxide production associated with phagocytosis in trout leucocytes. While GH increased the mRNA levels of superoxide dismutase, which catalyses the dismutation of superoxide into oxygen and hydrogen peroxide, Also, Pontigo & Vargas-Chacoff (2021) found that GH may modulate the immune response in the SHK-1 cell line and leucocyte cultures of the head kidney in Atlantic salmon. Therefore, their work points out the independent action of GH on the immune system and the GH/IGF axis.

Cytokines are low-molecular-weight glycoproteins involved in regulating the immune system. These molecules are mainly secreted by cells of the innate and adaptive immune systems, but they play an important role in the innate immune response in fish. Kono et al. (1996) reported that IL-1 plays an essential role in fish immunity by activating lymphocytes and phagocytic cells and increasing resistance to *A. hydrophila* infection. Type I IFNs (homologs to human IFN- and IFN-) also have antiviral activity. Secombes & Belmonte (2016) discovered that type II IFN (IFN-) had bactericidal activity against intracellular parasitic bacteria. Studies to elucidate cytokines' functions in fish have recently begun. Still, more work is needed to select their appropriate functions, such as immunostimulants and vaccine adjuvants, to prevent infection in farmed fish. Sakai et al. (2021) developed a multiplex reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction assay to investigate the immune response of fish when activated by an immunostimulant. Moreover, cytokines are also defined as biological response modifiers because of their ability to enable communication between different cell populations, in agreement with what was reported by Wilson et al. (2002).

Conforming to changes in environmental factors such as water quality, salinity and diseased conditions, the T-cell proliferation and cytokine expression also range, which is mediated through hormonal regulations. Hormones expressed during sexual maturation and larval growth enhance the expression of these immunological mediators.

1.5.5 Phytogenic Immunostimulants

(Plant extracts, herbals, garlic, ginger, triterpenic acid, polyphenols, olive oil, seaweeds)

Phytogenics are plant-derived natural products characterised by their richness in biologically active compounds that are mainly incorporated into the feed to enhance the innate immunity, health status, and growth performance of the animals. In farmed fish, phytogenics have been reported to contribute as antimicrobials, antioxidants, anti-inflammatory agents, immunostimulants, and sedatives. They work as promoters of growth and appetite stimulators, and they could influence the bile secretion and several enzymes associated with digestion (Chakraborty et al. 2011, Firmino et al. 2021, and Caipang et al. 2021). Botanicals, including herbs and spices, contain aromatic compounds and essential oils (extracted from parts of plants such as leaves, flowers, roots, and fruits), and many other medicinal plants come under phytogenics (Caipang et al. 2021). Plant extracts are active substances with desirable properties that are extracted from plant tissue for specific purposes, such as immunostimulant use. They have been known to have increased lysozyme activity, complement activity, phagocytic activity, an antibody response, elevated respiratory burst activity, and higher plasma protein (albumin and globulin) (Reverter et al. 2014; Harikrishnan R et al. 2011a). Saponin compounds, herbs, ginger, triterpenes from fungi and plants and seaweeds, etc. are some of the compounds and products which have an immunostimulatory effects on fish health and welfare and are discussed in detail in this book.

1.5.6 Nutritional and Dietary Factors

(Dietary amino acids, vitamin C, vitamin E, dietary nucleotides, organic acids, polysaccharides, probiotics, and food waste)

Nutrition plays a crucial role in maintaining the body's functioning and health. It provides all the essentials required by the

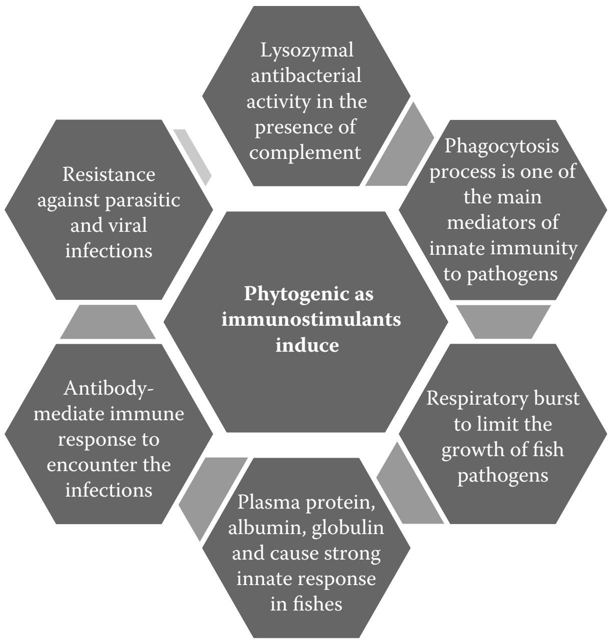


FIGURE 1.5 Activities of plant extract as an immunostimulant.

Figure 1.5 represents the role of plant extracts in enhancing immunity in fishes. Plant extract stimulate immunity by different cellular mechanism like phagocytosis, respiratory burst, antibody mediated responses, lysosymal antibacterial activity, and stimulate immunogenic plasma proteins.

body to maintain life, like metabolic energy and elements and compounds that act as co-factors for various physiological processes. When we talk about immunostimulants, dietary nutritional components include dietary amino acids (AA), vitamin C, vitamin E, dietary nucleotides, organic acids, polysaccharides, probiotics, food waste, etc. Dietary amino acids are essential acids that can improve the haemocyte count, phagocytic activity, respiratory burst in haemolymph, and lysozyme activity in cell-free haemolymph (CFH). Moreover, they can remarkably downregulate the malondialdehyde content (Luo et al. 2021). In addition to these, AAs are necessary for endogenous synthesis of protein and act as important energy substrates. These can also modulate the necessary metabolic pathways (Dawood et al. 2021) (Figure 1.6).

Vitamins are organic compounds necessary for animal growth and development. They are required in small quantities and must be provided with food, as they cannot be synthesised in the body. At present, vitamins C and E have gained popularity as immunostimulants (Kono et al. 1996). Vit E (tocopherols) are bioactive phenolic compounds, and a proper dose of this can (i) promote the differentiation and proliferation of lymphocytes and cytokines, (ii) enhance the production of antibodies and enhance complement activity when encountered with an antigen, and (iii) it can also improve phagocytosis activity and cytotoxicity. In channel catfish and turbot, VE enhances macrophage phagocytosis (Barman et al. 2013). Vitamin C (ascorbic acid) is involved as a cofactor in many bioactive processes, like neuromodulation, collagen synthesis, and cellular activities related to hormones, and the immune system.

Dietary nucleotides, chitin, and organic waste do also have compounds with immunostimulatory effects and are discussed in subsequent chapters. Bacterial and yeast cell walls mostly consist of glucans. When glucan was given to feed, it activated phagocytic cells in fish, and they also demonstrated an increase in the development rate of *Litopenaeus vannamei* juveniles, enhancing phagocytosis and the capacity of the cells to eliminate harmful pathogens. Additionally, they increase complement and lysozyme activity (Kono et al. 1996). Additionally, glucans improve the non-specific defence mechanisms of fish and shellfish and offer defence against bacterial infections (Barman et al. 2013). Prebiotic compounds called fungal polysaccharides are commonly regarded as a dietary component for controlling growth and health issues. Higher fungi are excellent providers of a variety of crucial natural compounds (Mohan et al. 2019). More details are discussed in subsequent chapters (Figure 1.7).

1.5.7 Trace Elements and Metals

Minerals that are less abundantly present in living tissues are referred to as trace elements (or trace metals). They are considered to be nutritionally essential, although if consumed at sufficiently high levels, they may prove toxic. Copper, chromium, iron, iodine, fluoride, manganese, molybdenum, selenium, and zinc are considered as essential trace elements. General functions of minerals include structural constituents of tissues, formation of the exoskeleton, osmotic pressure balance, muscle contractions, and nerve impulse transmission. They are

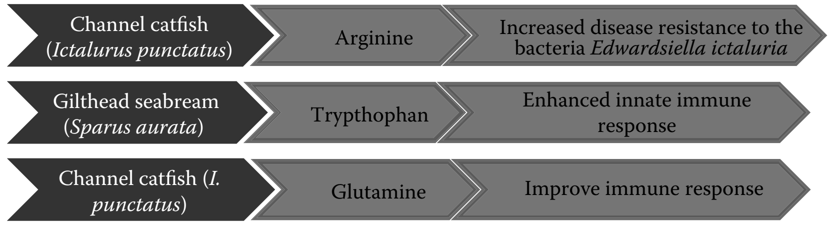


FIGURE 1.6 Effects of different amino acids on fish health.

Essential amino acids such as arginine and tryptophan and non essential aminoacid like glutamine have increased effect on fish immunity. Arginine, in channel catfish improve the resistance in fish against *Edwardsiella ictaluria.* Tryptophan in Gilthead seabream has a transient immune enhancement activity in the fish. Similarly, glutamine improve the immune response in channel catfish.

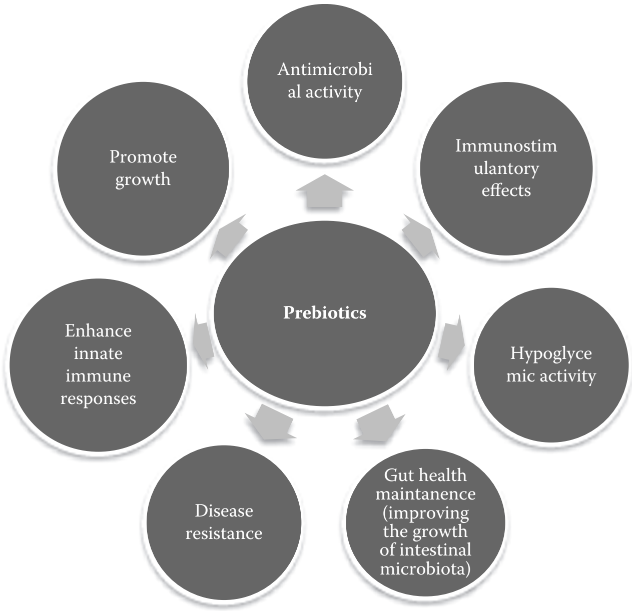


FIGURE 1.7 Functional properties of prebiotics.

Prebiotics have an enhancing effect on fish growth, antimicrobial activity, and disease resistance. They improve favourable intestinal microbiota and stimulate immune system in teleost.

also prime components for co-factors in metabolism, catalysts, enzymes, enzyme activators, hormones, pigments, and vitamins.

1.5.8 Synbiotics

Synbiotics are a combination of both prebiotics and probiotics and work as growth and immunity promoters. These have been used in aquaculture for over a decade, but the functional mechanism is still not very clear. Prebiotics, which are parts of synbiotics when hydrolysed to simpler mono- or disaccharides, show an exceptional increase in biomass and colonisation of probiotic bacteria on the surface of intestinal epithelial cells in the host. By releasing extracellular bacterial enzymes and bioactive substances from their metabolic activities, they also contribute to the growth of aquatic animals. These enzymes also improve the nutrient absorption capacity, which in turn help in effective utilisation of feed. Synbiotics stimulate the immune system's synthesis of nitric oxide, phagocytosis, and respiratory burst activity in fish.

1.5.9 Yeast Hydrolysate

Yeast is known for keeping the digestive system of an animal's body healthy and in balance; hence, it is widely used as a supplement in aquatic feeds. Yeast has a high protein and energy content, as well as high micronutrient content. Aside from being high in amino acids and proteins, yeast products also have immunomodulatory compounds like mannan oligosaccharides (MOS), chitin, glucans, and nucleic acids. Mannan oligosaccharides are well known to enhance the growth performance of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*), *Aespeciallyes cerevisiae* is a well-known yeast from which glucan is extracted and purified, and an intraperitoneal injection of this improves both specific and non-specific immune responses in carp *(Cyprinus carpio) to* the bacterial challenge posed by *A. hydrophila.* Yeast hydrolysate is a hydrolysate of yeast cells obtained through various methods like acids, enzymes, or other hydrolysis. The extract may be obtained through autolysis, where the enzymes found in yeast itself are used to break down the protein, or through hydrolysis, where enzymes are added from external sources as depicted in Figure 1.8 (Gong et al. 2019).

1.6 How to Administer the Immunomodulators to Fish?

Overall, the immunostimulants could be administered through different routes. Although injection methods are the best strategy to enhance non-specific immune system responses, this method is costly and time-consuming. Furthermore, injection methods are only performed by experts. Therefore, it is applied in experiments where the fish are intended as brook stock in genetic studies. Another method is immersion, but its efficiency is less than that of injection; however, it requires crowding and an increase in the handling of fish stocks. Immune system stimulants may be prescribed as oral supplements. However, the immunostimulants' concentration in the diet depends on the size, ontogeny stages, and initial weight of the fish. This method consists of oral ingestion, produces a suitable non-specific immune response, and can be the most cost-effective method of administration. Top dressing can help you achieve these. The surface of the food is treated with the pure immunostimulant in this case. This is comparable to employing a layer of fish oil to top-dress antibiotic granules. This technique produces variable results depending on how well the immunostimulant adheres to the feed. At last, one method that is much more advanced is bio-encapsulation.

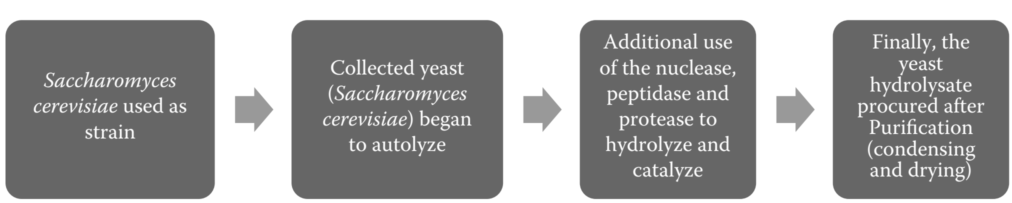


FIGURE 1.8 Extraction of hydrolysate.

Demonstrate the pathway for the extraction of hydrolysate from yeast to use as an immunostimulant for fishes. The yeast (*Saccharomyces cerevisiae*) are collected, autolyzed yeast is subjected to nuclease, peptidase, and protease to get the hydrolysed product, which is subsequently purified using condensing and drying.

1.7 Limitations of Immunostimulants

- Though showing extraordinary growth in the field of aquaculture, one of the important disadvantages of some immunostimulants is their high cost.
- The administration of the drug is important to consider as it depends on its efficacy. Immunostimulants show limited efficiency upon parental administration.
- Immunostimulants are not completely effective against all diseases.
- Overdoses of immunostimulants in feeds may cause immunosuppression.
- In some cases, aquatic animals may also fail to provide enhanced protection or an increase in immunity.
- Immunostimulants are successfully used in aquaculture against various infections and pathogens; however, the ability to improve innate resistance against many diseases (e.g., columnaris disease) has not been studied.

1.8 Factors Affecting the Efficiency of Immunostimulants

The effectiveness of an immunostimulant can depend on various factors, as follows:

- Solubility: Laminaran is an algal extract that can boost respiratory burst activity in leucocytes of the anterior kidney and activate macrophages in Atlantic salmon because it is more soluble than the fungal and yeast glucans. It has also been demonstrated to be a potential chemical for diet usage due to its greater solubility, so the solubility is considered an important aspect for immunostimulants.
- Duration of dose: Salmon that received M-glucan injections only took 2 days to produce their peak leucocyte responses. After 4–7 days of therapy with yeast beta-glucan, the respiratory burst activity increased. This demonstrated how immunostimulants might improve non-specific immunity with very brief dosages.
- Dosage: A high dose or overdose certainly does not seem to have an enhancing effect and can, in turn, inhibit the immune responses. At concentrations of 0.1–1 g/mL, the respiratory burst activity of glucans-treated macrophages increased. Whereas glucan had no effect at a concentration of 10 g/mL, it was inhibitory at a concentration of 50 g/mL. Very high vitamin E levels in feed, such as those of a >1,000–5,000 IE/kg diet, have an immunosuppressive effect. So, the dose per unit weight has a significant effect on efficacy.
- Time of administration: applying immunostimulants at the right time is very important in aquaculture. Mostly, application is needed before the outbreak of disease so that losses due to disease can be reduced.
- Method of Administration: The administration of immunostimulants through injection has been reported to be most effective against a range of pathogens. Vaccination seems to be impractical for small fish. Immersion is commonly used in intensive culture systems, despite the fact that it is less expensive than injection, produces a less non-specific immune response, and stresses the fish during handling. It is most effective during the acclimation of juveniles to ponds in field conditions. Oral ingestion is good for extensive aquaculture systems. It is cost-effective and enhances non-specific immune responses (Barman et al. 2013).

1.9 Evaluating the Efficacy of Immunostimulants

In vivo and in vitro methods can be used to assess the efficacy of an immunostimulant. The in-vivo method employs fish pathogens to assess the efficacy of immunostimulants, whereas the in-vitro method examines cellular and humoral immune mechanisms. In-vivo and in-vitro methods should be performed together to check the basic mechanisms for providing protection. In preliminary studies, in vitro methods are preferred. In vitro evaluation is based on lymphocyte proliferation, complement activation, total erythrocyte and leucocyte counts, chemokinesis, chemotaxis, lysozyme activity, and RBA phagocytosis. Other parameters include monitoring natural cytotoxic activity, macrophage-activating factor (MAF) levels, and C-reactive protein levels. However, these tests are too expensive to be conducted to check the efficacy of immunostimulants. A deep level of research is required to check the efficacy of various compounds for aquaculture species and their pathogens and to ultimately decrease the cost of the immunostimulants.

1.10 Timing of Administration

It is very important to use immunostimulants at the correct time and in the right concentration to boost the immune system. Anderson proposed in 1992 that it is best to use immunostimulants prior to the possibility of disease outbreaks in order to minimise disease-related loss. Furthermore, the effective dose and timing of exposure have a significant impact and are complicated by the culture system and feeding scenario. Studies in Atlantic salmon showed that the maximum non-specific disease resistance is attained only after the third week of injecting glucan at 10 mg/100 g, whereas the effects of low dosing at 1 mg/100 g last only for 1 week. Similarly, in African catfish, administration of glucan led to a maximum increase in the phagocytic cells at 7 days but not after 14 days. So, it is preferable to use them well in advance and at regular intervals (Barman et al. 2013).

1.11 Detection of Immunostimulants

Detection of immunostimulants in fish body is detected by using 'omic' technologies.

Methods of detection of immunostimulation are as follows and it is discussed in further chapters in detail:

- In vitro measurement
- In vivo measurement
- Phagocytic activity

1.12 Attributes of Immunostimulants

The most important attribute of an immunostimulant is that it directly influences the animal's health. It is biodegradable and biocompatible, and therefore safe for the environment. It enhances the immune system of animals, promoting good health, and is non-toxic to both fish and shellfish with no side effects observed. In aquaculture, it provides disease resistance to animals against a broad spectrum of pathogens and reduces mortality caused by opportunistic pathogens. It can also keep the host safe by providing enhanced immune stimulation to fight viral diseases. It increases the effectiveness of many antimicrobial substances, vaccines, and antibiotics. Moreover, it is cheap, easily available, and most importantly, an eco-friendly method for immune stimulation (Barman et al. 2013).

1.13 Vaccine

A vaccination is a biological treatment that increases immunity to a specific disease. Vaccine often comprises an agent that resembles a microorganism that causes a disease and is frequently created from weaker or dead versions of the pathogen. In order for the immune system to more quickly identify and eliminate any further interactions with this disease-causing microorganism, The agent prompts the body's immune system to identify the agent as foreign, eliminate it, and "remember" it so that the immune system will be better able to identify and eliminate any of these microorganisms that it comes into contact with in the future. "Prevention is better than cure" is the core tenet of a vaccination. The name "vaccine" originated from Edward Jenner's usage of the phrase "cow pox" in 1796 (Latin "variolvaccin," which was borrowed from the Latin "vaccn-us," from "vacca" cow). He was a pioneer in the use of cowpox vaccinations to stop the spread of smallpox.

FIGURE 1.9 Vaccination via injection.

Figure 1.9 represents vaccine administration through injection via intramuscular or intraperitoneal method to increase resistance against pathogens by stimulating immune system.

Fish immunisation started in 1942 when David C. B. Duff successfully immunised trout orally against the bacteria *Aeromonas salmonicida* (the first fish vaccine). He is known "Father of Fish Vaccination". The first commercially approved fish vaccination was a dead *Yersinia ruckeri* vaccine against enteric redmouth disease that was administered by immersion in 1976.

1.14 Immunostimulants vs Vaccine

Table 1.1 is the comparison of immunostimulants and vaccines (Dawood et al. 2021).

1.15 New Paradigm

1.15.1 Nutrigenomics

Nutrigenomics is a branch of science that integrates bioinformatics, nutrition, genomics, molecular biology, and epidemiology. It links the relationship between nutrients and cellular processes and shows how the dietary components alter the genetic makeup. Although the relationship between nutrition and the immune system is generally known, it is still unclear

TABLE 1.1

The Comparison of Immunostimulant with Vaccines

Immunostimulants (IS)	Vaccine
• More treatments are required as the prophylactic effect is short term	• One or two treatments are enough as prophylactic effect is long
• Efficacy of immunostimulants is good	• Efficacy of vaccine is excellent
• IS possess wide spectrum of activity	• Vaccine possess limited spectrum of activity
• Nontoxic with less side effects	• Nontoxic with less side effects
• No toxic residue accumulation	• No toxic residues accumulation
• Positive/no environmental impact	• No environmental impact
• Mainly enhance non-specific immune system before specific immune system matures.	• Enhance specific and nonspecific immune response
• Can be used at any stage of life cycle	• Cannot be used at any stage of life cycle
• Easy to supply to larvae of fish and shrimp	• Difficult to supply to larvae of fish and shrimp
• Cost-effective	• Costly

how nutrition, animal energy status, and immune function are linked together. The effects of diet on the immune system are becoming more transparent because of emerging omics technologies like transcriptomics (microarray and RNA-seq) and proteomics. Modules of genes can reveal changes in both local (intestinal) and systemic immune function by applying molecular pathway enrichment analysis. Using the omics, researchers can now investigate the effects of dietary manipulations such as fasting, feed additives, and protein replacement on gene expression, protein synthesis, and immune functions. It is a relatively new approach in aquaculture, but the scope it provides to understand the mechanism behind gene alteration through nutrition may lead to more intense research and the development of aquaculture (Samuel and Martin 2017).

1.15.2 Trained Innate Immunity

It is a concept that argues that not only can adaptive immunity provide immunity by memorising the pathogen, but an innate immune response can also recognise the pathogen and adapt to provide an immune response after exposure. It stimulates defence and increases nonspecific resistance to infection. One such example is the prophylactic effects of glucan injection in fish against *Vibrio salmonicida*. Though technological advancements and research have revealed the mechanism responsible for such immune responses to be effective programming of cells like monocytes, NK cells, macrophages, etc. through pattern recognition (MAP kinase dependent), we are still far from knowing the actual effectiveness, mechanism, and potential side effects it may cause. The approach is opening doors of application in various aquaculture fields like brood stocking, larval rearing, and first-feeding fish; however, assessments of this approach using modern tools like transcriptomics, epigenetics, proteomics, and metabolomics are needed (Zhangzuobing et al. 2019).

REFERENCES

Abareethan, M. & Amsath, A. Characterization and evaluation of probiotic fish feed. *International Journal of Pure and Applied Zoology*, 3, 148–153 (2015).

Abarike, E. D. et al. Influences of immunostimulants on phagocytes in cultured fish: A mini review. *Reviews in Aquaculture*, 11, 1219–1227 (2019).

Abdel-Latif, H. M. et al. Health benefits and potential applications of fucoidan (FCD) extracted from brown seaweeds in aquaculture: An updated review. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 122, 115–130 (2022).

Abdel-Tawwab, M. & Hamed, H. S. Antagonistic effects of dietary guava (*Psidium guajava*) leaves extract on growth, hemato-biochemical, and immunity response of cypermethrin-intoxicated Nile tilapia, *Oreochromis niloticus*, fingerlings. *Aquaculture*, 529, 735668 (2020), doi: 735610.731016/j.aquaculture.732020.735668.

Abdel-Tawwab, M., Adeshina, I., Jenyo-Oni, A., Ajani, E. K. & Emikpe, B. O. Growth, physiological, antioxidants, and immune response of African catfish, *Clarias gariepinus* (B.), to dietary clove basil, *Ocimum gratissimum*, leaf extract and its susceptibility to Listeria monocytogenes infection. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 78, 346–354 (2018).

Acar, Ü., İnanan, B. E., Navruz, F. Z. & Yılmaz, S. Alterations in blood parameters, DNA damage, oxidative stress and antioxidant enzymes and immune-related genes expression in Nile tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*) exposed to glyphosate-based herbicide. *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part C: Toxicology & Pharmacology*, 249, 109147 (2021), doi: 109110.101016/j.cbpc.102021.109147.

Aliko, V., Qirjo, M., Sula, E., Morina, V. & Faggio, C. Antioxidant defense system, immune response and erythron profile modulation in gold fish, *Carassius auratus*, after acute manganese treatment. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 76, 101–109 (2018).

Bachère, E. Anti-infectious immune effectors in marine invertebrates: Potential tools for disease control in larviculture. *Aquaculture*, 227, 427–438 (2003).

Banaee, M., Mirvagefei, A. R., Rafei, G. R. & Majazi Amiri, B. Effect of sub-lethal diazinon concentrations on blood plasma biochemistry. *International Journal of Environmental Research*, 2(2), 189–198 (2008).

Banaee, M., Tahery, S., Nematdoost Haghi, B., Shahafve, S. & Vaziriyan, M. Blood biochemical changes in common carp (Cyprinus carpio) upon co-exposure to titanium dioxide nanoparticles and paraquat. *Iranian Journal of Fisheries Sciences*, 18(12), 242–255 (2019), doi: 210.22092/ijfs.22019.118174.

Barman, D., Nen, P., Mandal, S. C. & Kumar, V. Immunostimulants for aquaculture health management. *Journal of Marine Science Research and Development*, 3(3), 1–11 (2013).

Bernier, J., Brousseau, P., Krzystyniak, K., Tryphonas, H. & Fournier, M. Immunotoxicity of heavy metals in relation to Great Lakes. *Environmental Health Perspectives*, 103 (Suppl 109), 123–134 (1995), doi: 110.1289/ehp.95103s95923.

Bitsayah, A., Banaee, M. & Nematdoost Haghi, B. Effects of aflatoxin-contaminated feed on immunological parameters of common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*). *Iranian Journal of Toxicology* 12 (11), 7–12 (2018), doi: 10.29252/arakmu.12.1.7.

Cabas, I., Chaves-Pozo, E., Mulero, V. & García-Ayala, A. Role of estrogens in fish immunity with special emphasis on GPER1. *Developmental and Computational Immunology*, 89, 102–110 (2018), doi: 110.1016/j.dci.2018.1008.1001.

Caipang, C. M. A., Suharman, I., Avillanosa, A. L. & Gonzales-Plasus, M. M. Influence of phytogenic feed additives on the health status in the gut and disease resistance of cultured fish. *IOP Conference Series: Earth and Environmental Science*, 695(1), 012024 (2021).

Calder, P. C. et al. A consideration of biomarkers to be used for evaluation of inflammation in human nutritional studies. *British Journal of Nutrition*, 09, S1–S34 (2013).

Carbone, D. & Faggio, C. Importance of prebiotics in aquaculture as immunostimulants. Effects on immune system of *Sparus aurata* and *Dicentrarchus labrax*. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 54, 172–178 (2016).

Chakraborty, S., Shukla, D., Vuddanda, P. R., Mishra, B., & Singh, S. Effective in-vivo utilization of lipid-based nanoparticles as drug carrier for carvedilol phosphate. *Journal of Pharmacy and Pharmacology*, 63(6), 774–779 (2011).

Chauhan, A. & Singh, R. Probiotics in aquaculture: a promising emerging alternative approach. *Symbiosis*, 77, 99–113 (2019).

Cho, H. J. et al. Determination of cyanogenic compounds in edible plants by ion chromatography. *Toxicology Research*, 29, 143–147 (2013), doi: 10.5487/tr.2013.29.2.143.

Cobbina, S. J. et al. A multivariate assessment of innate immune-related gene expressions due to exposure to low concentration individual and mixtures of four kinds of heavy metals on zebrafish (*Danio rerio*) embryos. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 47 (42), 1032–1042 (2015), doi: 1010.1016/j.fsi.2015.1011.1003.

Dawood, M. A. Nutritional immunity of fish intestines: Important insights for sustainable aquaculture. *Reviews in Aquaculture*, 13(1), 642–663 (2021).

De Paula Barbosa, A. Anti-inflammatory properties and immunoadjuvant activitiy of Samanea saman extract. *Emirates Journal of Food and Agriculture*, 818–821 (2014).

Dietrich, M. A. et al. 2D-DIGE proteomic analysis of blood plasma reveals changes in immune- and stress-associated proteins following hormonal stimulation of carp males. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 118, 354–368 (2021), doi: 110.1016/j.fsi.2021.1009.1018.

Dohms, J. E. & Saif, Y. M. Guest editorial: Criteria for evaluating immunosuppression. *Avian Diseases*, 28(2), 305–310 (1984).

Estensoro, I., Calduch-Giner, J. A., Kaushik, S., Pérez-Sánchez, J. & Sitjà-Bobadilla, A. Modulation of the IgM gene expression and IgM immunoreactive cell distribution by the nutritional background in gilthead sea bream (*Sparus aurata*) challenged with Enteromyxum leei (Myxozoa). *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 33 (32), 401–410 (2012), doi: 410.1016/j.fsi.2012.1005.1029.

Faggio, C. et al. Potential use of polysaccharides from the brown alga*Undaria pinnatifida* as anticoagulants. *Brazilian Archives of Biology and Technology*, 58, 798–804 (2015).

Faggio, C., Pagano, M., Dottore, A., Genovese, G. & Morabito, M. Evaluation of anticoagulant activity of two algal polysaccharides. *Natural Product Research*, 30, 1934–1937 (2016).

Farag, M. R. et al. Immune response and susceptibility of Nile tilapia fish to Aeromonas hydrophila infection following the exposure to Bifenthrin and/or supplementation with Petroselinum crispum essential oil. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety*, 216, 112205 (2021), doi: 112210.111016/j.ecoenv.112021.112205.

Findlay, V. L. & Munday, B. L. The immunomodulatory effects of levamisole on the nonspecific immune system of Atlantic salmon, Salmo salar L. *Journal of Fish Diseases*, 23(6), 369–378 (2000).

Firmino, J. P., Galindo-Villegas, J., Reyes-López, F. E. & Gisbert, E.. Phytogenic bioactive compounds shape fish mucosal immunity. *Frontiers in Immunology*, 12, 695973 (2021).

Ghazy, H. A., Abdel-Razek, M. A. S., El Nahas, A. F. & Mahmoud, S. Assessment of complex water pollution with heavy metals and Pyrethroid pesticides on transcript levels of metallothionein and immune related genes. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 68, 318–326 (2017), doi: 310.1016/j.fsi.2017.1007.1034.

Ghosh, D., Datta, S., Bhattacharya, S. & Mazumder, S. Long-term exposure to arsenic affects head kidney and impairs humoral immune responses of *Clarias batrachus*. *Aquatic Toxicology*, 81 (81), 79–89 (2007), doi: 10.1016/j.aquatox.2006.1011.1004.

Gong, Y., Yang, F., Hu, J., Liu, C., Liu, H., Han, D., ... & Xie, S. Effects of dietary yeast hydrolysate on the growth, antioxidant response, immune response and disease resistance of largemouth bass (Micropterus salmoides). *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 94, 548–557 (2019).

Grondel, J. L., Angenent, G. C. & Egberts, E. The influence of antibiotics on the immune system. III. *Investigations on the cellular functions of chicken leukocytes in vitro. Veterinary Immunology and Immunopathology*, 10(14), 307–316 (1985), doi: 310.1016/0165-2427(1085)90020-90020.

Guardiola, F. A. et al. Evaluation of waterborne exposure to heavy metals in innate immune defences present on skin mucus of gilthead seabream (*Sparus aurata*). *Fish Shellfish Immunology*, 45(41), 112–123 (2015), doi: 110.1016/j.fsi.2015.1002.1010.

Guo, H. & Dixon, B. Understanding acute stress-mediated immunity in teleost fish. *Fish and Shellfish Immunology Reports*, 2, 100010 (2021), doi: 100010.101016/j.fsirep.102021.100010.

Guo, H. et al. Evaluation of ammonia nitrogen exposure in immune defenses present on spleen and head-kidney of wuchang bream (*Megalobrama amblycephala*). *International Journal of Molecular Sciences*, 23 (26), 3129 (2022), doi: 3110.3390/ijms23063129.

Guttvik, A. et al. Oral administration of lipopolysaccharide to Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar L.*) fry. Uptake, distribution, influence on growth and immune stimulation. *Aquaculture*, 214, 35–53 (2002).

Harikrishnan, R., Balasundaram, C. & Heo, M. Impact of plant products on innate and adaptive immune system of cultured finfish. *Fish and Shellfish Immunolgy*, 29, 668–673 (2011).

Harris, J. & Bird, D. J. Modulation of the fish immune system by hormones. *Veterinary Immunology and Immunopathology*, 77, 163–176 (2000).

Hassan, A., Gulzar, S., Javid, H. & Nawchoo, I. A. in *Bacterial Fish Diseases* 87–101 (Academic Press, 2022), doi: 110.1016/B1978-1010-1323-85624-85629.00020-85628.

Hatami, M., Banaee, M. & Nematdoost Haghi, B. Sub-lethal toxicity of chlorpyrifos alone and in combination with polyethylene glycol to common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*). *Chemosphere*, 219, 981–988 (2019), doi: 210.1016/j.chemosphere.2018.1012.1077.

Heo, G., Kim, J., Jeon, B., Park, K. & Ra, J. Effects of FST-Chitosan mixture on cultured rockfish (*Sebastes schlegeli*) and olive flounder (*Paralichthys olivaceus*). *Korean Journal of Veterinary Public Health*, 25, 141–150 (2001).

Hidasi, A. O., Groh, K. J., Suter, M. J.-F. & Schirmer, K. Clobetasol propionate causes immunosuppression in zebrafish (*Danio rerio*) at environmentally relevant concentrations. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety*, 138, 16–24 (2017).

Iftikhar, N., Zafar, R. & Hashmi, I. Multi-biomarkers approach to determine the toxicological impacts of sulfamethoxazole antibiotic on freshwater fish *Cyprinus carpio*. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety*, 233, 113331 (2022), doi: 113310.111016/j.ecoenv.112022.113331.

Ilgová, J., Jedličková, L., Dvořáková, H., Benovics, M., Mikeš, L., Janda, L., ... Kašný, M. A novel type I cystatin of parasite origin with atypical legumain-binding domain. *Scientific Reports*, 7(1), 1–12 (2017).

Ilgová, J., Kavanová, L., Matiašková, K., Salát, J. & Kašný, M. Effect of cysteine peptidase inhibitor of *Eudiplozoon nipponicum* (Monogenea) on cytokine expression of macrophages in vitro. *Molecular and Biochemical Parasitology*, 235, 111248 (2020), doi: 111210.111016/j.molbiopara.112019.111248.

Ilgová, J., Salát, J. & Kašný, M. Molecular communication between the monogenea and fish immune system. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 112, 179–190 (2021), doi: 110.1016/j.fsi.2020.1008.1023.

Jadhav, V. S., Khan, S. I., Girkar, M. M. & Gitte, M. J. The role of immunostimulants in fish and shrimp aquaculture. *Aquaculture Asia*, 11, 24 (2006).

Jahangiri, L. & Esteban, M. Á. Administration of probiotics in the water in finfish aquaculture systems: A review. *Fishes3*, 33 (2018).

Jordanova, M. et al. Effects of heavy metal pollution on pigmented macrophages in kidney of Vardar chub (*Squalius vardarensis* Karaman). *Microscopic Research and Technique*, 80(88), 930–935 (2017), doi: 910.1002/jemt.22884.

Kim, J.-H., Balfry, S. & Devlin, R. H. Disease resistance and health parameters of growth-hormone transgenic and wild-type coho salmon, *Oncorhynchus kisutch*. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 34, 1553–1559 (2013), doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2013.03.365.

Koller, L. D. A perspective on the progression of immunotoxicology. *Toxicology*, 160, 105–110 (2001).

Kono, K., Salazar-Onfray, F., Petersson, M., Hansson, J., Masucci, G., Wasserman, K., ... & Kiessling, R. Hydrogen peroxide secreted by tumor-derived macrophages down-modulates signal-transducing zeta molecules and inhibits tumor-specific T cell-and natural killer cell-mediated cytotoxicity. *European Journal of Immunology*, 26(6), 1308–1313 (1996).

Liu, J. et al. Early exposure to environmental levels of sulfamethoxazole triggers immune and inflammatory response of healthy zebrafish larvae. *Science Total Environment*, 703, 134724 (2020). doi: 134710.131016/j.scitotenv.132019.134724.

Lu, M., Su, M., Liu, N. & Zhang, J. Effects of environmental salinity on the immune response of the coastal fish Scatophagus argus during bacterial infection. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 124, 401–410 (2022), doi: 110.1016/j.fsi.2022.1004.1029.

Luo, K., Li, X., Wang, L., Rao, W., Wu, Y., Liu, Y., Pan, M., Huang, D., Zhang, W. & Mai, K. Ascorbic acid regulates the immunity, anti-oxidation and apoptosis in abalone Haliotis discus hannaiIno. *Antioxidants*, 10(9), 1449 (2021).

Marshall, J. S., Warrington, R., Watson, W. & Kim, H. L. An introduction to immunology and immunopathology. *Allergy, Asthma & Clinical Immunology*, 14, 49, doi:10.1186/s13223-018-0278-1 (2018).

Mauro, M. et al. The effect of low frequency noise on the behaviour of juvenile *Sparus aurata*. *The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*, 147, 3795–3807 (2020).

Mauro, M. et al. Humoral responses during wound healing in *Holothuria tubulosa* (Gmelin, 1788). *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part B: Biochemistry and Molecular Biology*, 253, 110550 (2021).

Mauro, M. et al. Haemolymphatic parameters in two aquaculture crustacean species cherax destructor (Clark, 1836) and *Cherax quadricarinatus* (Von Martens, 1868). *Animals* 12, 543 (2022).

Mauro, M. et al. Effects of diclofenac on the gametes and embryonic development of *Arbacia lixula*. *The European Zoological Journal* 89, 535–545 (2022).

Mazini, B. S. M., Martins, G. P., de Castro Menezes, L. L. & Guimarães, I. G. Nutritional feed additives reduce the adverse effects of transport stress in the immune system of Tambaqui (*Colossoma macropomum*). *Fish and Shellfish Immunology Reports*, 3, 100051 (2022), doi: 100010.101016/j.fsirep.102022.100051.

Miura, T. & Mizushima, S. Separation by density gradient centrifugation of two types of membranes from spheroplast membrane of *Escherichia coli* K12. *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) – Biomembranes*, 150, 159–161 (1968), doi: 10.1016/0005-2736(68)90020-5.

Mohan, K., Ravichandran, S., Muralisankar, T., Uthayakumar, V., Chandirasekar, R., Seedevi, P. & Rajan, D. K. Potential uses of fungal polysaccharides as immunostimulants in fish and shrimp aquaculture: A review. *Aquaculture*, 500, 250–263 (2019).

Mohiseni, M., Sepidnameh, M., Bagheri, D., Banaee, M. & Nematdust Haghi, B. Comparative effects of shirazi thyme and vitamin E on some growth and plasma biochemical changes in common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) during cadmium exposure. *Aquaculture Research*, 48(49), 4811–4821 (2017), doi: 4810.1111/are.13301.

Morcillo, P., Cordero, H., Meseguer, J., Esteban, M. & Cuesta, A. In vitro immunotoxicological effects of heavy metals on European sea bass (Dicentrarchus labrax L.) head-kidney leucocytes. *Fish Shellfish Immunol*, 47, 245–254 (2015), doi:10.1016/j.fsi.2015.09.011.

Neidhardt, F. C. *Escherichia coli* and *Salmonella*: Cellular and molecular biology. (1996).

Paulsen, S. M., Engstad, R. E. & Robertsen, B. Enhanced lysozyme production in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar L.*) macrophages treated with yeast β-glucan and bacterial lipopolysaccharide. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 11, 23–37 (2001).

Paulsen, S. M., Lunde, H., Engstad, R. E. & Robertsen, B. In vivo effects of β-glucan and LPS on regulation of lysozyme activity and mRNA expression in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar L.*). *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 14, 39–54 (2003).

Petit, J., Embregts, C. W., Forlenza, M. & Wiegertjes, G. F. Evidence of trained immunity in a fish: Conserved features in carp macrophages. *The Journal of Immunology*, 203, 216–224 (2019).

Pontigo, J. P. & Vargas-Chacoff, L. Growth hormone (GH) and growth hormone release factor (GRF) modulate the immune response in the SHK-1 cell line and leukocyte cultures of head kidney in Atlantic salmon. *General and Comparative Endocrinology*, 300, 113631 (2021), doi: 10.1016/j.ygcen.2020.113631.

Qi, X. Z. et al. Ammonia exposure alters the expression of immune-related and antioxidant enzymes-related genes and the gut microbial community of crucian carp (*Carassius auratus*). *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 70, 485–492 (2017), doi: 410.1016/j.fsi.2017.1009.1043.

Qiao, Q., Liang, H. & Zhang, X. Effect of cyanobacteria on immune function of crucian carp (*Carassius auratus*) via chronic exposure in diet. *Chemosphere*, 90 (93), 1167–1176 (2013), doi: 1110.1016/j.chemosphere.2012.1109.1025.

Qiu, W. et al. Evidence linking exposure of fish primary macrophages to antibiotics activates the NF-kB pathway. *Environmental International*, 138, 105624 (2020), doi: 105610.101016/j.envint.102020.105624.

Raa, J. The use of immunostimulatory substances in fish and shellfish farming. *Reviews in Fisheries Science*, 4, 229–288 (1996).

Rashidian, G., Boldaji, J. T., Rainis, S., Prokić, M. D. & Faggio, C. Oregano (*Origanum vulgare*) extract enhances zebrafish (*Danio rerio*) growth performance, serum and mucus innate immune responses and resistance against Aeromonas hydrophila challenge. *Animals*, 11, 299 (2021).

Reverter, M., Bontemps, N., Lecchini, D., Banaigs, B. & Sasal, P. Use of plant extracts in fish aquaculture as an alternative to chemotherapy: Current status and future perspectives. *Aquaculture*, 433, 50–61 (2014).

Rymuszka, A. & Adaszek, Ł. Cytotoxic effects and changes in cytokine gene expression induced by microcystin-containing extract in fish immune cells – An in vitro and in vivo study. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 34, 1524–1532 (2013).

Rymuszka, A. & Sieroslawska, A. Comparative studies on the cytotoxic effects induced by nodularin in primary carp leukocytes and the cells of the fish CLC line. *Toxicon*, 148, 147-115 (2018), doi: 110.1016/j.toxicon.2018.1004.1001.

Sadahira, K. et al. Gossypol induces apoptosis in multiple myeloma cells by inhibition of interleukin-6 signaling and Bcl-2/Mcl-1 pathway. *International Journal of Oncology*, 45(46), 2278–2286 (2014), doi: 2210.3892/ijo.2014.2652.

Sakai, M., Hikima, J.-i. & Kono, T. Fish cytokines: Current research and applications. *Fisheries Science*, 87, 1–9 (2021).

Sakai, M., Okajita, Y., Kobayashi, M. & Kawauchi, H. Increase in haemolytic activity of serum from rainbow trout Oncorhynchus mykissinjected with exogenous growth hormone. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 6(8), 615–617 (1996).

Salinas, I., Zhang, Y.-A. & Sunyer, J. O. Mucosal immunoglobulins and B cells of teleost fish. *Developmental & Comparative Immunology*, 35, 1346–1365 (2011).

Samuel, A. M., Martin, ElżbietaKról, Nutrigenomics and immune function in fish: New insights from omics technologies. *Developmental & Comparative Immunology*, 75, 86–98 (2017), ISSN 0145-305X,10.1016/j.dci.2017.02.024m.

Secombes, C. J. & Belmonte, R. Overview of the fish adaptive immune system. In A. Adams (Ed.), Birkhauser Advances in Infectious Diseases (pp. 35–52). Springer Basel (2016). https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-0348-0980-1_2.

Segner, H., Bailey, C., Tafalla, C. & Bo, J. Immunotoxicity of xenobiotics in fish: A role for the aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AhR)? *International Journal of Molecular Sciences*, 22(17), 9460 (2021).

Shahbazi, S. & Bolhassani, A. Immunostimulants: Types and functions. *Journal of Medical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases*, 4, 45–51 (2016).

Shameena, S. S. et al. Dose-dependent co-infection of *Argulus* sp. and *Aeromonas* hydrophila in goldfish (*Carassius auratus*) modulates innate immune response and antioxidative stress enzymes. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 114, 199–206 (2021), doi: 110.1016/j.fsi.2021.1004.1026.

Sun, P., Li, D., Dong, B., Qiao, S. & Ma, X. Effects of soybean glycinin on performance and immune function in early weaned pigs. *Archives of Animal Nutrition*, 62, 313–321 (2008).

Szwejser, E. et al. Stress differentially affects the systemic and leukocyte estrogen network in common carp. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 68, 190–201 (2017), doi: 110.1016/j.fsi.2017.1007.1011.

Takx-Köhlen, B. C. M. J. Immunomodulators. *Pharmaceutisch Weekblad*, 14, 245–252 (1992), doi:10.1007/BF01962546.

Tengjaroenkul, B. & Yowarach, S. Efficacy of vaccine combined Freud's complete adjuvant to prevent streptococcosis in Nile tilapia. *KKU Veterinary Journal*, 19, 188–196 (2011).

Van Doan, H. et al. Host-associated probiotics: A key factor in sustainable aquaculture. *Reviews in Fisheries Science & Aquaculture*, 28, 16–42 (2020), doi: 10.1080/23308249.2019.1643288.

Villamil, L. A., Tafalla, C., Figueras, A. & Novoa, B. Evaluation of immunomodulatory effects of lactic acid bacteria in turbot (*Scophthalmus maximus*). *Clinical and Vaccine Immunology*, 9(6), 1318–1323 (2002).

Vizzini, A. et al. Transcriptomic analyses reveal 2 and 4 family members of cytochromes P450 (CYP) Involved in LPS inflammatory response in pharynx of *Ciona robusta*. *International Journal of Molecular Sciences*, 22, 11141 (2021).

Wang, W. et al. Glyphosate induces lymphocyte cell dysfunction and apoptosis via regulation of miR-203 targeting of PIK3R1 in common carp (*Cyprinus carpio* L.). *Fish & Shellfish Immunology*, 101, 51–57 (2020).

Wang, X. et al. Bioaccumulation of manganese and its effects on oxidative stress and immune response in juvenile groupers (*Epinephelus moara* ♀ × *E. lanceolatus* ♂). *Chemosphere*, 297, 134235 (2022), doi: 134210.131016/j.chemosphere.132022.134235.

Watts, M., Munday, B. & Burke, C. Immune responses of teleost fish. *Australian Veterinary Journal*, 79, 570–574 (2001).

Wilson, C. J., Finch, C. E. & Cohen, H. J. Cytokines and cognition—The case for a head-to-toe inflammatory paradigm. *Journal of the American Geriatrics Society*, 50, 2041–2056 (2002).

Yada, T. Growth hormone and fish immune system. *General and Comparative Endocrinology*, 152, 353–358 (2007).

Yada, T. et al. Ghrelin stimulates phagocytosis and superoxide production in fish leukocytes. *Journal of Endocrinology*, 189, 57–65 (2006).

Yang, C., Song, G. & Lim, W. A review of the toxicity in fish exposed to antibiotics. *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology C: Toxicology & Pharmacology*, 237, 108840 (2020), doi: 108810.101016/j.cbpc.102020.108840.

Zapata, A. G. Cells and tissues of the immune system of fish. The fish immune system. *Organism, Pathogen, and Environment*. Academic Press (1996).

Zhang, Z., Chi, H. & Dalmo, R. A. Trained innate immunity of fish is a viable approach in larval aquaculture. *Journal Frontiers in Immunology*, 10 (2019), doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00042. https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fimmu.2019.00042

Zhou, L. J., Wu, Q. L., Zhang, B. B., Zhao, Y. G. & Zhao, B. Y. Occurrence, spatiotemporal distribution, mass balance and ecological risks of antibiotics in subtropical shallow lake Taihu, China. *Environmental Science: Processes and Impacts*, 18(14), 500–513 (2016), doi: 510.1039/c1036em00062b.

Zou, J. & Secombes, C. J. The function of fish cytokines. *Biology*, 5, 23 (2016).

Immunomodulators

Abareethan, M. & Amsath, A. Characterization and evaluation of probiotic fish feed. International Journal of Pure and Applied Zoology, 3, 148–153 (2015).

Abarike, E. D. et al. Influences of immunostimulants on phagocytes in cultured fish: A mini review. Reviews in Aquaculture, 11, 1219–1227 (2019).

Abdel-Latif, H. M. et al. Health benefits and potential applications of fucoidan (FCD) extracted from brown seaweeds in aquaculture: An updated review. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 122, 115–130 (2022).

Abdel-Tawwab, M. & Hamed, H. S. Antagonistic effects of dietary guava (*Psidium guajava*) leaves extract on growth, hemato-biochemical, and immunity response of cypermethrin-intoxicated Nile tilapia, *Oreochromis niloticus*, fingerlings. Aquaculture, 529, 735668 (2020), doi: 735610.731016/j.aquaculture.732020.735668.

Abdel-Tawwab, M. , Adeshina, I. , Jenyo-Oni, A. , Ajani, E. K. & Emikpe, B. O. Growth, physiological, antioxidants, and immune response of African catfish, *Clarias gariepinus* (B.), to dietary clove basil, *Ocimum gratissimum*, leaf extract and its susceptibility to Listeria monocytogenes infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 78, 346–354 (2018).

Acar, Ü. , İnanan, B. E. , Navruz, F. Z. & Yılmaz, S. Alterations in blood parameters, DNA damage, oxidative stress and antioxidant enzymes and immune-related genes expression in Nile tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*) exposed to glyphosate-based herbicide. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part C: Toxicology & Pharmacology, 249, 109147 (2021), doi: 109110.101016/j.cbpc.102021.109147.

Aliko, V. , Qirjo, M. , Sula, E. , Morina, V. & Faggio, C. Antioxidant defense system, immune response and erythron profile modulation in gold fish, *Carassius auratus*, after acute manganese treatment. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 76, 101–109 (2018).

Bachère, E. Anti-infectious immune effectors in marine invertebrates: Potential tools for disease control in larviculture. Aquaculture, 227, 427–438 (2003).

Banaee, M. , Mirvagefei, A. R. , Rafei, G. R. & Majazi Amiri, B. Effect of sub-lethal diazinon concentrations on blood plasma biochemistry. International Journal of Environmental Research, 2(2), 189–198 (2008).

Banaee, M. , Tahery, S. , Nematdoost Haghi, B. , Shahafve, S. & Vaziriyan, M. Blood biochemical changes in common carp (Cyprinus carpio) upon co-exposure to titanium dioxide nanoparticles and paraquat. Iranian Journal of Fisheries Sciences, 18(12), 242–255 (2019), doi: 210.22092/ijfs.22019.118174.

Barman, D. , Nen, P. , Mandal, S. C. & Kumar, V. Immunostimulants for aquaculture health management. Journal of Marine Science Research and Development, 3(3), 1–11 (2013).

Bernier, J. , Brousseau, P. , Krzystyniak, K. , Tryphonas, H. & Fournier, M. Immunotoxicity of heavy metals in relation to Great Lakes. Environmental Health Perspectives, 103 (Suppl 109), 123–134 (1995), doi: 110.1289/ehp.95103s95923.

Bitsayah, A. , Banaee, M. & Nematdoost Haghi, B. Effects of aflatoxin-contaminated feed on immunological parameters of common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*). Iranian Journal of Toxicology 12 (11), 7–12 (2018), doi:10.29252/arakmu.12.1.7.

Cabas, I. , Chaves-Pozo, E. , Mulero, V. & García-Ayala, A. Role of estrogens in fish immunity with special emphasis on GPER1. Developmental and Computational Immunology, 89, 102–110 (2018), doi: 110.1016/j.dci.2018.1008.1001.

Caipang, C. M. A. , Suharman, I. , Avillanosa, A. L. & Gonzales-Plasus, M. M. Influence of phytogenic feed additives on the health status in the gut and disease resistance of cultured fish. IOP Conference Series: Earth and Environmental Science, 695(1), 012024 (2021).

Calder, P. C. et al. A consideration of biomarkers to be used for evaluation of inflammation in human nutritional studies. British Journal of Nutrition, 09, S1–S34 (2013).

Carbone, D. & Faggio, C. Importance of prebiotics in aquaculture as immunostimulants. Effects on immune system of *Sparus aurata* and *Dicentrarchus labrax* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 54, 172–178 (2016).

Chakraborty, S. , Shukla, D. , Vuddanda, P. R. , Mishra, B. , & Singh, S. Effective in-vivo utilization of lipid-based nanoparticles as drug carrier for carvedilol phosphate. Journal of Pharmacy and Pharmacology, 63(6), 774–779 (2011).

Chauhan, A. & Singh, R. Probiotics in aquaculture: a promising emerging alternative approach. Symbiosis, 77, 99–113 (2019).

Cho, H. J. et al. Determination of cyanogenic compounds in edible plants by ion chromatography. Toxicology Research, 29, 143–147 (2013), doi:10.5487/tr.2013.29.2.143.

Cobbina, S. J. et al. A multivariate assessment of innate immune-related gene expressions due to exposure to low concentration individual and mixtures of four kinds of heavy metals on zebrafish (*Danio rerio*) embryos. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 47 (42), 1032–1042 (2015), doi: 1010.1016/j.fsi.2015.1011.1003.

Dawood, M. A. Nutritional immunity of fish intestines: Important insights for sustainable aquaculture. Reviews in Aquaculture, 13(1), 642–663 (2021).

De Paula Barbosa, A. Anti-inflammatory properties and immunoadjuvant activitiy of Samanea saman extract. Emirates Journal of Food and Agriculture, 818–821 (2014).

Dietrich, M. A. et al. 2D-DIGE proteomic analysis of blood plasma reveals changes in immune- and stress-associated proteins following hormonal stimulation of carp males. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 118, 354–368 (2021), doi: 110.1016/j.fsi.2021.1009.1018.

Dohms, J. E. & Saif, Y. M. Guest editorial: Criteria for evaluating immunosuppression. Avian Diseases, 28(2), 305–310 (1984).

Estensoro, I. , Calduch-Giner, J. A. , Kaushik, S. , Pérez-Sánchez, J. & Sitjà-Bobadilla, A. Modulation of the IgM gene expression and IgM immunoreactive cell distribution by the nutritional background in gilthead sea bream (*Sparus aurata*) challenged with Enteromyxum leei (Myxozoa). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 33 (32), 401–410 (2012), doi: 410.1016/j.fsi.2012.1005.1029.

Faggio, C. et al. Potential use of polysaccharides from the brown alga*Undaria pinnatifida* as anticoagulants. Brazilian Archives of Biology and Technology, 58, 798–804 (2015).

Faggio, C. , Pagano, M. , Dottore, A. , Genovese, G. & Morabito, M. Evaluation of anticoagulant activity of two algal polysaccharides. Natural Product Research, 30, 1934–1937 (2016).

Farag, M. R. et al. Immune response and susceptibility of Nile tilapia fish to Aeromonas hydrophila infection following the exposure to Bifenthrin and/or supplementation with Petroselinum crispum essential oil. Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety, 216, 112205 (2021), doi: 112210.111016/j.ecoenv.112021.112205.

Findlay, V. L. & Munday, B. L. The immunomodulatory effects of levamisole on the nonspecific immune system of Atlantic salmon, Salmo salar L. Journal of Fish Diseases, 23(6), 369–378 (2000).

Firmino, J. P. , Galindo-Villegas, J. , Reyes-López, F. E. & Gisbert, E. . Phytogenic bioactive compounds shape fish mucosal immunity. Frontiers in Immunology, 12, 695973 (2021).

Ghazy, H. A. , Abdel-Razek, M. A. S. , El Nahas, A. F. & Mahmoud, S. Assessment of complex water pollution with heavy metals and Pyrethroid pesticides on transcript levels of metallothionein and immune related genes. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 68, 318–326 (2017), doi: 310.1016/j.fsi.2017.1007.1034.
Ghosh, D. , Datta, S. , Bhattacharya, S. & Mazumder, S. Long-term exposure to arsenic affects head kidney and impairs humoral immune responses of *Clarias batrachus* . Aquatic Toxicology, 81 (81), 79–89 (2007), doi: 10.1016/j.aquatox.2006.1011.1004.
Gong, Y. , Yang, F. , Hu, J. , Liu, C. , Liu, H. , Han, D. , ... & Xie, S. Effects of dietary yeast hydrolysate on the growth, antioxidant response, immune response and disease resistance of largemouth bass (Micropterus salmoides). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 94, 548–557 (2019).
Grondel, J. L. , Angenent, G. C. & Egberts, E. The influence of antibiotics on the immune system. III. Investigations on the cellular functions of chicken leukocytes in vitro. Veterinary Immunology and Immunopathology, 10(14), 307–316 (1985), doi: 310.1016/0165-2427(1085)90020-90020.
Guardiola, F. A. et al . Evaluation of waterborne exposure to heavy metals in innate immune defences present on skin mucus of gilthead seabream (*Sparus aurata*). Fish Shellfish Immunology, 45(41), 112–123 (2015), doi: 110.1016/j.fsi.2015.1002.1010.
Guo, H. & Dixon, B. Understanding acute stress-mediated immunity in teleost fish. Fish and Shellfish Immunology Reports, 2, 100010 (2021), doi: 100010.101016/j.fsirep.102021.100010.
Guo, H. et al. Evaluation of ammonia nitrogen exposure in immune defenses present on spleen and head-kidney of wuchang bream (*Megalobrama amblycephala*). International Journal of Molecular Sciences, 23 (26), 3129 (2022), doi: 3110.3390/ijms23063129.
Guttvik, A. et al. Oral administration of lipopolysaccharide to Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar L.*) fry. Uptake, distribution, influence on growth and immune stimulation. Aquaculture, 214, 35–53 (2002).
Harikrishnan, R. , Balasundaram, C. & Heo, M. Impact of plant products on innate and adaptive immune system of cultured finfish. Fish and Shellfish Immunolgy, 29, 668–673 (2011).
Harris, J. & Bird, D. J. Modulation of the fish immune system by hormones. Veterinary Immunology and Immunopathology, 77, 163–176 (2000).
Hassan, A. , Gulzar, S. , Javid, H. & Nawchoo, I. A. in Bacterial Fish Diseases 87–101 (Academic Press, 2022), doi: 110.1016/B1978-1010-1323-85624-85629.00020-85628.
Hatami, M. , Banaee, M. & Nematdoost Haghi, B. Sub-lethal toxicity of chlorpyrifos alone and in combination with polyethylene glycol to common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*). Chemosphere, 219, 981–988 (2019), doi: 210.1016/j.chemosphere.2018.1012.1077.
Heo, G. , Kim, J. , Jeon, B. , Park, K. & Ra, J. Effects of FST-Chitosan mixture on cultured rockfish (*Sebastes schlegeli*) and olive flounder (*Paralichthys olivaceus*). Korean Journal of Veterinary Public Health, 25, 141–150 (2001).
Hidasi, A. O. , Groh, K. J. , Suter, M. J.-F. & Schirmer, K. Clobetasol propionate causes immunosuppression in zebrafish (*Danio rerio*) at environmentally relevant concentrations. Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety, 138, 16–24 (2017).
Iftikhar, N. , Zafar, R. & Hashmi, I. Multi-biomarkers approach to determine the toxicological impacts of sulfamethoxazole antibiotic on freshwater fish *Cyprinus carpio* . Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety, 233, 113331 (2022), doi: 113310.111016/j.ecoenv.112022.113331.
Ilgová, J. , Jedličková, L. , Dvořáková, H. , Benovics, M. , Mikeš, L. , Janda, L. , ... Kašný, M. A novel type I cystatin of parasite origin with atypical legumain-binding domain. Scientific Reports, 7(1), 1–12 (2017).
Ilgová, J. , Kavanová, L. , Matiašková, K. , Salát, J. & Kašný, M. Effect of cysteine peptidase inhibitor of *Eudiplozoon nipponicum* (Monogenea) on cytokine expression of macrophages in vitro. Molecular and Biochemical Parasitology, 235, 111248 (2020), doi: 111210.111016/j.molbiopara.112019.111248.
Ilgová, J. , Salát, J. & Kašný, M. Molecular communication between the monogenea and fish immune system. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 112, 179–190 (2021), doi: 110.1016/j.fsi.2020.1008.1023.
Jadhav, V. S. , Khan, S. I. , Girkar, M. M. & Gitte, M. J. The role of immunostimulants in fish and shrimp aquaculture. Aquaculture Asia, 11, 24 (2006).
Jahangiri, L. & Esteban, M. Á. Administration of probiotics in the water in finfish aquaculture systems: A review. Fishes3, 33 (2018).
Jordanova, M. et al. Effects of heavy metal pollution on pigmented macrophages in kidney of Vardar chub (*Squalius vardarensis* Karaman). Microscopic Research and Technique, 80(88), 930–935 (2017), doi: 910.1002/jemt.22884.
Kim, J.-H. , Balfry, S. & Devlin, R. H. Disease resistance and health parameters of growth-hormone transgenic and wild-type coho salmon, *Oncorhynchus kisutch* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 34, 1553–1559 (2013), doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2013.03.365.
Koller, L. D. A perspective on the progression of immunotoxicology. Toxicology, 160, 105–110 (2001).
Kono, K. , Salazar-Onfray, F. , Petersson, M. , Hansson, J. , Masucci, G. , Wasserman, K. , ... & Kiessling, R. Hydrogen peroxide secreted by tumor-derived macrophages down-modulates signal-transducing zeta molecules and inhibits tumor-specific T cell-and natural killer cell-mediated cytotoxicity. European Journal of Immunology, 26(6), 1308–1313 (1996).
Liu, J. et al. Early exposure to environmental levels of sulfamethoxazole triggers immune and inflammatory response of healthy zebrafish larvae. Science Total Environment, 703, 134724 (2020). doi: 134710.131016/j.scitotenv.132019.134724.
Lu, M. , Su, M. , Liu, N. & Zhang, J. Effects of environmental salinity on the immune response of the coastal fish Scatophagus argus during bacterial infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 124, 401–410 (2022), doi: 110.1016/j.fsi.2022.1004.1029.
Luo, K. , Li, X. , Wang, L. , Rao, W. , Wu, Y. , Liu, Y. , Pan, M. , Huang, D. , Zhang, W. & Mai, K. Ascorbic acid regulates the immunity, anti-oxidation and apoptosis in abalone Haliotis discus hannaiIno. Antioxidants, 10(9), 1449 (2021).
Marshall, J. S. , Warrington, R. , Watson, W. & Kim, H. L. An introduction to immunology and immunopathology. Allergy, Asthma & Clinical Immunology, 14, 49, doi:10.1186/s13223-018-0278-1 (2018).
Mauro, M. et al. The effect of low frequency noise on the behaviour of juvenile *Sparus aurata* . The Journal of the Acoustical Society of America, 147, 3795–3807 (2020).
Mauro, M. et al. Humoral responses during wound healing in *Holothuria tubulosa* (Gmelin, 1788). Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part B: Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, 253, 110550 (2021).
Mauro, M. et al. Haemolymphatic parameters in two aquaculture crustacean species cherax destructor (Clark, 1836) and *Cherax quadricarinatus* (Von Martens, 1868). Animals 12, 543 (2022).
Mauro, M. et al. Effects of diclofenac on the gametes and embryonic development of *Arbacia lixula* . The European Zoological Journal 89, 535–545 (2022).
Mazini, B. S. M. , Martins, G. P. , de Castro Menezes, L. L. & Guimarães, I. G. Nutritional feed additives reduce the adverse effects of transport stress in the immune system of Tambaqui (*Colossoma macropomum*). Fish and Shellfish Immunology Reports, 3, 100051

(2022), doi: 100010.101016/j.fsirep.102022.100051.
Miura, T. & Mizushima, S. Separation by density gradient centrifugation of two types of membranes from spheroplast membrane of *Escherichia coli* K12. Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) – Biomembranes, 150, 159–161 (1968), doi: 10.1016/0005-2736(68)90020-5.
Mohan, K. , Ravichandran, S. , Muralisankar, T. , Uthayakumar, V. , Chandirasekar, R. , Seedevi, P. & Rajan, D. K. Potential uses of fungal polysaccharides as immunostimulants in fish and shrimp aquaculture: A review. Aquaculture, 500, 250–263 (2019).
Mohiseni, M. , Sepidnameh, M. , Bagheri, D. , Banaee, M. & Nematdust Haghi, B. Comparative effects of shirazi thyme and vitamin E on some growth and plasma biochemical changes in common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) during cadmium exposure. Aquaculture Research, 48(49), 4811–4821 (2017), doi: 4810.1111/are.13301.
Morcillo, P. , Cordero, H. , Meseguer, J. , Esteban, M. & Cuesta, A. In vitro immunotoxicological effects of heavy metals on European sea bass (Dicentrarchus labrax L.) head-kidney leucocytes. Fish Shellfish Immunol, 47, 245–254 (2015), doi:10.1016/j.fsi.2015.09.011.
Neidhardt, F. C. *Escherichia coli* and *Salmonella*: Cellular and molecular biology. (1996).
Paulsen, S. M. , Engstad, R. E. & Robertsen, B. Enhanced lysozyme production in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar L.*) macrophages treated with yeast β-glucan and bacterial lipopolysaccharide. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 11, 23–37 (2001).
Paulsen, S. M. , Lunde, H. , Engstad, R. E. & Robertsen, B. In vivo effects of β-glucan and LPS on regulation of lysozyme activity and mRNA expression in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar L.*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 14, 39–54 (2003).
Petit, J. , Embregts, C. W. , Forlenza, M. & Wiegertjes, G. F. Evidence of trained immunity in a fish: Conserved features in carp macrophages. The Journal of Immunology, 203, 216–224 (2019).
Pontigo, J. P. & Vargas-Chacoff, L. Growth hormone (GH) and growth hormone release factor (GRF) modulate the immune response in the SHK-1 cell line and leukocyte cultures of head kidney in Atlantic salmon. General and Comparative Endocrinology, 300, 113631 (2021), doi: 10.1016/j.ygcen.2020.113631.
Qi, X. Z. et al. Ammonia exposure alters the expression of immune-related and antioxidant enzymes-related genes and the gut microbial community of crucian carp (*Carassius auratus*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 70, 485–492 (2017), doi: 410.1016/j.fsi.2017.1009.1043.
Qiao, Q. , Liang, H. & Zhang, X. Effect of cyanobacteria on immune function of crucian carp (*Carassius auratus*) via chronic exposure in diet. Chemosphere, 90 (93), 1167–1176 (2013), doi: 1110.1016/j.chemosphere.2012.1109.1025.
Qiu, W. et al. Evidence linking exposure of fish primary macrophages to antibiotics activates the NF-kB pathway. Environmental International, 138, 105624 (2020), doi: 105610.101016/j.envint.102020.105624.
Raa, J. The use of immunostimulatory substances in fish and shellfish farming. Reviews in Fisheries Science, 4, 229–288 (1996).
Rashidian, G. , Boldaji, J. T. , Rainis, S. , Prokić, M. D. & Faggio, C. Oregano (*Origanum vulgare*) extract enhances zebrafish (*Danio rerio*) growth performance, serum and mucus innate immune responses and resistance against Aeromonas hydrophila challenge. Animals, 11, 299 (2021).
Reverter, M. , Bontemps, N. , Lecchini, D. , Banaigs, B. & Sasal, P. Use of plant extracts in fish aquaculture as an alternative to chemotherapy: Current status and future perspectives. Aquaculture, 433, 50–61 (2014).
Rymuszka, A. & Adaszek, Ł. Cytotoxic effects and changes in cytokine gene expression induced by microcystin-containing extract in fish immune cells – An in vitro and in vivo study. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 34, 1524–1532 (2013).
Rymuszka, A. & Sieroslawska, A. Comparative studies on the cytotoxic effects induced by nodularin in primary carp leukocytes and the cells of the fish CLC line. Toxicon, 148, 147-115 (2018), doi: 110.1016/j.toxicon.2018.1004.1001.
Sadahira, K. et al. Gossypol induces apoptosis in multiple myeloma cells by inhibition of interleukin-6 signaling and Bcl-2/Mcl-1 pathway. International Journal of Oncology, 45(46), 2278–2286 (2014), doi: 2210.3892/ijo.2014.2652.
Sakai, M. , Hikima, J.-I. & Kono, T. Fish cytokines: Current research and applications. Fisheries Science, 87, 1–9 (2021).
Sakai, M. , Okajita, Y. , Kobayashi, M. & Kawauchi, H. Increase in haemolytic activity of serum from rainbow trout Oncorhynchus mykissinjected with exogenous growth hormone. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 6(8), 615–617 (1996).
Salinas, I. , Zhang, Y.-A. & Sunyer, J. O. Mucosal immunoglobulins and B cells of teleost fish. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 35, 1346–1365 (2011).
Samuel, A. M. , Martin, ElżbietaKról , Nutrigenomics and immune function in fish: New insights from omics technologies. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 75, 86–98 (2017), ISSN 0145-305X,10.1016/j.dci.2017.02.024m.
Secombes, C. J. & Belmonte, R. Overview of the fish adaptive immune system. In A. Adams (Ed.), Birkhauser Advances in Infectious Diseases (pp. 35–52). Springer Basel (2016). https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-0348-0980-1_2.
Segner, H. , Bailey, C. , Tafalla, C. & Bo, J. Immunotoxicity of xenobiotics in fish: A role for the aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AhR)? International Journal of Molecular Sciences, 22(17), 9460 (2021).
Shahbazi, S. & Bolhassani, A. Immunostimulants: Types and functions. Journal of Medical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases, 4, 45–51 (2016).
Shameena, S. S. et al. Dose-dependent co-infection of *Argulus* sp. and *Aeromonas* hydrophila in goldfish (*Carassius auratus*) modulates innate immune response and antioxidative stress enzymes. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 114, 199–206 (2021), doi: 110.1016/j.fsi.2021.1004.1026.
Sun, P. , Li, D. , Dong, B. , Qiao, S. & Ma, X. Effects of soybean glycinin on performance and immune function in early weaned pigs. Archives of Animal Nutrition, 62, 313–321 (2008).
Szwejser, E. et al. Stress differentially affects the systemic and leukocyte estrogen network in common carp. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 68, 190–201 (2017), doi: 110.1016/j.fsi.2017.1007.1011.
Takx-Köhlen, B. C. M. J. Immunomodulators. Pharmaceutisch Weekblad, 14, 245–252 (1992), doi:10.1007/BF01962546.
Tengjaroenkul, B. & Yowarach, S. Efficacy of vaccine combined Freud's complete adjuvant to prevent streptococcosis in Nile tilapia. KKU Veterinary Journal, 19, 188–196 (2011).
Van Doan, H. et al. Host-associated probiotics: A key factor in sustainable aquaculture. Reviews in Fisheries Science & Aquaculture, 28, 16–42 (2020), doi: 10.1080/23308249.2019.1643288.
Villamil, L. A. , Tafalla, C. , Figueras, A. & Novoa, B. Evaluation of immunomodulatory effects of lactic acid bacteria in turbot (*Scophthalmus maximus*). Clinical and Vaccine Immunology, 9(6), 1318–1323 (2002).
Vizzini, A. et al. Transcriptomic analyses reveal 2 and 4 family members of cytochromes P450 (CYP) Involved in LPS inflammatory response in pharynx of *Ciona robusta* . International Journal of Molecular Sciences, 22, 11141 (2021).

Wang, W. et al. Glyphosate induces lymphocyte cell dysfunction and apoptosis via regulation of miR-203 targeting of PIK3R1 in common carp (*Cyprinus carpio* L.). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 101, 51–57 (2020).
Wang, X. et al. Bioaccumulation of manganese and its effects on oxidative stress and immune response in juvenile groupers (*Epinephelus moara* ♀ × *E. lanceolatus* ♂). Chemosphere, 297, 134235 (2022), doi: 134210.131016/j.chemosphere.132022.134235.
Watts, M. , Munday, B. & Burke, C. Immune responses of teleost fish. Australian Veterinary Journal, 79, 570–574 (2001).
Wilson, C. J. , Finch, C. E. & Cohen, H. J. Cytokines and cognition—The case for a headtotoe inflammatory paradigm. Journal of the American Geriatrics Society, 50, 2041–2056 (2002).
Yada, T. Growth hormone and fish immune system. General and Comparative Endocrinology, 152, 353–358 (2007).
Yada, T. et al. Ghrelin stimulates phagocytosis and superoxide production in fish leukocytes. Journal of Endocrinology, 189, 57–65 (2006).
Yang, C. , Song, G. & Lim, W. A review of the toxicity in fish exposed to antibiotics. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology C: Toxicology & Pharmacology, 237, 108840 (2020), doi: 108810.101016/j.cbpc.102020.108840.
Zapata, A. G. Cells and tissues of the immune system of fish. The fish immune system. Organism, Pathogen, and Environment. Academic Press (1996).
Zhang, Z. , Chi, H. & Dalmo, R. A. Trained innate immunity of fish is a viable approach in larval aquaculture. Journal Frontiers in Immunology, 10 (2019), doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00042. https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fimmu.2019.00042
Zhou, L. J. , Wu, Q. L. , Zhang, B. B. , Zhao, Y. G. & Zhao, B. Y. Occurrence, spatiotemporal distribution, mass balance and ecological risks of antibiotics in subtropical shallow lake Taihu, China. Environmental Science: Processes and Impacts, 18(14), 500–513 (2016), doi: 510.1039/c1036em00062b.
Zou, J. & Secombes, C. J. The function of fish cytokines. Biology, 5, 23 (2016).

Natural and Synthetic Immunomodulators

Walker, P.J. and J.R. Winton , Emerging viral diseases of fish and shrimp. Veterinary Research, 2010. 41 (6): p. 51.
Barman, D. , et al. , Immunostimulants for aquaculture health management. Journal of Marine Science and Research Development, 2013. 3 (3): p. 1–11.
Balfry, S.K. and D.A. Higgs , Influence of dietary lipid composition on the immune system and disease resistance of finfish. Nutrition and Fish Health, 2001: p. 213–234.
Finlay, B.B. and G. McFadden , Anti-immunology: evasion of the host immune system by bacterial and viral pathogens. Cell, 2006. 124 (4): p. 767–782.
Cabello, F.C. , Heavy use of prophylactic antibiotics in aquaculture: a growing problem for human and animal health and for the environment. Environmental Microbiology, 2006. 8 (7): p. 1137–1144.
Chakraborty, S.B. and C. Hancz , Application of phytochemicals as immunostimulant, antipathogenic and antistress agents in finfish culture. Reviews in Aquaculture, 2011. 3 (3): p. 103–119.
Sakai, M. , Current research status of fish immunostimulants. Aquaculture, 1999. 172 (1-2): p. 63–92.
Anderson, D.P. , Immunostimulants, adjuvants, and vaccine carriers in fish: applications to aquaculture. Annual Review of Fish Diseases, 1992. 2 : p. 281–307.
Jeney, G. and D.P. Anderson , Glucan injection or bath exposure given alone or in combination with a bacterin enhance the non-specific defence mechanisms in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Aquaculture, 1993. 116 (4): p. 315–329.
Nikl, L. , T.T. Evelyn and L. Albright , Trials with an orally and immersion-administered β-1, 3 glucan as an immunoprophylactic against Aeromonas salmonicida in juvenile chinook salmon Oncorhynchus tshawytscha. Diseases of Aquatic Organisms, 1993. 17 (3): p. 191–196.
Wang, S.-H. and J.-C. Chen , The protective effect of chitin and chitosan against Vibrio alginolyticus in white shrimp Litopenaeus vannamei. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 2005. 19 (3): p. 191–204.
Bairwa, M.K. , et al. , Animal and plant originated immunostimulants used in aquaculture. Journal of Natural Product and Plant Resources, 2012. 2 (3): p. 397–400.
Nya, E.J. and B. Austin , Use of dietary ginger, Zingiber officinale Roscoe, as an immunostimulant to control Aeromonas hydrophila infections in rainbow trout, Oncorhynchus mykiss (Walbaum). Journal of fish diseases, 2009. 32 (11): p. 971–977.
Ragap, H.M. , R.H. Khalil and H.H. Mutawie , Immunostimulant effects of dietary Spirulina platensis on tilapia Oreochromis niloticus. Journal of Applied Pharmaceutical Science, 2012. 2 (2): p. 26–31.
Rodríguez, A. , et al. , The effect of dietary administration of the fungus Mucor circinelloides on non-specific immune responses of gilthead seabream. Fish & shellfish immunology, 2004. 16 (2): p. 241–249.
Lundén, T. and G. Bylund , The influence of in vitro and in vivo exposure to antibiotics on mitogen-induced proliferation of lymphoid cells in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 2000. 10 (5): p. 395–404.
Philip, R. , et al. Immunostimulants – Source, diversity, commercial preparations and mode of application in *Nature Workshop on Aquaculture Medicine* . 2001.
Valladão, G. , S. Gallani , and F. Pilarski , Phytotherapy as an alternative for treating fish disease. Journal of Veterinary Pharmacology and Therapeutics, 2015. 38 (5): p. 417–428.
Reverter, M. , et al. , Use of plant extracts in fish aquaculture as an alternative to chemotherapy: current status and future perspectives. Aquaculture, 2014. 433 : p. 50–61.
Ramudu, K.R. and G. Dash , Prevalence of monogenean parasites on Indian major carps in bheries of West Bengal. International Journal of Chemical and Biochemical Science, 2013. 4 : p. 13–21.
Vaseeharan, B. and R. Thaya , Medicinal plant derivatives as immunostimulants: an alternative to chemotherapeutics and antibiotics in aquaculture. Aquaculture International, 2014. 22 (3): p. 1079–1091.
Harikrishnan, R. , et al. , Immunomodulatory effect of Withania somnifera supplementation diet in the giant freshwater prawn Macrobrachium rosenbergii (de Man) against Aeromonas hydrophila. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 2012. 32 (1): p. 94–100.
Adeogun, A. , et al. , Haematological and serum biochemical profile of the blue crab, Callinectes amnicola from two tropical lagoon ecosystems. African Journal of Biomedical Research, 2015. 18 (3): p. 233–247.

Pourmoghim, H. , M. Haghighi , and M.S. Rohani , Effect of dietary inclusion of Origanum vulgare extract on non-specific immune responses and hematological parameters of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Bulletin of Environment, Pharmacology and Life Sciences, 2015. 4 (3): p. 33–39.
Devasagayam, T. and K. Sainis , Immune system and antioxidants, especially those derived from Indian medicinal plants. Indian Journal of Experimental Biology, 2002. 40(6): p. 639–655.
Yeh, S.-T. and J.-C. Chen , White shrimp Litopenaeus vannamei that received the hot-water extract of Gracilaria tenuistipitata showed earlier recovery in immunity after a Vibrio alginolyticus injection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 2009. 26 (5): p. 724–730.
John, C.M. , et al. , Immunomodulatory activity of polyphenols derived from Cassia auriculata flowers in aged rats. Cellular Immunology, 2011. 271 (2): p. 474–479.
González, R. , et al. , Effects of flavonoids and other polyphenols on inflammation. Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition, 2011. 51 (4): p. 331–362.
Wong, C.P. , et al. , Induction of regulatory T cells by green tea polyphenol EGCG. Immunology Letters, 2011. 139 (1-2): p. 7–13.
Yang, J. , et al. , Identification of Baicalin as an immunoregulatory compound by controlling TH17 cell differentiation. PLoS One, 2011. 6 (2): p. e17164.
Byun, E.-B. , et al. , The procyanidin trimer C1 inhibits LPS-induced MAPK and NF-κB signaling through TLR4 in macrophages. International Immunopharmacology, 2013. 15 (2): p. 450–456.
Kim, H.J. , S.H. Kim and J.-M. Yun , Fisetin inhibits hyperglycemia-induced proinflammatory cytokine production by epigenetic mechanisms. Evidence-Based Complementary and Alternative Medicine, 2012. 2012 .
Kim, S. and Y.-E. Joo , Theaflavin inhibits LPS-induced IL-6, MCP-1, and ICAM-1 expression in bone marrow-derived macrophages through the blockade of NF-κB and MAPK signaling pathways. Chonnam Medical Journal, 2011. 47 (2): p. 104–110.
Olivera, A. , et al. , Inhibition of the NF-κB signaling pathway by the curcumin analog, 3, 5-Bis (2-pyridinylmethylidene)-4-piperidone (EF31): anti-inflammatory and anti-cancer properties. International immunopharmacology, 2012. 12 (2): p. 368–377.
Fischer, G. , et al. , Green propolis phenolic compounds act as vaccine adjuvants, improving humoral and cellular responses in mice inoculated with inactivated vaccines. Memórias do Instituto Oswaldo Cruz, 2010. 105 : p. 908–913.
Tao, K. , et al. , Effects of resveratrol on the treatment of inflammatory response induced by severe burn. Inflammation, 2015. 38 (3): p. 1273–1280.
Capiralla, H. , et al. , Identification of potent smallmolecule inhibitors of STAT 3 with antiinflammatory properties in RAW 264.7 macrophages. The FEBS Journal, 2012. 279 (20): p. 3791–3799.
Soromou, L.W. , et al. , Regulation of inflammatory cytokines in lipopolysaccharide-stimulated RAW 264.7 murine macrophage by 7-O-methyl-naringenin. Molecules, 2012. 17 (3): p. 3574–3585.
Blakley, B. , et al. , Effect of pentachlorophenol on immune function. Toxicology, 1998. 125 (2-3): p. 141–148.
Kim, A.R. , et al. , Hydroquinone modulates reactivity of peroxynitrite and nitric oxide production. Journal of Pharmacy and Pharmacology, 2005. 57 (4): p. 475–481.
Thrasher, J.D. , G. Heuser and A. Broughton , Immunological abnormalities in humans chronically exposed to chlorpyrifos. Archives of Environmental Health: An International Journal, 2002. 57 (3): p. 181–187.
Li, Q. , et al. , The by-products generated during sarin synthesis in the Tokyo sarin disaster induced inhibition of natural killer and cytotoxic T lymphocyte activity. Toxicology, 2000. 146 (2-3): p. 209–220.
Ayub, S. , J. Verma and N. Das , Effect of endosulfan and malathion on lipid peroxidation, nitrite and TNF-α release by rat peritoneal macrophages. International Immunopharmacology, 2003. 3 (13-14): p. 1819–1828.
Dean, T.N. , et al. , Immunosuppression by aldicarb of T cell responses to antigen-specific and polyclonal stimuli results from defective IL-1 production by the macrophages. Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology, 1990. 106 (3): p. 408–417.
Aly, N. and K. ElGendy , Effect of dimethoate on the immune system of female mice. Journal of Environmental Science and Health, Part B, 2000. 35 (1): p. 77–86.
Pruett, S.B. , et al. , Sodium methyldithiocarbamate inhibits MAP kinase activation through toll-like receptor 4, alters cytokine production by mouse peritoneal macrophages, and suppresses innate immunity. Toxicological Sciences, 2005. 87 (1): p. 75–85.
Chung, A.-H. and M.-Y. Pyo , Effects of mancozeb on the activities of murine peritoneal macrophagesin vitro andex vivo. Archives of Pharmacal Research, 2005. 28 (1): p. 100–105.
Singhal, L.K. , et al. , Down regulation of humoral immunity in chickens due to carbendazim. Toxicology In Vitro, 2003. 17 (5-6): p. 687–692.
Nishimoto, S. , et al. , Abnormal response induced by pesticides on mammalian immune system. Interdisciplinary Studies on Environmental Chemistry-Environmental Research in Asia, 2009. 211 : p. 217.
Hayashi, K. , et al. , Immunotoxicity of the organochlorine pesticide methoxychlor in female ICR, BALB/c, and C3H/He mice. Journal of Immunotoxicology, 2013. 10 (2): p. 119–124.
Dar, S.A. , et al. , Alterations in T-lymphocyte sub-set profiles and cytokine secretion by PBMC of systemic lupus erythematosus patients upon in vitro exposure to organochlorine pesticides. Journal of Immunotoxicology, 2012. 9 (1): p. 85–95.
Ramirez, D.C. , et al. , Biphasic effect of cadmium in non-cytotoxic conditions on the secretion of nitric oxide from peritoneal macrophages. Toxicology, 1999. 139 (1-2): p. 167–177.
Valentino, M. , et al. , Effect of lead on the levels of some immunoregulatory cytokines in occupationally exposed workers. Human and Experimental Toxicology, 2007. 26 (7): p. 551–556.
Migdal, C. , et al. , Responsiveness of human monocyte-derived dendritic cells to thimerosal and mercury derivatives. Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology, 2010. 246 (1-2): p. 66–73.
Biswas, R. , et al. , Analysis of T-cell proliferation and cytokine secretion in the individuals exposed to arsenic. Human and Experimental Toxicology, 2008. 27 (5): p. 381–386.
Vorderstrasse, B.A. and N.I. Kerkvliet , 2, 3, 7, 8-Tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin affects the number and function of murine splenic dendritic cells and their expression of accessory molecules. Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology, 2001. 171 (2): p. 117–125.
Harper, N. , et al. , Immunosuppressive activity of Polychiorinated biphenyl mixtures and congeners: nonadditive (antagonistic) interactions. Toxicological Sciences, 1995. 27 (1): p. 131–139.
Hennigar, S.R. , J.L. Myers and A.R. Tagliaferro , Exposure of alveolar macrophages to polybrominated diphenyl ethers suppresses the release of pro-inflammatory products in vitro. Experimental Biology and Medicine, 2012. 237 (4): p. 429–434.

Robertsen, B. , et al. , Enhancement of nonspecific disease resistance in Atlantic salmon, Salmo salar L., by a glucan from Saccharomyces cerevisiae cell walls. Journal of Fish Diseases, 1990. 13 (5): p. 391–400.
Ponni, A. , Ethanotherapeutics. An approach to study the antimicrobial evaluation of some siddha and ayurvedic medicines for the treatment of infectious disease. 2002, M. Sc. Dissertation, MS University, Tamil Nadu, India.
Citarasu, T. , et al. , Influence of the antibacterial herbs, Solanum trilobatum, Andrographis paniculata and Psoralea corylifolia on the survival, growth and bacterial load of Penaeus monodon post larvae. Aquaculture International, 2003. 11 (6): p. 581–595.
Citarasu, T. , Herbal biomedicines: a new opportunity for aquaculture industry. Aquaculture International, 2010. 18 (3): p. 403–414.
Logambal, S. , S. Venkatalakshmi and R. Dinakaran Michael , Immunostimulatory effect of leaf extract of Ocimum sanctum Linn. in Oreochromis mossambicus (Peters). Hydrobiologia, 2000. 430 (1): p. 113–120.
Rao, Y.V. , et al. , Effect of Achyranthes aspera on the immunity and survival of Labeo rohita infected with Aeromonas hydrophila. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 2006. 20 (3): p. 263–273.
Rao, Y.V. and R. Chakrabarti , Dietary incorporatino of Achyranthes aspera seed influences the immunity of common carp Cyprinus carpio. Indian Journal of Animal Sciences, 2005. 75 (9): p. 1097.
Labh, S.N. and S.R. Shakya , Application of immunostimulants as an alternative to vaccines for health management in aquaculture. International Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Studies, 2014. 2 (1): p. 153–156.
Jadhav, V.S. , et al. , The role of immunostimulants in fish and shrimp aquaculture. Aquaculture Asia, 2006. 11 (3): p. 24.
Siwicki, A.K. , Immunostimulating influence of levamisole on nonspecific immunity in carp (Cyprinus carpio). Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 1989. 13 (1): p. 87–91.
İspir, Ü. and M. Dörücü , A study on the effects of levamisole on the immune system of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss, Walbaum). Turkish Journal of Veterinary & Animal Sciences, 2005. 29 (5): p. 1169–1176.
Findlay, V. , D. Zilberg and B. Munday , Evaluation of levamisole as a treatment for amoebic gill disease of Atlantic salmon, Salmo salar L. Journal of Fish Diseases, 2000. 23 (3): p. 193–198.
Ispir, U. , Prophylactic effect of levamisole on rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) against Yersinia ruckeri. Pesquisa Veterinária Brasileira, 2009. 29 : p. 700–702.
Kajita, Y. , et al. , The immunomodulatory effects of levamisole on rainbow trout, Oncorhynchus mykiss. Fish Pathology, 1990. 25 (2): p. 93–98.
Gannam, A.L. and R.M. Schrock , Immunostimulants in fish diets. Journal of Applied Aquaculture, 1999. 9 (4): p. 53–89.
Johansson, M. and K. Soderhall , Cellular immunity in crustaceans and the proPO system. Parasitology Today, 1989. 5 (6): p. 171–176.
Smith, V.J. , K. Söderhäll and M. Hamilton , β 1, 3-Glucan induced cellular defence reactions in the shore crab, Carcinus maenas. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part A: Physiology, 1984. 77 (4): p. 635–639.
Chen, D. and A. Ainsworth , Glucan administration potentiates immune defence mechanisms of channel catfish, Ictalurus punctatus Rafinesque. Journal of Fish Diseases, 1992. 15 (4): p. 295–304.
Galeotti, M. , D. Volpatti and G. Jeney . The nature of non-specific immune response of Sea bass (Dicentrarchus labrax) to Pasteurella piscicida following bath exposure to levamisole. in *Seventh International Conference Palma de Mallorca*, *Spain*: *European Assoc. Fish Pathologists* . 1995.
G.H., Kou and Song Y.L. , Vibriosis resistance induced by glucan treatment in tiger shrimp (Penaeus monodon). Fish Pathology, 1994. 29 (1): p. 11–17.
Sajid, M. and S.S. Cameotra , Immunomodulatory effect of xenobiotics. Journal of Environmental of Immunology and Toxicology, 2016. 3 (1): p. 1–8.
Lehmann, I. , U. Sack and J. Lehmann , 8 Metal Ions Affecting the Immune System. Metal Ions in Toxicology: Effects, Interactions, Interdependencies, 2015: p. 157–186.
Renaud, J. , et al. , Epigallocatechin-3-gallate, a promising molecule for Parkinson's disease? Rejuvenation Research, 2015. 18 (3): p. 257–269.
Cuevas, A. , et al. , Modulation of immune function by polyphenols: possible contribution of epigenetic factors. Nutrients, 2013. 5 (7): p. 2314–2332.
Lohmann, R. , et al. , Global fate of POPs: current and future research directions. Environmental Pollution, 2007. 150 (1): p. 150–165.
Ikonomou, M. , et al. , Flesh quality of market-size farmed and wild British Columbia salmon. Environmental Science & Technology, 2007. 41 (2): p. 437–443.
Hardy, R.W. and C. Lee , Aquaculture feed and seafood quality. Bulletin of Fisheries Research and Development Agency, 2010. 31 : p. 43–50.
Bernier, J. , et al. , Immunotoxicity of heavy metals in relation to Great Lakes. Environmental Health Perspectives, 1995. 103 (suppl 9): p. 23–34.
Arunkumar, R.I. , P. Rajasekaran and R.D. Michael , Differential effect of chromium compounds on the immune response of the African mouth breeder Oreochromis mossambicus (Peters). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 2000. 10 (8): p. 667–676.
Pillet, S. , et al. , In vitro exposure of seal peripheral blood leukocytes to different metals reveal a sex-dependent effect of zinc on phagocytic activity. Marine Pollution Bulletin, 2000. 40 (11): p. 921–927.
Bols, N.C. , et al. , Ecotoxicology and innate immunity in fish. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 2001. 25 (8-9): p. 853–873.
SanchezDardon, J. , et al. , Immunomodulation by heavy metals tested individually or in mixtures in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) exposed in vivo. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry: An International Journal, 1999. 18 (7): p. 1492–1497.
Çelik, E.Ş. , et al. , Effects of zinc exposure on the accumulation, haematology and immunology of Mozambique tilapia, Oreochromis mossambicus. African Journal of Biotechnology, 2013. 12 (7).
Le Morvan, C. , D. Troutaud and P. Deschaux , Differential effects of temperature on specific and nonspecific immune defences in fish. The Journal of Experimental Biology, 1998. 201 (2): p. 165–168.
Parry, H. and R. Pipe , Interactive effects of temperature and copper on immunocompetence and disease susceptibility in mussels (Mytilus edulis). Aquatic Toxicology, 2004. 69 (4): p. 311–325.
Mandiki, S. , et al. , Immune Status and Immunomodulation in Percid Fish, in Biology and Culture of Percid Fishes. 2015, Springer. p. 761–797.
Zhou, Q. , et al. , Effect of dietary vitamin C on the growth performance and innate immunity of juvenile cobia (Rachycentron canadum). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 2012. 32 (6): p. 969–975.

Zelikoff, J. , et al. , Biomarkers of immunotoxicity in fish: from the lab to the ocean. Toxicology Letters, 2000. 112 : p. 325–331.
Zelikoff, J.T. , Biomarkers of immunotoxicity in fish and other non-mammalian sentinel species: predictive value for mammals? Toxicology, 1998. 129 (1): p. 63–71.

Immunomodulators

B. C. De , D. K. Meena , B. K. Behera , P. Das , P. K. Das Mohapatra , and A. P. Sharma . Probiotics in fish and shellfish culture: immunomodulatory and ecophysiological responses. 40(3):921–971. ISSN 1573-5168.
P. K. Sahoo and S. C. Mukherjee . The effect of dietary immunomodulation upon *Edwardsiella tarda* vaccination in healthy and immunocompromised Indian major carp (labeo rohita). 12(1):1–16. ISSN 1050-4648.
I. J. Lebish and R. M. Moraski . Mechanisms of immunomodulation by drugs. 15(3): 338–345. ISSN 0192-6233.
J. Laurence . The immune system in AIDS. 253(6):84–93. ISSN 0036-8733.
J. E. Talmadge , R. K. Oldham , and I. J. Fidler . Practical considerations for the establishment of a screening procedure for the assessment of biological response modifiers. 3(1):88–109. ISSN 0732-6580.
E. Vallejos-Vidal , F. Reyes-López , M. Teles , and S. MacKenzie . The response of fish to immunostimulant diets. 56:34–69. ISSN 10504648. URL: https://journals.scholarsportal.info/details/10504648/v56icomplete/troftid.xml. Publisher: Elsevier.
S. Reyes-Cerpa , F. E. Reyes-Lopez , D. Toro-Ascuy , J. Ibanez , K. Maisey , A. M. Sandino , and M. Imarai . IPNV modulation of pro and anti-inflammatory cytokine expression in Atlantic salmon might help the establishment of infection and persistence. 32(2):291–300. ISSN 1095-9947.
T. J. Bowden , P. Cook , and J. H. W. M. Rombout . Development and function of the thymus in teleosts. 19(5):413–427. ISSN 1050-4648.
A. Espenes , C. M. Press , B. H. Dannevig , and T. Landsverk . Immune-complex trapping in the splenic ellipsoids of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). 282(1): 41–48. ISSN 0302-766X.
C. Agius and R. J. Roberts . Melano-macrophage centres and their role in fish pathology. 26(9):499–509. ISSN 0140-7775.
A. K. Abbas , A. H. Lichtman , and S. Pillai . Cellular and Molecular Immunology. Saunders. ISBN 978-81-312-1034-5.
S. Reyes-Cerpa , K. Maisey , F. Reyes-Lopez , D. Toro-Ascuy , A. M. Sandino , and M. Imarai . Fish Cytokines and Immune Response. IntechOpen. ISBN 978-953-51-0909-9. URL: https://www.intechopen.com/chapters. PublicationTitle: New Advances and Contributions to Fish Biology.
W. E. Paul . Fundamental Immunology. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins. ISBN 978-0-7817-6519-0. Google-Books-ID: oPSG1PGmZUkC.
C. A. Janeway . How the immune system protects the host from infection. 3(13): 1167–1171. ISSN 1286-4579.
L. J. McHeyzer-Williams and M. G. McHeyzer-Williams . Antigen-specific memory b cell development. 23(1):487–513. URL: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.23.021704.115732.
F. Sallusto and A. Lanzavecchia . Heterogeneity of CD4+ memory t cells: functional modules for tailored immunity. 39(8):2076–2082. ISSN 1521-4141.
B. Dixon and Rj Stet . The relationship between major histocompatibility receptors and innate immunity in teleost fish. 25(8). ISSN 0145-305X. URL: https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/11602190/. Publisher: Dev Comp Immunol.
T. Takano , S. D. Hwang , H. Kondo , I. Hirono , T. Aoki , and M. Sano . Evidence of molecular toll-like receptor mechanisms in teleosts. 45(1):1–16.
M. Reverter , N. Bontemps , D. Lecchini , B. Banaigs , and P. Sasal . Use of plant extracts in fish aquaculture as an alternative to chemotherapy: current status and future perspectives. 433:50–61. ISSN 0044-8486. URL: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0044848614002798.
D. S. Chahal , R. K. Sivamani , R. Rivkah Isseroff , and Mohan R. Dasu . Plant-based modulation of toll-like receptors: an emerging therapeutic model. 27(10):1423–1438. ISSN 1099-1573.
R. C. Robertson , F. Guiheneuf , B. Bahar , M. Schmid , D. B. Stengel , G. F. Fitzgerald , R. Paul Ross , and C. Stanton . The anti-inflammatory effect of algae-derived lipid extracts on lipopolysaccharide (LPS)- stimulated human THP-1 macrophages. 13(8):5402–5424. ISSN 1660-3397.
N. Arora , K. Shah , and S. Pandey-Rai . Inhibition of imiquimod-induced psoriasis-like dermatitis in mice by herbal extracts from some Indian medicinal plants. 253(2):503–515. ISSN 1615-6102.
S. Granica , J. P. Piwowarski , and A. K. Kiss . Ellagitannins modulate the inflammatory response of human neutrophils ex vivo. 22(14):1215–1222. ISSN 1618-095X.
C. T. Nguyen , T. T. Luong , S. Y. Lee , G. L. Kim , H. Kwon , H.-G. Lee , C.-K. Park , and D.-K. Rhee . Panax ginseng aqueous extract prevents pneumococcal sepsis in vivo by potentiating cell survival and diminishing inflammation. 22(11):1055–1061. ISSN 1618-095X.
S.-J. Kim , S.-J. Yoon , Y.-M. Kim , S.-W. Hong , S. H. Yeon , K.-I. Choe , and S.-M. Lee . HS-23, lonicera japonica extract, attenuates septic injury by suppressing toll-like receptor 4 signaling. 155(1):256–266. ISSN 1872-7573.
A. Ghochikyan , A. Pichugin , A. Bagaev , A. Davtyan , A. Hovakimyan , A. Tukhvatulin , H. Davtyan , D. Shcheblyakov , D. Logunov , M. Chulkina , A. Savilova , D. Trofimov , E. L. Nelson , M. G. Agadjanyan , and R. I. Ataullakhanov . Targeting TLR-4 with a novel pharmaceutical grade plant derived agonist, immunomax®, as a therapeutic strategy for metastatic breast cancer. 12(1):322. ISSN 1479-5876. URL: 10.1186/s12967-014-0322-y.
C.-J. Lin , H.-J. Lin , T.-H. Chen , Y.-A. Hsu , C.-S. Liu , G.-Y. Hwang , and L. Wan . *Polygonum cuspidatum* and its active components inhibit replication of the influenza virus through toll-like receptor 9-induced interferon beta expression. 10(2):e0117602. ISSN 1932-6203.
S. Ryu , C. Hs , Y. Ky , L. Oh , K. Kj , and L. By . Oleuropein suppresses LPS-induced inflammatory responses in RAW 264.7 cell and zebrafish. 63(7). ISSN 1520-5118. URL: https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/25613688/. Publisher: J Agric Food Chem.
B. Park and J. Lee . Recognition of lipopolysaccharide pattern by TLR4 complexes. 45(12). ISSN 2092-6413. URL: https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/24310172/. Publisher: Exp Mol Med.
K. Takeda , T. Kaisho , and S. Akira . Toll-like receptors. 21:335–376. ISSN 0732-0582.

H. Heine and E. Lien . Toll-like receptors and their function in innate and adaptive immunity. 130(3):180–192. ISSN 1018-2438.
A. H. Meijer , S. F. Gabby Krens , I. A. Medina Rodriguez , S. He , W. Bitter , B. E. Snaar-Jagalska , and H. P. Spaink . Expression analysis of the toll-like receptor and TIR domain adaptor families of zebrafish. 40(11):773–783. ISSN 0161-5890.
S. D. Hwang , K. Fuji , T. Takano , T. Sakamoto , H. Kondo , I. Hirono , and T. Aoki . Linkage mapping of toll-like receptors (TLRs) in Japanese flounder, *Paralichthys olivaceus* . 13(6):1086–1091. ISSN 1436-2236.
H. Ye , Q. Lin , and H. Luo . Applications of transcriptomics and proteomics in understanding fish immunity. 77:319–327. ISSN 1095-9947.
E. C. Urbinati , F´abio Sabbadin Zanuzzo , and J. D. Biller . Chapter 5 - Stress and immune system in fish. In B. Baldisserotto , E. C. Urbinati , and J. E. P. Cyrino , editors, Biology and Physiology of Freshwater Neotropical Fish, pages 93–114. Academic Press. ISBN 978-0-12-815872-2. URL: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/B9780128158722000051.
J. W. Hadden and A. Szentivanyi . Immunopharmacology Reviews Volume 2. Springer Science & Business Media. ISBN 978-1-4613-0349-7. Google-Books-ID: ZyPnBwAAQBAJ.
T. Wang and C. J. Secombes . The cytokine networks of adaptive immunity in fish. 35(6):1703–1718. ISSN 1095-9947.
D. S. Nascimento , A. do Vale , A. M. Tomás , J. Zou , C. J. Secombes , and N. M. S. dos Santos . Cloning, promoter analysis and expression in response to bacterial exposure of sea bass (*Dicentrarchus labrax* l.) interleukin-12 p40 and p35 subunits. 44(9):2277–2291. ISSN 0161-5890.
C. Furnes , M. Seppola , and B. Robertsen . Molecular characterisation and expression analysis of interferon gamma in Atlantic cod (*Gadus morhua*). 26(2): 285–292. ISSN 1095-9947.
L. Wang , N. Shang , H. Feng , Q. Guo , and H. Dai . Molecular cloning of grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idellus*) t-bet and GATA-3, and their expression profiles with IFN-gamma in response to grass carp reovirus (GCRV) infection. 39(4):793–805. ISSN 1573-5168.
W. Q. Chen , Q. Q. Xu , M. X. Chang , J. Zou , C. J. Secombes , K. M. Peng , and P. Nie . Molecular characterization and expression analysis of the IFN-gamma related gene (IFN-gammarel) in grass carp ctenopharyngodon idella. 134(3):199–207. ISSN 1873-2534.
C. J. Secombes , T. Wang , and S. Bird . The interleukins of fish. 35(12):1336–1345. ISSN 1879-0089.
T. Kadowaki , H. Harada , Y. Sawada , C. Kohchi , G.-I. Soma , Y. Takahashi , and H. Inagawa . Two types of tumor necrosis factor – alpha in bluefin tuna (*Thunnus orientalis*) genes: molecular cloning and expression profile in response to several immunological stimulants. 27(5):585–594. ISSN 1095- 9947.
A. G. Stanbery , S. Smita , J. von Moltke , E. D. Tait Wojno , and S. F. Ziegler . TSLP, IL-33, and IL-25: not just for allergy and helminth infection. ISSN 0091-6749. URL: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0091674922009435.
J. Rivers-Auty , M. J. D. Daniels , I. Colliver , D. L. Robertson , and D. Brough . Redefining the ancestral origins of the interleukin-1 superfamily. 9(1):1156. ISSN 2041-1723. URL: https://www.nature.com/articles/s41467-018-03362-1. Number: 1 Publisher: Nature Publishing Group.
S. Mitra , A. Alnabulsi , C. J. Secombes , and S. Bird . Identification and characterization of the transcription factors involved in t-cell development, t-bet, stat6 and foxp3, within the zebrafish, *Danio rerio* . 277(1):128–147. ISSN 1742-4658.
F. Takizawa , E. O. Koppang , M. Ohtani , T. Nakanishi , K. Hashimoto , U. Fischer , and J. M. Dijkstra . Constitutive high expression of interleukin-4/13a and GATA-3 in gill and skin of salmonid fishes suggests that these tissues form th2-skewed immune environments. 48(12):1360–1368. ISSN 1872-9142.
M. Seppola , A. N. Larsen , K. Steiro , B. Robertsen , and I. Jensen . Characterisation and expression analysis of the interleukin genes, IL-1beta, IL-8 and IL-10, in atlantic cod (*Gadus morhua l.*). 45(4):887–897. ISSN 0161-5890.
T. Wang , S. A. M. Martin , and C. J. Secombes . Two interleukin- 17c-like genes exist in rainbow trout oncorhynchus mykiss that are differentially expressed and modulated. 34(5):491–500. ISSN 1879-0089.
K. Buchmann . Fish immune responses against endoparasitic nematodes – experimental models. 35(9):623–635. ISSN 1365-2761. URL: https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1111/j.1365-2761.2012.01385.x. eprint: https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/pdf/10.1111/j.1365-2761.2012.01385.x.
T. Wang , P. Diaz-Rosales , M. M. Costa , S. Campbell , M. Snow , B. Collet , S. A. M. Martin , and C. J. Secombes . Functional characterization of a nonmammalian IL-21: rainbow trout oncorhynchus mykiss IL-21 upregulates the expression of the th cell signature cytokines IFN-gamma, IL-10, and IL-22. 186(2):708–721. ISSN 1550-6606.
H.-H. Chen , H.-T. Lin , Y.-F. Foung , and J. H.-Y. Lin . The bioactivity of teleost IL-6: IL-6 protein in orange-spotted grouper (*Epinephelus coioides*) induces th2 cell differentiation pathway and antibody production. 38(2):285–294. ISSN 1879-0089.
M. Yang , X. Wang , D. Chen , Y. Wang , A. Zhang , and H. Zhou . TGF-beta1 exerts opposing effects on grass carp leukocytes: implication in teleost immunity, receptor signaling and potential self-regulatory mechanisms. 7(4):e35011. ISSN 1932-6203.
L. Yin , J. Ren , D. Wang , S. Feng , X. Qiu , M. Lv , X. Wang , and H. Zhou . Functional characterization of three fish-specific interleukin-23 isoforms as regulators of th17 signature cytokine expression in grass carp head kidney leukocytes. 92:315–321. ISSN 1095-9947.
M. M. Costa , P. Pereiro , T. Wang , C. J. Secombes , A. Figueras , and B. Novoa . Characterization and gene expression analysis of the two main th17 cytokines (IL- 17a/f and IL-22) in turbot, *Scophthalmus maximus* . 38(4):505–516. ISSN 1879-0089.
H. Ashfaq , H. Soliman , M. Saleh , and M. El-Matbouli . CD4: a vital player in the teleost fish immune system. 50(1):1. ISSN 1297-9716. URL: 10.1186/s13567-018-0620-0.
L. Du , X. Yang , L. Yang , X. Wang , A. Zhang , and H. Zhou . Molecular evidence for the involvement of RORalpha and RORgamma in immune response in teleost. 33(2):418–426. ISSN 1095-9947.
T. Kono , S. Bird , K. Sonoda , R. Savan , C. J. Secombes , and M. Sakai . Characterization and expression analysis of an interleukin-7 homologue in the Japanese pufferfish, *Takifugu rubripes* . 275(6):1213–1226. ISSN 1742-464X.
M. Gorissen , E. de Vrieze , Gert Flik , and Mark O. Huising . STAT genes display differential evolutionary rates that correlate with their roles in the endocrine and immune system. 209(2):175–184. ISSN 1479-6805.
M. M. Monte , T. Wang , J. W. Holland , J. Zou , and C. J. Secombes . Cloning and characterization of rainbow trout interleukin-17a/f2 (IL-17a/f2) and IL-17 receptor a: Expression during infection and bioactivity of recombinant IL-17a/f2. 81(1):340–353. ISSN 0019-9567. URL: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3536140/.
A. Reyes-Diaz , A. F. Gonzalez-Cordova , A. Hernandez-Mendoza , R. Reyes-Diaz , and B. Vallejo-Cordoba . Immunomodulation by hydrolysates and peptides derived from milk proteins. 71(1):1–9. ISSN 1471-0307. URL: https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1111/1471-0307.12421. eprint: https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/pdf/10.1111/1471-0307.12421.

L. Whitehouse and B. Dixon . Cytokines in Teleost Fish, Reference Module in Life Sciences, Elsevier, 2019, ISBN 9780128096338, https://doi.org/10.1016/B978-0-12-809633-8.20910-2. Pages 1–7.
J. Zou and C. J. Secombes . The function of fish cytokines. 5(2):23. ISSN 2079-7737. URL: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4929537/.
M. Chalamaiah , W. Yu , and J. Wu . Immunomodulatory and anticancer protein hydrolysates (peptides) from food proteins: A review. 245:205–222. ISSN 1873- 7072.
F. Subhan , H. Y. Kang , Y. Lim , M. Ikram , S.-Y. Baek , S. Jin , Y. H. Jeong , J. Y. Kwak , and S. Yoon . Fish scale collagen peptides protect against CoCl2/TNF-alpha-induced cytotoxicity and inflammation via inhibition of ROS, MAPK, and NF-kappab pathways in HaCaT cells. 2017:9703609. ISSN 1942-0994.
A. V. Le Gouic , P. A. Harnedy , and R. J. FitzGerald . Bioactive peptides from fish protein by-products. In J.-M. Mérillon and K. G. Ramawat , editors, Bioactive Molecules in Food, pages 1–35. Springer International Publishing. ISBN 978-3-319-54528-8. URL: 10.1007/978-3-319-54528-8.
A. F. G. Cicero , F. Fogacci , and A. Colletti . Potential role of bioactive peptides in prevention and treatment of chronic diseases: a narrative review. 174(11):1378–1394. ISSN 1476-5381.
C. J. Secombes , T. Wang , S. Hong , S. Peddie , M. Crampe , K. J. Laing , C. Cunningham , and J. Zou . Cytokines and innate immunity of fish. 25(8):713–723. ISSN 0145-305X. URL: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0145305X01000325.
M. Yang , Y. Wang , X. Wang , C. Chen , and H. Zhou . Characterization of grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idellus*) foxp1a/1b/2: evidence for their involvement in the activation of peripheral blood lymphocyte subpopulations. 28(2):289–295. ISSN 1095-9947.
Z. Cai , C. Gao , L. Li , and K. Xing . Bipolar properties of red seabream (pagrus major) transforming growth factor-beta in induction of the leucocytes migration. 28(4):695–700. ISSN 1095-9947.
R. Savan and M. Sakai . Genomics of fish cytokines. 1(1):89–101. ISSN 1878-0407.
J. Zou , C. Tafalla , J. Truckle , and C. J. Secombes . Identification of a second group of type I IFNs in fish sheds light on IFN evolution in vertebrates. 179(6):3859–3871. ISSN 0022-1767.
B. Robertsen . Expression of interferon and interferon-induced genes in salmonids in response to virus infection, interferon-inducing compounds and vaccination. 25(4): 351–357. ISSN 1050-4648.
V. Verlhac , A. Obach , J. Gabaudan , W. Schüep , and R. Hole . Immunomodulation by dietary vitamin c and glucan in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). 8(6):409–424. ISSN 1050-4648. URL: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1050464898901486.
C. A. F. de Oliveira , V. Vetvicka , and F´abio S. Zanuzzo . β-glucan successfully stimulated the immune system in different jawed vertebrate species. 62:1–6. ISSN 1878-1667.
H. Hisano , M. P. Soares , F. G. Luiggi , and A. C. Arena . Dietary β-glucans and mannanoligosaccharides improve growth performance and intestinal morphology of juvenile pacu piaractus mesopotamicus (Holmberg, 1887). 26(1):213–223. ISSN 1573-143X. URL: https://doi.org/10.1007/s10499-017-0210-6.
M. P. Soares , F. C. Oliveira , I. L. Cardoso , E. C. Urbinati , C. M. de Campos , and H. Hisano . Glucan-MOS improved growth and innate immunity in pacu stressed and experimentally infected with *Aeromonas hydrophila* . 73:133–140. ISSN 1095-9947.
C. B. Schreck . The Fish Immune System: Organism, Pathogen, and Environment, Volume 15 – 1st Edition. URL: https://www.elsevier.com/books/978-0-12-350439-5.
A. G. Maule , R. A. Tripp , S. L. Kaattari , and C. B. Schreck . Stress alters immune function and disease resistance in chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*). 120 (1):135–142. ISSN 0022-0795.
Y. K. Narnaware and B. I. Baker . Evidence that cortisol may protect against the immediate effects of stress on circulating leukocytes in the trout. 103(3):359–366. ISSN 0016-6480.
J. Harris and D. J. Bird . Modulation of the fish immune system by hormones. page 14.
M. Ahmed , Z. Ferdous , M. Paul , M. H. Rashid , and M. S. Hossain . Effect of dietary vitamin c on the growth and survival rate of rohu (*Labeo rohita*). 16(2):1375–1385. ISSN 23127945. URL: https://www.journalbinet.com/jbar-160218-170.html.
N. A. Khan , JaiGopal Sharma , and R. Chakrabarti . The study of ameliorative effect of dietary supplementation of vitamin c, vitamin e, and tryptophan on *Labeo rohita* (cyprinidae) fry exposed to intense light. 45(3):1153–1165. ISSN 1573-5168.
E. D. Lewis , S. N. Meydani , and D. Wu . Regulatory role of vitamin E in the immune system and inflammation. 71(4):487–494. ISSN 1521-6543. URL: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7011499/.
A. Ciji , N. P. Sahu , A. K. Pal , and M. S. Akhtar . Physiological changes in labeo rohita during nitrite exposure: Detoxification through dietary vitamin E. 158(2):122–129. ISSN 1532-0456. URL: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1532045613000719.
Marco Antonio de Andrade Belo , Flávio Ruas de Moraes , Luciana Yoshida , Ed Johnny da Rosa Prado , Julieta Rodini Engrácia de Moraes , Vando Edésio Soares , and Marta Gomes da Silva . Deleterious effects of low level of vitamin E and high stocking density on the hematology response of pacus, during chronic inflammatory reaction. 422-423:124–128. ISSN 0044-8486. URL: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0044848613006522.
M. Latif , M. Faheem , Asmatullah , S. H. Hoseinifar , and H. Van Doan . Dietary black seed effects on growth performance, proximate composition, antioxidant and histo-biochemical parameters of a culturable fish, rohu (*Labeo rohita*). 11(1):48. ISSN 2076-2615. URL: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC7824491/.
P. Ferraboschi , S. Ciceri , and P. Grisenti . Applications of lysozyme, an innate immune defense factor, as an alternative antibiotic. 10(12):1534. ISSN 2079-6382. URL: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC8698798/.
K. S. Sohn , M. K. Kim , J. D. Kim , and In K. Han . The role of immunostimulants in monogastric animal and fish - review. 13(8):1178–1187. ISSN 1011-2367. URL: https://koreascience.kr/article/JAKO200023443159397. Publisher: Asian Australasian Association of Animal Production Societies.
A. M. Moradian , S. Dorafshan , F. Paykan Heyrati , and E. Ebrahimi . Effects of dietary bovine lactoferrin on growth, haemato-biochemical parameters, immune functions and tolerance to air exposure stress in the African cichlid *Sciaenochromis fryeri* . 24(1):392–399. ISSN 13535773. URL: https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1111/anu.12570.
A. Alhazmi , J. Stevenson , S. Amartey , and W. Qin . Discovery, modification and production of t4 lysozyme for industrial and medical uses. 6(4):45. ISSN 1916-9671. URL: https://ccsenet.org/journal/index.php/ijb/article/view/38645. Number: 4.
K. Eslamloo , B. Falahatkar , and S. Yokoyama . Effects of dietary bovine lactoferrin on growth, physiological performance, iron metabolism and non-specific immune responses of Siberian sturgeon *Acipenser baeri* . 32(6):976–985. ISSN 1095-9947.
A. Esmaeili , E. Sotoudeh , V. Morshedi , D. Bagheri , and S. Dorafshan . Effects of dietary supplementation of bovine lactoferrin on antioxidant status, immune response and disease resistance of yellowfin sea bream (*Acanthopagrus latus*) against *Vibrio harveyi* .

93:917–923. ISSN 1050-4648. URL: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S1050464819308459.
L. S. Takahashi , J. D. Biller-Takahashi , C. F. M. Mansano , E. C. Urbinati , R. Y. Gimbo , and M. V. Saita . Long-term organic selenium supplementation overcomes the trade-off between immune and antioxidant systems in pacu (*Piaractus mesopotamicus*). 60:311–317. ISSN 1095-9947.
K. U. Khan , A. Zuberi , J. B. K. Fernandes , I. Ullah , and H. Sarwar . An overview of the ongoing insights in selenium research and its role in fish nutrition and fish health. 43(6):1689–1705. ISSN 1573-5168.
P. Swain , R. Das , A. Das , S. K. Padhi , K. C. Das , and S. S. Mishra . Effects of dietary zinc oxide and selenium nanoparticles on growth performance, immune responses and enzyme activity in rohu, *Labeo rohita* (Hamilton). 25(2):486–494. ISSN 1365-2095. URL: https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1111/anu.12874. eprint: https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/pdf/10.1111/anu.12874.
N. L. Bortoluzzi , Ma. P. de Castro , Gustavo da Silva Claudiano , J. Yunis-Aguinaga , V. A. Cueva-Quiroz , Julieta Rodini Engr´acia de Moraes , and Fl´avio Ruas de Moraes . Wound healing in *Piaractus mesopotamicus* supplemented with chromium carbochelate and saccharomyces cerevisiae. URL: https://doaj.org/article/04f40c74648842fb877b1862174d7424.
E. Risha , F. Ahmed , A. A. Khaled , F. M. A. Hossain , N. Akhtar , and E. Zahran . Interactive effects of dietary betaine and chromium picolinate on the immunomodulation, antioxidative response and disease resistance of nile tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*). 53(9):3464–3477. ISSN 1365-2109. URL: https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1111/are.15853. eprint: https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/pdf/10.1111/are.15853.
I. Motta , D. Portnoi , and P. Truffa-Bachi . Effect(s) of lipopolysaccharide on lectin-induced t-cell activation. 97(2):267–275. ISSN 0008-8749.
Y. Kajita , M. Sakai , S. Atsuta , and M. Kobayashi . The immunomodulatory effects of levamisole on rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* . 25 (2):93–98.
A. Bhatnagar . Immunostimulating and growth promoting activity of dietary levamisole on *Cirrhinus mrigala* fingerlings. Volume 4. ISSN 2378-3184. URL: https://medcraveonline.com/JAMB/JAMB-04-00102.pdf. Publisher: MedCrave Publishing.
M. L. Chandy , C. Soman , S. P. Kumar , S. Kurup , and R. Jose . Understanding molecular mechanisms in multivariant actions of levamisole as an anti-helminthic, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, anti-neoplastic and immunomodulatory drug. 28(4):354–357. ISSN 2212-5558. URL: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S2212555816300023.
E. Pahor-Filho , A. S. C. Castillo , N. L. Pereira , F. Pilarski , and E. C. Urbinati . Levamisole enhances the innate immune response and prevents increased cortisol levels in stressed pacu (*Piaractus mesopotamicus*). 65:96–102. ISSN 1095-9947.
F. S. Farooqi and W. U. H. Qureshi . Immunostimulants for aquaculture health management. Journal of Pharmacognosy and Phytochemistry 2018; 7(6): 1441-1447, ISSN 2349-8234. URL: https://www.phytojournal.com/archives/2018/vol7issue6/PartY/7-5-684-797.pdf page 7.
H. Cao , T.-T. Chai , X. Wang , M. F. B. Morais-Braga , J.-H. Yang , F.-C. Wong , R. Wang , H. Yao , J. Cao , L. Cornara , B. Burlando , Y. Wang , J. Xiao , and H. D. M. Coutinho . Phytochemicals from fern species: potential for medicine applications. 16(3):379–440. ISSN 1572-980X. URL: https://europepmc.org/articles/PMC7089528.
S. M. Hecht , D. A. Lannigan-Macara , J. A. Smith , G. A. O'Doherty , and M. K. Hilinski . Synthesis and identification of novel RSK-specific inhibitors. URL: https://patents.google.com/patent/US9040673B2/en.
C. Cheng , S. S. Giri , J. W. Jun , H. J. Kim , S. Yun , S. G. Kim , and S. C. Park . Immunomodulatory effects of a bioactive compound isolated from *Dryopteris crassirhizoma* on the grass carp *Ctenopharyngodon idella* . 2016:e3068913. ISSN 2314-8861. URL: https://www.hindawi.com/journals/jir/2016/3068913/. Publisher: Hindawi.
P. Elumalai , A. Kurian , S. Lakshmi , C. Faggio , M. A. Esteban , and E. Ringø . Herbal immunomodulators in aquaculture. 29(1):33–57. ISSN 2330-8249. URL: 10.1080/23308249.2020.1779651. Publisher: Taylor & Francis eprint: 10.1080/23308249.2020.1779651.
J. K. Chettri , P. W. Kania , and K. Buchmann . Immunomodulation of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) fry by bath exposure to a β -glucan from *Euglena gracilis* . 44(9):1407–1415. ISSN 1355-557X. URL: https://journals.scholarsportal.info. Publisher: Wiley.
B. T. Hang , N. T. Phuong , and P. Kestemont . Can immunostimulants efficiently replace antibiotic in striped catfish (*Pangasianodon hypophthalmus*) against bacterial infection by *Edwardsiella ictaluri*? 40(2):556–562. ISSN 1095-9947.
E. Ringoe , R. Olsen , J. G. Vecino , and S. Wadsworth . Use of immunostimulants and nucleotides in aquaculture: A review. 02.
M. Sakai . Current research status of fish immunostimulants. 172(1):63–92. ISSN 0044-8486. URL: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0044848698004360.
Musthafa M. Saiyad , Asgari Sm , Kurian A. , Elumalai P. , Jawahar Ali Ar , Paray Ba , and Al-Sadoon Mk . Protective efficacy of mucuna pruriens (l.) seed meal enriched diet on growth performance, innate immunity, and disease resistance in *Oreochromis mossambicus* against *Aeromonas hydrophila* . 75. ISSN 1095-9947. URL: https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/29458093/. Publisher: Fish Shellfish Immunol.
D. Linga Prabu , S. Chandrasekar , K. Ambasankar , J. S. Dayal , S. Ebeneezar , K. Ramachandran , M. Kavitha , and P. Vijayagopal . Effect of dietary syzygium cumini leaf powder on growth and non-specific immunity of *Litopenaeus vannamei* (boone 1931) and defense against virulent strain of vibrio parahaemolyticus. 489:9–20. URL: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0044848617311912. Publisher: Elsevier.
S. N. Labh and S. R. Shakya . Application of immunostimulants as an alternative to vaccines for health management in aquaculture. International Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Studies 2014; 2(1): 153-156, ISSN: 2347-5129. URL: https://www.fisheriesjournal.com/vol2issue1/52.1.html page 4.

Immunomodulators and Stress Oxidative

Ali, D. , F. A. Falodah , B. Almutairi , S. Alkahtani , and S. Alarifi . Assessment of DNA damage and oxidative stress in juvenile *Channa punctatus* (Bloch) after exposure to multiwalled carbon nanotubes. Environmental Toxicology 35, no. 3 (2020): 359–367.
Aniya, Y. Development of bioresources in Okinawa: understanding the multiple targeted actions of antioxidant phytochemicals. Journal of Toxicology and Pathology 31 (2018) 241–253, 10.1293/tox.2018-0041.
Ardó, L. , G. Yin , P. Xu , L. Váradi , G. Szigeti , Z. Jeney , and G. Jeney . Chinese herbs (*Astragalus membranaceus* and *Lonicera japonica*) and boron enhance the non-specific immune response of Nile tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*) and resistance against *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Aquaculture 275, no. 1-4 (2008): 26–33.

Barcellos, L. J. G. , F. Ritter , L. C. Kreutz , and L. Cericato . Can zebrafish *Danio rerio* learn about predation risk? The effect of a previous experience on the cortisol response in subsequent encounters with a predator. Journal of Fish Biology 76, no. 4 (2010): 1032–1038.
Barcellos, L. J. G. , G. Koakoski , J. G. S. da Rosa , D. Ferreira , R. E. Barreto , P. C. Giaquinto , and G. L. Volpato . Chemical communication of predation risk in zebrafish does not depend on cortisol increase. Scientific Reports 4, no. 1 (2014): 1–7.
Barcellos, L. J. G. , L. C. Kreutz , and R. M. Quevedo . Previous chronic stress does not alter the cortisol response to an additional acute stressor in jundiá (Rhamdia quelen, Quoy and Gaimard) fingerlings. Aquaculture 253, no. 1-4 (2006): 317–321.
Beecham, R. V. , B. C. Small , and C. D. Minchew . Using portable lactate and glucose meters for catfish research: acceptable alternatives to established laboratory methods?. North American Journal of Aquaculture 68, no. 4 (2006): 291–295.
Bell, A. M. , L. Henderson , and F. A. Huntingford . Behavioral and respiratory responses to stressors in multiple populations of three-spined sticklebacks that differ in predation pressure. Journal of Comparative Physiology B 180, no. 2 (2010): 211–220.
Beltrán, J. M. G. , and M. Á. Esteban . Nature-identical compounds as feed additives in aquaculture. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 123 (2022): 409–416.
Boonstra, R. Reality as the leading cause of stress: rethinking the impact of chronic stress in nature. Functional Ecology 27, no. 1 (2013): 11–23.
Braithwaite, V. A. , and L. O. E. Ebbesson . Pain and stress responses in farmed fish. Reviews in Science and Technology 33, no. 1 (2014): 245–253.
Breuner, C. W. , S. H. Patterson , and T. P. Hahn . In search of relationships between the acute adrenocortical response and fitness. General and Comparative Endocrinology 157, no. 3 (2008): 288–295.
Buckley, B. A. Comparative environmental genomics in non-model species: using heterologous hybridization to DNA-based microarrays. Journal of Experimental Biology 210, no. 9 (2007): 1602–1606.
Caipang, C. M. A. , M. F. Brinchmann , I. Berg , M. Iversen , R. Eliassen , and V. Kiron . Changes in selected stress and immune related genes in Atlantic cod, *Gadus morhua*, following overcrowding. Aquaculture Research 39, no. 14 (2008): 1533–1540.
Castanheira, M. F. , L. E. C. Conceição , S. Millot , S. Rey , M.L. Bégout , B. DamsgAard , T. Kristiansen , E. Höglund , Ø. Øverli , and C. I. M. Martins . Coping styles in farmed fish: consequences for aquaculture. Reviews in Aquaculture 9, no. 1 (2017): 23–41.
Chettri, J. K. , P. W. Kania , and K. Buchmann . Immunomodulation of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) fry by bath exposure to a βglucan from *Euglena gracilis* . Aquaculture Research 44, no. 9 (2013): 1407–1415.
Choi, H.-I. , H.-W. Lee , T.-M. Eom , S.-A. Lim , H.-Y. Ha , I.-C. Seol , Y.-S. Kim , D.-S. Oh , and H.-R. Yoo . A traditional Korean multiple herbal formulae (Yuk-Mi-Jihwang-Tang) attenuates acute restraint stress-induced brain tissue oxidation. Drug and Chemical Toxicology 40, no. 2 (2017): 125–133.
Clark, T. D. , B. D. Taylor , R. S. Seymour , D. Ellis , J. Buchanan , Q. P. Fitzgibbon , and P. B. Frappell . Moving with the beat: heart rate and visceral temperature of free-swimming and feeding bluefin tuna. Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences 275, no. 1653 (2008): 2841–2850.
Clark, T. D. , E. Sandblom , S. G. Hinch , D. A. Patterson , P. B. Frappell , and A. P. Farrell . Simultaneous biologging of heart rate and acceleration, and their relationships with energy expenditure in free-swimming sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*). Journal of Comparative Physiology B 180, no. 5 (2010): 673–684.
Crozier, L. G. , and J. A. Hutchings . Plastic and evolutionary responses to climate change in fish. Evolutionary Applications 7, no. 1 (2014): 68–87.
Cuesta, A. , A. Rodríguez , M. A. Esteban , and J. Meseguer . In vivo effects of propolis, a honeybee product, on gilthead seabream innate immune responses. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 18, no. 1 (2005): 71–80.
Cunha, J. A. , B. M. Heinzmann , and B. Baldisserotto . The effects of essential oils and their major compounds on fish bacterial pathogens – a review. Journal of Applied Microbiology 125, no. 2 (2018): 328–344.
Danylchuk, S. E. , A. J. Danylchuk , S. J. Cooke , T. L. Goldberg , J. Koppelman , and D. P. Philipp . Effects of recreational angling on the post-release behavior and predation of bonefish (Albula vulpes): the role of equilibrium status at the time of release. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 346, no. 1-2 (2007): 127–133.
Davis, K. B. Management of physiological stress in finfish aquaculture. North American Journal of Aquaculture 68, no. 2 (2006): 116–121.
Davis, M. W. Fish stress and mortality can be predicted using reflex impairment. Fish and Fisheries 11, no. 1 (2010): 1–11.
Dawood, M. A. O. , S. Koshio , M. Ishikawa , and S. Yokoyama . Interaction effects of dietary supplementation of heat-killed *Lactobacillus plantarum* and β-glucan on growth performance, digestibility and immune response of juvenile red sea bream, Pagrus major. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 45, no. 1 (2015): 33–42.
Dawood, M. A. O. , S. Koshio , and M. Á. Esteban . Beneficial roles of feed additives as immunostimulants in aquaculture: a review. Reviews in Aquaculture 10, no. 4 (2018): 950–974.
Donaldson, M. R. , S. G. Hinch , G. D. Raby , D. A. Patterson , A. P. Farrell , and S. J. Cooke . Population-specific consequences of fisheries-related stressors on adult sockeye salmon. Physiological and Biochemical Zoology 85, no. 6 (2012): 729–739.
Donaldson, M. R. , T. D. Clark , S. G. Hinch , S. J. Cooke , D. A. Patterson , M. K. Gale , P. B. Frappell , and A. P. Farrell . Physiological responses of free-swimming adult coho salmon to simulated predator and fisheries encounters. Physiological and Biochemical Zoology 83, no. 6 (2010): 973–983.
Donaldson, M. R. , S. G. Hinch , K. M. Jeffries , D. A. Patterson , S. J. Cooke , A. P. Farrell , and K. M. Miller . Species-and sex-specific responses and recovery of wild, mature pacific salmon to an exhaustive exercise and air exposure stressor. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part A: Molecular & Integrative Physiology 173 (2014): 7–16.
Dontha, S. A review on antioxidant methods. Asian Journal of Pharmaceutical and Clinical Research 9, no. 2 (2016): 14–32.
Ellis, T. , H. Y. Yildiz , J. López-Olmeda , M. T. Spedicato , L. Tort , Ø. Øverli , and C. I. M. Martins . Cortisol and finfish welfare. Fish Physiology and Biochemistry 38, no. 1 (2012): 163–188.
Fatira, E. , N. Papandroulakis , and M. Pavlidis . Diel changes in plasma cortisol and effects of size and stress duration on the cortisol response in European sea bass (Dicentrarchus labrax). Fish Physiology and Biochemistry 40, no. 3 (2014): 911–919.
Faught, E. , N. Aluru , and M. M. Vijayan . The molecular stress response. In Fish physiology, vol. 35, pp. 113–166. Academic Press, 2016.
Fuchs, V. I. , J. Schmidt , M. J. Slater , J. Zentek , B. H. Buck , and D. Steinhagen . The effect of supplementation with polysaccharides, nucleotides, acidifiers and Bacillus strains in fish meal and soy bean based diets on growth performance in juvenile

turbot (Scophthalmus maximus). Aquaculture 437 (2015): 243–251.
Fürtbauer, I. , A. J. King , and M. Heistermann . Visible implant elastomer (VIE) tagging and simulated predation risk elicit similar physiological stress responses in threespined stickleback *Gasterosteus aculeatus* . Journal of Fish Biology 86, no. 5 (2015): 1644–1649.
Gao, J. , S. Koshio , M. Ishikawa , S. Yokoyama , B. T. Nguyen , and R. E. Mamauag . Effect of dietary oxidized fish oil and vitamin C supplementation on growth performance and reduction of oxidative stress in Red Sea Bream *Pagrus major* . Aquaculture Nutrition 19, no. 1 (2013): 35–44.
Gesto, M. , M. A. LópezPatiño , J. Hernández , J. L. Soengas , and J. M. Míguez . Gradation of the stress response in rainbow trout exposed to stressors of different severity: the role of brain serotonergic and dopaminergic systems. Journal of Neuroendocrinology 27, no. 2 (2015): 131–141.
Gesto, M. , M. A. López-Patiño , J. Hernández , J. L. Soengas , and J. M. Míguez . The response of brain serotonergic and dopaminergic systems to an acute stressor in rainbow trout: a time course study. Journal of Experimental Biology 216, no. 23 (2013): 4435–4442.
Ghazanfar, M. , S. Shahid , and I. Z. Qureshi . Vitamin C attenuates biochemical and genotoxic damage in common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) upon joint exposure to combined toxic doses of fipronil and buprofezin insecticides. Aquatic Toxicology 196 (2018): 43–52.
Giacomini, A. C. V. V. , M. S. de Abreu , G. Koakoski , R. Idalêncio , F. Kalichak , T. A. Oliveira , J. G. S. da Rosa , D. Gusso , A. L. Piato , and L. J. G. Barcellos . My stress, our stress: blunted cortisol response to stress in isolated housed zebrafish. Physiology & Behavior 139 (2015): 182–187.
Giri, S. S. , H. J. Kim , S. G. Kim , S. W. Kim , J. Kwon , S. B. Lee , V. Sukumaran , and S. C. Park . Effectiveness of the guava leaf extracts against lipopolysaccharide-induced oxidative stress and immune responses in Cyprinus carpio. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 105 (2020): 164–176.
Gozdowska, M. , E. Sokołowska , K. Pomianowski , and E. Kulczykowska . Melatonin and cortisol as components of the cutaneous stress response system in fish: Response to oxidative stress. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part A: Molecular & Integrative Physiology 268 (2022): 111207.
Hossain, M. S. Koshio, S. Ishikawa, M. Yokoyama, S. Sony, N. M. Kader, M. A. Maekawa, M. , and T. Fujieda . Effects of dietary administration of inosine on growth, immune response, oxidative stress and gut morphology of juvenile amberjack, Seriola dumerili. Aquaculture 468 (2017): 534–544.
Hori, T. S. , A. K. Gamperl , C. E. Hastings , G. E. V. Voort , J. Andrew , B. Robinson , S. C. Johnson , and L. O. B. Afonso . Inter-individual and-family differences in the cortisol responsiveness of Atlantic cod (Gadus morhua). Aquaculture 324 (2012): 165–173.
Huntingford, F. A. , and S. Kadri . Defining, assessing and promoting the welfare of farmed fish. Revue scientifique et technique (International Office of Epizootics) 33, no. 1 (2014): 233–244.
Huntingford, F. A. , Adams, C. , Braithwaite, V. A. , Kadri, S. , Pottinger, T. G. , Sandoe, P. , & Turnbull, J. F. Current issues in fish welfare. Journal of Fish Biology, 68, (2006): 332–372. 10.1111/j.0022-1112.2006.001046.x
Iwama, G. K. , P. T. Thomas , R. B. Forsyth , and M. M. Vijayan . Heat shock protein expression in fish. Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 8, no. 1 (1998): 35–56.
Jacobsen, L. , H. Baktoft , N. Jepsen , K. Aarestrup , S. Berg , and C. Skov . Effect of boat noise and angling on lake fish behaviour. Journal of Fish Biology 84, no. 6 (2014): 1768–1780.
Jeffrey, J. D. , M. J. Gollock , and K. M. Gilmour . Social stress modulates the cortisol response to an acute stressor in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). General and Comparative Endocrinology 196 (2014): 8–16.
Jeffries, K. M. , S. G. Hinch , T. Sierocinski , P. Pavlidis , and K. M. Miller . Transcriptomic responses to high water temperature in two species of P acific salmon. Evolutionary Applications 7, no. 2 (2014): 286–300.
Jeffries, K. M. , S. G. Hinch , T. Sierocinski , T. D. Clark , E. J. Eliason , M. R. Donaldson , S. Li , P. Pavlidis , and K. M. Miller . Consequences of high temperatures and premature mortality on the transcriptome and blood physiology of wild adult sockeye salmon (Oncorhynchus nerka). Ecology and Evolution 2, no. 7 (2012): 1747–1764.
Jeffries, K. M. , Brander, S. M. , Britton, M. T. , Fangue, N. A. , & Connon, R. E. Chronic exposures to low and high concentrations of ibuprofen elicit different gene response patterns in a euryhaline fish. Environmental Science and Pollution Research, 22, (2015): 17397–17413. 10.1007/s11356-015-4227-y
Jentoft, S. , A. H. Aastveit , P. A. Torjesen , and Ø. Andersen . Effects of stress on growth, cortisol and glucose levels in non-domesticated Eurasian perch (Perca fluviatilis) and domesticated rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part A: Molecular & Integrative Physiology 141, no. 3 (2005): 353–358.
Kassahn, K. S. , R. H. Crozier , H. O. Pörtner , and M. J. Caley . Animal performance and stress: responses and tolerance limits at different levels of biological organisation. Biological Reviews 84, no. 2 (2009): 277–292.
Kittilsen, S. , T. Ellis , J. Schjolden , B. O. Braastad , and Ø. Øverli . Determining stress-responsiveness in family groups of Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar) using non-invasive measures. Aquaculture 298, no. 1-2 (2009): 146–152.
Kotrschal, A. , P. Ilmonen , and D. J. Penn . Stress impacts telomere dynamics. Biology Letters 3, no. 2 (2007): 128–130.
Krasnov, A. , H. Koskinen , P. Pehkonen , C. E. Rexroad , S. Afanasyev , and H. Mölsä . Gene expression in the brain and kidney of rainbow trout in response to handling stress. BMC Genomics 6, no. 1 (2005): 1–11.
Kultz, D. Molecular and evolutionary basis of the cellular stress response. Annual Review of Physiology 67, no. 1 (2005): 225–257.
Kurtz, J. , K. M. Wegner , M. Kalbe , T. B. H. Reusch , H. Schaschl , D. Hasselquist , and M. Milinski . MHC genes and oxidative stress in sticklebacks: an immuno-ecological approach. Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences 273, no. 1592 (2006): 1407–1414.
Latif, M. , and M. Faheem . Study of Oxidative Stress and Histo-Biochemical Biomarkers of Diethyl Phthalate Induced Toxicity in a Cultureable Fish, *Labeo rohita* . Pakistan veterinary journal 40, no. 2 (2020).
Lee, J.Y. , and Y. Gao . Review of the application of garlic, Allium sativum, in aquaculture. Journal of the World Aquaculture Society 43, no. 4 (2012): 447–458.
Lee, M. T. , W. C. Lin , B. Yu , and T. T. Lee . Antioxidant capacity of phytochemicals and their potential effects on oxidative status in animals — a review, Asian-Australas. Journal of Animal Science 30 (2017): 299–308, 10.5713/ajas.16.0438.
Li, H.-T. , L. Feng , W.-D. Jiang , Y. Liu , J. Jiang , S.-H. Li , and X.-Q. Zhou . Oxidative stress parameters and anti-apoptotic response to hydroxyl radicals in fish erythrocytes: protective effects of glutamine, alanine, citrulline and proline. Aquatic Toxicology 126 (2013): 169–179.

Lushchak, V. I. Environmentally induced oxidative stress in aquatic animals. Aquatic toxicology 101, no. 1 (2011): 13–30.
Madison, B. N. , P. V. Hodson , and V. S. Langlois . Diluted bitumen causes deformities and molecular responses indicative of oxidative stress in Japanese medaka embryos. Aquatic Toxicology 165 (2015): 222–230.
Magnadottir, B. Immunological control of fish diseases. Marine Biotechnology 12, no. 4 (2010): 361–379.
Maqsood, S. , M. H. Samoon , and P. Singh . Immunomodulatory and growth promoting effect of dietary levamisole in Cyprinus carpio fingerlings against the challenge of Aeromonas hydrophila. Turkish Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 9, no. 1 (2009).
Martínez-Porchas M. , Luis Rafael M.-C. & Rogelio, R.-E. Cortisol and glucose: reliable indicators of fish stress? Pan-American Journal of Aquatic Sciences (2009): 158–178.
Marcogliese, D. J. , L. G. Brambilla , F. Gagné , and A. D. Gendron . Joint effects of parasitism and pollution on oxidative stress biomarkers in yellow perch Perca flavescens. Diseases of Aquatic Organisms 63, no. 1 (2005): 77–84.
McCallum, E. S. , R. E. Charney , J. R. Marenette , J. A. M. Young , M. A. Koops , D. J. D. Earn , B. M. Bolker , and S. Balshine . Persistence of an invasive fish (Neogobius melanostomus) in a contaminated ecosystem. Biological Invasions 16, no. 11 (2014): 2449–2461.
Milano, D. , M. Lozada , and H. E. Zagarese . Predator-induced reaction patterns of landlocked Galaxias maculatus to visual and chemical cues. Aquatic Ecology 44, no. 4 (2010): 741–748.
Miller, K. M. , S. Li , K. H. Kaukinen , N. Ginther , E. Hammill , J. M. R. Curtis , D. A. Patterson et al. Genomic signatures predict migration and spawning failure in wild Canadian salmon. Science 331, no. 6014 (2011): 214–217.
Misra, C. K. , B. K. Das , S. C. Mukherjee , and P. Pattnaik . Effect of long term administration of dietary β-glucan on immunity, growth and survival of Labeo rohita fingerlings. Aquaculture 255, no. 1-4 (2006): 82–94.
Momoda, T. S. , A. R. Schwindt , G. W. Feist , L. Gerwick , C. J. Bayne , and C. B. Schreck . Gene expression in the liver of rainbow trout, Oncorhynchus mykiss, during the stress response. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part D: Genomics and Proteomics 2, no. 4 (2007): 303–315.
Monaghan, P. , N. B. Metcalfe , and R. Torres . Oxidative stress as a mediator of life history tradeoffs: mechanisms, measurements and interpretation. Ecology Letters 12, no. 1 (2009): 75–92.
Nair, A. , D. Chattopadhyay , and B. Saha . Plant-derived immunomodulators. In New look to phytomedicine, pp. 435–499. Academic Press, 2019.
Netea, M. G. , L. A. B. Joosten , E. Latz , K. H. G. Mills , G. Natoli , H. G. Stunnenberg , L. A. J. O'Neill , and R. J. Xavier . Trained immunity: a program of innate immune memory in health and disease. Science 352, no. 6284 (2016): aaf1098.
Nya, E. J. , and B. Austin . Use of garlic, Allium sativum, to control Aeromonas hydrophila infection in rainbow trout, Oncorhynchus mykiss (Walbaum). Journal of Fish Diseases 32, no. 11 (2009): 963–970.
Ondreicka, R. , I. Beno , O. Cerna , E. Grancicová , M. Staruchová , K. Volkovová , P. Bobek , and M. Tatara . Relation between levels of vitamins C, E, A and beta-carotene and activity of antioxidant enzymes in the blood. Bratislavske Lekarske Listy 99, no. 5 (1998): 250–254.
Pavlidis, M. A. , and C. C. Mylonas , eds. Sparidae: Biology and aquaculture of gilthead sea bream and other species. John Wiley & Sons, 2011.
Petit, J. , and G. F. Wiegertjes . Long-lived effects of administering β-glucans: Indications for trained immunity in fish. Developmental & Comparative Immunology 64 (2016): 93–102.
Pohl, F. , and P. K. T. Lin . The potential use of plant natural products and plant extracts with antioxidant properties for the prevention/treatment of neurodegenerative diseases: In vitro, in vivo and clinical trials. Molecules 23 (2018) 3283, 10.3390/molecules23123283.
Raby, G. D. , M. R. Donaldson , S. G. Hinch , D. A. Patterson , A. G. Lotto , D. Robichaud , K. K. English et al. Validation of reflex indicators for measuring vitality and predicting the delayed mortality of wild coho salmon bycatch released from fishing gears. Journal of Applied Ecology 49, no. 1 (2012): 90–98.
Raby, G. D. , T. D. Clark , A. P. Farrell , D. A. Patterson , N. N. Bett , S. M. Wilson , W. G. Willmore , C. D. Suski , S. G. Hinch , and S. J. Cooke . Facing the river gauntlet: understanding the effects of fisheries capture and water temperature on the physiology of coho salmon. PLoS One 10, no. 4 (2015): e0124023.
Reverter, M. , N. Bontemps , D. Lecchini , B. Banaigs , and P. Sasal . Use of plant extracts in fish aquaculture as an alternative to chemotherapy: current status and future perspectives. Aquaculture 433 (2014): 50–61.
Rojo-Cebreros, A. H. , L. Ibarra-Castro , and J. M. Martínez-Brown . Immunostimulation and trained immunity in marine fish larvae. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 80 (2018): 15–21.
Ros, A. F. H. , P. Vullioud , R. Bruintjes , A. Vallat , and R. Bshary . Intra-and interspecific challenges modulate cortisol but not androgen levels in a year-round territorial damselfish. Journal of Experimental Biology 217, no. 10 (2014): 1768–1774.
Safriani, N. , F. Z. Rungkat , E. Prangdimurti , R. Verpoorte , and N. D. Yuliana . Using metabolomics to discover the immunomodulator activity of food plants. Heliyon (2022): e09507.
Schreck, C. B. , and L. Tort . The concept of stress in fish. In Fish Physiology (eds. C. B. Schreck , L. Tort , A. P. Farrell , and C. J. Brauner) vol. 35, pp. 1–34. San Diego, CA: Academic Press, 2016.
Segner, H. , H. Sundh , K. Buchmann , J. Douxfils , K. S. Sundell , C. Mathieu , N. Ruane , F. Jutfelt , H. Toften , and L. Vaughan . Health of farmed fish: its relation to fish welfare and its utility as welfare indicator. Fish Physiology and Biochemistry 38, no. 1 (2012): 85–105.
Sharma, P. , P. Chadha , and H. S. Saini . Tetrabromobisphenol A induced oxidative stress and genotoxicity in fish *Channa punctatus* . Drug and Chemical Toxicology 42, no. 6 (2019): 559–564.
Sloman, K. A. , and P. L. McNeil . Using physiology and behaviour to understand the responses of fish early life stages to toxicants. Journal of Fish Biology 81, no. 7 (2012): 2175–2198.
Sopinka, N. M. , M. R. Donaldson , C. M. O'Connor , C. D. Suski , and S. J. Cooke . Stress indicators in fish. In Fish Physiology, vol. 35, pp. 405–462. Academic Press, 2016.
Solomando, A. , A. Cohen-Sánchez , A. Box , I. Montero , S. Pinya , and A. Sureda . Microplastic presence in the pelagic fish, Seriola dumerili, from Balearic Islands (Western Mediterranean), and assessment of oxidative stress and detoxification biomarkers in liver. Environmental Research 212 (2022): 113369.
Stoot, L. J. , N. A. Cairns , F. Cull , J. J. Taylor , J. D. Jeffrey , F. Morin , J. W. Mandelman , T. D. Clark , and S. J. Cooke . Use of portable blood physiology point-of-care devices for basic and applied research on vertebrates: a review. Conservation Physiology 2,

no. 1 (2014).
Swain, P. , S. K. Nayak , P. K. Nanda , and S. Dash . Biological effects of bacterial lipopolysaccharide (endotoxin) in fish: a review. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 25, no. 3 (2008): 191–201.
Selye, H. A syndrome produced by Diverse Nocuous Agents. Nature, 138, (1936): 32–32. 10.1038/138032a0
Urbinati, E. C. , F. S. Zanuzzo , and J. D. Biller . Stress and immune system in fish. In Biology and Physiology of Freshwater Neotropical Fish, pp. 93–114. Academic Press, 2020.
Wingfield, J. C. Ecological processes and the ecology of stress: the impacts of abiotic environmental factors. Functional Ecology 27, no. 1 (2013): 37–44.
Wingfield, J.C. , Kelley, J.P. , & Angelier, F. What are extreme environmental conditions and how do organisms cope with them? Current Zoology 57(2011): 363–374.
Wu, P. , Y. Liu , W.-D. Jiang , J. Jiang , J. Zhao , Y.-A. Zhang , X.-Q. Zhou , and L. Feng . A comparative study on antioxidant system in fish hepatopancreas and intestine affected by choline deficiency: different change patterns of varied antioxidant enzyme genes and Nrf2 signaling factors. PLoS One 12, no. 1 (2017): e0169888.
Zanuzzo, F. S. , R. E. Sabioni , L. N. F. Montoya , G. Favero , and E. C. Urbinati . Aloe vera enhances the innate immune response of pacu (Piaractus mesopotamicus) after transport stress and combined heat killed Aeromonas hydrophila infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 65 (2017): 198–205.
Zanuzzo, F. S. , J. D. Biller-Takahashi , and E. C. Urbinati . Effect of Aloe vera extract on the improvement of the respiratory activity of leukocytes of matrinxa during the transport stress. Revista Brasileira de Zootecnia 41 (2012): 2299–2302.

Immunomodulators to Prevent Diseases and Minimize Antimicrobial Use

Acosta, J. , Roa, F. , Gonzalez-Chavarria, I. , Astuya, A. , Maura, R. , Montesino, R. , Munoz, C. , Camacho, F. , Saavedra, P. , Valenzuela, A. , et al. (2019). In vitro immunomodulatory activities of peptides derived from *Salmo salar* NK-lysin and cathelicidin in fish cells. Fish Shellfish Immunol, 88, 587–594
Ahmad, B. , Shah, M. , & Choi, S. (2019). Oceans as a source of immunotherapy. Marine Drugs, 17, 282.
Altmann, K. H. (2001). Microtubule-stabilizing agents: a growing class of important anticancer drugs. Current Opinion in Chemical Biology, 5(4), 424–431.
Arancibia, S. , Espinoza, C. , Salazar, F. , Del Campo, M. , Tampe, R. , Zhong, T. Y. ,... & Becker, M. I. (2014). A novel immunomodulatory hemocyanin from the limpet Fissurella latimarginata promotes potent anti-tumor activity in melanoma. PloS One, 9(1), e87240.
Ayeka, P. A. (2018). Potential of mushroom compounds as immunomodulators in cancer immunotherapy: a review. Evidence-Based Complementary and Alternative Medicine, 2018.
Ayrapetyan, O. N. , Obluchinskaya, E. D. , Zhurishkina, E. V. , Skorik, Y. A. , Lebedev, D. V. , Kulminskaya, A. A. , & Lapina, I. M. (2021). Antibacterial properties of fucoidans from the brown algae Fucus vesiculosus L. of the Barents Sea. Biology, 10(1), 67.
Baien, S. H. , Seele, J. , Henneck, T. , Freibrodt, C. , Szura, G. , Moubasher, H. ,… … & de Buhr, N. (2020). Antimicrobial and immunomodulatory effect of gum arabic on human and bovine granulocytes against *Staphylococcus aureus* and *Escherichia coli* . Frontiers in Immunology, 10, 3119.
Benkendorff, K. (2010). Molluscan biological and chemical diversity: Secondary metabolites and medicinal resources produced by marine molluscs. Biological Reviews, 85(4), 757–775.
Biris-Dorhoi, E. S. , Michiu, D. , Pop, C. R. , Rotar, A. M. , Tofana, M. , Pop, O. L. ,… … & Farcas, A. C. (2020). Macroalgae—A sustainable source of chemical compounds with biological activities. Nutrients, 12(10), 3085.
Brandtzaeg, P. (2010). The mucosal immune system and its integration with the mammary glands. The Journal of Pediatrics, 156(2), S8–S15.
Brown, G. D. , Willment, J. A. , & Whitehead, L. (2018). C-type lectins in immunity and homeostasis. Nature Reviews Immunology, 18(6), 374–389.
Cai, B. , Chen, H. , Wan, P. , Luo, L. , Ye, Z. , Huang, J. ,... & Pan, J. (2022). Isolation and identification of immunomodulatory peptides from the protein hydrolysate of tuna trimmings (Thunnas albacares). LWT, 164, 113614.
Cao, X. , Zhang, Q. , Zhu, Y. , Li, S. , Cai, Y. , Li, P. , Liu, D. , Leng, Y. , Ye, S. , Xu, Z. and Li, H. (2022). Structural characterization and immunoenhancing effects of a polysaccharide from the soft coral lobophytumsarcophytoides. Marine Biotechnology, 24(1), 203–215.
Chernikov, O. V. , Chiu, H. W. , Li, L. H. , Kokoulin, M. S. , Molchanova, V. I. , Hsu, H. T. ,… … & Hua, K. F. (2021). Immunomodulatory properties of polysaccharides from the coral pseudopterogorgiaamericana in macrophages. Cells, 10(12), 3531.
Chikalovets, I. V. , Kovalchuk, S. N. , Litovchenko, A. P. , Molchanova, V. I. , Pivkin, M. V. , & Chernikov, O. V. (2016). A new Gal/GalNAc-specific lectin from the mussel Mytilus trossulus: structure, tissue specificity, antimicrobial and antifungal activity. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 50, 27–33.
Costa, J. A. V. , Lucas, B. F. , Alvarenga, A. G. P. , Moreira, J. B. , & de Morais, M. G. (2021). Microalgae polysaccharides: an overview of production, characterization, and potential applications. Polysaccharides, 2(4), 759–772.
Cumashi, A. , Ushakova, N. A. , Preobrazhenskaya, M. E. , D'Incecco, A. , Piccoli, A. , Totani, L. ,... & Nifantiev, N. E. (2007). A comparative study of the anti-inflammatory, anticoagulant, antiangiogenic, and antiadhesive activities of nine different fucoidans from brown seaweeds. Glycobiology, 17(5), 541–552.
Cunha, L. & Grenha, A. (2016). Sulfated seaweed polysaccharides as multifunctional materials in drug delivery applications. Marine Drugs, 14(3), 42.
Ding, F. F. , Li, C. H. , & Chen, J. (2019). Molecular characterization of the NK-lysin in a teleost fish, Boleophthalmuspectinirostris: Antimicrobial activity and immunomodulatory activity on monocytes/macrophages. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 92, 256–264.
Ding, Y. , Liu, X. , Bu, L. , Li, H. , & Zhang, S. (2012). Antimicrobial-immunomodulatory activities of zebrafish phosvitin-derived peptide Pt5. Peptides, 37, 309–313
Durai, P. , Batool, M. , & Choi, S. (2015). Structure and effects of cyanobacterial lipopolysaccharides. Marine Drugs, 13(7), 4217–4230.

Goldring, W. P. , & Pattenden, G. (2004). Total synthesis of (±)-phomactin G, a platelet activating factor antagonist from the marine fungus Phoma sp. Organic & Biomolecular Chemistry, 2(4), 466–473.
Gordaliza, M. (2010). Cytotoxic terpene quinones from marine sponges. Marine Drugs, 8(12), 2849–2870.
Grienke, U. , Silke, J. , & Tasdemir, D. (2014). Bioactive compounds from marine mussels and their effects on human health. Food Chemistry, 142, 48–60.
Gunathilake, V. , Bertolino, M. , Bavestrello, G. , & Udagama, P. (2020). Immunomodulatory activity of the marine sponge, Haliclona (Soestella) sp.(Haplosclerida: Chalinidae), from Sri Lanka in Wistar albino rats: immunosuppression and Th1-skewed cytokine response. Journal of Immunology Research, 2020, 1–11.
Gutiérrez, S. , Svahn, S. L. , & Johansson, M. E. (2019). Effects of omega-3 fatty acids on immune cells. International Journal of Molecular Sciences, 20(20), 5028.
Hafting, J. T. , Craigie, J. S. , Stengel, D. B. , Loureiro, R. R. , Buschmann, A. H. , Yarish, C. ,... & Critchley, A. T. (2015). Prospects and challenges for industrial production of seaweed bioactives. Journal of Phycology, 51(5), 821–837.
Haney, E. F. , & Hancock, R. E. (2013). Peptide design for antimicrobial and immunomodulatory applications. Peptide Science, 100(6), 572–583.
Havla, J. , Warnke, C. , Derfuss, T. , Kappos, L. , Hartung, H.P. & Hohlfeld, R. (2016). Interdisciplinary risk management in the treatment of multiple sclerosis. Deutsches Ärzteblatt International, 113 (51-52), 879- 886.
Hou, H. , Fan, Y. , Wang, S. K. , Si, L. L. , & Li, B. F. (2016). Immunomodulatory activity of Alaska pollock hydrolysates obtained by glutamic acid biosensor—Artificial neural network and the identification of its active central fragment. J. Funct. Foods, 24, 37–47.
Huang, J. , Huang, J. , Li, Y. , Wang, Y. , Wang, F. , Qiu, X. ,… … & Li, H. (2021). Sodium alginate modulates immunity, intestinal mucosal barrier function, and gut microbiota in cyclophosphamide-induced immunosuppressed BALB/c mice. Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry, 69(25), 7064–7073.
Ismail, M. M. , Alotaibi, B. S. , & El-Sheekh, M. M. (2020). Therapeutic uses of red macroalgae. Molecules, 25(19), 4411.
Kamada, N. , Seo, S. U. , Chen, G. Y. , & Núñez, G. (2013). Role of the gut microbiota in immunity and inflammatory disease. Nature Reviews Immunology, 13(5), 321–335.
Kang, H. K. , Lee, H. H. , Seo, C. H. , & Park, Y. (2019). Antimicrobial and immunomodulatory properties and applications of marine-derived proteins and peptides. Marine Drugs, 17(6), 350.
Kapustina, I. I. , Kalinovskii, A. I. , Dmitrenok, P. S. , Kuz'mich, A. S. , Nedashkovskaya, O. I. and Grebnev, B. B. (2014). Diterpenoids and other metabolites from the Vietnamese gorgonians Lophogorgia sp. and Junceella sp. Chemistry of Natural Compounds, 50(6), 1140–1142.
Kiewiet, M. B. , Faas, M. M. , & De Vos, P. (2018). Immunomodulatory protein hydrolysates and their application. Nutrients, 10(7), 904.
Kim, J. , Yung, B. C. , Kim, W. J. , & Chen, X. (2017). Combination of nitric oxide and drug delivery systems: tools for overcoming drug resistance in chemotherapy. Journal of Controlled Release, 263, 223–230.
Kim, E. K. , Kim, Y. S. , Hwang, J. W. , Kang, S. H. , Choi, D. K. , Lee, K. H. ,... & Park, P. J. (2013). Purification of a novel nitric oxide inhibitory peptide derived from enzymatic hydrolysates of Mytilus coruscus. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 34(6), 1416–1420.
Kingston, D. G. (2009). Tubulin-interactive natural products as anticancer agents. Journal of Natural Products, 72(3), 507–515.
Lam, A. , Prabhu, R. , Gross, C. M. , Riesenberg, L. A. , Singh, V. , & Aggarwal, S. (2017). Role of apoptosis and autophagy in tuberculosis. American Journal of Physiology-Lung Cellular and Molecular Physiology, 313(2), L218–L229.
Lammers, T. , Kiessling, F. , Hennink, W. E. , & Storm, G. (2012). Drug targeting to tumors: principles, pitfalls and (pre-) clinical progress. Journal of Controlled Release, 161(2), 175–187.
Laurienzo, P. (2010). Marine polysaccharides in pharmaceutical applications: an overview. Marine drugs, 8(9), 2435–2465.
Lauritano, C. , Martín, J. , de la Cruz, M. , Reyes, F. , Romano, G. , & Ianora, A. (2018). First identification of marine diatoms with anti-tuberculosis activity. Scientific Reports, 8(1), 2284.
Li, W. , Ye, S. , Zhang, Z. , Tang, J. , Jin, H. , Huang, F. ,... & Yu, F. (2019). Purification and characterization of a novel pentadecapeptide from protein hydrolysates of Cyclina sinensis and its immunomodulatory effects on RAW264. 7 cells. Marine Drugs, 17(1), 30.
Lin, W. C. , Chang, H. Y. , & Chen, J. Y. (2016). Electrotransfer of the tilapia piscidin 3 and tilapia piscidin 4 genes into skeletal muscle enhances the antibacterial and immunomodulatory functions of *Oreochromis niloticus* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 50, 200–209.
Liu, W. , Bi, S. , Li, C. , Zheng, H. , Guo, Z. , Luo, Y. ,… … & Yu, R. (2020). Purification and characterization of a new CRISP-related protein from Scapharcabroughtonii and its immunomodulatory activity. Marine Drugs, 18(6), 299.
Luo, M. , Shao, B. , Nie, W. , Wei, X. W. , Li, Y. L. , Wang, B. L. ,... & Wei, Y. Q. (2015). Antitumor and adjuvant activity of λ-carrageenan by stimulating immune response in cancer immunotherapy. Scientific Reports, 5(1), 11062.
Ma, Y. G. , Cho, M. Y. , Zhao, M. , Park, J. W. , Matsushita, M. , Fujita, T. , & Lee, B. L. (2004). Human mannose-binding lectin and L-ficolin function as specific pattern recognition proteins in the lectin activation pathway of complement. Journal of Biological Chemistry, 279(24), 25307–25312.
Macagno, A. , Molteni, M. , Rinaldi, A. , Bertoni, F. , Lanzavecchia, A. , Rossetti, C. , Sallusto, F. (2006). A cyanobacterial LPS antagonist prevents endotoxin shock and blocks sustained TLR4 stimulation required for cytokine expression. JEM, 203(6), 1481–1492
Magnadottir, B. (2006). Innate immunity of fish (overview). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 20, 137–151
Magnani, M. , Crinelli, R. , Bianchi, M. , & Antonelli, A. (2000). The ubiquitin-dependent proteolytic system and other potential targets for the modulation of nuclear factor-kB (NF-kB). Current Drug Targets, 1(4), 387–399.
Marchese, P. , Young, R. , O'Connell, E. , Afoullouss, S. , Baker, B. J. , Allcock, A. L. ,... & Murphy, J. M. (2021). Deep-sea coral garden invertebrates and their associated fungi are genetic resources for chronic disease drug discovery. Marine Drugs, 19(7), 390.
Marcinkiewicz, J. , & Kontny, E. (2014). Taurine and inflammatory diseases. Amino Acids, 46, 7–20.
Masso-Silva, J. A. , & Diamond, G. (2014). Antimicrobial peptides from fish. Pharmaceuticals, 7(3), 265–310.
Medzhitov, R. , & Janeway Jr, C. (2000). Innate immunity. New England Journal of Medicine, 343(5), 338–344.
Meikle, P. , Richards, G. N. , & Yellowlees, D. (1988). Structural investigations on the mucus from six species of coral. Marine Biology, 99, 187–193.
Mencarelli, A. , Amore, C. D. , Renga, B. , Cipriani, S. , Carino, A. , Sepe, V. , Perissutti, E. , Auria, M. V. D. , Zampella, A. , Distrutti, E. , Fiorucci, S. . (2014). Solomonsterol A, a Marine Pregnane-X-Receptor Agonist, Attenuates Inflammation and Immune Dysfunction in a Mouse Model of Arthritis. Marine Drugs, 12, 36–53.

Mirzaei, R. , Bouzari, B. , Hosseini-Fard, S. R. , Mazaheri, M. , Ahmadyousefi, Y. , Abdi, M. ,… … & Karampoor, S. (2021). Role of microbiota-derived short-chain fatty acids in nervous system disorders. Biomedicine & Pharmacotherapy, 139, 111661.
Mitta, G. , Vandenbulcke, F. , Hubert, F. , Salzet, M. , & Roch, P. (2000). Involvement of mytilins in mussel antimicrobial defense. Journal of Biological Chemistry, 275(17), 12954–12962.
Montuori, E. , de Pascale, D. , & Lauritano, C. (2022). Recent discoveries on marine organism immunomodulatory activities. Marine Drugs, 20(7), 422.
Mora Román, J. J. , Del Campo, M. , Villar, J. , Paolini, F. , Curzio, G. , Venuti, A. ,… … & Becker, M. I. (2019). Immunotherapeutic potential of mollusk hemocyanins in combination with human vaccine adjuvants in murine models of oral cancer. Journal of Immunology Research, 2019.
Naidoo, J. , Page, D. B. , & Wolchok, J. D. (2014). Immune modulation for cancer therapy. British Journal of Cancer, 111(12), 2214–2219
Neelima, S. , Archana, K. , Athira, P. P. , Anju, M. V. , Anooja, V. V. , Bright Singh, I. S. , & Philip, R. (2021). Molecular characterization of a novel β-defensin isoform from the red-toothed trigger fish, Odonusniger (Ruppel, 1836). Journal of Genetic Engineering and Biotechnology, 19(1), 71.
Nesse, K. O. , Nagalakshmi, A. P. , Marimuthu, P. , and Singh, M. (2011). Efficacy of a fish protein hydrolysate in malnourished children. Ind. J. Clin. Biochem., 26, 360–365.
Newman, D. J. , & Cragg, G. M. (2020). Natural products as sources of new drugs over the nearly four decades from 01/1981 to 09/2019. Journal of Natural Products, 83(3), 770–803.
Ngo, D. H. , & Kim, S. K. (2013). Sulfated polysaccharides as bioactive agents from marine algae. International Journal of Biological Macromolecules, 62, 70–75.
Nijkamp, J. , Kusters, M. , Beets-Tan, R. G. , Martijn, H. , Beets, G. L. , van de Velde, C. J. , & Marijnen, C. A. (2011). Three-dimensional analysis of recurrence patterns in rectal cancer: the cranial border in hypofractionated preoperative radiotherapy can be lowered. International Journal of Radiation Oncology, Biology, Physics, 80(1), 103–110.
Paolino, M. , & Penninger, J. M. (2010, June). Cbl-b in T-cell activation. In Seminars in immunopathology (Vol. 32, pp. 137–148). Springer-Verlag.
Park, G. T. , Go, R. E. , Lee, H. M. , Lee, G. A. , Kim, C. W. , Seo, J. W. ,... & Hwang, K. A. (2017). Potential anti-proliferative and immunomodulatory effects of marine microalgal exopolysaccharide on various human cancer cells and lymphocytes in vitro. Marine Biotechnology, 19, 136–146.
Peng, Y. , Song, Y. , Wang, Q. , Hu, Y. , He, Y. , Ren, D. ,... & Zhou, H. (2019). In vitro and in vivo immunomodulatory effects of fucoidan compound agents. International Journal of Biological Macromolecules, 127, 48–56.
Portela, L. C. P. N. , Cahú, T. B. , Bezerra, T. S. , do Nascimento Santos, D. K. D. , Sousa, G. F. , Portela, R. W. S. ,… … & de Souza Bezerra, R. (2022). Biocompatibility and immunostimulatory properties of fish collagen and shrimp chitosan towards peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs). International Journal of Biological Macromolecules, 210, 282–291.
Riccio, G. , & Lauritano, C. (2019). Microalgae with immunomodulatory activities. Marine Drugs, 18(1), 2.
Routy, J.P. , Routy, B. , Graziani, G.M. & Mehraj, V. (2016). The kynurenine pathway is a double-edged sword in immune-privileged sites and in cancer: implications for immunotherapy. International Journal of Tryptophan Research, 9, IJTR-S38355.
Saeed, M. , Arain, M. A. , Ali Fazlani, S. , Marghazani, I. B. , Umar, M. , Soomro, J. ,... & Alagawany, M. (2021). A comprehensive review on the health benefits and nutritional significance of fucoidan polysaccharide derived from brown seaweeds in human, animals and aquatic organisms. Aquaculture Nutrition, 27(3), 633–654.
Sasikala, C. , & Geetha Ramani, D. (2017). Comparative study on antimicrobial activity of seaweeds. Asian J. Pharm. Clin. Res., 10, 384–386.
Sayed, A. M. , Hassan, M. H. , Alhadrami, H. A. , Hassan, H. M. , Goodfellow, M. , & Rateb, M. E. (2020). Extreme environments: Microbiology leading to specialized metabolites. Journal of Applied Microbiology, 128(3), 630–657.
Sehn, L. H. , Herrera, A. F. , Flowers, C. R. , Kamdar, M. K. , McMillan, A. , Hertzberg, M. ,... & Matasar, M. J. (2020). Polatuzumab vedotin in relapsed or refractory diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. Journal of Clinical Oncology, 38(2), 155.
Selvaraj, V. , Sampath, K. , & Sekar, V. (2005). Administration of yeast glucan enhances survival and some non-specific and specific immune parameters in carp (Cyprinus carpio) infected with Aeromonas hydrophila. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 19(4), 293–306.
Sharon, N. (2007). Lectins: Carbohydrate-specific reagents and biological recognition molecules. Journal of Biological Chemistry, 282(5), 2753–2764.
Shi, H. , Bi, S. , Li, H. , Li, J. , Li, C. , Yu, R. ,… … & Zhu, J. (2021). Purification and characterization of a novel mixed-linkage α, β-d-glucan from Arca subcrenata and its immunoregulatory activity. International Journal of Biological Macromolecules, 182, 207–216.
Singh, R. K. , Tiwari, S. P. , Rai, A. K. , & Mohapatra, T. M. (2011). Cyanobacteria: an emerging source for drug discovery. The Journal of Antibiotics, 64(6), 401–412.
Sipkema, D. , Franssen, M. C. , Osinga, R. , Tramper, J. , & Wijffels, R. H. (2005). Marine sponges as pharmacy. Marine Biotechnology, 7, 142–162.
Song, M. K. , Salam, N. K. , Roufogalis, B. D. , & Huang, T. H. W. (2011). Lyciumbarbarum (Goji Berry) extracts and its taurine component inhibit PPAR-γ-dependent gene transcription in human retinal pigment epithelial cells: possible implications for diabetic retinopathy treatment. Biochemical Pharmacology, 82(9), 1209–1218.
Synytsya, A. , Čopíková, J. , Kim, W. J. , & Park, Y. I. (2015). Cell wall polysaccharides of marine algae. Springer Handbook of Marine Biotechnology, 543–590.
Takahashi, B. J. D. , & Urbinati, E. C. Fish Immunology . (2014). The modification and manipulation of the innate immune system: Brazilian studies. An Acad Bras Cienc., 86, 3.
Takeiti, C. Y. , Antonio, G. C. , Motta, E. M. , Collares-Queiroz, F. P. , & Park, K. J. (2009). Nutritive evaluation of a non-conventional leafy vegetable (Pereskia aculeata Miller). International Journal of Food Sciences and Nutrition, 60(sup1), 148–160.
Talley, R. W. , O'Bryan, R. M. , Tucker, W. G. , & Loo, R. V. (1967). Clinical pharmacology and human antitumor activity of cytosine arabinoside. Cancer, 20(5), 809–816.
Tanaka, T. , & Kishimoto, T. (2014). The biology and medical implications of interleukin-6. Cancer Immunology Research, 2(4), 288–294.
Thao, N. P. , Luyen, B. T. T. , Kim, E. J. , Kang, J. I. , Kang, H. K. , Cuong, N. X. , Nam, N. H. , Kiem, P. V. , Minh, C. V. , & Kim, Y. H. (2014). Steroidal constituents from the edible sea Urchin Diademasavignyi Michelin induce apoptosis in human cancer cells. J. Med.

Food, 18, 45–53.
Venugopal, V. , & Gopakumar, K. (2017). Shellfish: Nutritive value, health benefits, and consumer safety. Comprehensive Reviews in Food Science and Food Safety, 16(6), 1219–1242.
Villa, F. A. , Lieske, K. , & Gerwick, L. (2010). Selective MyD88-dependent pathway inhibition by the cyanobacterial natural product Malyngamide F acetate. Eur. J. Pharmacol., 629, 140–146.
Villani, D. , Cognetta, C. , Repetto, C. , Serino, S. , Toniolo, D. , Scanzi, F. , & Riva, G. (2018). Promoting emotional well-being in older breast cancer patients: Results From an eHealth Intervention. Frontiers in Psychology, 9, 2279.
Wang, Y. K. , He, H. L. , Wang, G. F. , Wu, H. , Zhou, B. C. , Chen, X. L. , & Zhang, Y. Z. (2010). Oyster (*Crassostrea gigas*) Hydrolysates produced on a plant scale have antitumor activity and immunostimulating effects in BALB/c mice. Marine Drugs, 8, 255–268.
Wasana, W. P. , Senevirathne, A. , Nikapitiya, C. , Eom, T. Y. , Lee, Y. , Lee, J. S. ,... & De Zoysa, M. (2021). A novel Pseudoalteromonas xiamenensis marine isolate as a potential probiotic: Anti-inflammatory and innate immune modulatory effects against thermal and pathogenic stresses. Marine Drugs, 19(12), 707.
Wells, M. L. , Potin, P. , Craigie, J. S. , Raven, J. A. , Merchant, S. S. , Helliwell, K. E. ,... & Brawley, S. H. (2017). Algae as nutritional and functional food sources: Revisiting our understanding. Journal of Applied Phycology, 29, 949–982.
Wessels, W. (2016). Molecular bases of soft coral reproduction (Doctoral dissertation, James Cook University).
Widyaningrum, D. , Oktafika, R. A. , & Cecilia, D. (2022, February). Microalgae pigments as a promising immunomodulating food ingredient: In silico study. In *IOP Conference Series: Earth and Environmental Science* (Vol. 998, No. 1, p. 012056). IOP Publishing.
Wu, M. H. , Pan, T. M. , Wu, Y. J. , Chang, S. J. , Chang, M. S. , & Hu, C. Y. (2010). Exopolysaccharide activities from probiotic bifidobacterium: Immunomodulatory effects (on J774A. 1 macrophages) and antimicrobial properties. International Journal of Food Microbiology, 144(1), 104–110.
Wu, H. , Lei, Y. , Lu, J. , Zhu, R. , Xiao, D. , Jiao, C. ,... & Li, M. (2019). Effect of citric acid induced crosslinking on the structure and properties of potato starch/chitosan composite films. Food Hydrocolloids, 97, 105208.
Xiang, N. , Rädecker, N. , Pogoreutz, C. , Cárdenas, A. , Meibom, A. , Wild, C. ,... & Voolstra, C. R. (2022). Presence of algal symbionts affects denitrifying bacterial communities in the sea anemone Aiptasia coral model. ISME Communications, 2(1), 105.
Xu, J. , Yi, M. , Ding, L. , & He, S. (2019). A review of anti-inflammatory compounds from marine fungi, 2000–2018. Marine Drugs, 17(11), 636.
Yang, M. , Ma, C. , Sun, J. , Shao, Q. , Gao, W. , Zhang, Y. ,... & Qu, X. (2008). Fucoidan stimulation induces a functional maturation of human monocyte-derived dendritic cells. International Immunopharmacology, 8(13-14), 1754–1760.
Yen, H. W. , Yang, S. C. , Chen, C. H. , & Chang, J. S. (2015). Supercritical fluid extraction of valuable compounds from microalgal biomass. Bioresource Technology, 184, 291–296.
Yen, H. W. , Hu, I. C. , Chen, C. Y. , Ho, S. H. , Lee, D. J. , & Chang, J. S. (2013). Microalgae-based biorefinery–from biofuels to natural products. Bioresource Technology, 135, 166–174.
Yende, S. R. , Harle, U. N. , & Chaugule, B. B. (2014). Therapeutic potential and health benefits of Sargassum species. Pharmacognosy Reviews, 8(15), 1.
Yu, Y. , Shen, M. , Song, Q. , & Xie, J. (2018). Biological activities and pharmaceutical applications of polysaccharide from natural resources: a review. Carbohydrate polymers, 183, 91–101.
Zhang, Q. Y. , Yan, Z. B. , Meng, Y. M. , Hong, X. Y. , Shao, G. , Ma, J. J. ,... & Fu, C. Y. (2021). Antimicrobial peptides: mechanism of action, activity and clinical potential. Military Medical Research, 8, 1–25.
Zhu, M. , Ge, L. , Lyu, Y. , Zi, Y. , Li, X. , Li, D. , & Mu, C. (2017). Preparation, characterization and antibacterial activity of oxidized κ-carrageenan. Carbohydrate Polymers, 174, 1051–1058.

Immunomodulation in Aquaculture Health Management

Aggett R , Leach JL , Rueda R , MacLean WC (2002) Innovation in infant formula development: a reassessment of ribonucleotides in 2002. Nutrition 19; 375–384.
Alvarez-Pellitero P , Sitja-Bobadilla A , Bermudez R , Quiroga MI (2006) Levamisole activates several innate immune factors in *Scophthalmus maximus* (L.) Teleostei. Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol 19; 727–738.
Aly SM , Mohamed MF , John G (2008) Effect of probiotics on the survival, growth and challenge infection in Tilapia nilotica (*Oreochromis niloticus*). Aquaculture Res 39; 647–656.
Ali A , Karunasagar I , Pais R , Tauro P (1996) Effect of yeast glucans on the immune response of Indian major carp Labeorohita. Abst37thAnn ConfAssocMicrobolIndia.
Anderson DP , Siwicki AK , Rumsey GL (1995) Injection or immersion delivery of selected immunostimulants to trout demonstrate enhancement of nonspecific defense mechanisms and protective immunity. In: Diseases in Asian Aquaculture, Vol. 11 (edited by M Shariff , RP Subasighe & JR Arthur) Fish Health Section, Asian Fisheries Society, Manila, Philippines, pp. 413–426.
Austin B (1997). Progress in understanding the fish pathogen Aeromonas salmonicida. Trends Biotechnol 15; 131–134.
Baba T , Watase Y , Yoshinaga Y (1993). Activation of mononuclear phagocyte function by levamisole immersion in carp. Nippon Suisan Gakkaishi, 59 (2); 301–307.
Bagni M , Romano N , Finoia MG , Abelli L , Scapigliati G , Tiscar P (2005) Short- and long-term effects of a dietary yeast beta-glucan (Macrogard) and alginic acid (Ergosan) preparation on immune response in sea bass (*Dicentrarchus labrax*). Fish Shellfish Immunol 18; 311–325.
Bashir I , Lone FA , Bhat RA , Mir SA , Dar ZA , Dar SA (2020) Concerns and threats of contamination on aquatic ecosystems. InBioremediation and Biotechnology, Springer, Cham; 1–26.
Beemelmanns A , Roth O (2017) Grandparental immune priming in the pipefish *Syngnathus typhle* . BMC Evol Biol 17; 44.
Beemelmanns A , Roth O (2016) Biparental immune priming in the pipefish *Syngnathus typhle* . Zoology 119; 262–272.
Boyd CE , McNevin AA , Davis RP (2022) The contribution of fisheries and aquaculture to the global protein supply. Food Security 20; 1–23.

Bricknell I , Dalmo R (2005) The use of immunostimulants in fish larval aquaculture. Fish. Shellfish Immunol. 19; 457–472.
Buchmann K (2014). Evolution of innate immunity: clues from invertebrates via fish to mammals. Front. Immunol. 23; 5:459.
Bullock G , Blazer V , Tsukuda S , Summerfelt S (2000) Toxicity of acidified chitosan for cultured rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Aquaculture 185; 273–280.
Barman D , Nen P , Mandal SC , Kumar V (2013) Immunostimulants for Aquaculture Health Management. J Marine Sci Res Dev 3; 134. doi: 10.4172/2155-9910.1000134.
Campos M , Godson D , Hughes H , Babiuk L , Sordillo L (1993) The role of biological response modifiers in disease control. J Dairy Sci 76; 2407–2417.
Caroline Alexandre de Araújo, L , Maria da Silva, S , Artur de Queiroz Cavalcanti de Sá, R , Vitoria Araujo Lima, A , Virginia Barbosa, A , dos Santos Silva, J , Massari Leite, K , Jose do Nascimento Júnior, W , da Mota Silveira-Filho, V , Lucena Mendes-Marques, C , Henrique Da Silva, F , & Betânia Melo de Oliveira, M (2021). Effects of Antibiotics on Impacted Aquatic Environment Microorganisms, Emerging Contaminants. IntechOpen. 10.5772/intechopen.93910.
Chang CS , Huang SL , Chen S , Chen SN (2013) Innate immune responses and efficacy of using mushroom beta-glucan mixture (MBG) on orange-spotted grouper, *Epinephelus coioides*, aquaculture. Fish. Shellfish. Immunol 35; 115–125.
Chi C , Giri SS , Jun JW , Kim HJ , Yun S , Kim SG , Park SC (2016) Immunomodulatory effects of a bioactive compound isolated from *Dryopteris crassirhizoma* on the grass carp *Ctenopharyngodon idella* . J Immunol Res 2016.
Cuesta A , Esteban MA , Meseguer J (2003) In vitro effect of chitin particles as the innate cellular immune system of gilthead seabream (Sparusaurata L.). Fish Shellfish Immunol 15; 1–11.
Dalmo RA , Bogwald J (2008). Beta-glucans as conductors of immune symphonies. Fish Shellfish Immunol 25; 384–396.
Dalmo RA , Bogwald J , Ingebrigtsen K , Seljelid R (1996) The immunomodulatory effect of laminaran [β (1, 3)Dglucan] on Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L., anterior kidney leucocytes after intraperitoneal, peroral and peranal administration. J Fish Dis 19; 449–457.
Dalmo RA , Ingebrigtsen K , Horsberg TE , Seljelid R (1994) Intestinal absorption of immunomodulatory laminaran and derivatives in Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L. J Fish Dis 17; 579–589.
Dalmo RA , Kjerstad AA , Arnesen SM , Tobias PS , Bogwald J (2000) Bath exposure of atlantic halibut (*Hippoglossus hippoglossus* L.) yolk sac larvae to bacterial lipopolysaccharide (LPS): absorption and distribution of the LPS and effect on fish survival. Fish Shellfish Immunol 10; 107–128.
Dalmo RA , Seljelid R (1995) The immunomodulatory effect of LPS, laminaran and sulphated laminaran [β (l, 3)Dglucan] on Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L., macrophages in vitro. J Fish Dis 18; 175–185.
Domenico JD , Canova R , Soveral LD , Nied CO , Costa MM , Frandoloso R , Kreutz LC (2017) Immunomodulatory effects of dietary β-glucan in silver catfish (*Rhamdia quelen*). Pesqui Vet Bras 37; 73–78.
Esteban MA , Cuesta A , Ortuno J , Meseguer J (2001) Immunomodulatory effects of dietary intake of chitin on gilthead seabream (*Sparus aurata* L.) innate immune system. Fish Shellfish Immunol 11; 303–315.
Findlay VL , Munday BL (2000) The immunomodulatory effects of levamisole on the nonspecific immune system of Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L. J Fish Dis 23; 369–378.
Galeotti M , Volpatti D , Jeney G (1995) The nature of non-specific immune response of sea bass (Dicentrarchuslabrax) to Pasteurellapiscicida following bath exposure to levamisole. European Assoc Fish Pathologist Seventh IntConfPalma de Mallorca, Spain.
Galeotti M (1998) Some aspects of the application of immunostimulants and a critical review of methods for their evaluation. J ApplIchthyol 14; 189–199.
Gopalakannan A , Arul V (2006) Immunomodulatory effects of dietary intake of chitin, chitosan and levamisole on the immune system of *Cyprinus carpio* and control of *Aeromonas hydrophila* infection in ponds. Aquaculture 255; 179–187.
Halwart M. Aquaculture in SOFIA (2022) FAO Aquaculture Newsletter. 2022 Dec 1(66); 7–8.
Hara A , Hiramatsu N , Fujita T (2016) Vitellogenesis and choriogenesis in fishes. Fish Sci. 82; 187–202.
Hussan A , Gon T (2016) Common problems in aquaculture and their preventive measures. Aquac Times J. 2; 6–9.
Ingebrigtsen K , Horsberg TE , Dalmo R , Seljelid R (1993) Tissue distribution of the immunomodulator aminated β1–3 polyglucose in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) after intravenous, intraperitoneal and peroral administration. Aquaculture 117; 29–35.
Jorgensen JB , Sharp GJE , Secombes CJ , Robertsen B (1993) Effect of a yeast-ceIl-wall glucan on the bactericidal activity of rainbow trout macrophages. Fish Shellfish Immunol 3; 267–277.
Jorgensen JB , Lunde H , Robertsen B (1993). Peritoneal and head kidney cell response to intraperitoneally injected yeast glucan in Atlantic salmon, Salmo salar L. Journal of Fish Diseases, 16; 313–325.
Kajita Y , Sakai M , Atsuta S , Kobayashi M (1990) The immunomodulatory effects of levamisole on rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* . Fish Pathol 25; 93–98.
Kato G , Kato K , Saito K , Pe Y , Kondo H , Aoki T (2011) Vaccine efficacy of *Mycobacterium bovis* BCG against Mycobacterium sp. Infection in amberjack *Seriola dumerili* . Fish Shellfish Immunol 30; 467–472.
Kato G , Kondo H , Aoki T , Hirono I (2010) BCG vaccine confers adaptive immunity against Mycobacterium sp. infection in fish. Dev Comp Immunol. 34; 133–140.
Kato G , Kondo H , Aoki T , Hirono I (2012) *Mycobacterium bovis* BCG vaccine induces non-specific immune responses in Japanese flounder against *Nocardia seriolae* . Fish Shellfish Immunol 33; 243–250.
Kawakami H , Shinohara N , Sakai M (1998) The non-specific immunostimulation and adjuvant effect of *Vibrio anguillarum* bacterin, M-glucan, chitin, Freund's complete adjuvant against *Pasteurella piscicida* n in yellowtail. Fish Pathol 33; 267–292.
Kumar V , Sahu NP , Pal AK , Kumar S (2007) Immunomodulation of *Labeo rohita* juveniles due to dietary gelatinized and non-gelatinized starch. Fish Shellfish Immunol 23; 341–353.
Li P , Lewis DH , Galtin DM (2004) Dietary oligonucleotides from yeast RNA influences immune responses and resistance of hybrid striped bass (Moronechrysops x Moronesaxatilis) to Streptococcus iniae infection. Fish Shellfish Immunol 16; 561–569. 73.
Li Y , Li J & Wang Q (2010) Effects of size grading on growth and non-specific immunity factors of the shrimp *Litopenaeus vannamei* Boone. Agri Sci China 9; 416–422.
Lopez N , Cuzon G , Gaxiola G , Taboada G , Valenzuela M , et al. (2003) Physiological, nutritional and immunological role of dietary ß 1-3 glucan and ascorbic acid 2-monophosphate in Litopenaeusvannameijuveniles. Aquaculture 224; 223–243.
Low C , Wadsworth S , Burrells C , Secombes CJ (2003) Expression of immune genes in turbot (Scophthalmusmaximus) fed a nucleotide-supplemented diet. Aquaculture, 221(1-4); 23–40.

Magnadottir B , Gudmundsdottir BK , Lange S , Steinarsson A , Oddgeirsson M , Bowden T (2006) Immunostimulation of larvae and juveniles of cod, *Gadus morhua* L. J Fish Dis(2006) 29; 147–155.

Maqsood S , Samoon MH , Singh P (2009) Immunomodulatory and growth promoting effect of dietary levamisole in *Cyprinus carpio* fingerlings against the challenge of *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Turk J Fish Aquatic Sci 9.

Maqsood S , Singh P , Samoon MH & Munir K (2011) Emerging role of immunostimulants in combating the disease outbreak in aquaculture. International Aquatic Res 3; 147–163.

Merchie G , Kontara EKM , Lavens P , Robles R , Kurmaly K (1998) Effect of vitamin C and astaxanthin on stress and disease resistance of postlarval tiger shrimp *Penaeus monodon* (Fabricius). Aquac Res 29: 579–585.

Misra CK , Das BK , Mukherjee SC , Meher PK (2006) The immunomodulatory effects of tuftsin on the non-specific immune system of Indian Major carp, *Labeo rohita* . Fish Shellfish Immunol 20; 728–738.

Mohapatra S , Chakraborty T , Kumar V , DeBoeck G , Mohanta KN (2013) Aquaculture and stress management: a review of probiotic intervention. J Anim Physiol Anim Nutr 97; 405–430.

Mulero I , García-Ayala A , Meseguer J , Mulero V (2007) Maternal transfer of immunity and ontogeny of autologous immuno competence of fish: a mini review. Aquaculture. 268; 244–250.

Mulero V , Esteban MA , Munoz J , Meseguer J (1998). Dietary intake of levamisole enhances the immune response and disease resistance of the marine teleost gilthead seabream (Sparus aurata L.). Fish Shellfish Immunol 8; 49–62.

Ortuno J , Esteban MA , Meseguer J (2000) High dietary intake of a-tocopherol acetate enhances the nonspecific immune response of gilthead seabream (*Sparus aurata* L.). Fish Shellfish Immunol 10; 293–370.

Palstra AP , Kals J , Blanco Garcia A , Dirks RP , Poelman M (2018) Immunomodulatory effects of dietary seaweeds in LPS challenged Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* as determined by deep RNA sequencing of the head kidney transcriptome. Front physiol 9; 625.

Petit J , Bailey EC , Wheeler RT , de Oliveira CAF , Forlenza M , Wiegertjes GF (2019) Studies into beta-glucan recognition in fish suggests a key role for the C-type lectin pathway. Front Immunol 10; 280.

Pratheepa V , Ramesh S , Sukumaran N (2010) Immunomodulatory effect of *Aegle marmelos* leaf extract on freshwater fish *Cyprinus carpio* infected by bacterial pathogen *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Pharmac Biol 48 (11); 1224–1239.

Raa J (1992) The use of immunostimulants to increase resistance of aquatic organisms to microbial infections. *In* Shariff M , SubaSinghe RP , Arthur JR (eds): Diseases in Asian Aquaculture. Manila, Asian Fisheries Society, Fish Health Section, 39–50.

Rao VY , Das BK , Jyotyrmayee P , Chakrabarti R (2006). Effect of Achyranthes aspera on the immunity and survival of Labeo rohita infected with Aeromonas hydrophila. Fish & shellfish immunology 20(3); 263–273.

Robertson B , Relrstad G , Engstad R (1990). Enhancement of nonspecific disease resistance in Atlantic salmon, Salmo salar L., by a glucan from Saccharomyces cerevisiae cell walls. Journal of fish diseases 13(5); 391–400.

Rodriguez I , Chamorro R , Novoa B , Figueras A (2009) beta-Glucan administration enhances disease resistance and some innate immune responses in zebrafish (*Danio rerio*). Fish Shellfish Immunol 27; 369–373.

Sahoo PK , Mukherjee SC (2002) The effect of dietary immunomodulation upon Edwardsiella tarda vaccination in healthy and immunocompromised Indiamajor carp (Labeorohita). Fish Shellfish Immunol 12; 1–16.

Salinas I , Lockhart K , Bowden TJ , Collet B , Secombes C , Ellis AE (2004). Assessment of immunostimulants as Mx inducers in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.) parr and the effect of temperature on the kinetics of Mx responses. Fish Shellfish Immunol 17; 159–170.

Sakai M (1999) Current research status of fish immunostimulants. Aquaculture 172; 63–92

Sánchez-Pozo A , Gil A (2002) Nucleotides as semiessential nutritional components. Br J Nutr87: 135-137. 79. Low C, Wadsworth S, Burrells C, Secombes CJ (2003) Expression of immune genes in turbot (*Scophthalmusmaximus*) fed a nucleotide-supplemented diet. Aquaculture 221; 23–40.

Shrestha G , St Clair LL & O'Neill KL (2015) The immunostimulating role of lichen polysaccharides: a review. Phytother Res 29; 317–322.

Siwicki A (1987) Immunomodulating activity of levamisole in carp spawners, Cyprinus carpio L. J Fish Boil 31; 245–246.

Skov J , Kania PW , Holten-Andersen L , Fouz B , Buchmann K (2012) Immunomodulatory effects of dietary β-1, 3-glucan from *Euglena gracilis* in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) immersion vaccinated against *Yersinia ruckeri* Fish Shellfish Immunol 33; 111–120.

Strand HK , Dalmo RA (1997) Absorption of immunomodulating beta -glucan in yolk sac larvae of Atlantic halibut. Hippoglossus hippoglossus Journal of Fish Diseases, 20 (1); 41–49.

Tseng IT , Chen JC (2004) The immune response of white shrimp Litopenaeusvannamei and its susceptibility to Vibrio alginolyticus under nitrite stress. Fish Shellfish Immuno l17; 325–333.

Vasta GR , Nita-Lazar M , Giomarelli B , Ahmed H , Du S , Cammarata M , Parrinello N , Bianchet MA , Amzel LM (2011) Structural and functional diversity of the lectin repertoire in teleost fish: relevance to innate and adaptive immunity. Dev Comp Immunol 33; 1388–1399.

Verlhac V , Gabaudan J , Obach A , Schuep W , Hole R (1996) Influence of dietary glucan and vitamin C on non-specific and specific immune responses of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchusmykiss). Aquaculture 143; 123–133.

Verlhac V , Obach A , Gabaudan J , Schüep W , Hole R (1998) Immunomodulation by dietary vitamin C and glucan in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Fish Shellfish Immunol 8; 409–424.

Villamil L , Figueras A , Novoa B (2003) Immunomodulatory effects of nisin in turbot (*Scophthalmus maximus* L.). Fish Shellfish Immunol 14; 157–169.

Wang S , Wang Y , Ma J , Ding Y , Zhang S (2011) Phosvitin plays a critical role in the immunity of zebrafish embryos via acting as a pattern recognition receptor and an antimicrobial effector. J Biol Chem 286; 22653–22664.

Wang W , Sun J , Liu C , Xue Z (2017) Application of immunostimulants in aquaculture: current knowledge and future perspectives. Aquaculture Res 48; 1–23.

Yoshida T , Kruger R , Inglis V (1995) Augmentation of non-specific protection in African catfish, Clariasgariepinus (Burchell), by the long term oral administration of immunostimulants. J Fish Dis 18; 195–198.

Zhang Z , Chi H , Dalmo RA (2019) Trained innate immunity of fish is a viable approach in larval aquaculture. Front Immunol 10; 42.

Zhang Z , Chi H , Dalmo RA (2019) Trained innate immunity of fish is a viable approach in larval aquaculture. Front Immunol (2019) 10; 42.

Zhang Z , Swain T , Bøgwald J , Dalmo RA , Kumari J (2009) Bath immunostimulation of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) fry induces enhancement of inflammatory cytokine transcripts, while repeated bath induce no changes. Fish Shellfish Immunol 26; 677–684.

Disease Management and Prophylaxis by Immunostimulants

Abbate, Antonio , Stefano Toldo , Carlo Marchetti , Jordana Kron , Benjamin W. Van Tassell , and Charles A. Dinarello . Interleukin-1 and the inflammasome as therapeutic targets in cardiovascular disease. Circulation Research 126, no. 9 (2020): 1260–1280.

Abdel-Tawwab, Mohsen , Ibrahim Adeshina , Adetola Jenyo-Oni , Emmanuel K. Ajani , and Benjami O. Emikpe . Growth, physiological, antioxidants, and immune response of African catfish, Clarias gariepinus (B.), to dietary clove basil, Ocimum gratissimum, leaf extract and its susceptibility to Listeria monocytogenes infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 78 (2018): 346–354.

Abdollahpour, Hamed , Bahram Falahatkar , Iraj Efatpanah , and Bahman Meknatkhah . Effect of thyroxine injection on female growth and reproductive performance of sterlet sturgeon (Acipenser ruthenus). Journal of Marine Biology (2019): 63–78.

Abdollahpour, Hamed , Bahram Falahatkar , Iraj Efatpanah , Bahman Meknatkhah , and Glen Van Der Kraak . Influence of thyroxine on spawning performance and larval development of Sterlet sturgeon Acipenser ruthenus. Aquaculture 497 (2018): 134–139.

Abiri, Behnaz , and Mohammadreza Vafa . Micronutrients that affect immunosenescence. Reviews on New Drug Targets in Age-Related Disorders (2020): 13–31.

Adeshina, Ibrahim , Adetola JenyoOni , Benjamin O. Emikpe , Emmanuel K. Ajani , and Mohsen AbdelTawwab . Stimulatory effect of dietary clove, Eugenia caryophyllata, bud extract on growth performance, nutrient utilization, antioxidant capacity, and tolerance of African catfish, Clarias gariepinus (B.), to Aeromonas hydrophila infection. Journal of the World Aquaculture Society 50, no. 2 (2019): 390–405.

Adewumi, A.A. (2018). The impact of nutrition on fish development, growth and health. International Journal of Scientific and Research Publications (IJSRP) 8 (6), 147–153.

Akhtar, M. S. , and A. Ciji . Pyridoxine and its biological functions in fish: current knowledge and perspectives in aquaculture. Reviews in Fisheries Science & Aquaculture 29, no. 2 (2020): 260–278.

Alinezhad, Soheil , Hamed Abdollahpour , Naghmeh Jafari , and Bahram Falahatkar . Effects of thyroxine immersion on sterlet sturgeon (Acipenser ruthenus) embryos and larvae: Variations in thyroid hormone levels during development. Aquaculture 519 (2020): 734745.

Altan-Bonnet, Grégoire , and Ratnadeep Mukherjee . Cytokine-mediated communication: a quantitative appraisal of immune complexity. Nature Reviews Immunology 19, no. 4 (2019): 205–217.

Alves, Carliane Maria Guimarães , Joziele Neves Nogueira , Isaac Belo Barriga , Joilson Rodrigues Dos Santos , Gracienhe Gomes Santos , and Marcos TavaresDias . Albendazole, levamisole and ivermectin are effective against monogeneans of Colossoma macropomum (Pisces: Serrasalmidae). Journal of Fish Diseases 42, no. 3 (2019): 405–412.

Amiri, Z. , and M. Bahrekazemi . Effect of oral administration of Levamisole, Quil-A and Cinnamon in growth amount, hematological and immune parameters of Marmalade cichlid, Labeotrophus fuelleborni (Ahl, 1926). Iranian Journal of Aquatic Animal Health 3, no. 2 (2017): 86–97.

Anjugam, Mahalingam , Arokiadhas Iswarya , Ashokkumar Sibiya , Chandrabose Selvaraj , Sanjeev Kumar Singh , Marimuthu Govindarajan , Naiyf S. Alharbi *et al* . Molecular interaction analysis of β-1, 3 glucan binding protein with Bacillus licheniformis and evaluation of its immunostimulant property in Oreochromis mossambicus. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 121 (2022): 183–196.

Assefa, Ayalew , and Fufa Abunna . Maintenance of fish health in aquaculture: review of epidemiological approaches for prevention and control of infectious disease of fish. Veterinary Medicine International 2018 (2018): 5432497.

Awad, Elham , and Amani Awaad . Role of medicinal plants on growth performance and immune status in fish. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 67 (2017): 40–54.

Bais, B. Fish scenario in India with emphasis on Indian major carps. International International Journal of Avian & Wildlife Biology 3, no. 6 (2018): 409–411.

Barrow, Dylan R. , Abbate, Lauren M. , Paquette, Max R. , Driban, Jeffrey B. , Vincent, Heather K. , Newman, Connie , Messier, Stephen P. , Ambrose, Kirsten R. , & Shultz, Sarah P. (2019). Exercise prescription for weight management in obese adults at risk for osteoarthritis: synthesis from a systematic review. BMC Musculoskeletal Disorders 20, 1–9.

Borba, Vânia Vieira , Gisele Zandman-Goddard , and Yehuda Shoenfeld . Prolactin and autoimmunity: The hormone as an inflammatory cytokine. Best Practice & Research Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism 33, no. 6 (2019): 101324.

Camacho, Franciele , Angela Macedo , and Francisco Malcata . Potential industrial applications and commercialization of microalgae in the functional food and feed industries: A short review. Marine Drugs 17, no. 6 (2019): 312.

Chandan, Nitish Kumar , Rakhi Kumari , and G. M. Siddaiah . Role of nutraceuticals in fish feed. In Fish nutrition and its relevance to human health, pp. 229–243. CRC Press, 2020.

Chansue, N. , M. Endo , T. Kono , and M. Sakai . The stimulation of cytokine-like proteins in Tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus) orally treated with beta-1, 3-glucan. Asian Fisheries Science 13, no. 3 (2000): 271–278.

Dahmani, Amina , and Jean-Sébastien Delisle . TGF-β in T cell biology: implications for cancer immunotherapy. Cancers 10, no. 6 (2018): 194.

Dawood, Mahmoud AO , Abd El-Salam Metwally , Mohamed E. El-Sharawy , Ahmed M. Atta , Zizy I. Elbialy , Hany Mr Abdel-Latif , and Bilal Ahamad Paray . The role of β-glucan in the growth, intestinal morphometry, and immune-related gene and heat shock protein expressions of Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus) under different stocking densities. Aquaculture 523 (2020): 735205.

Dawood, Mahmoud AO , and Shunsuke Koshio . Vitamin C supplementation to optimize growth, health and stress resistance in aquatic animals. Reviews in Aquaculture 10, no. 2 (2018): 334–350.

de Oliveira, Carlos AF , Vaclav Vetvicka , and Fábio S. Zanuzzo . β-Glucan successfully stimulated the immune system in different jawed vertebrate species. Comparative Immunology, Microbiology and Infectious Diseases 62 (2019): 1–6.

Devi, Gunapathy , Ramasamy Harikrishnan , Bilal Ahmad Paray , Mohammad K. Al-Sadoon , Seyed Hossein Hoseinifar , and Chellam Balasundaram . Effects of aloe-emodin on innate immunity, antioxidant and immune cytokines mechanisms in the head kidney leucocytes of Labeo rohita against Aphanomyces invadans. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 87 (2019): 669–678.

Dostert, Catherine , Melanie Grusdat , Elisabeth Letellier , and Dirk Brenner . The TNF family of ligands and receptors: communication modules in the immune system and beyond. Physiological Reviews 99, no. 1 (2019): 115–160.
Droge, Steven TJ , James M. Armitage , Jon A. Arnot , Patrick N. Fitzsimmons , and John W. Nichols . Biotransformation potential of cationic surfactants in fish assessed with rainbow trout liver S9 fractions. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 40, no. 11 (2021): 3123–3136.
Ferreira, Vinicius L. , Helena HL Borba , Aline de F. Bonetti , L. Leonart , and Roberto Pontarolo . Cytokines and interferons: types and functions. Autoantibodies and Cytokines 13 (2018).
Gallenga, C. E. , F. Pandolfi , Al Caraffa , S. K. Kritas , G. Ronconi , E. Toniato , S. Martinotti , and P. Conti . Interleukin-1 family cytokines and mast cells: activation and inhibition. Journal of Biological Regulatory Homeostatic Agents 33, no. 1 (2019): 1–6.
Gan, Zhen , Shan Nan Chen , Bei Huang , Jun Zou , and Pin Nie . Fish type I and type II interferons: composition, receptor usage, production and function. Reviews in Aquaculture 12, no. 2 (2020): 773–804.
Gao, Yan , Kit Ieng Kuok , Ying Jin , and Ruibing Wang . Biomedical applications of Aloe vera. Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition 59, no. supp 1 (2019): S244–S256.
Gasco, Laura , Francesco Gai , Giulia Maricchiolo , Lucrezia Genovese , Sergio Ragonese , Teresa Bottari , and Gabriella Caruso . Supplementation of vitamins, minerals, enzymes and antioxidants in fish feeds. In Feeds for the Aquaculture Sector, pp. 63–103. Springer, Cham, 2018.
Gombart, Adrian F. , Adeline Pierre , and Silvia Maggini . A review of micronutrients and the immune system–working in harmony to reduce the risk of infection. Nutrients 12, no. 1 (2020): 236.
Gong, Fang , Mei-Fang Chen , Yuan-Yuan Zhang , Cheng-Yong Li , Chun-Xia Zhou , Peng-Zhi Hong , Sheng-Li Sun , and Zhong-Ji Qian . A novel peptide from abalone (Haliotis discus hannai) to suppress metastasis and vasculogenic mimicry of tumor cells and enhance anti-tumor effect in vitro. Marine Drugs 17, no. 4 (2019): 244.
Guo, Ming , and Chenghua Li . An overview of cytokine used as adjuvants in fish: current state and future trends. Reviews in Aquaculture 13, no. 2 (2021): 996–1014.
Gupta, Sanjay Kumar . Ameliorative and protective effects of prebiotic, microbial levan in common carp,(Cyprinus carpio) fry under experimental exposure to fipronil. International Journal of Aquatic Biology 9, no. 2 (2021): 134–147.
Hansen, Jon Øvrum , Leidy Lagos , Peng Lei , Felipe Eduardo Reveco-Urzua , Byron Morales-Lange , Line Degn Hansen , Marion Schiavone *et al*. Down-stream processing of baker's yeast (Saccharomyces cerevisiae)–Effect on nutrient digestibility and immune response in Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar). Aquaculture 530 (2021): 735707.
Hasan, Md Tawheed , Won Je Jang , Jong Min Lee , Bong-Joo Lee , Sang Woo Hur , Sang Gu Lim , Kang Woong Kim , Hyon-Sob Han , and In-Soo Kong . Effects of immunostimulants, prebiotics, probiotics, synbiotics, and potentially immunoreactive feed additives on olive flounder (Paralichthys olivaceus): a review. Reviews in Fisheries Science & Aquaculture 27, no. 4 (2019): 417–437.
Hashem, Nada MA , Mai AM ElSon , Ahmed I. Ateya , and Rasha M. Saleh . Impact of lactoferrin supplementation on oxidative stress, gene expression and immunity dysfunction induced by Aeromonas veronii in Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus). Aquaculture Research 53, no. 6 (2022): 2392–2407.
Hoseinifar, Seyed Hossein , Yun-Zhang Sun , Zhigzhang Zhou , Hien Van Doan , Simon J. Davies , and R. Harikrishnan . Boosting immune function and disease bio-control through environment-friendly and sustainable approaches in finfish aquaculture: herbal therapy scenarios. Reviews in Fisheries Science & Aquaculture 28, no. 3 (2020): 303–321.
Jahandideh, Bahman , Mehdi Derakhshani , Hossein Abbaszadeh , Ali Akbar Movassaghpour , Amir Mehdizadeh , Mehdi Talebi , and Mehdi Yousefi . The pro-Inflammatory cytokines effects on mobilization, self-renewal and differentiation of hematopoietic stem cells. Human Immunology 81, no. 5 (2020): 206–217.
Jinendiran, Sekar , Abel Arul Nathan , Dharmaraj Ramesh , Baskaralingam Vaseeharan , and Natesan Sivakumar . Modulation of innate immunity, expression of cytokine genes and disease resistance against Aeromonas hydrophila infection in goldfish (Carassius auratus) by dietary supplementation with Exiguobacterium acetylicum S01. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 84 (2019): 458–469.
Kaleem, Oliver , and Abudou-Fadel Bio Singou Sabi . Overview of aquaculture systems in Egypt and Nigeria, prospects, potentials, and constraints. Aquaculture and Fisheries 6, no. 6 (2021): 535–547.
Kamilya, Dibyendu , and Md Idrish Raja Khan . Chitin and chitosan as promising immunostimulant for aquaculture. In Handbook of Chitin and Chitosan, pp. 761–771. Elsevier, 2020.
Kany, Shinwan , Jan Tilmann Vollrath , and Borna Relja . Cytokines in inflammatory disease. International Journal of Molecular Sciences 20, no. 23 (2019): 6008.
Kumar, Sudhir , Abhay Kumar Choubey , and Praveen Kumar Srivastava . The effects of dietary immunostimulants on the innate immune response of Indian major carp: A review. Fish & Shellfish Immunology (2022).
Li, Tao , Fei Ke , Jian-Fang Gui , Li Zhou , Xiao-Juan Zhang , and Qi-Ya Zhang . Protective effect of Clostridium butyricum against Carassius auratus herpesvirus in gibel carp. Aquaculture International 27, no. 3 (2019): 905–914.
Lin, Jian-Xin , and Warren J. Leonard . The common cytokine receptor γ chain family of cytokines. Cold Spring Harbor Perspectives in Biology 10, no. 9 (2018): a028449.
Mohan, Kannan , Samuthirapandian Ravichandran , Thirunavukkarasu Muralisankar , Venkatachalam Uthayakumar , Ramachandran Chandirasekar , Palaniappan Seedevi , and Durairaj Karthick Rajan . Potential uses of fungal polysaccharides as immunostimulants in fish and shrimp aquaculture: a review. Aquaculture 500 (2019): 250–263.
Mohanan, Salini , B. Nidhin , M. Harikrishnan , and M. P. Prabhakaran . Effect of the Natural Herb Amla (Phyllanthus emblica) on Growth, Survival and Disease Resistance in Macrobrachium rosenbergii Juveniles. Fishery Technology 57, no. 4 (2020).
Mondal, Hemanta Kumar , Usha Jyoti Maji , Sriprakash Mohanty , Pramoda Kumar Sahoo , and Nikhil Kumar Maiti . Alteration of gut microbiota composition and function of Indian major carp, rohu (Labeo rohita) infected with Argulus siamensis. Microbial Pathogenesis 164 (2022): 105420.
Morris, Alyssa L. , and Shamim S. Mohiuddin . Biochemistry, nutrients. (2020).
Nair, A. , D. Chattopadhyay , and B. Saha . New Look to Phytomedicine. (2019): 435–499.
Pastoret, P. P. , P. Griebel , H. Bazin , & A. Govaerts (Eds.). (1998). Handbook of Vertebrate Immunology. Academic Press.
Raja Rajeswari, P. , S. Velmurugan , M. Michael Babu , S. Albin Dhas , K. Kesavan , and T. Citarasu . A study on the influence of selected Indian herbal active principles on enhancing the immune system in Fenneropenaeus indicus against Vibrio harveyi infection. Aquaculture International 20, no. 5 (2012): 1009–1020.
Rascón-Cruz, Quintín , Edward A. Espinoza-Sánchez , Tania S. Siqueiros-Cendón , Sayuri I. Nakamura-Bencomo , Sigifredo Arévalo-Gallegos , and Blanca F. Iglesias-Figueroa . Lactoferrin: A glycoprotein involved in immunomodulation, anticancer, and antimicrobial

processes. Molecules 26, no. 1 (2021): 205.
Sakai, Masahiro , Jun-ichi Hikima , and Tomoya Kono . Fish cytokines: current research and applications. Fisheries Science 87, no. 1 (2021): 1–9.
Sattanathan, Govindharajan , Thanapal Palanisamy , Swaminathan Padmapriya , Vijaya Anand Arumugam , Sungkwon Park , In Ho Kim , and Balamuralikrishnan Balasubramanian . Influences of dietary inclusion of algae Chaetomorpha aerea enhanced growth performance, immunity, haematological response and disease resistance of Labeo rohita challenged with Aeromonas hydrophila. Aquaculture Reports 17 (2020): 100353.
Secombes, Christopher J. Cytokines and Immunity. In Principles of Fish Immunology, pp. 301–353. Springer, Cham, 2022.
Sun, Baiming , Yang Lei , Zhenjie Cao , Yongcan Zhou , Yun Sun , Ying Wu , Shifeng Wang , Weiliang Guo , and Chunsheng Liu . TroCCL4, a CC chemokine of Trachinotus ovatus, is involved in the antimicrobial immune response. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 86 (2019): 525–535.
Tabari, Mohaddeseh A. , Mohammad Reza Youssefi , Seyed Mehdi Hosseinifard , Ali Akbar Moghaddamnia , Sohrab Kazemi , NadAli Yousefi Sadati , Azadeh Jalali Mothahari , and Mario Giorgi . Pharmacokinetics of levamisole after intramuscular and oral administrations to Caspian salmon (Salmo trutta caspius). Journal of Veterinary Pharmacology and Therapeutics 43, no. 3 (2020): 276–281.
Urbinati, Elisabeth Criscuolo , Fábio Sabbadin Zanuzzo , and Jaqueline Dalbello Biller . Stress and immune system in fish. In Biology and physiology of freshwater neotropical fish, pp. 93–114. Academic Press, 2020.
Van Doan, Hien , Chompunut Lumsangkul , Korawan Sringarm , Seyed Hossein Hoseinifar , Mahmoud AO Dawood , Ehab El-Haroun , Ramasamy Harikrishnan , Sanchai Jaturasitha , and Marina Paolucci . Impacts of Amla (Phyllanthus emblica) fruit extract on growth, skin mucosal and serum immunities, and disease resistance of Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus) raised under biofloc system. Aquaculture Reports 22 (2022): 100953.
Van Doan, Hien , Hoseinifar, Seyed Hossein , Hung, Tran Quang , Lumsangkul, Chompunut , Jaturasitha, Sanchai , Ehab El-Haroun , & Paolucci, Marina . Dietary inclusion of chestnut (Castanea sativa) polyphenols to Nile tilapia reared in biofloc technology: Impacts on growth, immunity, and disease resistance against Streptococcus agalactiae. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 105 (2020): 319–326.
Vanderzwalmen, Myriam , Lewis Eaton , Carrie Mullen , Fiona Henriquez , Peter Carey , Donna Snellgrove , and Katherine A. Sloman . The use of feed and water additives for live fish transport. Reviews in Aquaculture 11, no. 1 (2019): 263–278.
Villalba, Melina , Gabriel Gómez , Lidia Torres , Nicolas Maldonado , Constanza Espiñeira , Gardenia Payne , Luis Vargas-Chacoff , Jaime Figueroa , Alejandro Yáñez , and Víctor H. Olavarría . Prolactin peptide (pPRL) induces anti-prolactin antibodies, ROS and cortisol but suppresses specific immune responses in rainbow trout. Molecular Immunology 127 (2020): 87–94.
Wang, Yongjie , Mingxue Che , Jingguo Xin , Zhi Zheng , Jiangbi Li , and Shaokun Zhang . The role of IL-1β and TNF-α in intervertebral disc degeneration. Biomedicine & Pharmacotherapy 131 (2020): 110660.
Wieczorek, Marek , Esam T. Abualrous , Jana Sticht , Miguel Álvaro-Benito , Sebastian Stolzenberg , Frank Noé , and Christian Freund . Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I and MHC class II proteins: conformational plasticity in antigen presentation. Frontiers in Immunology 8 (2017): 292.
Wolska, K. , A. Gorska , K. Antosik , and K. Lugowska . Immunomodulatory effects of propolis and its components on basic immune cell functions. Indian Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences 81, no. 4 (2019): 575–588.
Wu, Chun , Jinfeng Shan , Junchang Feng , Junli Wang , Chaobin Qin , Guoxing Nie , and Chenlong Ding . Effects of dietary Radix Rehmanniae Preparata polysaccharides on the growth performance, immune response and disease resistance of Luciobarbus capito. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 89 (2019): 641–646.
Wu, Dayong , and Simin Nikbin Meydani . Vitamin E, immune function, and protection against infection. In Vitamin E in Human Health, pp. 371–384. Humana Press, Cham, 2019.
Wu, Liting , Zhendong Qin , Haipeng Liu , Li Lin , Jianmin Ye , and Jun Li . Recent advances on phagocytic B cells in teleost fish. Frontiers in Immunology 11 (2020): 824.
Xiao, Yingping , Lintian Yu , Guohong Gui , Yujie Gong , Xueting Wen , Wenrui Xia , Hua Yang , and Long Zhang . Molecular cloning and expression analysis of interleukin-8 and-10 in yellow catfish and in response to bacterial pathogen infection. BioMed Research International 2019 (2019).
Xie, Xu-Ting , and Kit-Leong Cheong . Recent advances in marine algae oligosaccharides: Structure, analysis, and potential prebiotic activities. Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition (2021): 1–16.
Yamamoto, Fernando Y. , Sergio Castillo , Clement R. de Cruz , Kequan Chen , Michael E. Hume , and Delbert M. Gatlin III . Synergistic effects of the β-1, 3 glucan paramylon and vitamin C on immunological responses of hybrid striped bass (Morone chrysops× M. saxatilis) were pronounced in vitro but more moderate in vivo. Aquaculture 526 (2020): 735394.
Yosri, Nermeen , Aida A. Abd El-Wahed , Reem Ghonaim , Omar M. Khattab , Aya Sabry , Mahmoud AA Ibrahim , Mahmoud F. Moustafa *et al*. Anti-viral and immunomodulatory properties of propolis: Chemical diversity, pharmacological properties, preclinical and clinical applications, and in silico potential against SARS-CoV-2. Foods 10, no. 8 (2021): 1776.
Zhu, Wentao , and Jianguo Su . Immune functions of phagocytic blood cells in teleost. Reviews in Aquaculture 14, no. 2 (2022): 630–646.

Application of Immunostimulants for Aquaculture Health Management

Nathan, C. and Cars, O. , 2014. Antibiotic resistance—problems, progress, and prospects. New England Journal of Medicine, 371(19), pp. 1761–1763.
Xian, J.A. , Wang, A.L. , Tian, J.X. , Huang, J.W. , Ye, C.X. , Wang, W.N. and Sun, R.Y. , 2009. Morphologic, physiological and immunological changes of haemocytes from *Litopenaeus vannamei* treated by lipopolysaccharide. Aquaculture, 298(1-2), pp. 139–145.
Thangaraj, S.K. , Poornima, M. and Alavandi, S. , 2017. Immunostimulants in Aquaculture. pp. 175.
Goldsby, T.J. , Griffis, S.E. and Roath, A.S. , 2006. Modeling lean, agile, and leagile supply chain strategies. Journal of Business Logistics, 27(1), pp. 57–80.

Ching, J.J. , Shuib, A.S. , Abdul Majid, N. and Mohd Taufek, N. , 2021. Immunomodulatory activity of βglucans in fish: Relationship between βglucan administration parameters and immune response induced. Aquaculture Research, 52(5), pp. 1824–1845.
Medzhitov, R. , 2007. Recognition of microorganisms and activation of the immune response. Nature, 449 (7164), pp. 819–826.
Matzinger, P. , 2002. The danger model: a renewed sense of self. Science, 296(5566), pp. 301–305.
Alberts, B. , Alexander, J. , Julian, L. , Martin, R. , Keith, R. and Peter, W. , 2002. Molecular Biology of the Cell; Fourth Edition. New York and London: Garland Science. ISBN 0-8153-3218-1.
Litman, G.W. , Cannon, J.P. and Dishaw, L.J. , 2005. Reconstructing immune phylogeny: new perspectives. Nature Review in Immunology, 5 (11), pp. 866–879.
Van Muiswinkel, W.B. , 1992. Fish immunology and health. Netherlands Journal of Zoology, 42(2-3), pp. 494–499.
Bly, J.E. and Clem, L.W. , 1992. Temperature and teleost immune functions. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 2, pp. 159–171.
Carlson, R.E. , Baker, E.P. and Fuller, R.E. , 1995. Immunological assessment of hybrid striped bass at three culture temperature. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 5, pp. 359–373.
Ellis, A.E. , 1988. General principles of fish vaccination. In: Ellis A.E. , editor. Fish vaccination. London: Academic Press; pp. 1–19.
Vaghasiya, J. , Datani, M. , Nandkumar, K. , Malaviya, S. and Jivani, N. , 2010. Comparative evaluation of alcoholic and aqueous extracts of Ocimum sanctum for immunomodulatory activity. International Journal on Pharmaceutical and Biological Research, 1(1), pp. 25–29.
Selye, H. , 1973. The Evolution of the Stress Concept: The originator of the concept traces its development from the discovery in 1936 of the alarm reaction to modern therapeutic applications of syntoxic and catatoxic hormones. American scientist, 61(6), pp. 692–699.
Anderson, D.P. , 1992. Immunostimulants, adjuvants and vaccine carriers in fish: applications to aquaculture. Annual review of fish diseases, 2, pp. 281–307.
Sakai, M. , 1999. Current research status of fish immunostimulants. Aquaculture, 172, pp. 63–92.
Secombes C.J. , 1994. Enhancement of fish phagocyte activity. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 4, pp. 421–436.
Harikrishnan, R. , Balasundaram, C. and Heo, M.S. , 2011a. Impact of plant products on innate and adaptive immune system of cultured finfish and shellfish. Aquaculture, 317, pp. 1–15.
Dugenci, S.K. , Arda, N. and Candan, A. , 2003. Some medicinal plants as immunostimulant for fish. Journal of Ethnopharmacology, 88, pp. 99–106.
Rao, Y.V. , Das, B.K. , Jyotyrmayee, P. and Chakrabarti, R. , 2006. Effect of Achyranthes aspera on the immunity and survival of Labeo rohita infected with Aeromonas hydrophila. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 20, pp. 263–273.
Subasinghe, R. , Soto, D. and Jia, J. , 2009. Global aquaculture and its role in sustainable development. Reviews in Aquaculture, 1(1), pp. 2–9.
Barman, D. , Nen, P. , Mandal, S.C. and Kumar, V. , 2013. Immunostimulants for aquaculture health management. J Marine Sci Res Dev, 3(3), pp. 1–11.
Cuesta, A. , Meseguer, J. and Esteban, M.A. , 2004. Total serum immunoglobulin M levels are affected by immunomodulators in seabream (Sparus aurata L.). Veterinary Immunology and Immunopathology, 101(3-4), pp. 203–210.
Bricknell, I. and Dalmo, R.A. , 2005. The use of immunostimulants in fish larval aquaculture. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 19(5), pp. 457–472.
Wang, W. , Sun, J. , Liu, C. and Xue, Z. , 2017. Application of immunostimulants in aquaculture: current knowledge and future perspectives. Aquaculture Research, 48(1), pp. 1–23.
Zhou, X. , Wang, Y. , Yao, J. and Li, W. , 2010. Inhibition ability of probiotic, *Lactococcus lactis*, against *A. hydrophila* and study of its immunostimulatory effect in tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*). International Journal of Engineering, Science and Technology, 2(7).
Iromo, H. , Zairin Junior, M. , Agus Suprayudi, M. and Manalu, W. , 2015. The optimum dose of thyroxine hormone supplementation in broodstock mud crab (*Scylla serrata*) to accelerate ovarian maturation. Journal of Aquaculture Research and Development, 6(3).
Zhou, J. , Song, X.L. , Huang, J. and Wang, X.H. , 2006. Effects of dietary supplementation of A3α-peptidoglycan on innate immune responses and defense activity of Japanese flounder (*Paralichthys olivaceus*). Aquaculture, 251(2-4), pp. 172–181.
Davis, J.F. and Hayasaka, S.S. , 1984. The enhancement of resistance of the American eel, Anguilla rostrata Le Sueur, to a pathogenic bacterium, *Aeromonas hydrophila*, by an extract of the tunicate, *Ecteinascidia turbinata* . Journal of Fish Diseases, 7(4), pp. 311–316.
Bindhu, M.R. and Umadevi, M. , 2014. Antibacterial activities of green synthesized gold nanoparticles. Materials Letters, 120, pp. 122–125.
López, N. , Cuzon, G. , Gaxiola, G. , Taboada, G. , Valenzuela, M. , Pascual, C. , Sánchez, A. and Rosas, C. , 2003. Physiological, nutritional, and immunological role of dietary β 1-3 glucan and ascorbic acid 2-monophosphate in *Litopenaeus vannamei* juveniles. Aquaculture, 224(1-4), pp. 223–243.
Matsuyama, H. , Mangindaan, R.E. and Yano, T. , 1992. Protective effect of schizophyllan and scleroglucan against Streptococcus sp. infection in yellowtail (*Seriola quinqueradiata*). Aquaculture, 101(3-4), pp. 197–203.
Sahoo, P.K. and. Mukherjee, S.C. , 1999. Influence of the immunostimulant, chitosan on immune responses of healthy and cortisol-treated rohu (Labeo rohita). Journal of Aquaculture in the Tropics, 14 (3), pp. 209–215.
Liu, H. , Xie, S. , Zhu, X. , Lei, W. , Han, D. and Yang, Y. , 2008. Effects of dietary ascorbic acid supplementation on the growth performance, immune and stress response in juvenile *Leiocassis longirostris* Günther exposed to ammonia. Aquaculture Research, 39(15), pp. 1628–1638.
Ibrahim, R.E. , Ahmed, S.A. , Amer, S.A. , Al-Gabri, N.A. , Ahmed, A.I. , Abdel-Warith, A.W.A. … … . and Metwally, A.E. , 2020. Influence of vitamin C feed supplementation on the growth, antioxidant activity, immune status, tissue histomorphology, and disease resistance in Nile tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus. Aquaculture Reports, 18, pp. 100545.
Narra, M.R. , Rajender, K. , Reddy, R.R. , Rao, J.V. and Begum, G. (2015). The role of vitamin C as antioxidant in protection of biochemical and haematological stress induced by chlorpyrifos in freshwater fish Clarias batrachus. Chemosphere, 132, pp. 172–178.
Imanpoor, M. , Imanpoor, M.R. and Roohi, Z. , 2017. Effects of dietary vitamin C on skeleton abnormalities, blood biochemical factors, haematocrit, growth, survival and stress response of Cyprinus carpio fry. Aquaculture International, 25(2), pp. 793–803.
Yusuf, A. , Huang, X. , Chen, N. , Apraku, A. , Wang, W. , Cornel, A. and Rahman, M.M. , 2020. Impact of dietary vitamin C on plasma metabolites, antioxidant capacity and innate immunocompetence in juvenile largemouth bass, Micropterus salmoides. Aquaculture Reports, 17, pp. 100383.

Gbadamosi, O.K. , 2021. Effects of ascorbic acid and iron nanoparticles supplements on hyperthermia-induced stress in African catfish, *Clarias gariepinus* (Burchell, 1822). The Journal of Basic and Applied Zoology, 82(1), pp. 1–9.
Kono, T. and Sakai, M. , 2001. The analysis of expressed genes in the kidney of Japanese flounder, *Paralichthys olivaceus*, injected with the immunostimulant peptidoglycan. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 11(4), pp. 357–366.
Choudhury, D. , Pal, A.K. , Sahu, N.P. , Kumar, S. , Das, S.S. and Mukherjee, S.C. , 2005. Dietary yeast RNA supplementation reduces mortality by *Aeromonas hydrophila* in rohu (*Labeo rohita* L.) juveniles. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 19(3), pp. 281–291.
Kajita, Y. , Sakai, M. , Atsuta, S. and Kobayashi, M. , 1990. The immunomodulatory effects of levamisole on rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* . Fish Pathology, 25(2), pp. 93–98.
Cheng, A.C. , Tu, C.W. , Chen, Y.Y. , Nan, F.H. and Chen, J.C. , 2007. The immunostimulatory effects of sodium alginate and iota-carrageenan on orange-spotted grouper *Epinephelus coicoides* and its resistance against *Vibrio alginolyticus* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 22(3), pp. 197–205.
Fawole, F.J. , Yisa, R.O. , Jayeoba, O.O. , Adeshina, I. , Ahmed, A.O. and Emikpe, B.O. , 2022. Effect of Dietary Polyherbal Mixture on Growth Performance, Haemato-Immunological Indices, Antioxidant Responses, and Intestinal Morphometry of African Catfish, *Clarias gariepinus* . Aquaculture Nutrition, 2022.
Zheng, W. and Wang, S.Y. , 2001. Antioxidant activity and phenolic compounds in selected herbs. Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry, 49(11), pp. 5165–5170.
Fawole, F.J. , Sahu, N.P. , Pal, A.K. and Lakra, W.S. , 2013. Evaluation of antioxidant and antimicrobial properties of selected Indian medicinal plants. International Journal of Medicinal and Aromatic Plants, 3(1), pp. 69–77.
Aliyu, A.B. , Achika, J.I. , Adewuyi, J.A. , Gangas, P. , Ibrahim, H. and Oyewale, A.O. , 2019. Antioxidants from Nigerian Medicinal Plants: What Are the Evidence?. In Lipid Peroxidation Research, pp. 43. IntechOpen.
Chaves, N. , Santiago, A. and Alías, J.C. , 2020. Quantification of the antioxidant activity of plant extracts: Analysis of sensitivity and hierarchization based on the method used. Antioxidants, 9(1), pp. 76.
Giri, S.S. , Sen, S.S. , Chi, C. , Kim, H.J. , Yun, S. , Park, S.C. and Sukumaran, V. , 2015. Effect of guava leaves on the growth performance and cytokine gene expression of Labeo rohita and its susceptibility to Aeromonas hydrophila infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 46(2), pp. 217–224.
Fawole, F.J. , Sahu, N.P. , Pal, A.K. and Ravindran, A. , 2016. Haematoimmunological response of L abeo rohita (Hamilton) fingerlings fed leaf extracts and challenged by *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Aquaculture Research, 47(12), pp. 3788–3799.
Nhu, T.Q. , Hang, B.T.B. , Hue, B.T.B. , Quetin-Leclercq, J. , Scippo, M.L. , Phuong, N.T. and Kestemont, P. , 2019. Plant extract-based diets differently modulate immune responses and resistance to bacterial infection in striped catfish (Pangasianodon hypophthalmus). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 92, pp. 913–924.
Adeshina, I. , Tiamiyu, L.O. , Akpoilih, B.U. , Jenyo-Oni, A. and Ajani, E.K. , 2021. Dietary Mitracarpus scaber leaves extract improved growth, antioxidants, non-specific immunity, and resistance of Nile tilapia, *Oreochromis niloticus* to *Gyrodactylus malalai* infestation. Aquaculture, 535, pp. 736377.
Nhu, T.Q. , Bich Hang, B.T. , Cornet, V. , Oger, M. , Bach, L.T. , Anh Dao, N.L. ,… … and Kestemont, P. , 2020. Single or combined dietary supply of Psidium guajava and *Phyllanthus amarus* extracts differentially modulate immune responses and liver proteome in striped catfish (*Pangasianodon hyphophthalmus*). Frontiers in Immunology, 11, pp. 797.
Magnadóttir, B. (2006). Innate immunity of fish (overview). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 20(2), pp. 137–151.
Harikrishnan, R. , Balasundaram, C. , Kim, M.C. , Kim, J.S. , Han, Y.J. and Heo, M.S. , 2009. Innate immune response and disease resistance in *Carassius auratus* by triherbal solvent extracts. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 27(3), pp. 508–515.
Hoseinifar, S.H. , Jahazi, M.A. , Mohseni, R. , Raeisi, M. , Bayani, M. , Mazandarani, M. ,… … and Mozanzadeh, M.T. , 2020. Effects of dietary fern (Adiantum capillus-veneris) leaves powder on serum and mucus antioxidant defence, immunological responses, antimicrobial activity and growth performance of common carp (Cyprinus carpio) juveniles. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 106, pp. 959–966.
Khanjani, M.H. , Ghaedi, G. and Sharifinia, M. , 2022. Effects of diets containing βglucan on survival, growth performance, haematological, immunity and biochemical parameters of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) fingerlings. Aquaculture Research, 53(5), pp. 1842–1850.
Dawood, M.A. , Metwally, A.E.S. , El-Sharawy, M.E. , Atta, A.M. , Elbialy, Z.I. , Abdel-Latif, H.M. and Paray, B.A. , 2020. The role of β-glucan in the growth, intestinal morphometry, and immune-related gene and heat shock protein expressions of Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus) under different stocking densities. Aquaculture, 523, pp. 735205.
Abdel Rahman, A.N. , Khalil, A.A. , Abdallah, H.M. and ElHady, M. , 2018. The effects of the dietary supplementation of Echinacea purpurea extract and/or vitamin C on the intestinal histomorphology, phagocytic activity, and gene expression of the Nile tilapia. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 82, pp. 312–318.
Laltlanmawia, C. , Saha, R.K. , Saha, H. and Biswas, P. , 2019. Ameliorating effects of dietary mixture of Withania somnifera root extract and vitamin C in Labeo rohita against low pH and waterborne iron stresses. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 88, pp. 170–178.
Salaah, S.M. , Dalia, M. and Gaber, H.S. , 2022. Potential effects of dietary chitosan against lead-induced innate immunotoxicity and oxidative stress in Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus). The Egyptian Journal of Aquatic Research, 48(2), pp. 123–129.
Kumar, N. , Thakur, N. , Sharma, C. , Shanthanagouda, A.H. , Taygi, A. and Singh, A. , 2022. Effect of dietary chitosan nanoparticles on immune response and disease resistance against *Aeromonas hydrophila* infection in tropical herbivore fish (rohu, Labeo rohita). Aquaculture International, pp. 1–14.
KhosraviKatuli, K. , Mohammadi, Y. , Ranjbaran, M. , Ghanaatian, H. , Khazaali, A. , Paknejad, H. and Santander, J. , 2021. Effects of mannan oligosaccharide and synbiotic supplementation on growth performance and immune response of Gilthead Sea Bream (*Sparus aurata*) before and after thermal stress. Aquaculture Research, 52(8), pp. 3745–3756.
Soleimani, N. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , Merrifield, D.L. , Barati, M. and Abadi, Z.H. , 2012. Dietary supplementation of fructooligosaccharide (FOS) improves the innate immune response, stress resistance, digestive enzyme activities and growth performance of Caspian roach (Rutilus rutilus) fry. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 32(2), pp. 316–321.
Hoseinifar, S.H. , Soleimani, N. , and Ringø, E. , 2014. Effects of dietary fructo-oligosaccharide supplementation on the growth performance, haemato-immunological parameters, gut microbiota and stress resistance of common carp (Cyprinus carpio) fry. British Journal of Nutrition, 112(8), pp. 1296–1302.
Liu, L. , Li, J. , Cai, X. , Ai, Y. , Long, H. , Ren, W. … … . and Xie, Z.Y. , 2022. Dietary supplementation of astaxanthin is superior to its combination with Lactococcus lactis in improving the growth performance, antioxidant capacity, immunity and disease resistance of white shrimp (*Litopenaeus vannamei*). Aquaculture Reports, 24, pp. 101124.

Zhu, X. , Hao, R. , Zhang, J. , Tian, C. , Hong, Y. , Zhu, C. and Li, G. , 2022. Dietary astaxanthin improves the antioxidant capacity, immunity and disease resistance of coral trout (*Plectropomus leopardus*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 122, pp. 38–47.
El-Boshy, M. , El-Ashram, A. , Risha, E. , Abdelhamid, F. , Zahran, E. and Gab-Alla, A. , 2014. Dietary fucoidan enhance the non-specific immune response and disease resistance in African catfish, Clarias gariepinus, immunosuppressed by cadmium chloride. Veterinary Immunology and Immunopathology, 162(3-4), pp. 168–173.
Zhu, X. , Xu, N. , Liu, Y. , Ai, X. and Yang, Y. , 2022. The effects of *Agaricus bisporus* polysaccharides enriched diet on growth, nonspecific immunity and disease resistance in crayfish (*Procambarus clarkii*). Aquaculture Reports, 24, pp. 101168.
Garg, C.K. , Sahu, N.P. , Maiti, M.K. , Shamna, N. , Deo, A.D. and Sardar, P. , 2021. Dietary Houttuynia cordata leaf extract and meal enhances the immunity and expression of immune genes in *Labeo rohita* (Hamilton, 1822). Aquaculture Research, 52(1), pp. 381–394.
Pan, S. , Yan, X. , Li, T. , Suo, X. , Liu, H. , Tan, B. … … . and Dong, X. , 2022. Impacts of tea polyphenols on growth, antioxidant capacity and immunity in juvenile hybrid grouper (*Epinephelus fuscoguttatus*♀ × *E. lanceolatus*♂) fed high-lipid diets. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 128, pp. 348–359.
Abdelrazek, H.M.A. , Tag, H.M. , Kilany, O.E. , Reddy, P.G. and Hassan, A.M. , 2017. Immuomodulatory effect of dietary turmeric supplementation on Nile tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*). Aquaculture Nutrition, 23(5), pp. 1048–1054.
Castro, S.B.R. , Leal, C.A.G. , Freire, F.R. , Carvalho, D.A. , Oliveira, D.F. … and Figueiredo, H.C.P. , 2008. Antibacterial activity of plant extracts from Brazil against fish pathogenic bacteria. Brazilian Journal of Microbiology, 39, pp. 756–760.
Akinpelu, D.A. , Aiyegoro, O.A. , Akinpelu, O.F. and Okoh, A.I. (2014). Stem bark extract and fraction of Persea americana (Mill.) exhibits bactericidal activities against strains of Bacillus cereus associated with food poisoning. Molecules, 20(1), pp. 416–429.
Gonelimali, F.D. , Lin, J. , Miao, W. , Xuan, J. , Charles, F. , Chen, M. and Hatab, S.R. , 2018. Antimicrobial properties and mechanism of action of some plant extracts against food pathogens and spoilage microorganisms. Frontiers in Microbiology, 9, pp. 1639.
Mostafa, A.A. , Al-Askar, A.A. , Almaary, K.S. , Dawoud, T.M. , Sholkamy, E.N. and Bakri, M.M. , 2018. Antimicrobial activity of some plant extracts against bacterial strains causing food poisoning diseases. Saudi Journal of Biological Sciences, 25(2), pp. 361–366.
Pereira-Torres, D. , Gonçalves, A.T. , Ulloa, V. , Martínez, R. , Carrasco, H. , Olea, A.F. … … . and Astuya, A. (2016). In vitro modulation of Drimys winteri bark extract and the active compound polygodial on Salmo salar immune genes after exposure to Saprolegnia parasitica. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 59, pp. 103–108.
Abo-State, H. , Yasser Hammouda, H.Y. , El-Nadi, A. and AboZaid, H. , 2014. Evaluation of feeding raw Moringa (Moringa oleifera Lam.) leaf meal in Nile tilapia fingerlings (Oreochromis niloticus) diets. Global Veterinaria, 13 (1), pp. 105–111.
Kumar, S. , Abhay K. and Pandey, A.K. , 2013. Chemistry and Biological Activities of Flavonoids: An Overview. The Scientific World Journal, 13, pp. 1–16.
Tekle, E.W. and Sahu, N.P. , 2015. Growth and immunodulatory response of Nile tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus fingerlings to ethanolic extract of Moringa oleifera flower. International Journal of Sustainable and Renewable Products, 5(7), pp. 285–296.
Barton, B.A. and Iwama, G.K. , 2005. Simple field methods for monitoring stress and general condition of fish. Aquaculture Research, 26, pp. 273–282.
Tekle, E.W. , Sahu, N.P. and Makesh, M. , 2015. Antioxidative and antimicrobial activities of different solvent extracts of Moringa oleifera: an in vitro evaluation. International Journal of Sustainable and Renewable Products, 5(5), pp. 255–266.
Kaleeswarana B. , Ilavenilb, S. and Ravikumara , 2011. Dietary supplementation with Cynodon dactylon (L.) enhances innate immunity and disease resistance of Indian major carp, Catla catla (Ham.). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 31, pp. 953–962.
Gbadamosi, O.K. and Olanipekun, O.S. , 2020. Dietary supplementation with goat weed leaf (Ageratum conyzoides) improves growth performance, haematological parameters and attenuates pathological-induced stress in African catfish (Clarias gariepinus) fingerlings. Livestock Research for Rural Development, 32 (7), pp. 1–9.
Giri, S.S. , Sen, S.S. , Chi, C. , Kim, H.J. , Yun, S. , Park, S.C. and Sukumaran, V. , 2015. Effect of guava leaves on the growth performance and cytokine gene expression of Labeo rohita and its susceptibility to Aeromonas hydrophila infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 46(2), pp. 217–224.
Ojima, N. , Yamashita, M. and Watanabe, S. , 2005. Quantitative mRNA expression profiling of heat shock protein families in rainbow trout and Nile tilapia cells. Biochemical and Biophysical Resources Communication, 329, pp. 51–57.
Li, L. , Kobayashi, M. , Kaneko, H. , Nakajima-Takagi, Y. , Nakayama, Y. and Yamamoto, M. , 2008. Molecular evolution of Keap1: Two Keap1 molecules with distinctive intervening region structures are conserved among fish. Journal of Biological Chemistry, 283(6), pp. 3248–3255.
Liu, F. , Shi, H.Z. , Guo, Q.S. , Yu, Y.B. , Wang, A.M. , Lv, F. and Shen, W.B. , 2016. Effects of astaxanthin and emodin on the growth, stress resistance and disease resistance of yellow catfish (Pelteobagrus fulvidraco). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 51, pp. 125–135.
Chakrabarti, R. , Srivastava, P.K. , Verma, N. and Sharma, J.G. , 2014. Effect of seeds of Achyranthes aspera on the immune responses and expression of some immune-related genes in carp *Catla catla* , Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 4, pp. 164–169.
Yang, X. , Guo, J.L. , Ye, J.Y. , Zhang, Y.X. and Wang, W. , 2015. The effects of Ficus carica polysaccharide on immune response and expression of some immune-related genes in grass carp, *Ctenopharyngodon idella* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 42(1), pp. 132–137.
Elias, N.S. and Abdel-Latif, J.I. , 2009. Impairment of fish fecundity by ecps yersinia ruckeri with levamisole treatment. Presented at the Proceedings of the 2nd Global Fisheries and Aquaculture Research Conference, Cairo International Convention Center, 24-26 October 2009, Massive Conferences and Trade Fairs, pp. 315–328.
El-Fahla, N.A. , Khalil, K.A. , Dessouki, A.A. , Abdelrazek, H.M. , Mohallal, M.E. and El-Hak, H.N.G. , 2022. Dietary Beta-MOS® ameliorated lead induced reproductive toxicity and stress in Nile tilapia. Aquaculture, 548, pp. 737711.
Carnevali, O. , Maradonna, F. and Gioacchini, G. , 2017. Integrated control of fish metabolism, wellbeing and reproduction: the role of probiotic. Aquaculture, 472, pp. 144–155.
Gioacchini, G. , Giorgini, E. , Merrifield, D.L. , Hardiman, G. , Borini, A. , Vaccari, L. and Carnevali, O. , 2012. Probiotics can induce follicle maturational competence: the Danio rerio case. Biology of Reproduction, 86, pp. 65–1.
Valcarce, D.G. , Pardo, M. , Riesco, M. , Cruz, Z. and Robles, V. , 2015. Effect of diet supplementation with a commercial probiotic containing *Pediococcus acidilactici* (Lindner, 1887) on the expression of five quality markers in zebrafish (Danio rerio (Hamilton, 1822)) testis. Journal of Applied Ichthyology, 31, 18–21.
Dabrowski, K. and Ciereszko, A. , 2001. Ascorbic acid and reproduction in fish: endocrine regulation and gamete quality. Aquaculture Research, 32, pp. 623–638.

Adebayo, O. and Fawole, F. , 2012. Growth and reproductive performance of African giant catfish, *Heterobranchus longifilis* Valenciennes 1840 broodstock on ascorbic acid supplementation. Indian Journal Fisheries, 59(2), pp. 135–140.
Shahkar, E. , Yun, H. , Kim, D.-J. , Kim, S.-K. , Lee, B.I. and Bai, S.C. , 2015. Effects of dietary vitamin C levels on tissue ascorbic acid concentration, hematology, non-specific immune response and gonad histology in broodstock Japanese eel, *Anguilla japonica* . Aquaculture, 438, pp. 115–121.
Shao, L. , Han, D. , Yang, Y. , Jin, J. , Liu, H. , Zhu, X. and Xie, S. , 2018. Effects of dietary vitamin C on growth, gonad development and antioxidant ability of ongrowing gibel carp (Carassius auratus gibelio var. CAS III). Aquaculture Research, 49, pp. 1242–1249.
ElSayed, A.M. , Izquierdo, M. , 2022. The importance of vitamin E for farmed fish—A review. Reviews in Aquaculture, 14, pp. 688–703.
Tokuda, M. , Yamaguchi, T. , Wakui, K. , Sato, T. , Ito, M. and Takeuchi, M. , 2000. Tocopherol affinity for serum lipoproteins of Japanese flounder Paralichthys olivaceus during the reproduction period. Fisheries Science, 66, pp. 619–624.
Guerriero, G. , Ferro, R. , Russo, G. and Ciarcia, G. , 2004. Vitamin E in early stages of sea bass (*Dicentrarchus labrax*) development. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part a: Molecular and Integrative Physiology, 138, pp. 435–439.
James, R. , Vasudhevan, I. and Sampath, K. (2008). Effect of dietary vitamin E on growth, fecundity, and leukocyte count in goldfish (Carassius auratus). The Israeli Journal of Aquaculture – Bamidgeh, 60(2), pp. 121–127
McDougall, M. , Choi, J. , Truong, L. , Tanguay, R. and Traber, M.G. , 2017. Vitamin E deficiency during embryogenesis in zebrafish causes lasting metabolic and cognitive impairments despite refeeding adequate diets. Free Radical Biology and Medicine, 110, pp. 250–260.
Huang, B. , Wang, N. , Wang, L. , Jia, Y. , Liu, Bin , Gao, X. , Liu, Baoliang , and Wang, W. , 2019. Vitamin E stimulates the expression of gonadotropin hormones in primary pituitary cells of turbot (*Scophthalmus maximus*). Aquaculture, 509, 47–51.
Saheli, M. , Islami, H.R. , Mohseni, M. and Soltani, M. , 2021. Effects of dietary vitamin E on growth performance, body composition, antioxidant capacity, and some immune responses in Caspian trout (Salmo caspius). Aquaculture Reports, 21, 100857.
Gong, N. , Ferreira-Martins, D. , Norstog, J.L. , McCormick, S.D. , Sheridan, M.A. , 2022. Discovery of prolactin-like in lamprey: Role in osmoregulation and new insight into the evolution of the growth hormone/prolactin family. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 119, e2212196119
Machemer, L. and Lorke, D. , 1981. Embryotoxic effect of cadmium on rats upon oral administration. Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology, 58(3), pp. 438–443. Rubin and Specker, 1992
Summers, K. and Zhu, Y. , 2008. Positive selection on a prolactin paralog following gene duplication in cichlids: adaptive evolution in the context of parental care. Copeia, 2008(4), pp. 872–876.
Vecino, J.L.G. , 2004. Nucleotide Enhancement of Diets, Fish Reproduction and Egg Quality. Open University (United Kingdom).
Arshadi, A. , Yavari, V. , Oujifard, A. , Mousavi, S.M. , Gisbert, E. and Mozanzadeh, M.T. , 2018. Dietary nucleotide mixture effects on reproductive and performance, ovary fatty acid profile and biochemical parameters of female Pacific shrimp Litopenaeus vannamei. Aquaculture Nutrition, 24, pp. 515–523.
de Lima, S.A. , de Oliveira Pedreira, A.C. , de Freitas, J.M.A. , Dalmaso, A.C.S. , Chiella, R.J. , Meurer, F. , Romão, S. and Bombardelli, R.A. , 2020. Diets containing purified nucleotides reduce oxidative stress, interfere with reproduction, and promote growth in Nile tilapia females. Aquaculture, 528, pp. 735509.

Herbal Immunomodulators for Aquaculture

Shamna, N. , Sahu, N.P. , Sardar, P. , Fawole F.J. , Kumar S. Changes in weight gain, digestive and metabolic enzyme activities in Labeo rohita fingerlings in response to multiple stress exposure and dietary nutraceutical. Tropical Animal Health and Production, 53, pp.509.
Wendelaar Bonga, S.E. , 1997. The stress response in fish. Physiological Reviews, 77(3), pp.591–625.
Barton, B.A. and Iwama, G.K. , 1991. Physiological changes in fish from stress in aquaculture with emphasis on the response and effects of corticosteroids. Annual Review of Fish Diseases, 1, pp.3–26.
Rehman, S. , Gora, A.H. , Ahmad, I. and Rasool, S.I. , 2017. Stress in aquaculture hatcheries: source, impact and mitigation. International Journal of Current Microbiology and Applied Sciences, 6(10), pp.3030–3045.
Serrano, P.H. , 2005. Responsible use of antibiotics in aquaculture (Vol. 469). Food & Agriculture Org.
Mutalipassi, M. , Esposito, R. , Ruocco, N. , Viel, T. , Costantini, M. and Zupo, V. , 2021. Bioactive Compounds of Nutraceutical Value from Fishery and Aquaculture Discards. Foods, 10(7), p.1495.
Brower, V. , 1998. Nutraceuticals: poised for a healthy slice of the healthcare market?. Nature Biotechnology, 16(8), pp.728–731.
Sahoo, P.K. , 2007. Role of immunostimulants in disease resistance of fish. CABI Reviews, (2007), p.18.
Mutalipassi, M. , Esposito, R. , Ruocco, N. , Viel, T. , Costantini, M. and Zupo, V. , 2021. Bioactive Compounds of Nutraceutical Value from Fishery and Aquaculture Discards. Foods, 10(7), p.1495.
Cristea, I.A. , Kok, R.N. and Cuijpers, P. , 2016. The effectiveness of cognitive bias modification interventions for substance addictions: a meta-analysis. PLoS One, 11(9), p.e0162226.
Mukherjee, A.K. , Doley, R. and Saikia, D. , 2008. Isolation of a snake venom phospholipase A2 (PLA2) inhibitor (AIPLAI) from leaves of Azadirachta indica (Neem): Mechanism of PLA2 inhibition by AIPLAI in vitro condition. Toxicon, 51(8), pp.1548–1553.
Alam, M.N. , Ahmed, G.U. and Chowdhury, M.B.R. , 2014. Performance of herbal extracts on diseased fish. Bangladesh Journal of Veterinary Medicine, 12(2), pp.225–230.
Krishnani, K.K. , Gupta, B.P. , Joseph, K.O. , Muralidhar, M. and Nagavel, A. , 2002. Studies on the use of neem products for removal of ammonia from brackishwater. Journal of Environmental Science and Health, Part A, 37(5), pp.893–904.
Citarasu, T. , 2010. Herbal biomedicines: a new opportunity for aquaculture industry. Aquaculture International, 18(3), pp.403–414.
Chandra, H. , Kumari, P. , Prasad, R. , Gupta, S.C. and Yadav, S. , 2021. Antioxidant and antimicrobial activity displayed by a fungal endophyte Alternaria alternata isolated from Picrorhiza kurroa from Garhwal Himalayas, India. Biocatalysis and Agricultural Biotechnology, 33, p.101955.
Joseph, B. and Justin Raj, S. 2010. Pharmacogno`stic and phytochemical properties of Aloe vera linn an overview. International Journal of Pharmacuetical Science Reviews and Research, 4(2), pp.106–110.

Ranjbar, M. , Ghorbanpoor, M. , Peyghan, R. , Mesbah, M. and Razi Jalali, M. , 2010. Effects of dietary Aloe vera on some specific and nonspecific immunity in the common carp (Cyprinus carpio). Iranian Journal of Veterinary Medicine, 4(3).
Trejo-Flores, J.V. , Luna-González, A. , Álvarez-Ruíz, P. , Escamilla-Montes, R. , Peraza-Gómez, V. , Diarte-Plata, G. , Esparza-Leal, H.M. , Campa-Córdova, Á.I. , Gámez-Jiménez, C. and Rubio-Castro, A. , 2016. Protective effect of Aloe vera in Litopenaeus vannamei challenged with Vibrio parahaemolyticus and white spot syndrome virus. Aquaculture, 465, pp.60–64.
Haniffa, M.A. , Bharathi, B.K. , Margaret, I.V. and Paray, B.A. , 2013. Effect of a Probiotic and Herbal Additives on Growth, Survival and Disease Resistance of Striped Murrel. World Aquaculture June, pp.64–67.
Gabriel, N.N. , Qiang, J. , Ma, X.Y. , Xu, P. and Nakwaya, D.N. , 2017. Effects of dietary Aloe vera crude extracts on digestive enzyme activities and muscle proximate composition of GIFT tilapia juveniles. South African Journal of Animal Science, 47(6), pp.904–913.
Upadhyay, R.K. , 2018. Nutraceutical, therapeutic, and pharmaceutical potential of Aloe vera: A review. International Journal of Green Pharmacy (IJGP), 12(01).
Gabriel, N.N. , Qiang, J. , Ma, X.Y. , He, J. , Xu, P. , & Omoregie, E. (2017). Sex-Reversal Effect of Dietary Aloe vera (Liliaceae) on Genetically Improved Farmed Nile Tilapia Fry. North American Journal of Aquaculture, 79(1), pp.100–105.
Prasad, S. , Tyagi, A.K. and Aggarwal, B.B. , 2014. Recent developments in delivery, bioavailability, absorption and metabolism of curcumin: the golden pigment from golden spice. Cancer research and treatment: official journal of Korean Cancer Association, 46(1), pp.2–18.
Alagawany, M. , Ashour, E.A. and Reda, F.M. , 2016. Effect of dietary supplementation of garlic (Allium sativum) and turmeric (Curcuma longa) on growth performance, carcass traits, blood profile and oxidative status in growing rabbits. Annals of Animal Science, 16(2), pp.489–505.
Alagawany, M. , Farag, M.R. , Abdelnour, S.A. , Dawood, M.A. , Elnesr, S.S. and Dhama, K. , 2021. Curcumin and its different forms: A review on fish nutrition. Aquaculture, 532, p.736030.
Wei, Q.Y. , Chen, W.F. , Zhou, B. , Yang, L. and Liu, Z.L. , 2006. Inhibition of lipid peroxidation and protein oxidation in rat liver mitochondria by curcumin and its analogues. Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA)-General Subjects, 1760(1), pp.70–77.
Ak, T. and Gülçin, İ. , 2008. Antioxidant and radical scavenging properties of curcumin. Chemico-Biological Interactions, 174(1), pp.27–37.
Alambra, J.R. , Alenton, R.R.R. , Gulpeo, P.C.R. , Mecenas, C.L. , Miranda, A.P. , Thomas, R.C. , Velando, M.K.S. , Vitug, L.D. and Maningas, M.B.B. , 2012. Immunomodulatory effects of turmeric, Curcuma longa (Magnoliophyta, Zingiberaceae) on macrobrachium rosenbergii (Crustacea, Palaemonidae) against Vibrio alginolyticus (Proteobacteria, Vibrionaceae). Aquaculture, Aquarium, Conservation & Legislation, 5(1), pp.13–17.
Mahmoud, H.K. , Al-Sagheer, A.A. , Reda, F.M. , Mahgoub, S.A. and Ayyat, M.S. , 2017. Dietary curcumin supplement influence on growth, immunity, antioxidant status, and resistance to Aeromonas hydrophila in Oreochromis niloticus. Aquaculture, 475, pp.16–23.
Yonar, M.E. , Yonar, S.M. , İspir, Ü. and Ural, M.Ş. , 2019. Effects of curcumin on haematological values, immunity, antioxidant status and resistance of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) against Aeromonas salmonicida subsp. achromogenes. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 89, pp.83–90.
Patil, V.M. , Das, S. and Balasubramanian, K. , 2016. Quantum chemical and docking insights into bioavailability enhancement of curcumin by piperine in pepper. The Journal of Physical Chemistry A, 120(20), pp.3643–3653.
Ghalandarlaki, N. , Alizadeh, A.M. , and Ashkani-Esfahani, S. 2014. Nanotechnology-applied curcumin for different diseases therapy. BioMed Research International 2014, Article ID 394264, 23 pages, 2014. https://doi.org/10.1155/2014/394264
Martin, K.W. and Ernst, E. , 2003. Herbal medicines for treatment of bacterial infections: a review of controlled clinical trials. Journal of Antimicrobial Chemotherapy, 51(2), pp.241–246.
Nya, E.J. and Austin, B. , 2009. Use of garlic, Allium sativum, to control Aeromonas hydrophila infection in rainbow trout, Oncorhynchus mykiss (Walbaum). Journal of fish diseases, 32(11), pp.963–970.
Shakya, S.R. and Labh, S.N. , 2014. Medicinal uses of garlic (Allium sativum) improves fish health and acts as an immunostimulant in aquaculture. European Journal of Biotechnology and Bioscience, 2(4), pp.44–47.
Mohan, L. , Amberkar, M.V. and Kumari, M. , 2011. Ocimum sanctum linn.(TULSI)-an overview. Int J Pharm Sci Rev Res, 7(1), pp.51–53.
Shankar, K. and Kiran, B.R. , 2013. Review on usage of medicinal plants in fish diseases. International Journal of Pharma and Bio Sciences, 4(3), pp.975–986.
Sivaram, V. , Babu, M.M. , Immanuel, G. , Murugadass, S. , Citarasu, T. and Marian, M.P. , 2004. Growth and immune response of juvenile greasy groupers (Epinephelus tauvina) fed with herbal antibacterial active principle supplemented diets against Vibrio harveyi infections. Aquaculture, 237(1-4), pp.9–20.
Logambal, S.M. , Venkatalakshmi, S. and Dinakaran Michael, R. , 2000. Immunostimulatory effect of leaf extract of Ocimum sanctum Linn. in Oreochromis mossambicus (Peters). Hydrobiologia, 430(1), pp.113–120.
Das, R. , Raman, R.P. , Saha, H. and Singh, R. , 2015. Effect of Ocimum sanctum Linn.(Tulsi) extract on the immunity and survival of Labeo rohita (Hamilton) infected with Aeromonas hydrophila. Aquaculture Research, 46(5), pp.1111–1121.
Sutili, F.J. , Velasquez, A. , Pinheiro, C.G. , Heinzmann, B.M. , Gatlin III, D.M. and Baldisserotto, B. , 2016. Evaluation of Ocimum americanum essential oil as an additive in red drum (Sciaenops ocellatus) diets. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 56, pp.155–161.
Ali, B.H. , Blunden, G. , Tanira, M.O. and Nemmar, A. , 2008. Some phytochemical, pharmacological and toxicological properties of ginger (Zingiber officinale Roscoe): a review of recent research. Food and Chemical Toxicology, 46(2), pp.409–420.
Nya, E.J. and Austin, B. , 2009. Use of garlic, Allium sativum, to control Aeromonas hydrophila infection in rainbow trout, Oncorhynchus mykiss (Walbaum). Journal of Fish Diseases, 32(11), pp.963–970.
Gholipour Kanani, H. , Nobahar, Z. , Kakoolaki, S. and Jafarian, H. , 2014. Effect of ginger-and garlic-supplemented diet on growth performance, some hematological parameters and immune responses in juvenile Huso huso. Fish Physiology and Biochemistry, 40(2), pp.481–490.
Immanuel, G. , Uma, R.P. , Iyapparaj, P. , Citarasu, T. , Punitha Peter, S.M. , Michael Babu, M. and Palavesam, A. , 2009. Dietary medicinal plant extracts improve growth, immune activity and survival of tilapia Oreochromis mossambicus. Journal of Fish Biology, 74(7), pp.1462–1475.
Levy, G. , Zilberg, D. , Paladini, G. and Fridman, S. , 2015. Efficacy of ginger-based treatments against infection with Gyrodactylus turnbulli in the guppy (Poecilia reticulata (Peters)). Veterinary Parasitology, 209(3-4), pp.235–241.
Sukumaran, V. , Park, S.C. and Giri, S.S. , 2016. Role of dietary ginger Zingiber officinale in improving growth performances and immune functions of Labeo rohita fingerlings. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 57, pp.362–370.

Mishra, B. and Singh Sangwan, N. , 2019. Amelioration of cadmium stress in Withania somnifera by ROS management: active participation of primary and secondary metabolism. Plant Growth Regulation, 87(3), pp.403–412.
Yogeeswaran, A. , Velmurugan, S. , Punitha, S.M.J. , Babu, M.M. , Selvaraj, T. , Kumaran, T. and Citarasu, T. , 2012. Protection of Penaeus monodon against white spot syndrome virus by inactivated vaccine with herbal immunostimulants. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 32(6), pp.1058–1067.
Srivastava, A. , Ansal, M.D. and Khairnar, S.O. , 2020. Effect of ashwagandha (Withania somnifera) root powder supplementation on survival, growth and flesh quality of an indian major carp, Labeo rohita (Ham.) fingerlings. Animal Nutrition and Feed Technology, 20(3), pp.515–524.
Sharma, A. , Chanu, T.I. and Deo, A.D. , 2017. Dietary ashwagandha, Withania somnifera (L. dunal) potentiates growth, haemato-biochemical response and disease resistance of Labeo rohita (Hamilton, 1822) against Aeromonas hydrophila infection. Journal of Entomology and Zoology Studies, 5(5), pp.1113–1119.
Laltlanmawia, C. , Saha, R.K. , Saha, H. and Biswas, P. , 2019. Ameliorating effects of dietary mixture of Withania somnifera root extract and vitamin C in Labeo rohita against low pH and waterborne iron stresses. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 88, pp.170–178.
Maiti, S. , Saha, S. , Jana, P. , Chowdhury, A. , Khatua, S. and Ghosh, T.K. , 2021. Effect of dietary Andrographis paniculata leaf extract on growth, immunity, and disease resistance against Aeromonas hydrophila in Pangasianodon hypopthalmus. Journal of Applied Aquaculture, pp.1–25.
Direkbusarakom, S. , Ezura, Y. , Yoshimizu, M. and Herunsalee, A. , 1998. Efficacy of Thai traditional herb extracts against fish and shrimp pathogenic bacteria. Fish Pathology, 33(4), pp.437–441.
Garg, C.K. , Sahu, N.P. , Shamna, N. , Deo, A.D. , Fawole, F.J. , Kumar, S. and Maiti, M.K. , 2019. Effect of dietary Houttuynia cordata leaf meal and leaf extract on the growth performance, nutrient utilization and expression of IGFI gene in Labeo rohita. Aquaculture Nutrition, 25(3), pp.702–711.
Pandey, G. , Madhuri, S. and Mandloi, A.K. , 2012. Medicinal plants useful in fish diseases. Plant Archives, 12(1), pp.1–4.
Christybapita, D. , Divyagnaneswari, M. , Michael, D.R. 2007. Oral administration of Eclipta alba leaf aqueous extract enhances the non-specific immune responses and disease resistance of *Oreochromis mossambicus* . Fish and Shellfish Immunology, 23(4), 840–852.
Rani, T.V.J. 1999. Fourth year annual report (CSIR Research Associateship) submitted to Council of Scientific and Industrial Research, New Delhi, 1999.
Tu, X. , Ling, F. , Huang, A. , Zhang, Q. and Wang, G. , 2013. Anthelmintic efficacy of Santalum album (Santalaceae) against monogenean infections in goldfish. Parasitology Research, 112(8), pp.2839–2845.
Balasubramanian, G. , Sarathi, M. , Venkatesan, C. , Thomas, J. and Hameed, A.S. , 2008. Oral administration of antiviral plant extract of Cynodon dactylon on a large scale production against white spot syndrome virus (WSSV) in Penaeus monodon. Aquaculture, 279(1-4), pp.2–5.
Rao, Y.V. , Das, B.K. , Jyotyrmayee, P. and Chakrabarti, R. , 2006. Effect of Achyranthes aspera on the immunity and survival of Labeo rohita infected with Aeromonas hydrophila. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 20(3), pp.263–273.
Harikrishnan, R. , Balasundaram, C. and Heo, M.S. , 2012. Effect of *Inonotus obliquus* enriched diet on hematology, immune response, and disease protection in kelp grouper, *Epinephelus bruneus* against *Vibrio harveyi* . Aquaculture, 344, pp.48–53.
XueGang, H. , Lei, L. , Cheng, C. , Kun, H. , XianLe, Y. and GaoXue, W. , 2013. In vitro screening of Chinese medicinal plants for antifungal activity against Saprolegnia sp. and Achlya klebsiana. North American Journal of Aquaculture, 75(4), pp.468–473.
Dubber, D. and Harder, T. , 2008. Extracts of *Ceramium rubrum*, *Mastocarpus stellatus* and *Laminaria digitata* inhibit growth of marine and fish pathogenic bacteria at ecologically realistic concentrations. Aquaculture, 274(2-4), pp.196–200.
Gupta, N. , Kar, S.R. and Chakraborty, A. 2021. A Review on Medicinal Plants and Immune Status of Fish. Egyptian Journal of Aquatic Biology and Fisheries, 25(2), pp.897–912.
Elumalai, P. , Kurian, A. , Lakshmi, S. , Faggio, C. , Esteban, M.A. and Ringø, E. , 2020. Herbal immunomodulators in aquaculture. Reviews in Fisheries Science & Aquaculture, 29(1), pp.33–57.
Soltani, M. , Lymbery, A. , Song, S.K. , Shekarabi, P.H. 2019.Adjuvant effects of medicinal herbs and probiotics for fish vaccines. Reviews in Aquaculture, 11, pp.1325–1341.
Doan, H.V. , Hoseinifar, S.Y. , Jaturasitha, S. , Dawood, M.O. , Harikrishnan, R. 2020. The effects of berberine powder supplementation on growth performance, skin mucus immune response, serum immunity, and disease resistance of Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus) fingerlings. Aquaculture, 520, pp.734927.
Vijayaram, S. , Sun, Y. , Zuorro, A. , Ghafarifarsani, H. , Doan, H.V. , Hoseinifar, S.H. 2022. Bioactive immunostimulants as health-promoting feed additives in aquaculture: A review. Fish and Shellfish Immunology, 130, pp.294–308.
Gupta, N. , Kar, S.R. , Chakraborty, A. 2021. A Review on Medicinal Plants and Immune Status of Fish. Egyptian Journal of Aquatic Biology & Fisheries, 25(2), pp.897 – 912.
Reverter, M. , TapissierBontemps, N. , Sasal, P. and Saulnier, D. , 2017. Use of medicinal plants in aquaculture. Diagnosis and control of diseases of fish and shellfish, pp.223–261.
Van Hai, N. , 2015. The use of medicinal plants as immunostimulants in aquaculture: A review. Aquaculture, 446, pp.88–96.
Mishra, R. , Gupta, A.K. , Kumar, A. , Lal, R.K. , Saikia, D. and Chanotiya, C.S. , 2018. Genetic diversity, essential oil composition, and in vitro antioxidant and antimicrobial activity of Curcuma longa L. germplasm collections. Journal of Applied Research on Medicinal and Aromatic Plants, 10, pp.75–84.
Ames, B.N. , Gold, L.S. and Willett, W.C. , 1995. The causes and prevention of cancer. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 92(12), pp.5258–5265.
Omidbaigi, R. and Nasiri, M.F. , 2004. Quantitative distribution of hesperidin in Citrus species, during fruit maturation and optimal harvest time. Natural Product Radiance, 3(1), pp.12–15.
Singleton, V.L. and Rossi, J.A. , 1965. Colorimetry of total phenolics with phosphomolybdic-phosphotungstic acid reagents. American journal of Enology and Viticulture, 16(3), pp.144–158.
Marinova, G. and Batchvarov, V. , 2011. Evaluation of the methods for determination of the free radical scavenging activity by DPPH. Bulgarian Journal of Agricultural Science, 17(1), pp.11–24.
Hoseinifar, S.H. , Sun, Y.Z. , Zhou, Z. , Van Doan, H. , Davies, S.J. and Harikrishnan, R. , 2020. Boosting immune function and disease bio-control through environment-friendly and sustainable approaches in finfish aquaculture: herbal therapy scenarios. Reviews in Fisheries Science & Aquaculture, 28(3), pp.303–321.

Brand-Williams, W. , Cuvelier, M.E. and Berset, C.L.W.T. , 1995. Use of a free radical method to evaluate antioxidant activity. LWT-Food Science and Technology, 28(1), pp.25–30.
Benzie, I.F. and Strain, J.J. , 1996. The ferric reducing ability of plasma (FRAP) as a measure of “antioxidant power”: the FRAP assay. Analytical Biochemistry, 239(1), pp.70–76.
Prieto, P. , Pineda, M. and Aguilar, M. , 1999. Spectrophotometric quantitation of antioxidant capacity through the formation of a phosphomolybdenum complex: specific application to the determination of vitamin E. Analytical Biochemistry, 269(2), pp.337–341.
Singh, N. and Rajini, P.S. , 2004. Free radical scavenging activity of an aqueous extract of potato peel. Food Chemistry, 85(4), pp.611–616.
Sánchez-Moreno, C. , 2002. Methods used to evaluate the free radical scavenging activity in foods and biological systems. Food Science and Technology International, 8(3), pp.121–137.
Pulido, R. , Bravo, L. and Saura-Calixto, F. , 2000. Antioxidant activity of dietary polyphenols as determined by a modified ferric reducing/antioxidant power assay. Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry, 48(8), pp.3396–3402.
Kushwaha, S.K. , Kushwaha, N. , Maurya, N. and Rai, A.K. , 2010. Role of markers in the standardization of herbal drugs: a review. Archives of Applied Science Research, 2(1), pp.225–229.
Farooqui, N.A. , Dey, A. , Gn, S. and Ts, E. , 2014. Development and validation of reverse phase high performance liquid chromatography method for quantitative estimation of vasicine in bulk and pharmaceutical dosage form. Development, 7(5).
Rios, J.L. , Recio, M.C. and Villar, A. , 1988. Screening methods for natural products with antimicrobial activity: a review of the literature. Journal of Ethnopharmacology, 23(2-3), pp.127–149.
Alzoreky, N.S. and Nakahara, K. , 2003. Antibacterial activity of extracts from some edible plants commonly consumed in Asia. International Journal of Food Microbiology, 80(3), pp.223–230.
Verma, V.K. , Sehgal, N. and Prakash, O. , 2015. Characterization and screening of bioactive compounds in the extract prepared from aerial roots of Ficus benghalensis. International Journal of Pharmacuetical Science and Research, 6(5056), pp.5056–5069.
Giancarlo §, S. , Rosa §, L.M. , Nadjafi, F. and Francesco, M. , 2006. Hypoglycaemic activity of two spices extracts: Rhus coriaria L. and Bunium persicum Boiss. Natural Product Research, 20(9), pp.882–886.
Heidarieh, M. , Mirvaghefi, A.R. , Akbari, M. , Sheikhzadeh, N. , KamyabiMoghaddam, Z. , Askari, H. and Shahbazfar, A.A. , 2013. Evaluations of H ilyses™, fermented S accharomyces cerevisiae, on rainbow trout (O ncorhynchus mykiss) growth performance, enzymatic activities and gastrointestinal structure. Aquaculture Nutrition, 19(3), pp.343–348.
Citarasu, T. , 2010. Herbal biomedicines: a new opportunity for aquaculture industry. Aquaculture International, 18(3), pp.403–414.
Harikrishnan, R. , Balasundaram, C. and Heo, M.S. , 2011. Impact of plant products on innate and adaptive immune system of cultured finfish and shellfish. Aquaculture, 317(1-4), pp.1–15.
Reverter, M. , Bontemps, N. , Lecchini, D. , Banaigs, B. and Sasal, P. , 2014. Use of plant extracts in fish aquaculture as an alternative to chemotherapy: current status and future perspectives. Aquaculture, 433, pp.50–61.
Van Doan, D. , Huynh, B.A. , Nguyen, T.D. , Cao, X.T. , Nguyen, V.C. , Nguyen, T.L.H. , Nguyen, H.T. and Le, V.T. , 2020. Biosynthesis of silver and gold nanoparticles using aqueous extract of Codonopsis pilosula roots for antibacterial and catalytic applications. Journal of Nanomaterials, 2020.
Kumar, V. , Akinleye, A.O. , Makkar, H.P.S. , AnguloEscalante, M.A. and Becker, K. , 2012. Growth performance and metabolic efficiency in Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus L.) fed on a diet containing Jatropha platyphylla kernel meal as a protein source. Journal of Animal Physiology and Animal Nutrition, 96(1), pp.37–46.
Thakur, N.S. , Verma, K.S. and Rana, R.C. , 2014. Growth and yield performance of ashwagandha (Withania somnifera) under agroforestry. Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences, 84(8), pp.937–941.
Sharma, A. , Bachheti, A. , Sharma, P. , Bachheti, R.K. and Husen, A. , 2020. Phytochemistry, pharmacological activities, nanoparticle fabrication, commercial products and waste utilization of Carica papaya L.: A comprehensive review. Current Research in Biotechnology, 2, pp.145–160.
Chowdhury, M.A.K. , Song, H. , Liu, Y. , Bunod, J.D. and Dong, X.H. , 2021. Effects of Microencapsulated Organic Acid and Their Salts on Growth Performance, Immunity, and Disease Resistance of Pacific White Shrimp Litopenaeus vannamei. Sustainability, 13(14), p.7791.
Syed, R. , Masood, Z. , Ul Hassan, H. , Khan, W. , Mushtaq, S. , Ali, A. , Gul, Y. et al. 2022. Growth performance, haematological assessment and chemical composition of Nile tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus (Linnaeus, 1758) fed different levels of Aloe vera extract as feed additives in a closed aquaculture system. Saudi Journal of Biological Sciences, 29(1), pp. 296–303.
Fazio, F. , Naz, S. , Habib, S.S. , Hashmi, M.A.H. , Ali, M. , Saoca, C. and Ullah, M. , 2021. Effect of Fortified Feed with Phyto-Extract on the First Physical Barrier (Mucus) of Labeo rohita. Animals, 11(5), p.1308.
Mansour, A.T. , Miao, L. , Espinosa, C. , García-Beltrán, J.M. , Ceballos Francisco, D.C. and Esteban, M. , 2018. Effects of dietary inclusion of Moringa oleifera leaves on growth and some systemic and mucosal immune parameters of seabream. Fish Physiology and Biochemistry, 44(4), pp.1223–1240.
Verma, V.K. , Rani, K.V. , Sehgal, N. and Prakash, O. , 2015. Enhanced disease resistance in the Indian snakehead, Channa punctata against Aeromonas hydrophila, through 5% feed supplementation with F. benghalensis (aerial root) and L. leucocephala (pod seed). Aquaculture International, 23(5), pp.1127–1140.
Chowdhury, D.K. , Sahu, N.P. , Sardar, P. , Deo, A.D. , Bedekar, M.K. , Singha, K.P. and Maiti, M.K. , 2021. Feeding turmeric in combination with ginger or garlic enhances the digestive enzyme activities, growth and immunity in Labeo rohita fingerlings. Animal Feed Science and Technology, 277, p.114964.
Hashemi, S.R. and Davoodi, H. , 2011. Herbal plants and their derivatives as growth and health promoters in animal nutrition. Veterinary Research Communications, 35(3), pp.169–180.
Kaur, A. , Shanthanagouda, A.H. , Kaur, V.I. , Bansal, N. and Billekallu Thammegowda, N.K. , 2020. Biochemical and histomorphological associated in vivo responses of turmeric supplemented diets in Rohu, Labeo rohita (Linn.). Aquaculture Research, 51(9), pp.3915–3923.
Tang, J. , Cai, J. , Liu, R. , Wang, J. , Lu, Y. , Wu, Z. and Jian, J. , 2014. Immunostimulatory effects of artificial feed supplemented with a Chinese herbal mixture on Oreochromis niloticus against Aeromonas hydrophila. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 39(2), pp.401–406.
Sharma, A. , Deo, A.D. , Riteshkumar, S.T. , Chanu, T.I. and Das, A. , 2010. Effect of Withania somnifera (L. Dunal) root as a feed additive on immunological parameters and disease resistance to *Aeromonas hydrophila* in *Labeo rohita* (Hamilton) fingerlings. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 29(3), pp.508–512.

Sattanathan, G. , Tamizhazhagan, V. , Padmapriya, S. , Liu, W.C. and Balasubramanian, B. , 2020. Effect of green algae Chaetomorpha antennina extract on growth, modulate immunity, and defenses against Edwardsiella tarda infection in Labeo rohita. Animals, 10(11), p.2033.

Direkbusarakom, S. , 2004. Application of medicinal herbs to aquaculture in Asia. Walailak Journal of Science and Technology (WJST), 1(1), pp.7–14.

Kum, C. and Sekkin, S. , 2011. The immune system drugs in fish: immune function, immunoassay, drugs. Recent Advances in Fish Farms, pp.169–210.

Adeeyo, A.O. , Edokpayi, J.N. , Alabi, M.A. , Msagati, T.A. and Odiyo, J.O. , 2021. Plant active products and emerging interventions in water potabilisation: disinfection and multi-drug resistant pathogen treatment. Clinical Phytoscience, 7(1), pp.1–16.

Bulfon, C. , Volpatti, D. and Galeotti, M. , 2015. Current research on the use of plantderived products in farmed fish. Aquaculture Research, 46(3), pp.513–551.

Harikrishnan, R. , Balasundaram, C. and Heo, M.S. , 2011. Impact of plant products on innate and adaptive immune system of cultured finfish and shellfish. Aquaculture, 317(1-4), pp.1–15.

Seethalakshmi, P.S. , Rajeev, R. , Kiran, G.S. and Selvin, J. , 2021. Shrimp disease management for sustainable aquaculture: innovations from nanotechnology and biotechnology. Aquaculture International, 29(4), pp.1591–1620.

Gupta, S. and Bharalee, R. , 2021. Genetic Diversity and Population Structure of a Medicinal Herb *Houttuynia cordata* Thunb. of North-East India. Plant Molecular Biology Reporter, 39(2), pp.434–442.

Magnadóttir, B. , 2006. Innate immunity of fish (overview). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 20(2), pp.137–151.

Bilen, S. , Bulut, M. and Bilen, A.M. , 2011. Immunostimulant effects of Cotinus coggyria on rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 30(2), pp.451–455.

Kaleeswaran, B. , Ilavenil, S. and Ravikumar, S. , 2012. Changes in biochemical, histological and specific immune parameters in Catla catla (Ham.) by Cynodon dactylon (L.). Journal of King Saud University-Science, 24(2), pp.139–152.

Chakrabarti, R. and Vasudeva, R.Y. , 2006. Achyranthes aspera stimulates the immunity and enhances the antigen clearance in Catla catla. International Immunopharmacology, 6(5), pp.782–790.

Harikrishnan, R. and Balasundaram, C. , 2008. In vitro and in vivo studies of the use of some medicinal herbals against the pathogen Aeromonas hydrophila in goldfish. Journal of Aquatic Animal Health, 20(3), pp.165–176.

Wu, N. , Song, Y.L. , Wang, B. , Zhang, X.Y. , Zhang, X.J. , Wang, Y.L. , Cheng, Y.Y. , Chen, D.D. , Xia, X.Q. , Lu, Y.S. and Zhang, Y.A. , 2016. Fish gut-liver immunity during homeostasis or inflammation revealed by integrative transcriptome and proteome studies. Scientific Reports, 6(1), pp.1–17.

Bilen, S. , Özkan, O. , Alagöz, K. and Özdemir, K.Y. , 2018. Effect of dill (Anethum graveolens) and garden cress (Lepidium sativum) dietary supplementation on growth performance, digestive enzyme activities and immune responses of juvenile common carp (Cyprinus carpio). Aquaculture, 495, pp.611–616.

Ghehdarijani, M.S. , Hajimoradloo, A. , Ghorbani, R. and Roohi, Z. , 2016. The effects of garlic-supplemented diets on skin mucosal immune responses, stress resistance and growth performance of the Caspian roach (Rutilus rutilus) fry. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 49, pp.79–83.

Anthwal, A. , Thakur, B.K. , Rawat, M.S.M. , Rawat, D.S. , Tyagi, A.K. and Aggarwal, B.B. , 2014. Synthesis, characterization and in vitro anticancer activity of C-5 curcumin analogues with potential to inhibit TNF-α-induced NF-κB activation. BioMed Research International, 2014.

Alok, S. , Jain, S.K. , Verma, A. , Kumar, M. , Mahor, A. and Sabharwal, M. , 2014. Herbal antioxidant in clinical practice: A review. Asian Pacific Journal of Tropical Biomedicine, 4(1), pp.78–84.

Klūga, A. , Terentjeva, M. , Vukovic, N.L. and Kačániová, M. , 2021. Antimicrobial activity and chemical composition of essential oils against pathogenic microorganisms of freshwater fish. Plants, 10(7), p.1265.

Herrera, M. , Mancera, J.M. and Costas, B. , 2019. The use of dietary additives in fish stress mitigation: comparative endocrine and physiological responses. Frontiers in Endocrinology, 10, p.447.

Mohamed, A.A.R. , El-Houseiny, W. , Abd Elhakeem, E.M. , Ebraheim, L.L. , Ahmed, A.I. and Abd El-Hakim, Y.M. , 2020. Effect of hexavalent chromium exposure on the liver and kidney tissues related to the expression of CYP450 and GST genes of Oreochromis niloticus fish: Role of curcumin supplemented diet. Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety, 188, p.109890.

Rajabiesterabadi, H. , Yousefi, M. and Hoseini, S.M. , 2020. Enhanced haematological and immune responses in common carp Cyprinus carpio fed with olive leaf extractsupplemented diets and subjected to ambient ammonia. Aquaculture Nutrition, 26(3), pp.763–771.

de Oliveira, E.F. , Tikekar, R. and Nitin, N. , 2018. Combination of aerosolized curcumin and UV-A light for the inactivation of bacteria on fresh produce surfaces. Food Research International, 114, pp.133–139.

Zahran, E. , Risha, E. , AbdelHamid, F. , Mahgoub, H.A. and Ibrahim, T. , 2014. Effects of dietary Astragalus polysaccharides (APS) on growth performance, immunological parameters, digestive enzymes, and intestinal morphology of Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 38(1), pp.149–157.

Adel, M. , Pourgholam, R. , Zorriehzahra, J. and Ghiasi, M. , 2016. Hemato–Immunological and biochemical parameters, skin antibacterial activity, and survival in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) following the diet supplemented with Mentha piperita against Yersinia ruckeri. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 55, pp.267–273.

Harikrishnan, R. and Balasundaram, C. , 2008. In vitro and in vivo studies of the use of some medicinal herbals against the pathogen *Aeromonas hydrophila* in goldfish. Journal of Aquatic Animal Health, 20(3), pp.165–176.

Musthafa, M.S. , Ali, A.R.J. , Kumar, M.S.A. , Paray, B.A. , Al-Sadoon, M.K. , Balasundaram, C. and Harikrishnan, R. , 2017. Effect of *Cucurbita mixta* (L.) seed meal enrichment diet on growth, immune response and disease resistance in Oreochromis mossambicus. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 68, pp.509–515.

Musthafa, M.S. , Asgari, S.M. , Elumalai, P. , Hoseinifar, S.H. and Van Doan, H. , 2018. Protective efficacy of Shilajit enriched diet on growth performance and immune resistance against Aeromonas hydrophila in Oreochromis mossambicus. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 82, pp.147–152.

Ali, M. , Soltanian, S. , Akbary, P. and Gholamhosseini, A. , 2018. Growth performance and lysozyme activity of rainbow trout fingerlings fed with vitamin E and selenium, marjoram (Origanum spp.), and ajwain (Trachyspermum ammi) extracts. Journal of Applied Animal Research, 46(1), pp.650–660.

Meena, D.K. , Sahoo, A.K. , Jayant, M. , Sahu, N.P. , Srivastava, P.P. , Swain, H.S. , Behera, B.K. , Satvik, K. and Das, B.K. , 2022. Bioconversion of Terminalia arjuna bark powder into a herbal feed for Labeo rohita: Can it be a sustainability paradigm for Green Fish

production?. Animal Feed Science and Technology, 284, p.115132.
Abdel-Tawwab, M. , Adeshina, I. , Jenyo-Oni, A. , Ajani, E.K. and Emikpe, B.O. , 2018. Growth, physiological, antioxidants, and immune response of African catfish, *Clarias gariepinus* (B.), to dietary clove basil, *Ocimum gratissimum*, leaf extract and its susceptibility to Listeria monocytogenes infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 78, pp.346–354.
Tan, X. , Sun, Z. , Liu, Q. , Ye, H. , Zou, C. , Ye, C. , Wang, A. , and Lin, H. 2018. Effects of dietary ginkgo biloba leaf extract on growth performance, plasma biochemical parameters, fish composition, immune responses, liver histology, and immune and apoptosis-related genes expression of hybrid grouper (Epinephelus lanceolatus♂× Epinephelus fuscoguttatus♀) fed high lipid diets. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 72, pp. 399–409.
Fawole, F.J. , Adeoye, A.A. , Tiamiyu, L.O. , Ajala, K.I. , Obadara, S.O. and Ganiyu, I.O. , 2020. Substituting fishmeal with Hermetia illucens in the diets of African catfish (Clarias gariepinus): Effects on growth, nutrient utilization, haemato-physiological response, and oxidative stress biomarker. Aquaculture, 518, p.734849.
Zheng, Y. , Zhao, Z. , Wu, W. , Song, C. , Meng, S. , Fan, L. , Bing, X. and Chen, J. , 2017. Effects of dietary resveratrol supplementation on hepatic and serum pro-/anti-inflammatory activity in juvenile GIFT tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 73, pp.220–228.
Yang, Q.H. , Tan, B.P. , Dong, X.H. , Chi, S.Y. and Liu, H.Y. , 2015. Effects of different levels of Yucca schidigera extract on the growth and nonspecific immunity of Pacific white shrimp (Litopenaeus vannamei) and on culture water quality. Aquaculture, 439, pp.39–44.
Fawole, F.J. , Sahu, N.P. , Pal, A.K. and Ravindran, A. , 2016. Haematoimmunological response of L abeo rohita (H amilton) fingerlings fed leaf extracts and challenged by A eromonas hydrophila. Aquaculture Research, 47(12), pp.3788–3799.
Huang, Z. , Aweya, J.J. , Zhu, C. , Tran, N.T. , Hong, Y. , Li, S. , Yao, D. and Zhang, Y. , 2020. Modulation of crustacean innate immune response by amino acids and their metabolites: inferences from other species. Frontiers in Immunology, 11, p.574721.
Kurian, A. , Lakshmi, S. , Fawole, F.J. , Faggio, C. and Elumalai, P. , 2021. Combined effects of Leucas aspera, oxy-cyclodextrin and bentonite on the growth, serum biochemistry, and the expression of immune-related gene in Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus). Turkish Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences, 21(3), pp.147–158.
Raissy, M. , Ghafarifarsani, H. , Hossein Hoseinifar, S. , El-Haroun, E.R. , Shahbazi Naserabad, S. , and Van Doan, H. 2022. The effect of dietary combined herbs extracts (oak acorn, coriander, and common mallow) on growth, digestive enzymes, antioxidant and immune response, and resistance against Aeromonas hydrophila infection in common carp, Cyprinus carpio. Aquaculture 546, p.737287
Fawole, F.J. , Yisa, R.O. , Jayeoba, O.O. , Adeshina, I. , Ahmed, A.O. and Emikpe, B.O. , 2022. Effect of Dietary Polyherbal Mixture on Growth Performance, Haemato-Immunological Indices, Antioxidant Responses, and Intestinal Morphometry of African Catfish, Clarias gariepinus. Aquaculture Nutrition, 2022.
Zhang, X. , Sun, Z. , Wang, Y. , Cao, Y. , Wang, G. and Cao, F. , 2022. Enhancement of growth, antioxidative status, nonspecific immunity, and disease resistance in gibel carp (Carassius auratus) in response to dietary Flos populi extract. Fish Physiology and Biochemistry, 48(1), pp.67–83.
Abdel-Tawwab, M. , Adeshina, I. , Jenyo-Oni, A. , Ajani, E.K. and Emikpe, B.O. , 2018. Growth, physiological, antioxidants, and immune response of African catfish, Clarias gariepinus (B.), to dietary clove basil, Ocimum gratissimum, leaf extract and its susceptibility to Listeria monocytogenes infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 78, pp.346–354.
Safari, R. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , Imanpour, M.R. , Mazandarani, M. , Sanchouli, H. and Paolucci, M. , 2020. Effects of dietary polyphenols on mucosal and humoral immune responses, antioxidant defense and growth gene expression in beluga sturgeon (Huso huso). Aquaculture, 528, p.735494.
Shekarabi, S.P.H. , Javarsiani, L. , Mehrgan, M.S. , Dawood, M.A. and Adel, M. , 2022. Growth performance, blood biochemistry profile, and immune response of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) fed dietary Persian shallot (Allium stipitatum) powder. Aquaculture, 548, p.737627.
Shekarabi, S.P.H. , Mehrgan, M.S. , Ramezani, F. , Dawood, M.A. , Van Doan, H. , Moonmanee, T. , Hamid, N.K.A. and Kari, Z.A. , 2022. Effect of dietary barberry fruit (Berberis vulgaris) extract on immune function, antioxidant capacity, antibacterial activity, and stress-related gene expression of Siberian sturgeon (Acipenser baerii). Aquaculture Reports, 23, p.101041.
Giri, S.S. , Jun, J.W. , Sukumaran, V. and Park, S.C. , 2017. Evaluation of dietary Hybanthus enneaspermus (Linn F. Muell.) as a growth and haemato-immunological modulator in Labeo rohita. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 68, pp.310–317.
Adeshina, I. , Tiamiyu, L.O. , Akpoilih, B.U. , Jenyo-Oni, A. and Ajani, E.K. , 2021. Dietary Mitracarpus scaber leaves extract improved growth, antioxidants, non-specific immunity, and resistance of Nile tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus to Gyrodactylus malalai infestation. Aquaculture, 535, p.736377.
Adebayo, A. , Oke, I.O. and Dada, A.A. , 2020. Evaluation of lemon grass (Cymbopogon citratus) as phyto-additive in the diet of African catfish (Clarias gariepinus) fingerlings. Applied Tropical Agriculture, 25(1), pp.29–36.
Qin, C. , Wang, J. , Zhao, W. , Pi, D. , Yan, X. and Nie, G. , 2022. Effects of dietary bitter melon extract on growth performance, antioxidant capacity, inflammatory cytokines expression, and intestinal microbiota in common carp (Cyprinus carpio L.). Aquaculture Nutrition, 2022.
Hamid, N.K.A. , Somdare, P.O. , Harashid, K.A.M. , Othman, N.A. , Kari, Z.A. , Wei, L.S. and Dawood, M.A. , 2022. Effect of papaya (Carica papaya) leaf extract as dietary growth promoter supplement in red hybrid tilapia (Oreochromis mossambicus× Oreochromis niloticus) diet. Saudi Journal of Biological Sciences, 29(5), pp.3911–3917.
Hosseini, H. , Pooyanmehr, M. , Foroughi, A. , Esmaeili, M. , Ghiasi, F. and Lorestany, R. , 2022. Remarkable positive effects of figwort (Scrophularia striata) on improving growth performance, and immunohematological parameters of fish. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 120, pp.111–121.
Le Xuan, C. , Wannavijit, S. , Outama, P. , Montha, N. , Lumsangkul, C. , Tongsiri, S. ,… … & Van Doan, H. (2022). Effects of dietary rambutan (Nephelium lappaceum L.) peel powder on growth performance, immune response and immune-related gene expressions of striped catfish (Pangasianodon hypophthalmus) raised in biofloc system. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 124, pp.134–141.
Srichaiyo, N. , Tongsiri, S. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , Dawood, M.A. , Jaturasitha, S. , Esteban, M.Á. , Ringø, E. and Van Doan, H. , 2020. The effects gotu kola (Centella asiatica) powder on growth performance, skin mucus, and serum immunity of Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus) fingerlings. Aquaculture Reports, 16, p.100239.
Aluta, U.P. , Aderolu, A.Z. , Lawal, M.O. and Olutola, A.A. , 2021. Inclusion effect of onion peel powder in the diet of African catfish, Clarias gariepinus: Growth, blood chemistry, hepatic antioxidant enzymes activities and SOD mRNA responses. Scientific African, 12, p.e00780.

Van Doan, H. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , Sringarm, K. , Jaturasitha, S. , Yuangsoi, B. , Dawood, M.A. , Esteban, M.Á. , Ringø, E. and Faggio, C. , 2019. Effects of Assam tea extract on growth, skin mucus, serum immunity and disease resistance of Nile tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*) against Streptococcus agalactiae. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 93, pp.428–435.
Xu, A. , Shang-Guan, J. , Li, Z. , Gao, Z. , Huang, Y.C. and Chen, Q. , 2020. Effects of dietary Chinese herbal medicines mixture on feeding attraction activity, growth performance, nonspecific immunity and digestive enzyme activity of Japanese seabass (Lateo labrax japonicus). Aquaculture Reports, 17, p.100304.
Fawole, F.J. , Sahu, N.P. , Nazeemashahul, S. and Adeoye, A.A. , 2018. Effect of Psidium guajava and Mangifera indica leaves extracts on growth, antioxidant and metabolic enzymes activities of Labeo rohita fingerlings. Journal of the Association of Nigerian Fisheries Scientists, 1, pp.40–49.
Huang, Z. , Lu, J. , Ye, Y. , Xu, A. and Li, Z. , 2020. Effects of dietary Chinese herbal medicines mixture on growth performance, digestive enzyme activity and serum biochemical parameters of European eel, Anguilla anguilla. Aquaculture Reports, 18, p.100510.
Raissy, M. , Ghafarifarsani, H. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , El-Haroun, E.R. , Naserabad, S.S. and Van Doan, H. 2022. The effect of dietary combined herbs extracts (oak acorn, coriander, and common mallow) on growth, digestive enzymes, antioxidant and immune response, and resistance against *Aeromonas hydrophila* infection in common carp, *Cyprinus carpio* . Aquaculture, 546, p.737287.

Prebiotics and Probiotics as Effective Immunomodulators in Aquaculture

Abarike, E.D. , Cai, J. , Lu, Y. , Yu, H. , Chen, L. , Jian, J. , Tang, J. , Jun, L. , & Kuebutornye, F.K. (2018) Effects of a commercial probiotic BS containing *Bacillus subtilis* and *Bacillus licheniformis* on growth, immune response and disease resistance in Nile tilapia, *Oreochromis niloticus* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 82, 229–238. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.08.037
Abbass A. , Sharifuzzaman S.M. , & Austin B. (2010) Cellular components of probiotics control *Yersinia ruckeri* infection in rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum). Journal of Fish Diseases 33, 31–37. 10.1111/j.1365-2761.2009.01086.x
Adeshina, I. (2018) The effect of *Lactobacillus acidophilus* as a dietary supplement on nonspecific immune response and disease resistance in juvenile common carp, Cyprinus carpio. International Food Research Journal 25, 2345–2351.
Adorian, T.J. , Jamali, H. , Ghafari Farsani, H. , Darvishi, P. , Hasanpour, S. , Bagheri, T. , & Roozbehfar R. (2019) Effects of probiotic bacteria *Bacillus* on growth performance, digestive enzyme activity, and hematological parameters of Asian sea bass, *Lates calcarifer* (Bloch). Probiotics and Antimicrobial Proteins 11, 248–255. doi: 10.1007/s12602-018-9393-z
Ahmadi, P.Y. , Farahmand, H. , Miandare, H.K. , Mirvaghefi, A. , & Hoseinifar, S.H. (2014a) The effects of dietary Immunogenon innate immune response, immune related genes expression, and disease resistance of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 37, 209–214. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2014.02.006
Ahmadifar, E. , Moghadam, M.S. , Dawood, M.A.O. , & Hoseinifar, S.H. (2019) *Lactobacillus fermentum* and/or ferulic acid improved the immune responses, antioxidative defence and resistance against *Aeromonas hydrophila* in common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) fingerlings. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 94, 916–923. 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.10.019
Ai, Q. , Xu, H. , Mai, K. , Xu, W. , Wang, J. , & Zhang, W. (2011) Effects of dietary supplementation of *Bacillus subtilis* and fructooligosaccharide on growth performance, survival, non-specific immune response and disease resistance of juvenile large yellow croaker, *Larimichthys crocea* . Aquaculture 317, 155–161.
Ai, Q. , Xu, H. , Mai, K. , Xu, W. , Wang, J. , & Zhang, W. (2011) Effects of dietary supplementation of *Bacillus subtilis* and fructooligosaccharide on growth performance, survival, non-specific immune response and disease resistance of juvenile large yellow croaker, *Larimichthys crocea* . Aquaculture 317, 155–161.doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2011.04.036
Ajdari, A. , Ghafarifarsani, H. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , Javahery, S. , Narimanizad, F. , Gatphayak, K. , & Doan, H.V. (2022) Effects of dietary supplementation of PrimaLac, inulin, and Biomin Imbo on growth performance, antioxidant, and innate immune responses of Common Carp (*Cyprinus carpio*). Aquaculture Nutrition 2022, 8297479. doi:10.1155/2022/8297479
Ajitha, S. , Sridhar, M. , Sridhar, N. , Singh, I.S.B. , & Varghese, V. (2004) Probiotic effects of lactic acid bacteria against *Vibrio alginolyticus* in *Penaeus* (*Fenneropenaeus*) Indicus (H.Milne Edwards). Asian Fisheries Sci 17, 71–80.
Akrami, R. , Iri, Y. , Rostami, H.K. , & Mansour, M.R. (2013) Effect of dietary supplementation of fructooligosaccharide (FOS) on growth performance, survival, lactobacillus bacterial population and hemato-immunological parameters of stellate sturgeon (*Acipenser stellatus*) juvenile. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 35, 1235–1239.doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2013.07.039
Alavandi, S.V. , Vijayan, K.K. , Santiago, T.C. , Poornima, M. , Jithendran, K.P. , Ali, S.A. , & Rajan, J.J.S. (2004) Evaluation of *Pseudomonas* sp. PM 11 and *Vibrio fluvialis* PM 17 on immune indices of tiger shrimp, *Penaeus monodon* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology& Shellfish Immunology 17, 115–120. 10.1016/j.fsi.2003.11.007.
Alfonso, S. , Gesto, M.I. , & Sadoul, B. (2021) Temperature increases and its effects on fish stress physiology in the context of global warming. DOI: 10.1111/jfb.14599
Alonso, S. , Castro, M.C. , Berdasco, M. , de la Banda, I.G. , Moreno-Ventas, X. , & de Rojas, A.H. (2019) Isolation and partial characterization of lactic acid bacteria from the gut microbiota of marine fishes for potential application as probiotics in aquaculture. Probiotics Antimicrob Proteins 11(2): 569–579. doi: 10.1007/s12602-018-9439-2
Al-Sheraji, S.H. , Ismail, A. , Manap, M.Y. , Mustafa, S. , Yusof, R.M. , & Hassan, F.A. (2013). Prebiotics as functional foods: A review. Journal of Functional Foods, 5(4): 1542–1553. doi. org/10.1016/j.jff.2013.08.009
Aly S. , Mohamed A.A.Z. , Rahmani A.H. , & Nashwa M.A.A. (2016) Trials to improve the response of Orechromis niloticus to *Aeromonas hydrophila* vaccine using immunostimulants (garlic, Echinacea) and probiotics (Organic Green TM and Vet-Yeast TM). African Journal of Biotechnology 2016; 15(21): 989–994.
Aly, S.M. , Ahmed, Y.S.G. , Ghareeb, A.A.A. , & Mohamed, M.F. (2008) Studies on *Bacillus subtilis* and *Lactobacillus acidophilus*, as potential probiotics, on the immune response and resistance of Tilapia nilotica (*Oreochromis niloticus*) to challenge infections. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 25, 128–136. 10. 1016/j.fsi.2008.03.013.
Amenyogbe, E. , Chen, G. , Wang, Z. , Huang, J. , Huang, B. , & Li, H. (2020) The exploitation of probiotics, prebiotics and synbiotics in aquaculture: present study, limitations and future directions: a review. Aquac Int 28, 1017–1041. 10.1007/s10499-020-00509-0
Amoah, K. , Huang, Q. , Dong, X. , Tan, B. , Zhang, S. , Chi, S. , Yang, Q. , Liu, H. , & Yang, Y. (2020) *Paenibacillus polymyxa* improves the growth, immune and antioxidant activity, intestinal health, and disease resistance in *Litopenaeus vannamei* challenged with Vibrio parahaemolyticus. Aquaculture 518, 734563. 10.1016/j. aquaculture.2019.734563.

Anyanwu, N.G. , & Ariole, C.N. (2019) Probiotic potential of an indigenous marine *Bacillus thuringiensis* on shrimp (*Penaeus monodon*) culture infected with *Vibrio mimicus* . Journal of Applied Science 19, 173–179.
Arena, M.P. , Elmastour, F. , Sane, F. , Drider, D. , Fiocco, D. , Spano, G. , & Hober, D. (2018) Inhibition of *Coxsackievirus* B4 by *Lactobacillus plantarum* . Microbiological Research 210, 59–64.
Arijo, S. , Brunt, J. , Chabrillón, M. , Díaz-Rosales, P. , & Austin, B. (2008) Subcellular components of *Vibrio harveyi* and probiotics induce immune responses in rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum), against *V. harveyi* . J. Fish Dis. 31, 579–590
Aryati, Y. , Widanarni, W. , Wahjuningrum, D. , Rusmana, I. , & Lusiastuti, A.M. (2020) The effect of dietary honey prebiotic on microbiota diversity in the digestive tract of Nile tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*) and its growth performance. Aquaculture Research 52, 1215–1226. doi:10.1111/are.14980
Ashouri, G. , Mahboobi Soofiani, N. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , Jalali, S.A.H. , Morshedi, V. , Van Doan, H. , & Torfi Mozanzadeh, M. (2018). Combined effects of dietary low molecular weight sodium alginate and Pediococcus acidilactici MA18/5M on growth performance, haematological and innate immune responses of Asian sea bass (Lates calcalifer) juveniles. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 79: 34–41. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.05.009.
Askarian, F. , Kousha, A. , Salma, W. , & Ringø, E. (2012) The effect of lactic acid bacteria administration on growth, digestive enzyme activity and gut microbiota in Persian sturgeon (*Acipenser persicus*) and beluga (*Huso huso*) fry. Aquaculture Nutrition 17, 488–497.
Austin, B. , & Austin, D.A. (2016) Bacterial Fish Pathogens: Disease of Farmed and Wild Fish, Springer, London, The UK, Pp. 643.
Azarin, H. , Aramli, M.S. , Imanpour, M.R. , & Rajabpour, M. (2015) Effect of a probiotic containing *Bacillus licheniformis* and *Bacillus subtilis* and Ferroin solution on growth performance, body composition and haematological parameters in Kutum (*Rutilus frisii kutum*) fry. Probiotics Antimicrobial 7(1), 31–37.
Azevedo, R.V. , Silva-Azevedo, D.K. , Santos-Júnior, J.M. , Filho, J.C.F. , Andrade, D.R. , Braga, L.G.T. , & Junior, M.V. (2016) Effects of dietary mannan oligosaccharide on the growth, survival, intestinal morphometry and nonspecific immune response for Siamese fighting fish (*Betta splendens* Regan, 1910) larvae. Latin American Journal of Aquatic Research 44, 800–806. doi: 10.3856/vol44-issue4-fulltext-15
Balcázar, J.L. , Rojas-Luna, T. , & Cunningham, D.P. (2007) Effect of the addition of four potential probiotic strains on the survival of pacific white shrimp (*Litopenaeus vannamei*) following immersion challenge with *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* . Journal of Invertebrate Pathology, 96, 147–150. 10.1016/j.jip.2007.04.008.
Banerjee, G. , Nandi, A. , & Ray, A.K. (2017) Assessment of hemolytic activity, enzyme production and bacteriocin characterization of *Bacillus subtilis* LR1 isolated from the gastrointestinal tract of fish. Archives of Microbiology 199, 115–124. doi: 10.1007/s00203-016-1283-8
Bazari Moghaddam, S. , & Pourjaafari, M. (2021) The effects of four types of specific probiotic on growth performance, liver enzymes and immune indices of juvenile Persian sturgeon (*Acipenser persicus*). Iranian Journal of Fisheries Science, 20 (4):1179–1191. Doi: 20.1001.1.15622916.2021.20.4.13.8
Bly, J.E. , Quiniou, S.M. , & Clem, L.W. (1997) Environmental effects on fish immune mechanisms. Dev Biol Stand 90, 33–43.
Bogdanov, S. , Jurendic, T. , Sieber, R. , & Gallmann, P. (2008) Honey for nutrition and health: a review. Journal of the American College of Nutrition 27, 677–689. doi: 10.1080/07315724.2008.10719745
Boltanã, S. , Roher, N. , Goetz, F.W. , & Mackenzie, S.A. (2011) PAMPs, PRRs and the genomics of gramnegative bacterial recognition in fish. Developmental and Comparative Immunology 35, 1195–1203. doi: 10.1016/j.dci.2011.02.010
Bron, P.A. , van Baarlen, P. , & Kleerebezem, M. (2012) Emerging molecular insights into the interaction between probiotics and the host intestinal mucosa. Nature Reviews Microbiology 10, 66–78. doi:10.1038/nrmicro2690
Brunt, J. , Newaj-Fyzul, A. , & Austin, B. (2007) The development of probiotics for the control of multiple bacterial diseases of rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum). Journal of Fish Diseases 30(10):573–579.
Brunt, J. , & Austin, B. (2005) Use of a probiotic to control lactococcosis and streptococcosis in rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum). Journal of Fish Diseases 28, 693–701.
Buentello, J.A. , Neill, W.H. , & Gatlin III, D.M. (2010) Effects of dietary prebiotics on the growth, feed efficiency and non-specific immunity of juvenile red drum *Sciaenops ocellatus* fed soybean-based diets. Aquaculture Research 41, 411–418. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2109.2009.02178.x
Bunnoy, A. , Na-Nakorn, U. , & Srisapoome, P. (2019) Probiotic effects of a novel strain, *Acinetobacter* KU011TH, on the growth performance, immune responses, and resistance against *Aeromonas hydrophila* of Bighead Catfish (*Clarias Macrocephalus* Günther 1864). Microorganisms 7, 613. doi: 10.3390/ microorganisms7120613
Burbank, D.R. , Shah, D.H. , LaPatra, S.E. , Fornshell, G. , & Cain, K.D. (2011) Enhanced ersistance to coldwater disease following feeding of probiotic bacterial strains to rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus Mykiss*). Aquaculture 321, 185–190. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2011.09.004
Butt, U.D. , Lin, N. , Akhter, N. , Siddiqui, T. , & Li, S. , Wu, B. (2021) Overview of the latest developments in the role of probiotics, prebiotics and synbiotics in shrimp aquaculture. Fish and Shellfish Immunology 114, 263–281. 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.05.003
Cai, Y. , Yuan, W. , Wang, S. , Guo, W. , Li, A. , & Wu, Y. (2019) *In vitro* screening of putative probiotics and their dual beneficial effects: to white shrimp (*Litopenaeus vannamei*) postlarvae and to the rearing water. Aquaculture, 498, 61–71. doi:10.1016/j.aquaculture.2018.08.024
Caipang C. , Suharman I. , Avillanosa A. , & Bargoyo V. (2020) Host-derived probiotics for finfish aquaculture. In: IOP Conf Ser: Earth Environ Sci. Bristol, UK: IOP Publishing. 430, 012026. doi: 10.1088/1755-1315/430/1/012026
Cerezuela, R. , Cuesta, A. , Meseguer, J. , & Esteban, M.A. (2012) Effects of dietary inulin and heat-inactivated *Bacillus subtilis* on gilthead seabream (*Sparus aurata* L.) innate immune parameters. Beneficial Microbes 3(1), 77–81. Top of Form. Bottom of Form 10.3920/BM2011.0028
Cerezuela, R. , Cuesta, A. , Meseguer, J. , & Esteban, M.A. (2012a) Effects of dietary inulin and heat-inactivated *Bacillus subtilis*on gilthead seabream (*Sparus aurata*L.) innate immune parameters. Beneficial Microbes 3, 77–81. doi: 10.3920/BM2011.0028
Cerezuela, R. , Fumanal, M. , Tapia-Paniagua, S.T. , Meseguer, J. , Moriñigo, M.A. , M. _A. Esteban, M.Á. (2013a) Changes in intestinal morphology and microbiota caused by dietary administration of inulin and *Bacillus subtilis*in gilthead sea bream (*Sparus aurata*L.) specimens. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 34, 1063–1070. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2013.01.015
Cerezuela, R. , Guardiola, F.A. , Meseguer, J. , & Esteban, M.Á. (2012b) Increases in immune parameters by inulin and *Bacillus subtilis* dietary administration to gilthead seabream (*Sparus aurata* L.) did not correlate with disease resistance to *Photobacterium damselae* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 32, 1032–1040. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2012.02.025

Cerezuela, R. , Meseguer, J. , & Esteban, M.Á. (2013b) Effects of dietary inulin, *Bacillus subtilis* and microalgae on intestinal gene expression in gilthead seabream (*Sparus aurata* L.). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 34, 843–848. doi:10.1016/j.fsi.2012.12.026
Cha, J.-H. , Rahimnejad, S. , Yang, S.-Y. , Kim, K.-W. , & Lee, K.-J. (2013) Evaluations of Bacillus spp. as dietary additives on growth performance, innate immunity and disease resistance of olive flounder (*Paralichthys olivaceus*) against *Streptococcus iniae* and as water additives. Aquaculture, 402, 50–57.
Chai, P.C. , Song, X.L. , Chen, G.F. , Xu, H. , & Huang, J. (2016) Dietary supplementation of probiotic *Bacillus* PC465 isolated from the gut of *Fenneropenaeus chinensis* improves the health status and resistance of Litopenaeus vannamei against white spot syndrome virus. Fish Shellfish Immunol., 54, 602–611. 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.05.011
Chandran, M.N. , Iyapparaj, P. , Moovendhan Ramasubburayan, R. , Prakash, S. , & Immanuel, G. (2014) Influence of probiotic bacterium *Bacillus cereus* isolated from the gut of wild shrimp *Penaeus monodon* in turn as a potent growth promoter and immune enhancer in *P. monodon* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 36, 38–45.
Chauhan A. , & Singh R. (2019) Probiotics in aquaculture: a promising emerging alternative approach. Symbiosis 77(2):99–113. doi: 10.1007/s13199- 018-0580-1
Chen, B. , Peng, M. , Tong, W. , Zhang, Q. , & Song, Z. (2019) The quorum quenching bacterium *Bacillus licheniformis* T-1 protects Zebrafish against *Aeromonas hydrophila* infection. Probiotics and Antimicrobial Proteins 1–12.
Chen, M. , Chen, X.-Q. , Tian, L.-X. , Liu, Y.-J. , & Niu, J. (2020) Beneficial impacts on growth, intestinal health, immune responses and ammonia resistance of pacific white shrimp (*Litopenaeus vannamei*) fed dietary synbiotic (mannan oligosaccharide and *Bacillus licheniformis*). Aquaculture Reports 17, 100408. doi: 10.1016/j.aqrep.2020.100408
Chen, Y. , Li, J. , Xiao, P. , Li, G.Y. , Yue, S. , Huang, J. , Zhu, W.Y. , & Mo, Z.L. (2016) Isolation and characterization of *Bacillus* spp. M001 for potential application in turbot (*Scophthalmus maximus* L.) against *Vibrio anguillarum* . Aquacult. Nutr., 22, 374–381.
Chen, Z. , Ceballos-Francisco, D. , Guardiola, F.A. , & Esteban, M.Á. (2020a) Dietary administration of the probiotic *Shewanella Putrefaciens* to experimentally wounded gilthead seabream (*Sparus Aurata* L.) facilitates the skin wound healing. Scientific Reports 10, 11029. doi: 10.1038/s41598-020-68024-z
Chen, Z. , Ceballos-Francisco, D. , Guardiola, F.A. , & Esteban, M.Á. (2020b) Influence of skin wounds on the intestinal inflammatory response and barrier function. Protective role of dietary *Shewanella Putrefaciens* SpPdp11 administration to gilthead seabream (*Sparus Aurata* L.). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 99, 414–423. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.02.022.
Cheng, G. , Hao, H. , Xie, S. , Wang, X. , Dai, M. , Huang, L. , *et al.* (2014) Antibiotic alternatives: the substitution of antibiotics in animal husbandry? Front. Microbiol. 5, 217. 10.3389/fmicb.2014.00217.
Chien, C-C , Lin, T-Y , Chin, C-C , & Liu, C-H (2020) Probiotic, *Bacillus subtilis* E20 alters the immunity of white shrimp, *Litopenaeus vannamei* via glutamine metabolism and hexosamine biosynthetic. Fish & Shellfish Immunology. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.01.014.
Chiu, C-H , Guu, Y-K , Liu, C-H , Pan, T-M , Cheng, W.J.F. , & Immunology, S. (2007) Immune responses and gene expression in white shrimp, *Litopenaeus vannamei*, induced by *Lactobacillus plantarum* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 23, 364–377.
Chomwong, S. , Charoensapsri, W. , Amparyup, P. , & Tassanakajon, A. (2018). Two host gut-derived lactic acid bacteria activate the proPO system and increase resistance to an AHPND-causing strain of Vibrio parahaemolyticus in the shrimp Litopenaeus vannamei. Developmental & Comparative Immunology 89, 54–65. doi: 10.1016/j.dci.2018.08.002.
Cui, L.C. , Guan, X.T. , Liu, Z.M. , Tian, C.Y. , & Xu, Y.G. (2015) Recombinant lactobacillus expressing G protein of spring viremia of carp virus (SVCV) combined with ORF81 protein of koi herpesvirus (KHV): A promising way to induce protective immunity against SVCV and KHV infection in cyprinid fish via oral vaccination. Vaccine 33, 3092–3099.
D'Alvise, P.W. , Lillebø, S. , Wergeland, H.I. , Gram, L. , & Bergh, Ø. (2013) Protection of codlarvae from vibriosis by *Phaeobacter* Spp.: A comparison of strains and introduction times. Aquaculture 384-387, 82–85. doi: 10.1016/ j.aquaculture.2012.12.013
Da Paixão, A. , Dos Santos, J. , Pinto, M. , Pereira, D. , De Oliveira, R. , *et al.* (2017) Effect of commercial probiotics (*Bacillus subtilis* and *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*) on growth performance, body composition, hematology parameters, and disease resistance against Streptococcus agalactiae in tambaqui (*Colossoma macropomum*). Aquacul Int 25(6), 2035–2045.
Dahiya, T. , Sihag, R.C. , & Gahlawat, S. (2012) Effect of probiotics on the haematological parameters of Indian magur (*Clarius batrachus* L.). J Fish Aquat Sci 7(4), 279–290.
Daniels, C.L. , Merrifield, D.L. , Boothroyd, D.P. , Davies, S.J. , Factor, J.R. , & Arnold, K.E. (2010) Effect of dietary *Bacillus* spp. and mannan oligosaccharides (MOS) on European lobster (*Homarus gammarus* L.) larvae growth performance, gut morphology and gut microbiota. Aquaculture 304, 49–57.
Daniels, C.L. , Merrifield, D.L. , Ringø, E. , & Davies, S.J. (2013) Probiotic, prebiotic and synbiotic applications for the improvement of larval European lobster (*Homarus gammarus*) culture. Aquaculture 416, 396–406.
Darafsh, F. , Soltani, M. , Abdolhay, H.A. , & Shamsaei Mehrejan, M. (2020) Efficacy of dietary supplementation of *Bacillus licheniformis* and *Bacillus subtilis* probiotics and *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (yeast) on the hematological, immune response, and biochemical features of Persian sturgeon (*Acipenser persicus*) fingerlings. Iranian Journal of Fisheries Sciences 19(4) 2024–2038 2020 DOI: 10.22092/ijfs.2018.117847
Daroonpunt, R. , Yiamsombut, S. , Sitdhipol, J. , & Tanasupawat, S. (2019) Bacillus salacetis sp. nov., a slightly halophilic bacterium from Thai shrimp paste (Ka-pi). Int J Syst Eval Microbiol, 69, doi.org/10.1099/ijsem.0.003286
Das, A. , Nakhro, K. , Chowdhury, S. , & Kamilya, D. (2013) Effects of potential probiotic *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* [corrected] FPTB16 on systemic and cutaneous mucosal immune responses and disease resistance of catla (*Catla catla*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 35, 1547–1553.
Dash, P. , Tandel, R.S. , Bhat, R.A.H. , Mallik, S. , Singh, A.K. , & Sarma, D. (2018) The addition of probiotic bacteria to microbial floc: Water quality, growth, non-specific immune response and disease resistance of *Cyprinus carpio* in mid-Himalayan altitude. Aquaculture, 495, 961–969.
Defoirdt, T. , Boon, N. , Sorgeloos, P. , Verstraete, W. , & Bossier, P. (2007) Alternatives to antibiotics to control bacterial infections: luminescent vibriosis in aquaculture as an example. Trends Biotechnol., 25, 472–479.
Deon, M.P.P. , Bicudo, Á.J.A. , & Sado, R.Y. (2021) Performance, hematology, and immunology of pacu in response to dietary supplementation with fructooligosaccharides. Pesquisa Agropecuária Brasileira 56, e02460. doi:10.1590/S1678-3921.pab2021.v56.02460
Dey, A. , Ghosh, K. , & Hazra, N. (2016) Evaluation of extracellular enzyme-producing autochthonous gut bacteria in walking catfish, *Clarias batrachus* (L.). Journal of Fish 4, 345–352.
Di, J. , Chu, Z. , Zhang, S. , Huang, J. , Du, H. , & Wei, Q. (2019) Evaluation of the potential probiotic *Bacillus subtilis* isolated from two ancient sturgeons on growth performance, serum immunity and disease resistance of *Acipenser dabryanus* . Fish & Shellfish

Immunology, 711–719. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.08.020.
Díaz-Rosales, P. , Salinas, I. , Rodríguez, A. *et al*. (2006) Gilthead seabream (*Sparus aurata* L.) innate immune response after dietary administration of heat-inactivated potential probiotics. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 20, 482–492. 10.1016/j.fsi.2005.06.007
Divya, M. , Aanand, S. , Srinivasan, A. , & Ahilan, B. (2015) Bioremediation – An eco-friendly tool for effluenttreatment: A Review. International Journal of Applied Research 1(12): 530–537.
Domenico, J.D. , Canova, R. , Soveral, L.F. , Nied, C.O. , Costa, M.M. , Frandoloso, R. , & Kreutz, L.C. (2017) Immunomodulatory effects of dietary β-glucan in silver catfish (*Rhamdia quelen*). Pesquisa Veterinária Brasileira 37, 73–78. doi: 10.1590/S0100-736X2017000100012
Dong, H-B , Su, Y-Q , Mao, Y. , & Wang, J. (2014) Dietary supplementation with *Bacillus* can improve the growth and survival of the kuruma shrimp *Marsupenaeus japonicus* in high-temperature environments. Aquaculture International, 22, 10.1007/s10499-013-9688-8
Eissa , El-Gheit, E.A. , & Shaheen, A.A. (2014) Protective effect of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* as a probiotic in controlling fish pathogens. American Journal of BioScience 2014; 2(5): 175–181. doi: 10.11648/j.ajbio.20140205.12
Esteban, M.A. , Cordero, H. , Martínez-Tomé, M. et al (2014) Effect of dietary supplementation of probiotics and palm fruits extracts on the antioxidant enzyme gene expression in the mucosae of gilthead seabream (*Sparus aurata* L.). Fish Shellfish Immunol 39, 532–540. 10. 1016/j.fsi.2014.06.012
Faramaz, I.M. , Kiaalvandi, S. , Lashkarbolooki, M. , & Iranshahi, F. (2011) The investigations of *Lactobacillus acidophilis* as Probiotics Trout, grown performance and disease resistance of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). American Eurasian Journal of Science 6(1), 32–38.
Farrell, A.P. (2011) Cellular Composition of the Blood. Encyclopedia of Fish Physiology: From Genome to Environment 2, 984–991.
Feng J. , Chang X. , Zhang Y. et al (2019) Effects of *Lactococcus lactis* from *Cyprinus carpio* L. as probiotics on growth performance, innate immune response and disease resistance against *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 93, 73–81. 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.07.028
Filho, F.O.R. , Koch, J.F.A. , Wallace, C. , & Leal, M.C. (2019) Dietary β-1,3/1,6-glucans improve the effect of a multivalent vaccine in Atlantic salmon infected with *Moritella viscosa* or infectious salmon anemia virus. Aquaculture International 27, 1825–1834. doi: 10.1007/s10499-019-00436-9
Frozza, A. , Fiorini, A. , Vendruscolo, E.C.G. , Rosado, F.R. , Konrad, D. , Rodrigues, M.C.G. , & Ballester, E.L.C. (2021) Probiotics in the rearing of freshwater prawn *Macrobrachium rosenbergii* (de Man, 1879) in a biofloc system. Aquatic Research. are 15265. 10.1111/are.15265.
Fu, L.L. , Shuai, J.B. , Xu, Z.R. , Li, J.R. , & Li, W.F. (2010) Immune responses of *Fenneropenaeus chinensis* against white spot syndrome virus after oral delivery of VP28 using *Bacillus subtilis* as vehicles. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 28, 49–55. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2009.09.016
Fu, L.L. , Wang, Y. , Wu, Z.C. , & Li, W.F. (2011) *In vivo* assessment for oral delivery of *Bacillus subtilis* harboring a viral protein (VP28) against white spot syndrome virus in *Litopenaeusvannamei* . Aquaculture 322, 33–38. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2011.09.036
Fusco, V. , Quero, G.M. , Cho, G.-S. , Kabisch, J. , Meske, D. , Neve, H. , *et al*.(2015) The genus Weissella: taxonomy, ecology and biotechnological potential. Front. Microbiol. 6, 155. doi: 10.3389/fmicb.2015.00155
Gainza, O. , & Romero, J. (2020) Effect of mannan oligosaccharides on the microbiota and productivity parameters of *Litopenaeus vannamei* shrimp under intensive cultivation in Ecuador. Scientific Reports 10, 2719. doi: 10.1038/s41598-020-59587-y
Galagarza, O.A. , Smith, S.A. , Drahos, D.J. , Robert, J.D. , Williams, C. , & Kuhn, D.D. (2018) Modulation of innate immunity in Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus) by dietary supplementation of Bacillus subtilis endospores. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 83, 171–179. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.08.062
Galdeano, M.C. , Cazorla, S.I. , Lemme Dumit, J.M. , Vélez, E. , & Perdigon, G. (2019) Beneficial effects of probiotic consumption on the immune system. Ann. Nutr. Metab. 74, 115–124. 10.1159/000496426.
Geraylou, Z. , Souffreau, C. , Rurangwa, E. , D'Hondt, S. , Callewaert, L. , Courtin, C.M. , Delcour, J.A. , Buyse, J. , & Ollevier, F. (2012) Effects of arabinoxylan-oligosaccharides (AXOS) on juvenile Siberian sturgeon (*Acipenser baerii*) performance, immune responses, and gastrointestinal microbial community. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 33, 718–724.doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2012.06.010
Geraylou, Z. , Souffreau, C. , Rurangwa, E. , Meester, L.D. , Courtin, C.M. , Delcour, J.A. , Buyse, J. , & Ollevier, F. (2013) Effects of dietary arabinoxylan-oligosaccharides (AXOS) and endogenous probiotics on the growth performance, non-specific immunity and gut microbiota of juvenile Siberian sturgeon (*Acipenser baerii*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 35, 766–775. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2013.06.014
Ghafarifarsani, H. , Rashidian, G. , Bagheri, T. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , & Doan, H.V. (2021) Study on growth enhancement and the protective effects of dietary prebiotic inulin on immunity responses of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) fry infected with *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Annals of Animal Science 21, 543–559. doi: 10.2478/aoas-2020-0074
Ghiasi, M. , Binaii, M. , Naghavi, A. , Rostami, H.K. , Nori, H. , & Amerizadeh, A. (2018) Inclusion of *Pediococcus acidilactici* as probiotic candidate in diets for beluga (*Huso huso*) modifies biochemical parameters and improves immune functions. Fish Physiol Biochem 44, 1099–1107.
Gibson, L.F. , Woodworth, J. , & George, A.M. (1998) Probiotic activity of Aeromonas media when challenged with *Vibrio tubiashii* . Aquaculture 169, 111–120.
Gioacchini, G. , Giorgini, E. , Olivotto, I. et al (2014) The influence of probiotics on zebrafish Innate Immunity and hepatic stress. Zebrafish 11, 98–106. 10.1089/zeb.2013.0932
Giri, S.S. , Sen, S.S. , & Venkatachalam, S. (2012) Effects of dietary supplementation of potential probiotic *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* VSG-2 on the innate immunity and disease resistance of tropical freshwater fish, *Labeo rohita* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 32, 1135–1140. 10.1016/j.fsi.2012.03.019.
Giri, S.S. , Sukumaran, V. , Sen, S.S. , & Jena, P.K. (2014) Effects of dietary supplementation of potential probiotic *Bacillus subtilis* VSG1 singularly or in combination with *Lactobacillus plantarum* VSG3 or/and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* VSG2 on the growth, immunity and disease resistance of *Labeo rohita* . Aquatic Nutrition, 20, 163–171.
Girijakumari, N.R. , Ethiraja, K. , & Marimuthu, P.N. (2018) In Vitro and In Vivo Evaluation of Probiotic Properties of Enterobacter Cloacae in Kenyi Cichlid, *Maylandia Lombardoi* . Aquacult. Inter. 26, 959–980. doi: 10.1007/s10499-018-0262-2
Gobi, N. , Malaikozhundan, B. , Sekar, V. , Shanthi, S. , Vaseeharan, B. , Jayakumar, R. , & Nazar, A.K. (2016) GFP tagged *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* Dahv2 infection and the protective effects of probiotic *Bacillus licheniformis* Dahb1 on the growth, immune and antioxidant responses in *Pangasius hypophthalmus* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 52, 230–238.

Gong, L. , He, H. , Li, D. , Cao, L. , Khan, T.A. , Li, Y. , Pan, L. , Yan, L. *et al*. (2019) A new isolate of *Pediococcus pentosaceus* (SL001) with antibacterial activity against fish pathogens and potency in facilitating the immunity and growth performance of grass carps. Front Microbiol 10, 1384.
González-Palacios, G. , Fregeneda-Grandes, J-M. , & Aller-Gancedo, J-M. (2020) Possible Mechanisms of Action of Two *Pseudomonas fluorescens* Isolates as Probiotics on Saprolegniosis Control in Rainbow Trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss* Walbaum). Animals 2020, 10, 1507; doi:10.3390/ani10091507
Gram, L. , Melchiorsen, J. , Spanggaard, B. , Huber, I. , & Nielsen, T.F. (1999) Inhibition of *Vibrio anguillarum* by *Pseudomonas fluorescens* AH2, a possible probiotic treatment of fish. Applied Environmental Microbiology 65, 969–973.
Grisdale-Helland, B. , Helland, S.J. , & Gatlin III, D.M. (2008) The effects of dietary supplementation with mannanoligosaccharide, fructooligosaccharide, or galactooligosaccharide on the growth and feed utilization of Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). Aquaculture 283, 163–167.doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2008.07.012
Gullian, M. , Thompson, F. , & Rodriguez, J. (2004) Selection of probiotic bacteria and study of their immunostimulatory effect in *Penaeus vannamei* . Aquaculture 233, 1–14.
Guo, X. , Chen, D-D , Peng, K-S , Cui, Z-W , Zhang, X-J , Li, S. , & Zhang Y-A (2016) Identification and characterization of *Bacillus subtilis* from grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idellus*) for use as probiotic additives in aquatic feed. Fish and Shellfish Immunology 52, 74–84. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.03.017
Gupta, A. , Gupta, P. , & Dhawan, A. (2014) Dietary supplementation of probiotics affects growth, immune response and disease resistance of *Cyprinus carpio* fry. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 41, 113–119.
Gupta, A. , Gupta, P. , & Dhawan, A. (2016) *Paenibacillus polymyxa* as a water additive improved immune response of *Cyprinus carpio* and disease resistance against *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Aquatic Reports, 4, 86–92.
Gupta, S.K. , Pal, A.K. , Sahu, N.P. , Dalvi, R. , Kumar, V. , & Mukherjee, S.C. (2008) Microbial levan in the diet of *Labeo rohita* Hamilton juveniles: effect on non-specific immunity and histopathological changes after challenge with *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Journal of Fish Diseases 31, 649–657. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2761.2008.00939.x
Guzmán-Villanueva, L.T. , Tovar-Ramírez, D. , Gisbert, E. et al (2014) Dietary administration of β-1,3/1,6- glucan and probiotic strain *Shewanella putrefaciens*, single or combined, on gilthead seabream growth, immune responses and gene expression. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 39, 34–41. 10.1016/j.fsi.2014.04.024
Hai, N.V. (2015) The use of probiotics in aquaculture. Journal of Applied Microbiology 119 (4):917–935. doi: 10.1111/jam.12886
Hanley, F. , Brown, H. , & Carbery, J. (1995) First observations on the effects of mannan oligosaccharide added to hatchery diets for warmwater hybrid red tilapia. Poster at the 11th Annual Symposium on Biotechnology in the Feed Industry, Lexington, KY, USA.
Hasan, K.N. , & Banerjee, G. (2018) Recent studies on probiotics as beneficial mediator in aquaculture: review. J Basic Appl Zool 81, 53. doi: 10.1186/s41936-020-00190-y
He, S. , Liu, W. , Zhou, Z. , Mao, W. , Ren, P. , Marubashi, T. , & Ringø, E. (2011) Evaluation of probiotic strain *Bacillus subtilis* C-3102 as a feed supplement for koi carp (*Cyprinus carpio*). Journal of Aquaculture Research and Development S1–005, 1–7. doi: 10.4172/2155-9546.S1-005
Hoseinifar, S.H. , Ringø, E. , Shenavar Masouleh, A. , & Esteban, M. Á. (2016). Probiotic, prebiotic and synbiotic supplements in sturgeon aquaculture: a review. Rev. Aquacult. 8, 89–102, doi: 10.1111/raq.12082
Hoseinifar, S.H. , Esteban, M.Á. , Cuesta, A. , & Sun, Y-Z. (2015) Prebiotics and fish immune response: a review of current knowledge and future perspectives. Reviews in Fisheries Science 23, 315–328. doi:10.1080/23308249.2015.1052365
Hoseinifar, S.H. , Hossein, M. , Paknejad, H. , Safari, R. , Jafar, A. , Yousefi, M. , Doan, H.V. , & Mozanzadeh, M.T. (2019) Enhanced mucosal immune responses, immune related genes and growth performance in common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) juveniles fed dietary *Pediococcus acidilactici* MA18/5M and raffinose. Dev Comp Immunol 94, 59–65.
Hoseinifar, S.H. , Soleimani, N. , & Ringø, E. (2014) Effects of dietary fructo-oligosaccharide supplementation on the growth performance, haemato-immunological parameters, gut microbiota, and stress resistance of common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) fry. British Journal of Nutrition 112, 1296–1302. doi: 10.1017/S0007114514002037
Hosseini Shekarabi, S.P. , Ghodrati, M. , Dawood, M.A.O. , & Roudbaraki, A.F. (2022) The multi-enzymes and probiotics mixture improves the growth performance, digestibility, intestinal health, and immune response of Siberian sturgeon (*Acipenser baerii*). Annals of Animal Science, DOI: 10.2478/aoas-2022-0006
Huang, M.-Y. , Chang, C.-I. , Chang, C.-C. , Tseng, L.-W. , & Pan, C.-L. (2014) Effects of dietary levan on growth performance, nonspecific immunity, pathogen resistance, and body composition of orange-spotted grouper (*Epinephelus coioides*H.). Aquaculture Research 46, 2752–2767. doi: 10.1111/are.12430
Huynh, T-G , Cheng, A-C , Chi, C-C , Chiu, K-H , & Liu, C-H (2018) A synbiotic improves the immunity of white shrimp, *Litopenaeus vannamei*: Metabolomic analysis reveal compelling evidence. Fish Shellfish Immunol 79, 284–293.
Ibrahem, M.D. , Fathi, M. , Mesalhy, S. , & Abd El-Aty, A.M. (2010) Effect of dietary supplementation of inulin and vitamin C on the growth, hematology, innate immunity, and resistance of Nile tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*). Fish &Shellfish Immunology 29, 241–246. doi:10.1016/j.fsi.2010.03.004
Interaminensea, J.A. , Vogeleyb, J.L. , Gouveiaa, C.K. , Portelaa, R.S. , Oliveirac, J.P. , & Silvad, S.M.B.C. (2019) Effects of dietary *Bacillus subtilis* and *Shewanella* algae in expression profile of immune-related genes from hemolymph of *Litopenaeus vannamei* challenged with *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 86, 253–259. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.11.051
Irianto, A. , & Austin, B. (2002) Use of probiotics to control furunculosis in rainbow trout, Oncorhynchus mykiss (Walbaum). J. Fish Dis. 25, 333–342.
Irianto, A. , & Austin, B. (2003) Use of dead probiotic cells to control furunculosis in rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum). J. Fish Dis. 26, 59–62.
Iwashita, M.K.P. , Nakandakare, I.B. , Terhune, J.S. , Wood, T. , & Ranzani-Paiva, M.J.T. (2015) Dietary supplementation with *Bacillus subtilis*, *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and *Aspergillus oryzae* enhance immunity and disease resistance against *Aeromonashydrophila* and *Streptococcus iniae* infection in juvenile tilapia *Oreochromis niloticus* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 43, 60–66. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2014.12.008
Jafaryan, H. , & Soltani, M. (2012) Effects of bioencapsulated Daphnia magna with *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* on the growth and feeding performance of Persian sturgeon (*Acipenser persicus*) larvae. Iranian Journal of Veterinary Medicine, 6, 13–18. Doi. 10.22059/IJVM.2012.24619
Jia, S. , Zhou, K. , Pan, R. et al (2020) Oral immunization of carps with chitosan–alginate microcapsule containing probiotic expressing spring viremia of carp virus (SVCV) G protein provides effective protection against SVCV infection. Fish Shellfish Immunol 105,

327–329. 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.07.052
Jiang, H.F. , Liu, X.L. , Chang, Y.Q. , Liu, M.T. , & Wang, G.X. (2013) Effects of dietary supplementation of probiotic *Shewanella colwelliana* WA64, *Shewanella olleyana* WA65 on the innate immunity and disease resistance of abalone, *Haliotis discus hannai* Ino. Fish Shellfish Immunol 35, 86–91.
Jiang, H. , Chen, T. , Sun, H. , Tang, Z. , Yu, J. , Lin, Z. , Ren, P. , Zhou, X. , Huang, Y. , Li, X. , & Yu, X. (2017). Immune response induced by oral delivery of Bacillus subtilis spores expressing enolase of Clonorchis sinensis in grass carps (Ctenopharyngodon idellus). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 60, 318–325, doi.org/10.1016/j.fsi.2016.10.011
Jiang, H. , Bian, Q. , Zeng, W. , Ren, P. , Sun Z. , Lin, Z. , et al (2019) Oral delivery of *Bacillus subtilis* spores expressing grass carp reovirus VP4 protein produces protection against grass carp reovirus infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 84, 768–780.
Jiravanichpaisal, P. , Chuaychuwong, P. , & Menasveta, P. (1997) The use of Lactobacillus sp. as the probiotic bacteria in the giant tiger shrimp (*Penaeus monodon* Fabricius), poster session of the second Asia-Pacific marine biotechnology conference and third Asia-pacific conference on algal Biotechnology, pp. 7–10.
Kamgar, M. , & Ghane, M. (2014) Studies on Bacillus subtilis, as Potential Probiotics, on the Hematological and Biochemical Parameters of Rainbow trout, Oncorhynchus mykiss (Walbaum). Journal of Applied Environmental Microbiology 2(5), 203–207.
Kani, A.M. , Soltani, M. , Ebrahimzahe-Mousavi, H.A. , & Pakzad K. . (2016) Influence of probiotic, *Lactobacillus plantarum* on serum biochemical and immune parameters in vaccinated rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) against streptococcosis/lactococosis. International Journal of Aquatic Biology 4(4): 285–294.
Karim, M. , Zhao, W. , Rowley, D. , Nelson, D. , & Gomez-Chiarri, M. (2013) Probiotic strains for shellfish aquaculture: protection of eastern oyster, Crassostrea virginica, larvae and juveniles againsl bacterial challenge. Journal of Shellfish Research 32, 401–408.
Kazuń, B. , Małaczewska, J. , Kazuń, K. *et al*. (2018) Immune-enhancing activity of potential probiotic strains of Lactobacillus plantarum in the common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) fingerling. J Vet Res 62, 485–492. 10.2478/jvetres-2018-0062
Kewcharoen, W. , & Srisapoome, P. (2019) Probiotic effects of Bacillus spp. from Pacific white shrimp (Litopenaeus vannamei) on water quality and shrimp growth, immune responses, and resistance to Vibrio parahaemolyticus (AHPND strains). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.09.013
Kim, D. , Beek, B.B. , Lee, S.U. , Jeon, J. , Lee, D.W. , Lee, J.I. *et al*. (2016) Pellet feed adsorbed with the recombinant *Lactococcus lactis* BFE920 expressing SiMA antigen induced strong recall vaccine effects against *Streptococcus iniae* infection in olive flounder (P. olivaceus). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 55, 374–38.
Kiron, A.P.V. , & Watanabe, S.S.T. (2010) Probiotic bacteria *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* influences the blood profile in rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum). Fish Physiol Biochem 36(4), 969–977.
Kiron, V. (2012) Fish immune system and its nutritional modulation for preventive health care. Animal Feed Science and Technology 173, 111–133.doi: 10.1016/j.anifeedsci.2011.12.015
Klakegg, Ø , Salonius, K. , Nilsen, A. et al (2020a) Enhanced growth and decreased mortality in Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar) after probiotic bath. Journal of Applied Microbiology 129, 146–160. 10.1111/jam.14649
Klakegg, Ø. , Salonius, K. , Nilsen, A. , Fülberth, M. , & Sørum, H. (2020b). Improved Health and Better Survival of Farmed Lumpfish (*Cyclopterus Lumpus*) After a Probiotic Bath With Two Strains of *Aliivibrio* . Aquaculture 518, 734810. doi: 10.1016/aquaculture.2019.734810
Knudsen, K.E.B. , Serena, A. , Canibe, N. , & Juntunen, K.S. (2003) New insight into butyrate metabolism. Proceedings of the Nutrition Society 62, 81–86. doi: 10.1079/PNS2002212
Kong, W. , Huang, C. , Tang, Y. , Zhang, D. , Wu, Z. , & Chen, X. (2017) Effect of *Bacillus subtilis* on *Aeromonas hydrophila*-induced intestinal mucosal barrier function damage and inflammation in grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idella*). Science Reports, DOI: 10.1038/s41598-017-01336-9
Kuebutoqrnyea, F.K.A. , Abarikea, E.D. , & Lua, Y. (2019) A review on the application of *Bacillus* as probioitcs in aquaculture. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 87, 820–828.
Kulkarni, A. , Krishnan, S. , Anand, D. , Uthaman, S.K. , Otta, S.K. , Karunasagar, I. , & Valappil, R.K. (2021) Immune responses and immunoprotection in crustaceans with special reference to shrimp. 13, 431–459. 10.1111/raq.12482
Kumar, V. , Roy, S. , Meena, D.K. , & Sarkar, U.K. (2016) Application of probiotics in shrimp aquaculture: Importance, mechanisms of action, and methods of administration. Rev Fish Sci Aquacult 24, 342–368.
Laranja, J.L.Q. , Ludevese-Pascual, G.L. , Amar, E.C. , Sorgeloos, P. , Bossier, P. , & De Schryver, P. (2014) Poly-βhydroxybutyrate (PHB) accumulating *Bacillus* spp. improve the survival, growth and robustness of Penaeus monodon (Fabricius, 1798) postlarvae. Vet Microbiol 173, 310–317.
Laranja, J.L.Q. , Amar, E.C. , Ludevese-Pascual, G.L. , Niu, Y. , Geaga, M.J. , De Schryver, P. , & Bossier, P.A. (2017) Probiotic *Bacillus* strain containing amorphous poly-betahydroxybutyrate (PHB) stimulates the innate immune response of Penaeus monodon postlarvae. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 68, 202–210. 10.1016/j.fsi.2017.07.023
Lategan, M.J. , Torpy, F.R. , & Gibson, L.F. (2004) Biocontrol of Saprolegniosis in Silver Perch *Bidyanus Bidyanus* (Mitchell) by *Aeromonas media* Strain A199. Aquaculture 235, 77–88. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2003.09.014
Lazado, C.C. , Caipang, C.M.A. , & Estante, E.G. (2015) Prospects of host-associated microorganisms in fish and penaeids as probiotics with immunomodulatory functions. Fish Shellfish Immunol (2015) 45(1):2–12. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2015.02.023
Le, B. , & Yang, S.H. (2018) Probiotic potential of novel *Lactobacillus* strains isolated from salted-fermented shrimp as antagonists for *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* . J Microbiol 56, 138–144.
Lee, J.W. , Chiu, S-T , Wang, S-T , Liao, Y-C , Chang, H-T , Ballantyne, R. , Lin, J-S. , & Liu, C-H. (2022) Dietary SYNSEA probiotic improves the growth of white shrimp, *Litopenaeus vannamei* and reduces the risk of *Vibrio* infection via improving immunity and intestinal microbiota of shrimp. Fish and Shellfish Immunology 127 (2022), 482–491. 10.1016/j.fsi.2022.06.071
Lee, S. , Katya, K. , Hamidoghli, A. , Hong, J. , Kim, D-J , & Bai, S.C. (2018) Synergistic effects of dietary supplementation of *Bacillus subtilis* WB60 and mannanoligosaccharide (MOS) on growth performance, immunity and disease resistance in Japanese eel, *Anguilla japonica* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 83, 283–291. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.09.031
Lee, S. , Katya, K. , Park, Y. , Won, S. , Seong, M. , Hamidoghli, A. , & Bai. S.C. (2017) Comparative evaluation of dietary probiotics *Bacillus subtilis* WB60 and *Lactobacillus plantarum* KCTC3928 on the growth performance, immunological parameters, gut morphology and disease resistance in Japanese eel, *Anguilla japonica* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 61, 201–210. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.12.035
Lee, S. , Kumar Katya, K. , Hamidoghli, A. , Hong, J. , Kim, D-J. , & Bai, S.C. (2018) Synergistic effects of dietary supplementation of *Bacillus subtilis* WB60 and mannanoligosaccharide (MOS) on growth performance, immunity and disease resistance in Japanese eel,

Anguilla japonica . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 83, 283–291. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.09.031
Li, E. , Xu, C. , Wang, X. , Wang, S. , Zhao, Q. , Zhang, M. , Qin, J.G. , & Chen, L. (2018) Gut microbiota and its modulation for healthy farming of Pacific white shrimp Litopenaeus vannamei. Rev Fish Sci Aquac 26, 381–399.
Li, J. , Wu, Z.B. , Zhang, Z. , Zha, J.W. , Qu, S.Y. , Qi, X.Z. , Wang, G.X. , & Ling, F. (2019) Effects of potential probiotic *Bacillus velezensis* K2 on growth, immunity and resistance to *Vibrio harveyi* infection of hybrid grouper (*Epinephelus lanceolatus♂×E. fuscoguttatus♀*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.08.047
Li, J. , Tan, B. , & Mai, K. (2009) Dietary probiotic *Bacillus* OJ and isomaltooligosaccharides influence the intestine microbial populations, immune responses and resistance to white spot syndrome virus in shrimp (*Litopenaeus vannamei*). Aquaculture 291, 35–40. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2009.03.005
Li, P. , & Gatlin III, D.M. (2003) Evaluation of brewer's yeast (*Saccharomyces cerevisiae*) as a feed supplement for hybrid striped bass (*Morone chrysops×M.saxatilis*). Aquaculture 219, 681–692. doi:10.1016/S0044-8486(02)00653-1
Li, P. , & Gatlin III, D.M. (2004) Dietary brewer's yeast and the prebiotic GrobioticTM AE influence growth performance, immune responses and resistance of hybrid striped bass (*Morone chrysops×M. saxatilis*) to *Streptococcus iniae*infection. Aquaculture 231, 445–456. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2003.08.021
Li, P. , & Gatlin III, D.M. (2005) Evaluation of the prebiotic GroBiotic-A and brewer's yeast as dietary supplements for sub-adult hybrid striped bass (*Morone chrysops×M. saxatilis*) challenged in situ with *Mycobacterium marinum* . Aquaculture 248, 197–205. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2005.03.005
Li, Y. , Yuan, W. , Zhang, Y. , Liu, H. , & Dai, X. (2021) Single or combined effects of dietary arabinoxylan-oligosaccharide and inulin on growth performance, gut microbiota, and immune response in Pacific white shrimp *Litopenaeus vannamei* . Journal of Oceanology and Limnology 39, 741–754. doi: 10.1007/s00343-020-9083-z
Lin, S. , Mao, S. , Guan, Y. , Luo, L. , & Pan, Y. (2012) Effects of dietary chitosan oligosaccharides and *Bacillus coagulans*on the growth, innate immunity, and resistance of koi (*Cyprinus carpio koi*). Aquaculture 342, 36–41.doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2012.02.009
Lin, Y-S , Saputra, F. , Chen, Y-C , & Hu, S-Y (2019) Dietary administration of *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* R8 reduces hepatic oxidative stress and enhances nutrient metabolism and immunity against *Aeromonas hydrophila* and *Streptococcus agalactiae* in zebrafish (*Danio rerio*). Fish Shellfish Immunol, 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.11.047
Liu, C.-H. , Chiu, C.-H. , Wang, S.-W. , & Cheng, W. (2012) Dietary administration of the probiotic, Bacillus subtilis E20, enhances the growth, innate immune responses, and disease resistance of the grouper, *Epinephelus coioides* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 33, 699–706.
Liu, H. , Wang, S. , Cai, Y. , Guo, X. , Cao, Z. , & Zhang, Y. , *et al*. (2017) Dietary administration of *Bacillus subtilis* enhances growth, digestive enzyme activities, innate immune responses and disease resistance of tilapia, *Oreochromis niloticus* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 60, 326–333.
Liu, R.J. , Wu, W.S. , Xu, X.H. , Wang, Y.L. , Yu, T. , Wang, J.H. , *et al*. (2020) *Rhodopseudomonas Palustris* in effluent enhances the disease resistance, TOR and NF-Kappa B signalling pathway, intestinal microbiota and aquaculture water quality of *Pelteobagrus Vachelli* . Aquaculture Research 51 (10), 3959–3971. doi: 10.1111/are.14736.
Lochmann, R.T. , Sink, T.D. , & Phillips, H. (2009) Effects of dietary lipid concentration, a dairy–yeast prebiotic, and fish and nonfish protein sources on growth, survival, and nonspecific immune response of golden shiners in indoor tanks and outdoor pools. North American Journal of Aquaculture 71, 16–23. doi: 10.1577/A07-093.1
Longeon, A. , Peduzzi, J. , Barthelemy, M. , Corre, S. , Nicolas, J.L. & Guyot, M. (2004) Purification and partial identification of novel antimicrobial protein from marine bacterium Pseudoalteromonas species strain X153. Mar. Biotechnol., 6, 633–641.
Lu, L. , Cao, H. , He, S. , Wei, R. , & Diong, M. (2011) Bacillus amyloliquefaciens G1: a potential antagonistic bacterium against eel-pathogenic *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Evid. Based Complement. Alternat. Med., 2011, 824104.
Maeda, M. , Shibata, A. , Biswas, G. , Korenga, H. , Kono, T. , Itami, T. , & Sakai, M. (2014) Isolation of lactic acid bacteria from kuruma shrimp (*Marsupenaeus japonicus*) intestine and assessment of immunomodulatory role of a selected strain as probiotic. Marine Biotechnology 16, 181–192.
Mahious, A.S. , Gatesoupe, F.J. , Hervi, M. , Metailler, R. , & Ollevier, F. (2006) Effect of dietary inulin and oligosaccharides as prebiotics for weaning turbot, *Psetta maxima* (Linnaeus, C. 1758). Aquaculture International 14, 219–229. doi:10.1007/s10499-005-9003-4
Makled, S.O. , Hamdan, A.M. , & El-Sayed, A.F.M. (2020) Growth Promotion and Immune Stimulation in Nile Tilapia, *Oreochromis Niloticus*, Fingerlings Following Dietary Administration of a Novel Marine Probiotic, Psychrobacter Maritimus S. Prob. Antimicrob. Prot. 12 (2), 365–374. doi: 10.1007/s12602-019-09575-0
Makled, S.O. , Hamdan, A.M. , El-Sayed, A.F.M. , & Hafez, E.E. (2017) Evaluation of marine psychrophile, *Psychrobacter Namhaensis* SO89, as a probiotic in Nile tilapia (*Oreochromis Niloticus*) diets. Fish Shellfish Immunol. 61, 194–200. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2017.01.001
Manning, M.J. (1998) Immune defence systems. In: Biology of farmed fish, Black, K.D. , Pickering, A.D. (eds.), 180–221, Sheffield Academic Press, Sheffield, UK
Mariman, R. , Tielen, F. , Koning, F. , & Nagelkerken, L. (2014) The probiotic mixture VSL#3 dampens LPS-induced chemokine expression in human dendritic cells by inhibition of STAT-1 phosphorylation. PLoS One 9, e115676. 10.1371/journal.pone.0115676.
Martínez-Cruz, P. , Ibáñez, A.L. , Monroy-Hermosillo, O.A. , & Ramírez-Saad, H.C. (2012) Use of probiotics in aquaculture. ISRN Microbiology 916845, 1–13. doi: 10.5402/2012/916845
Meidong, R. , Khotchanalekha, K. , Doolgindachbaporn, S. , Nagasawa, T. , Nakao, M. , Sakai, K. , & Tongpim, S. (2018) Evaluation of probiotic *Bacillus aerius* B81e isolated from healthy hybrid catfish on growth, disease resistance and innate immunity of Pla-mong *Pangasius bocourti* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 73, 1–10.
Merrifield, D.L. , Dimitroglou, A. , Foey, A. , Davies, S.J. , Baker, R.T. , Bøgwald, J. , *et al*. The current status and future focus of probiotic and prebiotic applications for salmonids. Aquaculture (2010) 302(1-2):1–18. doi: 10.1016/ j.aquaculture.2010.02.007
Merrifield, D.L. , Balcazar, J.L. , Daniels, C.L. , Zhou, Z. , Carnevali, O. , Sun, Y.Z. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , & Ringø, E. (2014) Indigenous lactic acid bacteria in fish and crustaceans. In: Merrifield, D.L. , Ringø, E. (Eds.), Aquaculture Nutrition: Gut Health, Probiotics and Prebiotics. West Sussex, Wiley-Blackwell, pp. 128–168.
Merrifield, D.L. , Dimitroglou, A. , Foey, A. , Davies, S.J. , Baker, R.T.M. , Bøgwald, J. Castex, M. , & Ringø, E. (2010) The current status and future focus of probiotic and prebiotic applications for salmonids. Aquaculture 302, 1–18. doi:10.1016/j.aquaculture.2010.02.007
Merrifield, D. , & Ringø,E. , (eds) (2014) Aquaculture nutrition: gut health, probiotics and prebiotics. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford

Michael, S.E. , Abarike, E.D. , & Cai, J. (2019) A Review on the Probiotic Effects on Haematological Parameters in Fish. Journal of Fisheries Science, 13, 25–31.
Middlemiss, K.L. , Daniels, C.L. , Urbina, M.A. , & Wilson, R.W. (2015) Combined effects of UV irradiation, ozonation, and the probiotic *Bacillus* spp. on growth, survival, and general fitness in European lobster (*Homarus gammarus*). Aquaculture 444, 99–10.
Min, L. , Li-Lia, Z. , Jun-Weia, G. , Xin-Yuana, Q. , Yi-Jinga, L. , & Di-Qiub, L. (2012) Immunogenicity of *Lactobacillus*-expressing VP2 and VP3 of the infectious pancreatic necrosis virus (IPNV) in rainbow trout. Fish and Shellfish Immunology, 32, 196–203.
Mirghaed, A.T. , Yarahmadi, P. , Hosseinifar, S.H. , Tahmasebi, D. , Gheisvandi, N. , & Ghaedi, A. (2018) The effects singular or combined administration of fermentable fiber and probiotic on mucosal immune parameters, digestive enzyme activity, gut microbiota and growth performance of Caspian white fish (*Rutilus frisii kutum*) fingerlings. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 77, 194–199.
Mladineo, I. , Buselic, I. , Hrabar, J. , Radonic, I. , Vrbatovic, A. , Jozic, S. , *et al.* (2016) Autochthonous bacterial isolates successfully stimulate *in vitro* peripheral blood leukocytes of the European sea bass (*Dicentrarchus Labrax*). Frontiers in Microbiology 7. doi: 10.3389/fmic.2018.01244
Mohammadian, T. , Alishahi, M. , Tabandeh, M.R. , Nejad, A.J. , Karami, E. , & Zarea, M. (2018) Effects of autochthonous probiotics, isolated from Tor grypus (Karaman, 1971) intestine and *Lactobacillus casei* (PTCC 1608) on expression of immune-related genes. Aquaculture International 27, 239.
Morshedi, V. , Agh, N. , Noori, F. , Jafari, F. , Tukmechi, A. , Marammazi, J. , & Pagheh, E. (2018) Effects of dietary xylooligosaccharide on growth and feeding performance, body composition and physiological responses of sobaity seabream (*Sparidentex hasta*) juvenile. Aquaculture Nutrition 24, 1796–1803. doi: 10.1111/anu.12818
Mouriño, J.L.P. , Vieira, F.D.N. , Jatobá, A.B. , Da Silva, B.C. , Jesus, G.F.A. , Seiffert, W.Q. , & Martins, M.L. (2012) Effect of dietary supplementation of inulin and *W. cibaria* on haematoimmunological parameters of hybrid surubim (*Pseudoplatystoma* sp.). Aquaculture Nutrition 18, 73–80.doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2095.2011.00879.x
Mukherjee, A. , Banerjee,G. , Mukherjee, P. , Ray, A.K. , Chandra, G. , & Ghosh, K. (2019a). Antibacterial substances produced by pathogen inhibitory gut bacteria in *Labeo rohita*: physico-chemical characterization, purification and identification through MALDI-TOF Mass Spectrometry. Microbial Pathology 130, 146–155.
Mukherjee, A. , Chandra, G. , & Ghosh, K. (2019b). Single or conjoint application of autochthonous *Bacillus* strains as potential probiotics: effects on growth, feed utilization, immunity and disease resistance in Rohu, *Labeo rohita* (Hamilton). Aquaculture 512: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2019.734302
Mukherjee, A. , Dutta, D. , Banerjee, S. , Ringø, E. , Breines, E.M. , Hareide, E. , Chandra, G. , & Ghosh, K. (2017) Culturable autochthonous gut bacteria in rohu, *Labeo rohita*. *In vitro* growth inhibition against pathogenic *Aeromonas* spp., stability in gut, bio-safety and identification by 16S rRNA gene sequencing. Symbiosis 73, 165–177.
Mulyani, Y. , Aryantha, I.N.P. , Suhandono, S. , & Pancoro, A. (2018) Intestinal bacteria of common carp (*Cyprinus carpio* L.) as a biological control agent for *Aeromonas* . Journal of Pure and Applied Microbiology 12, 601–610.
Mustafa, A. , Buentello, A. , Gatlin, D. , Lightner, D. , Hume, M. , & Lawrence, A. (2019) Dietary supplementation of galactooligosaccharides (GOS) in Pacific white shrimp, *Litopenaeus vannamei*, cultured in a recirculating system and its effects on gut microflora, growth, stress, and immune response. Journal of Immunoassay and Immunochemistry 40, 662–675. doi: 10.1080/15321819.2019.1675694
Naderi-Samani, M. , Soltani, M. , Dadar, M. , Taheri-Mirghaed, A. , Zargar, A. , & Ahmadivand, S. *et al.* (2020) Oral immunization of trout fry with recombinant *Lactococcus lactis* NZ3900 expressing G gene of viral hemorrhagic septicaemia virus (VHSV). Fish Shellfish Immunol 105, 62–70.
Naiel, M.A.E. , Farag, M.R. , Gewida, A.G.A. , Elnakeeb, M.A. , Amer, M.S. , & Alagawany, M. (2020) Using lactic acid bacteria as an immunostimulants in cultured shrimp with special reference to *Lactobacillus* spp. Aquaculture International 10.1007/s10499-020-00620-2
Nandi, A. , Dan, S.K. , Banerjee, G. , Ghosh, P. , Ghosh, K. , Ringø, E. , & Ray, A.K. (2017) Probiotic potential of autochthonous bacteria isolated from the gastrointestinal tract of four freshwater teleost. Probiotics and Antimicrobial Proteins 9, 12–21.
Naresh, S. , Suneetha, Y. , & Srinivasulu, M. (2014) Reddy effect of *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* and *Bacillus subtilis* supplemented probiotic diets on the growth patterns and anti oxidant enzyme activities in *Penaeus monodon* and *Penaeus indicus* . American International Journal of Research in Formal, Applied & Natural Sciences, 8, 76–80, http://www.iasir.net
Newaj-Fyzul, A. , Adesiyun, A.A. , Mutani, A. , Ramsubhag, A. , Brunt, J. , & Austin, B. (2007) *Bacillus subtilis* AB1 controls *Aeromonas* infection in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*, Walbaum). Journal of Applied Microbiology 103, 1699–1706.
Nguyen, T.T.G. , Nguyen, T.C. , Leelakriangsak, M. , Pham, T.T. , Pham, Q.H. , & Lueangthuwapranit, CJTM (2018) Promotion of *Lactobacillus plantarum* on growth and resistance against acute hepatopancreatic necrosis disease pathogens in white-leg shrimp (*Litopenaeus vannamei*). Thi J Sci 48, 19–28.
Nguyen, V.D. , Pham, T.T. , Nguyen, T.H.T. , Nguyen, T.T.X. , & Hoj, L. (2014a) Screening of marine bacteria with bacteriocin-like activities and probiotic potential for ornate spiny lobster (*Panulirus ornatus*) juveniles. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 40, 49–60. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2014.06.017.
Nguyen, A.T.V. , Pham, C.K. , Pham, H.L. , Nguyen, A.H. , Dang, L.T. , Huynh, H.A. , Cutting, S.M. , & Phan, T.N. (2014b). *Bacillus subtilis* spores expressing the VP28 antigen: A potential oral treatment to protect *Litopenaeus vannamei* against white spot syndrome. FEMS Microbiology Letters 358(2). doi: 10.1111/1574-6968.12546
Ning, D. , Leng, X. , Li, Q. , & Xu, X. (2011) Surface-displayed VP28 on *Bacillus subtilis* spores induce protection against white spot syndrome virus in crayfish by oral administration. Journal of Applied Microbiology 111, 1327–1336. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2672.2011.05156.x
Nurhajati, J. , Atira , Aryantha, I.N.P. , & Kadek Indah, D.G. (2012) The curative action of Lactobacillus plantarum FNCC 226 to Saprolegnia parasitica A3 on catfish (*Pangasius hypophthalamus Sauvage*). International Food Research Journal, 19 (4):1723–1727.
Pavadi, P. , Murthy, H.S. , Honnananda, B.R. , & Choudhary, B.K. (2018) Enhancement of growth, immunity, resistance and survival of freshwater prawn, *Macrobrachium rosenbergii* against White Muscle Disease (WMD) due to dietary administration of probiotic and biogut. International Journal of Current Microbiology and Applied Sciences 7, 569–579. doi: 10.20546/ijcmas.2018.704.067
Paz, A.L. , da Silva, J.M. , da Silva, K.M.M. , & Val, A.L. (2019) Protective effects of the fructooligosaccharide on the growth performance, hematology, immunology indicators and survival of tambaqui (*Colossoma macropomum*, Characiformes: Serrasalmidae) infected by *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Aquaculture Reports 15, 100222. doi:10.1016/j.aqrep.2019.100222
Peng, M. , Zhang, Y. , & Song, Z. (2019) Isolation and characterization of a *Bacillus* spp. against *Vibrio Parahaemolyticus* from shrimp culture ponds. International Journal of Microbiology and Biotechnology, 4, 29–37.

Peraza-Gómez, V. , Luna-González, A. , Campa-Córdova, ÁI , López-Meyer, M. , Fierro-Coronado, J.A. , & Álvarez-Ruiz, P. (2009) Probiotic microorganisms and antiviral plants reduce mortality and prevalence of WSSV in shrimp (*Litopenaeus vannamei*) cultured under laboratory conditions. Aquatic Research 40, 1481–1489.
Pereira, G.V. , Jesus, G.F.A. , Vieira, F.N. , Pereira, S.A. , Ushizima, T.T. , Mouriño, J.L.P. , & Martins, M.L. (2016) Probiotic supplementation in diet and vaccination of hybrid surubim (*Pseudoplatystoma reticulatum*♀ x *P. corruscans*♂). Ciência Rural, Rural, Santa Maria 46 (2): 343–353. 10.1590/0103-8478cr20150543
Perez-Sanchez, T. , Balcazar, J.L. , Merrifield, D.L. , Carnevali, O. , Gioacchini, G. , de Blas, I. , & Ruiz-Zarzuela, I. (2011) Expression of immune-related genes in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) induced by probiotic bacteria during Lactococcus garvieae infection. Fish Shellfish Immunol. 31, 196–201. 10.1016/j.fsi.2011.05.005.
Petit, J. , de Bruijn, I. , Goldman, M.R.G. , van den Brink, E. , Pellikaan, W.F. , Forlenza, M. , & Wiegertjes, G.F. (2022) β-Glucan-induced immuno-modulation: a role for the intestinal microbiota and short-chain fatty acids in common carp. Frontiers in Immunology 12, 761820. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2021.761820
Petit, J. , & Wiegertjes, G.F. (2022) Conservation of members of the free fatty acid receptor gene family in common carp. Developmental & Comparative Immunology 126, 104240. doi: 10.1016/j.dci.2021.104240
Pham, K.C. , Tran, H.T. , Van Doan, H. , Le, P.H. , Van Nguyen, A.T. , Nguyen, H.A. , Hong, H.A. , Cutting, S.M. , & Pham, T.-N. (2017) Protection of *Penaeus monodon* against white spot syndrome by continuous oral administration of a low concentration of *Bacillus subtilis* spores expressing the VP 28 antigen. Letters in Applied Microbiology 64, 184–191. doi: 10.1111/lam.12708
Phianphak, W. , Rengpipat, S. , Piyatiratitivorakul, S. , & Menasveta, P. (1999) Probiotic use of *Lactobacillus* spp. for black tiger shrimp, *Penaeus monodon* . J. Sci. Res. Chula. Univ., 42–51.
Piazzon, M.C. , Calduch-Giner, J.A. , Fouz, B. , Estensoro, I. , Simó-Mirabet, P. , Puyalto, M. , *et al.* (2017) Under control: how a dietary additive can restore the gut microbiome and proteomic profile, and improve disease resilience in a marine teleostean fish fed vegetable diets. Microbiome 5, 164. doi: 10.1186/s40168-017-0390-3
Pieters, N. , Brunt, J. , Austin, B. , & Lyndon, A.R. (2008) Efficacy of in-feed probiotics against *Aeromonas bestiarum* and *Ichthyophthirius multifiliis* skin infections in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*, Walbaum). Journal of Applied Microbiology, 105(3):723–732. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2672.2008.03817.x
Pietrzak, E. , Mazurkiewicz, J. , & Slawinska, A. (2020) Innate immune responses of skin mucosa in Common Carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) fed a diet supplemented with galactooligosaccharides. Animals (Basel) 10, 438. doi: 10.3390/ani10030438
Pooljun, C. , Daorueang, S. , Weerachatyanukul, W. , Direkbusarakom, S. , & Jariyapong, P. (2020). Enhancement of shrimp health and immunity with diets supplemented with combined probiotics: application to Vibrio parahaemolyticus infections. Diseases of Aquatic Organisms, 140: 37–46. doi: 10.3354/dao03491
Purivrirojkul, W. , Maketon, M. , & Areechon, N. (2005) Probiotic properties of *Bacillus pumilus*, *Bacillus sphaericus* and *Bacillus subtilis* in black tiger shrimp (*Penaeus monodon* Fabricius) culture. Food and Agriculture Organization of United Nations, pp. 263–271.
Qi, X. , Xue, M.Y. , Cui, H.B. , Yang, K.C. , Song, K.G. , Zha, J.W. , *et al.* (2020) Antimicrobial Activity of *Pseudomonas Monteilii* JK-1 Isolated From Fish Gut and its Major Metabolite, 1-Hydroxyphenazine, Against *Aeromonas Hydrophila* . Aquaculture 526, 735366. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2020.735366
Rahiman, K.M.M. , Jesmi, Y. , Thomas, A.P. , & Hatha, A.A.M. (2010) Probiotic effect of Bacillus NL110 and Vibrio NE17 on the survival, growth performance and immune response of Macrobrachium rosenbergii (de Man). Aquatic Research, 41, 120–134, doi:10.1111/j.1365-2109.2009.02473.x
Raida, M.K. , Larsen, J.L. , Nielsen, M.E. , & Buchmann, K. (2003) Enhanced resistance of rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum), against *Yersinia ruckeri* challenge following oral administration of *Bacillus subtilis* and *B. licheniformis* (BioPlus2B). Journal of Fish Diseases, 26, 495–498.
Rairakhwada, D. , Pal, A.K. , Bhathena, Z.P. , Sahu, N.P. , Jha, A. , & Mukherjee, S.C. (2007) Dietary microbial levan enhances cellular non-specific immunity and survival of common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) juveniles. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 22, 477–486.doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2006.06.005
Ramesh, D. , & Souissi, S. (2018) Effects of potential probiotic *Bacillus subtilis* KADR1 and its subcellular components on immune responses and disease resistance in *Labeo rohita* . Aquaculture Research 49, 367–377. doi: 10.1111/are.13467
Rastekenari, H.Y. , Kazami, R. , Shenavar Masouleh, A. , Banavreh, A. , Najjar Lashgari, S. , Hassani, M.H.S. , Ghorbani Vaghei, R. , Alizadeh Roudposhti, M. , & Hallajian, A. (2021) Autochthonous probiotics *Lactococcus lactis* and *Weissella confuse* in the diet of fingerlings great sturgeon, *Huso huso*: effects on growth performance, feed efficiency, haematological parameters, immune status and intestinal morphology. Aquaculture Researach, 52, 3687–3695. 10.1111/are.15213
Ray, A.K. , Ghosh, K. , & Ringø, E. (2012) Enzyme-producing bacteria isolated from fish gut: A review. Aquacult. Nutr. 18, 465–492.
Reda, R.M. , & Selim, K.M. Evaluation of *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* on the growth performance, intestinal morphology, hematology and body composition of Nile tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus. Aquac. Int., 23, 203–217 (2015).
Remus, D.M. , van Kranenburg, R. , van Swam, I.I. , Taverne, N. , Bongers, R.S. , Wels, M. , Bron, P. , & Kleerebezen, M. (2012) Impact of four*Lactobacillus plantarum* capsular polysaccharide clusters on surface glycan composition and host cell signaling. Microbiol. Cell. Fact. 11, 149. 10.1186/1475-2859-11-149.
Rengpipat, S. , Rukpratanporn, S. , Piyatiratitivorakul, S. , & Menasaveta, P. (2000) Immunity enhancement in black tiger shrimp (*Penaeus monodon*) by a probiont bacterium (*Bacillus* S11). Aquaculture, 191, 271–288. 10.1016/S0044-8486(00)00440-3
Rengpipat, S. , Tunyanun, A. , Fast, A.W. , Piyatiratitivorakul, P. , & Menasveta, P. (2003) Enhanced growth and resistance to *Vibrio* challenge in pond-reared black tiger srhimp *Penaeus monodon* fed a *Bacillus* probiotic. Dis Aquat. Org., 55, 169–173. Doi. 10.3354/dao055169.
Rengpipat, S. , Phianphak, W. , Piyatiratitivorakul, S. , & Menasveta, P. (1998) Eeffcts of a probiotic bacterium on black tiger shrimp *Penaeus monodon* survival and growth. Aquaculture 167, 301–313.
Reyes-Becerril, M. , Ascencio, F. , Gracia-Lopez, V. , Macias, M.E. , Roa, M.C. , & Esteban, M.Á. (2014) Single or combined effects of *Lactobacillus sakei*and inulin on growth, non-specific immunity, and IgM expression in leopard grouper (*Mycteroperca rosacea*). Fish Physiologyand Biochemistry 40, 1169–1180.doi: 10.1007/s10695-014-9913-z
Rezvani Gil Kolaei, A. , Shoaibi Omrani, B. , & Afraei Bandpey, M.A. (2019) The Effect of dietary probiotic *Lactobacillus Plantarum* on nutrition performance in Siberian sturgeon (*Acipenser Baerii*). Journal of Aquaculture Development, 13, 79–88.
Ringø, E. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , Ghosh, K. , Doan, H.V. , Beck, B.R. , & Song, S.K. (2018) Lactic Acid Bacteria in Finfish—An Update. Frontiers in Microbiology 9, 1818. doi: 10.3389/fmicb.2018.01818

Ringø, E. , Li, X. , Van Doan, Hv , & Ghosh, K. (2022) Interesting probiotic bacteria other than the more widely used lactic acid bacteria and bacilli in finfish. Frontiers in Marine Science 9, 848037. doi: 10.3389/fmars.2022.848037

Ringø, E. (2020) Probiotics in shellfish aquaculture. Aquatic Fish 5 (2), 1–27. 10.1016/j.aaf.2019.12.001.

Ringø, E. , Løvmo, L. , Kristiansen, M. , Bakken, Y. , Salinas, I. , Myklebust, R. , Olsen, R.E. , & Mayhew, T.M. (2010) Lactic acid bacteria vs. pathogens in the gastrointestinal tract of fish: a review. Aquac. Res. 41, 451–467. 10.1111/j.1365- 2109.2009. 02339.x.

Ringø, E. , Olsen, R.E. , Gifstad, T.Ø. , Dalmo, R.A. , Amlund, H. , Hemre, G.-I. , & Bakke, A.M. (2010) Prebiotics in aquaculture: a review. Aquaculture Nutrition 16, 117–136. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2095.2009.00731.x

Ringø, E. , van Doan, H. , Lee, S.H. , Soltani, M. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , Ramasamy, H. , & Song, S.K. (2020) Probiotics, lactic acid bacteria and bacilli: interesting supplementation for aquaculture. Journal of Applied Microbiology 129, 116–136. doi: 10.1111/jam.14628

Rodriguez-Estrada, U. , Satoh, S. , Haga, Y. , Fushimi, H. , & Sweetman, J. (2009) Effects of single and combined supplementation of *Enterococcus faecalis*, mannan oligosaccharide and polyhydroxybutyrate acid on growth performance and immune response of rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss* . Aquaculture Science 57, 609–617. doi: 10.11233/AQUACULTURESCI.57.609

Rombout, J.H.W.M. , Abelli, L. , Picchietti, S. , Scapigliati, G. , & Kiron, V. (2011) Teleost intestinal immunology. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 31, 616–626. doi:10.1016/j.fsi.2010.09.001

Roomiani, L. , Ahmadi, S. , & Ghaeni, M.J.A.Ü.V.F.D. (2018) Immune response and disease resistance in the white shrimp, *Litopenaeus vannamei* induced by potential probiotic *Lactobacillus* . Unk Uni Vet Fak Der 65, 323–329.

Ruiz-Ponte, C. , Samain, J.F. , Sanchez, J.L. , & Nicolas, J.L. (1999) The benefit of a *Roseobacter* species on the survival of scallop larvae. Marine Biotechnology, 1, 52–59.

Sadat Hoseini Madani, N. , Adorian, T.J. , Ghafari Farsani, H. , & Hoseinifar, S.H. (2018) The effects of dietary probiotic bacilli (*Bacillus subtilis* and *Bacillus licheniformis*) on growth performance, feed efficiency, body composition and immune parameters of whiteleg shrimp (*Litopenaeus vannamei*) postlarvae. Aquacultre Research 49, 1926–1933. doi: 10.1111/are.13648

Salinas, I. , Zhang, Y-A. , & Sunyer, J.O. (2011) Mucosal immunoglobulins and B cells of teleost fish. Developmental & Comparative Immunology 35, 1346–1365. doi:10.1016/j.dci.2011.11.009

Sánchez-Ortiz, A.C. , Angulo, C. , Luna-González, A. , Álvarez-Ruiz, P. , Mazón-Suástegui, J.M. , & Campa Córdova, ÁI (2016) Effect of mixed-Bacillus spp. isolated from pustulose *ark Anadara tuberculosa* on growth, survival, viral prevalence and immune-related gene expression in shrimp *Litopenaeus vannamei* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 59, 95–102.

Sanz, M.L. , Polemis, N. , Morales, V. , Corzo, N. , Drakoularakou, A. , Gibson, G.R. , & Rastall, R.A. (2005) In vitro investigation into the potential prebiotic activity of honey oligosaccharides. Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry 53, 2914–2921. doi:10.1021/jf0500684

Schaeck, M. , Reyes-López, F.E. , Vallejos-Vidal, E. et al (2017) Cellular and transcriptomic response to treatment with the probiotic candidate *Vibrio lentus* in gnotobiotic sea bass (*Dicentrarchus labrax*) larvae. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 63, 147–156. doi.org/10.1016/j.fsi.2017.01.028

Selim, K.M. , & Reda, R.M. (2015) Improvement of immunity and disease resistance in the Nile tilapia, *Oreochromis niloticus*, by dietary supplementation with *Bacillus amyloliquefaciens* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 44, 496–503.

Sella S.R.B.R. , Vandenberghe L.P.S. , & Socol C.R. (2014) Life cycle and spore resistance of spore-forming *Bacillus atrophaeus* . Microbiology Research 169, 931–939.

Sewaka, M. , Trullas, C. , Chotiko, A. , Rodkhum, C. , Chansue, N. , Boonanuntanasam, S. , & Pirarat, N. (2019) Efficacy of synbiotic Jerusalem artichoke and *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* GG-supplemented diets on growth performance, serum biochemical parameters, intestinal morphology, immune parameters and protection against *Aeromonas veronii* in juvenile red tilapia (*Oreochromis* spp.). Fish Shellfish Immunol 86, 260–268.

Shabirah, A. , Mulyani, R.Y. , & Lili, W. (2019) Effect of types isolated lactic acid bacteria on hematocrit and differential leukocytes fingerling common carp (*Cyprinus carpio* L.) infected with Aeromonas hydrophila bacteria. WNOFNS 24, 25–35.

Sharma, P. , Sihag, R.C. , & Gahlawat, S.K. (2013) Effect of probiotic on haematogical paramaters of diseased fish (*Cirrihinus mrigal*). Journal of Fish Science 7(4), 323–328.

Shefat S.H.T. (2018) Probiotic strains used in aquaculture. International Research Journal on Microbiology 7, 43–55. doi: 10.14303/irjm.2018.023

Sherif, A.H. , & Mahfouz, M.E. (2019) Immune status of *Oreochromis niloticus* experimentally infected with *Aeromonas hydrophila* following feeding with 1, 3 β-glucan and levamisole immunostimulants. Aquaculture 509, 40–46. doi:10.1016/j.aquaculture.2019.05.016

Silva-Aciares, F. , Moraga, D. , Auffret, M. , Tanguy, A. , & Riquelme, C. (2013) Transcriptomic and cellular response to bacterial challenge (pathogenic *Vibrio parahaemolyticus*) in farmed juvenile *Haliotis rufescens* fed with or without probiotic diet. Journal of Invertebrate Pathology 113, 163–176.

Simón, R. , Docando, F. , Nuñez-Ortiz, N. , Tafalla, C. , & Díaz-Rosales, P. (2021) Mechanisms used by probiotics to confer pathogen resistance to teleost fish. Frontiers in Immunology 12, 653025. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2021.653025

Simon, R. , Docando, F. , Nuñez-Ortiz, N. , Tafalla, C. , & Díaz-Rosales, P. (2021) Mechanisms used by probiotics to confer pathogen resistance to teleost fish. Frontiers in Immunology 12, 653025. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2021.653025

Slepecky, R. , & Hemphill, E. (2006) The genus *Bacillus*. Nonmedical. The Prokaryotes, (Dworkin, M. , Falkow, S. , Rosenberg, E. , Schleifer, K-H & Stackebrandt, E. , eds), 4:530–562. Springer, New York.

Sohn, S. , Lundgren, K.M. , Tammi, K. , Karim, M. , Smolowitz, R. , Nelson, D.R. , Rowley, D.C. , & Gómez-Chiarri, M. (2016a) Probiotic strains for disease management in hatchery larviculture of the eastern oyster *Crassostrea virginica* . Journal of Shellfish Research 35, 307–317.

Sohn, S. , Lundgren, K.M. , Tammi, K. , Smolowitz, R. , Nelson, D.R. , Rowley, D.C. , & Gómez-Chiarri, M. (2016b) Efficacy of probiotics in preventing vibriosis in the larviculture of different species of bivalve shellfish. Journal of Shellfish Research 35, 319–328.

Soleimani, N. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , Merrifield, D.L. , Barati, M. , & Abadi, Z.H. (2012) Dietary supplementation of fructooligosaccharide (FOS) improves the innate immune response, stress resistance, digestive enzyme activities, and growth performance of Caspian roach (*Rutilus rutilus*) fry. Fish &Shellfish Immunology 32, 316–321. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2011.11.023

Soltani, M. , Abdy, E. , Alishahi, M. *et al*. (2017) Growth performance, immune-physiological variables and disease resistance of common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) orally subjected to different concentrations of *Lactobacillus plantarum* . Aquacult Int, 25, 1913–1933. 10.1007/s10499-017-0164-8

Soltani, M. , Kane, A.M. , Taherimirghaed, A. , Pakzad, K. , & Hosseini Shekarabi, P. (2019b). Effect of the probiotic, *Lactobacillus plantarum* on growth performance and haematological indices of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) immunized with bivalent streptococcosis /lactococcosis vaccine. Iranian Journal of Fisheries Sciences. 18(2) 283–295. DOI: 10.22092/ijfs.2018.117757
Soltani, M. , Lymbery, A. , Song, S.K. , & Hosseini Shekarabi, P. (2018) Adjuvant effects of medicinal herbs and probiotics for fish vaccines. Rev Aquac 11(4), 1325–1341. doi.org/10.1111/raq.12295
Soltani, M. , Pakzad, K. , Taheri-Mirghaed, A. , Mirzargar, S. , Shekarabi, S.P.H. , Yosefi, P. , & Soleymani, N. (2019c). Dietary application of the probiotic *Lactobacillus plantarum* 426951 enhances immune status and growth of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) vaccinated against *Yersinia ruckeri* . Probiotics Antimicrobial Proteins 11(1):207–219. doi: 10.1007/s12602-017-9376-5.
Soltani, M. , Ghosh, K. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , Kumar, V. , Lymbery, A.J. , Roy, S. , & Ringø, E. (2019a) Genus *Bacillus*, promising probiotics in aquaculture: Aquatic animal origin, bio-active components, bioremediation and efficacy in fish and shellfish. Rev Fish Sci Aquacult, DOI: 10.1080/23308249.2019.1597010
Song, S.K. , Beck, B.R. , Kim, D. , Park, J. , Kim, J. , Kim, H.D. , & Ringø, E. (2014) Prebiotics as immunostimulants in aquaculture: A review. 10.1016/j.fsi.2014.06.016
Sorieul, L. , Wabete, N. , Ansquer, D. , Mailliez, J-M. , Pallud, M. , Zhang, C. , Lindivat, C. , Boulo, V. , & Pham. D. (2018) Survival improvement conferred by the *Pseudoalteromonas* sp. NC201 probiotic in *Litopenaeus stylirostris* exposed to *Vibrio nigripulchritudo* infection and salinity stress. Aquaculture, 495, 888–898. 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2018.06.058
Spanggaard, B. , Huber, I. , Nielsen, J. , Sick, E.B. , Pipper, C.B. , Martinussen, T. , Slierendrecht, W.J. , & Gram, L. (2001) The probiotic potential against vibriosis of the indigenous microflora of rainbow trout. Environ. Microbiol. 3, 755–765.
Suguna, P. , Binuramesh, C. , Abirami, P. , Saranya, V. , Poornima, K. , Rajeswari, V. , & Shenbagarathai, R. (2014) Immunostimulation by poly-b hydroxybutyrate-hydroxyvalerate (PHB-HV) from *Bacillus thuringiensis* in *Oreochromis mossambicus* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 36, 90–97. doi.org/10.1016/j.fsi.2013.10.012
Sumathi, C. , Nandhini, A. , & Padmanaban, J. (2017) Antagonistic activity of probiotic *Bacillus megaterium* against *Streptococcus mutans* . Int J Pharmacol Biolo Sci 8, 270–274.
Sumon, T.F. , Hussain, M.A. , Sumon, M.A.A. , Jang, W.J. , Abellan, F.G. , Sharifuzzaman, S.M. , Brown, C.L. , Lee, E-W. , Kim, C.H. , & Hasan, M.T. (2022) Functionality and prophylactic role of probiotics in shellfish aquaculture. Aquaculture Reports 25, 101220. 10.1016/j.aqrep.2022.101220
Sun, H. , Shang, M. , Tang, Z. , Jiang, H. , Dong, H. , Zhou, X. , Lin, Z. , Shi, C. , Ren, P. , Zhao, L. , Shi, M. , Zhou, L. , Pan, H. , Chang, O. , Li, X. , Huang, Y. , & Yu, X. (2020) Oral delivery of *Bacillus subtilis* spores expressing *Clonorchis sinensis* paramyosin protects grass carp from cercaria infection. Applied Microbiology and Biotechnology. doi: 10.1007/s00253-019-10316-0.
Sun, Y. , Wang, G. , Peng, K. , Huang, Y. , Cao, J. , Huang, W. , Chen, B. , & Hu, J. (2018) Effects of dietary xylooligosaccharides on growth performance, immunity and *Vibrio alginolyticus* resistance of juvenile *Litopenaeus vannamei* . Aquaculture Research 50, 358–365. doi: 10.1111/are.13911
Sun, Y.-Z. , Yang, H.-L. , Ma, R.-L. , & Lin, W.-Y. (2010) Probiotic applications of two dominant gut Bacillus strains with antagonistic activity improved the growth performance and immune responses of grouper *Epinephelus coioides* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 29, 803–809.
Ta'ati, R. , Soltani, M. , Bahmani, M. , & Zamini, A. (2011) Growth performance, carcass composition, and immunophysiological indices in juvenile great Sturgeon (*Huso huso*) fed on commercial prebiotic, Immunoster. Iranian Journal of Fisheries Sciences 10, 324–335.
Talpur, A.D. , Munir, M.B. , Mary, A. , & Hashim, R. (2014) Dietary probiotics and prebiotics improved food acceptability, growth performance, haematology and immunological parameters, and disease resistance against *Aeromonas hydrophila*in snakehead (*Channa striata*) fingerlings. Aquaculture 426, 14–20. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2014.01.013
Talukdar, S. , Ringø, E. , & Ghosh, K. (2016) Extracellular tannase-producing bacteria detected in the digestive tracts of seven freshwater fishes. Acta Ichthyologica et Piscatoria 46, 201–210.
Tamilarasu, A. , Ahilan, B. , Gopalakannan, A. , & Lingam, R.S.S. (2021) Evaluation of probiotic potential of *Bacillus* strains on growth performance and physiological responses in *Penaeus vannamei* . Aquaculture Research, DOI: 10.1111/are.15159
Tang, Y. , Han, L. , Chen, X. , Xie, M. , Kong, M. , & Wu, Z. (2019) Dietary supplementation of probiotic *Bacillus subtilis* affects antioxidant defenses and immune response in grass carp under *Aeromonas hydrophila* challenge. Probiotics and Antimicrobial Proteins 11,545–558. doi: 10.1007/s12602-018-9409-8
Tarnecki, A.M. , Burgos, F.A. , Ray, C.L. , & Arias, C.R. (2017) Fish intestinal microbiome: diversity and symbiosis unraveled by metagenomics. Journal of Applied Microbiology 123, 2–17. doi: 10.1111/jam.13415.
Telli, G.S. , Ranzani-Paiva, M.J.T. , de Carla Dias, D. , Sussel, F.R. , Ishikawa, C.M. , & Tachibana, L. (2014) Dietary administration of *Bacillus subtilis* on hematology and non-specific immunity of Nile tilapia,*Oreochromis niloticus* raised at different stocking densities. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 39, 305–311.
Tepaamorndech, S. , Chantarasakha, K. , Kingcha, Y. , Chaiyapechara, S. , Phromson, M. , Sriariyanun, M. , Kirschke, C.P. , Huang, L. , & Visessanguan, W. (2019) Effects of *Bacillus aryabhattai* TBRC8450 on vibriosis resistance and immune enhancement in Pacific white shrimp,*Litopenaeus vannamei* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 86, 4–13. DOI: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.11.010
Thanh Tung, H. , Koshio, S. , Ferdinand Traifalgar, R. , Ishikawa, M. , & Yokoyama, S. (2010) Effects of dietary heat-killed *Lactobacillus plantarum* on larval and post-larval kuruma shrimp, *Marsupenaeus japonicus* Bate. J World Aquacult Soc 41, 16–27.
Torrecillas, S. , Makol, A. , Caballero, M.J. , Montero, D. , Ginés, R. , Sweetman, J. , & Izquierdo, M. (2011) Improved feed utilization, intestinal mucus production, and immune parameters in sea bass (*Dicentrarchus labrax*) fed mannan oligosaccharides (MOS). Aquaculture Nutrition 17, 223–233. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2095.2009.00730.x
Torrecillas, S. , Makol, A. , Caballero, M.J. , Montero, D. , Robaina, L. , Real, F. , Sweetman, J. , Tort, L. , & Izquierdo, M.S. (2007) Immune stimulation and improved infection resistance in European sea bass (*Dicentrarchus labrax*) fed mannan oligosaccharides. Fish &Shellfish Immunology 23, 969–981. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2007.03.007
Tsai, C-Y. , Chi,C-C. , & Liu C-H. (2019) The growth and apparent digestibility of white shrimp, *Litopenaeus vannamei*, are increased with the probiotic, *Bacillus subtilis* . 10.1111/are.14022
Ullah, A. , Zuberi, A. , Ahmad, M. , Bashir, A. , Younus, N. , *et al.* (2018) Dietary administration of the commercially available probiotics enhanced the survival, growth, and innate immune responses in Mori (*Cirrhinus mrigala*) in a natural earthen polyculture system. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 72, 266–272.
Utiswannakul, P. , Sangchai, S. , & Rengpipat, S. (2011) Enhanced growth of black tiger shrimp Penaeus monodon by dietary supplementation with Bacillus (BP11) as a probiotic. Journal of Aquatic Research and Development 3(4), 2155–9546.

Valdez, A. , Yepiz-Plascencia, G. , Ricca, E. , & Olmos, J. (2014) First *Litopenaeus vannamei* WSSV 100% oral vaccination protection using CotC: Vp26 fusion protein displayed on *Bacillussubtilis* spore surface. Journal of Applied Microbiology 117, 347–357. doi: 10.1111/jam.12550
Valipour, A. , Nedaei, S. , Noori, A. , Khanipour, A.A. , & Hoseinifar, S.H. (2019) Dietary *Lactobacillus plantarum* affected on some immune parameters, air-exposure stress response, intestinal microbiota, digestive enzyme activity and performance of narrow clawed cray fish (*Astacus leptodactylus*, Eschscholtz). Aquaculture 504, 121–130.
Van Doan, H. , Hoseinifar, S.H. , Khanongnuch, C. , Kanpiengjai, A. , Unban, K. , & Srichaiyo, S. (2018) Host-associated probiotics boosted mucosal and serum immunity, disease resistance and growth performance of Nile tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*). Aquaculture 491, 94–100. doi: 10.1016/ j.aquaculture.2018.03.019
Van Doan, H.V. , Soltani, M. , & Ringø, E. (2021) *In vitro* antagonistic effect and *in vivo* protective efficacy of Gram-positive probiotics versus Gram-negative bacterial pathogens in finfish and shellfish. Aquaculture 538, 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2021.736581
van Hai, N. , Buller, N. , & Fotedar, R. (2009) Effects of probiotics (*Pseudomonas synxantha* and *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*) on the growth, survival and immune parameters of juvenile western king prawns (*Penaeus latisulcatus Kishinouye*, 1896). Aquaculture Research 40, 590–602. 10.1111/j.1365-2109.2008.02135.x.
Varela-Granados, Y. , Frías-Gómez, S.A. , Harnández-Harnández, L.H. , Powell, M.S. , & Vega-Villasante, F. (2021) Effects of mannan oligosaccharides and fructooligosaccharides on the growth and nonspecific immune responses of juvenile freshwater prawn *Macrobrachium acanthurus* . Latin American Journal of Aquatic Research 49, 299–306. doi: 10.3856/vol49-issue2-fulltext-2586
Vaseeharan, B. , & Ramasamy, P. (2003) Control of pathogenic *Vibrio* spp. by *Bacillus subtilis*, a possible probiotic treatment for black tiger shrimp *Penaeus monodon* . Letters of Applied Microbiology 36, 83–87.
Veiga, P.T.N. , Owatari, M.S. , Nunes, A.L. , Rodrigues, R.A. , Kasai, R.Y.D. , Fernandes, C.E. , & Campos, C.M. (2020) *Bacillus subtilis* C-3102 improves biomass gain, innate defense, and intestinal absorption surface of native Brazilian hybrid surubim (*Pseudoplatystoma corruscans x P. reticulatum*). Aquaculture International. doi: 10.1007/s10499-020-00519-y
Venkatalakshmi S. , & Ebanasar J. (2015) Immunostimulatory effect of *Lactobacillus sporogenes* on the nonspecific defense mechanisms of *Oreochromismossambicus* (Peters). International Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Studies, 2(4): 362–369.
Vinderola, G. , Matar, C. , & Perdigon, G. (2019) Role of intestinal epithelial cells in immune effects mediated by gram-positive probiotic bacteria: involvement of toll-like receptors. Clinical Diagnostic Laboratory of Immunology 12 (9), 1075–10784. doi.org/10.1128/ CDLI.12.9.1075-1084.2005.
Vogeley, J.L. , Interaminense, J.A. , Buarque D.S. , da Silva, S.M.B.C. , Coimbra, M.R.M. , Peixoto, S.M. , & Soares, R.B. (2019) Growth and immune gene expression of Litopenaeus vannamei fed Bacillus subtilis and Bacillus circulans supplemented diets and challenged with Vibrio parahaemolyticus. Aquaculture International, 27,1451–1464.
Wang, C. , Liu, Y. , Sun, G. , Li, X. , & Liu, Z. Growth, immune response, antioxidant capability, and disease resistance of juvenile Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.) fed *Bacillus velezensis* V4 and *Rhodotorula mucilaginosa* compound. Aquaculture, 500, 65–74 (2019).
Wang, H. , Wang, C. , Tang, Y. , Sun, B. , Huang, J. , & Song, X. (2018) *Pseudoalteromonas* probiotics as potential biocontrol agents improve the survival of Penaeus vannamei challenged with acute hepatopancreatic necrosis disease (AHPND)-causing *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* . Aquaculture, 494, 30–36.
Wang, Y.B. (2007) Effect of probiotics on growth performance and digestive enzyme activity of the shrimp *Penaeus vannamei* . Aquaculture, 269, 259–264.
Wee, W. , Abdul Hamid, N.K. , Mat, K. , Raja Khalif, R.I.K. , Rusli, N.D. , Rahman, M.M. , Kabir, M.A. , & Wei, L.S. (2022) The effects of mixed prebiotics in aquaculture: A review. 10.1016/j.aaf.2022.02.005
Wei, C. , Luo, K. , Wang, M. , Li, Y. , Pan, M. , Xie, Y. , Qin, G. , Liu, Y. , Li, L. , Liu, Q. , & Tian, X. (2022) Evaluation of potential probiotic properties of a strain of *Lactobacillus plantarum* for shrimp farming: From beneficial functions to safety assessment. Front. Microbiol. 13, 854131. doi: 10.3389/fmicb.2022.854131
Welker, T.L. , Lim, C. , Yildirim-Aksoy, M. , & Klesius, P.H. (2012) Effect of short-term feeding duration of diets containing commercial wholecell yeast or yeast subcomponents on immune function and disease resistance in channel catfish, *Ictalurus punctatus* . Journal of Animal Physiology and Animal Nutrition 96, 159–171. doi: 10.1111/j.1439-0396.2011.01127.x
Widanarni, W. , Putri, F.N. , & Rahman, R. (2019) Growth performance of white shrimp *Litopenaeus vannamei* fed with various dosages of prebiotic honey. IOP Conference Series: Earth and Environmental Science 278, 012079. doi: 10.1088/1755-1315/278/1/012079
Widanarni, W. , Taufik, A. , Yuhana, M. , & Ekasari, J. (2019) Dietary mannan oligosaccharides positively affect the growth, digestive enzyme activity, immunity and resistance against*Vibrio harveyi* of Pacific White Shrimp (*Litopenaeusvannamei*) larvae. Turkish Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 19, 271–278. doi: 10.4194/1303-2712-v19_4_01
Won, S. , Hamidoghli, A. , Choi, W. , Bae, J. , Jang, W.J. , & Lee, B.S.C. (2020b). Evaluation of potential probiotics *Bacillus subtilis* WB60, *Pediococcus pentosaceus*, and *Lactococcus lactis* on growth performance, immune response, gut histology and immune-related genes in whiteleg shrimp, *Litopenaeus vannamei* . Microorganisms 8(2), 1–15. doi: 10.3390/microorganisms8020281.
Won, S. , Hamidoghli, A. , Choi, W. , Park, Y. , Jang, W.J. , Kong, I.S. , & Bai, S.C. (2020a). Effects of *Bacillus subtilis* WB60 and *Lactococcus lactis* on growth, immune responses, histology and gene expression in Nile tilapia, *Oreochromis niloticus* . Microorganisms 8(1), 1–15. doi: 10.3390/microorganisms8010067.
Wu, H-J , Sun, L-B , Li, C-B , Li, Z-Z , Zhang, Z. , Wen, X-B , Hu, Z. , Zhang, Y-L , & Li, S-K (2014) Enhancement of the immune response and protection against *Vibrio parahaemolyticus* by indigenous probiotic Bacillus strains in mud crab (*Scylla paramamosain*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 41, 156–162.
Wu, Z.-Q. , Jiang, C. , Ling, F. , & Wang, G.-X. (2015) Effects of Dietary Supplementation of Intestinal autochthonous bacteria on the innate immunity and disease resistance of grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon Idellus*). Aquaculture 438, 105–114. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2014.12.041
Xia, Y. , Lu, M. , Chen, G. et al (2018) Effects of dietary *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* JCM1136 and *Lactococcus lactis* subsp. lactis JCM5805 on the growth, intestinal microbiota, morphology, immune response and disease resistance of juvenile Nile tilapia *Oreochromis niloticus* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 76, 368–379. doi.org/10.1016/j.fsi.2018.03.020
Xia, Z. , Zhu, M. , & Zhang, Y. (2014) Effects of the probiotic *Arthrobacter* sp. CW9 on the survival and immune status of white shrimp (*Penaeus vannamei*). Letters of Applied Microbiology 58, 60–64.
Xiaolong, G. , Mo, Z. , Xian, L. , Yin, H. , Fucun, W. , & Ying, L. (2018) The effects of feeding *Lactobacillus pentosus* on growth, immunity, and disease resistance in *Haliotis discus* hannai Ino. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 78, 42–51.

Xu, B. , Zhang, G. , Wang, L. , Sagada, G. , Zhang, J. , Shao, Q. (2021) The influence of dietary β1,3glucan on growth performance, feed utilization, antioxidative and immune status of Pacific white shrimp, *Litopenaeus vannamei* . Aquaculture Nutrition 27, 1590–1601. doi: 10.1111/anu.13299

Xu, Z. , Parra, D. , Gomez, D. , Salinas, I. , Zhang, Y-A. , Jørgensen, L.G. , Heinecke, R.D. , Buchmann, K. , LaPatra, S. , & Sunyer, J.O. (2013) Teleost skin, an ancient mucosal surface that elicits gut-like immune responses. The Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 110, 13097–13102. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1304319110

Yamamoto, F.Y. , Sutili, F.J. , Hume, M. , & Gatlin III, D.M. (2018) The effect of β-1,3-glucan derived from *Euglena gracilis* (AlgamuneTM) on the innate immunological responses of Nile tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus* L.). Journal of Fish Diseases 41, 1579–1588. doi: 10.1111/jfd.12871

Yang, Q. , Lü, Y. , Zhang, M. , Gong, Y. , Li, Z. , Tran, N.T. , He, Y. , Zhu, C. , Lu, Y. , Zhang, Y. , & Li, S. (2019) Lactic acid bacteria, Enterococcus faecalis Y17 and *Pediococcus pentosaceus* G11, improved growth performance, and immunity of mud crab (*Scylla paramamosain*). Fish Shellfish Immunol 93, 135–143.

Yanuhar, U. , Junirahma, N.S. , Susilowati, K. , Caesar, N.R. , & Musa, M. (2019) Effects of probiotic treatment on histopathology of Koi carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) infected by *Myxobolus* sp. J Phys: Conf Ser, 1374, 12051. doi: 10.1088/1742-6596/1374/1/012051

Yao, Y.-Y. , Chen, D.-D. , Cui, Z.-W. , Zhang, X.-Y. , Zhou, Y.-Y. , Guo, X. , Li, A.-H. , & Zhang, Y.-A. (2019) Oral vaccination of tilapia against Streptococcus agalactiae using Bacillus subtilis spores expressing Sip. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 86, 999–1008. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.12.060.

Yarahmadi, P. , Miandare, H.K. , Farahmand, H. , Mirvaghefi, A. , & Hoseinifar, S.H. (2014) Dietary fermentable fiber upregulated immune related genes expression, increased innate immune response, and resistance of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) against *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 41, 326–331. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2014.09.007

Ye, J.D. , Wang, K. , Li, F.D. , & Sun, Y.Z. (2011) Single or combined effects of fructo- and mannan oligosaccharide supplements and *Bacillus clausii*on the growth, feed utilization, body composition, digestive enzyme activity, innate immune response, and lipid metabolism of the Japanese flounder *Paralichthys olivaceus* . Aquaculture Nutrition 17, e902–e911. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2095.2011.00863.x

Yeh, S.P. , Y.L. Shiu , Z.L. Huang , & C.H. Liu (2014) Effects of diets supplemented with either individual or combined probiotics, *Bacillus subtilis* E20 and *Lactobacillus plantarum* 7-40, on the immune response and disease resistance of the mud crab, *Scylla paramamosain* (Estampador). Aquaculture Research 45, 1164–1175 10.1111/are.12061.

Yi, C.-C. , Liu, C.-H. , Chuang, K.-P. , Chang, Y.T. , & Hu, S.-Y. (2019) A potential probiotic *Chromobacterium* aquaticum with bacteriocin-like activity enhances the expression of indicator genes associated with nutrient metabolism, growth performance and innate immunity against pathogen infections in Zebrafish (*Danio Rerio*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 93, 124–134. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.07.042

Yi, Y. , Zhang, Z. , Zhao, F. , Liu, H. , Yu, L. , Zha, J. , & Wang, G. (2018) Probiotic potential of *Bacillus velezensis* JW: Antimicrobial activity against fish pathogenic bacteria and immune enhancement effects on *Carassius auratus* . Fish Shellfish Immunol, 78, 322–330.

Yılmaz, S. , Ergun, S. , Yigit, M. , & Çelik, E.S. (2019) Effect of combination of dietary *Bacillus subtilis* and *trans*cinnamic acid on innate immune responses and resistance of rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* to *Yersinia ruckeri* . Aquaculture Research 51(2), 441–454. doi: 10.1111/are.14379

Yones, A.M.A.S. , Eissa, I.A.M.M. , Ghobashy, M.A. , & Marzok, S.S. (2019) Effects of dietary inulin as prebiotic on growth performance, immuno-haematological indices and ectoparasitic infection of fingerlings Nile Tilapia, *Oreochromis niloticus* . The Egyptian Journal of Histology 43, 88–103. doi: 10.21608/EJH.2019.15495.1152

Yu, H.H. , Han, F. , Xue, M. , Wang, J. , Tacon, P. , Zheng, Y.H. , Wu, X.F. , & Zhang, Y.J. (2014) Efficacy and tolerance of yeast cell wall as an immunostimulant in the diet of Japanese seabass (*Lateolabrax japonicus*). Aquaculture 432, 217–224.doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2014.04.043

Zaineldin, A.I. , Hegazi, S. , Koshio, S. , Ishikawa, M. , Bakr, A. , El-Keredy, A.M. , & Yukun, Z. (2018) *Bacillus subtilis* as probiotic candidate for red sea bream: growth performance, oxidative status, and immune response traits. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 79, 303–312. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.05.035

Zhang, Y-A. , Salinas, I. , Li, J. , Parra, D. , Bjork, S. , Xu, Z. , LaPatra, S.E. , Bartholomew, J. , & Sunyer, J.O. (2010) IgT, a primitive immunoglobulin class specialized in mucosal immunity. Nature Immunology 11, 827–835. doi:10.1038/ni.1913

Zhao, L.L. , Liu, M. , Ge, J.W. , Qiao, X.Y. , Li, Y.J. , & Liu, D.Q. (2012) Expression of infectious pancreatic necrosis virus (IPNV) VP2-VP3 fusion protein in *Lactobacillus casei* and immunogenicity in rainbow trouts. Vaccine, 30(10), 1823–1829. doi:10.1016/j.vaccine.2011.12.132

Zhao, C. , Zhu, J. , Hu, J. , Dong, X. , Sun, L. , Zhang, X. , & Miao, S. (2019) Effects of dietary *Bacillus pumilus* on growth performance, innate immunity and digestive enzymes of giant freshwater prawns (*Macrobrachium rosenbergii*). Aquatic Nutrition 25, 712–720. doi.org/10.1111/anu.12894.

Zheng, C.N. , & Wang, W. (2017) Effects of *Lactobacillus pentosus* on the growth performance, digestive enzyme and disease resistance of white shrimp, *Litopenaeus vannamei* (Boone, 1931). Aquatic Research 48, 2767–2777. 10.1111/ are.13110.

Zheng, Z.L. , Wang, K.Y. , Gatlin III, D.M. , & Ye, J.M. (2011) Evaluation of the ability of GroBiotic®-A to enhance growth, muscle composition, immune responses, and resistance against *Aeromonas hydrophila*in Nile tilapia, *Oreochromis niloticus* . Journal of the World Aquaculture Society 42, 549–557. doi: 10.1111/j.1749-7345.2011.00497.x

Zhou, Q-C. , Buentello, J.A. , & Gatlin III, D.M. (2010) Effects of dietary prebiotics on growth performance, immune response and intestinal morphology of red drum (*Sciaenops ocellatus*). Aquaculture 309, 253–257. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2010.09.003

Zhou, S. , Song, D. , Zhou, X. , Mao, X. , Zhou, X. , Wang, S. , Wei, J. , Huang, Y. , Wang, W. , Xiao, S.M. , & Qin, Q. (2019) Characterization of *Bacillus subtilis* from gastrointestinal tract of hybrid Hulong grouper (*Epinephelus fuscoguttatus × E. lanceolatus*) and its effects as probiotic additives. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 84, 1115–1124. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.10.058

Zhou, X.X. , Tian, Z.Q. , Wang, Y.B. , & Li, W.F. (2010) Effect of Treatment With Probiotics as Water Additives on Tilapia (*Oreochromis Niloticus*) Growth performance and immune response. Fish Physiology & Biochemistry 36 (3), 501–509. doi: 10.1007/s10695-009-9320-z

Zokaeifar, H. , Babaei, N. , Saad, C.R. , Kamarudin, M.S. , Sijam, K. , & Balcazar, J.L. (2014) Administration of *Bacillus subtilis* strains in the rearing water enhances the water quality, growth performance, immune response, and resistance against *Vibrio harveyi* infection in juvenile white shrimp, *Litopenaeus vannamei* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 36, 68–74.

Zokaeifar, H. , Balcazar, J.L. , Saad, C.R. , Kamarudin, M.S. , Sijam, K. , Arshad, A. , & Nejat, N. (2012) Effects of *Bacillus subtilis* on the growth performance, digestive enzymes, immune gene expression and disease resistance of white shrimp, *Litopenaeus vannamei* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology 33, 683–689. 10.1016/j.fsi.2012.05.027.

Immunomodulation in Fish Through Nutrients, Antioxidants and Hormones

Abdel-Latif, H. M. , Abdel-Tawwab, M. , Khalil, R. H. , Metwally, A. A. , Shakweer, M. S. , Ghetas, H. A. , & Khallaf, M. A. (2021). Black soldier fly (*Hermetia illucens*) larvae meal in diets of European seabass: Effects on antioxidative capacity, non-specific immunity, transcriptomic responses, and resistance to the challenge with *Vibrio alginolyticus* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 111, 111–118.

Abo-Al-Ela, H. G. , El-Nahas, A. F. , Mahmoud, S. , & Ibrahim, E. M. (2017). The extent to which immunity, apoptosis and detoxification gene expression interact with 17 alpha-methyltestosterone. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 60, 289–298.

Adom, K.K. , & Liu, R.H. (2002). Antioxidant activity of grains. Journal of Agricultural and Food Chemistry, 50, 6182–6187

Aguilar-Ballester, M. , Herrero-Cervera, A. , Vinué, Á. , Martínez-Hervás, S. , & González-Navarro, H. (2020). Impact of cholesterol metabolism in immune cell function and atherosclerosis. Nutrients, 12(7), 2021.

Amar, E. C. , Kiron, V. , Satoh, S. , & Watanabe, T. (2001). Influence of various dietary synthetic carotenoids on bio-defence mechanisms in rainbow trout*, Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum). Aquaculture Research, 32, 162–173.

Amar, E. C. , Kiron, V. , Satoh, S. , Okamoto, N. , & Watanabe, T. (2000). Effects of dietary βcarotene on the immune response of rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss* . Fisheries Science, 66(6), 1068–1075.

Anderson, R. A. , Roussel, A. M. , Zouari, N. , Mahjoub, S. , Matheau, J. M. , & Kerkeni, A. (2001). Potential antioxidant effects of zinc and chromium supplementation in people with type 2 diabetes mellitus. Journal of the American College of Nutrition, 20(3), 212–218.

Baschant, U. , & Tuckermann, J. (2010). The role of the glucocorticoid receptor in inflammation and immunity. The Journal of Steroid Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, 120(2–3), 69–75.

Biga, P. R. , Peterson, B. C. , Schelling, G. T. , Hardy, R. W. , Cain, K. D. , Overturf, K. , & Ott, T. L. (2005). Bovine growth hormone treatment increased IGF-I in circulation and induced the production of a specific immune response in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Aquaculture, 246(1–4), 437–445.

Boglione, C. , Gisbert, E. , Gavaia, P. , Witten, P. E. , Moren, M. , Fontagné, S. , & Koumoundouros, G. (2013). Skeletal anomalies in reared European fish larvae and juveniles. Part 2: main typologies, occurrences and causative factors. Reviews in Aquaculture, 5, S121–S167. 10.1111/raq.12016

Booman, M. , Forster, I. , Vederas, J. C. , Groman, D. B. , & Jones, S. R.M. (2018). Soybean meal-induced enteritis in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) and Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) but not in pink salmon (*O. gorbuscha*), Aquaculture, 483, 2018, 238–243.

Borghetti, P. , Saleri, R. , Mocchegiani, E. , Corradi, A. , & Martelli, P. (2009). Infection, immunity and the neuroendocrine response. Veterinary Immunology and Immunopathology, 130(3–4), 141–162.

Brogden, G. , Krimmling, T. , Adamek, M. , Naim, H. Y. , Steinhagen, D. , & von Köckritz-Blickwede, M. (2014). The effect of β-glucan on formation and functionality of neutrophil extracellular traps in carp (*Cyprinus carpio L*.). Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 44(2), 280–285.

Brogden, G. , von Köckritz-Blickwede, M. , Adamek, M. , Reuner, F. , Jung-Schroers, V. , Naim, H. Y. , & Steinhagen, D. (2012). β-Glucan protects neutrophil extracellular traps against degradation by *Aeromonas hydrophila* in carp (*Cyprinus carpio*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 33(4), 1060–1064.

Buchtíková, S. , Šimková, A. , Rohlenová, K. , Flajšhans, M. , Lojek, A. , Lilius, E. M. , & Hyršl, P. (2011). The seasonal changes in innate immunity of the common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*). Aquaculture, 318(1–2), 169–175.

Buentello, J. A. , & Gatlin III, D. M. (2000). The dietary arginine requirement of channel catfish (*Ictalurus punctatus*) is influenced by endogenous synthesis of arginine from glutamic acid. Aquaculture, 188(3–4), 311–321.

Burgos-Aceves, M. A. , Cohen, A. , Smith, Y. , & Faggio, C. (2016). Estrogen regulation of gene expression in the teleost fish immune system. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 58, 42–49.

Calduch-Giner, J. A. , Sitjà-Bobadilla, A. , Alvarez-Pellitero, P. , & Pérez-Sánchez, J. (1995). Evidence for a direct action of GH on haemopoietic cells of a marine fish, the gilthead sea bream (*Sparus aurata*). Journal of Endocrinology, 146(3), 459–467.

Carr, A. C. , & Maggini, S. (2017). Vitamin C and immune function. Nutrients, 9(11), 1211.

Castets, P. , Bertrand, A. T. , Beuvin, M. , Ferry, A. , Le Grand, F. , Castets, M. , Chazot, G. , Rederstorff, M. , Krol, A. , Lescure, A. , Romero, N. B. , Guicheney, P. , & Allamand, V. (2011). Satellite cell loss and impaired muscle regeneration in selenoprotein N deficiency. Human Molecular Genetics, 20(4), 694–704.

Chaves-Pozo, E. , Pelegrín, P. , Mulero, V. , Meseguer, J. , & García Ayala, A. (2003). A role for acidophilic granulocytes in the testis of the gilthead seabream (*Sparus aurata L., Teleostei*). Journal of Endocrinology, 179(2), 165–174.

Chen, D. , & Ainsworth, A. J. (1992). Glucan administration potentiates immune defence mechanisms of channel catfish, *Ictalurus punctatus Rafinesque* . Journal of Fish Diseases, 15(4), 295–304.

Chen, G. , Liu, Y. , Jiang, J. , Jiang, W. , Kuang, S. , Tang, L. , Zhang, Y. A. , Zhou, X. , & Feng, L. (2015). Effect of dietary arginine on the immune response and gene expression in head kidney and spleen following infection of Jian carp with *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 44(1), 195–202.

Chen, H. Y. , Leu, Y. T. , & Roelants, I. (1992). Quantification of arginine requirements of juvenile marine shrimp, *Penaeus monodon*, using microencapsulated arginine. Marine Biology, 114(2), 229–233.

Chen, Y. P. , Jiang, W. D. , Liu, Y. , Jiang, J. , Wu, P. , Zhao, J. , Kuang, X.Y. , Tang, L. , Tang, W. N. , Zhang, Y. A. , Zhou, X. Q. , & Feng, L. (2015). Exogenous phospholipids supplementation improves growth and modulates immune response and physical barrier referring to NF-κB, TOR, MLCK and Nrf2 signaling factors in the intestine of juvenile grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idella*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 47(1), 46–62.

Cheng, C. H. , Guo, Z. X. , Ye, C. X. , & Wang, A. L. (2018). Effect of dietary astaxanthin on the growth performance, non-specific immunity, and antioxidant capacity of pufferfish (*Takifugu obscurus*) under high temperature stress. Fish physiology and Biochemistry, 44(1), 209–218.

Chew, B. P. , & Park, J. S. (2004). Carotenoid action on the immune response. The Journal of Nutrition, 134(1), 257S–261S. 10.1093/jn/134.1.257S

Cortés, R. , Teles, M. , Trídico, R. , Acerete, L. , & Tort, L. (2013). Effects of cortisol administered through slow-release implants on innate immune responses in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). International Journal of Genomics, 2013.

Cuesta, A. , Ortuño, J. , Rodriguez, A. , Esteban, M. A. , & Meseguer, J. (2002). Changes in some innate defence parameters of seabream (*Sparus aurata L.*) induced by retinol acetate. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 13(4), 279–291.

Daniel, N. , Muralidhar, A. P. , Srivastava, P. P. , Jain, K. K. , Prasad, K. P. , & Ranjan, A. (2021). Effect of vitamin C on immune and stress responses in striped catfish, *Pangasianodon hypophthalmus* juveniles under preand postchallenge with *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Aquaculture Research, 52(12), 6444–6452.

Dawood, M. A. , Zommara, M. , Eweedah, N. M. , Helal, A. I. , & Aboel-Darag, M. A. (2020). The potential role of nano-selenium and vitamin C on the performances of Nile tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*). Environmental Science and Pollution Research, 27(9), 9843–9852.

Deng, J. , Kang, B. , Tao, L. , Rong, H. , & Zhang, X. (2013). Effects of dietary cholesterol on antioxidant capacity, non-specific immune response, and resistance to Aeromonas hydrophila in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) fed soybean meal-based diets. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 34(1), 324–331.

Ding, Z. , Zhang, Y. , Ye, J. , Du, Z. , & Kong, Y. (2015). An evaluation of replacing fish meal with fermented soybean meal in the diet of *Macrobrachium nipponense*: Growth, nonspecific immunity, and resistance to *Aeromonas hydrophila* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 44(1), 295–301.

Dossou, S. , Koshio, S. , Ishikawa, M. , Yokoyama, S. , Dawood, M. A. , El Basuini, M. F. , El Hais, A. M. , & Olivier, A. (2018). Effect of partial replacement of fish meal by fermented rapeseed meal on growth, immune response and oxidative condition of red sea bream juvenile, *Pagrus major* . Aquaculture, 490, 228–235.

Du, B. , Meenu, M. , Liu, H. , & Xu, B. (2019). A Concise Review on the Molecular Structure and Function Relationship of β-Glucan. International Journal of Molecular Sciences, 20(16), 4032. 10.3390/ijms20164032

El-Sayed, A. F. M. , & Izquierdo, M. (2022). The importance of vitamin E for farmed fish—A review. Reviews in Aquaculture, 14(2), 688–703.

Falco, A. , Miest, J. J. , Pionnier, N. , Pietretti, D. , Forlenza, M. , Wiegertjes, G. F. , & Hoole, D. (2014). B-Glucan-supplemented diets increase poly (I: C)-induced gene expression of Mx, possibly via Tlr3-mediated recognition mechanism in common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 36(2), 494–502.

Feng, L. , Chen, Y. P. , Jiang, W. D. , Liu, Y. , Jiang, J. , Wu, P. ,… … & Zhou, X. Q. (2016). Modulation of immune response, physical barrier and related signaling factors in the gills of juvenile grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idella*) fed supplemented diet with phospholipids. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 48, 79–93.

Feng, L. , Li, W. , Liu, Y. , Jiang, W. D. , Kuang, S. Y. , Jiang, J. , Tang, L. , Wu, P. , Tang, W. N. , Zhang, Y.A. , & Zhou, X. Q. (2015). Dietary phenylalanine-improved intestinal barrier health in young grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idella*) is associated with increased immune status and regulated gene expression of cytokines, tight junction proteins, antioxidant enzymes and related signalling molecules. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 45(2), 495–509.

Fernández, I. , López-Joven, C. , Andree, K. B. , Roque, A. , & Gisbert, E. (2015). Vitamin A supplementation enhances Senegalese sole (*Solea senegalensis*) early juvenile's immunocompetence: new insights on potential underlying pathways. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 46(2), 703–709.

Fournier, V. , Gouillou-Coustans, M. F. , Metailler, R. , Vachot, C. , Guedes, M. J. , Tulli, F. Olivia-Teles, A. , Tibaldit, E. , & Kaushik, S. J. (2002). Protein and arginine requirements for maintenance and nitrogen gain in four teleosts. British Journal of Nutrition, 87(5), 459–469.

Franz, A. C. , Faass, O. , Köllner, B. , Shved, N. , Link, K. , Casanova, A. , Wenger, M. , D'Cotta, H. , Baroiller, J. F. , Ullrich, O. , Reinecke, M. , & Eppler, E. (2016). Endocrine and local IGF-I in the bony fish immune system. Biology, 5(1), 9.

Galaz, G. B. , Kim, S. S. , & Lee, K. J. (2010). Effects of different dietary vitamin E levels on growth performance, non-specific immune responses, and disease resistance against Vibrio anguillarum in parrot fish (*Oplegnathus fasciatus*). Asian-Australasian Journal of Animal Sciences, 23(7), 916–923.

Gantner, B. N. , Simmons, R. M. , Canavera, S. J. , Akira, S. , & Underhill, D. M. (2003). Collaborative induction of inflammatory responses by dectin-1 and Toll-like receptor 2. The Journal of Experimental Medicine, 197(9), 1107–1117.

Gao, X. J. , Tang, B. , Liang, H. H. , Yi, L. , & Wei, Z. G. (2019). Selenium deficiency induced an inflammatory response by the HSP60-TLR2-MAPKs signalling pathway in the liver of carp. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 87, 688–694.

Gao, Y. , Feng, H. C. , Walder, K. , Bolton, K. , Sunderland, T. , Bishara, N. , Quick, M. , Kantham, L. , & Collier, G. R. (2004). Regulation of the selenoprotein SelS by glucose deprivation and endoplasmic reticulum stress–SelS is a novel glucoseregulated protein. FEBS Letters, 563(1–-3), 185–190.

Gopalakannan, A. , & Arul, V. (2010). Enhancement of the innate immune system and diseaseresistant activity in *Cyprinus carpio* by oral administration of βglucan and whole cell yeast. Aquaculture Research, 41(6), 884–892.

Gu, J. , Liang, H. , Ge, X. , Xia, D. , Pan, L. , Mi, H. , & Ren, M. (2022). A study of the potential effect of yellow mealworm (*Tenebrio molitor*) substitution for fish meal on growth, immune and antioxidant capacity in juvenile largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 120, 214–221.

Han, B. , Baruah, K. , Cox, E. , Vanrompay, D. , & Bossier, P. (2020). Structure-Functional Activity Relationship of β-Glucans From the Perspective of Immunomodulation: A Mini-Review. Frontiers in Immunology, 11, 658. 10.3389/fimmu.2020.00658

Harris, J. , & Bird, D. J. (2000). Modulation of the fish immune system by hormones. Veterinary Immunology and Immunopathology, 77, 163–176.

Hernandez, L. H. H. , Teshima, S. I. , Koshio, S. , Ishikawa, M. , Tanaka, Y. , & Alam, M. S. (2007). Effects of vitamin A on growth, serum anti-bacterial activity and transaminase activities in the juvenile Japanese flounder, *Paralichthys olivaceus* . Aquaculture, 262(2–4), 444–450.

Herre, J. , Gordon, S. , & Brown, G. D. (2004). Dectin-1 and its role in the recognition of β-glucans by macrophages. Molecular Immunology, 40(12), 869–876.

Hogstrand, C. , Balesaria, S. , & Glover, C. N. (2002). Application of genomics and proteomics for study of the integrated response to zinc exposure in a non-model fish species, the rainbow trout. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part B: Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, 133(4), 523–535.

Holm, H. J. , Wadsworth, S. , Bjelland, A. K. , Krasnov, A. , Evensen, Ø. , & Skugor, S. (2016). Dietary phytochemicals modulate skin gene expression profiles and result in reduced lice counts after experimental infection in Atlantic salmon. Parasites & Vectors, 9(1), 1–14.
Hou, S. , Li, J. , Huang, J. , & Cheng, Y. (2022). Effects of dietary phospholipid and cholesterol levels on antioxidant capacity, nonspecial immune response and intestinal microflora of juvenile female crayfish, *Procambarus clarkii* . Aquaculture Reports, 25, 101245.
Hou, Y. , Suzuki, Y. , & Aida, K. (1999). Effects of steroids on the antibody producing activity of lymphocytes in rainbow trout. Fisheries Science, 65(6), 850–855.
Hu, Y. , Feng, L. , Jiang, W. , Wu, P. , Liu, Y. , Kuang, S. , Tang, L. , & Zhou, X. (2021). Lysine deficiency impaired growth performance and immune response and aggravated inflammatory response of the skin, spleen and head kidney in grown-up grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idella*). Animal Nutrition, 7(2), 556–568.
Iddir, M. , Brito, A. , Dingeo, G. , Fernandez Del Campo, S. S. , Samouda, H. , La Frano, M. R. , & Bohn, T. (2020). Strengthening the immune system and reducing inflammation and oxidative stress through diet and nutrition: considerations during the COVID-19 crisis. Nutrients, 12(6), 1562. 10.3390/nu12061562
Jalili, R. , Tukmechi, A. , Agh, N. , Noori, F. , & Ghasemi, A. (2013). Replacement of dietary fish meal with plant sources in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) effect on growth performance, immune responses, blood indices and disease resistance. Iranian Journal of Fisheries Science, 12 (3), 577–591
Jeay, S. , Sonenshein, G. E. , Postel-Vinay, M. C. , Kelly, P. A. , & Baixeras, E. (2002). Growth hormone can act as a cytokine controlling survival and proliferation of immune cells: new insights into signaling pathways. Molecular and Cellular Endocrinology, 188(1–2), 1–7.
Jung-Schroers, V. , Adamek, M. , Harris, S. , Syakuri, H. , Jung, A. , Irnazarow, I. , & Steinhagen, D. (2018). Response of the intestinal mucosal barrier of carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) to a bacterial challenge by *Aeromonas hydrophila* intubation after feeding with β-1, 3/1, 6-glucan. Journal of Fish Diseases, 41(7), 1077–1092.
Kajita, Y. , Sakai, M. , Kobayashi, M. , & Kawauchi, H. (1992). Enhancement of non-specific cytotoxic activity of leucocytes in rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss* injected with growth hormone. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 2(2), 155–157.
Kamalam, B.S. , Medale, F. , & Panserat, S. (2017). Utilisation of dietary carbohydrates in farmed fishes: New insights on influencing factors, biological limitations and future strategies. Aquaculture, 467, 3–27. 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2016.02.007
Kany, S. , Vollrath, J. T. , & Relja, B. (2019). Cytokines in Inflammatory Disease. International Journal of Molecular Sciences, 20(23), 6008. 10.3390/ijms20236008
Kim, S.-S. , Galaz, G.-B. , Pham, M.-A. , Jang, J.-W. , Oh, D.-H. , Yeo, I.-K. , Lee, K.-J. , (2009). Effects of dietary supplementation of a meju, fermented soybean meal, and *Aspergillus oryzae* for juvenile parrot fish (*Oplegnathus fasciatus*). Asian-Australasian Journal of Animal Sciences, 22, 849–856.
Kiron, V. (2012). Fish immune system and its nutritional modulation for preventive health care. Animal Feed Science and Technology, 173(1–2), 111–133.
Kuang, S. Y. , Xiao, W. W. , Feng, L. , Liu, Y. , Jiang, J. , Jiang, W. D. , Hu, H. , Li, S. H. , Tang, L. , & Zhou, X. Q. (2012). Effects of graded levels of dietary methionine hydroxy analogue on immune response and antioxidant status of immune organs in juvenile Jian carp (*Cyprinus carpio var. Jian*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 32(5), 629–636.
Kühlwein, H. , Emery, M. J. , Rawling, M. D. , Harper, G. M. , Merrifield, D. L. , & Davies, S. J. (2013). Effects of a dietary β-(1, 3)(1, 6)-D-glucan supplementation on intestinal microbial communities and intestinal ultrastructure of mirror carp (*Cyprinus carpio L.*). Journal of Applied Microbiology, 115(5), 1091–1106.
Kühlwein, H. , Merrifield, D. L. , Rawling, M. D. , Foey, A. D. , & Davies, S. J. (2014). Effects of dietary β(1, 3)(1, 6)-D-glucan supplementation on growth performance, intestinal morphology and haematoimmunological profile of mirror carp (*Cyprinus carpio L.*). Journal of Animal Physiology and Animal Nutrition, 98(2), 279–289.
Kumar, N. , Chandan, N. K. , Gupta, S. K. , Bhushan, S. , & Patole, P. B. (2022). Omega-3 fatty acids effectively modulate growth performance, immune response, and disease resistance in fish against multiple stresses. Aquaculture, 547, 737506.
Kumar, N. , Krishnani, K. K. , Kumar, P. , Jha, A. K. , Gupta, S. K. , & Singh, N. P. (2017). Dietary zinc promotes immuno-biochemical plasticity and protects fish against multiple stresses. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 62, 184–194.
Lall, S. P. , & Lewis-McCrea, L. M. (2007). Role of nutrients in skeletal metabolism and pathology in fish—an overview. Aquaculture, 267(1–4), 3–19.
Larbi Ayisi, C. , Zhao, J. , & Wu, J. W. (2018). Replacement of fish oil with palm oil: Effects on growth performance, innate immune response, antioxidant capacity and disease resistance in Nile tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*). PLoS One, 13(4), e0196100.
Lavilla-Pitogo, C. R. , & Amar, E. C. (2010). Nutritional diseases. In G. D. Lio-Po & Y. Inui (Eds.), Health Management in Aquaculture (2nd ed., pp. 157–169). Tigbauan, Iloilo, Philippines: Aquaculture Department, Southeast Asian Fisheries Development Center
Leal, E. , Zarza, C. , & Tafalla, C. (2017). Effect of vitamin C on innate immune responses of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) leukocytes. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 67, 179–188.
Leedom, T. A. , Uchida, K. , Yada, T. , Richman III, N. H. , Byatt, J. C. , Collier, R. J. , Hirano, T. , & Grau, E. G. (2002). Recombinant bovine growth hormone treatment of tilapia: growth response, metabolic clearance, receptor binding and immunoglobulin production. Aquaculture, 207(3–4), 359–380.
Li, M. , Chen, L. , Qin, J. , Yu, N. , Chen, Y. , Ding, Z. , & Li, E. (2016). Growth, immune response and resistance to *Aeromonas hydrophila* of darkbarbel catfish *Pelteobagrus vachelli* fed diets with different linolenic acids, vitamins C and E levels. Aquaculture Nutrition, 22: 664–674. 10.1111/anu.12287
Li, P. , Yin, Y. L. , Li, D. , Kim, S. W. , & Wu, G. (2007). Amino acids and immune function. British Journal of Nutrition, 98(2), 237–252.
Liang, D. , Yang, Q. , Tan, B. , Dong, X. , Chi, S. , Liu, H. , & Zhang, S. (2020). Dietary vitamin A deficiency reduces growth performance, immune function of intestine, and alters tight junction proteins of intestine for juvenile hybrid grouper (*Epinephelus fuscoguttatus*♀ × *Epinephelus lanceolatus*♂). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 107, 346–356.
Lin, Z. , Han, F. , Lu, J. , Guo, J. , Qi, C. , Wang, C. , Xiao, S. , Bu, X. , Wang, X. , Qin, J. , & Chen, L. (2020). Influence of dietary phospholipid on growth performance, body composition, antioxidant capacity and lipid metabolism of Chinese mitten crab, *Eriocheir sinensis* . Aquaculture, 516, 734653.
Liu, B. , Wan, J. , Ge, X. , Xiea, J. , Zhou, Q. , Miao, L. , Ren, M. , & Pan, L. (2016). Effects of dietary Vitamin C on the physiological responses and disease resistance to pH stress and *Aeromonas hydrophila* infection of *Megalobrama amblycephala* . Turkish Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences, 16(2), 421–433.

Liu, F. , Qu, Y. K. , Wang, A. M. , Yu, Y. B. , Yang, W. P. , Lv, F. , & Nie, Q. (2019). Effects of carotenoids on the growth performance, biochemical parameters, immune responses and disease resistance of yellow catfish (*Pelteobagrus fulvidraco*) under high-temperature stress. Aquaculture, 503, 293–303.
Liu, T. , Zhang, L. , Joo, D. , & Sun, S. C. (2017). NF-κB signaling in inflammation. Signal transduction and targeted therapy, 2, 17023–. 10.1038/sigtrans.2017.23
Machado, M. , Azeredo, R. , Fontinha, F. , Fernández-Boo, S. , Conceição, L. E. , Dias, J. , & Costas, B. (2018). Dietary methionine improves the European seabass (*Dicentrarchus labrax*) immune status, inflammatory response, and disease resistance. Frontiers in Immunology, 9, 2672.
Machuca, C. , Méndez-Martínez, Y. , Reyes-Becerril, M. , & Angulo, C. (2022). Yeast β-Glucans as Fish Immunomodulators: A Review. Animals, 12(16), 2154.
Maita, M. , Maekawa, J. , Satoh, K. I. , Futami, K. , & Satoh, S. (2006). Disease resistance and hypocholesterolemia in yellowtail *Seriola quinqueradiata* fed a non-fishmeal diet. Fisheries Science, 72(3), 513–519.
Mansour, A. T. E. , Goda, A. A. , Omar, E. A. , Khalil, H. S. , & Esteban, M. Á. (2017). Dietary supplementation of organic selenium improves growth, survival, antioxidant and immune status of meagre, *Argyrosomus regius*, juveniles. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 68, 516–524.
Martínez-Álvarez, R.M. , Morales, A.E. , & Sanz, A. , (2005). Antioxidant defenses in fish: Biotic and abiotic factors. Reviews in fish biology and fisheries, 15, 75–88.
Maule, A. G. , & Schreck, C. B. (1990). Changes in numbers of leukocytes in immune organs of juvenile coho salmon after acute stress or cortisol treatment. Journal of Aquatic Animal Health, 2(4), 298–304.
Mazumder, A. , Dwivedi, A. , Plessis, J. Du . (2016). Sinigrin and its therapeutic benefits. Molecules 21, 1–11
Meena, D. K. , Das, P. , Kumar, S. , Mandal, S. C. , Prusty, A. K. , Singh, S. K. ,… … & Mukherjee, S. C. (2013). Beta-glucan: an ideal immunostimulant in aquaculture (a review). Fish Physiology and Biochemistry, 39(3), 431–457.
Miest, J. J. , & Hoole, D. (2015). Time and concentration dependency of MacroGard® induced apoptosis. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 42(2), 363–366.
Misra, C. K. , Das, B. K. , Mukherjee, S. C. , & Pattnaik, P. (2006). Effect of long term administration of dietary β-glucan on immunity, growth and survival of *Labeo rohita* fingerlings. Aquaculture, 255(1–4), 82–94.
Mohan, K. , Rajan, D. K. , Muralisankar, T. , Ganesan, A. R. , Sathishkumar, P. , & Revathi, N. (2022). Use of black soldier fly (*Hermetia illucens L.*) larvae meal in aquafeeds for a sustainable aquaculture industry: A review of past and future needs. Aquaculture, 738095.
Montero, D. , Grasso, V. , Izquierdo, M. S. , Ganga, R. , Real, F. , Tort, L. , Cabellaro, M.J. , & Acosta, F. (2008). Total substitution of fish oil by vegetable oils in gilthead sea bream (*Sparus aurata*) diets: effects on hepatic Mx expression and some immune parameters. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 24(2), 147–155.
Mudgil, D. (2017). The interaction between insoluble and soluble fiber. In Dietary Fiber for the Prevention of Cardiovascular Disease (pp. 35–59). Academic Press.
Nakano, T. , & Wiegertjes, G. (2020). Properties of Carotenoids in Fish Fitness: A Review. Marine Drugs, 18(11), 568. 10.3390/md18110568
Omoniyi, A. D. , & Ovie, I. A. (2018). Vitamin C: An important nutritional factor in fish diets. Journal of Agriculture and Ecology Research International, 16, 1–7.
Pacitti, D. , Lawan, M. M. , Feldmann, J. , Sweetman, J. , Wang, T. , Martin, S. A. M. , & Secombes, C. J. (2016). Impact of selenium supplementation on fish antiviral responses: a whole transcriptomic analysis in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) fed supranutritional levels of Sel-Plex®. BMC Genomics, 17(1), 1–26.
Pan, J. H. , Feng, L. , Jiang, W. D. , Wu, P. , Kuang, S. Y. , Tang, L. ,… … & Liu, Y. (2017). Vitamin E deficiency depressed fish growth, disease resistance, and the immunity and structural integrity of immune organs in grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idella*): Referring to NF-κB, TOR and Nrf2 signaling. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 60, 219–236.
Parata, L. , Mazumder, D. , Sammut, J. , & Egan, S. (2020). Diet type influences the gut microbiome and nutrient assimilation of Genetically Improved Farmed Tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*). PLoS One, 15(8), e0237775.
Paul, B. N. , Sarkar, S. , & Mohanty, S. N. (2004). Dietary vitamin E requirement of mrigal, *Cirrhinus mrigala* fry. Aquaculture, 242(1–4), 529–536.
Petit, J. , & Wiegertjes, G. F. (2016). Long-lived effects of administering β-glucans: Indications for trained immunity in fish. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 64, 93–102.
Pham, M. A. , & Lee, K. J. (2007). Effects of dietary cheongkukjang on liver superoxide dismutase Activity of Parrotfish *Oplegnathus fasciatus* . Journal of Aquaculture, 20(2), 132–139.
Pietretti, D. , Vera-Jimenez, N. I. , Hoole, D. , & Wiegertjes, G. F. (2013). Oxidative burst and nitric oxide responses in carp macrophages induced by zymosan, MacroGard® and selective dectin-1 agonists suggest recognition by multiple pattern recognition receptors. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 35(3), 847–857.
Pionnier, N. , Falco, A. , Miest, J. J. , Shrive, A. K. , & Hoole, D. (2014). Feeding common carp *Cyprinus carpio* with β-glucan supplemented diet stimulates C-reactive protein and complement immune acute phase responses following PAMPs injection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 39(2), 285–295.
Przybylska-Diaz, D. A. , Schmidt, J. G. , Vera-Jimenez, N. I. , Steinhagen, D. , & Nielsen, M. E. (2013). β-glucan enriched bath directly stimulates the wound healing process in common carp (*Cyprinus carpio L.*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 35(3), 998–1006.
Rahimnejad, S. , Dabrowski, K. , Izquierdo, M. , Hematyar, N. , Imentai, A. , Steinbach, C. , & Policar, T. (2021). Effects of Vitamin C and E Supplementation on Growth, Fatty Acid Composition, Innate Immunity, and Antioxidant Capacity of Rainbow Trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) Fed Oxidized Fish Oil. Frontiers in Marine Science, 1471.
Rayman, M. P. (2000). The importance of selenium to human health. The Lancet, 356(9225), 233–241.
Reddy, P. G. , & Frey, R. A. (1990). Nutritional modulation of immunity in domestic food animals. Advances in Veterinary Science and Comparative Medicine, 35, 255–281.
Rodrigues, M. V. , Zanuzzo, F. S. , Koch, J. F. A. , de Oliveira, C. A. F. , Sima, P. , & Vetvicka, V. (2020). Development of fish immunity and the role of β-glucan in immune responses. Molecules, 25(22), 5378.
Rodríguez, I. , Chamorro, R. , Novoa, B. , & Figueras, A. (2009). β-Glucan administration enhances disease resistance and some innate immune responses in zebrafish (*Danio rerio*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 27(2), 369–373.

Sadoul, B. , & Geffroy, B. (2019). Measuring cortisol, the major stress hormone in fishes. Journal of Fish Biology. 2019 Apr; 94(4), 540–555. doi: 10.1111/jfb.13904. Epub 2019 Mar 8. PMID: 30667059.
Saheli, M. , Islami, H. R. , Mohseni, M. , & Soltani, M. (2021). Effects of dietary vitamin E on growth performance, body composition, antioxidant capacity, and some immune responses in Caspian trout (*Salmo caspius*). Aquaculture Reports, 21, 100857.
Sakai, M. , Kobayashi, M. , & Kawauchi, H. (1996). In vitro activation of fish phagocytic cells by GH, prolactin and somatolactin. Journal of Endocrinology, 151(1), 113–118.
Sallam, A. E. , Mansour, A. T. , Alsaqufi, A. S. , Salem, M. E. S. , & El-Feky, M. M. (2020). Growth performance, anti-oxidative status, innate immunity, and ammonia stress resistance of *Siganus rivulatus* fed diet supplemented with zinc and zinc nanoparticles. Aquaculture Reports, 18, 100410.
Sanchez-Dardon, J. , Voccia, I. , Hontela, A. , Chilmonczyk, S. , Dunier, M. , Boermans, H. , Blakley, B. , & Fournier, M. (1999). Immunomodulation by heavy metals tested individually or in mixtures in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) exposed in vivo. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry: An International Journal, 18(7), 1492–1497.
Sankian, Z. , Khosravi, S. , Kim, Y. O. , & Lee, S. M. (2018). Effects of dietary inclusion of yellow mealworm (*Tenebrio molitor*) meal on growth performance, feed utilization, body composition, plasma biochemical indices, selected immune parameters and antioxidant enzyme activities of mandarin fish (*Siniperca scherzeri*) juveniles. Aquaculture, 496, 79–87.
Sau, S. K. , Paul, B. N. , Mohanta, K. N. , & Mohanty, S. N. (2004). Dietary vitamin E requirement, fish performance and carcass composition of rohu (*Labeo rohita*) fry. Aquaculture, 240(1–4), 359–368.
Sayed, A. E. D. H. , & Moneeb, R. H. (2015). Hematological and biochemical characters of monosex tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus, Linnaeus, 1758*) cultivated using methyltestosterone. The Journal of Basic & Applied Zoology, 72, 36–42.
Selvaraj, V. , Sampath, K. , & Sekar, V. (2006). Adjuvant and immunostimulatory effects of β-glucan administration in combination with lipopolysaccharide enhances survival and some immune parameters in carp challenged *with Aeromonas hydrophila* . Veterinary Immunology and Immunopathology, 114(1–2), 15–24.
Shahkar, E. , Hamidoghli, A. , Yun, H. , Kim, D. J. , & Bai, S. C. (2018). Effects of dietary vitamin E on hematology, tissue α-tocopherol concentration and non-specific immune responses of Japanese eel, *Anguilla japonica* . Aquaculture, 484, 51–57.
Sherif, A. H. , Abdelsalam, M. , Ali, N. G. , & Mahrous, K. F. (2022). Zinc Oxide Nanoparticles Boost the Immune Responses in *Oreochromis niloticus* and Improve Disease Resistance to *Aeromonas hydrophila* Infection. Biological Trace Element Research, 1–10.
Sitjà-Bobadilla, A. , Peña-Llopis, S. , Gómez-Requeni, P. , Médale, F. , Kaushik, S. , & Pérez-Sánchez, J. (2005). Effect of fish meal replacement by plant protein sources on non-specific defence mechanisms and oxidative stress in gilthead sea bream (*Sparus aurata*). Aquaculture, 249(1–4), 387–400.
Sternberg, E. M. (2006). Neural regulation of innate immunity: a coordinated nonspecific host response to pathogens. Nature Reviews Immunology, 6(4), 318–328.
Sugano, M. , Koga, T. , & Yamada, K. (2000). Lipids and immunology. Asia Pacific Journal of Clinical Nutrition, 9(2), 146–152.
Sun, L. , Shao, X. , Hu, X. , Chi, J. , Jin, Y. , Ye, W. , & Fu, Z. (2011). Transcriptional responses in Japanese medaka (*Oryzias latipes*) exposed to binary mixtures of an estrogen and anti-estrogens. Aquatic Toxicology, 105(3–4), 629–639.
Sun, P. , Jin, M. , Ding, L. , Lu, Y. , Yuan, Y. , Ma, H. , & Zhoua, Q. (2017). Effect of dietary soybean lecithin and cholesterol on growth, antioxidant status and fatty acid composition of juvenile swimming crab, *Portunus trituberculatus* . The Israeli Journal of Aquaculture –*Bamidgeh*, IJA_69.2017.1421.
Sych, G. , Frost, P. , & Irnazarow, I. (2013). Influence of β-Glucan (MACROGARD®) on innate immunity of carp fry. Journal of Veterinary Research, 57(2), 219–223.
Tachibana, K. , Yagi, M. , Hara, K. , Mishima, T. , & Tsuchimoto, M. (1997). Effects of feeding of β-carotene-supplemented rotifers on survival and lymphocyte proliferation reaction of fish larvae (Japanese parrotfish (*Oplegnathus fasciatus*) and Spotted parrotfish (*Oplegnathus punctatus*): preliminary trials. Hydrobiologia, 358(1), 313–316.
Tewary, A. , & Patra, B. C. (2008). Use of vitamin C as an immunostimulant. Effect on growth, nutritional quality, and immune response of *Labeo rohita (Ham*.). Fish Physiology and Biochemistry, 34(3), 251–259.
Thompson, I. , Choubert, G. , Houlihan, D. F. , & Secombes, C. J. (1995). The effect of dietary vitamin A and astaxanthin on the immunocompetence of rainbow trout. Aquaculture, 133(2), 91–102.
Thompson, I. , Fletcher, T. C. , Houlihan, D. F. , & Secombes, C. J. (1994). The effect of dietary vitamin A on the immunocompetence of Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.). Fish Physiology and Biochemistry, 12(6), 513–523.
Vera-Jimenez, N. I. , Pietretti, D. , Wiegertjes, G. F. , & Nielsen, M. E. (2013). Comparative study of β-glucan induced respiratory burst measured by nitroblue tetrazolium assay and real-time luminol-enhanced chemiluminescence assay in common carp (*Cyprinus carpio* L.). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 34(5), 1216–1222.
Verlhac, V. , & Gabaudan, J. (1994). Influence of vitamin C on the immune system of salmonids. Aquaculture Research, 25(1), 21–36.
Verma, S. , Hoffmann, F. W. , Kumar, M. , Huang, Z. , Roe, K. , Nguyen-Wu, E. , Hashimoto, A. S. , & Hoffmann, P. R. (2011). Selenoprotein K knockout mice exhibit deficient calcium flux in immune cells and impaired immune responses. The Journal of Immunology, 186(4), 2127–2137.
Wang, L. , Sagada, G. , Wang, R. , Li, P. , Xu, B. , Zhang, C. , Qiao, J. , & Yan, Y. (2021). Different forms of selenium supplementation in fish feed: The bioavailability, nutritional functions, and potential toxicity. Aquaculture, 737819.
Wang, X. Z. , Jiang, W. D. , Feng, L. , Wu, P. , Liu, Y. , Zeng, Y. Y. , Jiang, J. , Kuang, S. Y. , Tang, L. , Tang, W. N. , & Zhou, X. Q. (2018). Low or excess levels of dietary cholesterol impaired immunity and aggravated inflammation response in young grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idella*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 78, 202–221.
Wang, Y. , Yu, Y. , Duan, Y. , Wang, Q. , Cong, X. , He, Y. , Gao, C. , Hafeez, M. , Jan, S. , Rasheed, S. M. , Cheng, S. , & Wang, Z. (2022). Enhancing the activity of carboxymethyl cellulase enzyme using highly stable selenium nanoparticles biosynthesized by *Bacillus paralicheniformis* Y4. Molecules, 27(14), 4585.
Watanabe, T. , Kiron, V. , & Satoh, S. (1997). Trace minerals in fish nutrition. Aquaculture, 151(1–4), 185–207.
Wojtaszek, J. , Dziewulska-Szwajkowska, D. , Łozińska-Gabska, M. , Adamowicz, A. , & Dżugaj, A. (2002). Hematological effects of high dose of cortisol on the carp (*Cyprinus carpio L*.): cortisol effect on the carp blood. General and Comparative Endocrinology, 125(2), 176–183.
Wu, G. (2010). Functional amino acids in growth, reproduction, and health. Advances in Nutrition, 1(1), 31–37.
Wu, L. , Qin, Z. , Liu, H. , Lin, L. , Ye, J. , & Li, J. (2020). Recent Advances on Phagocytic B Cells in Teleost Fish. Frontiers in Immunology, 11, 824. 10.3389/fimmu.2020.00824

Xiao, X. , Jin, P. , Zheng, L. , Cai, M. , Yu, Z. , Yu, J. , & Zhang, J. (2018). Effects of black soldier fly (*Hermetia illucens*) larvae meal protein as a fishmeal replacement on the growth and immune index of yellow catfish (*Pelteobagrus fulvidraco*). Aquaculture Research, 49(4), 1569–1577.
Xie, S. , Wei, D. , Liu, Y. , Tian, L. , & Niu, J. (2022). Dietary fish oil levels modulated lipid metabolism, immune response, intestinal health and salinity stress resistance of juvenile *Penaeus monodon* fed a low fish-meal diet. Animal Feed Science and Technology, 289, 115321.
Xu, H. J. , Jiang, W. D. , Feng, L. , Liu, Y. , Wu, P. , Jiang, J. , Kuang, S. Y. , Tang, L. , Tang, W. N. , Zhang, Y. A. , & Zhou, X. Q. (2016). Dietary vitamin C deficiency depresses the growth, head kidney and spleen immunity and structural integrity by regulating NF-κB, TOR, Nrf2, apoptosis and MLCK signaling in young grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idella*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 52, 111–138.
Xueqin, J. , Liqiao, C. , Jianguang, Q. , Chuanjie, Q. , Erchao, L. , & Haibo, J. (2013). Effects of dietary soybean oil inclusion to replace fish oil on growth, muscle fatty acid composition, and immune responses of juvenile dark barbel catfish, *Pelteobagrus vachelli* . African Journal of Agricultural Research, 8(16), 1492–1499.
Yada, T. (2007). Growth hormone and fish immune system. General and Comparative Endocrinology, 152(2-3), 353–358.
Yada, T. , & Nakanishi, T. (2002). Interaction between endocrine and immune systems in fish. International Review of Cytology, 220, 35–92. doi: 10.1016/s0074-7696(02)20003-0. PMID: 12224552.
Yada, T. , Azuma, T. , & Takagi, Y. (2001). Stimulation of non-specific immune functions in seawater-acclimated rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss*, with reference to the role of growth hormone. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part B: Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, 129(2-3), 695–701.
Yamaguchi, T. & Watanuki, H. & Sakai, M. (2001). Effects of estradiol, progesterone and testosterone on the function of carp, *Cyprinus carpio*, phagocytes in vitro. Comparative biochemistry and physiology. Toxicology & Pharmacology: CBP. 129, 49–55. 10.1016/S1532-0456(01)00176-4.
Yan, M. , Wang, W. , Huang, X. , Wang, X. , & Wang, Y. (2020). Interactive effects of dietary cholesterol and phospholipids on the growth performance, expression of immune-related genes and resistance against *Vibrio alginolyticus* in white shrimp (*Litopenaeus vannamei*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 97, 100–107.
Yang, L. , & Pan, L. (2013). Effects of phosphatidyl serine on immune response in the shrimp *Litopenaeus vannamei* . Central European Journal of Biology, 8(11), 1135–1144.
Zhang, L. , Feng, L. , Jiang, W. D. , Liu, Y. , Wu, P. , Kuang, S. Y. , Tang, L. , Tang, W. N. , Zhang, Y. A. , & Zhou, X. Q. (2017). Vitamin A deficiency suppresses fish immune function with differences in different intestinal segments: the role of transcriptional factor NF-κB and p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase signalling pathways. British Journal of Nutrition, 117(1), 67–82.
Zhang, Y. , Roh, Y. J. , Han, S. J. , Park, I. , Lee, H. M. , Ok, Y. S. , Lee, B. C. , & Lee, S. R. (2020). Role of Selenoproteins in Redox Regulation of Signaling and the Antioxidant System: A Review. Antioxidants (Basel, Switzerland), 9(5), 383. 10.3390/antiox9050383
Zhao, H. , Ma, H. J. , Gao, S. N. , Chen, X. R. , Chen, Y. J. , Zhao, P. F. , & Lin, S. M. (2018). Evaluation of dietary vitamin E supplementation on growth performance and antioxidant status in hybrid snakehead (*Channa argus× Channa maculata*). Aquaculture Nutrition, 24(1), 625–632.
Zheng, P. , Wang, J. , Han, T. , Yang, M. , Li, X. , & Wang, C. (2018). Effect of dietary cholesterol levels on growth performance, body composition and gene expression of juvenile mud crab *Scylla paramamosain* . Aquaculture Research, 49(10), 3434–3441.
Zheng, Y. , Qu, J. , Qiu, L. , Fan, L. , Meng, S. , Song, C. , Bing, X. , & Chen, J. (2016). Effect of 17α-methyltestosterone (MT) on oxidation stress in the liver of juvenile GIFT tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus. Springerplus, 5(1), 1–8.
Zhou, Q. C. , Wang, L. G. , Wang, H. L. , Wang, T. , Elmada, C. Z. , & Xie, F. J. (2013). Dietary vitamin E could improve growth performance, lipid peroxidation and non-specific immune responses for juvenile cobia (*Rachycentron canadum*). Aquaculture Nutrition, 19(3), 421–429.

Cytokines and Fish Health

Altmann, S. M. , Mellon, M. T. , Distel, D. L. , & Kim, C. H. (2003). Molecular and functional analysis of an interferon gene from the zebrafish, Danio rerio. Journal of Virology, 77(3), 1992–2002.
Aoki, T. , Takano, T. , Santos, M. D. , Kondo, H. , & Hirono, I. (2008, October). Molecular innate immunity in teleost fish: review and future perspectives. In Fisheries for Global Welfare and Environment, Memorial Book of the 5th World Fisheries Congress (pp. 263–276). Terrapub: Tokyo, Japan.
Assefa, A. , & Abunna, F. (2018). Maintenance of fish health in aquaculture: review of epidemiological approaches for prevention and control of infectious disease of fish. Veterinary Medicine International, 2018.
Balu, S. , & Kaiser, P. (2003). Avian interleukin-12β (p40): cloning and characterization of the cDNA and gene. Journal of Interferon & Cytokine Research, 23(12), 699–707.
Beck, B. H. , Farmer, B. D. , Straus, D. L. , Li, C. , & Peatman, E. (2012). Putative roles for a rhamnose binding lectin in *Flavobacterium columnare* pathogenesis in channel catfish *Ictalurus punctatus* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 33(4), 1008–1015.
Beck, G. , & Habicht, G. S. (1996). Characterization of an IL-6-like molecule from an echinoderm (Asterias forbesi). Cytokine, 8(7), 507–512.
Bergan, V. , Steinsvik, S. , Xu, H. , Kileng, Ø. , & Robertsen, B. (2006). Promoters of type I interferon genes from Atlantic salmon contain two main regulatory regions. The FEBS Journal, 273(17), 3893–3906.
Berra, T. M. (2001). Freshwater fish distribution. Academic Press.
Bird, S. , Zou, J. , Kono, T. , Sakai, M. , Dijkstra, J. M. , & Secombes, C. (2005a). Characterisation and expression analysis of interleukin 2 (IL-2) and IL-21 homologues in the Japanese pufferfish, Fugu rubripes, following their discovery by synteny. Immunogenetics, 56(12), 909–923.
Bird, S. , Zou, J. , Savan, R. , Kono, T. , Sakai, M. , Woo, J. , & Secombes, C. (2005b). Characterisation and expression analysis of an interleukin 6 homologue in the Japanese pufferfish, Fugu rubripes. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 29(9), 775–789.
Biswas, G. , Kinoshita, S. , Kono, T. , Hikima, J. I. , & Sakai, M. (2015). Evolutionary evidence of tumor necrosis factor super family members in the Japanese pufferfish (Takifugu rubripes): comprehensive genomic identification and expression analysis. Marine

Genomics, 22, 25–36.
Botham, J. W. , & Manning, M. J. (1981). The histogenesis of the lymphoid organs in the carp Cyprinus carpio L. and the ontogenetic development of allograft reactivity. Journal of Fish Biology, 19(4), 403–414.
Carey, F. G. , & Lawson, K. D. (1973). Temperature regulation in free-swimming bluefin tuna. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part A: Physiology, 44(2), 375–392.
Castellana, B. , Iliev, D. B. , Sepulcre, M. P. , MacKenzie, S. , Goetz, F. W. , Mulero, V. , & Planas, J. V. (2008). Molecular characterization of interleukin-6 in the gilthead seabream (Sparus aurata). Molecular Immunology, 45(12), 3363–3370.
Chaves-Pozo, E. , Valero, Y. , Esteve-Codina, A. , Gómez-Garrido, J. , Dabad, M. , Alioto, T. ,… … & Cuesta, A. (2017). Innate cell-mediated cytotoxic activity of European sea bass leucocytes against nodavirus-infected cells: a functional and RNA-seq study. Scientific Reports, 7(1), 1–15.
Chen, H. H. , Lin, H. T. , Foung, Y. F. , & Lin, J. H. Y. (2012). The bioactivity of teleost IL-6: IL-6 protein in orange-spotted grouper (*Epinephelus coioides*) induces Th2 cell differentiation pathway and antibody production. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 38(2), 285–294.
Chen, J. , Xu, Q. , Wang, T. , Collet, B. , Corripio-Miyar, Y. , Bird, S. ,… … & Zou, J. (2013). Phylogenetic analysis of vertebrate CXC chemokines reveals novel lineage specific groups in teleost fish. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 41(2), 137–152.
Chilmonczyk, S. (1992). The thymus in fish: development and possible function in the immune response. Annual Review of Fish Diseases, 2, 181–200.
Corripio-Miyar, Y. , Zou, J. , Richmond, H. , & Secombes, C. J. (2009). Identification of interleukin-22 in gadoids and examination of its expression level in vaccinated fish. Molecular Immunology, 46(10), 2098–2106.
Costa, J. Z. , & Thompson, K. D. (2016). Understanding the interaction between *Betanodavirus* and its host for the development of prophylactic measures for viral encephalopathy and retinopathy. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 53, 35–49.
Costa, M. M. , Maehr, T. , Diaz-Rosales, P. , Secombes, C. J. , & Wang, T. (2011). Bioactivity studies of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) interleukin-6: effects on macrophage growth and antimicrobial peptide gene expression. Molecular Immunology, 48(15-16), 1903–1916.
Cupedo, T. , Crellin, N. K. , Papazian, N. , Rombouts, E. J. , Weijer, K. , Grogan, J. L. ,… … & Spits, H. (2009). Human fetal lymphoid tissue–inducer cells are interleukin 17–producing precursors to RORC+ CD127+ natural killer–like cells. Nature Immunology, 10(1), 66–74.
DeVries, M. E. , Ran, L. , & Kelvin, D. J. (1999, April). On the edge: the physiological and pathophysiological role of chemokines during inflammatory and immunological responses. In Seminars in Immunology (Vol. 11, No. 2, pp. 95–104). Academic Press.
Dinarello, C. A. (1984). Interleukin-1. Reviews of Infectious Diseases, 6(1), 51–95.
Ding, Y. , Ao, J. , Ai, C. , & Chen, X. (2016). Molecular and functional identification of three interleukin-17A/F (IL-17A/F) homologues in large yellow croaker (*Larimichthys crocea*). Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 55, 221–232.
Dixon, B. , & Stet, R. J. M. (2001). The relationship between major histocompatibility receptors and innate immunity in teleost fish. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 25(8-9), 683–699.
ElMatbouli, M. , & Hoffmann, R. W. (2002). Influence of water quality on the outbreak of proliferative kidney disease–field studies and exposure experiments. Journal of Fish Diseases, 25(8), 459–467.
FAO , The State of World Fisheries and Aquaculture, Contributing to food security and nutrition for all, Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, Rome, Italy, 2016.
Feinen, B. , & Russell, M. W. (2012). Contrasting roles of IL-22 and IL-17 in murine genital tract infection by *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* . Frontiers in Immunology, 3, 11.
Fiorentino, D. F. , Bond, M. W. , & Mosmann, T. R. (1989). Two types of mouse T helper cell. IV. Th2 clones secrete a factor that inhibits cytokine production by Th1 clones. The Journal of Experimental Medicine, 170(6), 2081–2095.
Firdaus-Nawi, M. , & Zamri-Saad, M. (2016). Major Components of Fish Immunity: A Review. Pertanika Journal of Tropical Agricultural Science, 39(4).
Flegr, J. (2006). Evolutionary parasitology: the development of invasion, evasion, and survival mechanisms used by bacterial, viral, protozoan, and metazoan parasites. Food Consumption and Disease Risk: Consumer-Pathogen Interactions, 1st ed.; Potter, M. , Ed, 251–270.
Fujita, T. , Takaoka, C. , Matsui, H. , & Taniguchi, T. (1983). Structure of the human interleukin 2 gene. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 80(24), 7437–7441.
Garcia-Castillo, J. , Chaves-Pozo, E. , Olivares, P. , Pelegin, P. , Meseguer, J. , & Mulero, V. (2004). The tumor necrosis factor α of the bony fish seabream exhibits the in vivo proinflammatory and proliferative activities of its mammalian counterparts, yet it functions in a species-specific manner. Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences CMLS, 61(11), 1331–1340.
Glimcher, L. H. , & Murphy, K. M. (2000). Lineage commitment in the immune system: the T helper lymphocyte grows up. Genes & Development, 14(14), 1693–1711.
Goldman, K. J. (1997). Regulation of body temperature in the white shark, Carcharodon carcharias. Journal of Comparative Physiology B, 167(6), 423–429.
Grace, M. F. , & Manning, M. J. (1980). Histogenesis of the lymphoid organs in rainbow trout, Salmo gairdneri Rich. 1836. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 4, 255–264.
Grayfer, L. , Hodgkinson, J. W. , Hitchen, S. J. , & Belosevic, M. (2011). Characterization and functional analysis of goldfish (*Carassius auratus L.*) interleukin-10. Molecular Immunology, 48(4), 563–571.
Grayfer, L. , Walsh, J. G. , & Belosevic, M. (2008). Characterization and functional analysis of goldfish (*Carassius auratus L.*) tumor necrosis factor-alpha. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 32(5), 532–543.
Gunimaladevi, I. , Savan, R. , Sato, K. , Yamaguchi, R. , & Sakai, M. (2007). Characterization of an interleukin-15 like (IL-15L) gene from zebrafish (*Danio rerio*). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 22(4), 351–362.
Hino, K. , Nakamura, O. , Yoshiura, Y. , Suetake, H. , Suzuki, Y. , & Watanabe, T. (2006). TNF induces the growth of thymocytes in rainbow trout. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 30(7), 639–647.
Hong, S. , Zou, J. , Collet, B. , Bols, N. C. , & Secombes, C. J. (2004). Analysis and Characterisation of IL-1β processing in rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 16(3), 453–459.
Hosken, N. A. , Shibuya, K. , Heath, A. W. , Murphy, K. M. , & O'Garra, A. (1995). The effect of antigen dose on CD4+ T helper cell phenotype development in a T cell receptor-alpha beta-transgenic model. The Journal of Experimental Medicine, 182(5), 1579–1584.

Hu, Y. , Li, A. , Xu, Y. , Jiang, B. , Lu, G. , & Luo, X. (2017). Transcriptomic variation of locally-infected skin of *Epinephelus coioides* reveals the mucosal immune mechanism against *Cryptocaryon irritans* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 66, 398–410.
Huang, D. , Cancilla, M. R. , & Morahan, G. (2000). Complete primary structure, chromosomal localisation, and definition of polymorphisms of the gene encoding the human interleukin-12 p40 subunit. Genes & Immunity, 1(8), 515–520.
Huising, M. O. , Kruiswijk, C. P. , Van Schijndel, J. E. , Savelkoul, H. F. , Flik, G. , & Verburg-van Kemenade, B. M. (2005a). Multiple and highly divergent IL-11 genes in teleost fish. Immunogenetics, 57(6), 432–443.
Huising, M.O. , Kruiswijk, C. P. , van Schijndel, J. E. , Savelkoul, H. F. , Flik, G. , Verburg-van Kemenade, B.M. , (2005b). Multiple and highly divergent IL-11 genes in teleost fish. Immunogenetics, 1–12.
Igawa, D. , Sakai, M. , & Savan, R. (2006). An unexpected discovery of two interferon gamma-like genes along with interleukin (IL)-22 and-26 from teleost: IL-22 and-26 genes have been described for the first time outside mammals. Molecular Immunology, 43(7), 999–1009.
Iliev, D. B. , Castellana, B. , MacKenzie, S. , Planas, J. V. , & Goetz, F. W. (2007). Cloning and expression analysis of an IL-6 homolog in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Molecular Immunology, 44(7), 1803–1807.
Jósefsson, S. , & Tatner, M. F. (1993). Histogenesis of the lymphoid organs in sea bream (Sparus aurata L.). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 3(1), 35–49.
Kinoshita, S. , Biswas, G. , Kono, T. , Hikima, J. , & Sakai, M. (2014). Presence of two tumor necrosis factor (tnf)-α homologs on different chromosomes of zebrafish (*Danio rerio*) and medaka (*Oryzias latipes*). Marine Genomics, 13, 1–9.
Kono, T. , & Sakai, M. (2001). The analysis of expressed genes in the kidney of Japanese flounder, *Paralichthys olivaceus*, injected with the immunostimulant peptidoglycan. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 11(4), 357–366.
Kono, T. , Korenaga, H. , & Sakai, M. (2011). Genomics of fish IL-17 ligand and receptors: a review. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 31(5), 635–643.
Korenaga, H. , Kono, T. , & Sakai, M. (2010). Isolation of seven IL-17 family genes from the Japanese pufferfish *Takifugu rubripes* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 28(5-6), 809–818.
Korzh, V. , Sleptsova, I. , Liao, J. , He, J. , & Gong, Z. (1998). Expression of zebrafish bHLH genes ngn1and nrd defines distinct stages of neural differentiation. Developmental dynamics: an official publication of the American Association of Anatomists, 213(1), 92–104.
Krause, H. , Jandrig, B. , Wernicke, C. , Bulfone-Paus, S. , Pohl, T. , & Diamantstein, T. (1996). Genomic Structure and Chromosomal Localization of The Human Interleukin 15 GENE (IL–15). Cytokine, 8(9), 667–674.
Kubečka, J. , Boukal, D. S. , Čech, M. , Hickley, P. , Kitchell, J. F. , Ricard, D. ,… … & Welcomme, R. (2016). Ecology and ecological quality of fish in lakes and reservoirs. Fisheries Research, 173, 1–3.
Küchler, A. M. , Gjini, E. , Peterson-Maduro, J. , Cancilla, B. , Wolburg, H. , & Schulte-Merker, S. (2006). Development of the zebrafish lymphatic system requires VEGFC signaling. Current Biology, 16(12), 1244–1248.
Lee, D. S. , Hong, S. H. , Lee, H. J. , Jun, L. J. , Chung, J. K. , Kim, K. H. , & Do Jeong, H. (2006). Molecular cDNA cloning and analysis of the organization and expression of the IL-1β gene in the Nile tilapia, *Oreochromis niloticus* . Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part A: Molecular & Integrative Physiology, 143(3), 307–314.
Lee, X. , Yi, Y. , Weng, S. , Zeng, J. , Zhang, H. , He, J. , & Dong, C. (2016). Transcriptomic analysis of koi (*Cyprinus carpio*) spleen tissue upon *Cyprinid herpesvirus* 3 (CyHV3) infection using next generation sequencing. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 49, 213–224.
Lenoir, G. , & De Kinkelin, P. (1975). Fish rhabdoviruses: comparative study of protein structure. Journal of Virology, 16(2), 259–262.
Li, C. , Zhang, Y. , Wang, R. , Lu, J. , Nandi, S. , Mohanty, S. ,… … & Peatman, E. (2012). RNA-seq analysis of mucosal immune responses reveals signatures of intestinal barrier disruption and pathogen entry following *Edwardsiella ictaluri* infection in channel catfish, *Ictalurus punctatus* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 32(5), 816–827.
Liu, Q. , Du, X. X. , Schindel, D. T. , Yang, Z. X. , Rescorla, F. J. , Williams, D. A. , & Grosfeld, J. L. (1996). Trophic effects of interleukin-11 in rats with experimental short bowel syndrome. Journal of Pediatric Surgery, 31(8), 1047–1051.
Liu, Y. , Chang, M. X. , Wu, S. G. , & Nie, P. (2009). Characterization of C–C chemokine receptor subfamily in teleost fish. Molecular Immunology, 46(3), 498–504.
Maloy, K. J. , Salaun, L. , Cahill, R. , Dougan, G. , Saunders, N. J. , & Powrie, F. (2003). CD4+ CD25+ TR cells suppress innate immune pathology through cytokine-dependent mechanisms. The Journal of Experimental Medicine, 197(1), 111–119.
Medzhitov, R. , & Janeway, C. A. (1997). Innate immunity: the virtues of a nonclonal system of recognition. Cell, 91(3), 295–298.
Monte, M. M. , Wang, T. , Holland, J. W. , Zou, J. , & Secombes, C. J. (2013). Cloning and characterization of rainbow trout interleukin-17A/F2 (IL-17A/F2) and IL-17 receptor A: expression during infection and bioactivity of recombinant IL-17A/F2. Infection and Immunity, 81(1), 340–353.
Mosmann, T. R. , Cherwinski, H. , Bond, M. W. , Giedlin, M. A. , & Coffman, R. L. (1986). Two types of murine helper T cell clone. I. Definition according to profiles of lymphokine activities and secreted proteins. The Journal of Immunology, 136(7), 2348–2357.
Mu, Y. , Li, M. , Ding, F. , Ding, Y. , Ao, J. , Hu, S. , & Chen, X. (2014). De novo characterization of the spleen transcriptome of the large yellow croaker (*Pseudosciaena crocea*) and analysis of the immune relevant genes and pathways involved in the antiviral response. PLoS One, 9(5), e97471.
Nakanishi, T. , Hikima, J. I. , & Yada, T. (2018). *Osteichthyes*: immune systems of teleosts (*Actinopterygii*). In Advances in Comparative Immunology (pp. 687–749). Springer, Cham.
Nam, B. H. , Byon, J. Y. , Kim, Y. O. , Park, E. M. , Cho, Y. C. , & Cheong, J. (2007). Molecular cloning and characterisation of the flounder (*Paralichthys olivaceus*) interleukin-6 gene. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 23(1), 231–236.
Nomiyama, H. , Hieshima, K. , Osada, N. , Kato-Unoki, Y. , Otsuka-Ono, K. , Takegawa, S. ,… … & Yoshie, O. (2008). Extensive expansion and diversification of the chemokine gene family in zebrafish: identification of a novel chemokine subfamily CX. BMC Genomics, 9(1), 1–19.
Øvergård, A. C. , Nepstad, I. , Nerland, A. H. , & Patel, S. (2012). Characterisation and expression analysis of the Atlantic halibut (*Hippoglossus hippoglossus L.*) cytokines: IL-1β, IL-6, IL-11, IL-12β and IFNγ. Molecular Biology Reports, 39(3), 2201–2213.
Palacios, G. , Lovoll, M. , Tengs, T. , Hornig, M. , Hutchison, S. , Hui, J. ,… … & Lipkin, W. I. (2010). Heart and skeletal muscle inflammation of farmed salmon is associated with infection with a novel reovirus. PLoS one, 5(7), e11487.
Palanisamy, R. , Bhatt, P. , Kumaresan, V. , Pasupuleti, M. , & Arockiaraj, J. (2018). Innate and adaptive immune molecules of striped murrel *Channa striatus* . Reviews in Aquaculture, 10(2), 296–319.

Parrish-Novak, J. , Dillon, S. R. , Nelson, A. , Hammond, A. , Sprecher, C. , Gross, J. A. ,… … & Foster, D. (2000). Interleukin 21 and its receptor are involved in NK cell expansion and regulation of lymphocyte function. Nature, 408(6808), 57–63.
Peatman, E. , Li, C. , Peterson, B. C. , Straus, D. L. , Farmer, B. D. , & Beck, B. H. (2013). Basal polarization of the mucosal compartment in *Flavobacterium columnare* susceptible and resistant channel catfish (*Ictalurus punctatus*). Molecular Immunology, 56(4), 317–327.
Petrie-Hanson, L. , & Ainsworth, A. J. (2001). Ontogeny of channel catfish lymphoid organs. Veterinary Immunology and Immunopathology, 81(1-2), 113–127.
Piazzon, M. C. , Savelkoul, H. F. , Pietretti, D. , Wiegertjes, G. F. , & Forlenza, M. (2015). Carp Il10 has anti-inflammatory activities on phagocytes, promotes proliferation of memory T cells, and regulates B cell differentiation and antibody secretion. The Journal of Immunology, 194(1), 187–199.
Pleguezuelos, O. , Zou, J. , Cunningham, C. , & Secombes, C. J. (2000). Cloning, sequencing, and analysis of expression of a second IL-1 β gene in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). Immunogenetics, 51(12), 1002–1011.
Polinski, M. P. , Bradshaw, J. C. , Inkpen, S. M. , Richard, J. , Fritsvold, C. , Poppe, T. T. ,… … & Johnson, S. C. (2016). De novo assembly of Sockeye salmon kidney transcriptomes reveal a limited early response to piscine reovirus with or without infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus superinfection. BMC Genomics, 17(1), 1–22.
Praveen, K. , Evans, D. L. , & Jaso-Friedmann, L. (2006). Constitutive expression of tumor necrosis factor-alpha in cytotoxic cells of teleosts and its role in regulation of cell-mediated cytotoxicity. Molecular Immunology, 43(3), 279–291.
Qin, C. , Gong, Q. , Wen, Z. , Yuan, D. , Shao, T. , Wang, J. , & Li, H. (2017). Transcriptome analysis of the spleen of the darkbarbel catfish *Pelteobagrus vachellii* in response to *Aeromonas hydrophila* infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 70, 498–506.
Rahman, M. M. , & McFadden, G. (2006). Modulation of tumor necrosis factor by microbial pathogens. PLoS Pathogens, 2(2), e4.
Rauta, P. R. , Nayak, B. , & Das, S. (2012). Immune system and immune responses in fish and their role in comparative immunity study: a model for higher organisms. Immunology Letters, 148(1), 23–33.
Reyes-Cerpa, S. , Maisey, K. , Reyes-López, F. , Toro-Ascuy, D. , Sandino, A. M. , & Imarai, M. (2012a). Fish cytokines and immune response. New Advances and Contributions to Fish Biology, 3–57.
Reyes-Cerpa, S. , Reyes-López, F. E. , Toro-Ascuy, D. , Ibañez, J. , Maisey, K. , Sandino, A. M. , & Imarai, M. (2012b). IPNV modulation of pro and anti-inflammatory cytokine expression in Atlantic salmon might help the establishment of infection and persistence. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 32(2), 291–300.
Rico, A. , Satapornvanit, K. , Haque, M. M. , Min, J. , Nguyen, P. T. , Telfer, T. C. , & Van Den Brink, P. J. (2012). Use of chemicals and biological products in Asian aquaculture and their potential environmental risks: a critical review. Reviews in Aquaculture, 4(2), 75–93.
Robertsen, B. , Bergan, V. , Røkenes, T. , Larsen, R. , & Albuquerque, A. (2003). Atlantic salmon interferon genes: cloning, sequence analysis, expression, and biological activity. Journal of Interferon & Cytokine Research, 23(10), 601–612.
Robledo, D. , Ronza, P. , Harrison, P. W. , Losada, A. P. , Bermúdez, R. , Pardo, B. G. ,… … & Martínez, P. (2014). RNA-seq analysis reveals significant transcriptome changes in turbot (*Scophthalmus maximus*) suffering severe enteromyxosis. BMC Genomics, 15(1), 1–17.
Saeij, J. P. , Stet, R. J. , De Vries, B. J. , Van Muiswinkel, W. B. , & Wiegertjes, G. F. (2003). Molecular and functional characterization of carp TNF: a link between TNF polymorphism and trypanotolerance?. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 27(1), 29–41.
Sahoo, S. , Banu, H. , Prakash, A. , & Tripathi, G. (2021). Immune system of fish: an evolutionary perspective. Antimicrobial Immune Response, 1.
Sakai, M. , Hikima, J. I. , & Kono, T. (2021). Fish cytokines: Current research and applications. Fisheries Science, 87(1), 1–9.
Salazar-Mather, T. P. , & Hokeness, K. L. (2006). Cytokine and chemokine networks: pathways to antiviral defense. Chemokines and Viral Infection, 29–46.
Savan, R. , & Sakai, M. (2006). Genomics of fish cytokines. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part D: Genomics and Proteomics, 1(1), 89–101.
Savan, R. , Kono, T. , Igawa, D. , & Sakai, M. (2005). A novel tumor necrosis factor (TNF) gene present in tandem with theTNF-α gene on the same chromosome in teleosts. Immunogenetics, 57(1), 140–150.
Secombes, C. J. , Wang, T. , & Bird, S. (2011). The interleukins of fish. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 35(12), 1336–1345.
Shi, M. , Huang, R. , Du, F. , Pei, Y. , Liao, L. , Zhu, Z. , & Wang, Y. (2014). RNA-seq profiles from grass carp tissues after reovirus (GCRV) infection based on singular and modular enrichment analyses. Molecular Immunology, 61(1), 44–53.
Silva, J. R. M. C. D. , Staines, N. A. , HernandezBlazquez, F. J. , PortoNeto, L. R. , & Borges, J. C. S. (2002). Phagocytosis and giant cell formation at 0 C by macrophage (MØ) of *Notothenia coriiceps* . Journal of Fish Biology, 60(2), 466–478.
Skelly, S. M. , Tackney, C. , Hicklin, D. , Tamkins, T. , Goldstein, N. , Waksal, H. , & Dagan, S. (1994). High-level expression of a biologically active human interleukin-6 mutein. Journal of Biotechnology, 34(1), 79–86.
Smail, D. A. , & Munro, E. S. (2012). The virology of teleosts. Fish Pathology, 186–291.
Sunarto, A. , Liongue, C. , McColl, K. A. , Adams, M. M. , Bulach, D. , Crane, M. S. J. ,… … & Walker, P. J. (2012). Koi herpesvirus encodes and expresses a functional interleukin-10. Journal of Virology, 86(21), 11512–11520.
Takahashi, Y. , Okamura, Y. , Morimoto, N. , Mihara, K. , Maekawa, S. , Wang, H. C. ,… … & Hikima, J. I. (2020). Interleukin-17A/F1 from Japanese pufferfish (*Takifugu rubripes*) stimulates the immune response in head kidney and intestinal cells. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 103, 143–149.
Tort, L. , Balasch, J. C. , & Mackenzie, S. (2003). Fish immune system. A crossroads between innate and adaptive responses. Inmunología, 22(3), 277–286.
Van Beurden, S. J. , Forlenza, M. , Westphal, A. H. , Wiegertjes, G. F. , Haenen, O. L. , & Engelsma, M. Y. (2011). The alloherpesviral counterparts of interleukin 10 in European eel and common carp. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 31(6), 1211–1217.
Varela, M. , Dios, S. , Novoa, B. , & Figueras, A. (2012). Characterisation, expression and ontogeny of interleukin-6 and its receptors in zebrafish (*Danio rerio*). Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 37(1), 97–106.
Wang, T. , Díaz-Rosales, P. , Martin, S. A. , & Secombes, C. J. (2010). Cloning of a novel interleukin (IL)-20-like gene in rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss* gives an insight into the evolution of the IL-10 family. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 34(2), 158–167.

Wang, T. , Holland, J. W. , Bols, N. , & Secombes, C. J. (2005). Cloning and expression of the first nonmammalian interleukin11 gene in rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss* . The FEBS Journal, 272(5), 1136–1147.
Wang, T. , Huang, W. , Costa, M. M. , & Secombes, C. J. (2011). The gamma-chain cytokine/receptor system in fish: more ligands and receptors. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 31(5), 673–687.
Wei, X. , Li, B. , Wu, L. , Yin, X. , Zhong, X. , Li, Y. ,… … & Ye, J. (2018). Interleukin-6 gets involved in response to bacterial infection and promotes antibody production in Nile tilapia (*Oreochromis niloticus*). Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 89, 141–151.
Wilson, N. J. , Boniface, K. , Chan, J. R. , McKenzie, B. S. , Blumenschein, W. M. , Mattson, J. D. ,… … & de Waal Malefyt, R. (2007). Development, cytokine profile and function of human interleukin 17–producing helper T cells. Nature Immunology, 8(9), 950–957.
Xiang, L. X. , He, D. , Dong, W. R. , Zhang, Y. W. , & Shao, J. Z. (2010). Deep sequencing-based transcriptome profiling analysis of bacteria-challenged *Lateolabrax japonicus* reveals insight into the immune-relevant genes in marine fish. BMC Genomics, 11(1), 1–21.
Xu, C. , Evensen, Ø. , & Munang'andu, H. M. (2015). De novo assembly and transcriptome analysis of Atlantic salmon macrophage/dendritic-like TO cells following type I IFN treatment and Salmonid alphavirus subtype-3 infection. BMC Genomics, 16(1), 1–16.
Yin, F. , Sun, P. , Wang, J. , & Gao, Q. (2016). Transcriptome analysis of dormant tomonts of the marine fish ectoparasitic ciliate *Cryptocaryon irritans* under low temperature. Parasites & Vectors, 9(1), 1–12.
Yin, Z. , & Kwang, J. (2000). Carp interleukin-1β in the role of an immuno-adjuvant. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 10(4), 375–378.
Zhang, J. , & Sun, L. (2017). Transcriptome analysis reveals temperature-regulated antiviral response in turbot *Scophthalmus maximus* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 68, 359–367.
Zhu, R. , Liu, X. X. , Lv, X. , Li, S. Y. , Li, Y. D. , Yu, X. J. , & Wang, X. G. (2017). Deciphering transcriptome profile of the yellow catfish (*Pelteobagrus fulvidraco*) in response to *Edwardsiella ictaluri* . Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 70, 593–608.b
Zou, J. , & Secombes, C. J. (2016). The function of fish cytokines. Biology, 5(2), 23.
Zou, J. , Bird, S. , & Secombes, C. (2004). Fish cytokine gene discovery and linkage using genomic approaches. Marine Biotechnology, 6, S533–S539.
Zou, J. , Bird, S. , Truckle, J. , Bols, N. , Horne, M. , & Secombes, C. (2004). Identification and expression analysis of an IL18 homologue and its alternatively spliced form in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*). European Journal of Biochemistry, 271(10), 1913–1923.
Zou, J. , Grabowski, P. S. , Cunningham, C. , & Secombes, C. J. (1999). Molecular cloning of interleukin 1β from rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss* reveals no evidence of an ice cut site. Cytokine, 11(8), 552–560.

Progressive Immunomodulation Through Nanotechnology

Nasr-Eldahan, S. ; Nabil-Adam, A. ; Shreadah, M. A. ; Maher, A. M. ; El-Sayed Ali, T. A Review Article on Nanotechnology in Aquaculture Sustainability as a Novel Tool in Fish Disease Control. Aquac. Int., 2021, 29 (4), 1459–1480. 10.1007/s10499-021-00677-7.
Shah, B. R. ; Mraz, J. Advances in Nanotechnology for Sustainable Aquaculture and Fisheries. Rev. Aquac., 2020, 12 (2), 925–942. 10.1111/raq.12356.
Kwasek, K. ; Thorne-Lyman, A. L. ; Phillips, M. Can Human Nutrition Be Improved through Better Fish Feeding Practices? A Review Paper. Crit. Rev. Food Sci. Nutr., 2020, 60 (22), 3822–3835. 10.1080/10408398.2019.1708698.
Firdaus-Nawi, M. ; Saad, M. Major Components of Fish Immunity: A Review. Pertanika J. Trop. Agric. Sci., 2016, 39(4), 393–420.
Mahboub, H. H. ; Shaheen, A. Prevalence, Diagnosis and Experimental Challenge of Dermocystidium Sp. Infection in Nile Tilapia (Oreochromis Niloticus) in Egypt. Aquaculture, 2020, 516, 734556. 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2019.734556.
Mahboub, H. H. ; Shaheen, A. A. Mycological and Histopathological Identification of Potential Fish Pathogens in Nile Tilapia. Aquaculture, 2021, 530, 735849. 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2020.735849.
Jaime, R. Antibiotics in Aquaculture – Use, Abuse and Alternatives. In Health and Environment in Aquaculture; Carmen Gloria Feijoo, Ed.; Paola Navarrete ED1 - Edmir Daniel Carvalho ED2 - Gianmarco Silva David ED3 - Reinaldo J. Silva , Series Ed.; IntechOpen: Rijeka, 2012; p Ch. 6. 10.5772/28157.
Devi, K. P. ; Nisha, S. A. ; Sakthivel, R. ; Pandian, S. K. Eugenol (an Essential Oil of Clove) Acts as an Antibacterial Agent against Salmonella Typhi by Disrupting the Cellular Membrane. J. Ethnopharmacol., 2010, 130 (1), 107–115. 10.1016/j.jep.2010.04.025.
Kothari, D. ; Patel, S. ; Kim, S.-K. Probiotic Supplements Might Not Be Universally-Effective and Safe: A Review. Biomed. Pharmacother., 2019, 111, 537–547. 10.1016/j.biopha.2018.12.104.
Reverter, M. ; Tapissier-Bontemps, N. ; Sasal, P. ; Saulnier, D. Use of Medicinal Plants in Aquaculture. In Diagnosis and Control of Diseases of Fish and Shellfish; John Wiley & Sons, Ltd, 2017; pp 223–261. 10.1002/9781119152125.ch9.
Kubackova, J. ; Zbytovska, J. ; Holas, O. Nanomaterials for Direct and Indirect Immunomodulation: A Review of Applications. Eur. J. Pharm. Sci., 2020, 142, 105139. 10.1016/j.ejps.2019.105139.
Silva, J. R. M. C. ; Staines, N. A. ; Hernandez-Blazquez, F. J. ; Porto-Neto, L. R. ; Borges, J. C. S. Phagocytosis and Giant Cell Formation at 0° C by Macrophage (MØ) of Notothenia Coriiceps. J. Fish Biol., 2002, 60 (2), 466–478. 10.1111/j.1095-8649.2002.tb00294.x.
Sharma, M. ; Pandey, G. Overviews of the Treatment and Control of Common Fish Diseases. Int. Res. J. Pharm., 2012, 3, 123–127.
Mugwanya, M. ; Dawood, M. A. O. ; Kimera, F. ; Sewilam, H. Anthropogenic Temperature Fluctuations and Their Effect on Aquaculture: A Comprehensive Review. Aquac. Fish., 2022, 7 (3), 223–243. 10.1016/j.aaf.2021.12.005.
Matteucci, F. ; Giannantonio, R. ; Calabi, F. ; Agostiano, A. ; Gigli, G. ; Rossi, M. Deployment and Exploitation of Nanotechnology Nanomaterials and Nanomedicine. AIP Conf. Proc., 2018, 1990 (1), 020001. 10.1063/1.5047755.
Khan, I. ; Saeed, K. ; Khan, I. Nanoparticles: Properties, Applications and Toxicities. Arab. J. Chem., 2019, 12 (7), 908–931. 10.1016/j.arabjc.2017.05.011.
Zhang, L. ; Gu, F. X. ; Chan, J. M. ; Wang, A. Z. ; Langer, R. S. ; Farokhzad, O. C. Nanoparticles in Medicine: Therapeutic Applications and Developments. Clin. Pharmacol. Ther., 2008, 83 (5), 761–769. 10.1038/sj.clpt.6100400.
Doan, H. V. ; Soltani, E. ; Ingelbrecht, J. ; Soltani, M. Medicinal Herbs and Plants: Potential Treatment of Monogenean Infections in Fish. Rev. Fish. Sci. Aquac., 2020, 28 (2), 260–282. 10.1080/23308249.2020.1712325.

Stratev, D. ; Zhelyazkov, G. ; Noundou, X. S. ; Krause, R. W. M. Beneficial Effects of Medicinal Plants in Fish Diseases. Aquac. Int., 2018, 26 (1), 289–308. 10.1007/s10499-017-0219-x.
Wei, H. ; Zhang, X.-Z. ; Chen, W.-Q. ; Cheng, S.-X. ; Zhuo, R.-X. Self-Assembled Thermosensitive Micelles Based on Poly(L-Lactide-Star Block-N-Isopropylacrylamide) for Drug Delivery. J. Biomed. Mater. Res. A, 2007, 83A (4), 980–989. 10.1002/jbm.a.31295.
Khani Oushani, A. ; Soltani, M. ; Sheikhzadeh, N. ; Shamsaie Mehrgan, M. ; Rajabi Islami, H. Effects of Dietary Chitosan and Nano-Chitosan Loaded Clinoptilolite on Growth and Immune Responses of Rainbow Trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Fish Shellfish Immunol., 2020, 98, 210–217. 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.01.016.
Dawood, M. A. O. ; Gewaily, M. S. ; Soliman, A. A. ; Shukry, M. ; Amer, A. A. ; Younis, E. M. ; Abdel-Warith, A.-W. A. ; Van Doan, H. ; Saad, A. H. ; Aboubakr, M. ; et al. Marine-Derived Chitosan Nanoparticles Improved the Intestinal Histo-Morphometrical Features in Association with the Health and Immune Response of Grey Mullet (Liza Ramada). Mar. Drugs, 2020, 18 (12), 611. 10.3390/md18120611.
Farahnak Roudsari, S. ; Rajabi Islami, H. ; Mousavi, S. A. ; Shamsaie Mehrgan, M. Folic Acid-Coated Nanochitosan Ameliorated the Growth Performance, Hematological Parameters, Antioxidant Status, and Immune Responses of Rainbow Trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Front. Vet. Sci., 2021, 8, 647722.
Abdel Rahman, A. N. ; Shakweer, M. S. ; Algharib, S. A. ; Abdelaty, A. I. ; Kamel, S. ; Ismail, T. A. ; Daoush, W. M. ; Ismail, S. H. ; Mahboub, H. H. Silica Nanoparticles Acute Toxicity Alters Ethology, Neuro-Stress Indices, and Physiological Status of African Catfish (Clarias gariepinus). Aquac. Rep., 2022, 23, 101034. 10.1016/j.aqrep.2022.101034.
Abdel-Tawwab, M. ; Razek, N. A. ; Abdel-Rahman, A. M. Immunostimulatory Effect of Dietary Chitosan Nanoparticles on the Performance of Nile Tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus (L.). Fish Shellfish Immunol., 2019, 88, 254–258. 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.02.063.
Xia, I. F. ; Cheung, J. S. ; Wu, M. ; Wong, K.-S. ; Kong, H.-K. ; Zheng, X.-T. ; Wong, K.-H. ; Kwok, K. W. Dietary Chitosan-Selenium Nanoparticle (CTS-SeNP) Enhance Immunity and Disease Resistance in Zebrafish. Fish Shellfish Immunol., 2019, 87, 449–459. 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.01.042.
Alishahi, A. ; Mirvaghefi, A. ; Tehrani, M. R. ; Farahmand, H. ; Koshio, S. ; Dorkoosh, F. A. ; Elsabee, M. Z. Chitosan Nanoparticle to Carry Vitamin C through the Gastrointestinal Tract and Induce the Non-Specific Immunity System of Rainbow Trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Carbohydr. Polym., 2011, 86 (1), 142–146. 10.1016/j.carbpol.2011.04.028.
Elabd, H. ; Wang, H.-P. ; Shaheen, A. ; Matter, A. Astragalus Membranaceus Nanoparticles Markedly Improve Immune and Anti-Oxidative Responses; and Protection against Aeromonas veronii in Nile Tilapia Oreochromis niloticus. Fish Shellfish Immunol., 2020, 97, 248–256. 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.12.025.
Elabd, H. ; Wang, H.-P. ; Shaheen, A. ; Matter, A. Nano Spirulina Dietary Supplementation Augments Growth, Antioxidative and Immunological Reactions, Digestion, and Protection of Nile Tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus, against Aeromonas veronii and Some Physical Stressors. Fish Physiol. Biochem., 2020, 46 (6), 2143–2155. 10.1007/s10695-020-00864-y.
Mahboub, H. H. ; Khedr, M. H. E. ; Elshopakey, G. E. ; Shakweer, M. S. ; Mohamed, D. I. ; Ismail, T. A. ; Ismail, S. H. ; Abdel Rahman, A. N. Impact of Silver Nanoparticles Exposure on Neuro-Behavior, Hematology, and Oxidative Stress Biomarkers of African Catfish (Clarias gariepinus). Aquaculture, 2021, 544, 737082. 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2021.737082.
Mahboub, H. H. ; Rashidian, G. ; Hoseinifar, S. H. ; Kamel, S. ; Zare, M. ; Ghafarifarsani, H. ; Algharib, S. A. ; Moonmanee, T. ; Van Doan, H. Protective Effects of Allium Hirtifolium Extract against Foodborne Toxicity of Zinc Oxide Nanoparticles in Common Carp (Cyprinus garpio). Comp. Biochem. Physiol. Part C Toxicol. Pharmacol., 2022, 257, 109345. 10.1016/j.cbpc.2022.109345.
Rashidian, G. ; Lazado, C. C. ; Mahboub, H. H. ; Mohammadi-Aloucheh, R. ; Prokić, M. D. ; Nada, H. S. ; Faggio, C. Chemically and Green Synthesized ZnO Nanoparticles Alter Key Immunological Molecules in Common Carp (Cyprinus carpio) Skin Mucus. Int. J. Mol. Sci., 2021, 22 (6), 3270. 10.3390/ijms22063270.
Mahboub, H. H. ; Rashidian, G. ; Hoseinifar, S. H. ; Kamel, S. ; Zare, M. ; Ghafarifarsani, H. ; Algharib, S. A. ; Moonmanee, T. ; Van Doan, H. Protective Effects of Allium Hirtifolium Extract against Foodborne Toxicity of Zinc Oxide Nanoparticles in Common Carp (Cyprinus carpio). Comp. Biochem. Physiol. Part C Toxicol. Pharmacol., 2022, 257, 109345. 10.1016/j.cbpc.2022.109345.
Almanaa, T. N. ; Aref, M. ; Kakakhel, M. A. ; Elshopakey, G. E. ; Mahboub, H. H. ; Abdelazim, A. M. ; Kamel, S. ; Belali, T. M. ; Abomughaid, M. M. ; Alhujaily, M. ; et al. Silica Nanoparticle Acute Toxicity on Male Rattus Norvegicus Domestica: Ethological Behavior, Hematological Disorders, Biochemical Analyses, Hepato-Renal Function, and Antioxidant-Immune Response. Front. Bioeng. Biotechnol., 2022, 10, 868111. 10.3389/fbioe.2022.868111.
Mahboub, H. H. ; Beheiry, R. R. ; Shahin, S. E. ; Behairy, A. ; Khedr, M. H. E. ; Ibrahim , Seham. M. ; Elshopakey, G. E. ; Daoush, W. M. ; Altohamy, D. E. ; Ismail, T. A. ; et al. Adsorptivity of Mercury on Magnetite Nano-Particles and Their Influences on Growth, Economical, Hemato-Biochemical, Histological Parameters and Bioaccumulation in Nile Tilapia (Oreochromis Niloticus). Aquat. Toxicol., 2021, 235, 105828. 10.1016/j.aquatox.2021.105828.
Kumar, N. ; Krishnani, K. K. ; Gupta, S. K. ; Singh, N. P. Selenium Nanoparticles Enhanced Thermal Tolerance and Maintain Cellular Stress Protection of Pangasius Hypophthalmus Reared under Lead and High Temperature. Respir. Physiol. Neurobiol., 2017, 246, 107–116. 10.1016/j.resp.2017.09.006.
Fajardo, C. ; Martinez-Rodriguez, G. ; Blasco, J. ; Mancera, J. M. ; Thomas, B. ; De Donato, M. Nanotechnology in Aquaculture: Applications, Perspectives and Regulatory Challenges. Aquac. Fish., 2022, 7 (2), 185–200. 10.1016/j.aaf.2021.12.006.
Behera, T. ; Swain, P. ; Rangacharulu, P. V. ; Samanta, M. Nano-Fe as Feed Additive Improves the Hematological and Immunological Parameters of Fish, Labeo Rohita H. Appl. Nanosci., 2014, 4 (6), 687–694. 10.1007/s13204-013-0251-8.
Handy, R. D. ; Cornelis, G. ; Fernandes, T. ; Tsyusko, O. ; Decho, A. ; Sabo-Attwood, T. ; Metcalfe, C. ; Steevens, J. A. ; Klaine, S. J. ; Koelmans, A. A. ; et al. Ecotoxicity Test Methods for Engineered Nanomaterials: Practical Experiences and Recommendations from the Bench. Environ. Toxicol. Chem., 2012, 31 (1), 15–31. 10.1002/etc.706.
Sekhon, B. S. Nanotechnology in Agri-Food Production: An Overview. Nanotechnol. Sci. Appl., 2014, 7, 31–53. 10.2147/NSA.S39406.
Elsabahy, M. ; Wooley, K. L. Cytokines as Biomarkers of Nanoparticle Immunotoxicity. Chem. Soc. Rev., 2013, 42 (12), 5552–5576. 10.1039/c3cs60064e.
Moore, K. W. ; de Waal Malefyt, R. ; Coffman, R. L. ; O'Garra, A. Interleukin-10 and the Interleukin-10 Receptor. Annu. Rev. Immunol., 2001, 19, 683–765. 10.1146/annurev.immunol.19.1.683.
Ren, K. ; Torres, R. Role of Interleukin-1β during Pain and Inflammation. Brain Res. Rev., 2009, 60 (1), 57–64. 10.1016/j.brainresrev.2008.12.020.
Zou, J. ; Peddie, S. ; Scapigliati, G. ; Zhang, Y.-A. ; Bols, N. ; Ellis, A. E. ; Secombes, C. J. Functional Characterisation of the Recombinant Tumor Necrosis Factor in Rainbow Trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Dev. Comp. Immunol., 2003, 27, 813–822. 10.1016/S0145-305X(03)00077-6.

Abu-Elala, N. M. ; Shaalan, M. ; Ali, S. E. ; Younis, N. A. Immune Responses and Protective Efficacy of Diet Supplementation with Selenium Nanoparticles against Cadmium Toxicity in Oreochromis niloticus. Aquac. Res., 2021, 52 (8), 3677–3686. 10.1111/are.15212.
Zhou, X. ; Wang, Y. ; Gu, Q. ; Li, W. Effects of Different Dietary Selenium Sources (Selenium Nanoparticle and Selenomethionine) on Growth Performance, Muscle Composition and Glutathione Peroxidase Enzyme Activity of Crucian Carp (Carassius Auratus gibelio). Aquaculture, 2009, 291 (1), 78–81. 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2009.03.007.
Ashouri, S. ; Keyvanshokooh, S. ; Salati, A. P. ; Johari, S. A. ; Pasha-Zanoosi, H. Effects of Different Levels of Dietary Selenium Nanoparticles on Growth Performance, Muscle Composition, Blood Biochemical Profiles and Antioxidant Status of Common Carp (Cyprinus carpio). Aquaculture, 2015, 446, 25–29. 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2015.04.021.
Qin, F. ; Shi, M. ; Yuan, H. ; Yuan, L. ; Lu, W. ; Zhang, J. ; Tong, J. ; Song, X. Dietary Nano-Selenium Relieves Hypoxia Stress and, Improves Immunity and Disease Resistance in the Chinese Mitten Crab (Eriocheir sinensis). Fish Shellfish Immunol., 2016, 54, 481–488. 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.04.131.
Neamat-Allah, A. N. F. ; Mahmoud, E. A. ; Abd El Hakim, Y. Efficacy of Dietary Nano-Selenium on Growth, Immune Response, Antioxidant, Transcriptomic Profile and Resistance of Nile Tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus against Streptococcus Iniae Infection. Fish Shellfish Immunol., 2019, 94, 280–287. 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.09.019.
Ibrahim, A. Th . A. Toxicological Impact of Green Synthesized Silver Nanoparticles and Protective Role of Different Selenium Type on Oreochromis Niloticus: Hematological and Biochemical Response. J. Trace Elem. Med. Biol., 2020, 61, 126507. 10.1016/j.jtemb.2020.126507.
Li, L. ; Liu, Z. ; Quan, J. ; Sun, J. ; Lu, J. ; Zhao, G. Comprehensive Proteomic Analysis to Elucidate the Anti-Heat Stress Effects of Nano-Selenium in Rainbow Trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Ecotoxicol. Environ. Saf., 2022, 241, 113736. 10.1016/j.ecoenv.2022.113736.
Kumar, N. ; Chandan, N. K. ; Wakchaure, G. ; Singh, N. P. Synergistic Effect of Zinc Nanoparticles and Temperature on Acute Toxicity with Response to Biochemical Markers and Histopathological Attributes in Fish. Comp. Biochem. Physiol. Part C Toxicol. Pharmacol., 2020, 229, 108678. 10.1016/j.cbpc.2019.108678.
El-Saadony, M. T. ; Alkhatib, F. M. ; Alzahrani, S. O. ; Shafi, M. E. ; El . Abdel-Hamid, S. ; Taha, T. F. ; Aboelenin, S. M. ; Soliman, M. M. ; Ahmed, N. H. Impact of Mycogenic Zinc Nanoparticles on Performance, Behavior, Immune Response, and Microbial Load in Oreochromis niloticus. Saudi J. Biol. Sci., 2021, 28 (8), 4592–4604. 10.1016/j.sjbs.2021.04.066.
Mahboub, H. H. ; Shahin, K. ; Zaglool, A. W. ; Roushdy, E. M. ; Ahmed, S. A. A. Efficacy of Nano Zinc Oxide Dietary Supplements on Growth Performance, Immunomodulation and Disease Resistance of African Catfish Clarias Gariepinus. Dis. Aquat. Organ., 2020, 142, 147–160. 10.3354/dao03531.
Huang, C.-M. ; Chen, C.-H. ; Pornpattananangkul, D. ; Zhang, L. ; Chan, M. ; Hsieh, M.-F. ; Zhang, L. Eradication of Drug Resistant Staphylococcus Aureus by Liposomal Oleic Acids. Biomaterials, 2011, 32 (1), 214–221. 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2010.08.076.
Dananjaya, S. H. S. ; Godahewa, G. I. ; Jayasooriya, R. G. P. T. ; Lee, J. ; De Zoysa, M. Antimicrobial Effects of Chitosan Silver Nano Composites (CAgNCs) on Fish Pathogenic Aliivibrio (Vibrio) Salmonicida. Aquaculture, 2016, 450, 422–430. 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2015.08.023.
Elabd, H. ; Youssuf, H. ; Mahboub, H. H. ; Salem, S. M. R. ; Husseiny, W. A. ; Khalid, A. ; El-Desouky, H. S. ; Faggio, C. Growth, Hemato-Biochemical, Immune-Antioxidant Response, and Gene Expression in Nile Tilapia (Oreochromis Niloticus) Received Nano Iron Oxide-Incorporated Diets. Fish Shellfish Immunol., 2022. 10.1016/j.fsi.2022.07.051.
Bernardos, A. ; Piacenza, E. ; Sancenón, F. ; Hamidi, M. ; Maleki, A. ; Turner, R. J. ; Martínez-Máñez, R. Mesoporous Silica-Based Materials with Bactericidal Properties. Small, 2019, 15 (24), 1900669. 10.1002/smll.201900669.
Selvarajan, V. ; Obuobi, S. ; Ee, P. L. R. Silica Nanoparticles—A Versatile Tool for the Treatment of Bacterial Infections. Front. Chem., 2020, 8, 602.
Alandiyjany, M. N. ; Kishawy, A. T. Y. ; Abdelfattah-Hassan, A. ; Eldoumani, H. ; Elazab, S. T. ; El-Mandrawy, S. A. M. ; Saleh, A. A. ; ElSawy, N. A. ; Attia, Y. A. ; Arisha, A. H. ; et al. Nano-Silica and Magnetized-Silica Mitigated Lead Toxicity: Their Efficacy on Bioaccumulation Risk, Performance, and Apoptotic Targeted Genes in Nile Tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus). Aquat. Toxicol., 2022, 242, 106054. 10.1016/j.aquatox.2021.106054.
Dong, W. ; Su, J. ; Chen, Y. ; Xu, D. ; Cheng, L. ; Mao, L. ; Gao, Y. ; Yuan, F. Characterization and Antioxidant Properties of Chitosan Film Incorporated with Modified Silica Nanoparticles as an Active Food Packaging. Food Chem., 2022, 373, 131414. 10.1016/j.foodchem.2021.131414.
Khosravi-Katuli, K. ; Prato, E. ; Lofrano, G. ; Guida, M. ; Vale, G. ; Libralato, G. Effects of Nanoparticles in Species of Aquaculture Interest. Environ. Sci. Pollut. Res., 2017, 24 (21), 17326–17346. 10.1007/s11356-017-9360-3.
Jarvie, H. P. ; Al-Obaidi, H. ; King, S. M. ; Bowes, M. J. ; Lawrence, M. J. ; Drake, A. F. ; Green, M. A. ; Dobson, P. J. Fate of Silica Nanoparticles in Simulated Primary Wastewater Treatment. Environ. Sci. Technol., 2009, 43 (22), 8622–8628. 10.1021/es901399q.
Bashar, A. ; Hasan, N. A. ; Haque, M. M. ; Rohani, Md. F. ; Hossain, Md. S. Effects of Dietary Silica Nanoparticle on Growth Performance, Protein Digestibility, Hematology, Digestive Morphology, and Muscle Composition of Nile Tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus. Front. Mar. Sci., 2021, 8, 706179.
Ismail, S. H. ; Hamdy, A. ; Ismail, T. A. ; Mahboub, H. H. ; Mahmoud, W. H. ; Daoush, W. M. Synthesis and Characterization of Antibacterial Carbopol/ZnO Hybrid Nanoparticles Gel. Crystals, 2021, 11 (9), 1092. 10.3390/cryst11091092.
Selvaraj, V. ; Mahboub, H. H. ; Ganapathi, U. ; Chandran, S. K. ; Al-Onazi, W. ; Al-Mohaimeed, A. M. ; Chen, T.-W. ; Faggio, C. ; Paulraj, B. Enhanced Photodegradation of Methylene Blue from Aqueous Solution Using Al-Doped ZnS Nanoparticles. Environ. Sci. Pollut. Res., 2022. 10.1007/s11356-022-20634-y.
Embregts, C. W. E. ; Forlenza, M. Oral Vaccination of Fish: Lessons from Humans and Veterinary Species. Dev. Comp. Immunol., 2016, 64, 118–137. 10.1016/j.dci.2016.03.024.
Luis, A. I. S. ; Campos, E. V. R. ; de Oliveira, J. L. ; Fraceto, L. F. Trends in Aquaculture Sciences: From Now to Use of Nanotechnology for Disease Control. Rev. Aquac., 2019, 11 (1), 119–132. 10.1111/raq.12229.
Irvine, D. J. ; Swartz, M. A. ; Szeto, G. L. Engineering Synthetic Vaccines Using Cues from Natural Immunity. Nat. Mater., 2013, 12 (11), 978–990. 10.1038/nmat3775.
Smith, D. M. ; Simon, J. K. ; Baker Jr, J. R. Applications of Nanotechnology for Immunology. Nat. Rev. Immunol., 2013, 13 (8), 592–605. 10.1038/nri3488.
Shaalan, M. ; Saleh, M. ; El-Mahdy, M. ; El-Matbouli, M. Recent Progress in Applications of Nanoparticles in Fish Medicine: A Review. Nanomedicine Nanotechnol. Biol. Med., 2016, 12 (3), 701–710. 10.1016/j.nano.2015.11.005.

Doll, T. A. P. F. ; Raman, S. ; Dey, R. ; Burkhard, P. Nanoscale Assemblies and Their Biomedical Applications. J. R. Soc. Interface, 2013, 10 (80), 20120740. 10.1098/rsif.2012.0740.
Treuel, L. ; Jiang, X. ; Nienhaus, G. U. New Views on Cellular Uptake and Trafficking of Manufactured Nanoparticles. J. R. Soc. Interface, 2013, 10 (82), 20120939. 10.1098/rsif.2012.0939.
Zhao, L. ; Seth, A. ; Wibowo, N. ; Zhao, C.-X. ; Mitter, N. ; Yu, C. ; Middelberg, A. P. J. Nanoparticle Vaccines. Vaccine, 2014, 32 (3), 327–337. 10.1016/j.vaccine.2013.11.069.
Nel, A. E. ; Mädler, L. ; Velegol, D. ; Xia, T. ; Hoek, E. M. V. ; Somasundaran, P. ; Klaessig, F. ; Castranova, V. ; Thompson, M. Understanding Biophysicochemical Interactions at the Nano–Bio Interface. Nat. Mater., 2009, 8 (7), 543–557. 10.1038/nmat2442.
Fang, P. ; Li, X. ; Dai, J. ; Cole, L. ; Camacho, J. A. ; Zhang, Y. ; Ji, Y. ; Wang, J. ; Yang, X.-F. ; Wang, H. Immune Cell Subset Differentiation and Tissue Inflammation. J. Hematol. Oncol.J Hematol Oncol, 2018, 11 (1), 97. 10.1186/s13045-018-0637-x.
Mongillo, J. F. Nanotechnology 101; Greenwood Press: Westport, Conn., 2007.
Ogunkalu, O. A. Utilization of Nanotechnology in Aquaculture and Seafood Sectors. Eurasian J. Food Sci. Technol., 2019, 3 (1), 26–33.
Ghosal, S. ; Singh, S. ; Bhattacharya, S. K. Alkaloids of Mucuna Pruries Chemistry and Pharmacology. Planta Med., 1971, 19 (3), 280–284.
Mohammadi, N. ; Tukmechi, A. The Effects of Iron Nanoparticles in Combination with Lactobacillus Casei on Growth Parameters and Probiotic Counts in Rainbow Trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) Intestine. 2015, 70, 47–53.
Zhang, Y. ; Wang, L. ; Sun, Y. ; Zhu, Y. ; Zhong, Z. ; Shi, J. ; Fan, C. ; Huang, Q. Conjugation of Dexamethasone to C60 for the Design of an Anti-Inflammatory Nanomedicine with Reduced Cellular Apoptosis. ACS Appl. Mater. Interfaces, 2013, 5 (11), 5291–5297. 10.1021/am401153k.
Kim, M.-G. ; Park, J. Y. ; Shon, Y. ; Kim, G. ; Shim, G. ; Oh, Y.-K. Nanotechnology and Vaccine Development. Asian J. Pharm. Sci., 2014, 9 (5), 227–235. 10.1016/j.ajps.2014.06.002.
Keikha, R. ; Daliri, K. ; Jebali, A. The Use of Nanobiotechnology in Immunology and Vaccination. Vaccines, 2021, 9 (2), 74. 10.3390/vaccines9020074.
Jeong, K.-H. ; Kim, H. J. ; Kim, H.-J. Current Status and Future Directions of Fish Vaccines Employing Virus-like Particles. Fish Shellfish Immunol., 2020, 100, 49–57. 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.02.060.

Efficacy and Limitations of Immunomodulators

Abram, Q. H. , Dixon, B. , & Katzenback, B. A. (2017). Impacts of low temperature on the teleost immune system. Biology, 6(4), 39.
Agarwal, S. S. , & V. K. Singh . (1999). Immunomodulators: A review of studies on Indian medicinal plants and synthetic peptides. Part-I: Medicinal plants. Proceedings of the Indian National Science Academy-Part B: Biological Sciences, 65(3–4), 179–204.
Agboola, J. O. , Schiavone, M. , Øverland, M. , Morales-Lange, B. , Lagos, L. , Arntzen, M. Ø. ,… … & Hansen, J. Ø. (2021). Impact of down-stream processing on functional properties of yeasts and the implications on gut health of Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar). Scientific reports, 11(1), 1–14.
Alamgir, M. , & Uddin, S. J. (2010). Recent advances on the ethnomedicinal plants as immunomodulatory agents. Ethnomedicine: a source of complementary therapeutics, 37(661), 2.
Allison, A. C. , & Eugui, E. M. (2005). Mechanisms of action of mycophenolate mofetil in preventing acute and chronic allograft rejection. Transplantation, 80(2-S), S181–S190.
Almawi, W. Y. , & Melemedjian, O. K. (2002). Molecular mechanisms of glucocorticoid antiproliferative effects: antagonism of transcription factor activity by glucocorticoid receptor. Journal of leukocyte biology, 71(1), 9–15.
Alvarez-Pellitero, P. , Sitjà-Bobadilla, A. , Bermúdez, R. , & Quiroga, M. I. (2006). Levamisole activates several innate immune factors in Scophthalmus maximus (L.)(Teleostei). International Journal of Immunopathology and Pharmacology, 19(4), 727–738.
Arya, Vikrant , & Vivek Kumar Gupta . (2011). A review on marine immunomodulators. Int J Pharm Life Sci, 2(5), 751–758.
Asherson, R. A. , Gunter, K. , Daya, D. , & Shoenfeld, Y. (2008). Multiple autoimmune diseases in a young woman: tuberculosis and splenectomy as possible triggering factors? Another example of the “mosaic” of autoimmunity. The Journal of rheumatology, 35(6), 1224–1227.
Avorn, J. (2011). Learning about the safety of drugs—a half-century of evolution. New England journal of medicine, 365(23), 2151–2153.
Banstola, A. , Jeong, J. H. , & Yook, S. (2020). Immunoadjuvants for cancer immunotherapy: A review of recent developments. Actabiomaterialia, 114, 16–30.
Barman, D. , Nen, P. , Mandal, S. C. , & Kumar, V. (2013). Immunostimulants for aquaculturehealth management. J Marine Sci Res Dev, 3(3), 1–11.
Barrett, R. (2022). Calcineurin inhibitors and related medicines: a cohort study examining England's primary care prescription changes during the COVID-19 pandemic (January 2019 to March 2021). DARU Journal of Pharmaceutical Sciences, 30(1), 59–66.
Bascones-Martinez, A. , Mattila, R. , Gomez-Font, R. , & Meurman, J. H. (2014). Immunomodulatory drugs: Oral and systemic adverse effects. Medicina oral, patologia oral y cirugiabucal, 19(1), e24.
Ben Dhaou, B. , Boussema, F. , Aydi, Z. , Baili, L. , Tira, H. , & Cherif, O. (2012). Corticosteroid-associated complications in elderly. Tunis Med., 90, 774–777.
Benguira S. , Leblond V. S. , Weber J.-P. , & Hontela A. (2002) Loss of capacity to elevate plasma cortisol in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) treated with a single injection of o, p’- dichlorodiphenyldichloroethane. Environ Toxicol Chem, 21, 1753–1756
Besse, Benjamin , et al. (2016). Dendritic cell-derived exosomes as maintenance immunotherapy after first line chemotherapy in NSCLC. Oncoimmunology, 5(4), 1071008.
Bode, Christian , et al. (2011). CpG DNA as a vaccine adjuvant. Expert review of vaccines, 10(4), 499–511.
Bricknell, I. , Dalmo, R. A. (2005). The use of immunostimulants in fish larval aquaculture. Fish& Shellfish immunology, 19 (2005), 457–472.
Brinker, A. M. , Ma, J. , Lipsky, P. E. , & Raskin, I. (2007). Medicinal chemistryand pharmacology of genus Tripterygium (Celastraceae). Phytochemistry 68,732–766.

Carmona-Ribeiro, A. M. (2017). Nanomaterials based on lipids for vaccine development. In Micro and Nanotechnology in Vaccine Development (pp. 241–257). William Andrew Publishing.
Carsons, S. E. (2008). Issues related to clinical trials of oral and biologic disease-modifying agents for Sjögren's syndrome. Rheumatic Disease Clinics of North America, 34(4), 1011–1023.
Castro, R. , Tafalla, C. (2015). Overview of fish immunity (Book Chapter). Mucosal Health in Aquaculture. pp. 3–54.
Castro, R. , Jouneau, L. , Tacchi, L. , Macqueen, D. J. , Alzaid, A. , Secombes, C. J. , Martin, S. A. , Boudinot, P. (2015). Disparate developmental patterns of immune responses to bacterial and viral infections in fish. Sci. Rep, 5, 15458.
Chandra, R. K. (1997). Nutrition and the immune system: an introduction. Am. J. Clin. Nutr., 66, 460S–463S.
Chauhan, A. , Khan, T. , & Omri, A. (2021). Design and Encapsulation of Immunomodulators onto Gold Nanoparticles in Cancer Immunotherapy. International Journal of Molecular Sciences, 22(15), 8037.
Chen, Guo-Yun , et al. (2014). Broad and direct interaction between TLR and Siglec families of pattern recognition receptors and its regulation by Neu1. Elife, e04066.
Ching, Joo Jie , et al. (2021). Immunomodulatory activity of βglucans in fish: Relationship between βglucan administration parameters and immune response induced. Aquaculture Research, 52(5), 1824–1845.
Chu W. H. (2006) Adjuvant effect of propolis on immunisation by inactivated Aeromonas hydrophila in carp (Carassius auratus gibelio). Fish Shellfish Immu, 21, 113–117. doi:10.1016/j.fsi.2005.10.002
Chung, J. , Choi, R. , Seo, E.-K. , Nam, J.-W. , Dong, M.-S. , Shin, E. , et al. (2012). Anti-inflammatory effects of (Z)-ligustilide through suppressionof mitogen-activated protein kinases and nuclear factor-κBactivationpathways. Arch. Pharm. Res., 35, 723–732.
Da Silva, C. A. , Chalouni, C. , Williams, A. , Hartl, D. , Lee, C. G. , Elias, J. A. (2009). Chitin Is a Size-Dependent Regulator of Macrophage TNF and IL-10 Production. J. Immunol, 182, 3573–3582.
Dinesh, M. G. , et al. (2011). Leaf and seed extracts of Bixa orellana L. exert anti-microbial activity against bacterial pathogens. Journal of Applied Pharmaceutical Science Issue, 116–120.
Djordjevic, B. , Skugor, S. , Jørgensen, S. M. , Overland, M. , Mydland, L. T. , & Krasnov, A. (2009). Modulation of Splenic Immune Responses to Bacterial Lipopolysaccharide in Rainbow Trout (Oncorhynchus Mykiss) Fed Lentinan, a Beta-GlucanFrom Mushroom Lentinula Edodes. Fish Shellfish Immunol, 26(2), 201–209.
Dügenci, S. K. , Arda, N. , & Candan, A. (2003). Some medicinal plants as immunostimulant for fish. Journal of Ethnopharmacology, 88(1), 99–106. doi:10.1016/s0378-8741(03)00182-x
Dummer, R. , Hauschild, A. , Henseler, T. , & Burg, G. (1998). Combined interferon-α and interleukin-2 as adjuvant treatment for melanoma. The Lancet, 352(9131), 908–909.
Duncan, P. L. and Klesius, P. H. (1996). Dietary immunostimulants enhance nonspecific immune responses in channel catfish but not resistance to Edwardsiellaictaluri. Journal of Aquatic Animal Health, 8(3), 241–248.
El Enshasy, H. A. , & Hatti-Kaul, R. (2013). Mushroom immunomodulators: unique molecules with unlimited applications. Trends in biotechnology, 31(12), 668–677.
Emadi, A. , Jones, R. J. , & Brodsky, R. A. (2009). Cyclophosphamide and cancer: golden anniversary. Nature reviews Clinical oncology, 6(11), 638–647.
Fernandez-Tejada, Alberto , et al. (2014). Design, synthesis, and immunologic evaluation of vaccine adjuvant conjugates based on QS-21 and tucaresol. Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry, 22(21), 5917–5923.
Fireman, M. , DiMartini, A. F. , Armstrong, S. C. , & Cozza, K. L. (2004). Immunosuppressants. Psychosomatics, 45(4), 354–360.
Fuhrman, J. A. (1999). Marine viruses and their biogeochemical and ecological effects. Nature, 399, 541–548.
Galeotti M. (1998) Some aspects of the application of immunostimulants and a critical review of methods for their evaluation. J ApplIchthyo, l14, 189–199.
Galindo-Villegas J. , & Hosokawa H. (2004) Immunostimulants: towards temporary prevention of diseases in marine fish. In Cruz Suarez L. E. , Ricque M. D. , Nieto Lopez M. G. , Villareal D. , Scholz Y. , Gonzalez M. , Eds. Advances en Nutricion. Acuicola VII Memorias del VII Simposium Internationale de Nutricion Acuícola, (vols 16–19, pp 279–319).
Gjessing, M. C. , Falk, K. , Weli, S. C. , Koppang, E. O. , & Kvellestad, A. (2012). A sequential study of incomplete Freund's adjuvant-induced peritonitis in Atlantic cod. Fish Shellfish Immunol, 32, 141–150.
Gupta, A. K. , Adamiak, A. , & Chow, M. (2002). Tacrolimus: a review of its use for the management of dermatoses. Journal of the European Academy of Dermatology and Venereology, 16(2), 100–114.
Hamajima, K. , Kojima, Y. , Matsui, K. , Toda, Y. , Jounai, N. , Ozaki, T. , Xin, K. Q. , Strong, P. , Okuda, K. (2003). Chitin Micro-Particles: A Useful Adjuvant for Inducing Viral Specific Immunity when Delivered Intranasally with an HIV-DNA Vaccine. Viral Immunol, 16, 541–547.
Heo, Y. , et al. (2004). Serum IgE elevation correlates with blood lead levels in battery manufacturing workers. Human & Experimental Toxicology, 23(5), 209–213.
Hoel, K. , & Lillehaug, A. (1997). Adjuvant activity of polar glycopeptidolipids from Mycobacterium chelonae in experimental vaccines against Aeromonassalmonicidain salmonid fish. Fish Shellfish Immunol, 7, 365–376.
Hynes, Natasha A. , et al. (2011). Immune response of Atlantic salmon to recombinant flagellin. Vaccine, 29(44), 7678–7687.
Ibrahim, M , Khan, M , Rinard, J , & Mustafa, A. (2015). Determination of effective dosage of Phyllanthus niruri to modulate stress in tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus. Bioeng Biosci 3, 68–71.
Jensen, I. , Albuquerque, A. , Sommer, A. I. , & Robertsen, B. (2002). Effect of poly I:C on the expression of Mx proteins and resistance against infection by infectious salmon anaemia virus in Atlantic salmon. Fish Shellfish Immunol, 13, 311–326.
Jiao, X. D. , Cheng, S. , Hu, Y. H. , & Sun, L. (2010). Comparative study of the effects of aluminum adjuvants and Freund's incomplete adjuvant on the immune response to an Edwardsiellatarda major antigen. Vaccine, 28, 1832–1837
Jimenez, N. , Coll, J. , Salguero, F. J. , & Tafalla, C. (2006). Co-injection of interleukin 8 with the glycoprotein gene from viral haemorrhagic septicemia virus (VHSV) modulates the cytokine response in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Vaccine, 24, 5615e26.
Johnson, R. W. , Kreis, H. , Oberbauer, R. , Brattstrom, C. , Claesson, K. , & Eris, J. (2001). Sirolimus allows early cyclosporine withdrawal in renal transplantation resulting in improved renal function and lower blood pressure1, 2, 10. Transplantation, 72(5), 777–786.
Juyal, P. D. , & Singla, L. D. (2001). Herbal immunomodulatory and therapeutic approaches to control parasitic infection in livestock (pp. 1–8). Department of Veterinary Parasitology, College of Veterinary Science. Punjab Agricultural University, India

Kaufmann, E. , Sanz, J. , Dunn, J. L. , Khan, N. , Mendonça, L. E. , Pacis, A. ,… … & Divangahi, M. (2018). BCG educates hematopoietic stem cells to generate protective innate immunity against tuberculosis. Cell, 172(1-2), 176–190.
Kumar, R. A. , Sridevi, K. , Kumar, N. V. , Nanduri, S. , & Rajagopal, S. (2004). Anticancer and immunostimulatory compounds from Andrographispaniculata. J. Ethnopharmacol, 92, 291–295.
Kumar, P. , Rai, S. , Verma, S. K. , Prakash, P. S. , & Chitara, D. (2022). Classification, Mode of Action and Uses of Various Immunomodulators. In Immunomodulators and Human Health (pp. 3–38). Springer, Singapore.
Kyo E. , Uda N. , Suzuki A. , Kakimoto M. , Ushijima M. , Kasuga & Itakura Y. (1998). Immunomodulation and antitumour activities of aged garlic extract. Phytomedicine, 5, 259–267. doi:10.1016/S0944-7113(98)80064-0
Lawrence, Gregor W. , et al. (1997). Phase I trial in humans of an oil-based adjuvant SEPPIC MONTANIDE ISA 720. Vaccine, 15(2), 176–178.
Lazado, C. C. , & Caipang, C. M. (2014). Mucosal immunity and probiotics in fish. Fish Shellfish Immunol, 39(1), 78–89.
Lee, S. J. , Chinen, J. , & Kavanaugh, A. (2010). Immunomodulator therapy: monoclonal antibodies, fusion proteins, cytokines, and immunoglobulins. J Allergy ClinImmunol, 125, S314–S323.
Lee, C. G. , Da Silva, C. A. , Lee, J. Y. , Hartl, D. , Elias, J. A. (2008). Chitin Regulation of Immune Responses: an Old Molecule with New Roles. Curr. Opin. Immunol., 20, 684–689.
Liddicoat, A. M. , & Lavelle, E. C. (2019). Modulation of innate immunity by cyclosporine A. Biochemical pharmacology, 163, 472–480.
Liu, X. , Mei, Z. , Qian, J. , Zeng, Y. , & Wang, M. (2013). Puerarinpartlycounteracts the inflammatory response after cerebral ischemia/reperfusion viaactivating the cholinergic anti-inflammatory pathway. Neural Regen. Res., 8, 3203.
Magdelin S. M. (2005) Culture of ornamental fish, Black molly (*Poecilia sphenops*) using medicinal plants having immunostimulant characteristics. M.Phil Dissertation, Manonmaiam Sundaranar University, India
Magnadottir, B. (2010). Immunological Control of Fish Diseases. Mar Biotechnol, 12, 361–379. 10.1007/s10126-010-9279-x
Manicassamy S. , & Pulendran B. (2009). Modulation of adaptive immunity with Toll-like receptors. SeminImmunol, 21, 185e93.
Marcos, A. , Nova, E. , & Montero. A. (2003). Changes in the immune system are conditioned by nutrition. Eur. J. Clin. Nutr., 57, S66–S69.
Martin, Samuel AM , & Elżbieta Król . (2017). Nutrigenomics and immune function in fish: new insights from omics technologies. Developmental & Comparative Immunology, 75, 86–98.
Martin, S. A. M. , Douglas, A. , Houlihan D. F. , & Secombes, C. J. (2010). Starvation alters the liver transcriptome of the innate immune response in Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar). BMC Genomics, 11, 418.
Martinez-Rubio, Laura , et al. (2013). Effect of functional feeds on fatty acid and eicosanoid metabolism in liver and head kidney of Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar L.) with experimentally induced heart and skeletal muscle inflammation. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 34(6), 1533–1545.
McLoughlin, M. F. , & Graham, D. A. (2007). Alphavirus infections in salmonids—a review. J Fish Dis, 2007(30), 511–531.
Mehana, Elsayed E. , Arshad H. Rahmani , & Salah M. Aly . (2015). Immunostimulants and fish culture: an overview. Annual Research & Review in Biology, 477–489.
Micol, Vicente , et al. (2005). The olive leaf extract exhibits antiviral activity against viral haemorrhagic septicaemia rhabdovirus (VHSV). Antiviral Research, 66 (2-3), 129–136.
Midtlyng, P. , Reitan, L. , & Speilberg, L. (1996). Experimental studies on the efficacy and side-effects of intraperitoneal vaccination of Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar L.) against furunculosis. Fish Shellfish Immunol, 6, 335–350.
Miller, M. T. , Ventura, L. , & Strömland, K. (2009). Thalidomide and misoprostol: ophthalmologic manifestations and associations both expected and unexpected. Birth Defects Research Part A: Clinical and Molecular Teratology, 85(8), 667–676.
Mitoma, H. , Horiuchi, T. , Tsukamoto, H. , & Ueda, N. (2018). Molecular mechanisms of action of anti-TNF-α agents–Comparison among therapeutic TNF-α antagonists. Cytokine, 101, 56–63.
Mizel, S. B. , & Bates, J. T. (2010). Flagellin as an adjuvant: cellular mechanisms and potential. J Immunol, 185, 5677–5682.
Nishimura, K. , Nishimura, S. , Nishi, N. , Saiki, I. , Tokura, S. , Azuma, I. (1984). Immunological Activity of Chitin and its Derivatives. Vaccine, 2, 93–99.
Núñez-Acuña, G. , Gonçalves, A. T. , Valenzuela-Muñoz, V. , Pino-Marambio, J. , Wadsworth, S. , Gallardo-Escárate, C. (2015). Transcriptome immunomodulation of in-feed additives in Atlantic salmon Salmo salar infested with sea lice Caligusrogercresseyi. Fish Shellfish Immunol, 47(1), 450–460.
Olivier, G. , Evelyn, T. P. , & Lallier, R. (1985). Immunity to Aeromonassalmonicida in coho salmon (Oncorhynchuskisutch) induced by modified Freund's complete adjuvant: its non-specific nature and the probable role of macrophages in the phenomenon. Dev Comp Immunol, 9, 419e32.
Opie, E. L. , & Freund, J. (1937). An experimental study of protective inoculation with heat killed tubercle bacilli. J Exp Med, 66, 761–788.
Pacitti, D. , Lawan, M. M. , Feldmann, J. , Sweetman, J. , Wang, T. , Martin, S. A. , Secombes, C. J. (2016). Impact of selenium supplementation on fish antiviral responses: a whole transcriptomic analysis in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) fed supranutritional levels of Sel-Plex®. BMC Genomics., 17, 116.
Parra, David , Felipe E. Reyes-Lopez , & Lluis Tort . (2015). Mucosal immunity and B cells in teleosts: effect of vaccination and stress. Frontiers in Immunology, 6, 354.
Paulsen, Berit . (2001). Plant polysaccharides with immunostimulatory activities. Current Organic Chemistry, 5(9), 939–950.
Poppe, T. T. , & Olav Breck . (1997). Pathology of Atlantic salmon Salmo salar intraperitoneally immunized with oil-adjuvanted vaccine. A case report. Diseases of Aquatic Organisms, 29(3), 219–226.
Porwal, O. , Ozdemir, M. , Kala, D. , & Anwer, E. T. (2021). A review on medicinal plants as potential sources of natural immunomodulatory action. Journal of Drug Delivery and Therapeutics, 11(16), 324–331.
Praseetha (2005) Enrichment of brine shrimp *Artemia franciscana* with commercial probiotics and herbal extracts and their resistance against shrimp pathogen *Vibrio* sp. (*Vibrio parahaemolyticus* and *Vibrio damsela*), M.Phil Dissertation, Manonmaiam Sundaranar University, India
Preiss, J. C. , & Zeitz, M. (2010). Use of methotrexate in patients with inflammatory bowel diseases. Clin Exp Rheumatol, 28, S151–S155.
Pujol, J. , Vansteenkiste, J. , Martino, T. , Atanackovic, D. , Reck, M. , Thomeer, M. et al. (2015). Safety and immunogenicity of MAGE-A3 cancer immunotherapeutic with or without adjuvant chemotherapy in patients with resected stage IB to III MAGE-A3- positive non-

small-cell lung cancer. J Thoracic Oncol, 10(10), 1458–1467.
Roy, Samaresh Pal , et al. (2022). Development and Screening of Anxiolytic and Antistress activity of Novel Health Promoting Tea Fortified with Herbs. Journal of Biologically Active Products from Nature, 12(2), 146–158.
Sageshima, J. , Ciancio, G. , Chen, L. , & Burke III, G. W. (2009). Anti-interleukin-2 receptor antibodies—basiliximab and daclizumab—for the prevention of acute rejection in renal transplantation. Biologics: Targets & Therapy, 3, 319.
Sahoo, P. K. (2007). Role of Imunostimulants in disease resistance of fish. CAB Review: Perspective in Aquaculture, Veterinary Science, Natural and National Resources, 2(045), 1–3.
Sahoo, P. K. , & Mukherjee S. C. (2002). The effect of dietary immunomodulation upon Edwardsiella tarda vaccination in healthy and immunocompromised Indian major carp (Labeo rohita). Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 12(1): 1–16.
Sakai, M. (1999). Current Status of Fish Immunostimulants. Aquaculture, 172, 63–92.
Salinas, I. , & Miller, R. D. (2015). Comparative Phylogeny of the Mucosa-Associated Lymphoid Tissue (Book Chapter) Mucosal Immunology: Fourth Edition1-2, pp. 145–159.
Secombes, C. J. (2016). What is new in fish cytokine research? Fish and Shellfish Immunology, 53, 1–3.
Selvaraj, V. , K. Sampath , & V. Sekar . (2005). Administration of yeast glucan enhances survival and some non-specific and specific immune parameters in carp (Cyprinus carpio) infected with Aeromonas hydrophila. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 19(4), 293–306.
Seung-Cheol, J. , Osamu, T. , Gwan-Sik, J. , Lee, S.-W. , Ishimaru, K. , Seoka, M. , & Kenji, T. (2007). Dietary Medicinal Herbs Improve Growth and Some Non-Specific Immunity of Red Sea Bream Pagrus major. Fisheries Science, 73, 63–69.
Shahbaz Akhtar, M. , Pal, A. K. , Sahu, N. P. , Alexander, C. , Gupta, S. K. , Choudhary, A. K. ,… … & Rajan, M. G. (2010). Stress mitigating and immunomodulatory effect of dietary pyridoxine inLabeorohita (Hamilton) fingerlings. Aquaculture Research, 41(7), 991–1002.
Siqueiros-Cendón, T. , Arévalo-Gallegos, S. , Iglesias-Figueroa, B. F. , García-Montoya, I. A. , Salazar-Martínez, J. , & Rascón-Cruz, Q. (2014). Immunomodulatory effects of lactoferrin. Acta PharmacologicaSinica, 35(5), 557–566.
Sitjà-Bobadilla, Ariadna , Oswaldo Palenzuela , & P. Alvarez-Pellitero . Immune response of turbot, Psetta maxima (L.)(Pisces: Teleostei), to formalin-killed scuticociliates (Ciliophora) and adjuvanted formulations. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 24(1), 1–10.
Sivaram, V. , et al. (2004). Growth and immune response of juvenile greasy groupers (Epinephelus tauvina) fed with herbal antibacterial active principle supplemented diets against Vibrio harveyi infections. Aquaculture, 237(1-4), 9–20.
Siwicki, A. K. , Anderson, D. P. , & Rumsey, G. L. (1994). Dietary intake of immunostimulants by rainbow trout affects non-specific immunity and protection against furunculosis. Veterinary immunology and immunopathology, 41(1-2), 125–139.
Skugor, S. , Grisdale-Helland, B. , Refstie, S. , Afanasyev, S. , Vielma, J. , & Krasnov, A. (2011). Gene expression responses to restricted feeding and extracted soybean meal in Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar L.). Aquac. Nutr., 17, 505–517.
Skugor S. , Jodaa Holm H. , Bjelland A. K. , Pino J. , Evensen Ø , Krasnov A. , Wadsworth S. (2016). Nutrigenomic effects of glucosinolates on liver, muscle and distal kidney in parasite-free and salmon louse infected Atlantic salmon. Parasit Vectors, 9(1), 639.
Song, Ying , et al. (2021). Evaluation of the optimum dietary iron level and its immunomodulatory effects on juvenile Chinese mitten crab, Eriocheir sinensis. Aquaculture, 544, 737122.
Sun, H. X. , Xie, Y. , & Ye, Y. P. (2009). Advances in saponin-based adjuvants. Vaccine, 27(12), 1787–1796.
Suzuki, S. , Okawa, Y. , Okura, Y. , Hashimoto, K. , Suzuki, M. (1982). Immunoadjuvant Effect of Chitin and Chitosan. In Hirano, S. , & Tokura, S. , Eds. Chitin and Chitosan (pp. 210–212). Japan Soc. Chitin Chitosan, Sapporo, Japan.
Tacchi, L. , Bickerdike, R. , Douglas, A. , Secombes, C. J. , & Martin, S. A. (2011). Transcriptomic responses to functional feeds in Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar). Fish Shellfish Immunol, 31(5), 704–715.
Tafalla, C. , Bøgwald, J. & Dalmo, R. A. (2013). Adjuvants and immunostimulants in fish vaccines: current knowledge and future perspectives. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 35(6), 1740–1750.
Timmermans, S. , Souffriau, J. , & Libert, C. (2019). A general introduction to glucocorticoid biology. Frontiers in immunology, 10, 1545.
Tokura, S. , Tamura, H. , Azuma, I. (1999). Immunological Aspects of Chitin and Chitin Derivatives Administered to Animals. In Jollès, P. , & Muzzarelli, R. A. A. , Eds. Chitin and Chitinases. (pp. 279–292). Birkhauser Verlag, Basel, Switzerland.
Tsan, M. F. , & Gao, B. (2004). Cytokine function of heat shock proteins, Am J Physiol Cell Physiol, 286, C739–C744.
Vaibhav, K. , Shrivastava, P. , Javed, H. , Khan, A. , Ahmed, M. E. , Tabassum, R. ,et al. (2012). Piperine suppresses cerebral ischemia–reperfusion-inducedinflammation through the repression of COX-2, NOS-2, and NF-κB in middlecerebral artery occlusion rat model. Mol. Cell. Biochem., 367, 73–84.
Vikrant A. & Gupta, V. K. (2011): A review on marine immunomodulators. International journal of pharmacy and life sciences, 2(5), May:2011, 751–758.
Wang, E. , Liu, T. , Wu, J. , Wang, K. , Chen, D. , Geng, Y. , Huang, X. , Ouyang, P. , Lai, W. & Ai, X. (2019). Molecular characterization, phylogenetic analysis and adjuvant effect of channel catfish interleukin-1βs against Streptococcus iniae. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 87, 155–165.
Wikström, A. C. (2003). Glucocorticoid action and novel mechanisms of steroid resistance: role of glucocorticoid receptor-interacting proteins for glucocorticoid responsiveness. The Journal of Endocrinology, 178(3), 331–337.
Xu, Y.-K. , Liao, S.-G. , Na, Z. , Hu, H.-B. , Li, Y. , & Luo, H.-R. (2012). Gelsemiumalkaloids, immunosuppressive agents from Gelsemium elegans. Fitoterapia, 83, 1120–1124.
Yin, Guojun , et al. (2009). Chinese herbs (Astragalus radix and Ganoderma lucidum) enhance immune response of carp, Cyprinus carpio, and protection against Aeromonas hydrophila. Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 26(1), 140–145.
Ytrestøyl, T. , B. Finstad , & R. S. McKinley . (2001). Swimming performance and blood chemistry in Atlantic salmon spawners exposed to acid river water with elevated aluminium concentrations. Journal of Fish Biology, 58(4), 1025–1038.
Zia, Q. , Fatima, N. , Alam, M. , Bisht, D. , Yadav, P. , Ahmad, I. ,… … & Owais, M. (2010). Immunomodulators: potential in treatment of systemic fungal infections. In Combating Fungal Infections (pp. 397–421). Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg.

Current Status and Recent Advancements with Immunostimulants in Aquaculture

Abdelhamid, Ahmed F. , Hala F. Ayoub , Eman A. Abd El-Gawad , Mohamed F. Abdelghany , and Mohsen Abdel-Tawwab . 2021. Potential effects of dietary seaweeds mixture on the growth performance, antioxidant status, immunity response, and resistance of striped catfish (Pangasianodon hypophthalmus) against Aeromonas hydrophila infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 119:76–83. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.09.043.

Abdel-Latif, Hany M. R. , Mahmoud A. O. Dawood , Mahmoud Alagawany , Caterina Faggio , Joanna Nowosad , and Dariusz Kucharczyk . 2022. Health benefits and potential applications of fucoidan (FCD) extracted from brown seaweeds in aquaculture: An updated review. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 122:115–130. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2022.01.039.

Abdel-Tawwab, Mohsen . 2016. Feed supplementation to freshwater fish: Experimental approaches: LAP Lambert Academic Publishing.

Abdel-Tawwab, Mohsen , Ibrahim Adeshina , and Zeenat A. Issa . 2020. Antioxidants and immune responses, resistance to Aspergilus flavus infection, and growth performance of Nile tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus, fed diets supplemented with yeast, Saccharomyces serevisiae. Animal Feed Science and Technology 263. doi: 10.1016/j.anifeedsci.2020.114484.

Abdel-Tawwab, Mohsen , Hossam A. M. Mounes , Sherien H. H. Shady , and Kareem M. Ahmed . 2021. Effects of yucca, Yucca schidigera, extract and/or yeast, Saccharomyces cerevisiae, as water additives on growth, biochemical, and antioxidants/oxidant biomarkers of Nile tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus. Aquaculture 533. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2020.736122.

Abdel-Tawwab, M. , I. Adeshina , A. Jenyo-Oni , E. K. Ajani , and B. O. Emikpe . 2018. Growth, physiological, antioxidants, and immune response of African catfish, Clarias gariepinus (B.), to dietary clove basil, Ocimum gratissimum, leaf extract and its susceptibility to Listeria monocytogenes infection. Fish Shellfish Immunol 78:346–354. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.04.057.

Abdel-Tawwab, Mohsen , Riad H. Khalil , Amany M. Diab , Mohamed A. Khallaf , Nashwa Abdel-Razek , Hany M. R. Abdel-Latif , and Eman Khalifa . 2021. Dietary garlic and chitosan enhanced the antioxidant capacity, immunity, and modulated the transcription of HSP70 and Cytokine genes in Zearalenone-intoxicated European seabass. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 113:35–41. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.03.012.

AbouElAtta, Mohamed E. , Mohsen AbdelTawwab , Nashwa AbdelRazek , and Taghrid M. N. Abdelhakim . 2019. Effects of dietary probiotic Lactobacillus plantarum and whey protein concentrate on the productive parameters, immunity response and susceptibility of Nile tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus (L.), to Aeromonas sobria infection. Aquaculture Nutrition 25 (6):1367–1377. doi: 10.1111/anu.12957.

Adeshina, I. , Y. A. Adewale , and L. O. Tiamiyu . 2017. Growth performance and innate immune response of Clarias gariepinus infected with Aeromonas hydrophila fed diets fortified with Curcuma longa leaf. West African Journal of Applied Ecology 25 (2):87–99.

Adeshina, Ibrahim , Adetola JenyoOni , Benjamin O. Emikpe , Emmanuel K. Ajani , and Mohsen AbdelTawwab . 2018. Stimulatory effect of dietary clove, Eugenia caryophyllata, bud extract on growth performance, nutrient utilization, antioxidant capacity, and tolerance of African catfish, Clarias gariepinus (B.), to Aeromonas hydrophila infection. Journal of the World Aquaculture Society 50 (2):390–405. doi: 10.1111/jwas.12565.

Ahmadifar, Ehsan , Najmeh Sheikhzadeh , Kambiz Roshanaei , Narges Dargahi , and Caterina Faggio . 2019. Can dietary ginger (Zingiber officinale) alter biochemical and immunological parameters and gene expression related to growth, immunity and antioxidant system in zebrafish (Danio rerio)? Aquaculture 507:341–348. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2019.04.049.

Ahmadifar, Ehsan , Toba Heydari Sadegh , Mahmoud A. O. Dawood , Maryam Dadar , and Najmeh Sheikhzadeh . 2020. The effects of dietary Pediococcus pentosaceus on growth performance, hemato-immunological parameters and digestive enzyme activities of common carp (Cyprinus carpio). Aquaculture 516. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2019.734656.

Alamillo, Erika , Martha Reyes-Becerril , Alberto Cuesta , and Carlos Angulo . 2017. Marine yeast Yarrowia lipolytica improves the immune responses in Pacific red snapper (Lutjanus peru) leukocytes. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 70:48–56. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2017.08.036.

Aly, S. M. , Al Zohairy, M. A. , Rahmani, A. H. , Fathi, M. , and Atti, N. M. A. 2016. Trials to improve the response of Oreochromis niloticus to Aeromonas hydrophila vaccine using immunostimulants (garlic, Echinacea) and probiotics (Organic Green™ and Vet-Yeast™). African Journal of Biotechnology 15 (21): 989–994

Amer, Shimaa A. 2016. Effect of Spirulina platensis as feed supplement on growth performance, immune response and antioxidant status of mono-sex Nile Tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus). Benha veterinary medical journal 30 (1):1–10.

Amoush, Osama A. A. , Soner Bilen , Adem Yavuz Sönmez , and Mahmut Elp . 2021. Antioxidant and immunostimulant responses in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) fed with cherry stem extract. Aquaculture Research 53 (2):487–496. doi: 10.1111/are.15594.

Anjugam, Mahalingam , Arokiadhas Iswarya , Ashokkumar Sibiya , Chandrabose Selvaraj , Sanjeev Kumar Singh , Marimuthu Govindarajan , Naiyf S. Alharbi , Shine Kadaikunnan , Jamal M. Khaled , Jeyachandran Sivakamavalli , and Baskaralingam Vaseeharan . 2022. Molecular interaction analysis of β-1, 3 glucan binding protein with Bacillus licheniformis and evaluation of its immunostimulant property in Oreochromis mossambicus. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 121:183–196. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.12.044.

Araújo, Mariana , Paulo Rema , Isabel Sousa-Pinto , Luís M. Cunha , Maria João Peixoto , Maria A. Pires , Fernanda Seixas , Vanda Brotas , Carolina Beltrán , and Luísa M. P. Valente . 2016. Dietary inclusion of IMTA-cultivated Gracilaria vermiculophylla in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) diets: effects on growth, intestinal morphology, tissue pigmentation, and immunological response. Journal of Applied Phycology 28 (1):679–689. doi: 10.1007/s10811-015-0591-8.

Arena, R. , A. C. L. de Medeiros , G. Secci , S. Mancini , S. Manuguerra , F. Bovera , A. Santulli , G. Parisi , C. M. Messina , and G. Piccolo . 2022. Effects of Dietary Supplementation with Honeybee Pollen and Its Supercritical Fluid Extract on Immune Response and Fillet's Quality of Farmed Gilthead Seabream (Sparus aurata). Animals (Basel) 12 (6). doi: 10.3390/ani12060675.

Arteaga Quico, Caren , Mauro Mariano Astocondor , and Ronald Aquino Ortega . 2021. Dietary supplementation with Chlorella peruviana improve the growth and innate immune response of rainbow trout Oncorhynchus mykiss fingerlings. Aquaculture 533:736117. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2020.736117.

Awad, Elham , Rebeca Cerezuela , and M. Ángeles Esteban . 2015. Effects of fenugreek (Trigonella foenum graecum) on gilthead seabream (Sparus aurata L.) immune status and growth performance. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 45 (2):454–464. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2015.04.035.

Awad, Elham , Dawn Austin , Alastair Lyndon , and Amani Awaad . 2019. Possible effect of hala extract (Pandanus tectorius) on immune status, anti-tumour and resistance to Yersinia ruckeri infection in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 87:620–626. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.02.012.

Awad, Laila Z. , Heba S. El-Mahallawy , Noha S. Abdelnaeim , Manal M. A. Mahmoud , Amina A. Dessouki , and Noha I. ElBanna . 2022. Role of dietary Spirulina platensis and betaine supplementation on growth, hematological, serum biochemical parameters,

antioxidant status, immune responses, and disease resistance in Nile tilapia. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 126:122–130. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2022.05.040.
Azeredo, R. , M. Machado , E. Kreuz , S. Wuertz , A. Oliva-Teles , P. Enes , and B. Costas . 2017. The European seabass (Dicentrarchus labrax) innate immunity and gut health are modulated by dietary plant-protein inclusion and prebiotic supplementation. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 60: 78–87.
Baba, Esin , Gülşen Uluköy , and Canan Öntaş . 2015. Effects of feed supplemented with Lentinula edodes mushroom extract on the immune response of rainbow trout, Oncorhynchus mykiss, and disease resistance against Lactococcus garvieae. Aquaculture 448:476–482. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2015.04.031.
Baba, Esin , Ümit Acar , Canan Öntaş , Osman Sabri Kesbiç , and Sevdan Yilmaz . 2016. The use ofAvena sativaextract againstAeromonas hydrophilaand its effect on growth performance, hematological and immunological parameters in common carp (Cyprinus carpio). Italian Journal of Animal Science 15 (2):325–333. doi: 10.1080/1828051x.2016.1185977.
Bilen, Soner , Yasemin Celik Altunoglu , Ferhat Ulu , and Gouranga Biswas . 2016. Innate immune and growth promoting responses to caper (Capparis spinosa) extract in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 57:206–212. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.08.040.
Bilen, Soner , Gamaia Ali Mohamed Ali , Iman Daw Amhamed , and Ahmed Alhadi Almabrok . 2021. Modulatory effects of laurel-leaf cistus (Cistus laurifolius) ethanolic extract on innate immune responses and disease resistance in common carp (Cyprinus carpio). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 116:98–106. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.07.001.
Bilen, Soner , Tarek Abdalsalam Salem Altief , Keriman Yürüten Özdemir , Mohamed Omar Abdalla Salem , Ertugrul Terzi , and Kerim Güney . 2019. Effect of lemon balm (Melissa officinalis) extract on growth performance, digestive and antioxidant enzyme activities, and immune responses in rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Fish Physiology and Biochemistry 46 (1):471–481. doi: 10.1007/s10695-019-00737-z.
Biller-Takahashi, J. D. , H. J. Montassier , L. S. Takahashi , and E. C. Urbinati . 2016. Levamisole promotes an adjuvant effect on the immunity of pacu (Piaractus mesopotamicus) when immunized with Aeromonas hydrophila, even when provided in the diet. Animal Feed Science and Technology 211:164–173. doi: 10.1016/j.anifeedsci.2015.11.008.
Bindels, Laure B. , Nathalie M. Delzenne , Patrice D. Cani , and Jens Walter . 2015. Towards a more comprehensive concept for prebiotics. Nature Reviews Gastroenterology & Hepatology 12 (5):303–310. doi: 10.1038/nrgastro.2015.47.
Bricknell, I. , and R. Dalmo . 2005. The use of immunostimulants in fish larval aquaculture. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 19 (5):457–472. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2005.03.008.
Brummett, Randall E. , Jérôme Lazard , and John Moehl . 2008. African aquaculture: Realizing the potential. Food Policy 33 (5):371–385. doi: 10.1016/j.foodpol.2008.01.005.
Bulfon, C. , M. Galeotti , and D. Volpatti . 2018. Medicinal plant extracts modulate respiratory burst and proliferation activity of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) leukocytes. Fish Physiol Biochem 44 (1):109–117. doi: 10.1007/s10695-017-0417-5.
Cámara-Ruiz, María , José María García Beltrán , Francisco Antonio Guardiola , and María Ángeles Esteban . 2020. In vitro and in vivo effects of purslane (Portulaca oleracea L.) on gilthead seabream (Sparus aurata L.). AIMS Agriculture and Food 5 (4):799–824. doi: 10.3934/agrfood.2020.4.799.
Carbone, Donatella , and Caterina Faggio . 2016. Importance of prebiotics in aquaculture as immunostimulants. Effects on immune system of Sparus aurata and Dicentrarchus labrax. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 54:172–178. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.04.011.
Cornet, V. , T. D. Khuyen , S. N. M. Mandiki , S. Betoulle , P. Bossier , F. E. Reyes-López , L. Tort , and P. Kestemont . 2021. GAS1: A New β-Glucan Immunostimulant Candidate to Increase Rainbow Trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) Resistance to Bacterial Infections With Aeromonas salmonicida achromogenes. Front Immunol 12:693613. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2021.693613.
da Cunha, Jessyka Arruda , Cecília de Ávila Scheeren , Viviane Pedroso Fausto , Larissa Daiane Willrich de Melo , Bruno Henneman , Clarissa Piccinin Frizzo , Rodrigo de Almeida Vaucher , Agueda Castagna de Vargas , and Bernardo Baldisserotto . 2018. The antibacterial and physiological effects of pure and nanoencapsulated Origanum majorana essential oil on fish infected with Aeromonas hydrophila. Microbial Pathogenesis 124:116–121. doi: 10.1016/j.micpath.2018.08.040.
Dawood, Mahmoud A. O. , Ibrahim S. El-Shamaa , Nagwa I. Abdel-Razik , Azza H. Elkomy , Mahmoud S. Gewaily , Safaa E. Abdo , Ali A. Soliman , Bilal Ahamad Paray , and Nevien Abdelkhalek . 2020. The effect of mannanoligosaccharide on the growth performance, histopathology, and the expression of immune and antioxidative related genes in Nile tilapia reared under chlorpyrifos ambient toxicity. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 103:421–429. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.05.061.
Di Chiacchio, Isabela M. , Isadora M. Paiva , Danilo J. M. de Abreu , Elisângela E. N. Carvalho , Pedro J. Martínez , Stephan M. Carvalho , Victoriano Mulero , and Luis David S. Murgas . 2021. Bee pollen as a dietary supplement for fish: Effect on the reproductive performance of zebrafish and the immunological response of their offspring. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 119:300–307. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.10.012.
Dimitroglou, Arkadios , Daniel L. Merrifield , Oliana Carnevali , Simona Picchietti , Matteo Avella , Carly Daniels , Derya Güroy , Simon J. Davies . 2011. Microbial manipulations to improve fish health and production – A Mediterranean perspective. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 30 (1): 1–16. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2010.08.009.
Doan, Hien Van , Seyed Hossein Hoseinifar , Korawan Sringarm , Sanchai Jaturasitha , Trisadee Khamlor , Mahmoud A. O. Dawood , Maria Ángeles Esteban , Mehdi Soltani , and Mohamed Saiyad Musthafa . 2019. Effects of elephant's foot (Elephantopus scaber) extract on growth performance, immune response, and disease resistance of nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus) fingerlings. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 93:328–335. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.07.061.
Dotta, Geovana , Jaqueline Inês Alves de Andrade , Eduardo Luiz Tavares Gonçalves , Aline Brum , Jacó Joaquim Mattos , Marcelo Maraschin , and Maurício Laterça Martins . 2014. Leukocyte phagocytosis and lysozyme activity in Nile tilapia fed supplemented diet with natural extracts of propolis and Aloe barbadensis. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 39 (2):280–284. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2014.05.020.
El-Saadony, Mohamed T. , Mahmoud Alagawany , Amlan K. Patra , Indrajit Kar , Ruchi Tiwari , Mahmoud A. O. Dawood , Kuldeep Dhama , and Hany M. R. Abdel-Latif . 2021. The functionality of probiotics in aquaculture: An overview. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 117:36–52. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.07.007.
Emeish, F.A. Walaa , Zeinab Al-Amgad , and Hassan Ahmed . 2018. Antioxidant, immunostimulant and renal protective activities of tri-herbal combination in African Sharptooth Catfish, Clarias gariepinus. Journal of Veterinary Medical Research 25 (2):213–229. doi: 10.21608/jvmr.2017.43320.
Evensen, Øystein . 2016. Development of Fish Vaccines: Focusing on Methods. In Fish Vaccines, edited by Alexandra Adams , 53–74. Basel: Springer Basel.

Fadl, Sabreen E. , M. S. ElGohary , Abdelgawad Y. Elsadany , Doaa M. Gad , Farag F. Hanaa , and Nagwan M. El-Habashi . 2017. Contribution of microalgae-enriched fodder for the Nile tilapia to growth and resistance to infection with Aeromonas hydrophila. Algal Research 27:82–88. doi: 10.1016/j.algal.2017.08.022.

Fadlelmoula, Abdelaziz A. 2018. Dietary Gum Arabic as Animal Feed Additive. In Gum Arabic, 261–267.

FAO . 2020. The State of World Fisheries and Aquaculture 2020.

FAO . 2021. FAO Yearbook: Fishery and Aquaculture Statistics 2019: FAO.

Franke, Andrea , Catriona Clemmesen , Peter De Schryver , Linsey Garcia-Gonzalez , Joanna J. Miest , and Olivia Roth . 2017. Immunostimulatory effects of dietary poly-β-hydroxybutyrate in European sea bass postlarvae. Aquaculture Research 48 (12):5707–5717. doi: 10.1111/are.13393.

Fu, Zhengyi , Rui Yang , Xu Chen , Jian G. Qin , Zhifeng Gu , and Zhenhua Ma . 2019. Dietary non-protein energy source regulates antioxidant status and immune response of barramundi (Lates calcarifer). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 95:697–704. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.11.018.

Gabriel, Ndakalimwe Naftal , Margit R. Wilhelm , Habte-Michael Habte-Tsion , Percy Chimwamurombe , and Edosa Omoregie . 2019. Dietary garlic (Allium sativum) crude polysaccharides supplementation on growth, haematological parameters, whole body composition and survival at low water pH challenge in African catfish (Clarias gariepinus) juveniles. Scientific African 5. doi: 10.1016/j.sciaf.2019.e00128.

Gabriel, Ndakalimwe Naftal , Margit R. Wilhelm , Habte-Michael Habte-Tsion , Percy Chimwamurombe , Edosa Omoregie , Linda N. Iipinge , and Kaspar Shimooshili . 2019. Effect of dietary Aloe vera polysaccharides supplementation on growth performance, feed utilization, hemato-biochemical parameters, and survival at low pH in African catfish (Clarias gariepinus) fingerlings. International Aquatic Research 11 (1):57–72. doi: 10.1007/s40071-019-0219-8.

Gallani, Sílvia Umeda , Gustavo Moraes Ramos Valladão , Elisa Helena Giglio Ponsano , and Fabiana Pilarski . 2017. Rubrivivax gelatinosus biomass as an immunostimulant for pacu Piaractus mesopotamicus. Aquaculture Research 48 (9):4836–4843. doi: 10.1111/are.13303.

García Beltrán, José María , Daniel González Silvera , Cristóbal Espinosa Ruiz , Vittorio Campo , Latifeh Chupani , Caterina Faggio , and María Ángeles Esteban . 2020. Effects of dietary Origanum vulgare on gilthead seabream (Sparus aurata L.) immune and antioxidant status. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 99:452–461. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.02.040.

Gayed, Mohamed Abdel , Hiam Elabd , Mohamed Tageldin , and Amany Abbass . 2021. Probiotic Zado® (Ruminococcus Flavefaciens) boosts hematology, immune, serum proteins, and growth profiles in Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus). Fish and Shellfish Immunology Reports 2. doi: 10.1016/j.fsirep.2021.100021.

Giri, Sib Sankar , Jin Woo Jun , Venkatachalam Sukumaran , and Se Chang Park . 2016. Dietary Administration of Banana (Musa acuminata) Peel Flour Affects the Growth, Antioxidant Status, Cytokine Responses, and Disease Susceptibility of Rohu,Labeo rohita. Journal of Immunology Research 2016:1–11. doi: 10.1155/2016/4086591.

Giri, Sib Sankar , Jun Woo Jun , Venkatachalam Sukumaran , and Se Chang Park . 2017. Evaluation of dietary Hybanthus enneaspermus (Linn F. Muell.) as a growth and haemato-immunological modulator in Labeo rohita. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 68:310–317. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2017.07.009.

Giri, Sib Sankar , Shib Sankar Sen , Cheng Chi , Hyoun Joong Kim , Saekil Yun , Se Chang Park , and V. Sukumaran . 2015. Effect of guava leaves on the growth performance and cytokine gene expression of Labeo rohita and its susceptibility to Aeromonas hydrophila infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 46 (2):217–224. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2015.05.051.

González-Stegmaier, Roxana , Alex Romero , Amparo Estepa , Jana Montero , Victoriano Mulero , and Luis Mercado . 2015. Effects of recombinant flagellin B and its ND1 domain from Vibrio anguillarum on macrophages from gilthead seabream (Sparus aurata L.) and rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss, W.). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 42 (1):144–152. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2014.10.034.

Guardiola, F. A. , C. Porcino , R. Cerezuela , A. Cuesta , C. Faggio , and M. A. Esteban . 2016. Impact of date palm fruits extracts and probiotic enriched diet on antioxidant status, innate immune response and immune-related gene expression of European seabass (Dicentrarchus labrax). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 52:298–308. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.03.152.

Gupta, Sanjay K. , B. Sarkar , Manisha Priyam , Neeraj Kumar , S. Naskar , Md Javed Foysal , Shailesh Saurabh , and T. R. Sharma . 2020. Inflammatory and stress biomarker response of Aeromonas hydrophila infected rohu, Labeo rohita fingerlings to dietary microbial levan. Aquaculture 521. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2020.735020.

Güroy, Betül , Derya Güroy , Soner Bilen , Osman Nezih Kenanoğlu , Izzet Şahin , Ertuğrul Terzi , Onur Karadal , and Serhan Mantoğlu . 2022. Effect of dietary Spirulina (*Arthrospira platensis*) on the growth performance, immunerelated gene expression and resistance to *Vibrio anguillarum* in European seabass (*Dicentrarchus labrax*). Aquaculture Research 53 (6):2263–2274. doi: 10.1111/are.15745.

Guzmán-Villanueva, Laura T. , Dariel Tovar-Ramírez , Enric Gisbert , Héctor Cordero , Francisco A. Guardiola , Alberto Cuesta , José Meseguer , Felipe Ascencio-Valle , and Maria A. Esteban . 2014. Dietary administration of β-1,3/1,6-glucan and probiotic strain Shewanella putrefaciens, single or combined, on gilthead seabream growth, immune responses and gene expression. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 39 (1):34–41. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2014.04.024.

Haghighi, Masoud , Hamid Pourmoghim , and Mostafa Sharif Rohani . 2018. Effect of Origanum vulgare extract on immune responses and heamatological parameters of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Oceanography & Fisheries Open Access Journal 6 (3): 71–76.

Halwart, Matthias . 2020. Fish farming high on the global food system agenda in 2020. FAO Aquaculture Newsletter (61):II–III.

Harikrishnan, Ramasamy , Gunapathy Devi , Hien Van Doan , Sundaram Jawahar , Chellam Balasundaram , Kaliyaperumal Saravanan , Jesu Arockiaraj , Mehdi Soltani , and Sanchai Jaturasitha . 2021. Study on antioxidant potential, immunological response, and inflammatory cytokines induction of glycyrrhizic acid (GA) in silver carp against vibriosis. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 119:193–208. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.09.040.

Hasan-Uj-Jaman, Md , Md Hossain , Shoumo Khondoker , Md Alam , Md Zaman , and Sanjoy Bappa . 2016. Effects of Achyranthes aspera to the Immunity of Rohu (Labeo rohita) against Pseudomonas fluorescens. British Journal of Pharmaceutical Research 12 (5):1–9. doi: 10.9734/bjpr/2016/28110.

Hassaan, Mohamed S. , Eman Y. Mohammady , Mohamed R. Soaudy , Soaad A. Sabae , Abeer M. A. Mahmoud , and Ehab R. El-Haroun . 2021. Comparative study on the effect of dietary β-carotene and phycocyanin extracted from Spirulina platensis on immune-oxidative stress biomarkers, genes expression and intestinal enzymes, serum biochemical in Nile tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 108:63–72. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.11.012.

Hassan, Ayman Abdel Mohsen , Mohamed Helmy Yacout , Mohamed Samir Khalel , Salma Hashim Abu Hafsa , Mostafa Abdel Rahman Ibrahim , Dorina Nicoleta Mocuta , Adrian Turek Rahoveanu , and Lorena Dediu . 2018. Effects of Some Herbal Plant Supplements on Growth Performance and the Immune Response in Nile Tilapia (Oreochromis Niloticus). “Agriculture for Life, Life for Agriculture” Conference Proceedings 1 (1):134–141. doi: 10.2478/alife-2018-0020.
He, Maosheng , Gaoyang Liu , Yihang Liu , Kechen Yang , Xiaozhou Qi , Aiguo Huang , Tianqiang Liu , Gaoxue Wang , and Erlong Wang . 2020. Effects of geniposide as immunostimulant on the innate immune response and disease resistance in crucian carp. Aquaculture 529. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2020.735713.
Hedayatirad, Maryam , Alireza Mirvaghefi , Mohammad Ali Nematollahi , Mohammad Navid Forsatkar , and Culum Brown . 2020. Transgenerational disrupting impacts of atrazine in zebrafish: Beneficial effects of dietary spirulina. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part C: Toxicology & Pharmacology 230. doi: 10.1016/j.cbpc.2019.108685.
Henry, M. A. , F. Gai , P. Enes , A. Peréz-Jiménez , and L. Gasco . 2018. Effect of partial dietary replacement of fishmeal by yellow mealworm (Tenebrio molitor) larvae meal on the innate immune response and intestinal antioxidant enzymes of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 83:308–313. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.09.040.
Hernández, Adrián J. , Alex Romero , Roxana Gonzalez-Stegmaier , and Patricio Dantagnan . 2016. The effects of supplemented diets with a phytopharmaceutical preparation from herbal and macroalgal origin on disease resistance in rainbow trout against Piscirickettsia salmonis. Aquaculture 454:109–117. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2015.12.016.
Hidalgo, M. Carmen , Amalia E. Morales , Héctor J. Pula , Cristina Tomás-Almenar , M. José Sánchez-Muros , Federico Melenchón , Dmitri Fabrikov , and Gabriel Cardenete . 2022. Oxidative metabolism of gut and innate immune status in skin and blood of tench (Tinca tinca) fed with different insect meals (Hermetia illucens and Tenebrio molitor). Aquaculture 558:738384. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2022.738384.
Hoseinifar, Seyed Hossein , Fazel Zoheiri , and Christopher Marlowe Caipang . 2016. Dietary sodium propionate improved performance, mucosal and humoral immune responses in Caspian white fish (Rutilus frisii kutum) fry. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 55:523–528. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.06.027.
Hoseinifar, Seyed Hossein , Hassan Khodadadian Zou , Hamed Paknejad , Ehsan Ahmadifar , and Hien Van Doan . 2018. Non-specific immune responses and intestinal immunity of common carp (Cyprinus carpio) fed Jujube (Ziziphus jujube) fruit extract. Aquaculture Research 49 (9):2995–3003. doi: 10.1111/are.13759.
Hoseinifar, Seyed Hossein , Hassan Khodadadian Zou , Hien Van Doan , Hamed Kolangi Miandare , and Seyyed Morteza Hoseini . 2018. Evaluation of some intestinal cytokines genes expression and serum innate immune parameters in common carp (Cyprinus carpio) fed dietary loquat (Eriobotrya japonica) leaf extract. Aquaculture Research 49 (1):120–127. doi: 10.1111/are.13440.
Hoseinifar, Seyed Hossein , Mohammad Amin Jahazi , Roghieh Mohseni , Morteza Yousefi , Mahsan Bayani , Mohammad Mazandarani , Hien Van Doan , and Ehab R. El-Haroun . 2021. Dietary apple peel-derived pectin improved growth performance, antioxidant enzymes and immune response in common carp, Cyprinus carpio (Linnaeus, 1758). Aquaculture 535. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2020.736311.
Hosseini, Hossein , Mehrdad Pooyanmehr , Azadeh Foroughi , Moha Esmaeili , Farzad Ghiasi , and Reza Lorestany . 2022. Remarkable positive effects of figwort (Scrophularia striata) on improving growth performance, and immunohematological parameters of fish. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 120:111–121. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.11.020.
Hough, C. 2022. Regional review on status and trends in aquaculture development in Europe – 2020, FAO Fisheries and Aquaculture Circular. Rome, Italy: FAO.
Iaconisi, Valeria , Stefania Marono , Giuliana Parisi , Laura Gasco , Lucrezia Genovese , Giulia Maricchiolo , Fulvia Bovera , and Giovanni Piccolo . 2017. Dietary inclusion of Tenebrio molitor larvae meal: Effects on growth performance and final quality treats of blackspot sea bream (Pagellus bogaraveo). Aquaculture 476: 49–58. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2017.04.007.
Iliev, Dimitar B. , Leidy Lagos , Hanna L. Thim , Sven M. Jørgensen , Aleksei Krasnov , and Jorunn B. Jørgensen . 2019. CpGs Induce Differentiation of Atlantic Salmon Mononuclear Phagocytes Into Cells With Dendritic Morphology and a Proinflammatory Transcriptional Profile but an Exhausted Allostimulatory Activity. Frontiers in Immunology 10. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00378.
Ingelbrecht, Jack , Terrence L. Miller , Alan J. Lymbery , Masashi Maita , Shohei Torikai , and Gavin Partridge . 2020. Anthelmintic herbal extracts as potential prophylactics or treatments for monogenean infections in cultured yellowtail kingfish (Seriola lalandi). Aquaculture 520. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2019.734776.
Ispir, U. , M. Ozcan , and E. Seker . 2022. Immunomodulation function of Tunceli garlic (Allium tuncelianum) oil in Rainbow Trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). International Journal of Agriculture, Environment and Food Sciences: 7–12. doi: 10.31015/jaefs.2022.1.2.
Jaime-Ceballos, Barbarito J. , Alfredo Hernández-Llamas , Tsai Garcia-Galano , and Humberto Villarreal . 2006. Substitution of Chaetoceros muelleri by Spirulina platensis meal in diets for Litopenaeus schmitti larvae. Aquaculture 260 (1-4):215–220. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2006.06.002.
Ji, Jie , Susana Merino , Juan M. Tomás , and Nerea Roher . 2019. Nanoliposomes encapsulating immunostimulants modulate the innate immune system and elicit protection in zebrafish larvae. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 92:421–429. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.06.016.
Khalil, Samah R. , Rasha M. Reda , and Ashraf Awad . 2017. Efficacy of Spirulina platensis diet supplements on disease resistance and immune-related gene expression in Cyprinus carpio L. exposed to herbicide atrazine. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 67:119–128. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2017.05.065.
Khani Oushani, Ali , Mehdi Soltani , Najmeh Sheikhzadeh , Mehdi Shamsaie Mehrgan , and Houman Rajabi Islami . 2020. Effects of dietary chitosan and nano-chitosan loaded clinoptilolite on growth and immune responses of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 98:210–217. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.01.016.
Kirubakaran, C. John Wesly , Parasuraman Aiya Subramani , and R. Dinakaran Michael . 2016. Methanol extract of Nyctanthes arbortristis seeds enhances non-specific immune responses and protects Oreochromis mossambicus (Peters) against Aeromonas hydrophila infection. Research in Veterinary Science 105:243–248. doi: 10.1016/j.rvsc.2016.02.013.
Koch, João Fernando Albers , Carlos Alberto Ferreira de Oliveira , and Fábio Sabbadin Zanuzzo . 2021. Dietary β-glucan (MacroGard®) improves innate immune responses and disease resistance in Nile tilapia regardless of the administration period. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 112:56–63. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.02.014.
Kord, M. I. , T. M. Srour , E. A. Omar , A. A. Farag , A. A. M. Nour , and H. S. Khalil . 2021. The Immunostimulatory Effects of Commercial Feed Additives on Growth Performance, Non-specific Immune Response, Antioxidants Assay, and Intestinal Morphometry of Nile tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus. Front Physiol 12:627499. doi: 10.3389/fphys.2021.627499.

Laith, A. A. , A. G. Mazlan , A. W. Effendy , M. A. Ambak , W. W. I. Nurhafizah , A. S. Alia , A. Jabar , and M. Najiah . 2017. Effect of Excoecaria agallocha on non-specific immune responses and disease resistance of Oreochromis niloticus against Streptococcus agalactiae. Research in Veterinary Science 112:192–200. doi: 10.1016/j.rvsc.2017.04.020.
Le Xuan, Chinh , Supreya Wannavijit , Piyatida Outama , Napatsorn Montha , Chompunut Lumsangkul , Sudaporn Tongsiri , Chanagun Chitmanat , Seyed Hossein Hoseinifar , and Hien Van Doan 2022. Effects of dietary rambutan (Nephelium lappaceum L.) peel powder on growth performance, immune response and immune-related gene expressions of striped catfish (Pangasianodon hypophthalmus) raised in biofloc system. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 124:134–141. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2022.03.039.
Lim, Keng Chin , Fatimah Md Yusoff , Mohamed Shariff , and Mohd Salleh Kamarudin . 2021. Dietary astaxanthin augments disease resistance of Asian seabass, Lates calcarifer (Bloch, 1790), against Vibrio alginolyticus infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 114:90–101. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.03.025.
Liu, Jia , Peijun Zhang , Bo Wang , Yuting Lu , Liang Li , Yuehong Li , and Shaojun Liu . 2022. Evaluation of the effects of Astragalus polysaccharides as immunostimulants on the immune response of crucian carp and against SVCV in vitro and in vivo. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part C: Toxicology & Pharmacology 253. doi: 10.1016/j.cbpc.2021.109249.
Lopes, Larissa Maria Frazão , Mariana Maluli Marinho de Mello , and Elisabeth Criscuolo Urbinati . 2022. β-Glucan reduces cortisol plasma levels, enhances innate immune system after A. hydrophila inoculation, and has lipolytic effects on the pacu (Piaractus mesopotamicus). Aquaculture 546:737411. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2021.737411.
Lumsangkul, Chompunut , Nguyen Vu Linh , Fapailin Chaiwan , Mohsen Abdel-Tawwab , Mahmoud A. O. Dawood , Caterina Faggio , Sanchai Jaturasitha , and Hien Van Doan . 2022. Dietary treatment of Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus) with aquatic fern (Azolla caroliniana) improves growth performance, immunological response, and disease resistance against Streptococcus agalactiae cultured in bio-floc system. Aquaculture Reports 24. doi: 10.1016/j.aqrep.2022.101114.
Santos, Welliene M. dos , Túlio S. de Brito , Samuel de A. Prado , Camila G. de Oliveira , Andréia C. De Paula , Daniela C. de Melo , and Paula A. P. Ribeiro . 2016. Cinnamon (Cinnamomum sp.) inclusion in diets for Nile tilapia submitted to acute hypoxic stress. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 54:551–555. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.04.135.
Magouz Fawzy I. , Asem A. Amer , Alaa Faisal , Hani Sewilam , Salama M. Aboelenin , Mahmoud A.O. Dawood . 2022. The effects of dietary oregano essential oil on the growth performance, intestinal health, immune, and antioxidative responses of Nile tilapia under acute heat stress, Aquaculture 548 (1): 737632. doi:10.1016/j.aquaculture.2021.737632.
Maldonado-Garcia, Minerva , Carlos Angulo , Juan Vazquez-Martinez , Veronica Sanchez , Mercedes G. Lopez , and Martha Reyes-Becerril . 2019. Antioxidant and immunostimulant potentials of Chenopodium ambrosioides L. in Pacific red snapper (Lutjanus peru). Aquaculture 513:734414. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2019.734414.
Marinho de Mello, Mariana Maluli , Camila de Fátima Pereira de Faria , Fábio Sabbadin Zanuzzo , and Elisabeth Criscuolo Urbinati . 2019. β-glucan modulates cortisol levels in stressed pacu (Piaractus mesopotamicus) inoculated with heat-killed Aeromonas hydrophila. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 93:1076–1083. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.07.068.
Mariod, Abdalbasit A. 2018. Enhancement of Color Stability in Foods by Gum Arabic. In Gum Arabic, 143–150.
Maiti, Sourav , Suvendu Saha , Prasanta Jana , Arka Chowdhury , Sanjib Khatua , and Tapas Kumar Ghosh . 2021. Effect of dietary *Andrographis paniculata* leaf extract on growth, immunity, and disease resistance against *Aeromonas hydrophila* in *Pangasianodon hypopthalmus* . Journal of Applied Aquaculture 1–25. doi: 10.1080/10454438.2021.1959861.
Martínez Cruz, Patricia , Ana L. Ibáñez , Oscar A. Monroy Hermosillo , and Hugo C. Ramírez Saad . 2012. Use of Probiotics in Aquaculture. ISRN Microbiology 2012:1–13. doi: 10.5402/2012/916845.
Mehana, Elsayed , Arshad Rahmani , and Salah Aly . 2015. Immunostimulants and Fish Culture: An Overview. Annual Research & Review in Biology 5 (6):477–489. doi: 10.9734/arrb/2015/9558.
Mohammadi, Ghasem , Gholamreza Rafiee , Mohammed F. El Basuini , Hany M. R. Abdel-Latif , and Mahmoud A. O. Dawood . 2020. The growth performance, antioxidant capacity, immunological responses, and the resistance against Aeromonas hydrophila in Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus) fed Pistacia vera hulls derived polysaccharide. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 106:36–43. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.07.064.
Mohan, Kannan , Samuthirapandian Ravichandran , Thirunavukkarasu Muralisankar , Venkatachalam Uthayakumar , Ramachandran Chandirasekar , Palaniappan Seedevi , Ramu Ganesan Abirami , and Durairaj Karthick Rajan . 2019. Application of marine-derived polysaccharides as immunostimulants in aquaculture: A review of current knowledge and further perspectives. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 86:1177–1193. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.12.072.
Morante, Vitor Hugo Penariol , Carlos Eduardo Copatti , Antônio Ramires Lyra Souza , Mateus Matiuzzi da Costa , Luís Gustavo Tavares Braga , Anderson Miranda Souza , Fúlvio Viegas Santos Teixeira de Melo , Antonio Cleber da Silva Camargo , and José Fernando Bibiano Melo . 2021. Assessment the crude grape extract as feed additive for tambaqui (Colossoma macropomum), an omnivorous fish. Aquaculture 544. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2021.737068.
Munang'andu, Hetron M. , Irene Salinas , Carolina Tafalla , and Roy Ambli Dalmo . 2020. Editorial: Vaccines and Immunostimulants for Finfish. Frontiers in Immunology 11. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2020.573771.
Muthulakshmi, M. , P. A. Subramani , and R. D. Michael . 2016. Immunostimulatory effect of the aqueous leaf extract of Phyllanthus niruri on the specific and nonspecific immune responses of Oreochromis mossambicus Peters. Iran J Vet Res 17 (3):200–202.
Naiel, Mohammed A. E. , Samah A. A. Abd El-Hameed , Ahmed H. Arisha , and Samar S. Negm . 2022. Gum Arabic-enriched diet modulates growth, antioxidant defenses, innate immune response, intestinal microbiota and immune related genes expression in tilapia fish. Aquaculture 556. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2022.738249.
Naiel, Mohammed A. E. , Nahla E. M. Ismael , Samar S. Negm , Mohamed S. Ayyat , and Adham A. Al-Sagheer . 2020. Rosemary leaf powder–supplemented diet enhances performance, antioxidant properties, immune status, and resistance against bacterial diseases in Nile Tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus). Aquaculture 526. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2020.735370.
Naiel, Mohammed A. E. , Mohamed K. Khames , Nashwa Abdel-Razek , Amany A. Gharib , and Khaled A. El-Tarabily . 2021. The dietary administration of miswak leaf powder promotes performance, antioxidant, immune activity, and resistance against infectious diseases on Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus). Aquaculture Reports 20. doi: 10.1016/j.aqrep.2021.100707.
Nan, Fan-Hua , A. S. Agus Putra , Bargir Margie , and M. C. Lee . 2015. The effects of Curcuma zedoaria and Zingiber zerumbet on non-specific immune responses of grouper Epinephelus coioides. Iranian Journal of Fisheries Sciences.
Na-Phatthalung, Pinanong , Mariana Teles , Supayang Piyawan Voravuthikunchai , Lluís Tort , and Camino Fierro-Castro . 2018. Immunomodulatory effects of Rhodomyrtus tomentosa leaf extract and its derivative compound, rhodomyrtone, on head kidney macrophages of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Fish Physiology and Biochemistry 44 (2):543–555. doi: 10.1007/s10695-017-0452-2.

Neuls, Luciane , Valmir José de Souza , Silvia Romão , Thiago Bergler Bitencourt , Carlos José Raupp Ramos , Jorge Erick Garcia Parra , and Luisa Helena Cazarolli . 2021. Immunomodulatory effects of Yarrowia lipolytica as a food additive in the diet of Nile tilapia. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 119:272–279. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.10.011.
Nhu, Truong Quynh , Bui Thi Bich Hang , Le Thi Bach , Bui Thi Buu Hue , Joëlle Quetin-Leclercq , Marie-Louise Scippo , Nguyen Thanh Phuong , and Patrick Kestemont . 2019. Plant extract-based diets differently modulate immune responses and resistance to bacterial infection in striped catfish (Pangasianodon hypophthalmus). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 92:913–924. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.07.025.
Nhu, Truong Quynh , Bui Thi Bich Hang , Anais Vinikas , Le Thi Bach , Bui Thi Buu Hue , Do Thi Thanh Huong , Joëlle Quetin-Leclercq , Marie-Louise Scippo , Nguyen Thanh Phuong , and Patrick Kestemont . 2019. Screening of immuno-modulatory potential of different herbal plant extracts using striped catfish (Pangasianodon hypophthalmus) leukocyte-based in vitro tests. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 93:296–307. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.07.064.
Nhu, Truong Quynh , Nguyen Phuc Dam , Bui Thi Bich Hang , Le Thi Bach , Do Thi Thanh Huong , Bui Thi Buu Hue , Marie-Louise Scippo , Nguyen Thanh Phuong , Joëlle Quetin-Leclercq , and Patrick Kestemont . 2020. Immunomodulatory potential of extracts, fractions and pure compounds from Phyllanthus amarus and Psidium guajava on striped catfish (Pangasianodon hypophthalmus) head kidney leukocytes. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 104:289–303. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.05.051.
Nuñez-Ortiz, Noelia , Patricia Díaz-Rosales , Jose A. García , Claudia R. Serra , Paula Enes , Carolina Tafalla , and Eduardo Gomez-Casado . 2022. Immunostimulant properties of full-length and truncated Marinobacter algicola flagellins, and their effects against viral hemorrhagic septicemia virus (VHSV) in trout. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 128:695–702. 10.1016/j.fsi.2022.08.018.
Nya, Elijah , Inyang Udosen , and Aniekan Otoh . 2017. Effect of Herbal Based Immunostimulant Diets for Disease Control in African Catfish Clarias gariepinus against Aeromonas hydrophila Infections. Journal of Biology, Agriculture and Healthcare 7 (16):49–54.
Øverland, Margareth , Liv T. Mydland , and Anders Skrede . 2018. Marine macroalgae as sources of protein and bioactive compounds in feed for monogastric animals. Journal of the Science of Food and Agriculture 99 (1):13–24. doi: 10.1002/jsfa.9143.
Pahor-Filho, Eduardo , Adriana Soliris Corredor Castillo , Nycolas Levy Pereira , Fabiana Pilarski , and Elisabeth Criscuolo Urbinati . 2017. Levamisole enhances the innate immune response and prevents increased cortisol levels in stressed pacu (Piaractus mesopotamicus). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 65:96–102. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2017.04.003.
Panigrahi, Akshaya , R. Naveenkumar , and R. R. Das . 2021. Immunoprophylactic Measures in Aquaculture. In Advances in Fisheries Biotechnology, 263–288.
Passos, Ricardo , Ana Patrícia Correia , Damiana Pires , Pedro Pires , Inês Ferreira , Marco Simões , Beatriz do Carmo , Paulo Santos , Ana Pombo , Clélia Afonso , and Teresa Baptista . 2021. Potential use of macroalgae Gracilaria gracilis in diets for European seabass (Dicentrarchus labrax): Health benefits from a sustainable source. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 119:105–113. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.09.033.
Polinski, Mark , Andrew Bridle , Lukas Neumann , and Barbara Nowak . 2014. Preliminary evidence of transcriptional immunomodulation by praziquantel in bluefin tuna and Atlantic salmon in vitro cultures. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 38 (1):42–46. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2014.02.023.
Prabu, Dhanasekaran Linga , Narottam P. Sahu , Asim K. Pal , Subrata Dasgupta , and Ashalaxmi Narendra . 2016. Immunomodulation and interferon gamma gene expression in sutchi cat fish,Pangasianodon hypophthalmus: Effect of dietary fucoidan rich seaweed extract (FRSE) on pre and post challenge period. Aquaculture Research 47 (1): 199–218. doi: 10.1111/are.12482.
Quagrainie, K. , J. Cai , and Nathanael Hishamunda . 2017. Social and economic performance of tilapia farming in Africa: Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations.
Rajendran, Priyatharsini , Parasuraman Aiya Subramani , and Dinakaran Michael . 2016. Polysaccharides from marine macroalga, Padina gymnospora improve the nonspecific and specific immune responses of Cyprinus carpio and protect it from different pathogens. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 58:220–228. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.09.016.
Ramesh, Dharmaraj , and Sami Souissi . 2018. Effects of potential probiotic Bacillus subtilis KADR1 and its subcellular components on immune responses and disease resistance in Labeo rohita. Aquaculture Research 49 (1):367–377. doi: 10.1111/are.13467.
Rashidian, Ghasem , Javad Tahmasebi Boldaji , Simona Rainis , Marko D. Prokić , and Caterina Faggio . 2021. Oregano (Origanum vulgare) Extract Enhances Zebrafish (Danio rerio) Growth Performance, Serum and Mucus Innate Immune Responses and Resistance against Aeromonas hydrophila Challenge. Animals 11 (2):299.
Reis Dias, Marcia Kelly , Eliane Tie Oba Yoshioka , Anselmo Fortunato Ruiz Rodriguez , Ricardo Amaral Ribeiro , Fernando Sérgio Escócio Drummond Viana Faria , Rodrigo Otávio Almeida Ozório , and Marcos Tavares-Dias . 2019. Growth, physiological and immune responses of Arapaima gigas (Arapaimidae) to Aeromonas hydrophila challenge and handling stress following feeding with immunostimulant supplemented diets. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 84:843–847. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.10.045.
Reyes-Becerril, Martha , Crystal Guluarte , Diana Ceballos-Francisco , Carlos Angulo , and M. Ángeles Esteban . 2017. Dietary yeast Sterigmatomyces halophilus enhances mucosal immunity of gilthead seabream (Sparus aurata L.). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 64:165–175. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2017.03.027.
Reyes-Becerril, Martha , Carlos Angulo , Veronica Sanchez , Juan Vázquez-Martínez , and Mercedes G. López . 2019. Antioxidant, intestinal immune status and anti-inflammatory potential of Chenopodium ambrosioides L. in fish: In vitro and in vivo studies. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 86:420–428. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2018.11.059.
Reyes-Cerpa, Sebastián , Eva Vallejos-Vidal , María José Gonzalez-Bown , Jonathan Morales-Reyes , Diego Pérez-Stuardo , Deborah Vargas , Mónica Imarai , Víctor Cifuentes , Eugenio Spencer , Ana María Sandino , and Felipe E. Reyes-López . 2018. Effect of yeast (Xanthophyllomyces dendrorhous) and plant (Saint John's wort, lemon balm, and rosemary) extract based functional diets on antioxidant and immune status of Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar) subjected to crowding stress. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 74:250–259. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2017.12.061.
Rezaei, Omid , Mehdi Shamsaie Mehrgan , and Hamed Paknejad . 2022. Dietary garlic (Allium sativum) powder improved zootechnical performance, digestive enzymes activity, and innate immunity in narrow-clawed crayfish (Postantacus leptodactylus). Aquaculture Reports 24. doi: 10.1016/j.aqrep.2022.101129.
Estaiano de Rezende , Renata Antunes , Michelly Pereira Soares , Fernanda Garcia Sampaio , Israel Luz Cardoso , Márcia Mayumi Ishikawa , Bruno Stéfano Lima Dallago , Francisco Tadeu Rantin , and Marta Cristina Teixeira Duarte . 2021. Phytobiotics blend as a dietary supplement for Nile tilapia health improvement. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 114:293–300. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.05.010.
Rodríguez, Felipe E. , Beatriz Valenzuela , Ana Farías , Ana María Sandino , and Mónica Imarai . 2016. β-1,3/1,6-Glucan-supplemented diets antagonize immune inhibitory effects of hypoxia and enhance the immune response to a model vaccine. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 59:36–45. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.10.020.

Saheli, Morteza , Houman Rajabi Islami , Mahmoud Mohseni , and Mehdi Soltani . 2021. Effects of dietary vitamin E on growth performance, body composition, antioxidant capacity, and some immune responses in Caspian trout (Salmo caspius). Aquaculture Reports 21. doi: 10.1016/j.aqrep.2021.100857.
Salah, Mesalhy Aly , A. Al Zohairy Mohamed , H. Rahmani Arshad , Fathi Mohamed , and M. Abdel Atti Nashwa . 2016. Trials to improve the response of Orechromis niloticus to Aeromonas hydrophila vaccine using immunostimulants (garlic, Echinacea) and probiotics (Organic GreenTM and Vet-YeastTM). African Journal of Biotechnology 15 (21):989–994. doi: 10.5897/ajb2015.15155.
Salomón, Ricardo , Felipe E. Reyes-López , Lluis Tort , Joana P. Firmino , Carmen Sarasquete , Juan B. Ortiz-Delgado , José C. Quintela , José M. Pinilla-Rosas , Eva Vallejos-Vidal , and Enric Gisbert . 2021. Medicinal Plant Leaf Extract From Sage and Lemon Verbena Promotes Intestinal Immunity and Barrier Function in Gilthead Seabream (Sparus aurata). Frontiers in Immunology 12. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2021.670279.
Santos, Rafaela A. , Nuno Mariz-Ponte , Nicole Martins , Rui Magalhães , Russell Jerusik , Maria J. Saavedra , Helena Peres , Aires Oliva-Teles , and Cláudia R. Serra . 2022. In vitro modulation of gilthead seabream (Sparus aurata L.) leukocytes by Bacillus spp. extracellular molecules upon bacterial challenge. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 121:285–294. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2022.01.002.
Sarvi Moghanlou, Kourosh , Elyas Nasr Isfahani , Salar Dorafshan , Amir Tukmechi , and Mohammad Sadegh Aramli . 2018. Effects of dietary supplementation with Stachys lavandulifolia Vahl extract on growth performance, hemato-biochemical and innate immunity parameters of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Animal Feed Science and Technology 237:98–105. doi: 10.1016/j.anifeedsci.2018.01.016.
Satia, Benedict P. Regional review on status and trends in aquaculture development in Sub-Saharan Africa -- 2010 =: Revue régionale sur la situation et les tendances dans l'aquaculture en Afrique subsaharienne.
Schmitt, Paulina , Jurij Wacyk , Byron Morales-Lange , Verónica Rojas , Fanny Guzmán , Brian Dixon , and Luis Mercado . 2015. Immunomodulatory effect of cathelicidins in response to a β-glucan in intestinal epithelial cells from rainbow trout. Developmental & Comparative Immunology 51 (1):160–169. doi: 10.1016/j.dci.2015.03.007.
Selim, Khaled M. , and Rasha M. Reda . 2015. Improvement of immunity and disease resistance in the Nile tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus, by dietary supplementation with Bacillus amyloliquefaciens. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 44 (2):496–503. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2015.03.004.
Shaalan, Mohamed , Magdy El-Mahdy , Mona Saleh , and Mansour El-Matbouli . 2017. Aquaculture in Egypt: Insights on the Current Trends and Future Perspectives for Sustainable Development. Reviews in Fisheries Science & Aquaculture 26 (1):99–110. doi: 10.1080/23308249.2017.1358696.
Sheikhzadeh, Najmeh , Ehsan Ahmadifar , Mahmoud A. O. Dawood , and Mehdi Soltani . 2021. Dietary sodium propionate enhanced the growth performance, immune-related genes expression, and resistance against Ichthyophthirius multifiliis in goldfish (Carassius auratus). Aquaculture 540. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2021.736720.
Siddik, Muhammad A. B. , Janet Howieson , and Ravi Fotedar . 2019. Beneficial effects of tuna hydrolysate in poultry by-product meal diets on growth, immune response, intestinal health and disease resistance to Vibrio harveyi in juvenile barramundi, Lates calcarifer. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 89:61–70. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.03.042.
Siddik, Muhammad A. B. , Md Javed Foysal , Ravi Fotedar , David S. Francis , and Sanjay K. Gupta . 2022a. Probiotic yeast Saccharomyces cerevisiae coupled with Lactobacillus casei modulates physiological performance and promotes gut microbiota in juvenile barramundi, Lates calcarifer. Aquaculture 546. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2021.737346.
Siddik, Muhammad A. B. , Janet Howieson , S. M. Majharul Islam , and Ravi Fotedar . 2022b. Synbiotic feed supplementation improves antioxidant response and innate immunity of juvenile barramundi, Lates calcarifer subjected to bacterial infection. Aquaculture 552. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2022.737965.
Siddik, Muhammad A. B. , Md Reaz Chaklader , Md Javed Foysal , Janet Howieson , Ravi Fotedar , and Sanjay K. Gupta . 2020. Influence of fish protein hydrolysate produced from industrial residues on antioxidant activity, cytokine expression and gut microbial communities in juvenile barramundi Lates calcarifer. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 97:465–473. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.12.057.
Silva-Jara, Jorge , Carlos Angulo , María Esther Macias , Carlos Velazquez , Crystal Guluarte , and Martha Reyes-Becerril . 2020. First screening report of immune and protective effect of non-toxic Jatropha vernicosa stem bark against Vibrio parahaemolyticus in Longfin yellowtail Seriola rivoliana leukocytes. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 101:106–114. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.03.048.
Simón, Rocío , Patricia Díaz-Rosales , Esther Morel , Diana Martín , Aitor G. Granja , and Carolina Tafalla . 2019. CpG Oligodeoxynucleotides Modulate Innate and Adaptive Functions of IgM+ B Cells in Rainbow Trout. Frontiers in Immunology 10. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00584.
Soares, Michelly Pereira , Israel Luz Cardoso , Márcia Mayumi Ishikawa , Adriana da Silva Santos de Oliveira , Adilson Sartoratto , Claudio Martin Jonsson , Sonia Claudia do Nascimento de Queiroz , Marta Cristina Teixeira Duarte , Francisco Tadeu Rantin , and Fernanda Garcia Sampaio . 2020. Effects of Artemisia annua alcohol extract on physiological and innate immunity of Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus) to improve health status. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 105:369–377. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.07.035.
Soliman, Naglaa F. , and Dalia M. M. Yacout . 2016. Aquaculture in Egypt: status, constraints and potentials. Aquaculture International 24 (5):1201–1227. doi: 10.1007/s10499-016-9989-9.
Sowmya, Rama , and Nakkarike Manjabhat Sachindra . 2015. Enhancement of non-specific immune responses in common carp,Cyprinus carpio, by dietary carotenoids obtained from shrimp exoskeleton. Aquaculture Research 46 (7):1562–1572. doi: 10.1111/are.12310.
Stenberg, Oda Kvalsvik , Elisabeth Holen , Luisa Piemontese , Nina S. Liland , Erik-Jan Lock , Marit Espe , and Ikram Belghit . 2019. Effect of dietary replacement of fish meal with insect meal on in vitro bacterial and viral induced gene response in Atlantic salmon (Salmo salar) head kidney leukocytes. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 91: 223–232. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2019.05.042.
Steven, A. H. , D. Mobsby , and R. Curtotti . 2021. Australian fisheries and aquaculture statistics 2020. Canberra: Fisheries Research and Development Corporation project.
Subeenabegum, S. , and P. S. Navaraj . 2016. Studies on the immunostimulatory effect of extract of Solanum trilobatum and Ocimum sanctum in Mystus keletius. International Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Studies 4 (2):376–381.
Subeenabegum, S , and P Navaraj . 2016a. Dietary supplement of mixture of medicinal plant leaf extracts on immune response of fresh water fish Mystus keletius. International Journal of Applied Research 2 (2): 361–364.
Subeenabegum, S , and PS Navaraj . 2016b. Studies on the immunostimulatory effect of extract of Solanum trilobatum and Ocimum sanctum in Mystus keletius. International Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Studies 4 (2): 376–381.
Suzuki, Aya . Rising Importance of Aquaculture in Asia: Current Status, Issues, and Recommendations.

Szwejser, Ewa , Magdalena Maciuszek , Ayako Casanova-Nakayama , Helmut Segner , B. M. Lidy Verburg-van Kemenade , and Magdalena Chadzinska . 2017. A role for multiple estrogen receptors in immune regulation of common carp. Developmental & Comparative Immunology 66: 61–72. doi: 10.1016/j.dci.2016.04.003.

Tafalla, Carolina , Jarl Bøgwald , and Roy A. Dalmo . 2013. Adjuvants and immunostimulants in fish vaccines: Current knowledge and future perspectives. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 35 (6):1740–1750. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2013.02.029.

Terzi, E. , B. Kucukkosker , S. Bilen , O. N. Kenanoglu , O. Corum , M. Ozbek , and S. S. Parug . 2021. A novel herbal immunostimulant for rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) against Yersinia ruckeri. Fish Shellfish Immunol 110:55–66. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.12.019.

Thépot, Valentin , Alexandra H. Campbell , Nicholas A. Paul , and Michael A. Rimmer . 2021. Seaweed dietary supplements enhance the innate immune response of the mottled rabbitfish, Siganus fuscescens. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 113:176–184. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.03.018.

Thépot, Valentin , Alexandra H. Campbell , Michael A. Rimmer , Martina Jelocnik , Colin Johnston , Brad Evans , and Nicholas A. Paul . 2022. Dietary inclusion of the red seaweed Asparagopsis taxiformis boosts production, stimulates immune response and modulates gut microbiota in Atlantic salmon, Salmo salar. Aquaculture 546. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2021.737286.

Torrecillas, Silvia , Daniel Montero , Maria José Caballero , Lidia Robaina , Maria Jesús Zamorano , John Sweetman , and Marisol Izquierdo . 2015. Effects of dietary concentrated mannan oligosaccharides supplementation on growth, gut mucosal immune system and liver lipid metabolism of European sea bass (Dicentrarchus labrax) juveniles. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 42 (2):508–516. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2014.11.033.

Truong Thy, Ho Thi , Nguyen Nhu Tri , Ong Moc Quy , Ravi Fotedar , Korntip Kannika , Sasimanas Unajak , and Nontawith Areechon . 2017. Effects of the dietary supplementation of mixed probiotic spores of Bacillus amyloliquefaciens 54A, and Bacillus pumilus 47B on growth, innate immunity and stress responses of striped catfish (Pangasianodon hypophthalmus). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 60:391–399. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.11.016.

Ulukoy, G. , Kubilay, A. , Didinen, B. I. , Metin, S. , Altun, S. , Diler, O. , & Dullac, A. 2018. Immunostimulant effects of geophyte plant extract on non-specific defence mechanisms of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss). Journal of Limnology and Freshwater Fisheries Research, 4 (1): 36–41.

Van Doan, H. , S. H. Hoseinifar , R. Harikrishnan , T. Khamlor , M. Punyatong , W. Tapingkae , M. Yousefi , J. Palma , and E. El-Haroun . 2021. Impacts of pineapple peel powder on growth performance, innate immunity, disease resistance, and relative immune gene expression of Nile tilapia, Oreochromis niloticus. Fish Shellfish Immunol 114:311–319. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.04.002.

Wang, E. , X. Chen , K. Wang , J. Wang , D. Chen , Y. Geng , W. Lai , and X. Wei . 2016. Plant polysaccharides used as immunostimulants enhance innate immune response and disease resistance against Aeromonas hydrophila infection in fish. Fish Shellfish Immunol 59:196–202. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.10.039.

Wangkahart, Eakapol , Christopher J. Secombes , and Tiehui Wang . 2019. Studies on the Use of Flagellin as an Immunostimulant and Vaccine Adjuvant in Fish Aquaculture. Frontiers in Immunology 9. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.03054.

Wangkahart, Eakapol , Brecht Bruneel , Anut Chantiratikul , Matthijs de Jong , Noppakun Pakdeenarong , and Parasuraman Aiya Subramani . 2022. Optimum dietary sources and levels of selenium improve growth, antioxidant status, and disease resistance: re-evaluation in a farmed fish species, Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 121:172–182. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.12.003.

Wangkahart, Eakapol , Suriyet Wachiraamonloed , Po-Tsang Lee , Parasuraman Aiya Subramani , Zhitao Qi , and Bei Wang . 2022. Impacts of Aegle marmelos fruit extract as a medicinal herb on growth performance, antioxidant and immune responses, digestive enzymes, and disease resistance against Streptococcus agalactiae in Nile tilapia (Oreochromis niloticus). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 120:402–410. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2021.11.015.

Wu, Yu-Sheng , Yin-Yu Chen , Pien-Sheng Ueng , and Fan-Hua Nan . 2016. Effects of medicinal herbs “ Plantago asiatica”, “ Houttuynia cordata” and “ Mentha haplocalyx” on non-specific immune responses of cobia (Rachycentron canadum). Fish & Shellfish Immunology 58:406–414. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.09.043.

Yaacob E. N. , J. Goethals , A. Bajek , K. Dierckens , P. Bossier , B. G. De Geest , D. Vanrompay . 2017. Preparation and Characterization of Alginate Microparticles Containing a Model Protein for Oral Administration in Gnotobiotic European Sea Bass (Dicentrarchus labrax) Larvae. Mar Biotechnol (NY) 19 (4): 391–400. doi: 10.1007/s10126-017-9758-4. Epub 2017 Jun 22. PMID: 28643227.

Yaacob, Eamy Nursaliza , Parisa Norouzitallab , Bruno G. De Geest , Aline Bajek , Kristof Dierckens , Peter Bossier , and Daisy Vanrompay . 2020. Recombinant DnaK Orally Administered Protects Axenic European Sea Bass Against Vibriosis. Frontiers in Immunology 10. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.03162.

Yarahmadi, Peyman , Hamed Ghafari Farsani , Amin Khazaei , Mohammad Khodadadi , Ghasem Rashidiyan , and M. Ali Jalali . 2016. Protective effects of the prebiotic on the immunological indicators of rainbow trout (Oncorhynchus mykiss) infected with Aeromonas hydrophila. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 54:589–597. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2016.05.010.

Yengkhom, O. , K. S. Shalini , P. A. Subramani , and R. D. Michael . 2018. Non-specific immunity and disease resistance are enhanced by the polysaccharide fraction of a marine chlorophycean macroalga inOreochromis niloticus(Linnaeus, 1758). Journal of Applied Ichthyology 34 (3):556–567. doi: 10.1111/jai.13606.

Yousefi, M. , H. Ghafarifarsani , S. H. Hoseinifar , G. Rashidian , and H. Van Doan . 2021. Effects of dietary marjoram, Origanum majorana extract on growth performance, hematological, antioxidant, humoral and mucosal immune responses, and resistance of common carp, Cyprinus carpio against Aeromonas hydrophila. Fish Shellfish Immunol 108:127–133. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2020.11.019.

Yousefi, Morteza , Saeed Zahedi , Miriam Reverter , Hossein Adineh , Seyyed Morteza Hoseini , Hien Van Doan , Ehab R. El-Haroun , and Seyed Hossein Hoseinifar . 2021. Enhanced growth performance, oxidative capacity and immune responses of common carp, Cyprinus carpio fed with Artemisia absinthium extract-supplemented diet. Aquaculture 545. doi: 10.1016/j.aquaculture.2021.737167.

Yousefi, Morteza , Mehdi Ahmadifar , Sedigheh Mohammadzadeh , Naser Kalhor , Delaram Eslimi Esfahani , Azadeh Bagheri , Nika Mashhadizadeh , Mohsen Shahriari Moghadam , and Ehsan Ahmadifar . 2022. Individual and combined effects of the dietary Spirulina platensis and Bacillus licheniformis supplementation on growth performance, antioxidant capacity, innate immunity, relative gene expression and resistance of goldfish, Carassius auratus to Aeromonas hydrophila. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 127:1070–1078. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2022.07.015.

Yu, Wei , Yukai Yang , Qicun Zhou , Xiaolin Huang , Zhong Huang , Tao Li , Qiaer Wu , Chuanpeng Zhou , Zhenhua Ma , and Heizhao Lin . 2022. Effects of dietary Astragalus polysaccharides on growth, health and resistance to Vibrio harveyi of Lates calcarifer. International Journal of Biological Macromolecules 207:850–858. doi: 10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2022.03.176.

Zanon, Ricardo , Brunno Cerozi , J. Eurico Cyrino , and Tarcila Silva . 2014. Dietary Levamisole as Immunostimulant for Striped Surubim, Pseudoplatystoma reticulatum. Journal of the World Aquaculture Society 45:672–680. doi: 10.1111/jwas.12156.
Zanuzzo, Fábio S. , Rafael E. Sabioni , Luz Natalia F. Montoya , Gisele Favero , and Elisabeth C. Urbinati . 2017. Aloe vera enhances the innate immune response of pacu (Piaractus mesopotamicus) after transport stress and combined heat killed Aeromonas hydrophila infection. Fish & Shellfish Immunology 65:198–205. doi: 10.1016/j.fsi.2017.04.013.
Zhuo, Li-Chao , Dayang Nur Jazlyn binti Abang Zamhari , Annita Seok Kian Yong , Rossita Shapawi , and Yu-Hung Lin . 2021. Effects of fermented lemon peel supplementation in diet on growth, immune responses, and intestinal morphology of Asian sea bass, Lates calcarifer. Aquaculture Reports 21. doi: 10.1016/j.aqrep.2021.100801.

WILEY

Edited by
Meththika Vithanage and Majeti Narasimha Vara Prasad

Microplastics in the Ecosphere

Air, Water, Soil, and Food

Microplastics in the Ecosphere

Microplastics in the Ecosphere

Air, Water, Soil, and Food

Edited by

Meththika Vithanage
University of Sri Jayewardenepura
Sri Lanka

and

Majeti Narasimha Vara Prasad
University of Hyderabad (an Institution of Eminence)
India

WILEY

This edition first published 2023

Registered Offices
John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, USA
John Wiley & Sons Ltd, The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, UK

For details of our global editorial offices, customer services, and more information about Wiley products visit us at www.wiley.com.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some content that appears in standard print versions of this book may not be available in other formats.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data applied for

Hardback: 9781119879503

Cover Design: Wiley
Cover Image: Courtesy of Professor Meththika Vithanage

Set in 9.5/12.5pt STIXTwoText by Straive, Pondicherry, India

Contents

List of Contributors

Muthumali U. Adikari
Department of Food Science and Technology
Wayamba University of Sri Lanka
Makandura, Sri Lanka

Mansoor Ahmad Bhat
Department of Environmental Engineering
Eskişehir Technical University
Eskişehir, Türkiye

Balram Ambade
Department of Chemistry
National Institute of Technology Jamshedpur
Jharkhand, India

Luís Peres de Azevedo
Materials Engineering DsC
Federal University of Ouro Preto
Ouro Preto, Minas Gerais, Brazil

Arunima Bhattacharya
Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique
Institut National de la Santé et de la Recherche
Médicale, ARNA, Institut Européen de Chimie et
Biologie, Université de Bordeaux
Pessac, France

Nanthi Bolan
School of Agriculture and Environment
UWA Institute of Agriculture
University of Western Australia
Perth, Western Australia, Australia

Alfredo Jorge Palace Carvalho
Chemistry and Biochemistry Department
LAQV-REQUIMTE, School of Sciences and Technology
University of Évora
Évora, Portugal

Cláudia C.N. de Carvalho
Department of Biology, State University of Alagoas
Santana do Ipanema
Alagoas, Brazil

Bimal Bhusan Chakraborty
Centre for Soft Matter, Department of Chemistry
Assam University
Silchar, India

Sudip Choudhury
Centre for Soft Matter, Department of Chemistry
Assam University
Silchar, India

Asitha T. Cooray
Department of Chemistry; Instrument Centre, Faculty
of Applied Sciences
University of Sri Jayewardenepura
Nugegoda, Sri Lanka

Kuheli Deb
Centre for Soft Matter, Department of Chemistry
Assam University
Silchar, India

Donia Dominic
Department of Botany, St. George's College
Aruvithura, Erattupetta
Kerala, India

Ana V. Dordio
Chemistry and Biochemistry Department;
MARE – Marine and Environmental Sciences Centre
School of Sciences and Technology
University of Évora
Évora, Portugal

Fatma Nur Eraslan
Department of Environmental Engineering
Eskişehir Technical University
Eskişehir, Turkey

Denise Crocce Romano Espinosa
Chemical Engineering Department
Polytechnic School of University of São Paulo
São Paulo, Brazil

Jorge M.S. Faria
National Institute for Agrarian and Veterinarian Research
INIAV
Oeiras, Portugal

Teresa Ferreira
Chemistry and Biochemistry Department, School of Sciences and Technology; HERCULES Laboratory
University of Évora
Évora, Portugal

Eftade O. Gaga
Department of Environmental Engineering and Environmental Research Center (ÇEVMER)
Eskişehir Technical University
Eskişehir, Türkiye

Sanchala Gallage
Department of Aquaculture and Fisheries, Faculty of Livestock, Fisheries & Nutrition
Wayamba University of Sri Lanka; University of Sri Lanka
Makandura, Sri Lanka

Kadir Gedik
Department of Environmental Engineering
Eskişehir Technical University
Eskişehir, Turkey

Anu Gopinath
Department of Aquatic Environment Management
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Cochin, India

Sunayana Goswami
Department of Zoology
Biswanath College
Assam, India

Sedat Gundogdu
Department of Basic Sciences, Faculty of Fisheries
Cukurova University
Adana, Turkey

Nurani Ikhlas
Department of Environmental Engineering
Faculty of Engineering
Institut Teknologi Pembangunan Surabaya
Indonesia

Marta Jaskulak
Department of Immunobiology and Environment Microbiology
Medical University of Gdańsk
Gdańsk, Poland

Jasintha Jayasanka
Department of Biosystems Technology, Faculty of Technology
University of Sri Jayewardenepura
Nugegoda, Sri Lanka

Chamila V.L. Jayasinghe
Department of Food Science and Technology
Wayamba University of Sri Lanka
Makandura, Gonawila, Sri Lanka

Sharmila Jayatilake
Department of Food Science and Technology
Wayamba University of Sri Lanka
Makandura, Gonawila, Sri Lanka

Lander de Jesus Alves
Postgraduate Program in Biology and Biotechnology of Microorganisms
State University of Santa Cruz (UESC)
Ilhéus, Bahia, Brazil

Priya Jose
Department of Botany, St. George's College
Aruvithura, Erattupetta
Kerala, India

Dinushi Kaushalya
Department of Food Science & Technology, Faculty of Livestock, Fisheries & Nutrition
Wayamba University of Sri Lanka
Gonawila, Sri Lanka

Santhirasekaram Keerthanan
Ecosphere Resilience Research Centre, Faculty of Applied Sciences
University of Sri Jayewardenepura
Nugegoda, Sri Lanka

Farhan R. Khan
Norway Norwegian Research Centre (NORCE)
Bergen, Norway

N.K. Sandunika Kithmini
Department of Food Science and Technology
Wayamba University of Sri Lanka
Makandura, Gonawila, Sri Lanka

Pabasari A. Koliyabandara
Department of Civil and Environmental Technology
Faculty of Technology
University of Sri Jayewardenepura
Homagama, Sri Lanka

K.M. Prakash M. Kulathunga
Department of Food Science and Technology
Wayamba University of Sri Lanka
Makandura, Gonawila, Sri Lanka

Anna Kwarciak-Kozłowska
Faculty of Infrastructure and Environment
Częstochowa University of Technology
Częstochowa, Poland

Carlos Alberto Ferreira Lagarinhos
Metallurgical and Materials Department
Polytechnic School of University of São Paulo
São Paulo, Brazil

Magdalena Madeła
Institute of Environmental Engineering
Czestochowa University of Technology
Czestochowa, Poland

Dhammika N. Magana-Arachchi
Molecular Microbiology & Human Diseases Unit
National Institute of Fundamental Studies
Kandy, Sri Lanka

Mehdi Mahbod
Department of Water Sciences and Engineering
College of Agriculture
Jahrom University, Jahrom, Iran

Laura A.T. Markley
Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering
Syracuse University
Syracuse, NY United States

Florin-Constantin Mihai
CERNESIM Center, Department of Exact Sciences and Natural Sciences
Institute of Interdisciplinary Research "Alexandru Ioan Cuza" University of Iași
Iași, Romania

Manju P. Nair
Department of Aquatic Environment Management
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Cochin, India

Ayanthie Navaratne
Department of Chemistry
University of Peradeniya
Peradeniya, Sri Lanka

Fábio C. Nunes
Academic Department
Federal Institute Baiano (IF BAIANO)
Santa Inês, Bahia, Brazil

Yudith Vega Paramitadevi
Environmental Engineering and Management Study Program
Vocational Studies of IPB University
Indonesia

Amir Parnian
National Salinity Research Center (NSRC)
Agricultural Research Education and Extension Organization (AREEO)
Yazd, Iran

Aleena Maria Paul
Department of Botany
St. George's College
Aruvithura, Erattupetta, Kerala, India

Saurav Paul
Centre for Soft Matter, Department of Chemistry
Assam University
Silchar, India

Kalani Imalka Perera
International Program in Hazardous Substances and Environmental Management
Chulalongkorn University
Bangkok, Thailand

Ana Paula Pinto
Mediterranean Institute for Agriculture Environment and Development, MED & Global Change and Sustainability Institute, CHANGE Institute for Advanced Studies and Research; Chemistry and Biochemistry Department, School of Sciences and Technology, University of Évora
Évora, Portugal

Majeti Narasimha Vara Prasad
School of Life Sciences
University of Hyderabad (an Institution of Eminence)
Hyderabad, Telangana, India

Nirmala Prasadi
Department of Food Science
Ontario Agriculture College, University of Guelph
Guelph, Ontario, Canada

K.S.D. Premarathna
Ecosphere Resilience Research Centre, Faculty of Applied Sciences
University of Sri Jayewardenepura
Nugegoda, Sri Lanka

H. Umesh K.D.Z. Rajapakse
Department of Food Science and Technology
Wayamba University of Sri Lanka
Makandura, Gonawila, Sri Lanka

Anushka Upamali Rajapaksha
Ecosphere Resilience Research Centre
Faculty of Applied Sciences
University of Sri Jayewardenepura
Nugegoda, Sri Lanka

Bimastyaji Surya Ramadan
Environmental Sustainability Research Group (ENSI-RG), Department of Environmental Engineering, Faculty of Engineering
Universitas Diponegoro
Indonesia

Sammani Ramanayaka
Lancaster Environment Centre
Lancaster University
Lancaster, United Kingdom

Beata Ratnawati
Environmental Engineering and Management Study Program
Vocational Studies of IPB University
Indonesia

Ersa Rishanti
Department of Geophysics and Meteorology
Faculty of Mathematics and Natural Science of IPB University
Indonesia

Aryadeep Roychoudhury
Discipline of Life Sciences, School of Sciences
Indira Gandhi National Open University
Maidan Garhi, New Delhi, India

Sarika Sasi
Department of Botany
St. George's College
Aruvithura, Erattupetta, Kerala, India

Gobishankar Sathyamohan
Department of Chemistry
National Institute of Technology Jamshedpur
Jharkhand, India

Abin Sebastian
Department of Botany
St. George's College, Aruvithura
Erattupetta, Kerala, India

Kirk T. Semple
Lancaster Environment Centre
Lancaster University
Lancaster, United Kingdom

Samanthika Senarath
Department of Food Science & Technology, Faculty of Livestock, Fisheries & Nutrition
Wayamba University of Sri Lanka
Gonawila, Sri Lanka

Madushika Sewwandi
Ecosphere Resilience Research Centre
Faculty of Applied Sciences
University of Sri Jayewardenepura
Nugegoda, Sri Lanka

Misriya Shaji
Department of Botany
St. George's College, Aruvithura
Erattupetta, Kerala, India

Sheenu Sharma
Soil Ecosystem and Restoration Ecology Lab
Department of Botany
Panjab University
Chandigarh, India

Anand Narain Singh
Soil Ecosystem and Restoration Ecology Lab
Department of Botany
Panjab University, Chandigarh, India

Siril Singh
Department of Environment Studies; Soil Ecosystem and Restoration Ecology Lab, Department of Botany
Panjab University
Chandigarh, India

José R. de Souza Filho
Academic Department
Federal Institute Baiano (IFBAIANO)
Catu, Bahia, Brazil

Sasimali Soysa
Department of Physical Sciences and Technology
Faculty of Applied Sciences
Sabaragamuwa University
Belihuloya, Sri Lanka

Ishara U. Soyza
Instrument Centre, Faculty of Applied Sciences
University of Sri Jayewardenepura
Nugegoda, Sri Lanka

Giuseppe Suaria
National Research Council (CNR)
Institute of Marine Sciences (ISMAR)
Lerici, Italy

Jorge Alberto Soares Tenório
Chemical Department
Polytechnic School of The University of São Paulo
São Paulo, SP, Brazil

Ana Turyanti
Department of Geophysics and Meteorology
Faculty of Mathematics and Natural Science of
IPB University
Indonesia

Meththika Vithanage
Ecosphere Resilience Research Centre, Faculty of Applied Sciences
University of Sri Jayewardenepura
Nugegoda, Sri Lanka

Janitha Walpita
Department of Multidisciplinary Studies, Faculty of Urban and Aquatic Bioresources; Instrument Centre
Faculty of Applied Sciences
University of Sri Jayewardenepura
Nugegoda, Sri Lanka

Rasika P. Wanigatunge
Department of Plant and Molecular Biology
University of Kelaniya
Kelaniya, Sri Lanka

Hasintha Wijesekara
Department of Natural Resources, Faculty of Applied Sciences
Sabaragamuwa University
Belihuloya, Sri Lanka

Madhuni Wijesooriya
Department of Botany, Faculty of Science
University of Ruhuna
Matara, Sri Lanka

Rajni Yadav
Soil Ecosystem and Restoration Ecology Lab
Department of Botany
Panjab University
Chandigarh, India

Iwona Zawieja
Faculty of Infrastructure and Environment
Institute of Environmental Engineering, Czestochowa University of Technology
Czestochowa, Poland

Hao Zhang
Lancaster Environment Centre
Lancaster University
Lancaster, United Kingdom

Katarzyna Zorena
Department of Immunobiology and Environment Microbiology
Medical University of Gdańsk
Gdańsk, Poland

Preface

Microplastics (MPs) are emerging global contaminants, and the scientific community is becoming increasingly interested in this topic. This book discusses recent developments in multidisciplinary research on MPs, including their distribution in the soil, hydrosphere, and aerosphere, as well as their sources, fates, distribution, toxicity, and management. Particularly during the SARS-CoV-2 pandemic, there has been tremendous production and consumption of single-use MPs. But although most MPs are produced on land, they are eventually deposited in the marine environment. This book reviews the state of single-use plastics and MPs in the atmosphere, the ocean, soil systems, and the food chain and food web along with treatment technologies and management.

The sampling, processing, and analytical procedures employed to date to identify MPs are complex. Leaching MPs from landfills and industrial wastewater, vector transport of pollutants, and MPs found on beaches and in marine settings are all evaluated in the hydrosphere. Additionally, MPs in sewage sludge, soils fertilized with sludge, and soils irrigated with wastewater are explored, as well as any potential consequences for plants and human health. Important management strategies are also covered, including suggestions for useful information for policymakers, non-experts, environmental researchers, ecologists, and toxicologists. The interplay of MPs at the macro and molecular levels with the human, animal, and environmental domains is highlighted (Figure 1). As MPs enter or accumulate in the food chain or participate in the food web, their fate in the ecosystem is crucial. It is well-recognized that MPs have a significant capacity for adsorbing a wide range of pollutants, particularly organic toxins. Therefore, it is anticipated that all of the findings will contribute to the establishment of necessary environmental laws and policies as well as pinpoint knowledge gaps regarding MP pollution and contamination.

MPs in the environment originate from a variety of sources and are distributed worldwide. Sources include abrasion of synthetic textiles during laundry, tire abrasion while driving, city dust, spills, road markings, weathering and abrasion by vehicles, marine coatings, etc., in addition to domestic items such as personal care products and industrial uses such as plastic pellets in manufacturing, transport, and recycling. MPs also come from marine accidents such as the X-Press Pearl maritime disaster in 2021, which released thousands of tons of plastic nurdles and other polymers into the marine environment, contaminating coral reefs, seagrass beds, and the food chain. The pathways of global MP cycling include the road runoff pathway, wastewater pathway, wind pathway, and ocean pathway. The fate of MPs in the environment is particularly important because they are transferred to and accumulate in the food chain and become part of the food web.

Management of plastics and MPs is critical for many reasons:

1) Every year, several million tons of primary and secondary MPs leak into the oceans.
2) Discarded plastics could wrap around the earth four times in a single year.
3) Disposable plastic items represent 50% of marine litter.
4) About 95% of disposable plastic packing is wasted.
5) Plastics can survive in the environment for up to 500 years.
6) Recycling plastics takes 88% less energy than making new plastic. We can save a huge amount of gasoline by recycling plastics.

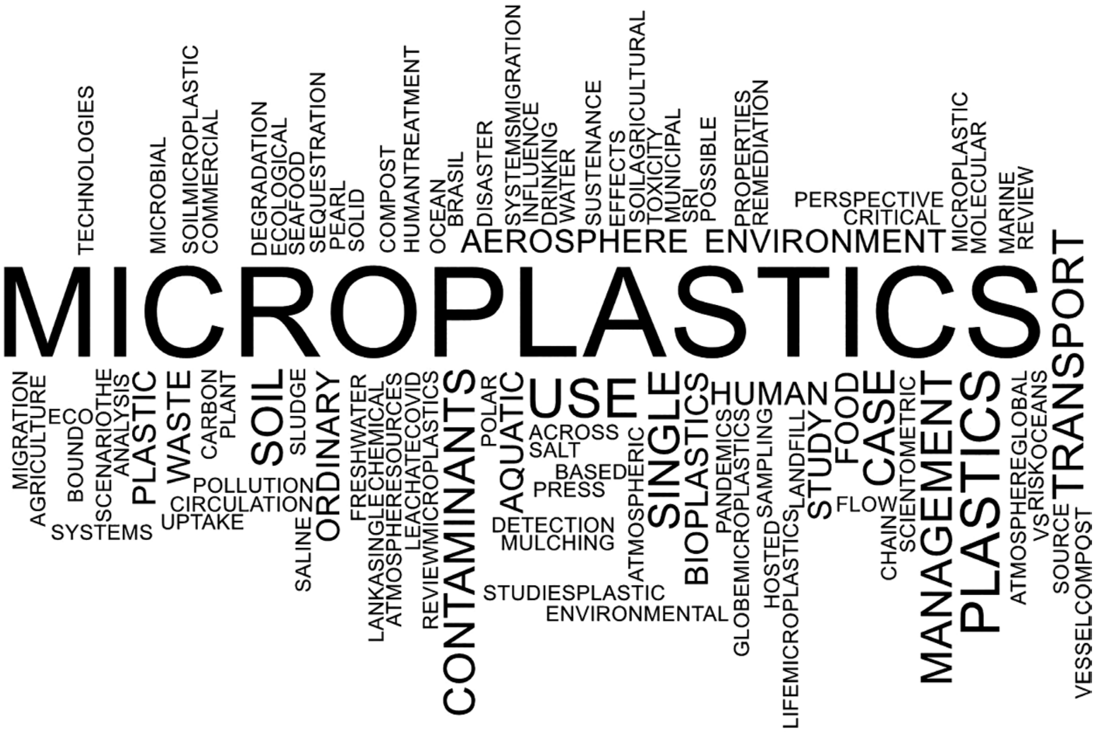


Figure 1 The word cloud map generated from the titles and keywords of the chapters in this book.

"Mission Starfish 2030: Restore Our Ocean and Waters" is a document prepared by an independent commission of the European Union for Healthy Oceans, Seas, and Coastal and Inland Waters. Its overall goal is to restore the earth's oceans and waters by 2030. More concretely, inspired by the shape of a starfish, the Mission highlights four interdependent challenges – unsustainable footprint; climate change; lack of understanding, connection, and investment; and inadequate governance – by proposing five overarching objectives for 2030:

a) Filling the knowledge and emotional gap
b) Regenerating marine and water ecosystems
c) Zero pollution
d) Decarbonizing our waters, ocean, and sea waters
e) Revamping governance

This book is relevant for helping to achieve the Mission Starfish goals via plastic abatement.

Maritime Climate Change: Physical Drivers and Impact

Climate Change and Geodynamics in Polar Regions

Edited by

Neloy Khare

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group

Climate Change and Geodynamics in Polar Regions

Climate Change and Geodynamics in Polar Regions covers most of the scientific aspects of geoscientific investigation undertaken by Indian researchers in the polar regions: the Antarctic, Arctic, and Himalayan regions. A firm understanding of the cryosphere region's geological perspectives helps students and geoscientists evaluate important scientific queries in the field.

This book will help readers understand how the cryosphere's geoscientific evolution took place in the geological past, as well as how the climate changed throughout history, and how polar regions were affected by global warming. It also discusses how we might expect polar climate to change in the future. A firm understanding of the cryosphere region's geological perspectives helps students and geoscientists answer some of the most puzzling scientific queries and generate new ideas for future research in this field.

The book is edited by **Dr Neloy Khare**, presently Adviser to the Government of India with a very distinctive acumen in quality science and research in his areas of expertise covering a large spectrum of geographically distinct locations like the Antarctic, Arctic, Southern Ocean, Bay of Bengal, Arabian Sea, Indian Ocean etc. He obtained a doctorate (PhD) in tropical marine region and Doctor of Science (DSc) in Southern High latitude marine regions towards environmental/climatic implications.

Maritime Climate Change: Physical Drivers and Impact

Series Editor: Neloy Khare

As global climate change continues to unfold, the two-way links between the tropical oceans and the poles will play key determining factors in these sensitive regions' climatic evolution. Now is the time to take a detailed look at how the tropical oceans and the poles are coupled climatically. The signatures of environmental and climatic conditions are well preserved in many natural archives available over land and ocean. Many efforts have been made to unravel such mysteries of climate through many natural geological archives from tropics to the polar region. This series makes an effort to cover in pertinent time various depositional regimes, different proxies- Planktic, benthic, pollens and spores, invertebrates, geochemistry, sedimentology etc. and emerged teleconnections between the poles and tropics at regional and global scale, besides sea-level changes and neo tectonism. This book series will review theories and methods, analyze case studies, and identify and describe the evolving spatial-temporal variations in climate and providing a better process-level understanding of these patterns. It will discuss significantly, generalizable insights that improve our understanding of climatic evolution across time—including the future. It aims to serve all professionals, students and researchers, scientists alike in academia, industry, government, and beyond.

Climate Change in the Arctic
An Indian Perspective
Neloy Khare

Climate Change and Geodynamics in Polar Regions
Edited by Neloy Khare

Climate Change and Geodynamics in Polar Regions

Edited by Neloy Khare

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
Boca Raton London New York

CRC Press is an imprint of the
Taylor & Francis Group, an **informa** business

First edition published 2023
by CRC Press
6000 Broken Sound Parkway NW, Suite 300, Boca Raton, FL 33487–2742

and by CRC Press
4 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4RN

CRC Press is an imprint of Taylor & Francis Group, LLC

ISBN: 978-1-032-25531-6 (hbk)
ISBN: 978-1-032-25657-3 (pbk)
ISBN: 978-1-003-28441-3 (ebk)

DOI: 10.1201/9781003284413

Typeset in Times
by Apex CoVantage, LLC

Contents

Foreword

The Paris Accords in 2015 is an outcome of global concern about climate change, which plays a pivotal role to determine whether the UN mandated Sustainable Development Goals will be achievable by 2030. The polar regions of the Earth are best suited for studying the cause-and-effect relationships of climate change. Geodynamics is one of the many natural factors of climate change, and a broad understanding of the inter-relationships between deep Earth processes and their surface manifestations is a significant advancement in our knowledge. Viewed in these contexts, this book presents a collection of studies related to climate change and geodynamics with a focus on the polar regions. The Arctic polar region situated in the northernmost part of the Earth with the North Pole is characterized by distinctively polar conditions of climate, plant and animal life, and other physical features. Likewise, the spectacular "icy continent" of Antarctica is the southernmost continent with the South Pole being a virtually uninhabited and largely ice-covered landmass. The main distinction between these two polar regions is that the Arctic is an ocean surrounded by land whereas, the Antarctic is the land surrounded by an ocean. The Himalayas, considered to be the Third Pole, aroused general interest to generate field and laboratory data for a better understanding of the geodynamic evolution of these spectacular features and to assess the impacts of global warming on the Himalayan glaciers along with other two polar regions.

Over the past 30 years, the Arctic has warmed at roughly twice the global rate. It is attributed to a phenomenon known as Arctic amplification, enhanced by anthropogenic factors. Similarly, new data indicates that climate change is negatively impacting Antarctica and the Himalayas (e.g. melting of glaciers).

Evidence suggests that the West Antarctic Peninsula is one of the fastest-warming areas on Earth, since Antarctica is large, climate change is not having a uniform impact. It has been observed that some areas experience increases in sea ice extent, on the contrary, in other regions, sea ice is decreasing. The unprecedented warming in the Arctic, Antarctic and the Himalayan region is severely causing changes not only to the physical environment but to the entire ecosystem. It is believed that understanding climate change impacts on all these three poles (the Arctic, the Antarctic, and the Himalayas) is a matter of critical importance not only for the region alone but globally.

The Arctic region is an element of a geodynamic system that includes the ancient Eurasian continent and intensely developing younger Arctic Ocean. The Circum-Arctic terrains comprise a series of complex geological structures, with fragments of Archaean to Paleoproterozoic shields and platforms, remains of orogenic belts of Neo-Proterozoic to Cenozoic ages. Recent seismicity indicates ongoing geodynamic processes. New surveys and data provide insights into Arctic continental terrains, basins and tectonic structures. Antarctica has geometric significance for global plate kinematic studies owing to its linkage to the seafloor spreading systems of the Indian, Atlantic Oceans and the Pacific. On the contrary, the Himalayan region, a site of continent-continent collision and disappearance of the Tethys is yet another site to understand various climate change impacts and geodynamical events apart from the Arctic and the Antarctic. The great mountain ranges of the Himalayas are the Earth's unique features. This region came into existence mainly due to the successive accretions of various isolated continental and arc terranes with the converging Indian and Eurasian land masses during Late Mesozoic-Early Tertiary.

Therefore, the Arctic, Antarctic and the Himalayan region are the hotspots of climate change assessment and are sites for understanding geodynamical processes. **The** present book, *Climate Change and Geodynamics in Polar Regions*, aptly provides a comprehensive account of Indian efforts to help understand the impact of climate change and the geodynamics of the Arctic, Antarctic, and the Himalayas.

The book begins with the Arctic through an assessment of the Geomorphology around the Kongsfjorden and Krossfjorden system, Svalbard, by **Pattanaik et al**. Interestingly the significance of the Antarctic Climates and glacial dynamics using mass balance over the Antarctic ice sheet has been highlighted by **Kumar et al**. On the other hand, **Singh et al**. have detailed the Antarctic Climate history and its relationship with global climate changes gleaning clues from ice core records. Significant attempts have been made to study the glacial geomorphology around Schirmacher oasis, Antarctica by **Pattanaik and Baba**. Similarly, **Chaturvedi and Khare** highlighted the significance of foraminiferal studies from the southern high latitudes in assessing global climate change coupled with **Sunil et al.'s** ionospheric response over Antarctica during the Total Solar Eclipse on December 4, 2021. On the contrary, **Reshmi et al**. dealt with the isotope hydrochemistry of Antarctic lakes and ponds while a limnological assessment of water bodies of extreme Antarctic climatic conditions has been made by **Khare et al**.

In a significant attempt, **Singh et al**. focused on the glacial morpho-sedimentology and processes of landscape evolution in the Himalayan region with special emphasis on the Gangotri Glacier area, Garhwal Himalaya.

Altogether, this book provides a comprehensive, up-to-date account of how climate changes and various geodynamical processes occur in the poles (the Arctic, the Antarctic, and the Himalayas). The book provides a holistic picture of the impacts of rising temperatures over the cryosphere region with a highly cross-disciplinary approach to reflect the importance of the Arctic, Antarctic, and the Himalayas in addressing the global issues of climate change.

It will be of immense value to all researchers keen to understand the science of climate change in these sensitive regions. It will also help the Decision Support System and the development of climate models.

Somnath Dasgupta
INSA Senior Scientist at Indian Statistical Institute, Kolkata and Honorary Professor at Indian Institute of Science Education & Research, Kolkata

Date: May 2022
Place: Kolkata

Preface

The polar regions are the center stage of the evolution of all surrounding continental bodies separated millions of years ago. The entire world is experiencing the looming danger of global warming where the Arctic, Antarctic, and Himalayas have again emerged as the keystone in a changing world. It reinforces the importance of continual changes in these cryosphere regions, their history, and the impact of these changes on global climates.

Geodynamics and environmental geodesy cover the entire gamut of research activities on the deformation of the solid Earth including its fluid envelope. It also encompasses the modelling of the past ice history of the Earth, climate change and its impact on polar ice sheets, and sea-level variations. Similarly, the studies on elastic tidal deformation of the Earth and seismogenic tectonic deformation are also significant components of the research activities which can easily be addressed through geoscientific instrumentation such as Interferometric Synthetic Aperture Radar, GPS etc. Recently introduced space-geodetic techniques such as the Gravity Recovery and Climate Experiment (GRACE) and satellite altimetry provide new observations of the changing nature of our mother planet

Such tools play a significant role to investigate how climate change is affecting the environment, of these cryosphere regions (the Arctic, the Antarctic, and the Himalayas)

It is a fact that many glaciers have retreated and ice shelves have either collapsed severely or are being retreated that formerly fringed the peninsula. Such visible signs of the climate changes over the Arctic, Antarctic and Himalayas are responsible for causing physical changes and the living environment by bringing notably changes in sea level, rates of melting of polar ice caps and even ground water storage. Consequently, the melting of ice sheets has the reverse effect, causing uplift of continents and increases in ocean volumes.

Undoubtedly the study of climate change in the Arctic, Antarctica, and Himalayas is important to enabling researchers to prepare the predictive models accurately and put forth future climate change scenarios and help contribute to the decision support systems for the policy makers.

We need to understand and recognize the warming pattern. If global warming continues, it may not be uniform. In the context of global warming, we must address the more significant issue of climate change and geodynamics in polar regions on which the present book places emphasis.

The book begins with the Arctic regions which are important in geomorphological studies as the region is characterised by the lowest sediment fluxes. While assessing the Geomorphology around Kongsfjorden and Krossfjorden systems, Svalbard, **Pattanaik et al**. pointed out that the Arctic region is characterised by a large sediment store and a favorable topography for sediment transport. The Svalbard archipelago in the Arctic has been widely studied in terms of its landscape, glacial dynamics, sediment transports and paleoclimatic studies. The fjord system is the transition zone between the terrestrial and marine environment, acting as an important archive that will have geomorphological features that have been formed as a result of both terrestrial and marine processes. It is a potential site to study paleoenvironmental changes as the region provides a high-resolution sedimentary archive. Diverse geomorphological features developed in Svalbard are due to the interplay of climate and surficial processes active in that region. A study on these features will provide an opportunity to understand the sequence and mechanism of the surficial processes.

The polar regions act as a sensitive barometer to the climate changes occurring on the global scale. **Kumar et al**. present a snapshot of glaciological studies carried out in Schirmacher Oasis and the Nivlisen ice shelf in Central Dronning Maud Land (cDML), East Antarctica during Indian Antarctic Expeditions. Systematic observations have been meticulously carried out since 1996 to document the changes in the ~9 km long Polar Ice Front along the southern margin of the Schirmacher Oasis. Ice stakes have been installed to monitor the accumulation/ablation and estimation of surface mass balance over a 14000-sq.-km area. Ice dynamics and estimation of velocity using differential GPS were done to calculate the surface mass balance. Ice thickness data using ground penetrating radar is used to calculate the net mass balance in the area. According to them, the Dakshin Gangotri Polar Ice Front (DGPIF) shows an annual retreat of 1.32 m during 2018–19 and a cumulative retreat of 14.9 m since 1996. The polar ice front at Schirmacher Oasis shows an annual retreat of 2.79 m during 2018–19 and a cumulative retreat of 42.08 m since 2001. The average annual accumulation of 0.98 m is observed in the high Polar ice sheet area which is equivalent to 394.01 kg/m^2 Snow Water Equivalent (SWE). Impeded Polar Ice sheet area shows an average ablation that ranges from 133.12 kg/m^2 to 183.25 kg/m^2 SWE. The ice velocity during 2018–19 varies from 1.98 m/y to 51.65 m/y with an average velocity of 21.16 m/y in parts of the High Polar Ice sheet area, whereas the ice velocity was 4 m/y to 97 m/y for the same time during 2017–18. The ice sheet movement with an average of 6.78 m/y in parts Impeded Polar Ice sheet area has been recorded, whereas the ice sheet movement over DGPIF is found to be of the order of 5.23 m/y which reveals a total 6.55 m annual degeneration of DGPIF wall during 2018–19, which is equivalent to 6006.35 kg/m^2 loss of ice mass at DGPIF area. Out flux of ice mass for estimation of mass balance in the region shows 1.7504 gigatonnes of ice mass loss from the out-flux gate at Nivlisen ice shelf during 2017–2018, as compared to 1.66 gigatonnes during 2016–17. An increase in the ice loss is attributed mainly to a faster rate of movement of the ice sheets during that period. The cumulative ice loss from the area would have contributed to a rise in mean sea level by about 0.0045 mm and 0.0048 mm during 2017–18 and 2018–19, respectively.

On the other hand, **Singh et al**. have provided an overview of the Antarctic Climate history through ice core records. They highlighted that the Ice core studies in the last two decades have made important conceptual advancements in our understanding of the climate forcing factors and climate response at millennial time scales. Antarctic climate and its variability in the last 800 kyr have been revealed through the study of long ice core records obtained from a few important strategic localities in Antarctica. According to them, Ice cores have many advantages over the marine and continental sedimentary records in terms of their completeness; ability to calibrate actual and measured temperature data through proxies. Ice core records have truly preserved the signatures of variations in the rate of snowfall, and temperature, of the region where they are located. In addition, the wind-blown dust and sea salt record, and the trapped air bubbles containing major and trace gases of the prevailing atmosphere, all provide us clues to the climate changes through ages and over wide regions. The ice cores have improved our understanding to our understanding of the various forcing factors and their mutual impact on the climate system. The nonlinearity of the climate system involves an important threshold of some of the forcing factors like greenhouse gas concentration and Meridional Ocean Circulation. The long ice core records have thrown light on such threshold which gave rise to abrupt climate events. Also, the comparison of the Antarctic and Greenland ice core records led to important concepts like bipolar seesaw and lag and lead of the north and south They also opined that while climate change in the low latitude region is governed by a multitude of factors including land use, anthropogenic activities, ocean circulation, greenhouse gas emission and the external forcing like sun's radiation, the climate change at the poles, particularly Antarctica are mainly controlled by greenhouse concentration, orbital forcings, and feedback processes. That probably is a key factor for Antarctic amplification which is a manifestation of a climate signal two to three times the global average. For a clear understanding of the Antarctic amplification, the ice core records provide an excellent opportunity. One of the most significant findings from the long Antarctic ice core has been to understand the nature of the glacial and interglacial intervals including their amplitude and profile. Their comparison of the paleoclimate record of the Antarctic ice cores with mid-latitude marine sedimentary records reveals teleconnections in the climate through the ocean and atmospheric circulation. Also, the abruptness of the climate change in the north pole is not so evident in Antarctica where the changes are rather gradual. The Antarctic Ice core record compared with the Greenland Ice Core record enables us to understand the interhemispheric coupling at the millennial scale. The ice core studies have revealed that during the last glacial period, the Dasngaard-Oeschger events in Greenland and millennial-scale warm events in Antarctica are strongly coupled with a time lag through the Atlantic meridional overturning circulation showing teleconnections between north and south. The bipolar seesaw is to a great extent proved by comparing Byrd (Antarctica) and Greenland ice core records. In addition, the Antarctic climate is connected to the climate of the tropics. They highlighted that the Antarctic sea ice extent is related to the Indian and African monsoon. The Antarctic ice expansion and sea ice extension are related to enhanced summer monsoon. Well, dated stalagmite δ^{18}Orecord between 88 and 22 kyr BP from Yongxing Cave in central China characterizes changes in Asian monsoon (AM) strength and the studies have shown that the record is strongly anti-phased with Antarctic temperature variability on sub-orbital timescales during the Marine Isotope Stage (MIS) 3, thus establishing teleconnections between monsoon and Antarctic climate. Another major contribution to the ice core record has been the Antarctic Isotope Maxima Events (AIM). During MIS 3, the Antarctic climate is marked by some warming events when the temperature has gone up to 1 to 3 degrees Celsius and a high oxygen isotope value. These warming events are known as Antarctic isotopic Maxima (AIM) events and are characterized by gradual warming and cooling. This is in contrast to the Dansgaard—Oeschger events in the North where rapid warming (8–16 degrees Celsius) is followed by gradual cooling to Greenland Stadials. This shows a distinct difference in the pattern of the warming events in the north and south. Several theories have emerged to explain the bipolar seesaw including the development of a southern heat reservoir during Greenland stadials. Thus we see that the Antarctic Ice core records provide us with a great understanding of the climate system, feedback, forcing factors, response system, and global Tele connectivity from north to south and from polar to tropical latitudes. Though the oldest record goes back only to 800 Kyrs, it provides conceptual advancements in our understanding of the cause and effect relationship and physical processes of linkages, that can be applied for time beyond 800 Kyrs.

On the other hand, **Pattanaik and Baba** provided an exhaustive account of the glacial geomorphology around Schirmacher oasis which is an ice-free area of Dorning Maud Land, East Antarctica. This area is sandwiched between a continental ice sheet in the south and an ice shelf in the north. The ice-free region provides opportunities to study lithology, paleoclimate, glacial process and glacial geomorphology of Antarctica. The landscape and the glacial-geomorphological features found in the Schirmacher oasis help to understand the glacial process active in the region. Striations on bedrocks and erratics indicate the glaciers' movements and deglaciation phases of the Oasis. A considerable amount of sediments found in the oasis as till, pattern ground, moraines, block fields, and outwash plains witnessed the past glacial processes. Retreat and advancement of polar ice have resulted in the formation of various landforms such as valleys, glacial troughs, cliffs, moraines, and *roche moutonnées*. Sediment archives from the lakes provide paleoclimatic information about the oasis. Permanent Indian research station Maitri and Russian research station Novolazarevskaya provide a platform for the researchers for conducting various research works in the Schirmacher oasis.

In view of the significant influence of the southern high latitudes on global climatic change, it is important to understand the role of the Southern Ocean and Antarctica (SOA) in climatic change both at present as well as during the geologic past. The role of the southern high latitudes in climatic change during the geologic past can best be evaluated by using foraminiferal characteristics in sediments from beneath the ocean, from lakes, and uplifted on land. Numerous studies have been carried out in which foraminiferal characteristics have been used to assess paleoclimatic/paleoceanographic changes at southern high latitudes. **Chaturvedi and Khare** aim at reviewing the findings of major foraminiferal studies carried out on sediments from southern high latitudes. The changes in foraminiferal characteristics can help to understand the present and past Physicochemical aspects of the high-latitude Southern Ocean. The application of advanced and recently developed techniques on foraminifera recovered from the SOA enabled the reconstruction of the seawater temperature and the extent of the continental ice sheets during the geologic past. The foraminiferal studies from the Antarctic Circum-polar Current and the regions north of it vastly helped to understand the past variations in productivity as well as changes in the positions of the various polar fronts and the production of deep and intermediate waters. Although the surface distribution of foraminifera has been studied from many regions of the Southern Ocean, there still are several gaps in coverage. In addition, the potential of foraminifera recovered from the Antarctic lake sediments has not been fully explored.

Interestingly the total solar eclipse that occurred on December 4, 2021, generated significant electron density variations over Antarctica. **Sunil et al**. tracked and observed the ionospheric responses over Antarctica during this important period. They observed clear electron density depletions are observed along the eclipse totality path followed by gradual recoveries. Total Electron Content (TEC) derived from 35 Global Positioning System (GPS) stations located over West Antarctica was used to study the ionospheric electron density variations during the eclipse. They found that the absence of solar radiations following the eclipse onset resulted in the drop of charged particle density at various ionospheric layers, which in turn resulted in the decrease of TEC values.

Among the major features of the Antarctic landscape, water bodies stand as a potential source of information as most of these water bodies are of glacial origin, relatively small and date from the Pleistocene epoch of the Quaternary Period. During warmer austral spring and summer periods when the ice melts, the Antarctic water bodies receive the majority of their sediment supply. It is, therefore important to understand that the climatic changes influence the sediments and fauna/flora of the Antarctic water bodies. Hence these water bodies could emerge as an important source of paleoclimatic and global change information. To understand the inter-relationship between various aquatic communities, the study of the physical, chemical and biological conditions of the ambient water is significant. Similarly, the detailed study of biotic communities of the Antarctic water bodies is essential because the biota inhabiting the region today is of relatively recent re-colonization, which undoubtedly accounts for some of the distinctive species distribution. Furthermore, the Oasis and Hills in East Antarctica host many lakes and transient ponds in the ice-free regions formed by the advection heat and differential albedo promoting increased melting of Polar ice. **Reshmi et al**. studied one such Oasis, the Schirmacher and Larsemann Hills areas of the East Antarctica region to probe the chemical and isotopic evolution of the lake waters. They noticed that lake water in the Schirmacher Oasis is fed by the glacial melt water with a relatively low ionic load, whereas the lakes from the Larsemann Hills had a high concentration of dissolved ions. Inter ionic variability showed that weathering of silicate rocks is the prime source of ions in these lakes, followed by ion exchange and evaporation. According to them, Isotopic ratios were also distinctly different in the lake water in both regions. Diffusion controlled kinetic effect at the liquid-ice interface for different water isotopologues is the prime determinant of the isotopic composition in Schirmacher Oasis lakes, whereas, in addition to it, evaporative enrichment of heavier isotopes from open water bodies affects the lakes in Larsemann Hills.

Indubitably, any modification of the catchment region gets reflected in the lake system, which is more easily studied from the lake sediments, than the catchment itself because water bodies are natural sumps of large catchment areas. It is important to mention that the limnological studies can also reveal the structural features and geomorphology of the region in which they are situated. Being the largest and one of the deepest water bodies of the Schirmacher Oasis, central Dronning Maud Land region, of East Antarctica, the sediments of Priyadarshini water body provide a continuous record of high-resolution paleoclimatic information. To retrieve the long sediment core the need to get the information about lake bathymetry, bottom topography and an estimation of the distribution, thickness and stratigraphy of the sediments underlying the lake floor utilizing acoustic techniques such as echo-sounding and sub-bottom seismic reflection profiling of the Antarctic lakes is emphasized in the present study. The preparation of a detailed map of the Priyadarshini water body will help to understand the potential pathways for the sediment and water influx to the waterbody. The results of the present study coupled with the results of the sub-bottom profiler will help in marking potential coring locations. Having realised such importance of the Antarctic's water bodies, **Khare et al**. undertook a detailed morphometric assessment of Priyadarshini water body and also attempt to assess the limnological parameters of the water body (Priyadarshinin Lake) under the extreme Antarctic climatic conditions.

While addressing the danger of ongoing global warming on the Himalayan glaciers, **Singh et al**. focused on the paleo-depositional and paleo-climatic conditions. Glacier dynamics and resulting geomorphic features are the characteristics of various stages of glacial fluctuations. Various geomorphic features/landforms such as Lateral Moraines (LM), Terminal/Recessional Moraines (RM), Outwash Plain Deposits (OWP) and Kame Terraces were identified in the field. The field observations and lithological analysis reflect that these morphological features are evolved by the glacial (Gl), glacio-fluvial (Gf), and mass movement activities. The sediment size decreases whereas sorting, roundness and percentage of matrix increase from the Gl-Gf process. These geomorphic features are modified by catastrophic events such as Landslide Lake Outburst Flooding (LLOF) and Glacier Lake Outburst Flooding (GLOF). Therefore, the geomorphic features/landforms are evolved by glacial processes under the direct control of tectonics and climate and further reshaped by LLOF and/or GLOF.

Thus, the present book emphasizes deciphering the climate records in ice cores, geologic cores, and those inferred from rock outcrops. Its chapters on scientifically significant and addressing a specific issue of climate change and geodynamics over the polar region will be of interest to policy makers, researchers, and scientific institutions

Neloy Khare

Date: April 2022
Place: New Delhi

Acknowledgments

It is my great pleasure to express my gratitude and deep appreciation to all contributing authors. Without their valuable inputs on various facets of climate variability over the Antarctic and surrounding Southern Ocean region, the book would not have been possible. Various learned experts who have reviewed different chapters are graciously acknowledged for their timely, constructive, and critical reviews.

I sincerely thank Dr M. Ravichandran Secretary Ministry of Earth Sciences, Government of India, New Delhi (India), for their suppor and encouragement. Prof. Govardhan Mehta, FRS has always been a source of inspiration and is acknowledged for his kind support.

Prof. Anil Kumar Gupta, Indian Institute of Technology, Kharagpur (India) and Dr Rajiv Nigam former Adviser at the National Institute of Oceanography, Goa (India) are deeply acknowledged for providing many valuable suggestions to this book. This book has received significant support from Akshat Khare and Ashmit Khare, who have helped me during the book preparation. Dr Rajni Khare has unconditionally supported enormously during various stages of this book. Shri Hari Dass Sharma from the Ministry of Earth Sciences, New Delhi (India), has helped immensely in formatting the text and figures of this book and bringing it to its present form. The publisher (Taylor & Francis) have done a commendable job and are sincerely acknowledged.

Neloy Khare

Date: April 2022
Place: New Delhi

Contributors

K. K. Ajith
National Atmospheric Research Laboratory
Gadanki, India

Waseem Ahmad Baba
Department of Geology
School of Environment and Earth Sciences
Central University of Punjab
Bathinda, Punjab, India

Vikash Chandra
Polar Studies Division
Geological Survey of India (GSI)
Faridabad, Haryana, India

Subodh Kumar Chaturvedi
Institute of Hydrocarbon
Energy and Georesources
ONGC Centre for Advanced Studies
University of Lucknow
Lucknow, India

A. Dharwadkar
Polar Studies Division
Geological Survey of India (GSI)
Faridabad, Haryana

Prabhu Prasad Dash
ACOAST, Amity University Haryana (AUH)
Gurugram, India
and
Department of Geology
Maharaja Sriram Chandra Banja Deo University, Keonjhar Campus
Keonjhar, Odisha, India

Chetan Anand Dubey
Department of Geology
University of Lucknow
Lucknow, India

Deepak Y. Gajbhiye
Polar Studies Division
GSI
Faridabad, Haryana

Pawan Kumar Gautam
Department of Geology
University of Lucknow
Lucknow, India

Girish Gopinath
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Kochi, India

Amrutha K.
Department of Geology
School of Environment and Earth Sciences
Central University of Punjab
Bathinda, Punjab, India

Tushar Kaushik
Biodiversity and Paleobiology
Agharkar Research Institute
Pune, India

Rajni Khare
Department of Environmental Sciences & Limnology, Bakatullah University
Bhopal, India (Formerly)

Dhirendra Kumar
Department of Geology
University of Lucknow
Lucknow, India
and
Department of Geology
Central University of South Bihar
Gaya, Bihar, India

Pradeep Kumar
Polar Studies Division
Geological Survey of India (GSI)
Faridabad, Haryana, India

Kirtiranjan Mallick
Department of Geology
Utkal University, Vani Vihar
Bhubaneswar, Odisha 751004

Jitendra Kumar Pattanaik
Department of Geology
School of Environment and Earth Sciences
Central University of Punjab
Bathinda, Punjab, India

M. Praveenbabu
Centre for Water Resources Development and Management
Kozhikode, India

Rahul Rawat
Indian Institute of Geomagnetism
Mumbai, India

T. R. Resmi
Centre for Water Resources Development and Management
Kozhikode, India

Ankush Shrivastava
Department of Geology
Mohanlal Sukhadia University
Rajasthan, India

S. P. Shukla
Polar Studies Division
Geological Survey of India (GSI)
Faridabad, Haryana

Anoop Kumar Singh
Department of Geology
University of Lucknow
Lucknow, India

Ashutosh K. Singh
Department of Geology
Centre of Advanced Studies
University of Delhi
Delhi, India

Dhruv Sen Singh
Department of Geology
University of Lucknow
Lucknow, India

Vikram Pratap Singh
Department of Geology
Indira Gandhi National Tribal University
Amarkantak, India

Devesh K. Sinha
Department of Geology
Centre of Advanced Studies
University of Delhi
Delhi, India

A. S. Sunil
CUSAT-NCPOR Centre for Polar Sciences
Department of Marine Geology and Geophysics
School of Marine Sciences
Cochin University of Science and Technology
Kochi, India

P. S. Sunil
CUSAT-NCPOR Centre for Polar Sciences
Department of Marine Geology and Geophysics
School of Marine Sciences
Cochin University of Science and Technology
Kochi, India

A. K. Swain
State Unit: Odisha, Geological Survey of India (GSI)
Bhubaneswar, Odisha, India

Dhanya Thomas
CSIR Fourth Paradigm Institute
Bangalore, India

Balkrishan Vishawakarma
Department of Geology
University of Lucknow
Lucknow, India

Ashwani Wanganeo
Department of Environmental Sciences & Limnology
Bakatullah University
Bhopal, India (Formerly)

Rajni Wanganeo
Department of Zoology
Government Benzeer College of Commerce & Science
Bhopal, India (Formerly)

Editor

Dr Neloy Khare, presently Adviser/Scientist "G" to the Government of India at MoES has a very distinctive acumen not only in administration but also in quality science and research in his areas of expertise covering a large spectrum of geographically distinct locations like the Antarctic, Arctic, Southern Ocean, Bay of Bengal, Arabian Sea, Indian Ocean etc. Dr Khare has almost 30 years of experience in the field of paleoclimate research using paleobiology Paleontology)/teaching/science management/administration/coordination for scientific programs (including Indian Polar Programme) etc. Having completed his doctorate (PhD) in tropical marine region and Doctor of Science (DSc) in Southern High latitude marine regions towards environmental/climatic implications using various proxies including foraminifera (micro-fossil), have made significant contributions in the field of Paleoclimatology of Southern high latitude regions (the Antarctic and the Southern Ocean) using Micropaleontology as a tool. These studies coupled with his paleoclimatic reconstructions from tropical regions helped understand causal linkages and teleconnections between the processes taking place in Southern high latitudes with that of climate variability occurring in tropical regions. Dr Khare has been conferred Honorary Professor and Adjunct Professor by many Indian Universities.

He has a very impressive list of publications to his credit (125 research articles in national and international scientific journals: three special issues of national scientific journals as guest editor; edited special issues of *Polar Science* (Elsevier), *Journal of Asian Earth Science* (Elsevier), *Quaternary International* (Elsevier), and *Frontiers in Marine Science* as its managing/guest editor. He has authored/edited many books, and has contributed 130 abstracts to various seminars, as well as writing 23 popular science articles and five technical reports). The government of India and many professional bodies have bestowed him with many prestigious awards for his humble scientific contributions to past climate changes/oceanography/polar science and Southern Oceanography. The most coveted award is the Rajiv Gandhi National Award of 2013, conferred by the Honourable President of India. Others include the ISCA Young Scientist Award, Boyscast Fellowship, CIES French Fellowship, Krishnan Gold Medal, Best Scientist Award, Eminent Scientist Award, ISCA Platinum Jubilee Lecture, IGU Fellowship, and many more. Dr Khare has made tremendous efforts to popularize ocean science and polar science across the country by way of delivering many Invited lectures, radio talks, and publishing popular science articles.

Dr Khare sailed in the Arctic Ocean as a part of "Science PUB" in 2008 during the International Polar Year campaign for scientific exploration and became the first Indian to sail in the Arctic Ocean.

1 Geomorphology around Kongsfjorden-Krossfjorden System, Svalbard

Jitendra Kumar Pattanaik,[1] Amrutha K.,[1] and Prabhu Prasad Dash[2]

[1] Department of Geology, School of Environment and Earth Sciences, Central University of Punjab, Bathinda, Punjab, India

[2] ACOAST, Amity University Haryana (AUH), Gurugram, India; Department of Geology, Maharaja Sriram Chandra Banja Deo University, Keonjhar Campus, Keonjhar, Odisha

CONTENTS

1.1 INTRODUCTION

Polar environments are distinctly sensitive to climatic changes as it belongs to the lower end of the energy spectrum of our planet. Hence, it is susceptible to ecosystem variation, landscape evolution and anthropoid influence. The Arctic region has its characteristic geomorphic features which indirectly indicate the geology, climatic condition and different geomorphic forces that are/were active in the area. The abundance of standing waters is a characteristic feature of the Arctic region (Pienitz et al., 2008). Presence of certain geomorphological features can be used to understand the climatic conditions and geomorphological

DOI: 10.1201/9781003284413-1

agents prevalent in the area. Periglacial land forms such as ice-wedges, rock glaciers, pingos, solifluction, avalanches, debris flows, rockfalls and nivation; glacial land forms like surge glaciers and different aeolian land forms are few example to this. Compared to other coastlines, Arctic coasts have experienced substantial modifications (Overduin et al., 2014). Since the LGM (Last Glacial Maximum), there has been a large degree of glacial retreat from the coastal tract resulting in the predominance of paraglacial processes (Bourriquen et al., 2018; Gjermundsen et al., 2013). Considering the geomorphological studies from the Arctic region, it is important to note that despite having the 30% of the global coastline in the Arctic, only 1% of Arctic coasts have been studied (Lantuit et al., 2010). Arctic mountains are always been important in geomorphological studies as the region is characterized by the lowest sediment fluxes, even though it is characterized by a large sediment store and a favorable topography for sediment transportation (Mithan et al., 2019). The Svalbard archipelago in the Arctic circle has been widely studied in terms of its glacial dynamics and its implications for climate change. However, a wide variety of geomorphological features formed as a result of a single major (ice) geomorphological agent, make it difficult to interpret the underlying geomorphological processes. Svalbard is located in the Arctic sea between latitudes of 74° to 81°N and displays a vast expanse of ice caps (≈ 60%) and valley/fjord glaciers (Hagen et al., 1993). Spitsbergen is the largest island of Svalbard archipelago (Miccadei et al., 2016). Kongsfjorden-Krossfjord systems are located between 78° 40´ and 77° 30´ N latitudes and 11° 3´ and 13° 6´ E longitudes (Svendsen et al., 2002). Kongsfjorden is aligned from southeast to northwest and the orientation of Krossfjorden is from North to South. The coast of Kongsfjorden is defined by the Blomstrandbreen area in the North, Broggerhalvoya toward the South, Ossian Sarsfjellet and Colletthogda in the East (Miccadei et al., 2016). Fjord systems and the lowland areas in the Arctic are important as they experience both terrestrial and coastal processes. Fjords are semi-enclosed marine basins that are deepened by glacier activity and generally represent a transition region between terrestrial and marine environments (Howe et al., 2010).

Numerous fjords of different dimensions are present in the Svalbard archipelago and the longest fjords, Storfjorden, separate Spitsbergen from Barentsøya and Edgeøya. The major fjords of Svalbard are listed in Table 1.1. Krossfjorden-Kongsfjorden system together constitute a basin area of 3074 km^2 and 74% of the area is covered by ice (i.e. 1651 km^2) and 2257 km^2 area island. The system has a glacier volume of 308 km^3 (Svendsen et al., 2002). Kongsfjorden-Krossfjorden systems are located near Arctic and Atlantic water mass and it is influenced by the west Spitsbergen current and freshwater from glacier runoff (Kumar et al., 2018). Seasonal sea ice-rafted, across gravity-driven and the glacier generated sediments control the sedimentation process in the Kongsfjorden-Krossfjorden fjord system. The sediments deposited in the fjords and the landforms formed by glaciers in the region are less modified and hence this is an ideal location for climatic research (Trusel et al., 2010). Geomorphology of the Kongsfjorden-Krossfjorden system is studied by the systematic appreciation of geology and geomorphic processes responsible for landscape evolution.

TABLE 1.1
Major Fjords of Svalbard Based on Length

Sl. no	Name of the fjords	Region in Svalbard	Length (km)	S. N.	Name of the fjords	Region in Svalbard	Length (km)
1	Storfjorden	Spitsbergen	132	19	Lady Franklinfjorden	Nordaustlandet	25
2	Wijdefjorden	Spitsbergen	108	20	St. Jonsfjorden	Spitsbergen	21
3	Isfjorden	Spitsbergen	107	21	Bellsund	Spitsbergen	20
4	Van Mijenfjorden	Spitsbergen	83	22	Brennevinsfjorden	Nordaustlandet	20
5	Woodfjorden	Spitsbergen	64	23	Raudfjorden	Spitsbergen	20
6	Wahlenbergfjorden	Spitsbergen	46	24	Smeerenburgfjorden	Spitsbergen	20
7	Tjuvfjorden	Edgeøya	45	25	Ekmanfjorden	Spitsbergen	18
8	Rijpfjorden	Nordaustlandet	40	26	Grønfjorden	Spitsbergen	16
9	Duvefjorden	Nordaustlandet	35	27	Sassenfjorden	Spitsbergen	15
10	Lomfjorden	Spitsbergen	35	28	Tempelfjorden	Spitsbergen	15
11	Austfjorden	Spitsbergen	32	29	Lilliehöökfjorden	Spitsbergen	14
12	Billefjorden	Spitsbergen	30	30	Vestfjorden	Spitsbergen	12
13	Hornsund	Spitsbergen	30	31	Adlersparrefjorden	Nordaustlandet	10
14	Krossfjorden	Spitsbergen	30	32	Möllerfjorden	Spitsbergen	9
15	Liefdefjorden	Spitsbergen	30	33	Magdalenefjorden	Spitsbergen	8
16	Van Keulenfjorden	Spitsbergen	30	34	Recherche Fjord	Spitsbergen	7
17	Dicksonfjorden	Spitsbergen	30	35	Fuglefjorden	Spitsbergen	6
18	Kongsfjorden	Spitsbergen	26	36	Kobbefjorden	Spitsbergen	3.5

Note: The locations of the fjords are indicated. Some of the branches/tributaries/distributaries of the major fjord system are also included here.

1.2 GEOLOGY AROUND KONGSFJORDEN-KROSSFJORDEN SYSTEM

The Kongsfjorden-Krossfjorden fjord system is located near a major tectonic boundary and hence the region has diverse petrology (Streuff, 2013). This tectonic boundary separates the Northwestern Basement Province to the northeast and the Cenozoic fold- and thrust belt of western Spitsbergen to its southwest (Bergh et al., 2000). Igneous, metamorphic, and sedimentary rocks are reported from the Kongsfjorden-Krossfjorden system**.** According to the Norwegian Polar Institute, the eastern boundary of the island is dominated by sandstone, siltstone and shale with small patches of gabbro or metagabbro rock type. These layered rocks are of the Devonian age. The southern boundary of the island has the maximum diversification and exhibits sedimentary rocks such as chert, silicified limestone and sandstone and metamorphic rocks like marble alternating with other metasediments. Sandstone, siltstone and shale with gabbro or metagabbro patches are also present here along with bituminous shale, phyllite and metapelites schists. Phyllites and quartzites are often found locally with layers of other rocks. These rock types are of Paleogene to Neogene, Middle Jurassic–early Cretaceous, Triassic–Middle Jurassic, and Carboniferous and Permian sequences. The southwest boundary of the island is characterized by limestone and/

or dolostone, conglomerate, tilloid rocks, garnet-mica schist, calc-pelitic schist and marble, quartzite, and other high-pressure metamorphic rock types. The northwestern boundary is majorly occupied by gneisses and schists. Patches of marble with phyllite and metapelitic schist are often observed along this boundary with granite or granodiorite patches. The bedrocks in this region belong to Mesoproterozoic. The Kongsfjorden-Krossfjorden fjord system is surrounded by phyllite and meta-pelitic schist with patches of marble. Quaternary continental and coastal deposits overlie the bedrock sequences. Surficial continental deposits include till and diamicton, talus, rockfalls, fluvial and beach deposits.

1.3 LANDSCAPE TYPES

Landscape in the Svalbard region can be divided into several categories depending upon the geomorphological processes and the localities where it is found. As per the scheme adopted by the Norwegian Polar Institute, landforms are classified into various categories as listed in Table 1.2, Sl. No. 1, under terrestrial landforms. Other landscape types are listed under glacial landforms and surface deposits (Table 1.2). Depending on the landforms that found in the different localities, these features can be grouped under coastal landforms, landforms developed in the slope, mountain ranges and valleys.

1.3.1 Coastal Landforms

Sediment distribution by retreating glaciers and the efficiency of the fluvial system to transport sediment towards the shoreline controls the overall evolution of the coastal region (Bourriquen et al., 2018). Coastal zones with continuous sediment supply have undergone coastal progradation and the areas that lost the sediment supply experienced coastal recession (Bourriquen et al., 2018). Most of the coastal part of the system is

TABLE 1.2
Different Landscape Types and Geomorphological Features Found in Svalbard

Sl. No	Landscape types	Geomorphological feature
1	Terrestrial landforms	Coastal low land, sandur, or river flat within coastal lowland or U-shaped valley, moraine field, ice field and ice cap, valley glacier and glacier cirque, glacial denudation flat, open, and hilly landscape, mountainous landscape with rounded shapes, plateau mountainous landscape, edge dominated and alpine mountainous landscape
2	Glacial landforms	Fjord, Pingo, pattern ground, glaciers, U-shaped valley, moraine field, Drumlins, and glacial flutes
3	Surface deposits	Ice, recent moraines, moraine and till, glacial-fluvial and fluvial deposits, marine deposits, gelifluction deposits, slope deposits, weathering materials
4	Other features	Thermal spring, karst or thermo-karst landforms, exposed bedrocks

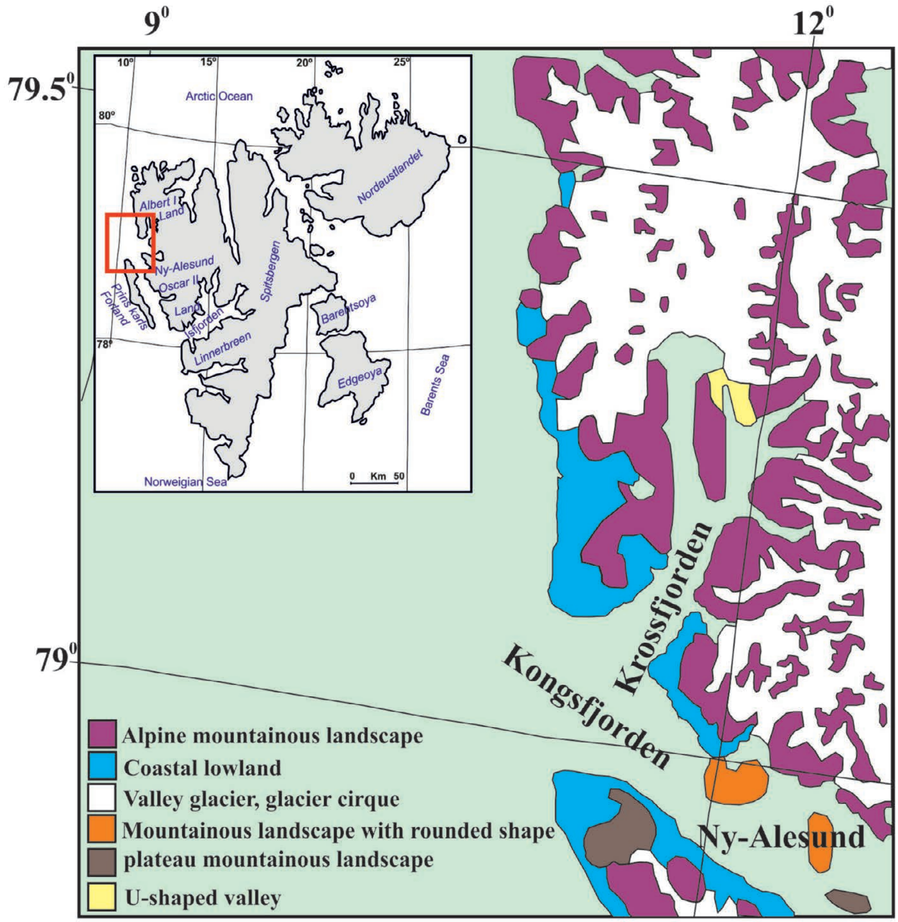


FIGURE 1.1 Map showing important landscape types and geomorphological features in and around Kongsfjorden-Krossfjorden system.

covered with Quaternary deposits of moraines, marine shore, and fluvial deposits (Ingvaldsen et al., 2001; Kumar et al., 2018).

The coastal geomorphology of Svalbard is dominated by Coastal cliffs, spit-barrier lagoons, deltas, flats and raised beaches. Wind, rain or/and wave action in coastal areas erode the soft rocks, resulting in the formation of cliffs that belongs to hard rock remnants of the shore lithology. Longshore drift in the coastal areas results in spit-barrier lagoons. These common features associated with the coast are formed in accordance with the variation in sediment supply, longshore drift and exposure to fetch (Brückner and Schellmann, 2003). River incisions of bed-rocks in the coastal area form steep scarps and channels perpendicular to the coast (Berthling et al., 2020).

Coastal lowlands with well-developed raised beaches are a characteristic feature of Svalbard. However, its distribution is not uniform, and they are on wide display along the western boundary. The genesis of raised beaches is related to post-glacial isostatic rebound (Berthling et al., 2020). The western coastline of Spitsbergen is characterized by a series of marine terraces. Strandflats are common in coastal areas, which are mostly bounded by mountains and low coastal cliffs with beaches towards the sea. Raised beaches are preserved on the strand flats (Streuff, 2013). Currently, the coast is covered with linear and pocket-sized rocky cliffs and gravel beaches, including Lagoons and deltas. The western rocky shoreline of Kongsfjorden-Krossfjorden fjord system exhibits vertical cliffs with caves and pocket beaches. Low-lying areas of Broggerhalvoya in the Kongsfjord-Krossfjord system have well developed Patterned ground and sorted circles (Svendsen et al., 2002). Lagoons and single bars are common along all the coasts (e.g. Brandallaguna).

Coastal Sandur deltas are another important coastal landform. These are formed during the glacial retreat which leads to the exposure of terrigenous sediments and further transport and deposition resulting in the Sandur delta (Bourriquen et al., 2018). The sandur deltas of the Brogger peninsula are some of the examples formed by this geological process (Austre Lovénbreen, Midtre Lovénbreen, and Vestre Lovénbreen glaciers). Stone circles and patterned grounds are observed on the coastal part of Kvadehuken and in the lowland areas of Broggerhalvoya (Kumar et al., 2018).

1.3.2 Slope Landforms

Talus slopes and cones, rock falls and pro talus remparts are the important slope landforms in Kongfjorden-Krosfjorden fjord system. Rock slopes exhibit characteristic fan-shaped landforms. These landforms indicate a transition zone between coastal features and mountain ranges where debris fall and deposition is high. Periglacial processes on the slope generate talus deposits, which may form pro-talus ramparts, and rock glaciers e.g., at the foot of Zeppelinfjellet (Zeppelin Mountain) and Stuphallet (Stup Cliff) on Broggerhalvoya, and in the northern part of Blomstrandhalvoya (Svendsen et al., 2002). Debris that gets piled up to a characteristic angle of repose is called talus slope. The deposits related to rock slopes are fan-shaped landforms. Certain climatic processes favor the development of slope processes, rockfalls, debris and solifluction covers. Steep mountain slopes cut by gullies, lower gradient slope with debris covers and slopes with solifluction lobes and sometimes flattened parts dominated by shales are some of the features formed by the runoff of melting snow or/and snow avalanches and gullies formed alluvial fans (Zwoliński et al., 2013).

1.3.3 Mountain Ranges and Wide Valleys

The overall distribution of mountain ranges and wide valleys follow geological structures and the meridian of the location (Zwoliński et al., 2013). Hecahoek rocks, formed of metamorphosed crystalline rocks, quartzite, marble and slate appear as mountain ranges (Zwoliński et al., 2013). Fjords of Spitsbergen might indicate the path of the old valley system, which was reformed in Quaternary glaciations (Zwoliński et al., 2013). The downslope flow of valley glaciers creates a trough, which is called a U-shaped valley (Fredin et al., 2013). Hence, this flat bottomed and steep-walled landform is a product of the erosive action of glaciers. This erosive action is called glacial plucking, which generally occurs at the bottom of the valleys. The mountain peaks on the southern side of inner Kongsfjorden, Nunataks surrounding the inner Kongsfjorden, the pyramidical peaks of Tre Kroner and high mountains surrounding Fjord Krossfjorden, North of Kongsfjorden are some of the examples of mountain ranges in the Krossfjorden-Kongsfjorden system. The mountain ranges in the Kaffioyra generally occur as narrow ridges with narrow crests and steep slopes (Svendsen et al., 2002).

Landforms associated with limestone terrain are also reported here. Dissolution of limestone bedrocks resulted in landscape with Karst topography. Most of these are small-scale surface features, however, some larger features like caves also occur, e.g. caves in Blomstrandhalvoya (Blümel, 1971).

1.4 SURFACE MATERIAL IN AND AROUND KONGSFJORD-KROSSFJORD REGION

The border area around Kongsfjorden-Krossfjorden fjord system is largely covered by marine deposits, slope deposits and weathering material (Kristiansen and Sollid, 1986). Glacio-fluvial, fluvial and recent moraine are also present. Patches of exposed bedrock can also be seen in the area.

Glaciers: More than 60% land area of Svalbard is covered with glaciers (Etzelmüller et al., 2000). In Svalbard, glaciers of every kind can be seen. In Spitsbergen, valley glaciers are predominate, and massive ice caps are frequent in Nordaustlandet, Edgerya, and Barentsrya. Glaciological research began in the late 19th century and became very popular in the 20th century. They include ice-core studies and research in meteorology, mass balance, glacier flow, glacial erosion, and radio-echo sounding (Liestøl, 1988). Since many of the glaciers in Svalbard are known to surge frequently (86 have surged till the beginning of 20th century), it is challenging to use fluctuations of glaciers as climatic indicators. Important morphological feature developed during the glacier advance and deglaciation is river valleys, through which the water drains from the glaciers (Svendsen et al., 2002). At the Kongfjorden fjord, the glaciers can be found directly calving into the sea. These glaciers are both subpolar and polythermal, indicating that they have both warm (above or near zero, where meltwater can exist), and cold (below zero) zones. Surging glaciers are common in the study area.

Von Postbreen, a large land-terminating glacier; Kongsvegen and Tunabreen, large tidewater glaciers; Midtre Lovénbreen, Tellbreen and Longyearbreen, small valley glaciers, Kongsvegen and Midtre Lovénbreen are examples of some of the important glaciers in the main island of Spitsbergen (Sevestre et al., 2015). Kongsfjorden and Krossfjorden are dominated by tidewater glaciers: Lilliehookbreen at the head of Krossfjorden (Lilliehookfjorden) and five other calving glaciers along its eastern coast. Kronebreen and Kongsvegan at the head, and Conwaybreen and Blomstrandbreen on northern coast of Kongsfjorden. Glacial, periglacial and hydroglacial processes influence the landscape.

The main glacierized area consists of a large glacier complex in the inner part of the fjords, which has many calving fronts at its head. These glaciers drain the large icefields of Isachsenfonna and Holtedalfonna. Blomstrandbreen on the northern side of Kongsfjorden also has a calving front. On the southern side, there are several valleys or cirque glaciers (Svendsen et al., 2002), and None of them reaches the fjord. Glaciers are associated with a different types of moraine deposits and their front portion is characterized by rivers and outwash plains (Berthling et al., 2020).

Moraines: Towards the end of glaciers, large amounts of rock debris get deposited beneath the active glacier. The size of accumulated debris ranges from meter-sized boulders to millimeter-sized dust particles. This random mixture of rock particles is called till and mounds, sheets or sinuous ridges of sediment deposits are called moraines (Elvevold et al., 2007). Austre Lovénbreen, Midtre Lovénbreen and Vestre Lovénbreen are some of the examples for terminal moraines (Bourriquen et al., 2018).

1.5 SUMMARY

Arctic regions are important in geomorphological studies as the region is characterized by the lowest sediment fluxes. However, this region has large sediment storage and a favorable topography for sediment transportation. The Svalbard archipelago in the Arctic has been widely studied in terms of its landscape, glacial dynamics, sediment transports, and paleoclimate. The Fjord system is a transition zone between the terrestrial and marine environment, acting as an important sediment archive that influenced by both the environments. These archives provide ample opportunity for high-resolution studies on paleo-environmental changes. Diverse geomorphological features developed in Svalbard are due to the interplay of active climate and surficial processes. Detailed study on these features will help to understand the sequence and mechanism of the surficial processes.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Authors are thankful to the Central University of Punjab, Bathinda for providing the administrative and infrastructural facilities. AK is thankful to DST-INSPIRE fellowship for providing financial support towards her PhD.

REFERENCES

Bergh, S. G., Maher, H. D., & Braathen, A. (2000). Tertiary divergent thrust directions from partitioned transpression, Brøggerhalvøya, Spitsbergen. *Norsk geologisk tidsskrift*, *80*, 63–82.

Berthling, I., Berti, C., Mancinelli, V., Stendardi, L., Piacentini, T., & Miccadei, E. (2020). Analysis of the paraglacial landscape in the Ny-Ålesund area and Blomstrandøya (Kongsfjorden, Svalbard, Norway). *Journal of Maps*, *16*(2), 818–833.

Blümel, W. (1971). Kleinkarst und Formen selektiver Erosion auf der Blomstrandhalvøya/NW Spitzbergen. (Karst and erosion forms on Blomstrandhalvøya/NW Spitsbergen). *Der Aufschluss*, *22*, 149–163.

Bourriquen, M., Mercier, D., Baltzer, A., Fournier, J., Costa, S., & Roussel, E. (2018). Paraglacial coasts responses to glacier retreat and associated shifts in river floodplains over decadal timescales (1966–2016), Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. *Land Degradation & Development*, *29*(11), 4173–4185.

Brückner, H., & Schellmann, G. (2003). Late Pleistocene and Holocene shorelines of Andréeland, Spitsbergen (Svalbard): Geomorphological evidence and palaeo-oceanographic significance. *Journal of Coastal Research*, 971–982.

Elvevold, S., Dallmann, W., & Blomeier, D. (2007). *Geology of Svalbard*. Norwegian Polar Institute, 978-82-7666-237-5

Etzelmüller, B., Ødegård, R. S., Vatne, G., Mysterud, R. S., Tonning, T., & Sollid, J. L. (2000). Glacier characteristics and sediment transfer system of Longyearbreen and Larsbreen, western Spitsbergen. *Norsk Geografisk Tidsskrift*, *54*(4), 157–168.

Evans, D. J., Strzelecki, M., Milledge, D. G., & Orton, C. (2012). Hørbyebreen polythermal glacial land system, Svalbard. *Journal of Maps*, *8*(2), 146–156.

Fredin, O., Bergstrøm, B., Eilertsen, R., Hansen, L., Longva, O., Nesje, A., & Sveian, H. (2013). Glacial landforms and Quaternary landscape development in Norway. *Quaternary Geology of Norway*, edited by: Olsen, L., Fredin, O., and Olesen, O., Geological Survey of Norway Special Publication, Geological Survey of Norway, Trondheim, 525.

Gjermundsen, E. F., Briner, J. P., Akçar, N., Salvigsen, O., Kubik, P., Gantert, N., & Hormes, A. (2013). Late Weichselian local ice dome configuration and chronology in Northwestern Svalbard: Early thinning, late retreat. *Quaternary Science Reviews*, *72*, 112–127.

Hagen, J. O., Liestøl, O., Roland, E. R. I. K., & Jørgensen, T. (1993). *Glacier atlas of svalbard and jan mayen* (Vol. 129, p. 141). Oslo: Norsk polarinstitutt.

Howe, J. A., Austin, W. E., Forwick, M., Paetzel, M., Harland, R., & Cage, A. G. (2010). Fjord systems and archives: A review. *Geological Society, London, Special Publications*, *344*(1), 5–15.

Ingvaldsen, R., Reitan, M. B., Svendsen, H., & Asplin, L. (2001). The upper layer circulation in Kongsfjorden and Krossfjorden—A complex fjord system on the west coast of Spitsbergen. *Memoirs of National Institute of Polar Research* (Special issue), *54*, 393–407.

Kristiansen, K. J., & Sollid, J.-L. (1986). *Svalbard—Glacial geology and geomorphology.* Hønefoss, Statens Kartverk: National Atlas of Norway.

Kumar, P., Pattanaik, J. K., Khare, N., & Balakrishnan, S. (2018). Geochemistry and provenance study of sediments from Krossfjorden and Kongsfjorden, Svalbard (Arctic Ocean). *Polar Science*, *18*, 72–82.

Lantuit, H., Overduin, P., Solomon, S., & Mercier, D. (2010). Coastline dynamics in polar systems using remote sensing. *Geomatic solutions for coastal environments* (pp. 163–174), New York: Nova Science Publishers.

Liestøl, O. (1988). The glaciers in the Kongsfjorden area, Spitsbergen. *Norsk Geografisk Tidsskrift-Norwegian Journal of Geography*, *42*(4), 231–238.

Miccadei, E., Piacentini, T., & Berti, C. (2016). Geomorphological features of the Kongsfjorden area: Ny-Ålesund, Blomstrandøya (NW Svalbard, Norway). *Rendiconti Lincei*, *27*(1), 217–228.

Mithan, H. T., Hales, T. C., & Cleall, P. J. (2019). Supervised classification of landforms in Arctic mountains. *Permafrost and Periglacial Processes*, *30*(3), 131–145.

Overduin, P. P., Strzelecki, M. C., Grigoriev, M. N., Couture, N., Lantuit, H., St-Hilaire-Gravel, D., . . . & Wetterich, S. (2014). Coastal changes in the Arctic. *Geological Society, London, Special Publications*, *388*(1), 103–129.

Pienitz, R., Doran, P. T., & Lamoureux, S. F. (2008). Origin and geomorphology of lakes in the polar regions. *Polar Lakes and Rivers: Limnology of Arctic and Antarctic Aquatic Ecosystems*, 25–41.

Sevestre, H., Benn, D. I., Hulton, N. R., & Bælum, K. (2015). Thermal structure of Svalbard glaciers and implications for thermal switch models of glacier surging. *Journal of Geophysical Research: Earth Surface*, *120*(10), 2220–2236.

Streuff, K. (2013). *Landform assemblages in Inner Kongsfjorden, Svalbard: Evidence of recent glacial (surge) activity. University of Tromso* (Doctoral dissertation, Master's Thesis in Geology).

Svendsen, H., Beszczynska-Møller, A., Hagen, J. O., Lefauconnier, B., Tverberg, V., Gerland, S., . . . & Azzolini, R. (2002). The physical environment of Kongsfjorden—Krossfjorden, an Arctic fjord system in Svalbard. *Polar Research*, *21*(1), 133–166.

Trusel, L. D., Powell, R. D., Cumpston, R. M., & Brigham-Grette, J. (2010). Modern glacimarine processes and potential future behaviour of Kronebreen and Kongsvegen polythermal tidewater glaciers, Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. *Geological Society, London, Special Publications*, *344*(1), 89–102.

Zwoliński, Z., Giżejewski, J., Karczewski, A., Kasprzak, M., Lankauf, K. R., Migoń, P., . . . & Stankowski, W. (2013). Geomorphological settings of Polish research areas on Spitsbergen. *Landform Analysis*, *22*.

Geomorphology around Kongsfjorden-Krossfjorden System, Svalbard

Bergh, S. G. , Maher, H. D. , & Braathen, A. (2000). Tertiary divergent thrust directions from partitioned transpression, Brøggerhalvøya, Spitsbergen. Norsk geologisk tidsskrift, 80, 63–82.

Berthling, I. , Berti, C. , Mancinelli, V. , Stendardi, L. , Piacentini, T. , & Miccadei, E. (2020). Analysis of the paraglacial landscape in the Ny-Ålesund area and Blomstrandøya (Kongsfjorden, Svalbard, Norway). Journal of Maps, 16(2), 818–833.

Blümel, W. (1971). Kleinkarst und Formen selektiver Erosion auf der Blomstrandhalvøya/NW Spitzbergen. (Karst and erosion forms on Blomstrandhalvøya/NW Spitsbergen). Der Aufschluss, 22, 149–163.

Bourriquen, M. , Mercier, D. , Baltzer, A. , Fournier, J. , Costa, S. , & Roussel, E. (2018). Paraglacial coasts responses to glacier retreat and associated shifts in river floodplains over decadal timescales (1966–2016), Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Land Degradation & Development, 29(11), 4173–4185.

Brückner, H. , & Schellmann, G. (2003). Late Pleistocene and Holocene shorelines of Andréeland, Spitsbergen (Svalbard): Geomorphological evidence and palaeo-oceanographic significance. Journal of Coastal Research, 971–982.

Elvevold, S. , Dallmann, W. , & Blomeier, D. (2007). Geology of Svalbard. Norwegian Polar Institute, 978-82-7666-237-5

Etzelmüller, B. , Ø degård, R. S. , Vatne, G. , Mysterud, R. S. , Tonning, T. , & Sollid, J. L. (2000). Glacier characteristics and sediment transfer system of Longyearbreen and Larsbreen, western Spitsbergen. Norsk Geografisk Tidsskrift, 54(4), 157–168.

Evans, D. J. , Strzelecki, M. , Milledge, D. G. , & Orton, C. (2012). Hørbyebreen polythermal glacial land system, Svalbard. Journal of Maps, 8(2), 146–156.

Fredin, O. , Bergstrøm, B. , Eilertsen, R. , Hansen, L. , Longva, O. , Nesje, A. , & Sveian, H. (2013). Glacial landforms and Quaternary landscape development in Norway. Quaternary Geology of Norway, edited by: Olsen, L. , Fredin, O. , and Olesen, O. , Geological Survey of Norway Special Publication, Geological Survey of Norway, Trondheim, 525.

Gjermundsen, E. F. , Briner, J. P. , Akçar, N. , Salvigsen, O. , Kubik, P. , Gantert, N. , & Hormes, A. (2013). Late Weichselian local ice dome configuration and chronology in Northwestern Svalbard: Early thinning, late retreat. Quaternary Science Reviews, 72, 112–127.

Hagen, J. O. , Liestøl, O. , Roland, E. R. I. K. , & Jørgensen, T. (1993). Glacier atlas of svalbard and jan mayen (Vol. 129, p. 141). Oslo: Norsk polarinstitutt.

Howe, J. A. , Austin, W. E. , Forwick, M. , Paetzel, M. , Harland, R. , & Cage, A. G. (2010). Fjord systems and archives: A review. Geological Society, London, Special Publications, 344(1), 5–15.

Ingvaldsen, R. , Reitan, M. B. , Svendsen, H. , & Asplin, L. (2001). The upper layer circulation in Kongsfjorden and Krossfjorden—A complex fjord system on the west coast of Spitsbergen. Memoirs of National Institute of Polar Research (Special issue), 54, 393–407.

Kristiansen, K. J. , & Sollid, J.-L. (1986). Svalbard—Glacial geology and geomorphology. Hønefoss, Statens Kartverk: National Atlas of Norway.

Kumar, P. , Pattanaik, J. K. , Khare, N. , & Balakrishnan, S. (2018). Geochemistry and provenance study of sediments from Krossfjorden and Kongsfjorden, Svalbard (Arctic Ocean). Polar Science, 18, 72–82.

Lantuit, H. , Overduin, P. , Solomon, S. , & Mercier, D. (2010). Coastline dynamics in polar systems using remote sensing. Geomatic solutions for coastal environments (pp. 163–174), New York: Nova Science Publishers.

Liestøl, O. (1988). The glaciers in the Kongsfjorden area, Spitsbergen. Norsk Geografisk Tidsskrift-Norwegian Journal of Geography, 42(4), 231–238.

Miccadei, E. , Piacentini, T. , & Berti, C. (2016). Geomorphological features of the Kongsfjorden area: Ny-Ålesund, Blomstrandøya (NW Svalbard, Norway). Rendiconti Lincei, 27(1), 217–228.

Mithan, H. T. , Hales, T. C. , & Cleall, P. J. (2019). Supervised classification of landforms in Arctic mountains. Permafrost and Periglacial Processes, 30(3), 131–145.

Overduin, P. P. , Strzelecki, M. C. , Grigoriev, M. N. , Couture, N. , Lantuit, H. , St-Hilaire-Gravel, D. , … & Wetterich, S. (2014). Coastal changes in the Arctic. Geological Society, London, Special Publications, 388(1), 103–129.

Pienitz, R. , Doran, P. T. , & Lamoureux, S. F. (2008). Origin and geomorphology of lakes in the polar regions. Polar Lakes and Rivers: Limnology of Arctic and Antarctic Aquatic Ecosystems, 25–41.

Sevestre, H. , Benn, D. I. , Hulton, N. R. , & Bælum, K. (2015). Thermal structure of Svalbard glaciers and implications for thermal switch models of glacier surging. Journal of Geophysical Research: Earth Surface, 120(10), 2220–2236.

Streuff, K. (2013). Landform assemblages in Inner Kongsfjorden, Svalbard: Evidence of recent glacial (surge) activity. University of Tromso (Doctoral dissertation, Master's Thesis in Geology).

Svendsen, H. , Beszczynska-Møller, A. , Hagen, J. O. , Lefauconnier, B. , Tverberg, V. , Gerland, S. , … & Azzolini, R. (2002). The physical environment of Kongsfjorden—Krossfjorden, an Arctic fjord system in Svalbard. Polar Research, 21(1), 133–166.

Trusel, L. D. , Powell, R. D. , Cumpston, R. M. , & Brigham-Grette, J. (2010). Modern glacimarine processes and potential future behaviour of Kronebreen and Kongsvegen polythermal tidewater glaciers, Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Geological Society, London, Special Publications, 344(1), 89–102.

Zwoliński, Z. , Giżejewski, J. , Karczewski, A. , Kasprzak, M. , Lankauf, K. R. , Migoń, P. , … & Stankowski, W. (2013). Geomorphological settings of Polish research areas on Spitsbergen. Landform Analysis, 22.

The Influence of Changing Climate on the Mass Balance of a Part of Central Dronning Maud Land, East Antarctic Ice Sheet

Chandra, V. and Gajbhiye, D. (2019) Ice Sheet Dynamics from Schirmacher Oasis to Wohlthat Mountains, cDML, East Antarctica and Their Stress Pattern. Unpublished Report of Geological Survey of India, pp. 14–68.

Chaturvedi, A. , Asthana, R. , Kachroo, K. , Oberoi, L.K. and Singh, A. (2008) Glaciological Observations during the 22nd Indian Antarctic Expedition. Scientific Report of Twenty-Second Indian Expedition to Antarctica, Scientific Report, Ministry of Earth Sciences, Technical Publication No. 20, pp. 191–197. ISBN: 978-81-906526-2-9.

Chaturvedi, A. , Shrivastava P.K. , Kaul, M.K. , Chakraborty, S.K. and Mukerji, S. (2009) Recession of Dakshin Gangotri Glacier Snout in Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. Ind. Jour. Geo. Sci. Vol. 63, No. 2, pp. 229–234.

Chaturvedi, A. , Singh, A. and Beg, M.J. (1999a) Trend of Depositional Patterns on Ice Shelf near Dakshin Gangotri Station. Scientific Report of Fifteenth Indian Expedition to Antarctica, Tech. Pub. No. 13, Department of Ocean Development, Govt. of India, New Delhi, pp. 313–320.

Chaturvedi, A. , Singh, A. , Gaur, M.P. , Krishnamurthy, K.V. and Beg, M.J. (1999b) A Confirmation of Polar Glacial Recession by monitoring the Snout of Dakshin Gangotri Glacier in Schirmacher Range. Scientific Report on Fifteenth Indian Expedition to Antarctica, Tech. Pub No. 13, Department of Ocean Development, Govt. of India, New Delhi, pp. 321–336.

Chaturvedi, A. , Singh, A. , Jayapaul, D. , Asthana, R. and Ravikant, V. (1999c) Glaciological Studies Carried Out During the Wintering Period of XV Expedition and the Summer Period of the XVI Indian Expedition to Antarctica. Geol. Surv. Ind., Rec. Vol. 131, pt 2, pp. 71–74.

Dharwadkar, A. , Roy, S.K. and Kumar, P. (2012) Glaciological Observations During the 31st Indian Antarctic Expedition. Unpublished Report of Geological Survey of India, pp. 11–30.

Haeberli, W. and Linsbauer, A. (2013) Global Glacier Volumes and Sea Level–Small but Systematic Effects of Ice below the Surface of the Ocean and of New Local Lakes on Land. Cryosphere. Vol. 7, No. 3, pp. 817–821.

Kaul, M.K. , Chakraborty, S.K. and Raina, V.K. (1985) Ablation on the Antarctica Shelf Ice Sci. Rep. of Second Indian Expedition to Antarctica. Tech. Pub. No.2, Department of Ocean Development, Govt. of India, New Delhi, pp. 81–86.

Kumar, P. , Gajbhiye, D. , Swain, A.K. , Shukla, S.P. , Chandra, V. and Habib, Z. (2020) Estimation of the Ice Mass Loss from the Out-flux Gate of the Basin AroundSchirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. Geosciences: The Basic Science for a Sustainable Future, 36th International Geological Congress Geological Society of India. Abstract No. 1489–1371. p. 898.

Kumar, P. and Habib, Z. (2018) Ice Sheet Dynamics from Schirmacher Oasis to Wohlthat Mountains, cDML, East Antarctica and Their Stress Pattern. Unpublished report of Geological Survey of India, pp. 16–116.

Montgomery, K. (2006) Variation in Temperature with Altitude and Latitude. J. Geogr. Vol. 105, No. 3, pp. 133–135, http://doi.org/10.1080/00221340608978675.

Mukerji, S. , Ravikanth, V. , Bejarniya, B.R. , Oberoi, L.K. and Nautiyal, S.C. (1995) A Note on the Glaciological Studies. Carried Out During Eleventh Indian Expedition at Antarctica. Sci. Rep. of Eleventh Indian Expedition to Antarctica, Tech. Pub. No. 9, Department of Ocean Development, Govt. of India, New Delhi, pp. 153–162.
Ravindra, R. and Dey, A. (1992) Geological, Geomorphological and Glaciological Studies Carried out During Austral Winter of 1990 at Antarctica. Geol. Surv. Ind. Vol. 125, pt 2, pp. 99–101.
Rignot, E. , Bamber, J.L. , Van Den Broeke, M.R. , Davis, C. , Li, Y. , Van De Berg, W.J. and Van Meijgaard, E. (2008) Recent Antarctic Ice Mass Loss from Radar Interferometry and Regional Climate Modelling. Nat. Geosci. Vol. 1, No. 2, pp. 106–110.
Rignot, E. , Mouginot, J. and Scheuchl, B. (2011) Antarctic Grounding Line Mapping from Differential Satellite Radar Interferometry. Geophys. Res. Lett. Vol. 38, p. L10504.
Schoof, C. (2007) Ice Sheet Grounding Line Dynamics: Steady States, Stability, and Hysteresis. J. Geophys. Res. Earth Surf. Vol. 112, No. F3.
Shepherd, A. , Ivins, E. , Aa, G. , Barletta, V. , Bentley, M. , Bettadpur, S. , Briggs, K. , Bromwich, D. , Forsberg, R. , Galin, N. , Horwath, M. , Jacobs, S. , Joughin, I. , King, M. , Lenaerts, J. , Li, J. , Ligtenberg, S. , Luckman, A. , Luthcke, S. and Zwally, H. (2012) A Reconciled Estimate of Ice-Sheet Mass Balance. Science. Vol. 338, No. 6111, pp. 1183–1189. http://doi.org/10.1126/science.1228102
Shrivastava, P.K. , Asthana, R. and Roy, S.K. (2011) The Ice Sheet Dynamics around Dakshin Gangotri Glacier, Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica vis-à-vis Topography and Meteorological Parameters, Jour. Geol. Soc. Ind. Vol. 78, pp. 117–123.
Shrivastava, P.K. , Roy, S.K. and Mallik, R.K. (2014) Glaciological Studies in Central Dronning Maud Land, East Antarctica during the 33rd Indian Antarctic Expedition. Unpublished Report of Geological Survey of India, pp. 1–12.
Siegert, M.J. , Kingslake, J. , Ross, N. , Whitehouse, P.L. , Woodward, J. , Jamieson, S.S.R. , (2019). Major ice sheet change in the Weddell Sea Sector of West Antarctica over the last 5,000 years. Rev. Geophys. Vol. 57. https://doi.org/10.1029/2019RG000651.
Singh, A. and Jayaram, S. (1989) Secular Movements of the Dakshin Gangotri Glacier Snout, Antarctica. Geol. Surv. Ind., Rec. Vol. 122, pt. 2, p. 200.
Swain, A.K. (2015) Geomorphological Evolution of Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica, Unpublished Ph. D. Thesis, Ravenshaw University, Cuttack.
Swain, A.K. (2019) Influence of Thermal Conductivity of Rocks on Polar Ice Sheet Recession Near Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. J. Geol. Soc. India. Vol. 93, No. 4, pp. 455–465. http://doi.org/10.1007/s12594-019-1200-2.
Swain, A.K. (2020) Glacier Stress Pattern as an Indicator for Climate Change. Climate Change and the White World, pp. 119–138. Springer, Cham. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-21679-5_9.
Swain, A.K. and Chandra, V. (2017) Ice Sheet Dynamics in and Around Schirmacher Oasis, cDML, East Antarctica. Unpublished Report of Geological Survey of India, pp. 1–73.
Swain, A.K. and Mandal, A. (2011) Glaciological Observations during the 30th Indian Antarctic Expedition. Unpublished report of Geological Survey of India, pp. 1–12.
Swain, A.K. and Raghuram (2013) Glaciological Studies in Central Dronning Maud Land, East Antarctica During the 32nd Indian Antarctic Expedition (Nov 2012–March 2013). Unpublished report of Geological Survey of India, pp. 1–14
Swain, A.K. and Raghuram (2015) Glaciological Studies in Central Dronning Maud Land, East Antarctica during the 34th Indian Antarctic Expedition. Unpublished report of Geological Survey of India, pp. 1–45.
Swain, A.K. and Roy, S.K. (2011) Glaciological Work Carried Out During 27th Indian Antarctic Expedition. Unpublished report of Geological Survey of India, pp. 1–10.

Antarctic Climate History and Its Relationship with Global Climate Changes

Abelson, M. , & Erez, J. (2017). The onset of modern-like Atlantic meridional overturning circulation at the Eocene-Oligocene transition: Evidence, causes, and possible implications for global cooling. Geochemistry, Geophysics, Geosystems, 18(6), 2177–2199. http://doi.org/10.1002/2017gc006826

Abram, N. , Mulvaney, R. , Wolff, E. Acceleration of snowmelt in an Antarctic Peninsula ice core during the twentieth century. Nature Geosci, 6, 404–411 (2013). https://doi.org/10.1038/ngeo1787

Aciego, S. , Bourdon, B. , Schwander, J. , Baur, H. , & Forieri, A. (2011). Toward a radiometric ice clock: Uranium ages of the Dome C ice core. Quaternary Science Reviews, 30(19–20), 2389–2397. http://doi.org/10.1016/j.quascirev.2011.06.008

Ahlmann, H. W. Son , 1935. The stratification of the snow and firn on Isachsen's Plateau. In Scientific Results of the Norwegian and Swedish Spitzbergen Expedition. Geografiska Annaler, Taylor and Francis. ISSN: 2001-4422,

Alley, R. B. (2000). Ice-core evidence of abrupt climate changes. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 97(4), 1331–1334. http://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.97.4.1331

Arora, V. K. , Boer, G. J. , Friedlingstein, P. , Eby, M. , Jones, C. D. , Christian, J. R. ., … Wu, T . (2013). Carbon—concentration and carbon—climate feedbacks in CMIP5 earth system models. Journal of Climate, 26(15), 5289–5314. http://doi.org/10.1175/jcli-d-12-00494.1

Azhar, A. , Chenoli, S. N. , Samah, A. A. , & Kim, S.-J. (2020). The linkages between Antarctic sea ice extent and Indian summer monsoon rainfall. Polar Science, 100537. http://doi.org/10.1016/j.polar.2020.100537

Barrett, B. E. , Nicholls, K. W. , Murray, T. , Smith, A. M. , & Vaughan, D. G. (2009). Rapid recent warming on Rutford Ice Stream, West Antarctica, from borehole thermometry. Geophysical Research Letters, 36(2), n/a—n/a. http://doi.org/10.1029/2008gl036369

Basile, I. , Petit, J. R. , Touron, S. , Grousset, F. E. , & Barkov, N. (2001). Volcanic layers in Antarctic (Vostok) ice cores: Source identification and atmospheric implications. Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres, 106(D23), 31915–31931. http://doi.org/10.1029/2000jd000102

Bassinot, F. C. , Beaufort, L. , Vincent, E. , Labeyrie, L. D. , Rostek, F. , Müller, P. J. , Quidelleur, X. , & Lancelot, Y. (1994a). Coarse fraction fluctuations in pelagic carbonate sediments from the tropical Indian Ocean: A 1500 kyr record of carbonate dissolution. Paleoceanography, 9(4), 579–609.

Bassinot, F. C. , Labeyrie, L. D. , Vincent, E. , Quidelleur, X. , Shackleton, N. J. , & Lancelot, Y. (1994b). The astronomical theory of climate and the age of the Brunhes-Matuyama magnetic reversal. Earth and Planetary Science Letters, 126(1–3), 91–108. http://doi.org/10.1016/0012-821x(94)90244-5

Bender, M. (2002). Orbital tuning chronology for the Vostok climate record supported by trapped gas composition. Earth and Planetary Science Letters, 204, 275–289.

Bender, M. , Sowers, T. , Dickson, M. L. , (1994). Climate correlations between Greenland and Antarctica during the past 100,000 years. Nature, 372, 663–666. https://doi.org/10.1038/372663a0

Benson, C. S. (1962). Stratigraphic studies in the snow and firn of the Greenland ice sheet. SIPRE Research Report, 70, 76–83.

Berger, A. (1978). Long-term variations of daily insolation and Quaternary climatic changes. Journal of Atmospheric Sciences, 35, 2362–2367.

Berger, A. (1988). Milankovitch theory and climate. Reviews of Geophysics, 26, 624–657.

Berger, A. , Li, X. , & Loutre, M. (1999). Modelling northern hemisphere ice volume over the last 3Ma. Quaternary Science Reviews, 18, 1–11.

Blunier, T . (1998). Asynchrony of Antarctic and Greenland climate change during the last glacial period. Nature, 394, 739–743.

Blunier, T. , & Brook, E. J. (2001). Timing of millennial-scale climate change in Antarctica and Greenland during the last glacial period. Science, 291, 109–112.

Blunier, T. , Schwander, J. , Chappellaz, J. , Parrenin, F. , & Barnola, J. M. (2004). What was the surface temperature in central Antarctica during the last glacial maximum? Earth and Planetary Science Letters, 218(3–4), 379–388. http://doi.org/10.1016/s0012-821x(03)00672-1

Bond, G. (1993). Correlations between climate records from North Atlantic sediments and Greenland ice. Nature, 365, 143±147.
Bradley, R. S. , & Jonest, P. D. (1993). “Little Ice Age” summer temperature variations: Their nature and relevance to recent global warming trends. The Holocene, 3(4), 367–376. http://doi.org/10.1177/095968369300300409
Broecker, W. S. (1998). Paleocean circulation during the last deglaciation: A bipolar seesaw? Paleoceanography, 13(2), 119–121.
Broecker, W. S. , Bond, G. , Klas, M. , Bonani, G. , & Wolfli, W. (1990). A salt oscillator in the Glacial Atlantic? Paleoceanograpy, 5(4), 469–477.
Broecker, W. S. , & Denton, G. H. (1990). The role of ocean-atmosphere reorganizations in glacial cycles. Quaternary Science Reviews, 9, 305–341.
Bromwich, D. H. (1990). Estimates of Antarctic precipitation. Nature, 343(6259), 627–629. http://doi.org/10.1038/343627a0
Brook, E. J. , & Buizert, C. (2018). Antarctic and global climate history viewed from ice cores. Nature, 558(7709), 200–208. http://doi.org/10.1038/s41586-018-0172-5
Bryan, F. , & Oort, A. (1984). Seasonal variation of the global water balance based on aerological data. Journal of Geophysical Research, 89(D7), 11717. http://doi.org/10.1029/jd089id07p11717
Caballero, R. , & Hanley, J. (2012). Midlatitude eddies, storm-track diffusivity, and poleward moisture transport in warm climates. Journal of the Atmospheric Sciences, 69(11), 3237–3250. http://doi.org/10.1175/jas-d-12-035.1
Carter, A. , Riley, T. R. , Hillenbrand, C.-D. , & Rittner, M. (2017). Widespread Antarctic glaciation during the Late Eocene. Earth and Planetary Science Letters, 58(2017), 49–57.
Chappell, J. (2002). Sea level changes forced ice breakouts in the Last Glacial cycle: New results from coral terraces. Quaternary Science Reviews, 21, 1229–1240.
Chappellaz, J. , Blunier, T. , Kints, S. , Dällenbach, A. , Barnola, J.-M. , Schwander, J. , Raynaud, D. , & Stauffer, B. (1997). Changes in the atmospheric CH4 gradient between Greenland and Antarctica during the Holocene. Journal of Geophysical Research 102(D13), 15987–15999.
Chappellaz, J. , Blunier, T. , Raynaud, D. , Barnola, J. M. , Schwander, J. , & Stauffer, B. (1993). Synchronous changes in atmospheric CH4 and Greenland climate between 40 and 8 kyr BP. Nature, 366, 443–445.
Charles, C. D. , Lynch-Stieglitz, J. , Ninnemann, U. S. , & Fairbanks, R. G. (1996). Climate connections between the hemisphere revealed by deep-sea sediment core/ice core correlations. Earth and Planetary Science Letters, 142, 19–27.
Chen, S. , Wang, Y. , Cheng, H. , Edwards, R. L. , Wang, X. , Kong, X. , & Liu, D. (2016). Strong coupling of Asian Monsoon and Antarctic climates on sub-orbital timescales. Scientific Reports, 6(1), 32995. http://doi.org/10.1038/srep32995
Clark, P. U. , Archer, D. , Pollard, D. , Blum, J. D. , Rial, J. A. , Brovkin, V. , … Roy, M. (2006). The middle Pleistocene transition: characteristics, mechanisms, and implications for long-term changes in atmospheric pCO2. Quaternary Science Reviews, 25(23–24), 3150–3184. http://doi.org/10.1016/j.quascirev.2006.07.008
Clement, A. C. , Cane, M. A. , & Seager, R. (2001). An orbitally driven tropical source for abrupt climate change. Journal of Climate, 14(11), 2369–2375.
Connolley, W. M. , & King, J. C. (1993). Atmospheric water-vapour transport to Antarctica inferred from radiosonde data. Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society, 119, 325–342.
Cuffey, K. M. , Clow, G. D. , Steig, E. J. , Buizertd, C. , Fudge, T. J. , Koutnikc, M. , Waddington, E. D. , Alleye, R. B. , & Jeffrey, P. (2016). Deglacial temperature history of West Antarctica. Proceedings of National Academy of Sciences USA, 113, 14249–14254.
Das, S. , & Alley, R. B. (2005). Characterization and formation of melt layers in polar snow: Observations and experiments from West Antarctica. Journal of Glaciology, 51(173), 307–313. http://doi.org/10.3189/172756505781829395
Delmonte, B. , Andersson, P. S. , Hansson, M. , Schöberg, H. , Petit, J. R. , Basile-Doelsch, I. , & Maggi, V. (2008). Aeolian dust in East Antarctica (EPICA-Dome C and Vostok): Provenance during glacial ages over the last 800 kyr. Geophysical Research Letters, 35(7), n/a—n/a. http://doi.org/10.1029/2008gl033382

Delmonte, B. , Petit, J. R. , & Maggi, V. (2002). Glacial to Holocene implications of the new 27000-year dust record from the EPICA Dome C (East Antarctica) ice core. Climate Dynamics, 18, 647–660.
Dome Fuji Project Members . (2017). State dependence of climatic instability over the past 720,000 years from Antarctic ice cores and climate modelling. Science Advances, 3, e1600446.
EPICA Community Members . (2004). Eight glacial cycles from an Antarctic ice core. Nature, 429, 623–628.
EPICA Community Members . (2006). One-to-one coupling of glacial climate variability in Greenland and Antarctica. Nature, 444(7116), 195–198. http://doi.org/10.1038/nature05301
Etheridge, D. M. , Steele, L. P. , Langenfeld, R. L. , Francey, R. J. , Barnola, J. M. , & Morgan, V. I. (1996). Natural and anthropogenic changes in atmospheric CO2 over the last 1000 years from air in Antarctic ice and firn. Journal of Geophysical Research, 101, 4115–4128.
Fireman, E. (1986). Uranium-series dating of Allan Hills ice. Journal of Geophysical Research-Solid Earth and Planets, 91, D539–D544.
Friedlingstein, P. , Andrew, R. M. , Rogelj, J. , Peters, G. P. , Canadell, J. G. , Knutti, R. , … Le Quéré, C. (2014). Persistent growth of CO2 emissions and implications for reaching climate targets. Nature Geoscience, 7(10), 709–715. http://doi.org/10.1038/ngeo2248
Galeotti, S. , DeConto, R. , Naish, T. , Stocchi, P. , Florindo, F. , Pagani, M. , … Zachos, J. C. (2016). Antarctic Ice Sheet variability across the Eocene-Oligocene boundary climate transition. Science, 352(6281), 76–80.
Gettelman, A. , Walden, V. P. , Miloshevich, L. M. , Roth, W. L. , & Halter, B. (2006). Relative humidity over Antarctica from radiosondes, satellites, and a general circulation model. Journal of Geophysical Research, 111(D9). http://doi.org/10.1029/2005jd006636
Gildor, H. (2003). When Earth's freezer door is left ajar. Eos, 84(23).
Giovinetto, M. B. , & Bentley, C. R. (1985). Surface balance in ice drainage systems of Antarctica. Antarctica Journal of the United States of America, 20 (4), 6–13.
Goodwin, I. D. (1990). Snow accumulation and surface topography in the katabatic zone of Eastern Wilkes Land, Antarctica. Antarctic Science, 2, 235–242. https://doi.org/10.1017/S0954102090000323
Grove, J. M. (1988). The Little Ice Age. Methuen, New York, 498 pp.
Guo, Z. T. , Berger, A. , Yin, Q. Z. , & Qin, L. (2009). Strong asymmetry of hemispheric climates during MIS-13 inferred from correlating China loess and Antarctica ice records. Climate of the Past, 5, 21–31. www.clim-past.net/5/21/2009/
Han, X. , Wei, F. , & Chen, X. (2017). Influence of the anomalous patterns of the Mascarene and Australian highs on precipitation during the prerainy season in South China. Advances in Meteorology, 2017, 1–12. https://doi.org/10.1155/2017/640802
Hays, J. , Imbrie, J. , & Shackleton, N. (1976). Variations in the Earth's orbit: Pacemaker of the ice ages. Science, 194, 1121–1132.
Huybers, P. (2011). Combined obliquity and precession pacing of late Pleistocene deglaciations. Nature, 480, 229–232. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature10626
Huybers, P. , & Wunsch, C. (2005). Obliquity pacing of the late Pleistocene glacial terminations. Nature, 434, 491–494.
Imbrie, J. , & Imbrie, J. Z. (1980). Modelling the climatic response to orbital variations. Science, 207(4434), 943–953. http://doi.org/10.1126/science.207.4434.943
Imbrie, J. , (1993). On the structure and origin of major glaciation cycles. 2. The 100,000-year cycle. Paleoceanography, 8, 699–735.
Imbrie, J. , Hays, J. D. , Martinson, D. G. , McIntyre, A. , Mix, A. C. , Morley, J. J. , Pisias, N. G. , Prell, W. L. , & Shackleton, N. J. (1984). The orbital theory of Pleistocene climate: Support from a revised chronology of the marine 5 180 records. In A. L. Berger (Eds.), Milankovich and Climate, Part 1, pp. 269–305. Reidel Publishing Company.
Jacobs, S. S. , Helmer, H. , Doake, C. S. M. , Jenkins, A. , & Frolich, R. M. (1992). Melting of the ice shelves and the mass balance of Antarctica. Journal of Glaciology, 38(130), 275–387.
Jouzel, J. , Alley, R. B. , Cuffey, K. M. , Dansgaard, W. , Grootes P. , Hoffmann, G. , Johnsen, S. J. , Koster R. D. , Peel, D. , Shuman, C. A. , Stievenard, M. , Stuiver, M. , & White, J. (1997). Validity of the temperature reconstruction from water isotopes in ice cores. Journal of Geophysical Research, 102(C12), 26,471–426,487.
Jouzel, J. , Masson-Delmotte, V. , Cattani, O. , Dreyfus, G. , Falourd, S. , Hoffmann, G. , … Wolff, E. W. (2007). Orbital and millennial antarctic climate variability over the Past 800,000

years. Science, 317(5839), 793–796. http://doi.org/10.1126/science.1141038
Jouzel, J. , Merlivat, L. , & Lorius, C. (1982). Deuterium excess in an East Antarctic ice core suggests higher relative humidity at the oceanic surface during the Last Glacial Maximum. Nature (London), 299, 688–691.
Kawamura, K. (2017). Dome Fuji Ice Core Project Members: State dependence of climatic instability over the past 720,000 years from Antarctic ice cores and climate modelling. Science Advances, 3(2). https://doi.org/10.1126/sciadv.160044610.1126/sciadv.1600446
Kawashima, K. , & Yamada, T. (1997). Experimental studies on the transformation from firn to ice in the wet-snow zone of temperate glaciers. Annals of Glaciology, 24, 181–185. http://doi.org/10.3189/s0260305500012143
Köhler, P. , & Fischer, H. (2006). Simulating low-frequency changes in atmospheric CO2during the last 740 000 years. Climate of the Past, 2, 57–78.
Konijnendijk, T. Y. M. , Ziegler, M. , & Lourens, L. J. (2015). On the timing and forcing mechanisms of late Pleistocene glacial terminations: Insights from a new high-resolution benthic stable oxygen isotope record of the eastern Mediterranean. Quaternary Science Reviews, 129, 308–320. http://doi.org/10.1016/j.quascirev.2015.10.005
Kumar, V. , Tiwari, M. , Prakash, P. , Mohan, R. , & Thamban, M. (2021). SST changes in the Indian sector of the Southern Ocean and their teleconnection with the Indian monsoon during the last glacial period. Paleoceanography and Paleoclimatology, 36, e2020PA004139. https://doi.org/10.1029/2020PA004139
Kump, L. R. , Brantley, S. L. , & Arthur, M. A. (2000). Chemical weathering, atmosphericCO2, and climate. Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences, 28, 611–667.
Kutbach, J. (1981). Monsoon climate of the early Holocene: Climate experiment with the earth's orbital parameters for 9000 years ago. Science, 214, 59–61.
Lang, N. , & Wolff, E. W. (2011). Interglacial and glacial variability from the last 800 ka in marine, ice and terrestrial archives. Climate of the Past, 7, 361–380. http://doi.org/10.5194/cp-7-361-2011
Langway, C. C. Jr. , & Shoji, H. (1990). Past temperature record from the analysis of melt features in the Dye 3, Greenland, Ice Core. Annals of Glaciology, 14, 343–344.
Laskar, J. , Robutel, P. , Joutel, F. , Gastineau, M. , Correia, A. , & Levrard, B. (2004). A long-term numerical solution for the insolation quantities of the Earth. Astronomy & Astrophysics, 428, 261–285. http://doi.org/10.1051/0004-6361:20041335
Lisiecki, L. E. , & Raymo, M. E. (2005). A pliocene-pleistocene stack of 57 globally distributed benthic – 18O records. Paleoceanography, 20, PA1003, Data archived at the World Data Center for Paleoclimatology, Boulder, Colorado, USA.
Liu, H. (1998). Phase modulation effect of the Rubincam insolation variations. Theoretical and Applied Climatology, 61, 217–229.
Lorius, C. (1990). Environmental records from polar ice cores. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society* A, 330, 459–462, 459.
Loulergue, L. , Schilt, A. , Spahni, R. , Masson-Delmotte, V. , Blunier, T. , Lemieux, B. , Barnola, J.-M. , Raynaud, D. , Stocker, T. F. , & Chappellaz, J. (2008). Orbital and millennial-scale features of atmospheric CH4 over the past 800,000 years. Nature, 453, 383–386. http://doi.org/10.1038/nature06950
Lüthi, D. , Le Floch, M. , Bereiter, B. , Blunier, T. , Barnola, J.-M. , Siegenthaler, U. , Raynaud, D. , Jouzel, J. , Fischer, H. , Kawamura, K. , & Stocker, T. F. (2008). High-resolution carbon dioxide concentration record 650,000–800,000 years before present. Nature, 453(7193), 379–382. http://doi.org/10.1038/nature06949
Markle, B. R. , & Steig E. J. (2021). Improving temperature reconstructions from ice-core water-isotope records. The Climate of the Past: Discussions EGU, 1–70. https://doi.org/10.5194/cp-2021-37
Masson-Delmotte, V. , (2010a). EPICA Dome C record of glacial and interglacial intensities. Quaternary Science Reviews, 29(1–2), 113–128.
Masuda, K. (1990). Atmospheric heat and water budgets of polar regions: Analysis of FGGE data. Proc. NIPRSytnp. Polar Meteorology and Glaciology, 3, 79–88.
McConnell, J. R. (2014). Antarctic-wide array of high-resolution ice core records reveals pervasive lead pollution began in 1889 and persists today. Scientific Reports, 4, 5848.
McManus, J. , Oppo, D. , Cullen, J. , & Healey, S. (2003). Marine isotope stage 11 (MIS 11): Analog for holocene and future climate? Geophysical Monograph Series, 69–85.

http://doi.org/10.1029/137gm06
Milankovitch, M. (1941). Kanon der Erdbestrahlung und Seine Anwendung auf das Eiszeitenproblem. Royal Serbian Academy, Belgrade.
Miller, G. H. , (2012), Abrupt onset of the Little Ice Age triggered by volcanism and sustained by sea-ice/ocean feedbacks. Geophysical Research Letters, 39, L02708. http://doi.org/10.1029/2011GL050168
Miller, K. G. , Fairbanks, R. G. , & Mountain, G. S. (1987). Tertiary oxygen isotope synthesis, sea-level history and continental margin erosion. Paleoceanography, 2, 1–19.
Miller, K. G. , Wright, J. D. , & Fairbanks, R. G. (1991). Unlocking the Ice House: Oligocene-Miocene oxygen isotopes, eustasy, and margin erosion. Journal of Geophysical Research: Solid Earth, 96(B4), 6829–6848. http://doi.org/10.1029/90jb02015
Mulvaney, R. , Abram, N. J. , Hindmarsh, R. C. A. , Arrowsmith, C. , Fleet, L. , Triest, J. , … Foord, S. (2012). Recent antarctic peninsula warming relative to holocene climate and ice-shelf history. Nature, 489(7414), 141–144. http://doi.org/10.1038/nature11391
Neftel, A. , Oeschger, H. , Staffelbach, T. , & Stauffer, B. (1988). CO2 record in the Byrd ice core 50,000–5,000 years bp. Nature, 331, 609–611. https://doi.org/10.1038/331609a0
Oerter, H. , Drücker, C. , Kipfstuhl, S. , & Wilhelms, F. (2009). Kohnen station—the drilling camp for the EPICA deep ice corein dronning maud land. Polarforschung, 78(1–2), 1–23, 2008 (erschienen 2009).
Owens, M. J. , Lockwood, M. , Hawkins, E. , Usoskin, I. , Jones, G. S. , Barnard, L. , … Fasullo, J. (2017). The Maunder minimum and the Little Ice Age: An update from recent reconstructions and climate simulations. Journal of Space Weather and Space Climate, 7, A33. http://doi.org/10.1051/swsc/201703
Paillard, D. (1998). The timing of Pleistocene glaciations from a simple multiple-state climate model. Nature, 391, 378–381.
Parrenin, F. , & Paillard, D. (2012). Terminations VI and VIII (530 and 720 kyr BP) tell us the importance of obliquity and precession in the triggering of deglaciations. Climate of the Past Discussions, 8(4), 3143–3157. http://doi.org/10.5194/cpd-8-3143-2012
Pedro, J. B. , Bostock, H. C. , Bitz, C. M. , He, F. , Vandergoes, M. J. , Steig, E. J. , Chase, B. M. , Krause, C. E. , Rasmussen, S. O. , Markle, B. R. , & Cortese, G. (2016a). The spatial extent and dynamics of the Antarctic Cold Reversal. Nature Geoscience, 9(Jan), 51–55.
Pedro, J. B. , Jochum, M. , Buizert, C. , He, F. , Barker, S. , & Rasmussen, S. O. (2018). Beyond the bipolar seesaw: Toward a process understanding of interhemispheric coupling. Quaternary Science Reviews, 192, 27–46. http://doi.org/10.1016/j.quascirev.2018.05.005
Pedro, J. B. , Martin, E. J. , Steig, M. , Jochum, W. , & Park, S. O. (2016b). Rasmussen Southern Ocean deep convection as a driver of Antarctic warming events. Geophysical Research Letters, 43(Mar), 2192–2199.
Petit, J. R. (1999). Climate and atmospheric history of the past 420,000 years from the Vostok ice core, Antarctica. Nature, 399, 429–436.
Prabhu, A. , Mahajan, P. , Khaladkar, R. , & Bawiskar, S. (2009). Connection between Antarctic seaice extent and Indian summer monsoon rainfall. International Journal of Remote Sensing, 30(13), 3485–3494. http://doi.org/10.1080/01431160802562248
Railsback, L. B. , Gibbard, P. L. , Head, M. J. , Voarintsoa, N. R. G. , & Toucanne, S. (2015). An optimized scheme of lettered marine isotope substages for the last 1.0 million years, and the climatostratigraphic nature of isotope stages and substages. Quaternary Science Reviews, 111, 94–106. http://doi.org/10.1016/j.quascirev.2015.01.012
Raynaud, D. , Barnola, J. M. , Souchez, R. , Lorrain, R. , Petit, J. R. , Duval, P. , & Lipenkov, V. I. . (2005). The record for marine isotopic stage 11. Nature, 436, 39–40.
Raynaud, D. , Jouzel, J ., Barnola, J.-M. , Chappellaz, J. , Jouzel, R. J. , & Lorius, C. (1993). The ice record of greenhouse gases. Science, 259, 926–934.
Raynaud, D. , Lipenkov, V. , Lemieux-Dudon, B. , Loutre, M.-F. , & Lhomme, N. (2007). The local insolation signature of air content in Antarctic ice: A new step toward an absolute dating of ice records. Earth and Planetary Science Letters, 261, 337–349.
Rossignol-Strick, M. , Paterne, M. , Bassinot, F. C. , Emeis, K. , & de Lange, G. J. (1998). An unusual mid-Pleistocene monsoon period over Africa and Asia. Nature, 392, 269–272.
Rubino, M. , Etheridge, D. M. , Trudinger, C. M. , Allison, C. E. , Battle, M. O. , Langenfelds, R. L. , … Francey, R. J. (2013). A revised 1000 year atmospheric δ13C-CO2 record from Law Dome and South Pole, Antarctica. Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres, 118(15),

8482–8499. http://doi.org/10.1002/jgrd.50668
Salamatin, A. N. (2000). Paleoclimatic reconstructions based on borehole temperature measurements in ice sheets. Possibilities and limitations. In T. Hondoh (Ed.), Physics of Ice Core Records, pp. 243–281. Hokkaido University Press.
Saltzman, B. (2002). Dynamical Paleoclimatology: Generalized Theory of Global Climate Change. Academic Press.
Schuepbach, S. (2013). High-resolution mineral dust and sea ice proxy records from the Talos Dome ice core. Climate of the Past, 9, 2789–2807.
Schytt, V. (1958). Norwegian—British—Swedish antarctic expedition 1949–1952. Scientific Results 4, Glaciology II, Norsk Polarinstitut, Oslo, Norway.
Seroussi, H. , Ivins, E. R. , Wiens, D. A. , & Bondzio, J. (2017). Influence of a West Antarctic mantle plume on ice sheet basal conditions. Journal of Geophysical Research: Solid Earth, 122, 7127–7155. http://doi.org/10.1002/2017JB014423
Shakun, J. D. , Clark, P. U. , He, F. , Marcott, S. A. , Mix, A. C. , Liu, Z. , Otto-Bliesner, B. , Schmittner, A. , & Bard, E. (2012). Global warming preceded by increasing carbon dioxide concentrations during the last deglaciation. Nature, 484(7392), 49–54. http://doi.org/10.1038/nature10915
Shepherd, A. , Gilbert, L. , Muir, A. S. , Konrad, H. , McMillan, M. , Slater, T. , Briggs, K. H. , Sundal, A. V. , Hogg, A. V. , & Engdahl, M. (2019). Trends in Antarctic ice sheet elevation and mass. Geophysical Research Letters, 46, 8174–8183. http://doi.org/10.1029/2019gl082182
Siddall, M. , Rohling, E. J. , Almogi-Labin, A. , Hemleben, C. , Meischner, D. , Schmelzer, I. , & Smeed, D. A. (2003). Sea-level fluctuations during the last glacial cycle. Nature, 423, 853–858. http://doi.org/10.1038/nature01690
Siddall, M. , Rohling, E. J. , Thompson, W. G. , & Waelbroeck, C. (2008). Marine isotope stage 3 sea-level fluctuations: Data synthesis and new outlook. Reviews of Geophysics, 46(4). http://doi.org/10.1029/2007rg000226
Siegfried, M. R. , & Fricker, H. A. (2021). Illuminating active subglacial lake processes with ICESat-2 laser altimetry. Geophysical Research Letters, 48, e2020GL091089. https://doi.org/10.1029/2020GL091089
Sorge, E. (1933). Scientific results of the Wegener Expedition to Greenland. Geographical Journal, 81, 333–334.
Sowers, T. , & Bender, M. (1995). Climate records covering the last deglaciation. Science, 269(5221), 210–214. http://doi.org/10.1126/science.269.5221.210
Stocker, T. F. , & Johnsen, S. J. (2003). A minimum thermodynamic model of the bipolar seesaw. Paleoceanography, 18, art. no. 1087.
Stocker, T. F. , Wright, D. G. , & Mysak, L. A. (1992). A zonally averaged, coupled ocean-atmosphere model for paleoclimate studies. Journal of Climate, 5, 773±797.
Suganuma, Y. , Haneda, Y. , Kameo, K. , Kubota, Y. , Hayashi, H. , Itaki, T. , … Okada, M. (2018). Paleoclimatic and paleoceanographic records through Marine Isotope Stage 19 at the Chiba composite section, central Japan: A key reference for the Early—Middle Pleistocene Subseries boundary. Quaternary Science Reviews, 191, 406–430. http://doi.org/10.1016/j.quascirev.2018.04.022
Sverdrup, H. U. 1935. The temperature of the firn on Isachsen’s Plateau and general conclusions regarding the temperature of theglaciers on West-Spitzbergen, in Scientific results of theNorwegian—Swedish Spitzbergen Expedition, 1934. Geografisker Annaler, 17, 78–80.
Swithinbank, C. (1957). Norwegian—British—Swedish Antarctic Expedition 1949–1952. In Scientific Results, vol. 3. Glaciology I. Norsk Polarinstitut.
Thomas, E. R. , Gacitúa, G. , Pedro, J. B. , King, A. C. F. , Markle, B. , Potocki, M. , & Moser, D. E. (2021). Physical properties of shallow ice cores from Antarctic and sub-Antarctic islands. The Cryosphere, 15, 1173–1186. https://doi.org/10.5194/tc-15-1173-2021.
Tzedakis, P. C. , Hooghiemstra, H. , & Palike, H. (2006). The last 1.35million years at Tenaghi Philippon: Revised chronostratigraphy and long-term vegetation trends. Quaternary Science Reviews, 25, 3416–3430.
Tziperman, E. , Raymo, M. , Huybers, P. , & Wunsch, C. (2006). Consequences of pacing the Pleistocene 100 kyr ice ages by nonlinear phase locking to Milankovitch forcing. Paleoceanography, 21, PA4206.
van Wessem, J. M. , Ligtenberg, S. R. M. , Reijmer, C. H. , van de Berg, W. J. , van den Broeke, M. R. , Barrand, N. E. , Thomas, E. R. , Turner, J. , Wuite, J. , Scambos, T. A. , & van

Meijgaard, E. (2016). The modelled surface mass balance of the Antarctic Peninsula at 5.5km horizontal resolution. The Cryosphere, 10, 271–285. https://doi.org/10.5194/tc-10-271-2016
Vavrus, S. J. , He, F. , Kutzbach, J. E. , Ruddiman, W. F. , & Tzedakis, P. C. (2018). Glacial inception in marine isotope stage 19: An orbital analog for a natural holocene climate. Scientific Reports, 8(1). http://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-018-28419-5
Waelbroeck, C. , Jouzel, J. , Labeyrie, L. (1995). A comparison of the Vostok ice deuterium record and series from Southern Ocean core MD 88–770 over the last two glacial-interglacial cycles. Climate Dynamics, 12, 113–123. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF00223724
Waelbroeck, C. , Jouzel, J. , Labeyrie, L. , Lourius, C. , Labracherie, M. , Stievenard, M. , & Barkov, N. (1995). Comparing the Vostok ice deuterium record and series from Southern Ocean core MD 88–770 over the last two glacial-interglacial cycles. Climate Dynamics, 12, 113–123.
Waelbroeck, C. , Labeyrie, L. , Michel, E. , Duplessy, J. C. , McManus, J. F. , Lambeck, K. , Balbon, E. , & Labracherie, M. (2002). Sea-level and deep water temperature changes derived from benthic foraminifera isotopic records. Quaternary Science Reviews, 21(1–3), 0–305. http://doi.org/10.1016/s0277-3791(01)00101-9
Wang, P. , Tian, J. , Cheng, X. , Liu, C. , & Xu, J. (2004). Major Pleistocene stages in a carbon perspective: The South China Sea record and its global comparison. Paleoceanography, 19, PA4005. http://doi.org/10.1029/2003PA000991
Watanabe, O. (2003). Homogeneous climate variability across East Antarctica over the past three glacial cycles. Nature, 422, 509–512.
White, J. W. C. , & Steig, E. J. (1998). Timing is everything in a game of two hemispheres. Nature, 394(6695), 717–718.
Wolff, E. , Fischer, H. , & Röthlisberger, R . (2009). Glacial terminations as southern warmings without northern control. Nature Geoscience, 2, 206–209.
Wunsch, C. (2003). Greenland-Antarctic phase relations and millennial time-scale climate fluctuations in the Greenland ice-cores. Quaternary Science Reviews, 22, 1631–1646.
Yan, Y. , Bender, M. L. , Brook, E. J. , Clifford, H. M. , Kemeny, P. C. , Kurbatov, A. V. , … Higgins, J. A. (2019). Two-million-year-old snapshots of atmospheric gases from Antarctic ice. Nature, 574(7780), 663–666. http://doi.org/10.1038/s41586-019-1692-3.
Yin, Q. Z. , & Berger, A. (2010). Insolation and CO2 contribution to the interglacial climate before and after the mid-brunhes event. Nature Geoscience, 3(4), 243–246.
Yin, Q. Z. , Berger, A. , & Crucifix, M. (2009). Individual and combined effects of ice sheets and precession on MIS-13 climate. Climate of the Past, 5, 229–243.
Yin, Q. Z. , & Guo, Z. T. (2008). Strong summer monsoon during the cool MIS-13. Climate of the Past, 4, 29–34.
Zachos, J. C. , Quinn, T. M. , & Salamy, K. A. (1996). High-resolution (104years) deep-sea foraminiferal stable isotope records of the Eocene-Oligocene climate transition. Paleoceanography, 11(3), 251–266. http://doi.org/10.1029/96pa00571
Ziegler, M. , Lourens, L. J. , Tuenterand, E. , & Reichart, G.-J. (2010). High Arabian Sea productivity conditions during MIS 13—odd monsoon event or intensified overturning circulation at the end of the Mid-Pleistocene transition? Climate of the Past, 6, 63–76. www.clim-past.net/6/63/2010/

Glacial Geomorphology around Schirmacher Oasis, Antarctica

Asthana, R. (2017). Geomorphology of the polar periglacial environments at Schirmacher Oasis and Larsemann Hills East Antarctica with special reference to the sedimentation characteristics. PhD Thesis submitted to Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi.
Asthana, R. , and Chaturvedi, A. (1998). The grain-size behaviour and morphoscopy of supraglacial sediments, south of Schirmacher Oasis, E. Antarctica. Journal of the Geological Society of India, 52(5), 557–568.
Asthana, R. , Shrivastava, P. K. , Beg, M. J. , Swain, A. K. , Dharwadkar, A. , Roy, S. K. , and Srivastava, H. B. (2013). Sedimentary processes in two different polar periglacial environments: Examples from Schirmacher Oasis and Larsemann Hills, East Antarctica. Geological Society, London, Special Publications, 381(1), 411–427.

Asthana, R. , Shrivastava, P. K. , Beg, M. J. , Shome, S. , and Kachroo, K. (2009). Surface microtextures of quartz grains from glaciolacustrine sediment core from Priyadarshini Lake, Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica as revealed under scanning electron microscope. Indian Journal of Geosciences, 63, 205–214.
Ballantyne, C. K. (1998). Age and significance of mountaintop detritus. Permafrost and Periglacial Processes, 9(4), 327–345.
Bardin, V. J. (1971). Moraines of Antarctica. In: R. J. Adie (Ed.), Antarctic geology and geophysics. Oslo Universitetes forlaget, pp. 663–667.
Bargagli, R. (2006). Antarctic ecosystems: environmental contamination, climate change, and human impact (Vol. 175). Springer Science & Business Media.
Barron, E. J. , Harrison, C. G. A. , and Hay, W. W. (1978). A revised reconstruction of the Southern Continents. EOS, 59, 436–449.
Beg M. J. , Prasad A. V. K. , Chaturvedi, A. (2000). Interim Report on Glaciological Studies in the Austral Summer of 19th Indian Antarctic Expedition. In: Scientific Report of Nineteenth Indian Expedition to Antarctica, Tech. Pub. No.17, Department of Ocean Development, Govt. of India, New Delhi, pp. 121–126.
Benn, D. , and Evans, D. J. (2014). Glaciers and glaciation. Routledge.
Bennike, O. , and Björck, S. (2000). Lake sediment coring in South Greenland in 1999. Geology of Greenland Survey Bulletin, 186, 60–64.
Bera, S. K. (2004). Late Holocene palaeo-winds and climatic changes in Eastern Antarctica as indicated by long-distance transported pollen—spores and local microbiota in polar lake core sediments. Current Science, 86(11), 1485–1488.
Bera, S. K. (2006). Reconstruction of Palaeoclimate from Holocene Sequences of Lake Sediment Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. Nineteenth Indian Expedition to Antarctica, Scientific Report, 2004. Department of Ocean Development, Technical Publication No. 17, pp. 33–40.
Bormann, P. , and Fritzsche, D. (eds) (1995). The Schihnacher Oasis, Queen Maud Land, East Antarctica, and its surroundings. Justus Perthes Verlag Gotha.
Cook, S. J. , and McConnell, J. W. (2001). Lake sediment geochemical methods in the Canadian Shield, Cordillera and Appalachia. Geological Society, London, Special Publications, 185, 125–149.
Cox, K. G. (1978). Flood basalts, subduction and the break-up of Gondwanaland. Nature, 274(5666), 47–49.
D’Souza, M. J. , Beg, M. J. , Ravindra, R. , and Chaturvedi, A. (1994). Occurrence of alkaline lamprophyre dyke from Schirmacher range, Dronning Maud Land, East Antarctica. Technical Publications, 6, 161–172.
Dietz, R. S. , and Holden, J. C. (1970). Reconstruction of Pangaea: Breakup and dispersion of continents, Permian to present. Journal of Geophysical Research, 75(26), 4939–4956.
Gajananda, K. , Dutta, H. N. , and Lagun, V. E. (2007). An episode of coastal advection fog over East Antarctica. Current Science, 654–659.
Gaur, M. P. , Dharwadkar, A. , and Asthana, R. (2006). Glaciomorphic Land Forms in Parts of Schirmarcher Oasis, Central Dronning Maud Land, East Antarctica. Eighteenth Indian Expedition to Antarctica, Scientific Report, 2002. Department of Ocean Development. Technical Publication No. 16, pp. 81–93.
Goudie, A. S. (Ed.), 2004. Encyclopedia of Geomorphology (Vol. 1). Routledge Ltd., p. 578.
Hosalikar, K. S. , and Machnurkar, P. N. (2006). Report on Meteorological and Climatological Studies at Maitri, 25 Antarctica. Fourteenth Indian Expedition to Antarctica, Scientific Report, 1998. Department of Ocean Development. Technical Publication No. 12, pp. 25–46.
Jayapaul, D. , and Dharwadkar, A. (2006). Glaciomorphological Studies in Parts of Schirmacher Oasis, Central Dronning Maud Land, East Antarctica. Twentieth Indian Expedition to Antarctica, Scientific Report, 2006. Ministry of Earth Sciences. Technical Publication No. 18, pp. 131–138.
Kejna, M. (2003). Trends of air temperature of the Antarctic during the period 1958–2000. Polish Polar Research, 99–126.
Koppar, A. L. (1991). Cloud observation at Antarctica. Mausam, 42(2), 307–308.
Mayewski, P. A. , Meredith, M. P. , Summerhayes, C. P. , Turner, J. , Worby, A. , Barrett, P. J. , .and Bromwich, D. (2009). State of the Antarctic and Southern Ocean climate system. Reviews of Geophysics, 47(1).

Naithani, J. , and Dutta, H. N. (1995). Acoustic sounder measurements of the planetary boundary layer at Maitri, Antarctica. Boundary-Layer Meteorology, 76(1–2), 199–207.
Phartiyal, B. (2019). Climatic History and Landscape Evolution of Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica during Late Quaternary: A Multi-Proxy Study. Twenty-Fifth Indian Antarctic Expedition 2006–2007. Ministry of Earth Sciences. Technical Publication No. 23, pp. 73–105.
Phartiyal, B. , Sharma, A. , and Bera, S. K. (2011). Glacial lakes and geomorphological evolution of Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica, during late quaternary. Quaternary International, 235(1–2), 128–136.
Philpot, H. R. , and Zillman, J. W. (1970). The surface temperature inversion over the Antarctic continent. Journal of Geophysical Research, 75(21), 4161–4169.
Priddle, J. , and Heywood, R. B. (1980). Evolution of Antarctic lake ecosystems. Biological Journal of the Linnean Society, 14(1), 51–66.
Rai, H. , Khare, R. , Nayaka, S. , Upreti, D. K. , and Gupta, R. K. (2011). Lichen synusiae in East Antarctica (Schirmacher Oasis and Larsemann Hills): substratum and morphological preferences. Czech Polar Reports, 1(2), 65–77.
Rasal, A. S. , and Mohar, D. R. (2006). Meteorological Studies Carried Out during the 15th Indian Scientific Expedition to Antarctica, 1996. Fifteenth Indian Expedition to Antarctica, Scientific Report, 1999. Department of Ocean Development. Technical Publication No. I3, pp. 39-62.
Ravich, M. G. , and Kamenev, E. N. (1972). Kristallicheskii Fundament Antarkticheskoi Platformy (Crystalline Basement of the Antarctic Platform). Gidrometeoizdat.
Ravikant, V. , and Kundu, A. (1998). Reaction textures of retrograde pressure-temperature deformation paths from granulites of Schirmacher Hills, East Antarctica. Journal of the Geological Society of India, 51(3), 305–314.
Ravindra, R. (2001). Geomorphology of Schirrmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. Geological Survey of India, Special Publication, 53, 379–390.
Ravindra, R. , Chaturvedi, A. , and Beg, M. J. (2002). Melt water lakes of Schirmacher Oasis-their genetic aspects and classification. Advances in Marine and Antarctic Sciences, 301–313.
Rea, B. R. , Whalley, W. B. , Rainey, M. M. , and Gordon, J. E. (1996). Blockfields, old or new? Evidence and implications from some plateaus in northern Norway. Geomorphology, 15(2), 109–121.
Bormann, P. , and Fritzsche, D. (1995). The Schirmacher Oasis, Queen Maud Land, East Antarctica, and its surroundings: 64 tables. Peterm Geogr Mitt Erg-h 289, Justus Perthes Verlag Gotha, 448 p.
Richter, W. , Bormann, P. , 1995. Hydrology. In: Bormann, P. , Fritzsche, D. (Eds.), The Schirmacher Oasis, Queen Maud Land, East Antarctica, and Its Surroundings. Justus Perthes Verlag Gotha, pp. 259–319 (Chapter 8).
Scrutton, R. A. (1973). The age relationship of igneous activity and continental break-up. Geological Magazine, 110(3), 227–234.
sediment Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. (XIX IAE: 1999–2000). DOD publication
Sengupta, Sudipta. (1986). Geology of Schirmacher Range (Dakshin Gangotri), East Antarctica. Scientific Report of Third Indian Expedition, Technical Report No. 3, Department of Ocean Development, New Delhi, pp. 187–217.
Sharma, C. , Chauhan, M. S. , and Sinha, R. (2007). Studies on Holocene climatic changes from Priyadarshini Lake sediments, East Antarctica: the palynological evidence. Journal-Geological Society of India, 69(1), 92.
Shrivastava, P. K. , Roy, S. K. , Srivastava, H. B. , and Dharwadkar, A. (2019). Estimation of Paleo-ice Sheet Thickness and Evolution of Landforms in Schirmacher Oasis and Adjoining Area, cDML, East Antarctica. Journal of the Geological Society of India, 93(6), 638–644.
Shrivastava, P. K. , Asthana, R. , Beg, M. J. , and Singh, J. (2009). Climatic fluctuation imprinted in quartz grains of lake sediments from Schirmacher Oasis and Larsemann Hills area, East Antarctica. Indian Journal of Geosciences, 63, 87–96.
Shrivastava, P. K. , Asthana, R. , Roy, S. K. , Swain, A. K. , and Dharwadkar, A. (2012). Provenance and depositional environment of epi-shelf lake sediment from Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica, vis-à-vis scanning electron microscopy of quartz grain, size distribution and chemical parameters. Polar Science, 6(2), 165–182.
Shumskiy, P. A. (1957). Glaciological and geomorphological reconnaissance in the Antarctic in 1956. Journal of Glaciology, 3(21), 54–61.

Smith K. L. , and Polvani, L. M. (2016). Spatial patterns of recent Antarctic surface temperature trends and the importance of natural variability: Lessons from multiple reconstructions and the CMIP5 models. Climate Dynamics, 48(7), 2653–2670.
Sinha, R. , and Chatterjee, A. (2000a). Mineralogy of lacustrine sediments in the Schirmacher range area, eastern Antarctica. Journal-Geological Society of India, 56(1), 39–46.
Sinha, R. , and Chatterjee, A. (2000b). Lacustrine sedimentology in the Schirmacher Range Area, East Antarctica. Journal of Geological Society of India, v.56, pp. 39–45.
Sinha, R. , Sharma, C. , and Chauhan, M. S. (2000). Sedimentological and pollen studies of Lake Priyadarshini, Eastern Antarctica. Paleobotanist, 49, 1–8.
Smeltzer, E. R. I. C. , and Swain, E. B. (1985). Answering lake management questions with paleolimnology. Lake Reservory Management, 1, 268–274.
Smith, A. G. , and Hallam, A. (1970). The fit of the southern continents. Nature, 225(5228), 139–144.
Soni, V. K. , Sateesh, M. , Das, A. K. , and Peshin, S. K. (2017, June). Progress in meteorological studies around Indian stations in Antarctica. Proc Indian Natl Sci Acad, 83, 461–467.
Srivastava, A. K. , Ingle, P. S. , and Khare, N. (2010). Textural characteristics, distribution pattern and provenance of heavy minerals in glacial sediments of Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. Journal of the Geological Society of India, 75(2), 393–402.
Srivastava, H. B. , Shrivastava, P. K. , Roy, S. K. , Beg, M. J. , Asthana, R. , Govil, P. , and Verma, K. (2018). Transition in late quaternary paleoclimate in Schirmacher region, East Antarctica as revealed from Lake sediments. Journal of the Geological Society of India, 91(6), 651–663.
Swain, A. K. (2019). Influence of thermal conductivity of rocks on Polar ice sheet recession near Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. Journal of the Geological Society of India, 93(4), 455–465.
Swain, A. K. , and Chaturvedi, A. (2019). Bathymetric Profiling of Lakes of Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica Twenty seventh Indian Antarctic expedition 2007–2009. Ministry of Earth Sciences. Technical publication No. 25, pp. 45–72
Van Lipzig, N. P. M. , Turner, J. , Colwell, S. R. , and van Den Broeke, M. R. (2004). The near-surface wind field over the Antarctic continent. International Journal of Climatology: A Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society, 24(15), 1973–1982.
Verlecar, X. N. , Dhargalkar, V. K. , and Matondkar, S. G. P. (1996). Ecobiological studies of the freshwater lakes at Schirmacher Oasis, Antarctica. Department of Ocean Development, India. Twelfth Indian expedition to Antarctica, scientific report, 1996. Department of Ocean Development technical publication No.10, pp. 233–257
Wand, W. , 1983. Geological observations in the Schirmacher Oasis, Queen Maud Land, East Antarctica—Preliminary Accounts, Geodat. Geophys. Veroff. NKGG., Reihe I, Heft 9, pp. 85–89 (in Russian).
Warrier, A. K. , Mahesh, B. S. , and Mohan, R. (2017). Lake Sediment Studies in Ice-Free Regions of East Antarctica—An Indian Perspective. Proceedings of the Indian National Science Academy, 83(2), 289–297.
Whalley, W. B. , Rea, B. R. , Rainey, M. M. , and McAlister, J. J. (1997). Rock weathering in blockfields: some preliminary data from mountain plateaus in North Norway. Geological Society, London, Special Publications, 120(1), 133–145.

Significance of Foraminiferal Studies from the Southern High Latitudes in Assessing Global Climate Change

Abouchami, W. , Galer, S.J. , Middag, R. , DeBaar, H. J. , Andreae, M. O. , Feldmann, H. , Laan, P. , Raczek, I. , 2010. CD isotopes, a proxy for water mass and nutrient uptake in the Southern Ocean. American Geophysical Union, URL: www.agu.org
Abrantes, F. , Rodrigues, T. , Montanari, B. , Santos, C. , Witt, L. , Lopes, C. , Voelker, A.H.L. , 2011. Climate of the last millennium at the southern pole of the North Atlantic Oscillation: an innershelf sediment record of flooding and upwelling. Climate Research 48(2–3): 261–280.
Alexander, S.P. , DeLaca, T.E. , 1987. Feeding adaptations of the foraminiferan cibicides refulgens living epizoically and parasitically on the Antarctic scallop *Adamussium colbecki* .

Biological Bulletin, Marine Biological Laboratory, Woods Hole 173: 136–159.
Allen, K. , Roberts, S. , Murray, J.W. , 1998. Fractal grain distribution in agglutinated foraminifera. Paleobiology 24: 349–358.
Anderson, J.B. , 1975a. Ecology and distribution of foraminifera in the Weddell Sea of Antarctica. Micropaleontology 21: 69–96.
Anderson, J.B. , 1975b. Factors controlling CaCO3 dissolution in the Weddell Sea from foraminiferal distribution patterns. Marine Geology 19: 315–332.
Anderson, J.B. , Kurtz, D.D. , Weaver, F.M. , 1979. Sedimentation on the Antarctic continental slope. In: Doyle L.J. , Pilkey O.H. (Eds.), Geology of continental slopes. Society of Economic Paleontologists and Mineralogists; Tulsa, OK (USA), Spec. Publ. SEPM, (no. 27), pp. 265–283.
Anderson, R.F. , Carr, M.E. , 2010. Uncorking the Southern Ocean’s vintage CO2. Science 328(5982): 1117–1118.
Andres, M.S. , Bernasconi, S.M. , McKenzie, J.A. , Rohl, U. , 2003. Southern Ocean deglacial record supports global Younger Dryas. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 216: 515–524.
Andrew, D.M. , Martin R. P. , William R. H. , Jelle, B. , Matthew J. C. , Eva C. , Carles, P. , Michael K.G. , Thomas B.C. , 2019. Varied contribution of the Southern Ocean to deglacial atmospheric CO2 rise. Nature Geoscience 12(12): 1006–1011.
Anna, M. , Katharine, R.H. , Jennifer, P. , Daniela, N.S. , Kirsty, M.E. , Victoria, P. , Frank, J.C.P. , Melanie, J.L. , Michael, P.M. , Chloe, L. T. ; Sharon, S. , Hugh, D. , 2019. Temporal variability in foraminiferal morphology and geochemistry at the West Antarctic Peninsula: a sediment trap study. Biogeosciences 16(16): 3267–3282.
Atsushi, A. , Boo-Keun, K. , Takanori, N. , Hiroyuki, T. , 2011 January 15. Chemostratigraphic documentation of a complete Miocene intermediate-depth section in the Southern Ocean: Ocean Drilling Program Site 1120, Campbell Plateau off New Zealand. Marine Geology 279(1–4): 52–62.
Barbieri, R. , D’ Onofrio, S. , Melis, R. , Westall, F. , 1999. r-Selected benthic foraminifera with associated bacterial colonies in Upper Pleistocene sediments of the Ross Sea (Antarctica): implications for calcium carbonate preservation. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 149: 41–57.
Barker, P.F. , Kennett, J.P. , Scientific Party , 1988. Weddell Sea palaeoceanography: Preliminary results of ODP Leg 113. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 67: 75–102.
Barker, P.F. , Thoma, E. , 2004. Origin, Signature and paleoclimatic influence of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current. Earth-Science Review 66: 143–162.
Barrera, E. , 1987. Isotopic paleotemperatures: 1. Effect of diagenesis. 2. Late Cretaceous temperatures. Ph. D. Thesis, Case Western Reserve Univ., Cleveland, OH (USA).
Belkin, I.M. , Gordon, A.L. , 1996. Southern Ocean fronts from the Greenwich meridian to Tasmania. Journal of Geophysical Research 101: 3675–3696.
Belyaeva, N.V. , 1970. Regularities in the distribution of planktonic foraminifera in the water and sediments of the Southern Ocean. In: Holdgate, M.W. (Ed.), The South Indian and Pacific Oceans. Academic Press, New York, pp. 154–161.
Benedetto, S. , Elisabeth, L.S. , Aurora, C.E. , Mea S.C. , Kathryn, A.R. , 2014. Southwest Pacific subtropics responded to last deglacial warming with changes in shallow water sources. Paleoceanography 29(6): 595–611.
Bergami, C. , Capotondi, L. , Langone, L. , Giglio, F. , Ravaioli, M. , 2009. Distribution of living planktonic foraminifera in the Ross Sea and the Pacific sector of the Southern Ocean (Antarctica). Marine Micropaleontology 73 (1–2): 37–48.
Bernhard, J.M. , 1993. Experimental and field evidence of Antarctic foraminiferal tolerance to anoxia and hydrogen sulfide. Marine Micropaleontology 20: 203–213.
Bernhard, J.M. , Bowser, S.S. , 1992. Bacterial biofilms as a trophic resource for certain benthic foraminifera. Marine Ecology Progress Series 83: 263–272.
Bianchi, C. , Gersonde, R. , 2004. Climate evolution at the last deglaciation: the role of the Southern Ocean. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 228: 407–424
Billups, K. , 2002. Late Miocene through early Pliocene deep water circulation and climate change viewed from the Subantarctic South Atlantic. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 185: 287–307.
Billups, K. , Kelly, C. , Pierce, E. , 2008. The late Miocene to early Pliocene climate transition in the Southern Ocean. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 267(1–2): 31–40.

Billups, K. , Schrag, D.P. , 2002. Paleotemperatures and ice volume of the past 27 myr revisited with paired Mg/Ca and 18O/16O measurements on benthic foraminifera. Paleoceanography 17: 3-1-3-11.
Billups, K. , Schrag, D.P. , 2003. Application of benthic foraminiferal Mg/Ca ratios to questions of Cenozoic climate change. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 209: 181–195.
Boersma, A. , Huber, B. , 1993. Origins and biogeography of Cretaceous/Tertiary biserial planktonic foraminifera in the Southern Oceans. Antarctic Journal of the United States 28: 109.
Boltovskoy, E. , Boltovskoy, D. , Correa, N. , Brandini, F. , 1996. Planktic foraminifera from the southwestern Atlantic (30°-60°S): species-specific patterns in the upper 50 m. Marine Micropaleontology 28: 53–72
Boltovskoy, E. , Watanabe, S. , 1979. Foraminifera from 82 surface plankton samples taken during the ‘islas orcadas 5/75’ oceanographic cruise in the southwestern Atlantic and its Antarctic sector (May-June, 1975). Rev. Mus. Argent. Cienc. Nat. Bernardino Rivadavia, Inst. Nac. Invest. Cienc. Nat. (Argent.) (Hidrobiol.) 5: 229–240.
Boltovskoy, E. , Watanabe, S. , 1980. Foraminiferans from quaternary sediments between tierra del fuego and south georgia islands. Rev. Mus. Argent. Cienc. Nat. Bernardino Rivadavia Inst. Nac. Invest. Cienc. Nat. (Argent.) (Geol.) 8: 95–124.
Boltovskoy, E. , Watanabe, S. , 1981. Live planktonic foraminifera from the Antarctic sector of the Atlantic Ocean. *Rev. Mus. Argent. Cienc. Nat. Bernardino Rivadavia Inst. Nac. Invest. Cienc. Nat.* (Argent.) (Hidrobiol.) 4: 104–169.
Bowser, S.S. , Gooday, A.J. , Alexander, S.P. , Bernhard, J.M. , 1995. Larger agglutinated foraminifera of McMurdo Sound, Antarctica: Are *Astrammina rara* and *Notodendrodes antarctikos* allogromiids incognito? Marine Micropaleontology 26: 75–88.
Bowser, S.S. , DeLaca, T.E. , 1985. Rapid intracellular motility and dynamic membrane events in an Antarctic foraminifer. Cell Biology International Reports 9: 901–910.
Bowser, S.S. , Ted, E. , Delaca, Conly , L., Rieder ., 1986. Novel extracellular matrix and microtubule cables associated with pseudopodia of Astrammina rara, a carnivorous antarctic foraminifer. Journal of Ultrastructure and Molecular Structure Research 94: 149–160.
Brathauer, U. , Abelmann, A. , Gersonde, R. , Niebler, H.S. , Futterer, D.K. , 2001. Calibration of cycladophora davisiana events versus oxygen isotope stratigraphy in the subantarctic Atlantic Ocean—a stratigraphic tool for carbonate-poor quaternary sediments. Marine Geology 175: 167–181.
Brian, T.H. , Rose, P.M. , Kenneth, G.M. , 2020. Planktonic Foraminiferal Endemism at Southern High Latitudes Following the Terminal Cretaceous Extinction. Journal of Foraminiferal Research 50 (4): 382–402.
Broecker, W.S. , 1993. An oceanographic explanation for the apparent carbon isotope-cadmium discordancy in the glacial Antarctic? Paleoceanography 8: 137–139.
Caniupán, M. , Lamy, F. , Lange, C.B. , Kaiser, J. , Arz, H. , Kilian, R. , Urrea, O.B. , Aracena, C. , Hebbeln, D. , Kissel, C. , Laj, C. , Mollenhauer, G. , Tiedemann, R. , 2011. Millennial-scale sea surface temperature and Patagonian Ice Sheet changes off southernmost Chile (53 degree S) over the past?60 kyr. Paleoceanography 26(3), PA3221. doi:10.1029/2010PA002049.
Cann, J.H. , Bourman, R.P. , Barnett, E.J. , 2000. Holocene foraminifera as indicators of relative estuarine-lagoonal and oceanic influences in estuarine sediments of the river Murray, south Australia. Quaternary Research 53: 378–391.
Cann, J.H. , Clarke, J.D.A. , 1993. The significance of marginopora vertebralis (foraminifera) in surficial sediments at esperance, western Australia, and in last interglacial sediments in the northern Spencer Gulf, south Australia. Marine Geology 111: 171–187.
Chang, S.K. , Ho, I.Y. , 1995. Foraminiferal assemblages from bottom sediments at Marian Cove, South Shetland Islands, West Antarctica. Marine Micropaleontology 26: 223–232.
Channell, J.E.T. , Galeotti, S. , Martin, E.E. , Billups, K. , Scher, H.D. , Stoner, J.S. , 2003. Eocene to Miocene magnetostratigraphy, biostratigraphy, and chemostratigraphy at ODP site 1090 (sub-Antarctic South Atlantic). Bulletin of the Geological Society of America 115: 607–623.
Chapman, F. , 1916. Report on the foraminifera and ostracoda out of marine muds from soundings in the Ross Sea. British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909, Reports of Scientific Investigations. Geology 2: 53–80, 1–6.
Charles, C.D. , Fairbanks, R.G. , 1992. Evidence from Southern Ocean sediments for the effect of North Atlantic deep-water flux on climate. Nature 355: 416–419.

Chen, C. , 1996. Preliminary study on late quaternary foraminiferal assemblage and its significance in environment from the Bransfield stratid, west Antarctica. Antarct.Res./Nanji Yanjiu 83: 13–19.
Chen, M.-T. , Chang, Y.-P. , Chang, C.-C. , Wang, L.-W. , Wang, C.-H. , Yu, E.-F. , 2002. Late Quaternary sea-surface temperature variations in the southeast Atlantic: a planktic foraminifer faunal record of the past 600000 yr (IMAGES II MD962085). Marine Geology 180: 163–181.
Clarke, A. , Crame, J.A. , 1992. The Southern Ocean benthic fauna and climate change: a historical perspective. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society, London, Series B 338: 299–309.
Clarke, A. , Johnston, N.M. , 2003. Antarctic marine diversity. Oceanography and Marine Biology Annual Review 48: 47–114.
Clifford, M. A. , 1983 A descriptive study of the zonation of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current and its relation to wind stress and ice cover. Unpublished MS thesis, Texas A&M University 93 pp.
Compton, J.S. , Wigley, R. , McMillan, I.K. , 2004. Late Cenozoic phosphogenesis on the western shelf of South Africa in the vicinity of the Cape Canyon. Marine Geology 206: 19–40.
Cook, M.R. , Elderfield, H. , Zahn, R. , Pahnke, K. , 2006. High-resolution trace metal analysis of benthic foraminifera reveals nutrient excursions in Antarctic Intermediate. Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta 70: 109.
Corliss, B.H. , 1979a. Quaternary Antarctic Bottom-Water history: Deep-sea benthonic foraminiferal evidence from the southeast Indian Ocean. Quaternary Research 12: 271–289.
Corliss, B.H. , 1979b. Recent deep-sea benthonic foraminiferal distributions in the southeast Indian Ocean: Inferred bottom-water routes and ecological implications. Marine Geology 31: 115–138.
Corliss, B.H. , 1982. Linkage of North Atlantic and Southern Ocean deep-water circulation during glacial intervals. Nature 298: 458–460.
Corliss, B.H. , 1983. Distribution of Holocene deep-sea benthonic foraminifera in the southwest Indian Ocean. Deep-Sea Research Part A. Oceanographic Research Papers 30: 95–117.
Corliss, B.H. , 1983. Quaternary circulation of the Antarctic circumpolar current. Deep-Sea Research Part A. Oceanographic Research Papers 30: 47–61.
Corliss, B.H. , Thunell, R.C. , 1983. Carbonate sedimentation beneath the Antarctic Circumpolar Current during the late Quaternary. Marine Geology 51: 293–326.
Cornelius, N. , Gooday, A.J. , 2004. Live (stained) deep-sea benthic foraminiferans in the western Weddell Sea: Trends in abundance, diversity and taxonomic composition along a depth transect. *Deep-Sea Research* II 51: 1571–1602.
Cortese, G. , Abelmann, A. , 2002. Radiolarian-based paleotemperatures during the last 160 kyr at ODP site 1089 (Southern Ocean, Atlantic sector). Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 182: 259–286.
Cortese, G. , Abelmann, Andrea , Gersonde, Rainer , 2004. A glacial warm-water anomaly in the subantarctic Atlantic Ocean, near the Agulhas Retroflection. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 222: 767–778.
Cromer, L. , Gibson, J.A.E. , Kerrie, M. , Swadling, David , Ritz, A. , 2005. Faunal microfossils: Indicators of Holocene ecological change in a saline Antarctic lake. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 221: 83–97.
Cromer, L. , Gibson, J.A.E. , Swadling, K.M. , Hodgson, D.A. , 2006. Evidence for a faunal refuge in the Larsemann Hills, East Antarctica, during the Last Glacial Maximum. Journal of Biogeography 33(7): 1314–1323.
Curry, W.B. , Lohmann, G.P. , 1982. Carbon isotopic changes in benthic foraminifera from the western South Atlantic: Reconstruction of glacial abyssal circulation patterns. Quaternary Research 18: 218–235.
David, C.L. , Zanna, C. , Karen, E.K. , Earle, A.W. , 2021. Tracking Southern Ocean Sea Ice Extent With Winter Water: A New Method Based on the Oxygen Isotopic Signature of Foraminifera. Paleoceanography and Paleoclimatology 36(6). http://dx.doi.org/10.1029/2020PA004095
Deacon, G.E.R. , 1933. A general account of the hydrology of the Southern Atlantic Ocean. Discovery Reports 7: 71–238
Deacon, G.E.R. , 1937. The hydrology of the Southern Ocean. Discovery Reports 15: 1–24.

Deacon, G.E.R. , 1982. Physical and biological zonation in the Southern Ocean, Deep-Sea Research 29: 1–15
DeLaca, T.E. , Karl, D.M. , Lipps, J.H. , 1981. Direct use of dissolved organic carbon by agglutinated benthic foraminifera. Nature 289: 287–289.
D'Hondt, S. , Arthur, M.A. , 2002. Deep water in the late maastrichtian ocean. Paleoceanography 17: 8-1-8-11.
Diekmann, B. , Faelker, M. , Kuhn, G. (2003). Environmental history of the south-eastern south Atlantic since the middle miocene: Evidence from the sedimentological records of ODP sites 1088 and 1092. Sedimentology 50: 511–529.
Diekmann, B. , Kuhn, G. , 2002. Sedimentary record of the mid-Pleistocene climate transition in the southeastern South Atlantic (ODP Site 1090). Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 182: 241–258.
Diester-Haass, L. , 1995. Middle Eocene to early Oligocene paleoceanography of the Antarctic Ocean (Maud Rise, ODP Leg 113, Site 689): change from a low to a high productivity ocean. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 113: 311–334.
Diester-Haass, L. , 1996. Late Eocene-Oligocene paleoceanography in the southern Indian Ocean (ODP Site 744). Marine Geology 130: 99–119.
Diz, P. , Hall, I.R. , Zahn, R. , Molyneux, E.G. , 2008. Paleoceanography of the southern Agulhas Plateau during the last 150 ka: Inferences from benthic foraminiferal assemblages and multispecies epifaunal carbon isotopes. Paleoceanography 22(4):
Domack, E.W. , 1988. Biogenic facies in the Antarctic glacimarine environment: Basis for a polar glacimarine summary. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 63: 357–372.
Domack, E.W. , Duran, D. , Leventer, A. , Ishman, S. , Doane, S. , McCallum, S. , Amblas, D. , Ring, J. , Gilbert, R. , Prentice, M. , 2005. Stability of the Larsen B ice shelf on the Antarctic Peninsula during the Holocene epoch. Nature 436: 681–685.
Domack, E.W. , Jull, A.J.T. , Anderson, J.B. , Linick, T.W. , Williams, C.R. , 1989. Application of tandem accelerator mass-spectrometer dating to late Pleistocene-Holocene sediments of the East Antarctic continental shelf. Quaternary Research 31: 277–287.
Domack, E.W. , Taviani, M. , Rodriguez, A. , 1999. Recent sediment remolding on a deep shelf, Ross Sea: implications for radiocarbon dating of Antarctic marine sediments. Quaternary Science Reviews 18: 1445–1451.
Duplessy, J.C. , Labeyrie, L. , Waelbroeck, C. , 2002. Constraints on the ocean oxygen isotopic enrichment between the last glacial maximum and the Holocene: Paleoceanographic implications. Quaternary Science Reviews 21: 315–330.
Echols, R.J. , 1971. Distribution off foraminifera in the sediments of the Scotia Sea area, Antarctic waters. Antarctic Research Series, American Geophysical Union 15: 93–168.
Ehrmann, W. , 1994. Cenozoic glacial history of Antarctica. Reports on polar research. Bremen University, Bremen, 137, 152 pp.
Elderfield, H. , Greaves, M. , Barker, S. , Hall, I.R. , Tripati, A. , Ferretti, P. , Crowhurst, S. , Booth, L. , Daunt, C. , 2010. A record of bottom water temperature and seawater δ (18)O for the Southern Ocean over the past 440 kyr based on Mg/Ca of benthic foraminiferal Uvigerina spp. Quaternary Science Reviews 29(1–2): 160–169.
Elderfield, H. , Rickaby, R.E.M. , 2000. Oceanic Cd/P ratio and nutrient utilization in the glacial Southern Ocean. Nature 405: 305–310.
Fillon, R.H. , 1972. Evidence from the Ross Sea for widespread submarine erosion. Nature (Phys. Sci.) 238: 40–42.
Finger, K.L. , 1975. Benthic foraminifera from Deception Island. Antarctartica Journal of United States of America 10: 134.
Flower, B.P. , Kennett, J.P. , 1994. The middle Miocene climatic transition: East Antarctic ice sheet development, deep ocean circulation and global carbon cycling. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 108: 537–555.
Franck, L. , Philippe, E. , Jan, P. , 2014. Patchiness of deep-sea benthic Foraminifera across the Southern Ocean: Insights from high-throughput DNA sequencing. Deep-Sea Research (Part II, Topical Studies in Oceanography), 108: 17–26.
Friederike, E. , Philipp, A. , Patrick, M. Isabelle, S. , Sina, W. , Eva-Maria, N. , 2014. Particle flux characterisation and sedimentation patterns of protistan plankton during the iron fertilisation experiment LOHAFEX in the Southern Ocean. Deep-Sea Research (Part I, Oceanographic Research Papers), 89: 94–103.

Friedrich, O. , Meier, K.J.S. , 2006. Suitability of stable oxygen and carbon isotopes of calcareous dinoflagellate cysts for paleoclimatic studies: Evidence from the Campanian/Maastrichtian cooling phase. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 239: 456–469.
Galeotti, S. , Coccioni, R. , Gersonde, R. , 2002. Middle Eocene-early Pliocene subantarctic planktic foraminiferal biostratigraphy of site 1090, Agulhas ridge. Marine Micropaleontology 45: 357–381.
Gallagher, S.J. , Smith, A.J. , Jonasson, K. , Wallace, M.W. , Holdgate, G.R. , Daniels, J. , 2001. The Miocene palaeoenvironmental and palaeoceanographic evolution of the Gippsland Basin, southeast Australia: A record of Southern Ocean change. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 172: 53–80.
Gallagher, S.J. , Greenwood, D.R. , Taylor, D. , Smith, A.J. , Wallace, M.W. , Holdgate, G.R. , 2003. The Pliocene climatic and environmental evolution of southeastern Australia: evidence from the marine and terrestrial realm. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 193: 349–382.
Gallagher, S.J. , Taylor, D. , Apthorpe, M. , Stilwell, J.D. , Boreham, C.J. , Holdgate, G.R. , Wallace, M.W. , Quilty, P.G. , 2005. Late Cretaceous dysoxia in a southern high latitude siliciclastic succession, the Otway Basin, southeastern Australia. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 223: 317–348.
Gallardo, V.A. , Castillo, J.G. , 1968. Mass mortality in the benthic infauna of Port Foster resulting from the eruptions in Deception Island, South Shetland Islands. 16: 1–13.
Garrison, D.L. , Kurt, R. , Buck, Marcia, M. , 1991. Gowing. Plankton assemblages in the Ice edge zone of the Weddell Sea during the austral winter. Journal of Marine Systems 2: 123–130.
Gersonde, R. , Spie, V. , Flores, J.A. , Hagen, R.A. , Kuhn, G. , 1998. The sediments of Gunnerus Ridge and Kainan Maru Seamount (Indian sector of Southern Ocean). Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 45: 1515–1540.
Gersonde, R. , Wefer, G. , 1987. Sedimentation of biogenic siliceous particles in Antarctic waters from the Atlantic sector. Marine Micropaleontology 11: 311–332.
Gilbert, I.M. , Pudsey, C.J. , Murray, J.W. , 1998. A sediment record of cyclic bottom-current variability from the northwest Weddell Sea. Sedimentary Geology 115: 185–214.
Gooday, A.J. , Bowser, S.S. , Bernhard, J.M. , 1994. The foraminifera of Explorers Cove, Antarctica: a deep-sea assemblage in shallow water. Antarctic Journal of the United States 29: 149–151.
Gooday, A.J. , Bowser, S.S. , Bernhard, J.M. , 1996. Benthic foraminiferal assemblages in Explorers Cove, Antarctica: A shallow-water site with deep-sea characteristics. Progress in Oceanography 37: 117–166.
Gooday, A.J. , Holzmann, M. , Guiard, J. , Pawlowski, J. , 2004. A new monothalamous foraminiferan from 1000–6300 m water depth in the Weddell Sea: morphological and molecular characterisation. *Deep-Sea Research* II 51: 1603–1616.
Gooday, A.J. , Pawlowski, J. , 2004. *Conqueria laevis* gen. and sp. nov., a new soft-walled, monothalamous foraminiferan from the deep Weddell Sea. Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom 84: 919–924.
Gooday, A.J. , Rathburn, A.E. , 1999. Temporal variability in living deep-sea benthic foraminifera: a review. Earth-Science Reviews 46: 187–212.
Gore, D.B. , Colhoun, E.A. , Bell, K. , 1994. Derived constituents in the glacial sediments of the Vestfold Hills, East Antarctica. Quaternary Science Reviews 13: 301–307.
Gostin, V.A. , Belperio, A.P. , Cann, J.H. , 1988. The Holocene non-tropical coastal and shelf carbonate province of southern Australia. Sedimentary Geology 60: 51–70.
Gowing, M.M. , Garrison, D.L. , 1991. Austral winter distributions of large tintinnid and large sarcodinid protozooplankton in the ice-edge zone of the Weddell/Scotia seas. Journal of Marine Systems 2: 131–141.
Gray, S.C. , Sturz, A. , Bruns, M.D. , Marzan, R.L. , Dougherty, D. , Law, H.B. , 2003. Composition and distribution of sediments and benthic foraminifera in a submerged caldera after 30 years of volcanic quiescence. Deep-Sea Research II, Topical Studies in Oceanography 50: 1727–1751.
Guptha, M.V.S. , 1983. Benthic foraminifera from the continental margin off Queen Maud Land, Antarctica. Department of Ocean Development, New Delhi (India).

Harloff, J. , Mackensen, A. , 1997. Recent benthic foraminiferal associations and ecology of the Scotia Sea and Argentine Basin. Marine Micropaleontology 31: 1–29.

Harwood, D.M. , Scherer, R.P. , Webb, P.N. , 1989. Multiple Miocene marine productivity events in West Antarctica as recorded in upper Miocene sediments beneath the Ross Ice Shelf (Site J-9). Marine Micropaleontology 15: 91–115.

Hayward, B.W. , Neil, H. , Carter, R. , Grenfell, H.R. , Hayward, J.J. , 2002. Factors influencing the distribution patterns of Recent deep-sea benthic foraminifera, east of New Zealand, Southwest Pacific Ocean. Marine Micropaleontology 46: 139–176.

Hayward, B.W. , Grenfell, H.R. , Carter, R. , Hayward, J.J. , 2004a. Benthic foraminiferal proxy evidence for the Neogene palaeoceanographic history of the Southwest Pacific, east of New Zealand. Marine Geology 205: 147–184.

Hayward, B.W. , Grenfell, H.R. , Sabaa, A.T. , Neil, H.L. , 2007. Factors influencing the distribution of sub-Antarctic deep-sea benthic foraminifera, Campbell and Bounty Plateaux, New Zealand. Marine Micropaleontology, 62(3): 141–166.

Hayward, B.W. , Scott, G.H. , Grenfell, H.R. , Carter, R. , Lipps, J.H. 2004b. Techniques for estimation of tidal elevation and confinement (~salinity) histories of sheltered harbours and estuaries using benthic foraminifera: examples from New Zealand. The Holocene 14(2): 218–232.

Healy-Williams, N. 1992. Stable isotope differences among morphotypes of Neogloboquadrina pachyderma (Ehrenberg): Implications for high-latitude palaeoceanographic studies. Terra Nova, 4(6): 693–700.

Healy-Williams, N. , Williams, D.F. , 1981. Fourier analysis of test shape of planktonic foraminifera. Nature 289: 485–487.

Hebbeln, D. , Marchant, M. , Freudenthal, T. , Wefer, G. , 2000. Surface sediment distribution along the Chilean continental slope related to upwelling and productivity. Marine Geology 164: 119–137.

Hebbeln, D. , Marchant, M. , Wefer, G. , 2002. Paleoproductivity in the southern Peru-Chile Current through the last 33 000 yr. Marine Geology 186: 487–504.

Herb, R. , 1971. Distribution of recent benthonic foraminifera in the Drake Passage. In: Llano, G.A. , Wallen, I.E. (Eds.), Biology of the Antarctic Seas IV. American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC, pp. 251–300.

Heron-Allen, E. , Earland, A. , 1932. Foraminifera Part I. The ice-free area of the Falkland Islands and adjacent seas. Discovery Reports 4: 291–460.

Hillenbrand, C.D. , Baesler, A. , Grobe, H. , 2005. The sedimentary record of the last glaciation in the western Bellingshausen Sea (West Antarctica): Implications for the interpretation of diamictons in a polar-marine setting. Marine Geology 216: 191–204.

Hillenbrand, C.D. , Grobe, H. , Diekmann, B. , Kuhn, G. , Futterer, D.K. , 2003. Distribution of clay minerals and proxies for productivity in surface sediments of the Bellingshausen and Amundsen seas (West Antarctica)—Relation to modern environmental conditions. Marine Geology 193: 253–271.

Hodell, D.A. , Charles, C.D. , Ninnemann, U.S. , 2000. Comparison of interglacial stages in the south Atlantic sector of the Southern Ocean for the past 450 kyr: Implications for marine isotope stage (MIS) 11. Global and Planetary Change 24: 7–26.

Hodell, D.A. , Warnke, D.A. , 1991. Climatic evolution of the Southern Ocean during the Pliocene epoch from 4.8 to 2.6 million years ago. Quaternary Science Reviews 10: 205–214.

Hofmann, E.E. , 1985. The large-scale horizontal structure of the Antarctic circumpolar current from FGGE drifters. Journal of Geophysical Research 90: 7087–7097.

Holbourn, A. , Kuhnt, Wolfgang , Simo, J.A. (Toni) , Qianyu, Li ., 2004, Middle Miocene isotope stratigraphy and paleoceanographic evolution of the northwest and southwest Australian margins (Wombat Plateau and Great Australian Bight). Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 208: 1–22.

Hovan, S.A. , Rea, D.K. , 1992. Paleocene/Eocene boundary changes in atmospheric and oceanic circulation: A southern hemisphere record. Geology 20: 15–18.

Howard, W.R. , Prell, W.L. , 1984. A comparison of radiolarian and foraminiferal paleoecology in the Southern Indian Ocean: New evidence for the interhemispheric timing of climatic change. Quaternary Research 21: 244–263.

Howe, J.A. , Harland, Rex , Pudsey, C.J. , 2002. Dinoflagellate cyst evidence for Quaternary palaeoceanographic change in the northern Scotia Sea, South Atlantic Ocean. Marine Geology

191: 55–69.
Huber, B.T. , 1992a. Paleobiogeography of Campanian-Maastrichtian foraminifera in the southern high latitudes. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 92: 3–4.
Huber, B.T. , 1992b. Upper cretaceous planktic foraminiferal biozonation for the austral realm. Marine Micropaleontology 20: 107–128.
Huber, B.T. , Leckie, R.M. , 2011. Planktic foraminiferal species turnover across deep-sea Aptian/Albian boundary sections. Journal of Foraminiferal Research 41(1): 53–95.
Huddestun, P. , 1971. Pleistocene paleoclimates are based on radiolaria from subantarctic deep-sea cores. Deep Sea Research and Oceanographic Abstracts 1811: 1141–1143.
Hunt, B.P.V. , Hosie, G.W. , 2005. Zonal structure of zooplankton communities in the Southern Ocean south of Australia: Results from a 2150 km continuous plankton recorder transect. Deep-Sea Research I, Oceanographic Research Papers 52: 1241–1271.
Hunt, B.P.V. , Hosie, G.W. , 2006a. The seasonal succession of zooplankton in the Southern Ocean south of Australia, part I: The seasonal ice zone. Deep-Sea Research I 53: 1182–1202.
Hunt, B.P.V. , Hosie, G.W. , 2006b. The seasonal succession of zooplankton in the Southern Ocean south of Australia, part II: The Sub-Antarctic to Polar Frontal Zones. Deep-Sea Research I 53: 1203–1223.
Igarashi, A. , Numanami, H. , Tsuchiya, Y. , Fukuchi, M. , 2001. Bathymetric distribution of fossil foraminifera within marine sediment cores from the eastern part of lutzow-holm bay, east Antarctica, and its paleoceanographic implications. Marine Micropaleontology 42: 125–162.
Ishman, S.E. , Domack, E.W. , 1994. Oceanographic controls on benthic foraminifers from the Bellingshausen margin of the Antarctic Peninsula. Marine Micropaleontology 24: 119–155.
Jacob, N.W.H. , Alexander, M. P. , Delia, W.O. , Kuo-Fang, H. , Stefan, M. , Cristiano, M.C. , Jurek, B. , 2016. Antarctic intermediate water circulation in the South Atlantic over the past 25,000years. Paleoceanography 31(10): 1302–1314.
Jan, P. , Delia, F. , da Ana Aranda, S. , Jackie, G. , 2011. Novel lineages of Southern Ocean deep-sea foraminifera revealed by environmental DNA sequencing. *Deep-Sea Research* (Part II, Topical Studies in Oceanography), 58(19–20): 1996–2003.
Jennings, A.E. , Xiao, J. , Licht, K.J. , Andrews, J.T. , 1995. Benthic foraminiferal assemblages from the western Ross Sea: Approximately 30,000 years ago to present. Antarctic Journal of the United States 30: 26–28.
Jones, R.W. , Pudsey, C.A. , 1994. Recent benthonic foraminifera from the Western Antarctic Ocean. Journal of Micropaleontology 13: 17–23.
Joseph, A.S. , Tao, L. , Peter, T.S. , Andrea, B. , Tianyu, C. , Jenny, R. , James, W.B.R. , Victoria, P. , Sev, K. , Qian, L. , Laura, F.R. , 2021. Productivity and Dissolved Oxygen Controls on the Southern Ocean DeepSea Benthos During the Antarctic Cold Reversal. Paleoceanography and Paleoclimatology 36(10), [e2021PA004288]. https://doi.org/10.1029/2021PA004288
Julie, M. , Salome, F. , Philippe, K. , Claire, L. , Cedric, C. , Graham, W.H. , Sophie, S. , Helene, H. , 2016. Planktonic foraminiferal biogeography in the Indian sector of the Southern Ocean: Contribution from CPR data. Deep-Sea Research, (Part I), 110: 75–89.
Kanfoush, S.L. , Hodell, D.A. , Charles, C.D. , Janecek, T.R. , Rack, F.R. , 2002. Comparison of ice-rafted debris and physical properties in ODP Site 1094 (South Atlantic) with the Vostok ice core over the last four climatic cycles. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 182: 329–349.
Keany, J. , Kennett, J.P. , 1972. Pliocene-early Pleistocene paleoclimatic history recorded in Antarctic-Subantarctic deep-sea cores. Deep-Sea Research and Oceanographic Abstracts 19: 529–538.
Keller, G. , 1993. The Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary transition in the Antarctic Ocean and its global implications. Marine Micropaleontology 21: 1–45.
Kennett, J.P. , 1978. The development of planktonic biogeography in the Southern Ocean during the Cenozoic. Marine Micropaleontology 3: 301–345.
Kennett, J.P. , 1980. Paleoceanographic and biogeographic evolution of the Southern Ocean during the Cenozoic, and Cenozoic microfossil datums. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 31: 123–152.
Khare, N. , Chaturvedi, S.K. , 2007. Latitudinal variations in the abundance of planktonic foraminifera along Indian Sector of the Southern Ocean. Journal Palaeontological Society of India 52(1): 45–49.

Khare, N. , Chaturvedi, S.K. , 2012 Signatures of different water masses in δ 18O of G. bulloides and total planktonic foraminiferal assemblage across the Indian Ocean Sector of the Southern Ocean: Initial Results. Oceanology 52(3): 372–379.

Khare, N. , Chaturvedi, S.K. , 2012. Tracing the signature of various frontal systems in stable isotope (oxygen and carbon) of planktic foraminiferal species Globigerina bulloides in the Southern Ocean (Indian Sector). Oceanologia 54(2): 311–323.

Khare, N. , Chaturvedi, S.K. , 2006a. Size variations of planktonic foraminiferal population in Indian Ocean sector of Southern Ocean. Indian Journal of Marine Sciences 35: 221–226.

Khare, N. , Chaturvedi, S.K. , 2006b. Mechanical stress of planktonic foraminiferal assembleages in Indian Ocean sector of Southern Ocean. Indian Journal of Earth Sciences 33(1–4): 15–24.

Khare, N. , Chaturvedi, S.K. , Saraswat, R. , 2009a. Oxygen Isotope Records of Globigerina Bulloides Across a North-south Transect in the Southwestern Indian Ocean. Ocean Science Journal 44(2): 117–123.

Khare, N. , Mazumder, A. , Govil, P. , 2010. Abundance and coiling direction in planktic species Neogloboquadrina pachyderma (Ehrenberg) as indicators of hydrological conditions: evidence from N—S transect of Indian Ocean, Current Science 98(8): 1108–1112

Khare, N. , Mazumder, A. , Govil, P. , 2012. Do changes in planktonic foraminifera correspond to dimorphic reproduction? *Oceanologi*a 52(3): 1–8.

Khare, N. , Mazumder, A. , Pawan, G. , Singh, V.P. , 2009c. Environmental implication on chamber accretion of Neogloboquadrina Pachyderma (Ehrenberg) in South Indian Ocean. Geological Society of India 73: 379–385.

Khare, N. , Pawan, G. , Mazumder, A. , 2009b. Latitudinal trends in morphological characteristics of Neogloboquadrina pachyderma (Ehrenberg) along a north-south transect in the south-western Indian Ocean. Geo-Marine Letters 29: 61–69.

Khare, N. , Saraswat, R. , Chaturvedi, S.K. , 2007. On the intriguing relationship between seawater salinity and δ18O of Globigerina bulloides at higher latitudes. Journal Indian Geophysical Union 11(2): 73–78.

Khare, N. , Saraswat, R. , Chaturvedi, S.K. , 2008. Assessing the applicability of δ18O Globigerina bulloides to estimate paleotemperature from the southwestern Indian Ocean. Current Science 94: 255–258.

Kim, J. H. Crosta, X. , Michel, E. , Schouten, S. , Duprat, J. , Damste, J. S. S. , 2009. Impact of lateral transport on organic proxies in the Southern Ocean. Quaternary Research 71(2): 246–250.

Klaas, C. , 2001. Spring distribution of larger (>64 μm) protozoans in the Atlantic sector of the Southern Ocean. Deep-Sea Research I 48: 1627–1649.

Krasheninnikov, V.A. , Basov, I.A. , 1986. Late Mesozoic and Cenozoic stratigraphy and geological history of the South Atlantic high latitudes. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 55: 145–188.

Kucera, M. , Malmgren, B.A. , Sturesson, U. , 1997. Foraminiferal dissolution at shallow depths of the Walvis Ridge and Rio Grande Rise during the latest Cretaceous: Inferences for deep-water circulation in the South Atlantic. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 129(3–4): 195–212.

Kurihara, K. , Kennett, J.P. , 1992. Paleoceanographic significance of Neogene benthic foraminiferal changes in a southwest Pacific bathyal depth transect. Marine Micropaleontology 19: 181–189.

Labeyrie, L.D. , Pichon, J.J. , Labracherie, M. , Ippolito, P. , Duprat, J. , Duplessy, J.C. , 1986. Melting history of Antarctica during the past 60,000 years. Nature 322: 701–706.

Labeyrie, L. , Duplessy, J. , Grojean, M. , 1984a. The Antarctic ocean at the last glacial maximum: Analysis of 18O/16O in fossil diatoms and foraminifera. Reunion des Sciences de la Terre. Institut Geologie Bassin Aquitaine, Talence (France), and S.G.F., Paris.

Labeyrie, L. , Juillet, A. , Duplessy, J. , 1984b. Oxygen isotopic stratigraphy: Fossil diatoms vs foraminifera. In: Mann D. G. (Ed.), Proceedings of the seventh international diatom symposium. Koenigstein: Otto Koeltz, pp. 477–491.

Leckie, R.M. , Webb, P.N. , 1983. Late oligocene-early Miocene glacial record of the Ross Sea, Antarctica: Evidence from DSDP site 270. Geology 11: 578–582.

Lena, H. , 1980. Benthonic foraminifera from the north-west sector of the Antarctic peninsula. Physis. Secciones A, B, C 39: 9–20.

Lena, H. , 1981. Benthonic foraminifera collected by the R/V hero near Adelaide, Anvers, Brabant Islands, 1972–73. Antarctic Journal of the United States 15: 135–136.
Lena, H. , 1981. Preliminary studies of planktonic foraminifera in surface sediments from the South Atlantic Ocean. Antarctic Journal of the United States 15: 101–102.
Li, B. , Yoon, H.I. , Park, B.K. , 2000. Foraminiferal assemblages and CaCO3 dissolution since the last deglaciation in the Maxwell Bay, King George Island, Antarctica. Marine Geology 169: 239–257.
Li, W. , Chen, Y. , 1987. Preliminary study on the surface sediment foraminifera from the western sea area of Antarctic Peninsula. Marine geology and Quaternary geology/Haiyang Dizhi Yu Disiji Dizhi. Qingdao 7: 67–80.
Licht, K. , 2000. Investigations into the late quaternary history of the Ross Sea, Antarctica. Ph.D. Thesis, University of Colorado, Boulder, 216 pp. Referenced in Dissertation Abstracts International Part B: Science and Engineering [Diss. Abst. Int. Pt. B—Sci. and Eng.]. 60: 3162.
Lindenberg, H.G. , Auras, A. , 1984. Distribution of arenaceous foraminifera in-depth profiles of the Southern Ocean (Kerguelen Plateau area). Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 48: 61–106.
Loutit, T.S. , 1981. Late Miocene palaeoclimatology: Subantarctic water mass, Southwest Pacific. Marine Micropaleontology 6: 1–27.
Loutit, T.S. , Kennett, J.P. , Savin, S.M. , 1983. Miocene equatorial and southwest Pacific paleoceanography from stable isotope evidence. Marine Micropaleontology 8: 215–233.
Lovell, L.L. , Trego, K.D. , 2003. The epibenthic megafaunal and benthic infaunal invertebrates of port foster, Deception Island (South Shetland Islands, Antarctica). *Deep-Sea Research* (Part II, Topical Studies in Oceanography) 50: 1799–1819.
Lower, C. , Cann, J. , Haynes, D. , 2013. Microfossil evidence for salinity events in the Holocene Coorong Lagoon, South Australia. Australian Journal of Earth Sciences 60(5): 573–587.
Lu, G. , Keller, G. , 1993. The palaeocene-eocene transition in the Antarctic Indian Ocean: Inference from planktic foraminifera. Marine Micropaleontology 21: 101–142.
Lucchi, R. , Rebesco, G. , Camerlenghi, M. , Busetti, A. , Tomadin, M.L. , Villa, G. , 2002. Mid-late Pleistocene glacimarine sedimentary processes of a high-latitude, deep-sea sediment drift (Antarctic Peninsula Pacific margin). Marine Geology 189: 343–370.
Luz, B. , 1977. Late Pleistocene paleoclimates of the South Pacific based on statistical analysis of planktonic foraminifers. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 22: 61–78.
Mackensen, A. , Douglas, R.G. , 1989. Down-core distribution of live and dead deep-water benthic foraminifera in box cores from the Weddell Sea and the California continental borderland. Deep-Sea Research Part A. Oceanographic Research Papers 36: 879–900.
Mackensen, A. , Ehrmann, W.U. , 1992. Middle Eocene through early Oligocene climate history and paleoceanography in the Southern Ocean: Stable oxygen and carbon isotopes from ODP sites on Maud Rise and Kerguelen Plateau. Marine Geology 108: 1–27.
Mackensen, A. , Fu¨tterer, D.K. , Grobe, H. , Schmiedl, G. , 1993. Benthic foraminiferal assemblages from the eastern South Atlantic Polar Front region between 35° and 57°S: Distribution, ecology and fossilization potential. Marine Micropaleontology 22: 33–69.
Mackensen, A. , Grobe, H. , Hubberten, H.W. , Spiess, V. , Fütterer, D.K. , 1989. Stable isotope stratigraphy from the Antarctic continental margin during the last one million years. Marine Geology 87: 315–321.
Mackensen, A. , Grobe, H. , Kuhn, G. , Futterer, D.K. , 1990. Benthic foraminiferal assemblages from the eastern Weddell Sea between 68 and 73°S: Distribution, ecology and fossilization potential. Marine Micropaleontology 16: 241–283.
Mackensen, A. , Rudolph, M. , Kuhn, G. , 2001. Late Pleistocene deep-water circulation in the subantarctic eastern Atlantic. Global and Planetary Change 30: 197–229.
Mackensen, A. , Schmiedl, G. , Harloff, J. , Giese, M. , 1995. Deep-sea foraminifera in the South Atlantic Ocean: Ecology and assemblage generation. Micropaleontology 41: 342–358.
MacLeod, N. , 1993. The Maastrichtian-Danian radiation of triserial and biserial planktic foraminifera: Testing phylogenetic and adaptational hypotheses in the (micro)fossil record. Marine Micropaleontology 21: 47–100.
Majewski, W. , 2002. Mid-Miocene invasion of ecological niches by planktonic foraminifera of the Kerguelen Plateau, Antarctica. Marine Micropaleontology 46: 59–81.
Majewski, W. , 2003. Water−depth distribution of Miocene planktonic foraminifera from ODP Site 744, Southern Indian Ocean. Journal of Foraminiferal Research 33: 144–154.

Malmgren, B.A. , 1983. Ranking of dissolution susceptibility of planktonic foraminifera at high latitudes of the South Atlantic Ocean. Marine Micropaleontology 8: 183–191.

Malmgren, B.A. , Kennett, J.P. , 1973. Recent planktonic foraminiferal distribution in high latitudes of the South Pacific: A multivariate statistical study. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 14: 127–136.

Malmgren, B.A. , Kennett, J.P. , 1978. Test size variation in globigerina bulloides in response to quaternary palaeoceanographic changes. Nature 275: 123–124.

Marchant, M. , Guzman-Alvis, A. , 2002. Bibliographic index on aquatic biodiversity of chile: Recent planktonic foraminifera. *Ciencia y Tecnologia del Mar* (Valparaiso) 25: 163–165.

Margolis, S.V. , Kroopnick, P.M. , Goodney, D.E. , 1977. Cenozoic and late Mesozoic paleoceanographic and paleoglacial history recorded in circum-Antarctic deep-sea sediments. Marine Geology 25: 131–146.

Maria, G. , Fanny, M.M. , Jamie, W. , Andy, R. , Daniela, N.S. , 2022. Exploring the impact of climate change on the global distribution of nonspinose planktonic foraminifera using a trait based ecosystem model. Global Change Biology 28(3): 1063–1076.

Marsh, K.V. , Buddemeier, R.W. , 1984. Marine plankton as an indicator of low-level radionuclide contamination in the Southern Ocean. Lawrence Livermore National Lab., CA (USA), NTIS Order No.: DE84016306/GAR; Contract W-7405-ENG-48.

Martınez, J.I. , Deckker De, P.T. , Barrows, T. , 1999. Palaeoceanography of the last glacial maximum in the eastern Indian Ocean: planktonic foraminiferal evidence. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 147: 73–99.

Matsumoto, K. , Lynch-Stieglitz, J. , Anderson, R.F. , 2001. Similar glacial and Holocene Southern Ocean hydrography. Paleoceanography 16: 1–10.

Mazaud, A. , Sicre, M.A. , Ezat, U. , Pichon, J.J. , Duprat, J. , Laj, C. , Kissel, C. , Beaufort, L. , Michel, E. , Turon, J.L. , 2002. Geomagnetic-assisted stratigraphy and sea surface temperature changes in core MD94–103 (Southern Indian Ocean): possible implications for North-South climatic relationships around H4. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 201: 159–170.

Mazumder, A. , Khare, N. , Govil, P. , 2009. Cosmopolitanism of the planktic foraminiferal species Globigerinita glutinata—A testimony by Q-mode cluster analysis. International Journal of Geology 3(1): 1–7.

Mazumder, A. , Khare, N. , Govil, P. 2014. The Interdependency of the Morphological Variations of the Planktonic Foraminiferal Species Globigerina bulloides in Surface Sediments on the Environmental Parameters of the Southwestern Indian Ocean. International Scholarly Research Notices, Article ID 621479, 9 pages. http://dx.doi.org/10.1155/2014/621479

Mazumder, A. , Khare, N. , Govil, P. , 2016. Statistical Approach to Correlate the Morphological Variations in Foraminifera Neogloboquadrina Pachyderma with the Hydrological Parameters in Surface Sediments along NS Transect in SW Indian Ocean. International Journal of Earth Sciences and Engineering 09(03): 966–972.

McGowran, B. , Li, Q. , Cann, J. , Padley, D. , McKirdy, D.M. , Shafik, S. , 1997. Biogeographic impact of the Leeuwin current in southern Australia since the late middle Eocene. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 136: 19–40.

McKnight, W.M.J. , 1962. The distribution of foraminifera off parts of the Antarctic coast. Bulletin of American Paleontology 44: 65–158.

Mead, G.A. , 1985. Recent benthic foraminifera in the polar front region of the southwest Atlantic. Micropaleontology 31: 221–248.

Mead, G.A. , Hodell, D.A. , 1995. Controls on the 87Sr/86Sr composition of seawater from the middle Eocene to Oligocene: Hole 689B, Maud Rise, Antarctica. Paleoceanography 10: 327–346.

Mead, G.A. , Kennett, J.P. , 1987. The distribution of recent benthic foraminifera in the polar front region, southwest Atlantic. Marine Micropaleontology 11: 343–361.

Meir, A. , Jonathan, E. , 2017. The onset of modern-like Atlantic meridional overturning circulation at the Eocene-Oligocene transition: Evidence, causes, and possible implications for global cooling. Geochemistry, Geophysics, Geosystems 18(6): 2177–2199.

Melguen, M. , Debrabant, P. , Chamley, H. , Maillot, H. , Hoffert, M. , Courtois, C. , 1978. Influence of deep currents on sedimentary features of the Vema channel (south Atlantic Ocean) at the end of the Cenozoic era. Bulletin de la Société Géologique de France 20: 121–136.

Melguen, M. , Thiede, J. , 1974. Facies distribution and dissolution depths of surface sediment components from the Vema channel and the Rio Grande rise (Southwest Atlantic Ocean).

Marine Geology 17: 341–353.
Melis, R. , Colizza, E. , Pizzolato, F. , Rosso, A. , 2002. Preliminary study of the calcareous taphocoenoses in Late Quaternary glacial marine sequences of the Ross Sea (Antarctica). Geobios, Mémoire Special 24.
Melles, M. , Kuhn, G. , Fuetterer, D.K. , Meischner, D. , 1994. Processes of modern sedimentation in the southern Weddell sea, Antarctica: evidence from surface sediments. Polarforschung, Bremerhaven 64: 45–74.
Milam, R.W. , Anderson, J.B. , 1981. Distribution and ecology of recent benthonic foraminifera of the Adelie-George V continental shelf and slope, Antarctica. Marine Micropaleontology 6: 297–325.
Mohan, R. , Shetye, S.S. , Tiwari, M. , Anilkumar, N. , 2015. Secondary calcification of planktic foraminifera from the Indian sector of Southern Ocean. Acta Geologica Sinica 89 (1): 27–37.
Morigi, C. , Capotondi, L. , Giglio, F. , Langone, L. , Brilli, M. , Turi, B. , Ravaioli, M. , 2003. A possible record of the Younger Dryas event in deep-sea sediments of the Southern Ocean (Pacific sector). Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 198: 265–278.
Moy, A.D. , Howard, W.R. , Bray, S.G. , Trull, T.W. , 2009. Reduced calcification in modern Southern Ocean planktonic foraminifera. Nature Geoscience 2(4): 276–280.
Murphy, L. , Warnke, D.A. , Andersson, C. , Channell, J. , Stoner, J. , 2002. History of ice rafting at south Atlantic ODP site 177–1092 during the Gauss and late Gilbert chrons. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 182: 183–196.
Murray, J.W. , Pudsey, C.J. , 2004. Living (stained) and dead foraminifera from the newly ice-free Larsen Ice Shelf, Weddell Sea, Antarctica: Ecology and taphonomy. Marine Micropaleontology 53: 67–81.
Naik, D.K. , Saraswat, R. , Khare, N. , Pandey, A.C. , Nigam, R. , 2014. Hydrographic changes in the Agulhas Recirculation Region during the late Quaternary. Climate of the Past 10 (2): 745.
Nancy, H.W. , 1983. Fourier shape analysis of globorotalia truncatulinoides from late quaternary sediments in the southern Indian Ocean. Marine Micropaleontology 8: 1–15.
Nelson, C.S. , Hendy, I.L. , Neil, H.L. , Hendy, C.H. , Weaver, P.P.E. , 2000. Last glacial jetting of cold waters through the Subtropical Convergence Zone in the Southwest Pacific off eastern New Zealand, and some geological implications. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 156: 103–121.
Niebler, H. , 1995. Reconstruction of paleo-environmental parameters using stable isotopes and faunal assemblages of planktonic foraminifera in the south Atlantic ocean. Reports on polar research, 1995.
Niebler, H.S. , Gersonde, R. , 1998. A planktic foraminiferal transfer function for the southern South Atlantic Ocean. Marine Micropaleontology 34: 213–234.
Nomura, R. , 1995. Paleogene to Neogene deep-sea paleoceanography in the eastern Indian ocean: Benthic foraminifera from ODP sites 747, 757 and 758. Micropaleontology 41: 251–290.
Northcote, L.C. , Neil, H.L. , 2005. Seasonal variations in foraminiferal flux in the Southern ocean, Campbell Plateau, New Zealand. Marine Micropaleontology 56: 122–137.
Nowlin Jr, W.D. , Clifford, M. , 1982. The kinematic and thermohaline zonation of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current at Drake Passage. Journal of Marine Research 40: 481–507.
Okada, H. , Wells, P. , 1997. Late Quaternary nannofossil indicators of climate change in two deep-sea cores associated with the Leeuwin Current off Western Australia. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 131: 413 432
Oppo, D.W. , Horowitz, M. , 2000. Glacial deep water geometry: South Atlantic benthic foraminiferal Cd/Ca and δ13C evidence. Paleoceanography 15: 147–160.
Orsi, A.H. , Whiteworth III, T. , Nowlin Jr, W.D. , 1995. On the meridional extent and fronts of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current. Deep-sea Research I (40): 641–673.
Oslick, J. , 1998. Reconstructing hydrographic gradients and the carbon isotopic composition of surface waters using multiple species of planktonic foraminifera. Ph.D. Thesis, Brown University, 210 pp.
Pandey, P. C. , Khare, N. , Sudhakar, M. 2006. Oceanographic research: Indian efforts and preliminary results from the Southern Ocean. Current Science 90(7): 978–984.
Parker, F.L. , Berger, W.H. , 1971. Faunal and solution patterns of planktonic foraminifera in surface sediments of the South Pacific. Deep-Sea Research and Oceanographic Abstracts 18: 73–107.

Passchier, S. , Krissek, L.A. , 2008. Oligocene-Miocene Antarctic continental weathering record and paleoclimatic implications, Cape Roberts Drilling Project, Ross Sea, Antarctica. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 260(1–2): 30–40.
Pawlowski, J. , Cornelius, N. , Lecroq, B. , Longet, D. , Fahrni, J. , Cedhagen, T. , Gooday, A. , 2006. Bipolar gene flow in deep-sea foraminifera. In Thatje, S ; Tyler, P ; Talbot, P ; Horton, T ; Maclaren, L ; Murty, S ; Tothe, N ; Billett, D (Eds.), International Deep-Sea Biology Symp., Southampton, (UK), 9–14, July 2006. National Oceanography Center, Southampton.
Pawlowski, J. , Fahrni, J.F. , Guiard, J. , Conlan, K. , Hardecker, J. , Habura, A. , 2005. Allogromiid foraminifera and gromiids from under the Ross Ice Shelf: Morphological and molecular diversity. Polar Biology 28: 514–522.
Pawlowski, J. , Fahrni, J.I. , Brykczynska, U. , Habura, A. , Bowser, S.I. , 2002. Molecular data reveal high taxonomic diversity of allogromiid foraminifera in Explorers cove (McMurdo Sound, Antarctica). Polar Biology 25: 96–105.
Pena, L.D. , Goldstein, S.L. , Hemming , Jones, K.M. , Calvo, E. , Pelejero, C. , Cacho, I. , 2013. Rapid changes in meridional advection of Southern Ocean intermediate waters to the tropical Pacific during the last 30kyr. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 368: 20–32.
Perry, P.J. , 2000. Quaternary benthic foraminiferal distribution in the Ross Sea, Antarctica, and its relationship to oceanography. Ph.D. Thesis, Louisiana State University and Agricultural and Mechanical Col., LA, USA. Referenced in Dissertation Abstracts International Part B: Science and Engineering [Diss. Abst. Int. Pt. B—Sci. and Eng.]. 60: 4486.
Petersen, S.V. , Schrag, D.P. , 2015. Antarctic ice growth before and after the Eocene-Oligocene transition: New estimates from clumped isotope paleothermometry. Paleoceanography 30 (10): 1305–1317.
Peterson, L.C. , Lohmann, G.P. , 1982. Major change in Atlantic Deep and bottom waters 700,000 yr ago: Benthonic foraminiferal evidence from the South Atlantic. Quaternary Research 17: 26–38.
Petrizzo, M.R. , Kenneth, G.M. , David, K.W. , 2022. Late Cretaceous Paleoceanographic Evolution and the Onset of Cooling in the Santonian at Southern High Latitudes (IODP Site U1513, SE Indian Ocean). Paleoceanography and Paleoclimatology 37 (1). http://dx.doi.org/10.1029/2021PA004353
Petrizzo, M.R. , 2000. Upper Turonian—lower Campanian planktonic foraminifera from southern mid-high latitudes (Exmouth Plateau, NW Australia): biostratigraphy and taxonomic notes. Cretaceous Research 21: 479–505.
Petrizzo, M.R. , 2001, Late Cretaceous planktonic foraminifera from Kerguelen Plateau (ODP Leg 183): new data to improve the Southern Ocean biozonation. Cretaceous Research 22: 829–855.
Pharr, R.B. , Douglas , Williams, F. , 1987. Shape changes in Globorotalia truncatulinoides as a function of ontogeny and paleobiogeography in the Southern Ocean. Marine Micropaleontology 12: 343–355.
Pichon, J. , Sikes, E.L. , Hiramatsu, C. , Robertson, L. , 1998. Comparison of *U* k 37 and diatom assemblage sea surface temperature estimates with atlas derived data in Holocene sediments from the southern west Indian ocean. Journal of Marine Systems 17: 541–554.
Pilskaln, C.H. , Manganini, S.J. , Trull, T.W.L. , Armand, W. , Howard, V.L. , Asper, R. , 2004. Massom Geochemical particle fluxes in the southern dan ocean seasonal ice zone: Prydz Bay region, East Antarctica. *Deep-Sea Research* I 51: 307–332.
Piscova, A. , Roman, M. , Bulínová, M. , Pokorný, M. , Sanderson, D. , Cresswell, A. , Lirio, J.M. , Coria, S.H. , Nedbalová, L. , Lami, A. , Musazzi, S. , Vijver, B.V. , Nývlt, D. , Kopalová, K. , 2019. Late-Holocene palaeoenvironmental changes at Lake Esmeralda (Vega Island, Antarctic Peninsula) based on a multi-proxy analysis of laminated lake sediment. The Holocene 29(7): 1155–1175.
Pollard, R. T. , Lucas, M. I. , Read, J. F. , 2002. Physical controls on biogeochemical zonation in the Southern Ocean. Deep Sea Research, Part II 49, 3289–3305. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0967-0645(02)00084-X.
Pudsey, C.J. , Murray, J.W. , Appleby, P. , Evans, J. , 2006. Ice shelf history from petrographic and foraminiferal evidence, Northeast Antarctic Peninsula. Quaternary Science Reviews 25: 2357–2379.
Pudsey, C.J. , 2000. Sedimentation on the continental rise west of the Antarctic Peninsula over the last three glacial cycles. Marine Geology 167: 313–338.

Pushkin, A.F. , Smirnov, I.S. , Neelov, A.B. , 1991. A contribution to the study of bottom fauna from the fish tail bay of the bunger oasis (East Antarctica). Informatsionnyj byulleten' Sovetskoj Antarkticheskoj ehkspeditsii. St. Petersburg 116: 24–27.

Quilty, P.G. , 2001. Reworked Paleocene and Eocene foraminifera, Mac. Robertson Shelf, East Antarctica: Paleoenvironmental implications. Journal of Foraminiferal Research 31: 369–384.

Rathburn, A.E. , De Deckker, P. , 1997. Magnesium and strontium compositions of recent benthic foraminifera from the Coral Sea, Australia and Prydz Bay, Antarctica. Marine Micropaleontology 32: 231–248.

Rathburn, A.E. , Pichon, J.J. , Ayress, M.A. , Deckker , De P. , 1997. Microfossil and stable-isotope evidence for changes in Late Holocene palaeoproductivity and palaeoceanographic conditions in the Prydz Bay region of Antarctica. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 131: 485–510.

Rebecca, T.M. , Wojciech, M. , John, B.A. , Yusuke, Y. , Rodrigo, F. , Martin, J. , 2017. Oceanographic influences on the stability of the Cosgrove Ice Shelf, Antarctica. Holocene 27 (11): 1645–1658.

Rickaby, R.E.M. , Elderfield, H. , 1999. Planktonic foraminiferal Cd/Ca: Paleonutrients or paleotemperature? Paleoceanography 14: 293–303.

Rintoul, S.R. , Wolff, J.O. , Griffiths, F.B. , Bindoff, N.L. , Church, J.A. , Tilbrook, B.D. , Parslow, J.S. , Rosenberg, M. , 2002. Southern Ocean processes and climate: Recent progress by ANARE. In: Marchant, H. J. Lugg, D. J. and Quilty, P. G. (Eds), Australian Antarctic science: The first 50 years of ANARE. Australian Antarctic Division, Kingston, Tasmania, pp. 519–540.

Robert, C. , Diester-Haass, L. , Paturel, J. , 2005. Clay mineral assemblages, siliciclastic input and paleoproductivity at ODP Site 1085 off Southwest Africa: A late Miocene-early Pliocene history of Orange River discharges and Benguela current activity, and their relation to global sea-level change. Marine Geology 216: 221–238.

Robert, C. , Haass, D.L. , Chamley, H. , 2002. Late Eocene-Oligocene oceanographic development at southern high latitudes, from terrigenous and biogenic particles: a comparison of Kerguelen Plateau and Maud Rise, ODP Sites 744 and 689. Marine Geology 191: 37–54.

Roberts, D. , Howard, W.R. , Moy, A.D. , Roberts, J.L. , Trull, T.W. , Bray, S.G. , Hopcroft, R.R. , 2008. Interannual variability of pteropod shell weights in the high-CO2 Southern Ocean. Biogeosciences Discussions 5(6): 4453–4480.

Roberts, D. , van Ommen, T.D. , McMinn, A. , Morgan, V. , Roberts, J.L. , 2001. Late-Holocene East Antarctic climate trends from ice-core and lake-sediment proxies. The Holocene 11(1): 117–120.

Robinson, R.S. , Mix, A. , Martinez, P. , 2007. Southern Ocean control on the extent of denitrification in the southeast Pacific over the last 70 ka. Quaternary Science Reviews 26: 201–212.

Sabbatini, A. , Morigi, C. , Ravaioli, M. , Negri, A. , 2004. Abyssal benthic foraminfera in the polar front region (pacific sector): Faunal composition, standing stock and size structure. Chemistry and Ecology 20: S117–S129.

Saidova, K. , 1998. Benthic foraminifera communities of the Southern Ocean. Okeanologiya 38: 561–567.

Salvi, C. , Busetti, M. , Marinoni, L. , Brambati, A. , 2006. Late Quaternary glacial marine to marine sedimentation in the Pennell Trough (Ross Sea, Antarctica). Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 231: 199–214.

Sandi, M.S. , Sarah, E.F. , Haojia, R. , Ralf, S. , Emily, M.T. , MartínezGarcía, A. , Luca, S. , Alakendra, R. , Gerald, H.H. , Daniel, M.S. , 2020. The Nitrogen Isotopic Composition of Tissue and ShellBound Organic Matter of Planktic Foraminifera in Southern Ocean Surface Waters. *Geochemistry, Geophysics, Geosystem*s 21 (2). http://dx.doi.org/10.1029/2019GC008440

Saraswat, R. , Khare, N. , Chaturvedi, S.K. , Rajkumar, A. , 2007. Seawater pH and planktic foraminiferal abundance: Preliminary observations from the western Indian Ocean. Current Science 93(5): 703–706.

Scheibnerova, V. , 1977. Synthesis of the cretaceous benthonic foraminifera recovered by the deep sea drilling project in the Indian Ocean. In Heirtzler J.R. , Bolli H.M. , Davies T.A. , Saunders J.B. and Sclater J.G. (Eds.), Indian Ocean geology and biostratigraphy: Studies following Deep-Sea Drilling Legs 22–29. Washington, DC (USA).: Publ. by American Geophysical Union.

Scher, H. D. , Delaney, M. L. , 2010. Evaluating the Source of Nd to the Southern Ocean During the Eocene Oligocene Transition. American Geophysical Union, URL:www.agu.org

Scherer, R.P. , 1991. Quaternary and Tertiary microfossils from beneath Ice Stream B: Evidence for a dynamic West Antarctic Ice Sheet History. Global and Planetary Change 4: 395–412.
Schrag, D.P. , Adkins, J.F. , McIntyre, K. , Alexander, J.L. , Hodell, D.A. , Charles, C.D. , 2002. The oxygen isotopic composition of seawater during the last glacial maximum. Quaternary Science Reviews 21: 331–342.
Schroder, C.J. , 1990. High latitude agglutinated foraminifera: Prydz Bay (Antarctica) vs. Lancaster Sound (Canadian Arctic). In: Hemleben, C. (Ed.), Paleoecology, Biostratigraphy, Paleoceanography and Taxonomy of Agglutinated Foraminifera. Kluwer Academic Publishers, Netherlands, pp. 315–343.
Schumacher, S. , 2001. Microhabitat preferences of benthic foraminifera in South Atlantic Ocean sediments. Bremerhaven (FRG): Alfred-Wegener-Institut fuer Polar- und Meeresforschung. Ber. Polarforsch./Rep. Polar Res. 403: 151, 2001.
Schumacher, S. , Lazarus, D. , 2004. Regional differences in pelagic productivity in the late Eocene to early Oligocene-a comparison of southern high latitudes and lower latitudes. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 214: 243–263.
Scott, G.H. , Kennett, J.P. , Wilson, K.J. , Hayward, B.W. , 2007. *Globorotalia puncticulata*: population divergence, dispersal and extinction related to Pliocene-Quaternary water masses. Marine Micropaleontology 62: 235–253
Shchedrina, Z.G. , 1982. Vertical distribution of agglutinated foraminifera in the southern hemisphere from material collected by the soviet antarctic expedition, 1955–1966. Antarktika. Doklady Komissii 21: 133–156.
Shemesh, A. , Charles, C.D. , Fairbanks, R.G. , 1992. Oxygen isotopes in biogenic silica: Global changes in ocean temperature and isotopic composition. Science (Washington) 256: 1434–1436.
Shemesh, A. , Macko, S.A. , Charles, C.D. , Rau, G.H. , 1993. Isotopic evidence for reduced productivity in the glacial Southern Ocean. Science 262: 407–410.
Sicre, M.A. , Labeyrie, L. , Ezat, U. , Duprat, J. , Turon, J.L. , Schmidt, S. , Michel, E. , Mazaud, A. , 2005. Mid-latitude Southern Indian Ocean response to Northern Hemisphere Heinrich events. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 240: 724–731.
Sikes, E. , King, A. , Howard, W. , 2001. *Sediment trap evidence for seasonality-based differences in alkenone and foraminiferal temperature estimates in the Southern Ocean*. EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union, v. 82, suppl., [np]. suppl.
Sissingh, W. , 1973. Foraminifera of the Breid Bay area (Antarctica). Netherlands Journal of Sea Research 6: 355–364.
Smith, J. , Bentley, A. , Michael, J. , Hodgson, D.A. , Roberts, S.J. , Leng, M.J. , Lloyd, J.M. , Barrett, M.S. , Bryant, C.S. , David, E. , 2007. Oceanic and atmospheric forcing of early Holocene ice shelf retreat, George VI Ice Shelf, Antarctica Peninsula. Quaternary Science Reviews 26(3–4): 500–516.
Stott, L.D. , Kennett, J.P. , 1989. New constraints on early Tertiary palaeo-productivity from carbon isotopes in foraminifera. Nature 342: 526–529.
Suhr, S.B. , Pond, D.W. , 2006. Antarctic benthic foraminifera facilitates rapid cycling of phytoplankton-derived organic carbon. Deep-Sea Research II 53: 895–902.
Suhr, S.B. , Pond, D.W. , Gooday, A.J. , Smith, C.R. , 2003. Selective feeding by benthic foraminifera on phytodetritus on the western Antarctic Peninsula shelf: Evidence from fatty acid biomarker analysis. Marine Ecology Progress Series 262: 153–162.
Takahashi, K.T. , Hosie, G.W. , Kitchener, J.A. , McLeod, D.J. , Odate, T. , Fukuchi, M. , 2010 August. Comparison of zooplankton distribution patterns between four seasons in the Indian Ocean sector of the Southern Ocean. Polar Science 4(2): 317–331.
Tapia, R. , Nuernberg, D. , Ronge, T. , Tiedemann, R. , 2015. Disparities in glacial advection of Southern Ocean Intermediate Water to the South Pacific Gyre. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 40: 152–164.
Temnikow, N.K. , Lipps, J.H. , 1975. Foraminiferal ecology: R/V Hero cruise 75–1a. Antarct. J.U.S 10: 132–133.
Theissen, K.M. , Robert, B. , Dunbar, A.K. , Cooper , Mucciarone, D.A. , Hoffmann, D. , 2003. The Pleistocene evolution of the East Antarctic Ice Sheet in the Prydz Bay region: stable isotopic evidence from ODP Site 1167. Global and Planetary Change 39: 227–256.

Theyer, F. , 1971. Benthic foraminiferal trends, Pacific-Antarctic basin. Deep-Sea Research and Oceanographic Abstracts 18: 723–738.
Thomas, A.R. , Silke, S. , Ralf, T. , Matthias, P. , Ute, M. , Dirk, N. , Gerhard, K. , 2015. Pushing the boundaries: Glacial/interglacial variability of intermediate and deep waters in the southwest Pacific over the last 350,000 years. Paleoceanography 30(2): 23–38.
Thomas, J.W. , Hillenbrand, C. , Alexander M. P. , Claire S. A. , Thomas, F. , James A. S. , Werner, E. , David A. H. , 2019. Paleocirculation and Ventilation History of Southern Ocean Sourced Deep Water Masses During the Last 800,000 Years. Paleoceanography and Paleoclimatology 34 (5): 833–852.
Thomas, W.T. , Abraham, P. , Diana, M.D. , Tim, S. , Kate, B. , Bronte, T. , 2018. Distribution of planktonic biogenic carbonate organisms in the Southern Ocean south of Australia: a baseline for ocean acidification impact assessment. Biogeosciences 15 (1): 31–49.
Timothy, J. B. , Katrin, J.M. , Kaitlin, A. , Deborah, J.T. , 2014. The dynamics of global change at the Paleocene-Eocene thermal maximum: A data-model comparison. Geophysics, Geosystems 15(10): 3830–3848.
Tiwari, M. , Mohan, R. , Meloth, T. , Naik, S. S. , Sudhakar, M. , 2011. Effect of varying frontal systems on stable oxygen and carbon isotopic compositions of modern planktic foraminifera of Southern Ocean. Current Science 100(6): 881–887.
Trenberth, K.E. , Large, W.G. , Olson, J.G. , 1990. The mean annual cycle in global ocean wind stress. Journal of Physical Oceanography 30: 1742–1760.
Vargas, De ., Pawlowski, C. , Renaud, J.S. , Hilbrecht, H. , 2001. Pleistocene adaptive radiation in globorotalia truncatulinoides: Genetic, morphologic, and environmental evidence. Paleobiology 27: 104–125.
Villa, G. , Persico, D. , Bonci, M.C. , Lucchi, R.G. , Morigi, C. , Rebesco, M. , 2003. Biostratigraphic characterization and quaternary microfossil palaeoecology in sediment drifts west of the Antarctic peninsula—implications for cyclic glacial-interglacial deposition. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 198: 237–263.
Volbers, A.N.A. , Henrich, R. , 2002. Present water mass calcium carbonate corrosiveness in the eastern South Atlantic inferred from the ultrastructural breakdown of Globigerina bulloides in surface sediments. Marine Geology 186: 471–486.
Volbers, A.N.A. , Henrich, R. , 2004. Calcium carbonate corrosiveness in the South Atlantic during the Last Glacial Maximum as inferred from changes in the preservation of Globigerina bulloides: A proxy to determine deep-water circulation patterns? M*arine Geology* 204: 43–57.
Vorobeva, L. , 1998. Meiobenthos of the Ukrainian Antarctic station Akademik Vernadsky region. In Gozhik P. F. (Ed.), Second Ukrainian Antarctic Expedition Report 1997/1998, no. 2 Ukrainian Antarctic Centre [Byul. Ukr. Antarkt. Tsent./Bull. Ukr. Antarct. Cent.], Kiev (Ukraine), pp. 191–197.
Waelbroeck, C. , Labeyrie, L. , Michel, E. , Duplessy, J.C. , McManus, J.F. , Lambeck, K. , 2002. Sea-level and deep water temperature changes derived from benthic foraminifera isotopic records. Quaternary Science Reviews 21: 295–305.
Ward, B.L. , Barrett, P.J. , Vella, P. , 1987. Distribution and ecology of benthic foraminifera in McMurdo Sound, Antarctica. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 58: 139–153.
Webb, P.N. , Harwood, D.M. , McKelvey, B.C. , Mercer, J.H. , Stott, L.D. , 1984. Cenozoic marine sedimentation and ice-volume variation on the East Antarctic craton. Geology 12: 287–291.
Webb, P.N. , Strong, C. , 2006. Foraminiferal biostratigraphy and palaeoecology in upper oligocene-lower miocene glacial marine sequences 9, 10, and 11, CRP-2/2A drill hole, victoria land basin, Antarctica. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 231: 71–100.
Webb, P.N. , Harwoodb, D.M. , Mabin, M.G.C. , McKelveyd, B.C. , 1996. A marine and terrestrial Sirius Group succession, middle Beardmore Glacier-Queen Alexandra Range, Transantarctic Mountains, Antarctica. Marine Micropaleontology 272: 273–297.
Wei, R. , Abouchami, W. , Zahn, R. , Masque, P. , 2016. Deep circulation changes in the South Atlantic since the Last Glacial Maximum from Nd isotope and multi-proxy records. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 434: 18–29.
Wells, P. , Okada, H. , 1997. Response of nannoplankton to major changes in sea-surface temperature and movements of hydrological fronts over site DSDP 594 (south chatham rise, southeastern New Zealand), during the last 130 kyr. Marine Micropaleontology 32: 341–363.

Whiteworth, T. , 1980. Zonation and geostrophic flow of the Antarctic Circumpolar Current at Drake Passage. Deep-Sea Research A (27): 497–507.
Widmark, J.G.V. , 1995. Multiple deep-water sources and trophic regimes in the latest cretaceous deep-sea: Evidence from benthic foraminifera. Marine Micropaleontology 26: 361–384.
Williams, D.F. , Keany, J. , 1978. Comparison of radiolarian/planktonic foraminiferal paleoceanography of the subantarctic Indian Ocean. Quaternary Research 9: 71–86.
Williams, M. , Haywood, A.M. , Taylor, S.P. , Paul, J. , Valdes, B. , Sellwood, W. , 2005. Claus-Dieter Hillenbrand. Evaluating the efficacy of planktonic foraminifer calcite δ18O data for sea surface temperature reconstruction for the Late Miocene. Geobios 38: 843–863.
Woelders, L. , Vellekoop, J. , Kroon, D. , Smit, J. , Casadio, S. Pramparo, M. B. , Dinares-Turell, J. , Peterse, F. , Sluijs, A. , Lenaerts, J.T.M. , Speijer, R.P. , 2017. Latest Cretaceous climatic and environmental change in the South Atlantic region. Paleoceanography, 32(5): 466–483.
Yoon, H.I. , Park, B.K. , Kim, Y. , Kang, C.Y. , 2002. Glaciomarine sedimentation and its paleoclimatic implications on the Antarctic Peninsula shelf over the last 15 000 years. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 185: 235–254.
Yoon, H.I. , Park, B.K. , Kim, Y. , Kim, D. , 2000. Glaciomarine sedimentation and its paleoceanographic implications along the fjord margins in the South Shetland Islands, Antarctica during the last 6000 years. Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 157: 189–211.
Zachos, J.C. , Breza, J.R. , Wise, S.W. , 1992. Early oligocene ice-sheet expansion on Antarctica: Stable isotope and sedimentological evidence from Kerguelen plateau, southern Indian ocean. Geology 20: 569–573.
Zheng, L. , Wu, Z. , 1989. Relationship between the distribution of foraminifera and environmental factors in the northwestern sea area on the Antarctic Peninsula. China First Symp. on Southern Ocean Expedition, Hangzhou (China).
Zhu, G. , 1989. Diet analysis of Antarctic krill Euphausia superba dana. Acta Oceanologica Sinica/Haiyang Xuebao 8: 457–462.
Ziegler , Martin, Z. , Paula, D. , Ian R.H. , Rainer, Z. , 2013. Millennial-scale changes in atmospheric CO2 levels linked to the Southern Ocean carbon isotope gradient and dust flux. Nature Geoscience 6: 457–461.
Zwaan, G.J.V. , Duijnstee, I.A.P. , den Dulk, M. , Ernst, S.R. , Jannink, N.T. , Kouwenhoven, T.J. , 1999. Benthic foraminifers: proxies or problems? A review of paleocological concepts. Earth-Science Reviews 46: 213–236.

Tracking the Ionospheric Responses over Antarctica during the December 4, 2021, Total Solar Eclipse

Adeniyi, J. O. , Radicella, S. M. , Adimula, I. A. , Willoughby, A. A. , Oladipo, O. A. , & Olawepo, O. (2007). Signature of the 29 March 2006 eclipse on the ionosphere over an equatorial station. Journal of Geophysical Research, 112, A06314, https://doi.org/10.1029/2006JA012197.
Bilitza, D. , Altadill, D. , Truhlik, V. , Shubin, V. , Galkin, I. , Reinisch, B. , & Huang, X. (2017). International Reference Ionosphere 2016: From ionospheric climate to real-time weather predictions. Space Weather, 15, 418–429. https://doi.org/10.1002/2016SW001593
Cherniak, I. , & Zakharenkova, I. (2018). Ionospheric total electron content response to the great American solar eclipse of 21 August 2017. Geophysical Research Letters, 45, 1199–1208. https://doi.org/10.1002/2017GL075989
Cohen, E. A. (1984). The study of the effect of solar eclipses on the ionosphere based on satellite beacon observations. Radio Science, 19, 769–777. https://doi.org/10.1029/RS019i003p00769
Coster, A. J. , Colerico, M. J. , Foster, J. C. , Rideout, W. , & Rich F . (2007). Longitude sector comparisons of storm enhanced density. Geophysical Research Letters, 34, L18105. https://doi.org/10.1029/2007GL030682
Coster, A. J. , Goncharenko, L. , Zhang, S.-R. , Erickson, P. J. , Rideout, W. , & Vierinen, J. (2017). GNSS observations of ionospheric variations during the 21 August 2017 solar eclipse. Geophysical Research Letters, 44, 12041–12048. https://doi.org/10.1002/2017GL075774

Evans, J. V. (1965). An F region eclipse. Journal of Geophysical Research, 70, 131–142. https://doi.org/10.1029/JZ070i001p00131
Farges, T. , Jodogne, J. C. , Bamford, R. , Le Roux, Y. , Gauthier, F. , Vila, P. M. , … Miro, G. (2001). Disturbances of the western European ionosphere during the total solar eclipse of 11 August 1999 measured by a wide ionosonde and radar network. Journal of Atmospheric and Solar-Terrestrial Physics, 63, 915–924. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1364-6826(00)00195-4
Goncharenko, L. P. , Erickson, P. J. , Zhang, S.-R. , Galkin, I. , Coster, A. J. , & Jonah, O. F. (2018). Ionospheric response to the solar eclipse of 21 August 2017 in Millstone Hill (42N) observations. Geophysical Research Letters, 45, 4601–4609. https://doi.org/10.1029/2018GL077334
Hargreaves, J. K. (1992). The Solar-Terrestrial Environment. Cambridge Press.
Immel, T. J. , & Mannucci, A. J. (2013), Ionospheric redistribution during geomagnetic storms. Journal of Geophysical Research-Space Physics, 118, 7928–7939. https://doi.org/10.1002/2013JA018919
Kameda, T. , Fujita, K. , Sugita, O. , Hirasawa, N. , & Takahashi, S. (2009). Total solar eclipse over Antarctica on 23 November 2003 and its effects on the atmosphere and snow near the ice sheet surface at Dome Fuji. Journal of Geophysical Research, 114, D18115. https://doi.org/10.1029/2009JD011886
Klobuchar, J. A. , & Whitney, H. E. (1965). Ionospheric electron content measurements during a solar eclipse. Journal of Geophysical Research, 70, 1254–1257.
Klobuchar, J. A. (1987). Ionospheric time-delay algorithm for single-frequency GPS users. IEEE Transactions on Aerospace and Electronic Systems, 3, 325–331.
Mannucci, A. J. , Wison, B. D. , & Edwards, C. D. (1993). A new method for monitoring the Earth’s ionospheric total electron content using GPS global networks. Proceedings of ION GPS-93, 93, 1323–1332.
Maurya, A. K. , Shrivastava, M. N. & Kumar, K. N. (2020). Ionospheric monitoring with the Chilean GPS eyeball during the South American total solar eclipse on 2nd July 2019. Scientific Reports, 10, 19380. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-020-75986-7
Nayak, C. , & Yiğit, E. (2018). GPS-TEC observation of gravity waves generated in the ionosphere during 21 August 2017 total solar eclipse. Journal of Geophysical Research: Space Physics, 123, 725–738. https://doi.org/10.1002/2017JA024845
Pradipta, R. , Yizengaw, E. , & Doherty, P. (2018). Ionospheric density irregularities, turbulence, and wave disturbances during the total solar eclipse over North America on 21 August 2017. Geophysical Research Letters, 45, 7909–7917. https://doi.org/10.1029/2018GL079383
Rishbeth, H. (1968). Solar eclipses and ionospheric theory. Space Science Reviews, 8, 543–554. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF00175006
Rishbeth, H. , & Garriott, O. K. (1969). Introduction to Ionospheric Physics. Academic Press.
Seemala, G. K. (2011). GPSTEC analysis application. Tech Rep, Institute for Science Research, U.S.A. https://seemala.blogspot.com
Shrivastava, M. N. , Maurya, A. K. , & Kumar, K. N. (2021). Ionospheric perturbation during the South American total solar eclipse on 14th December 2020 revealed with the Chilean GPS eyeball. Scientific Reports, 11, 20324. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-021-98727-w
Verhulst, T. G. W. , & Stankov, S. M. (2020). Height dependency of solar eclipse effects: The ionospheric perspective. Journal of Geophysical Research: Space Physics, 125, e2020JA028088. https://doi.org/10.1029/2020JA028088
Zhang, R. , Le, H. , Li, W. , Ma, H. , Yang, Y. , Huang, H. , (2020). Multiple technique observations of the ionospheric responses to the 21 June 2020 solar eclipse. Journal of Geophysical Research: Space Physics, 125, e2020JA028450. https://doi.org/10.1029/2020JA028450

Isotope Hydrochemistry of Lakes and Transient Ponds of East Antarctica with Varying Degree of Environmental Condition

APHA . Standard Methods for the analysis of water and waste water, 19th edn. American Public Health Association, Washington, D.C., 1995.

ATCM XXXVII Final Report . Larsemann Hills, East Antarctica Antarctic specially managed area management plan, 2014. Secretariat of the Antarctic Treaty Buenos Aires 2014, https://documents.ats.aq/ATCM37/fr/ATCM37_fr002_e.pdf

Ferrik MG , Calkins DJ , Perron NM , Cragin JH , Kendall C. Diffusion model validation and interpretation of stable isotopes in river and lake ice. Hydrol. Process. 2002; 16(4): 851–872.

Gibson JJ , Prowse TD . Isotopic characteristic of ice cover in a large northern river basin. Hydrol. Process. 1999; 13(16): 2537–2548.

Gopinath G , Resmi TR , Praveenbabu M , Pragath M , Sunil PS , Rawat R. Isotope hydrochemistry of lakes in Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. Indian J. Geo-Mar. Sci. 2020; 49 (6): 947–953.

Haberlandt R , Haendel D , Hermichen W-D , Strauch G , Wand U. The lakes of central queen maud land (East Antarctica): Their recent isotope hydrologic characteristics, origin and evolution. International Atomic Energy Agency, Vienna, 1987.

Haendel D , Hermichen W-D , Höfling R , Kowski P. Hydrology of the lakes in Central Wohlthat Massif, East Antarctica: new results. Isot. Environ. Healt. S. 2011; 47 (4): 402–406.

Hodgson D.A. Antarctic lakes . In: Bengtsson L , Herschy RW , Fairbridge R , editors. Encyclopedia of lakes and reservoirs. Springer, Berlin, 2012, pp. 26–31.

Horita J , Rozanski, K , Cohen S . Isotope effects in the evaporation of water: a status report of the Craig-Gordon model. Isot. Environ. Healt. S. 2008; 44(1): 23–49.

Katz BG , Coplen TB , Bullen TD , Davis JH . Use of chemical and isotopic tracers to characterize the interaction between groundwater and surface water in mantled karst. Ground Water, 1998; 35: 1014–1028.

Kaup EB . The schirmacher ponds: General description, temperature and radiation regime. Polar Geog. Geol. 1982; 6 (3): 219–229.

Kiernan K , Gore D , Fink D , White D , McConnell A , Sigurdsson I. Deglaciation and weathering of Larsemann Hills, East Antarctica. Antarct. Sci. 2009; 21 (4): 373–382. doi:10.1017/S0954102009002028

Mathur AK , Ashana R , Ravindra R. Arcellaceans (thecamoebians) from core sediments of Priyadarshini Lake, Schirmacher Oasis, Eastern Antarctica. Curr. Sci. 2006; 90 (12): 1603–1605.

Michel FA . Isotope geochemistry of Frost-Blister Ice, North Fork Pass, Yukon, Canada. Can. J. Earth Sci. 1986; 23(4): 543–549.

Miller LG , Aiken GR . Effects of glacial melt water inflows and moat freezing on mixing in an ice-covered Antarctic Lake as interpreted from stable isotope and tritium distributions. Limnol. Oceanogr. 1996; 41(5): 966–976.

Mojib N , Huang J , Hoover RB , Pikuta EV , Pikuta EV , Storrie-Lombardi M Diversity of bacterial communities in the lakes of Schirmacher Oasis, Antarctica. In: Proceedings of the SPIE 7441, Instruments and Methods for Astrobiology and Planetary Missions XII, 74410J, 2009. doi:10.1117/12.831289

Phartiyal B. Holocene paleoclimatic variation in the Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica: A mineral magnetic approach. Polar Sci. 2014; 8 (4): 357–369.

Phartiyal B , Sharma A , Bera S.K. Glacial lakes and geomorphological evolution of Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica, during late quaternary. Quat. Internat. 2011; 235 (1–2): 128–136.

Resmi TR , Gopinath G , Praveenbabu M , Pragath M , Sunil PS , Arjun P , Rawat R. Chemical and isotopic characterization of lakes in the Larsemann Hills, East Antarctica. In: Khare N , editors. Assessing the Antarctic environment from a climate change perspective, earth and environmental sciences library. Springer Nature, Switzerland AG, 2022, pp. 153–166.

Richter W , Strauch G. Deuterium and 18O variations in lakes of the Schirmacher Oasis (East Antarctica). Isotopenpraxis, 1983; 19 (5): 145–153.

Schoeller H. Qualitative evaluation of groundwater resources. In: Methods and techniques of groundwater investigations and development. UNESCO, Paris, 1965, pp. 54–83.

Schoeller H. Geochemistry of groundwater—An international guide for research and practice. UNESCO, Paris, 1967, pp. 1–18.

Sengupta S.M. Geology of Schirmacher Range (Dakshin Gangotri), East Antarctica. Scientific report of the 3rd Indian science expedition to Antarctica. DOD, Govt. India Pub. Techn. Pub. 1986; 3: 187–217.

Sinha R , Chatterjee A. 2000. Thermal structure, sedimentology, and hydro-geochemistry of lake Priyadarshini, Schirrmacher oasis, Antarctica. Sixteenth Indian Expedition to Antarctica, Sci. Rep. Dep. Ocean Develop. Techn. Pub. 2000; 14: 1–36.
Smith JA , Hodgson DA , Bentley MJ , Limnology of two Antarctic epishelf lakes and their potential to record periods of ice shelf loss. J. Paleolimnol. 2006; 35 (2): 373–394.
Souchez R , Tison JL , Jouzel J . Freezing rate determination by the isotopic composition of the ice. Geophy. Res. Lett. 1987; 14(6): 599–602.
Srivastava AK , Randive KR , Khare N. Mineralogical and geochemical studies of glacial sediments from Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. Quatern. Int. 2012; 292: 205–216.
Strauch G , Haendel D , Maaß I , Mühle K , Runge A. Isotope variations of hydrogen, carbon and nitrogen in florae from the Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. Isot. Environ. Healt. S. 2011; 47(3): 280–285.
Wand U , Hermichena W-D , Brüggemannb E , Zierath R , Klokov VD . Stable isotope and hydrogeochemical studies of Beaver Lake and Radok Lake, MacRobertson Land, East Antarctica. Isot. Environ. Healt. S. 2011; 47(4): 407–414.
Wang YQ , Chen XB , Meng GL , Wang S , Wang Z. On changing trends of δD during seawater freezing and evaporation. Cold Reg. Sci. Technol. 2000; 31(1): 27–31.
Warrier AK , Pednekar H , Mahesh BS , Mohan R , Gazi S. Sediment grain size and surface textural observations of quartz grains in late quaternary lacustrine sediments from Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica: Paleoenvironmental significance. Polar Sci. 2016; 10 (1): 89–100.

Limnological Assessment of Water Bodies of Extreme Antarctic Climatic Conditions

APHA (1985): Standard methods for the examination of water and waste water. APHA, AWWA and WPCF, New York.
APHA (1989): Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater. 17th edition, American Public Health Association, Washington, D.C.
APHA (1992): Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater. 18th edition, American Public Health Association (APHA), American Water Works Association (AWWA) and Water Pollution Control Federation (WPCF), Washington, D.C.
Apha, AWWA and WEF (2005): Standards methods for the examination of water and waste water. 21st edition, American Public Health Association (APHA), American Water Works Association (AWWA), and Water Environment Federation (WEF), Washington, DC.
Ariyadej, C. , Tansakul, R. , Tansakul, P. and Angsupanich , (2004): Phytoplankton diversity and its relationships to the physicochemical environment in the Banglang Reservoir, Yala Province, Songklanakarin. Journal of Science and Technology 26(5): 595–607.
Boyd, C.E. (1979): Water quality in warm water fish ponds. Craftmaster Auburn, Alabama, USA, Printers Inc.
Chaturvedi, S.K. and Khare, N. (2006): Antarctic lake survey for paleoclimatic study: Achievements and Future plan (Abstract) National Workshop on Emerging areas of Scientific investigations during XXVI Indian Antarctic Expedition, June 29–30, 2006, Goa.
Downing, J.A. and Rigler, F.H. (1984): *A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary Productivity of fresh waters*. I.B.P. Handbook No. 17, Blackwell Sci. Pub., London.
Edmondson, W.T. (1959): Freshwater biology. 2nd edition, John Wiley and Sons, New York.
Gannon, J.E. and Stemberger, R.S. (1978): Zooplankton (especially crustaceans and rotifers) as indicators of water quality. Transactions of American Microscopy Society 97(1): 16–35.
Goldman, C.R. and Horne, A.J. (1983): Limnology. McGraw-Hill Book Co., New York, 464 p.
Golterman, H.L. (ed.) (1969): *Methods of chemical analysis of freshwaters*. IBP Handbook No. 8, Blackwell, Oxford.
Golterman, I.L. and Clymo, R.S. (1979): *Methods for physical and chemical analysis of fresh waters*. I.B.P. (handbook No.8) Blackwell Scientific pub, Oxford.
Gulati R.D. (1983): Zooplankton and its grazing as indicators of trophic status in Dutch lakes. Environmental Monitoring Assessment 3: 343–354.

Gupta, R.K. and Kashyap, A.K. (1998): Algal colonization of Schirmacher Oasis, Antarctica. Fourteenth IAE Scientific Reports DoD. Tech. Pub. 12: 187–192.

Hemasundaram, A. , Dhanalakshmi, K. , Prasad, B. and Naidu, N.V.S. (2003): Assessment of water quality with regard to surfactants in pilgrim town—a case study of Tirupati. Journal of Ultra Scientist of Physical Sciences 15(2): 189–194. http://dx.doi.org/10.2307/3225681

Ingole, B.S. and Dhargalkar, V.K. (1998): Ecobiological assessment of a freshwater lake at Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica, with reference to human activities. Current Science 74: 529–534.

Ingole, B.S. and Parulekar, A.H. (1987): Micro-fauna of Schirmacher Oasis, Antarctica: 1. Water moss communities. DoD, Tech. Pub. 4: 139–148.

Ingole, B.S. and Parulekar, A.H. (1990): Limnology of Priyadarshini Lake, Schirmacher Oasis, Antarctica. Polar Record 26: 13–17.

Ingole, B.S. and Parulekar, A.H. (1993): Limnology of fresh water lakes at schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. Proc. Indian National Science Academy B 59(6): 589–600.

Ingole, B.S. , Verlecar, X.N. and Parulekar, A.H. (1987): Microfauna of Priyadarshini Lake, Schirmacher Oasis, Antarctica. DoD, Tech. Pub. 9: 301–311.

Khare, N. , Chaturvedi, S.K. Srivastava, R. , Saraswat, R. and Wanganeo, A. (2008): Some Morphometric characteristics of the Priyadarshini Lake of Schirmacher Oasis, central Dronning Maud Land, Antarctica with special reference to its bathymetry. Indian Journal of Marine Sciences, New Delhi 37 (4): 435–438.

Lind, O.T. (1979):A handbook of limnological methods. C.V. Mosby, St. Louis, MO, p. 199.

Loka Bharti, P.A. , Nair. S , Desouza, M.J.B.D. and Chandramohan, D. (1999): Truce with oxygen-Anaerobiosis outcompete aerobiosis in the Antarctic lacustrine bacteria. Current Science 76 (12): 1585–1587.

Matondkar, S.G.P. (1986): Microbiological studies in Schirmacher Oasis Antarctica: Effect of temperature on bacterial population. Report of Third Indian Expedition to Antarctica, pp. 133–147.

Matondkar, S.G.P. and Gomes, H.R. (1983): Biological studies on the ice shelf and in a fresh water lake at Princess Astrid Coast, droning Maud Land, Antarctica. Scientific report of first Indian Expedition to Antarctica, pp. 186–190.

Michael, P. (1984): Ecological methods for field and laboratory investigations. Tata-McGraw Hill Pub. Com. Ltd., New Delhi, p. 404.

Pandey, K.D. , Kashyap, A.K. and Gupta, R.K. (1995): Nutrient status, algal and cyanobacterial flora of six fresh water streams of Schirmacher Oasis. Antarctica 299: 83–91.

Ramaiah, N. (1995): Summer abundance and activities of bacteria in the fresh water lake of Schirmacher Oasis, Antarctica. Polar Biology V. 15(18): 547–553.

Roelke, D. and Buyukates, Y. (2002): Dynamics phytoplankton succession coupled to species diversity as a system-level tool for the study of *Microcystis* population dynamics in eutrophic lakes. *Limnology and Oceanography* 47(4): 1109–1118.

Sengupta, R. and Qasin, S.Z. (1983): Chemical studies on the ice shelf in a freshwater lake and in a polynya at Princess Astrid Coast, Dronning Maud Land, Antarctica. Scientific Report-First Indian Expedition to Antarctica, Technical Publication No. 1, DoD, New Delhi, pp. 62–68.

Shirodkar, P.U. , Algarswamy, R. , Goes, J.F. and Fondekav, S.P. (1992): Major elements, nutrients, and plankton biomass in the ice edge and an offshore region of the Indian Ocean sector of the Southern Ocean. Polar record. Vol. 28, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp. 127–136.

Sommer, U. (Ed.) (1989): Plankton ecology. Succession in plankton communities. Berlin, Springer-Verlag, p. 369.

Spaulding, S.A. , McKnight, D.M. , Smith R.L. and Dufford, R. (1994): Phytoplankton population dynamics in perennially ice-covered Lake. Fryxell, Antarctica. The Journal of Plankton Research 16:527–541.

Swain, A.K. and Chaturvedi, A. (2017): Bathymetric profiling of lakes of Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica, Twenty Seventh Indian Antarctic Expedition 2007–2009. Ministry of Earth Sciences, Technical Publication No. 25, pp. 45–72.

Trivedi, R.K. and Goel, P.K. (1984): Chemical and biological methods for water pollution studies. Environmental Publishers, Karad, India, p. 304.

Trivedi, R.K. and Goel, P.K. (1986): Chemical and biological methods for water pollution studies. Environmental publication, Karad, Maharashtra.

Wafer, S. and Untwale, A.G. (1983): Flora of Dakshin Gangotri in Antarctica. Scientific Report of first Indian Expedition to Antarctica (DOD Tech. Publ.; 1) 182–185.
Wanganeo, A. and Wanganeo, R. (1991): Algal population in valley lakes of Kashmir Himalaya. Archiv für Hydrobiologie (Stuttgart). 121(2): 219–233.
Wanganeo, A. and Wanganeo, R. (2006): Variation in Zooplankton population in two morphologically dissimilar rural lakes of Kashmir Himalayas. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of India. 76(b): III.
Wanganeo, A. , Wanganeo, R. , Khare, R. and Kumar, P. (2018): Variations in physicochemical characteristics of water bodies placed at different geographical coordinates in Antarctica. Polar Science 18: 48–56.
Wetzel, R.G. (2001): Limnology. 3rd edition. Academic Press, California.
wetzel, R.G. and Likens, G.E. (1991): Limnological analysis. 2nd edition, Springer-Verlag, New York, pp. 391, ISBN 0-387-97331-1. https://doi.org/10.1002/rrr.3450070410
Wood, R.B. and G.E. Gibson (1974): Eutrophication and Loch Heagen. Water Research 7: 163–287.

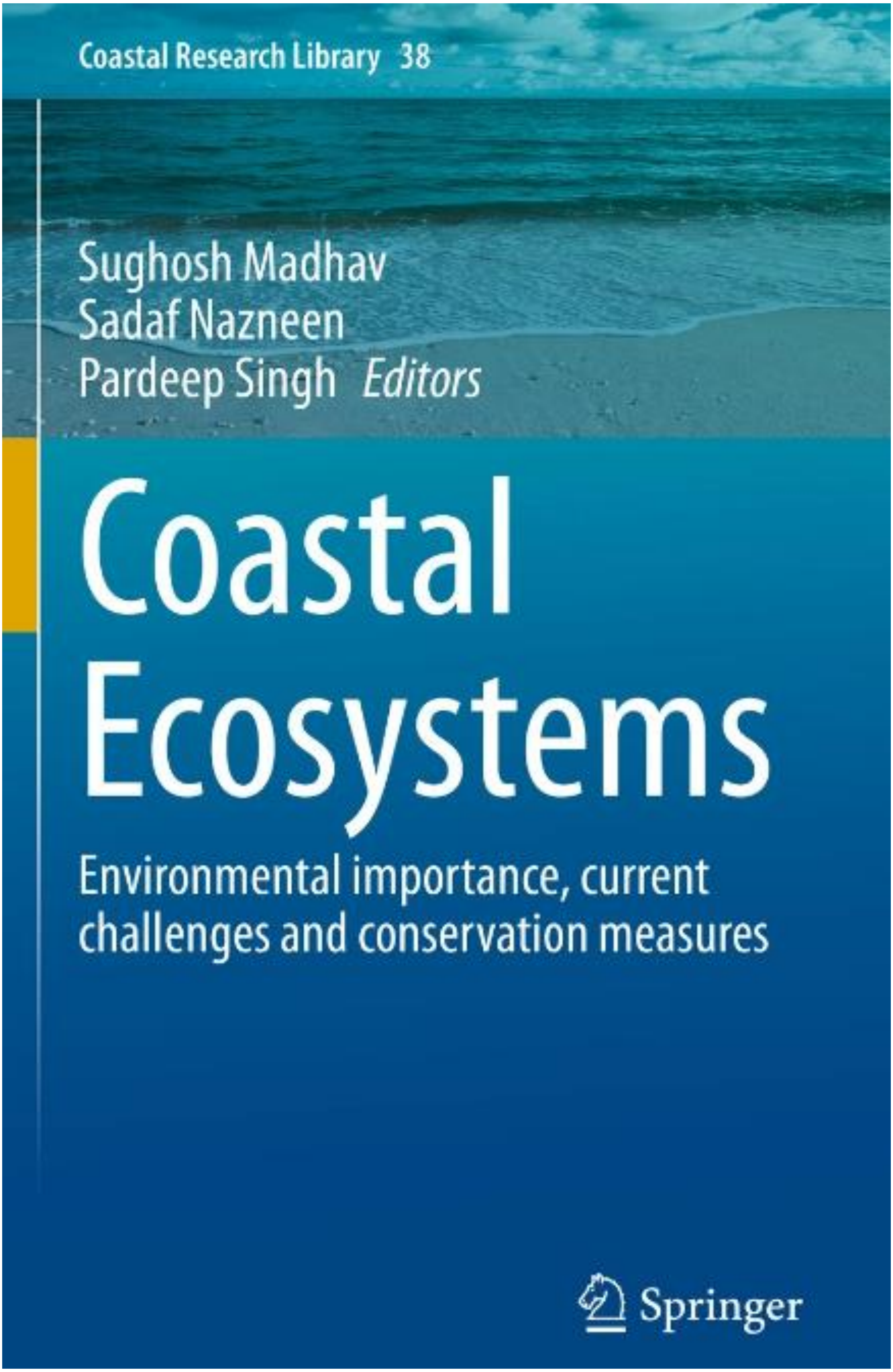
Glacial Morpho-Sedimentology and Processes of Landscape Evolution in Gangotri Glacier Area, Garhwal Himalaya, India

Ali, S.N. , Juyal, N. , 2013. Chronology of late Quaternary glaciations in Indian Himalaya: a critical review. J. Geol. Soc. India. 82, 628–638.
Ambinakudge, S. , 2010. A study of the Gangotri glaciers retreats in the Himalayas using Landsat satellite images. Int. J. Geoinf. 6 (3), 7–12.
Bahuguna, I.M. , Kulkarni, A.V. , Nayak, S. , Rathore, B.P. , Negi, H.S. , Mathur, P. , 2007. Himalayan glacier retreat using IRS 1C PAN stereo data. Int. J. Rem. Sens. 28 (2), 437–442.
Bali, R. , Awasthi, D.D. , Tiwari, N.K. , 2003. Neotectonic control on the geomorphic evolution of the Gangotri glacier Valley, Garhwal Himalaya. Gond. Res. 6, 829–838.
Bali, R. , Chauhan, M.S. , Mishra, A.K. , Ali, S.N. , Tomar, A. , Khan, I. , Singh, D.S. , Srivastava, P. , 2017a. Vegetation and climate change in the temperate-subalpine belt of Himachal Pradesh since 6300 cal. yrs. BP inferred from pollen evidence of Triloknath palaeolake. Quat. Int. 444, 11–23.
Bali, R. , Khan, I. , Sangode, S.J. , Mishra, A.K. , Ali, S.N. , Singh, S.K. , Tripathi, J.K. , Singh, D.S. , Srivastava, P. , 2017b. Mid- to late Holocene climate response from the Triloknath palaeolake, Lahaul Himalaya based on multiproxy data. Geomorphology 284, 206–219.
Barnard, P.L. , Owen, L.A. , Finkel, R.C. , 2004. Style and timing of glacial and paraglacial sedimentation in a monsoon-influenced high Himalayan environment, the upper Bhagirathi Valley, Garhwal Himalaya. Sediment. Geol. 165, 199–221.
Benn, D.I. , Lehmkuhl, F. , 2000. Mass balance and equilibrium-line altitudes of glaciers in high-mountain environments. Quatern. Int. 65–66, 15–29.
Bhambri, R. , Bolch, T. , Chaujar, R.K. , 2012. Frontal recession of Gangotri Glacier, Garhwal Himalayas, from 1965 to 2006 measured through high-resolution remote sensing data. Curr. Sci. 102, 489–494.
Bhattacharya, A. , Bolch, T. , Mukherjee, K. , Pieczonka, T. , Krop´acˇEk, J. , Buchroithner, M.F. , 2016. Overall recession and mass budget of Gangotri Glacier, Garhwal Himalayas, from 1965 to 2015 using remote sensing data. J. Glaciol. 62 (236), 1115–1133.
Bhutiyani, M.R. , Kale, V.S. , Pawar, N.J. , 2009. Climate change and the precipitation variations in the north-western Himalaya: 1866–2006. Int. J. Climatol. 30, 535–548.
Dimri, A.P. , Mohanty, U.C. , 2007. Location-specific prediction of maximum and minimum temperature over the Western Himalayas. Meteorol. Appl. 14, 79–93.
Dobhal, D.P. , Gupta, A.K. , Mehta, M. , Khandelwal, D.D. , 2013. Kedarnath disaster: facts and plausible causes. Curr. Sci. 105(2), 171–174.
Dubey, C.A. , Singh, D.S. , Singh, A.K. , Sangode, S.J. , Kumar, D. , Kumar P ., 2022. Sedimentation pattern of kame terraces and its implication to climatic events in the Gangotri glacier region since 25 Ka BP, Garhwal Himalaya, India. J. Asian Earth Sci. 229, 1–9. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jseaes.2022.105160

Dyurgerov, M.B. , Meier, M.F. , 2000. Twentieth-century climate change: evidence from small glaciers. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 97 (4), 1406–1411.
Gantayat, P. , Kulkarni, A. V. , Srinivasan, J. , 2014. Estimation of ice thickness using surface velocities and slope: a case study at Gangotri Glacier, India. J. Glaciol. 60, 277–282.
Juyal, N. , Pant, R.K. , Basavaiah, N. , Bhushan, R. , Jain, M. , Saini, N.K. , Yadava, M.G. , Saini, N.K. , Singhvi, A.K. , 2009. Reconstruction of last Glacial to early Holocene monsoon variability from relict lake sediments of the higher Central Himalaya, Uttrakhand, India. J. Asian Earth Sci. 34, 437–449.
Juyal, N. , Pant, R.K. , Basavaiah, N. , Yadava, M.G. , Saini, N.K. , Singhvi, A.K. , 2004. Climate and seismicity in the higher Central Himalaya during 20–10 ka: evidence from the Garbayang basin, Uttaranchal, India. Palaeogeogr. Palaeoclimatol. Palaeoecol. 213, 315–330
Kar, R. , Ranhotra, P.S. , Bhattacharayya, A. , Sekar, B. , 2002. Vegetation vis-a-vis climate and glacial fluctuations of the Gangotri glacier since last 2000 years. Curr. Sci. 82, 347–351.
Kumar, D. , Singh, A.K. , Singh, D.S. , 2021b. Spatio-temporal fluctuations over Chorabari glacier, Garhwal Himalaya, India between 1976 and 2017. Quatern. Int. 575–576, 178–189.
Kumar, D. , Singh, A.K. , Taloor, A.K. , Singh, D.S. , 2021a. Recessional pattern of Thelu and Swetvarn glaciers between 1968 and 2019 Bhagirathi basin, Garhwal Himalaya, India. Quatern. Int. 575–576, 227–235.
Kumar, V. , Mehta, M. , Mishra, A. , Trivedi, A. , 2017. Temporal fluctuations and frontal area change of Bangni and Dunagiri glaciers from 1962 to 2013, Dhauliganga Basin, central Himalaya, India. Geomorphology 284, 88–98.
Mehta, M. , Dobhal, D.P. , Pratap, B. , Majeed, Z. , Gupta, A. K. , Srivastava, P. , 2014. Late Quaternary glacial advances in the Tons River Valley, Garhwal Himalaya, India and regional synchronicity. Holocene 24(10), 1336–1350.
Naithani, A.K. , Nainwal, H.C. , Sati, K.K. , Prasad, C. , 2001. Geomorphological evidence of retreat of the Gangotri glacier and its characteristics. Curr. Sci. 80, 87–94.
Owen, L.A. , Kamp, U. , Spencer, J.Q. , Haserodt, K. , 2002. Timing and style of Late Quaternary glaciation in the eastern Hindu Kush, Chitral, northern Pakistan: a review and revision of the glacial chronology based on new optically stimulated luminescence dating. Quatern. Int. 97–98, 41–45.
Rawat, M. S. , Uniyal D.P. , Dobhal, R. , Joshi, V. , Rawat, B.S. , Bartwal, A. , Singh D ., Aswal, A. , 2015. Study of landslide hazard zonation in Mandakini Valley, Rudraprayag district, Uttarakhand using remote sensing and GIS. Curr. Sci. 109, 158–170.
Saxena, A. , Singh, D.S. , 2017. Multiproxy records of vegetation and monsoon variability from the lacustrine sediments of eastern Ganga Plain since 1350 A.D. Quat. Int. 444 (A), 24–34.
Scherler, D. , Bookhagen, B. , Strecker, M.R. , 2011. Spatially variable response of Himalayan glaciers to climate change affected by debris cover. Nat. Geosci. 4 (3), 156–159.
Sharma, M.C. , Owen, L.A. , 1996. Quaternary glacial history of NW Garhwal, central Himalayas. Quat. Sci. Rev. 15(4), 335–365.
Singh, A.K. , Kumar, D. , Kumar, V. , Singh, D.S. , 2020. Study of temporal response (1976–2019) and associated mass movement event (during 2017) of Meru glacier, Bhagirathi valley, Garhwal Himalaya, India. Quatern. Int. 565, 12–21.
Singh, D.S. , 2004. Late quaternary morpho-sedimentary processes in the Gangotri Glacier area garhwal Himalaya, India. Geological Survey of India (Special Publication) 80, 97–103.
Singh, D.S. , 2013a. Snowmelt ephemeral streams in the Gangotri glacier area, Garhwal Himalaya, India. In: Kotlia, B.S. (Ed.), Holocene: Perspectives, Environmental Dynamics and Impact Events. Nova Science Publishers, pp. 157–164.
Singh, D.S. , 2013b. Causes of Kedarnath tragedy and human responsibilities. J. Geol. Soc. India. 82 (3), 303–304.
Singh, D.S. , 2014. Surface Processes during flash floods in the glaciated terrain of Kedarnath, Garhwal Himalaya and their role in the modification of landforms. Curr. Sci. 106(4), 594–597.
Singh, D.S. , 2015. Climate change: past present and future. J. Geol. Soc. India. 85, 634–635.
Singh, D.S. , 2018. Concept of rivers: an introduction for scientific and socio-economic aspects. In: Singh, D.S. (Eds.), The Indian Rivers: Scientific and Socio-Economic Aspects. Springer publication, pp. 1–24.
Singh, D.S. , Agnihotri, R. , 2016. Climate change in the Indian perspective and its societal impacts. Curr. Sci. 110 (6), 964.

Singh, D.S. , Awasthi, A. , 2011a. The implication of drainage basin parameters of Chhoti Gandak river, Ganga Plain, India. J. Geol. Soc. India. 78 (2), 370–378.
Singh, D.S. , Awasthi, A. , 2011b. Natural hazards in the Ghaghara river area, Ganga Plain, India. Nat. Hazards. 57, 213–225.
Singh, D.S. , Dubey, C.A. , Kumar, D. , Kumar, P. , Ravindra, R. , 2018. Climate events between 47.5 and 1 ka BP in glaciated terrain of the Ny-Alesund region, Arctic, using geomorphology and sedimentology of diversified morphological zones. Polar Sci. 18, 123–134.
Singh, D.S. , Dubey, C.A. , Kumar, D. , Vishawakarma, B. , Singh, A.K. , Tripathi, A. , Gautam, P.K. , Bali, R. , Agarwal, K.K. , Sharma, R. , 2019. Monsoon variability and major climatic events between 25 and 0.05 ka BP using sedimentary parameters in the Gangotri Glacier region, Garhwal Himalaya, India. Quatern. Int. 507, 148–155.
Singh, D.S. , Gupta, A.K. , Sangode, S.J. , Clemens, S.C. , Srivastava, P. , Prajapati, S.K. , Prakasam, M. , 2015. Multiproxy record of monsoon variability from the Ganga Plain during 400–1200 A.D. Quat. Int. 371, 157–163.
Singh, D.S. , Mishra, A. , 2001. Gangotri glacier characteristics, retreat and processes of sedimentation in the Bhagirathi valley. Geological Survey of India 65 (3), 17–20.
Singh, D.S. , Mishra, A. , 2002a. Role of tributary glaciers on landscape modification in the Gangotri glacier area, Garhwal Himalaya, India. Curr. Sci. 82 (5), 101–105.
Singh, D.S. , Mishra, A. , 2002b. Gangotri Glacier system: an analysis using GIS technique. In: Pant, C.C. , Sharma, A.K. (Eds.), Aspects of Geology and Environment of the Himalaya. Gyanoday Prakashan, pp. 349–358.
Singh, D.S. , Prajapati, S.K. , Kumar, D. , Awasthi, A. , Bhardwaj, V. , 2013. Sedimentology and channel pattern of the Chhoti Gandak River, Ganga Plain, India. Gondwana Geol. Mag. 28(2), 171–180.
Singh, D.S. , Ravindra, R. , 2011a. Geomorphology of the MidreLoven glacier, Ny-Alesund, Svalbard, Arctic. In: Singh, D.S. , Chhabra, N.L. (Eds.),Geological Processes and Climate Change. Macmillan Publishers India Ltd., pp. 269–281.
Singh, D.S. , Ravindra, R. , 2011b. Control of glacial and fluvial environments in the Ny-Alesund region. Arctic. Mausam. 62(4), 641–646.
Singh, D.S. , Singh, I.B. , 2005. Facies architecture of the Gandak Megafan, Ganga Plain, India. Palaeontol. Soc. India Spec. Pub. l2, 125–140.
Singh, D.S. , Singh, A.K. , Dubey, C.A. , Kumar, D. , Sangode, S.J. , Trivedi, A. , Agnihotri, R. , Singh, J. , 2022. Multi-proxy analysis in the Gangotri Glacier region, Garhwal Himalaya: Glacial stratigraphy and the overview of snout retreat, geomorphic evolution, and palaeoclimate signatures. J. Palaeontol. Soc. India. 67(1), 158–182.
Singh, D.S. , Tangri, A.K. , Kumar, D. , Dubey, C.A. , Bali, R. , 2017. Pattern of retreat and related morphological zones of Gangotri glacier, Garhwal Himalaya, India. Quat. Int. 444, 172–181.
Singh, I.B. , Srivastava, P. , Sharma, S. , Sharma, M. , Singh, D.S. , Rajgopalan, G. , Shukla, U. K. , 1999. Upland interfluve (Doab) deposition: alternative model to muddy overbank deposits. Facies 40, 197–210.
Singh, J. , Yadav, R.R. , Negi, P.S. , Rastogi, T. , 2020. Sub-alpine trees testify late 20th-century rapid retreat of Gangotri glacier, Central Himalaya. Quatern. Int. 565, 31–40.
Singh, P. , Haritashya, U.K. , Kumar, N. , Singh, Y. , 2006. Hydrological characteristics of Gangotri glacier, Central Himalayas, India. J. Hydro. 327 (1–2), 55–67.
Singhvi, A.K. , Krishnan, R. , 2014. Past and the present climate of India. Landscapes and landforms of India. Springer, Netherlands, pp. 15–23.
Srivastava, D. , 2012. Status Report on Gangotri glacier. Himalayan Glaciology Technical Report. Science and Engineering Research Board Department of Science & Technology, pp. 1–116.
Tangri, A.K. , 2002. Shrinking glaciers of Uttaranchal: cause of concern and hope for the future. In: Pant, C.C. , Sharma, A.K. (Eds.), Aspect of geology and environment of the Himalaya. Gyanodaya Prakashan, Nainital, pp. 335–348.
Tangri, A.K. , Chandra, R. , Yadav, S.K.S. , 2004. Temporal monitoring of the snout, Equilibrium line and Ablation zone of Gangotri Glacier through remote sensing and GIS techniques—an attempt at deciphering the climatic variability. Geological Survey of India, Special Publication 80, 145–153.

Trivedi, A. , Singh, D.S. , Chauhan, M.S. , Arya, A. , Bhardwaj, V. , Awasthi, A. , 2011. Vegetation and climate change around Ropan Chhappra Tal in Deoria District, The Central Ganga Plain During the Last 1350 Years. Palaeontol. Soc. India. 56 (1), 39–43.
Zhang, G. , Pan, B. , Cao, B. , Wang, J. , Cui, H. , Cao, X. , 2015. Elevation changes measured during 1966–2010 on the monsoonal temperate glaciers' ablation region, Gongga Mountains, China. Quatern. Int. 371, 49–57.


Coastal Research Library 38
Sughosh Madhav
Sadaf Nazneen
Pardeep Singh *Editors*
Coastal Ecosystems
Environmental importance, current challenges and conservation measures
Springer

Coastal Research Library

Volume 38

Series Editor
Charles W. Finkl
Department of Geosciences
Florida Atlantic University
Boca Raton, FL, USA

The aim of this book series is to disseminate information to the coastal research community. The Series covers all aspects of coastal research including but not limited to relevant aspects of geological sciences, biology (incl. ecology and coastal marine ecosystems), geomorphology (physical geography), climate, littoral oceanography, coastal hydraulics, environmental (resource) management, engineering, and remote sensing. Policy, coastal law, and relevant issues such as conflict resolution and risk management would also be covered by the Series. The scope of the Series is broad and with a unique cross-disciplinary nature. The Series would tend to focus on topics that are of current interest and which carry some import as opposed to traditional titles that are esoteric and non-controversial.

Monographs as well as contributed volumes are welcomed.

More information about this series at http://www.springer.com/series/8795

Sughosh Madhav • Sadaf Nazneen
Pardeep Singh
Editors

Coastal Ecosystems

Environmental importance, current challenges and conservation measures

Springer

Editors
Sughosh Madhav
Shaheed Bhagat Singh College
University of Delhi
Delhi, India

Sadaf Nazneen
Department of Civil Engineering
Jamia Millia Islamia
New Delhi, Delhi, India

Pardeep Singh
PGDAV College
University of Delhi
New Delhi, Delhi, India

ISSN 2211-0577 ISSN 2211-0585 (electronic)
Coastal Research Library
ISBN 978-3-030-84254-3 ISBN 978-3-030-84255-0 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-84255-0

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Contents

Sanjay Kumar Gupta
Sib Sankar Giri *Editors*

Biotechnological Advances in Aquaculture Health Management

Springer

Biotechnological Advances in Aquaculture Health Management

Sanjay Kumar Gupta • Sib Sankar Giri
Editors

Biotechnological Advances in Aquaculture Health Management

Springer

Editors
Sanjay Kumar Gupta
School of Molecular Diagnostic Prophylactics and Nano-Biotechnology (SMDPN), ICAR-Indian Institute of Agricultural Biotechnology
Ranchi, Jharkhand, India

Sib Sankar Giri
Laboratory of Aquatic Biomedicine, College of Veterinary Medicine and Research Institute for Veterinary Science
Seoul National University
Seoul, South Korea

ISBN 978-981-16-5194-6 ISBN 978-981-16-5195-3 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-5195-3

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

Dedicated to
All
COVID-19 Warriors
and Frontline Workers

Foreword

Aquaculture is one of the cheapest animal protein farming practices that has shown tremendous growth over the past few decades. Currently it contributes about 52 percentage of the total fish for human consumption globally (FAO 2020). Asian countries are major drivers that produce about 80 percentage of the total global production and contribute directly and indirectly to economic and food security. To accelerate the production in an ecologically safe and environmentally sound manner, responsible use of resources and quality inputs deserve due care and importance considering the sustainability of aquaculture. However, with the growing demand of the cheap quality protein, unsustainable intensification of the industry has been proliferated and getting popular in several parts of the globe, resulting in growing incidences of disease outbreak. With the further expansion of aquaculture, incidence of outbreaks of infectious disease is also expected to increase multi-fold and even at serious epizootological level, thus causing serious threat and limiting the growth of the industry. Biotechnological applications play a key role in aquaculture health management as it facilitates the rapid and reliable detection and identification of virulent pathogens. In the era of omics evolution, modern state-of-the-art technologies such as transcriptomics, proteomics, metabolomics, microbiomics, RNA interference and cell culture techniques would offer excellent application to decode the molecular mechanism of disease progression and in developing their control and management strategies.

This book has been compiled with chapters that encompass the fundamental facets connected with the biotechnological advances of disease management in aquaculture. Recent advances on the role of various dietary supplements, viz. probiotics, prebiotics, synbiotics, immunostimulants, etc., in health management have also been extensively covered, which would offer enormous benefits to global readers of all categories and also provide insights into the underlying mechanism of health promotion in aquaculture.

I sincerely would like to place a record of appreciation to the book editors and specialist contributors for their sincere efforts in the comprehensive collation of brilliant chapters on biotechnological advances in aquaculture health management. I would like to urge the reader to gain insights from the valuable compilation and to join the editors in this enthralling, exciting and gratifying attempt.

Dilip Kumar

International Civil Service (FAO of UN), ICAR CIFE
Mumbai, India
28 May 2021

Dilip Kumar

Foreword

Aquaculture is a multi-billion-dollar industry that is expanding rapidly to cater to the demands of livelihood and nutritional security of humankind globally. The sector has been confronting serious challenges which are sophisticated and multidimensional. Among these challenges, prevalence of infectious diseases takes the lion's share leading to huge economic losses. The annual loss of revenues incurred due to disease upsurges is estimated to the tune of six billion US dollars. The figure is projected to surpass 40% of the global production with emergent diseases in the shrimp sector. This poses a major threat towards the collapse of the aquaculture industry in several developing nations of Asia. Additionally, there are also upcoming issues of climate change and antimicrobial resistance that have aggravated the risks associated with this sector and need to be addressed judiciously on a priority basis. Hence, it is imperative to upgrade the application of technological advances in this sector under the umbrella of environmental sustainability and health promotion of the cultured species.

Understanding the potential of biotechnological tools such as transcriptomics, metabolomics, microbiomics, genome editing and RNA interference would not only prove to be the cornerstone in tackling the incidence of disease outbreak but also pave the way for the development of diagnostics and curative measures. The importance of disease prevention by boosting the inherent immunity of fish via diet supplementation and vaccination, rather than disease management, would prove to be a paradigm shift in the enhancement of safety against infectious pathogens.

The biotechnological inventions can be applied towards refining the health strategies for qualitative and quantitative production from the aquaculture sector in a holistic manner. This book is a humble effort towards the compilation of the multifarious aspects of technological advances in aquaculture health management.

The book will be useful to readers who are exploring opportunities to make contributions in the field of aquaculture health management. The updated literature survey highlights the voids in the area that may be crucial to realize the potential of blue economy. I applaud the entire team of editors and contributors for putting their best efforts towards building a comprehensive compilation in the form of this book entitled *Biotechnological Advances in Aquaculture Health Management*. It should be helpful to both academicians (students, teachers, researchers) and aqua-preneurs for upgrading their skills and knowledge in the area of aquaculture health management driven by biotechnological advances.

Peter Bossier

Laboratory of Aquaculture and
Artemia Reference Center, Ghent University
Ghent, Belgium
28 May 2021

Preface

Globally, the aquaculture industry has witnessed phenomenal growth in the last two decades that has contributed to enhance the preference of protein-rich meat in the diet of the poorest of the poor. Aquaculture produce are recognized as one of the healthiest foods on the planet, as it holds great promise in transforming food systems, and eradication of hunger as well as malnutrition in numerous developing countries of the world. As per recent reports of FAO, the total fish production is expected to expand from 179 million tonnes in 2018 to 204 million tonnes in 2030. Out of which, aquaculture production is anticipated to touch 109 million tonnes in 2030, an escalation of 32% (26 million tonnes) over 2018 (FAO). With the increasing production, the global average annual fish consumption has also risen to the tune of 20.30 kg in 2017 (FAO). The global aquaculture market is projected to grow with a healthy growth rate of more than 7.1% during the estimated period of 2020–2027. Growing demand for quality fish products has promoted both horizontal and vertical expansion of aquaculture activities globally. However, the major obstacles in the sustainable growth of aquaculture are seriously challenged with the prevalence of disease outbreak caused by a diverse group of infectious pathogens and several non-infectious agents. Such detrimental circumstances often lead to deprived growth, compromised immune response and intense mortality and ultimately hamper the aquaculture production. Therefore, to rescue this sunrise sector, application of biotechnological interventions or tools could be a milestone step to ensure long-term economic and social benefits towards food security. The advent of high-throughput sequencing technology and omics approaches such as genomics, transcriptomics, microbiomics and metabolomics has enabled scientists/researchers not only to understand the complex biological processes and underlying molecular mechanism but also helped in precise and targeted invention of remedial measures to curb huge economic losses to farmers. The development of molecular diagnostics for the identification of diseases, prophylactic measures for control, management and analysis of biological resources are some of the prime concerns that have been detailed in this book. Prevention at the host's end is equally important in this aspect which paves the way to immunomodulation via dietary supplementation of prebiotic, probiotics, synbiotics and immunostimulants. The aquaculture sector needs innovative biotechnological approaches to overcome challenges such as water quality management, rapid disease diagnostic services, disease prevention and management of outbreaks, supply of disease-free or high health broodstock and seed. Of late, biotechnological science is growing rapidly and has endowed us with several new tools and technology to create new horizons in aquaculture, especially health management. Some of the advanced biotechnological approaches such as vaccination, antimicrobial peptides, gene editing, metagenomics, RNA interference and cell culture techniques have shown promising results in managing the health of cultured aquatic organisms over different agro-climatic condition across the globe. Nanotechnology has emerged as an alternative approach with innovative materials and protocols to solve persisting issues in fish health management. Biofloc technology is becoming increasingly popular as an emerging avenue in aquatic animal healthcare and directed to maximize aquaculture productivity by using microbial biotechnology.

Apart from economic potential for the fisheries sector, health management through biotechnology also holds promise for sustainable management of aquaculture practices, which is crucial for the prevention of environmental degradation due to intensive farming within the aquaculture industry.

The editors have tried their best to make comprehensive coverage of the biotechnological advances in aquaculture health management. This book updates the subject matter, illustrations and problems to incorporate new concepts and issues related to biotechnological aspects of health management. The publication of this book has been possible through the enthusiastic support, assistance and cooperation of dedicated scientists/researchers of different institutions working in the areas of aquaculture and fisheries across the globe. The processing and editing of various chapters has taken a long time, and we express our sincere gratitude to all the contributors for bearing with us.

I wish this book would be of immense benefit to researchers, scientists, students, entrepreneurs, and even industry players working in the field of aquaculture, biotechnology, fish health management and fisheries.

Ranchi, Jharkhand, India — Sanjay Kumar Gupta
Seoul, South Korea — Sib Sankar Giri

Acknowledgements

This book is an outcome of continued professional collaboration of both editors. We would like to express our sincere appreciation to all contributors who have contributed to this book in the form of chapters. Critical remarks and suggestions of two anonymous reviewers were very much helpful in picking up several relevant and innovative topics. Indeed, it is our utmost pleasure to acknowledge all the persons who have directly or indirectly helped us in completing this book.

We are immensely grateful to Dr. Dilip Kumar, Ex Director/VC of ICAR CIFE Mumbai, India, and Prof. Dr. ir. Peter Bossier, Director, Laboratory of Aquaculture & Artemia Reference Center, Ghent University, Belgium, for their encouragement, suggestions and support to the young researchers for their contributions in this book.

Unflinching support of family members, students, colleagues, and friends in this pandemic situation is a great source of motivation for us to complete this book.

We would also like to sincerely thank Springer Nature for accepting and publishing this work.

Finally, we would like to bow our heads before Almighty God, whose great power and eternal wisdom has embraced us with strength and audacity to complete this book.

28 May 2021

Sanjay Kumar Gupta
Sib Sankar Giri

"Once you replace negative thoughts with positive ones, you'll start having positive results."
—Willie Nelson

Contents

Editors and Contributors

About the Editors

Sanjay Kumar Gupta, M.F.Sc., Ph.D. is a scientist at the Division of Molecular Diagnostics, Prophylactics and Nano-biotechnology, ICAR-Indian Institute of Agricultural Biotechnology (IIAB), Ranchi, Jharkhand, India. He graduated from the College of Fisheries, Panangad, Kochi, Kerala, and obtained his master's and doctoral degrees from Central Institute of Fisheries Education (CIFE), Mumbai. His major research area focuses on the application of omics technology for qualitative and quantitative enhancement of aquaculture production. He has published more than 60 peer-reviewed research papers in SCIE journals and has delivered numerous oral and posters presentations in diverse international meetings. Dr. Gupta has edited 04 books, authored 02 books, published 40 scientific popular articles 30 book chapters, 10 bulletins, 8 instruction manuals and 6 leaflets. He serves as editor and reviewer for various international scientific journals and has been honoured with several awards of national and international repute for his outstanding contribution to the field of aquaculture. He also has extensive experience working with various aquaculture systems and the application of control measures in aquaculture health management using advanced molecular tools. He was awarded as one of the top global researchers to avail prestigious Endeavour Post-doc Fellowship by Australian Government in 2018.

Sib Sankar Giri, M.Sc., M.Phil., Ph.D. is a senior Research Associate in the Lab of Aquatic Biomedicine, College of Veterinary Medicine and Research Institute for Veterinary Science, Seoul National University (SNU), Seoul, South Korea. He received his Master of Philosophy and Doctor of Philosophy degrees in Biotechnology from Periyar Maniammai Institute of Science & Technology (Erstwhile Periyar Maniammai University), India, in 2008 and 2014, respectively. He has extensive research experience in aquaculture probiotics, fish immunostimulants, and microbial biotechnology. He was the recipient of INSPIRE fellowship from the Department of Science and Technology, Govt of India, for doctoral research. He has published more than hundred research articles in SCIE journals and wrote three book chapters in knowledge-based editions published by renowned international publishers. He co-authored a book titled *Life Within Life-A book on biodiversity*. He is an editorial member of *Scientific Reports*—Nature group, *Frontiers in Microbiology* and *Frontiers in Physiology*. He has worked as Assistant Research Professor at the Lab of Aquatic Biomedicine of SNU (2019–2021). He was awarded prestigious "Brain Pool Fellowship" (2016–2021) by National Research Foundation, Ministry of Science, ICT, and Future Planning, Republic of Korea.

Contributors

Suja Aarattuthodi Thad Cochran National Warmwater Aquaculture Center, Mississippi State University, Stoneville, MS, USA

Thangapalam Jawahar Abraham Department of Aquatic Animal Health, Faculty of Fishery Sciences, West Bengal University of Animal and Fishery Sciences, Kolkata, India

Kazi Rabeya Akther Department of Fish Biology and Genetics, Sylhet Agricultural University, Sylhet, Bangladesh

Bijay Kumar Behera Aquatic Environmental Biotechnology and Nanotechnology (AEBN) Division, ICAR-Central Inland Fisheries Research Institute (CIFRI), Barrackpore, India

Irfan Ahmad Bhat Institute of Life and Environmental Sciences, School of Engineering and Natural Sciences, University of Iceland, Reykjavik, Iceland

Rayees Ahmad Bhat Department of Zoology, Kurukshetra University, Kurukshetra, Haryana, India

Pradyut Biswas College of Fisheries, Central Agricultural University (Imphal), Lembucherra, Tripura, India

Anirban Chakraborty Nitte (Deemed to be University), Nitte University Centre for Science Education and Research (NUCSER), Paneer Campus, Deralakatte, Mangalore, India

Saranya Chakrapani ICAR-Central Institute of Brackishwater Aquaculture, Chennai, India

Tanmoy Gon Choudhury Department of Aquatic Health and Environment, College of Fisheries, Central Agricultural University (Imphal), Lembucherra, Tripura, India

Md. Atick Chowdhury Department of Fish Biology and Genetics, Sylhet Agricultural University, Sylhet, Bangladesh

Basanta Kumar Das ICAR-Central Inland Fisheries Research Institute (CIFRI), Barrackpore, India

Jyoti Prakash Dash Department of Biotechnology, Maharaja Sriram Chandra Bhanja Deo University, (Erstwhile North Orissa University), Baripada, Mayurbhanj, Odisha, India

Vandana Dharan Thad Cochran National Warmwater Aquaculture Center, Mississippi State University, Stoneville, MS, USA

Akhila Dharnappa Sannejal Nitte (Deemed to be University), Nitte University Centre for Science Education and Research, Mangaluru, Karnataka, India

Pranabkanti Dutta Department of Biotechnology, Maharaja Sriram Chandra Bhanja Deo University, (Erstwhile North Orissa University), Baripada, Mayurbhanj, Odisha, India

Md Javed Foysal Faculty of Science and Engineering, Curtin University, Bentley, WA, Australia

Sib Sankar Giri Laboratory of Aquatic Biomedicine, College of Veterinary Medicine and Research Institute for Veterinary Science, Seoul National University, Seoul, South Korea

Girisha S Kallappa College of Fisheries, KVAFSU, Mangalore, India

Amrutha Gopan Centurion University of Technology and Management, Sitapur, Odisha, India

Akruti Gupta Vinoba Bhave University, Hazaribag, Jharkhand, India
ICAR-Indian Institute of Agricultural Biotechnology, Ranchi, Jharkhand, India

Rajan Gupta School of Molecular Diagnostic, Prophylactics and Nanobio-technology (SMDPN), ICAR-Indian Institute of Agricultural Biotechnology, Ranchi, Jharkhand, India

Sanjay Kumar Gupta School of Molecular Diagnostic, Prophylactics and Nanobio-technology (SMDPN), ICAR-Indian Institute of Agricultural Biotechnology, Ranchi, Jharkhand, India

Seyyed Morteza Hoseini Inland Waters Aquatics Resources Research Center, Iranian Fisheries Sciences Research Institute, Agricultural Research, Education and Extension Organization, Gorgan, Iran

Hussna Faculty of Fisheries, SKUAST K, Ganderbal, Jammu and Kashmir, India

Indrani Karunasagar University Enclave, Medical Sciences Complex, Nitte (Deemed to be University), Deralakatte, Mangalore, India

Md. Idrish Raja Khan Department of Aquatic Health and Environment, College of Fisheries, Central Agricultural University (Imphal), Lembucherra, Tripura, India

George Seghal Kiran Department of Food Science and Technology, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Neeraj Kumar ICAR-National Institute of Abiotic Stress Management, Baramati, Pune, India

Satendra Kumar Krishi Vigyan Kendra (JNKVV), Dindori, Madhya Pradesh, India

Saurav Kumar Aquatic Environment and Health Management Division, ICAR-Central Institute of Fisheries Education, Mumbai, India

Vikash Kumar Aquatic Environmental Biotechnology and Nanotechnology (AEBN) Division, ICAR-Central Inland Fisheries Research Institute (CIFRI), Barrackpore, India

Pushpa Kumari Aquatic Environment and Health Management Division, ICAR-Central Institute of Fisheries Education, Mumbai, India

Rakhi Kumari Fish Nutrition and Physiology Division, ICAR-Central Institute of Freshwater Aquaculture, Bhubaneswar, Odisha, India

Biswajit Maiti Nitte (Deemed to be University), Nitte University Centre for Science Education and Research (NUCSER), Paneer Campus, Deralakatte, Mangalore, India

Sukham Munilkumar ICAR-Central Institute of Fisheries Education, Kolkata Centre, Kolkata, West Bengal, India

Marjana Jannat Munni Department of Fish Biology and Genetics, Sylhet Agricultural University, Sylhet, Bangladesh

Myung-Hwa Jung Hanseo University, Chung-Nam, South Korea

Sukanta Kumar Nayak Department of Biotechnology, Maharaja Sriram Chandra Bhanja Deo University, (Erstwhile North Orissa University), Takatpur, Baripada, Mayurbhanj, Odisha, India

T. Vijaya Nirmala Krishi Vigyan Kendra, Dr.YSR Horticultural University, West Godavari, Andhra Pradesh, India

Esakkiraj Palanichamy ICAR-Central Institute of Brackishwater Aquaculture, Chennai, India

Akshaya Panigrahi ICAR - Central Institute of Brackishwater Aquaculture, Chennai, India

Se Chang Park Laboratory of Aquatic Biomedicine, College of Veterinary Medicine and Research Institute for Veterinary Science, Seoul National University, Seoul, South Korea

Prasanna Kumar Patil ICAR - Central Institute of Brackishwater Aquaculture, Chennai, India

Anirban Paul Fish Health Management Division, ICAR-Central Institute of Freshwater Aquaculture, Bhubaneswar, Odisha, India

Nilesh A. Pawar ICAR-Central Marine Fisheries Research Institute, Mumbai Regional Station, Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

Sweta Pradhan Aquaculture Production and Environment Division, ICAR-Central Institute of Freshwater Aquaculture, Bhubaneswar, Odisha, India

Ramya Premanath Krishi Vigyan Kendra, Dr.YSR Horticultural University, West Godavari, Andhra Pradesh, India

Manisha Priyam School of Molecular Diagnostics, Prophylactics and Nanobiotechnology (SMDPN), ICAR-Indian Institute of Agricultural Biotechnology, Ranchi, Jharkhand, India

Ashwath Priyanka Nitte (Deemed to be University), Nitte University Centre for Science Education and Research, Mangaluru, Karnataka, India

Riya Rajeev Department of Microbiology, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Devivaraprasad Reddy Alla Krishi Vigyan Kendra, Dr.YSR Horticultural University, West Godavari, Andhra Pradesh, India

V. J. Rejish Kumar Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies, Kochi, India

Miriam Reverter Institute of Chemistry and Biology of the Marine Environment (ICBM), Carl von Ossietzky Universität Oldenburg, Wilhelmshaven, Germany

Nirmal Chandra Roy Department of Fish Biology and Genetics, Sylhet Agricultural University, Sylhet, Bangladesh

Suvra Roy Aquatic Environmental Biotechnology and Nanotechnology (AEBN) Division, ICAR-Central Inland Fisheries Research Institute (CIFRI), Barrackpore, India

Biplab Sarkar School of Molecular Diagnostic, Prophylactics and Nanobiotechnology (SMDPN), ICAR-Indian Institute of Agricultural Biotechnology, Ranchi, Jharkhand, India

Sudeshna Sarker Department of Aquatic Animal Health, Faculty of Fishery Sciences, West Bengal University of Animal and Fishery Sciences, Kolkata, India

Shailesh Saurabh Aquaculture Production and Environment Division, ICAR-Central Institute of Freshwater Aquaculture, Bhubaneswar, Odisha, India

P. S. Seethalakshmi Department of Microbiology, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Joseph Selvin Department of Microbiology, Pondicherry University, Puducherry, India

Siddaiah GM Fish Nutrition and Physiology Division, ICAR-Central Institute of Freshwater Aquaculture, Bhubaneswar, Odisha, India

Soibam Khogen Singh College of Fisheries, Central Agricultural University (Imphal), Lembucherra, Tripura, India

Tincy Varghese Fish Nutrition, Biochemistry and Physiology Division, ICAR-Central Institute of Fisheries Education, Mumbai, India

Vinay TN ICAR - Central Institute of Brackishwater Aquaculture, Chennai, India

Wenzhi Wei College of Animal Science and Technology, Yangzhou University, Yangzhou, China

Hui Yang College of Animal Science and Technology, Yangzhou University, Yangzhou, China

Yingying Zhang College of Animal Science and Technology, Yangzhou University, Yangzhou, China

Balamuralikrishnan Balasubramanian
Wen-Chao Liu
Govindharajan Sattanathan *Editors*

Aquaculture Science and Engineering

Springer

Aquaculture Science and Engineering

Balamuralikrishnan Balasubramanian •
Wen-Chao Liu • Govindharajan Sattanathan
Editors

Aquaculture Science and Engineering

Springer

Editors
Balamuralikrishnan Balasubramanian
Department of Food Science and Biotechnology
Sejong University
Seoul, Korea (Republic of)

Wen-Chao Liu
Department of Animal Science
Guangdong Ocean University
Zhanjiang, China

Govindharajan Sattanathan
Department of Zoology
St.Joseph University
Dimapur, Nagaland, India

ISBN 978-981-19-0816-3 ISBN 978-981-19-0817-0 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-0817-0

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

Preface

Aquaculture has the potential to contribute significantly to universal food sanctuary, but new venture is required to light expected request. In general, aquaculture's small-scale and organic growing has made it tough to normalize, contributing to an extreme level of risk for new investors. Aquaculture's major risk factors are primarily determined by water management, production intensity, and the proximity of fish farms to one another. Aquaculture now has a place of importance in fisheries administrations and private sector industries, despite decades of hesitation or outright skepticism. Though aquaculture has been a way of life for farmers in many Asian countries for centuries, its status in terms of global food production, aquatic resource management, and rural socioeconomic development has remained a point of contention until recently. With changes in global fisheries and the spectacular success of certain types of aquaculture ventures, the scenario has changed dramatically.

Aquaculture is a vital and rapidly expanding segment of global agriculture. Soon, new technological advancements and increased demand for fish as an animal protein source are expected to accelerate the industry's growth. As the industry grows, the cultivation methods have become more intensive to produce higher yields per unit area. In intensive culture operations, infectious disease is the leading cause of financial loss. Current disease treatment options in both developing and developed countries are partial to a small amount of government-approved antibiotics or chemotherapeutics that are only marginally effective. High cost, creation of antibiotic-resistant pathogens, required withdrawal period, and ecological contamination are some of the issues that arise from the use of the drugs, whether through medicated diets or water treatments. Aqua culturists are interested in developing cost-effective preventative measures to prevent outbreaks or reduce the severity of epizootics for these reasons. One such preventive measure is the development of various nutritional strategies that may reduce or eliminate diseases, which the aquaculture industry is currently investigating.

Over the past era, scientists have recognized the importance of nutrition in maintaining the health of humans and other animal species, including fish. Humans and other terrestrial animals were the focus of previous research on the links between nutrition, immune response, and disease resistance. However, attempts to conduct similar studies using fish have met with limited success in the last two decades due to a lack of understanding of the immune response in fish. Evidence from unintentional or intentional infection of fish in some of these nutritional studies suggests that most, if not all, dietary nutrients have an impact on immune role and disease resistance. A nutrient deficiency or excess could have a significant impact on fish infection and survival, owing to its effects on host defense mechanisms.

Other factors that affect fish health include nutrient bioavailability and interactions, the occurrence of immunostimulants and toxins, and feeding organization. This clearly demonstrates the potential role of nutrition in improving fish immune response and disease resistance. The book contains the chapters on nutrition, feed and feed additives, ecology, immunology, microbiology, toxicology, biochemistry, nanotechnology, pharmacology, and biotechnology, among other fields of basic and applied research. The chapters will serve as introductions to these fields and up-to-date reviews of recent research advances. This book is intended for a wide range of readers, including nutritionists, disease specialists, feed formulators, students, extension specialists, and farmers, as well as university teachers, graduates, and doctoral students in zoology, physiology, aquaculture, and biology in general.

Our sincere gratitude goes to the contributors for their insights on applications of various feed additives in aqua sector.

We sincerely thank Dr William Achauer, Director, Springer; Dr Anil Chandy, Managing Director, Springer; Ms. Emmy Lee, Associate Editor, Biomedicine & Life Science Books, for their generous assistance, constant support, and patience in finalizing this book.

Seoul, Korea (Republic of) Balamuralikrishnan Balasubramanian
Zhanjiang, China Wen-Chao Liu
Dimapur, Nagaland, India Govindharajan Sattanathan

Contents

Editors and Contributors

About the Editors

B. Balamuralikrishnan, Ph.D., is an assistant professor in the Department of Food Science and Biotechnology, Sejong University, Seoul, South Korea. His area of research focuses multidisciplinary of biological science in molecular genetics, food microbiology, animal science, nutrition science and food biotechnology, especially food resources and microbiological science. His interests include nutrition in aquaculture; synthesis of bioactive compounds from natural by-products and their applications in nutraceutical products; and isolation and characterization of probiotic for food/feed supplementation and biological field. To his credit, he has participated in various international symposia and conferences in the USA, Canada, Japan, Austria, Italy, Czech Republic, Thailand, and South Korea and has published more than 100 research papers in international journal of repute. He has been serving as academic editor in Journal of "PlosOne" and guest editor in Animals [MDPI] and act as potential reviewer in many high-reputed journals. He is a life member in various scientific societies such as The Korean Society of Food Science and Technology, Poultry Science Association, Korean Society of Animal Science and Technology, and Animal Nutrition Society of India (ANSI). Dr. B. Balamuralikrishnan worked as post-doctoral researcher in the Department of Animal Science, Dankook University, Cheonan, South Korea, and research assistant in the Department of Zoology, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, India.

Wen-Chao Liu, Ph.D., is an associate professor in the Department of Animal Science, College of Coastal Agricultural Sciences, Guangdong Ocean University, China. His area of research focuses on animal nutrition and feed science, especially the nutritional regulation of immune response and redox status in stressed animals. His interests include extraction of bioactive compounds and synthesis of nanomaterials from natural by-products (especially the marine source) and their applications for animals and aquaculture. He has published more than 50 research papers in international peer-review journals, four of the papers were selected as Essential Science Indicators (ESI) Highly Cited Papers. He acted as potential reviewer in many high-reputed journals. He is a life member and director in various scientific societies such as Animal Ecology Branch of Chinese Society of Animal Husbandry and Veterinary Medicine, Animal Welfare and Healthy Production Branch of Chinese Society of Animal Husbandry and Veterinary Medicine.

Govindharajan Sattanathan, Ph.D., is an assistant professor at MASS College of Arts and Science and the Department of Life Science at Bharathidasan University, Trichy, Tamil Nadu, India, and is the author or co-author of seven peer-reviewed journal articles and eight conference papers and a newsletter. He is a reviewer and editorial board member of several peer-reviewed journals. He has been an active member of the organizing committees of several national and international seminars and conferences. He received a B.Sc. and M.Sc. (Zoology) from Government Arts College (Autonomous), Kumbakonam, Tamil Nadu, India. After graduating from Government Arts College (Autonomous), Kumbakonam, affiliated to Bharathidasan University, Trichy, he was selected UGC Project Fellow (Major Research Project) in Government College for Women (Autonomous), Kumbakonam, for the Ph.D. doctoral programme. He worked as an assistant professor in MASS College of

Arts and Science (Affiliated to Bharathidasan University, Trichy—24), Kumbakonam—612 501, Thanjavur, Tamil Nadu, India, from Nov 2017 to Feb 2021. Currently, he is working as an assistant professor and head, Department of Zoology, Sacred Heart Arts and Science College, Perani—605 651, Tindivanam, Villupuram, Tamil Nadu, India, from March 2021.

Contributors

M. Abinaya Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Trichy, Tamil Nadu, India

S. Adhithya Sankar CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

Juhee Ahn College of Biomedical Science, Department of Medical Biomaterials Engineering, Kangwon National University, Chuncheon, Republic of Korea

Isamma AkbarAli School of Ocean Science and Technology, Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies, Cochin, Kerala, India

Naif Abdullah Al-Dhabi Department of Botany and Microbiology, College of Science, King Saud University, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia

G. Allwyn Vyas CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

Vijaya Anand Arumugam Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Mariadhas Valan Arasu Department of Botany and Microbiology, College of Science, King Saud University, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia

B. Balamuralikrishnan Department of Food Science and Biotechnology, Sejong University, Seoul, South Korea

Preethi Basavaraju Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Haripriya Kuchi Bhotla Bioknowl Insights Private Limited, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Waleewan Changpasert Division of Food Science and Technology Management, Faculty of Science and Technology, Rajamangala University of Technology Thanyaburi, Pathum Thani, Thailand

Aarranee Chotiko Division of Food Science and Technology Management, Faculty of Science and Technology, Rajamangala University of Technology Thanyaburi, Pathum Thani, Thailand

Alexander Chouljenko Department of Food Bioprocessing and Nutrition Sciences, North Carolina State University, Center for Marine Sciences and Technology, Morehead City, NC, USA

Maheswaran Easwaran College of Veterinary Medicine and Research Institute of Veterinary Medicine, Chungnam National University, Daejeon, Republic of Korea

Murugesh Easwaran Bioknowl Insights Private Limited, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Damaris Eveline Department of Biomedical Engineering, Sethu Institute of Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

Jannathul Firdous Cluster for Integrative Physiology and Molecular Medicine (CIPMM), Faculty of Medicine, Royal College of Medicine Perak, Ipoh, Perak, Malaysia

Utthapon Issara Division of Food Science and Technology Management, Faculty of Science and Technology, Rajamangala University of Technology Thanyaburi, Pathum Thani, Thailand

Nayana Jagannath Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

Saranya Jayaram Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

T. Karpagam Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Tiruchirappalli, India

Hemalatha Karuppiah Department of Biomedical Engineering, Sethu Institute of Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

Bharathi Kathirvel Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Abhay Kumar Prajakt Life Science Pvt Ltd, Surat, Gujarat, India

Kruthi Ashok Kumar Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Shobana Kumar Sri Visalakshi College for Women, Tamil Nadu, India

Wen-Chao Liu Department of Animal Science, College of Coastal Agricultural Sciences, Guangdong Ocean University, Zhanjiang, P. R. China

Vignesh Marimuthu Prajakt Life Science Pvt Ltd, Surat, Gujarat, India

Swetha M. Menon Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Arun Meyyazhagan Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

Kaviya Mohandass Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

K. Mohan PG Research Department of Zoology, Sri Vasavi College, Erode, Tamil Nadu, India

N. Monford Paul Abishek Department of Biological Sciences, College of Biological Sciences and Biotechnology, Chungnam National University, Daejeon, Republic of Korea

T. Muralisankar Aquatic Ecology Laboratory, Department of Zoology, School of Life Sciences, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Arjunan Nareshkumar Department of Zoology, School of Life Sciences, Periyar University, Salem, India

Sampathkumar Palanisamy Department of Chemistry and Biosciences, SASTRA University—SRC, Tamil Nadu, India

Manikantan Pappuswamy Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

Shyamsundar Paul Prajakt Life Science Pvt Ltd, Surat, Gujarat, India

Ponnirul Ponmanickam Department of Zoology, Ayya Nadar Janaki Ammal College, Sivakasi, Tamil Nadu, India

Karthika Pushparaj Department of Zoology, School of Biosciences, Avinashilingam Institute for Home Science and Higher Education for Women, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Divya Kandathil Radhakrishnan School of Ocean Science and Technology, Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies, Cochin, Kerala, India

Nageshwari Raja Department of Biomedical Engineering, Sethu Institute of Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

Manoharan Rajesh Department of Biochemistry, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Manikandan Ramasamy Department of Biochemistry, University, M.I.E.T. Arts and Science College, Tiruchirappalli, Tamil Nadu, India

Mythili Ravichandran Department of Microbiology, K. S. Rangasamy College of Arts and Science, Tiruchengode, Namakkal, Tamil Nadu, India

Rengasamy Lakshminarayanan Rengarajan Department of Zoology, Bharathidasan University, Tiruchirappalli, Tamil Nadu, India

Sumathi Chettipalayam Samiappan Department of Chemistry and Biosciences, SASTRA University – SRC, Tamil Nadu, India

Vetriselvi Sampath Department of Animal Resource & Science, Dankook University, Chungnam, South Korea

K. Sapthami CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

V. Saradhasri Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Trichy, Tamil Nadu, India

Anurag Deendayal Sarawagi Prajakt Life Science Pvt Ltd, Surat, Gujarat, India

Suma Sarojini Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

A. Shanmugapriya Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Trichy, Tamil Nadu, India

Hyun-Jin Shin College of Veterinary Medicine and Research Institute of Veterinary Medicine, Chungnam National University, Daejeon, Republic of Korea

Bhadrapriya Sivakumar Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India
Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

R. Sridevi Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Trichy, Tamil Nadu, India

Liya Merin Stanly CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

V. Suganya Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Trichy, Tamil Nadu, India

Shanmugam Sureshkumar Department of Animal Resource & Science, Dankook University, Chungnam, South Korea

Sreehari Suresh CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

Sangeetha Thangavelu Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Basheer Thazeem Integrated Rural Technology Centre (IRTC), Palakkad, Kerala, India

V. Udhayakumar PG Research Department of Zoology, Sri Vasavi College, Erode, Tamil Nadu, India

Mridul Umesh Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

B. Varalakshmi Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Tiruchirappalli, India

S. Velayuthaprabhu Department of Biotechnology, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, India

Kannan Vijayarani Department of Education, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Yue Zhao Department of Animal Science, College of Coastal Agricultural Sciences, Guangdong Ocean University, Zhanjiang, P. R. China

Aquatic Lectins

Preetham Elumalai • Baskaralingam Vaseeharan • Sreeja Lakshmi
Editors

Aquatic Lectins

Immune Defense, Biological Recognition and Molecular Advancements

Springer

Editors
Preetham Elumalai
Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry, School of Marine Sciences
Cochin University of Science and Technology
Cochin, Kerala, India

Sreeja Lakshmi
School of Ocean Science and Technology
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Cochin, Kerala, India

Baskaralingam Vaseeharan
Department of Animal Health and Management
Alagappa University
Karaikudi, Tamil Nadu, India

ISBN 978-981-19-0431-8 ISBN 978-981-19-0432-5 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-0432-5

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

I dedicate this book to my parents who taught me to face life with enthusiasm and perseverance and whose encouraging words instigated me to pursue my dreams and succeed in life.

Preetham Elumalai

Foreword

It is a great pleasure to write a foreword for the book *Aquatic Lectins: Immune Defense, Biological Recognition and Molecular Advancements*" edited by Dr. Preetham Elumalai, Dr. Baskaralingam Vaseeharan, and Dr. Sreeja Lakshmi. I am sure that this book will prove to be good reading material for upcoming academicians, researchers, and students.

The curiosity and questions put into a chain of series end up in novel findings that open up new fields of science. The traditional aspect is extended nowadays by contemporary knowledge on methodologies renovating the applicability of advanced and novel ideas of young scientific minds. The success of a study is when it reaches towards the betterment of society. Lectins, indeed a new category, are found to be a highly debated scientific component pertaining to their ability to defend the invading pathogens and conferring immunity.

Preserving healthy environments and practices to improve disease management by enhancing the innate immune response is a highly debated current topic. Lectins hold a pivotal role in disease resistance, having been identified as proteins that possess a specific carbohydrate-binding site. Apart from the widespread natural existence, lectins can also be synthesized by the recombinant technology.

I found the vision of the book very innovative in applied science pertaining to modern knowledge that guides young researchers to take up research activities in the related area in order to extend the basic knowledge on advanced immunological parameters contributed by lectins for researchers/academicians working in the current area.

I am sure this book will captivate a wide readership, and I appreciate the sincere efforts by the authors and editors for bringing this compendium.

Shri. Parshottam Rupala
The Hon'ble Minister for Fisheries,
Animal Husbandry & Dairying
Government of India, Krishi Bhawan
New Delhi, India

Foreword

I consider it a great privilege to have an opportunity to pen this foreword for the book entitled *Aquatic Lectins: Immune Defense, Biological Recognition and Molecular Advancements*. I sincerely believe this important volume must be the output of the long years of research experience in the subject and concerted efforts of Dr. E.-P. Preetham and co-editors Dr. B. Vaseeharan and Dr. Sreeja Lakshmi. The book provides an overview of lectins with special reference to their therapeutic applications and emphasizes their sweeping development in immune defense properties. Each chapter of this book is intended to provide specific aspects of lectins, and I am sure readers will be able to explore the basics of the elaborative biological functions of aquatic lectins. I truly complement the authors and editors for their efforts to gather and integrate all related information for the successful outcome of this book.

Ever since the term Lectin was coined by Prof. Boyd during the 1960s, the research on lectin, particularly its function in the immune system, witnessed phenomenal growth. Lectin is widely distributed in bacteria, fungi, viruses, plants, and animals. Even the skin of several animal species, including fish, is identified to be a rich source of novel and new unreported lectins. In addition to this, skin mucus, stomach, liver, intestine, gills, eggs, and plasma of fish are reported to have lectins.

Different types of lectins such as ficolins, galectins, calnexin, pentraxin, F-type lectins, intelectins, and mannose-binding protein (MBP) are known to play important roles in innate immunity and disease resistance. Other main functions of fish lectins are agglutination of bacteria, fungi, parasites, and viruses, immobilization with complement-mediated neutralization and death of pathogens.

Lectins not only have roles in cellular recognition but also interact with carbohydrates. The complement system plays a vital role in protecting against invading microorganisms and acts through three activation pathways: the classic, alternative, and lectin pathways. In the lectin pathway, upon binding of the Mannan-binding lectin serine protease (MASPs) complexes to carbohydrates on the surface of pathogens, MASPs are activated and cleave the complement components C4 and C2. This results in the elimination of pathogens after a chain reaction of proteolysis of complement components and protein assembly. However, this defense mechanism is poorly understood in fish. Therefore, identification of immune-related genes and studying their expression patterns during these pathways are imperative. The book comprehensively provides up-to-date information on lectin-immune system pathways and immune gene expression analysis.

I truly appreciate the authors for their scholarly contributions to cover a wide range of aspects of lectins including their classifications, functions, and characterizations. I am sure the book will excite, educate, and encourage the next generation of researchers in exploring the ever-expanding field of lectin research.

Dr. J. K. Jena
Indian Council of Agricultural Research
Krishi Anusandhan Bhavan-II
Pusa, New Delhi, India

Foreword

The discovery and characterization of the first lectin (named “agglutinin” at the time) from the edible snail *Helix pomatia* by Camus in 1899 promoted a series of follow-up studies, initially in aquatic invertebrates and later in vertebrates, that eventually led to the realization that carbohydrate-binding proteins are ubiquitous in animal taxa. Although the initial studies were focused on the carbohydrate specificity of the newly discovered proteins, the lack of true immunoglobulin antibodies in invertebrate species suggested that they may represent their functional analogues as recognition proteins involved in defense against microbial pathogens. Since then, this book *Aquatic Lectins: Immune Defense, Biological Recognition and Molecular Advancements* edited by Drs. P. Elumalai, V. Baskaralingam, and S. Lakshmi is the first collection of review articles focused on lectins from aquatic organisms encompassing taxa from algae to invertebrates and fish, and their roles in innate immunity.

Lectins are carbohydrate-binding proteins that among multiple biological functions play key roles in innate immunity. For example, multivalent lectins can recognize a wide range of microbial pathogens, immobilize them by cross-linking, and promote their uptake and killing by phagocytic cells. Lectins are characterized by a carbohydrate recognition domain (CRD), and based on their structural fold and unique sequence motifs in their CRDs, these proteins are classified into several families, such as C-, P-, F-, R-, and I-types, galectins, ficolins, and pentraxins, all known to play important roles in a variety of functions. The binding properties towards microbial surface structures have led to the inclusion of some lectins as pattern-recognition receptors (PRRs), a heterogeneous group of molecules that recognize microbial-associated molecular patterns (MAMPs) shared by broad classes of microorganisms. As cell surface components are essential for the microbe's survival, MAMPs are highly conserved among different microbial pathogens, and their structural features are widely recognized by innate immune receptors in their potential hosts.

Aquatic animals rely on a variety of recognition and effector factors for defense against potential infectious agents. Invertebrates lack the typical adaptive immunity of vertebrates characterized by immunoglobulins, B and T cells, and mostly rely on diverse repertoires of lectins, antimicrobial peptides, and other innate immune factors for defense against viral, bacterial, parasitic, and fungal infection. Further, although both cartilaginous and bony fish display most components of the adaptive immunity of mammals, they also depend on lectins for the rapid and effective responses targeting invading microorganisms. In both invertebrates and vertebrates, the recognition properties of lectins are amply complemented by their effector and regulatory functions that enable not only the rapid destruction of the potential pathogen, for example by the complement pathway, but also the activation and regulation of adaptive immune mechanisms.

The chapters of this book systematically and comprehensively address the recognition, effector, and regulatory functions of lectins from aquatic animals and algae, as well as their impact on biomedical sciences, including applications in diagnosis and novel therapeutic approaches. The chapters have been selected based on examples of different lectin families from a variety of animal species, in an attempt to provide an integrated view of the biological functions of these proteins that have been characterized by the implementation of interdisciplinary experimental approaches to relevant examples from different aquatic taxa.

It is clear that the future discovery of novel lectins from aquatic organisms will continue to increase the current repertory of defense molecules that are active in these organisms, and contribute to our knowledge about their structural, functional, and evolutionary relationships, as well as their potential translational value for biomedicine and aquaculture. In this regard, the editors and authors of the first edition of this book have engaged in the commendable task of organizing and integrating a substantial body of information in this field, and the resulting volume will be a very useful resource for a wide readership.

Prof. Gerardo R. Vasta
Microbiology and Immunology
Institute of Marine and
Environmental Technology
Baltimore, MD, USA

Contents

Balamuralikrishnan Balasubramanian
Wen-Chao Liu
Govindharajan Sattanathan *Editors*

Aquaculture Science and Engineering

Springer

Aquaculture Science and Engineering

Balamuralikrishnan Balasubramanian •
Wen-Chao Liu • Govindharajan Sattanathan
Editors

Aquaculture Science and Engineering

Springer

Editors
Balamuralikrishnan Balasubramanian
Department of Food Science and Biotechnology
Sejong University
Seoul, Korea (Republic of)

Wen-Chao Liu
Department of Animal Science
Guangdong Ocean University
Zhanjiang, China

Govindharajan Sattanathan
Department of Zoology
St.Joseph University
Dimapur, Nagaland, India

ISBN 978-981-19-0816-3 ISBN 978-981-19-0817-0 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-19-0817-0

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

Preface

Aquaculture has the potential to contribute significantly to universal food sanctuary, but new venture is required to light expected request. In general, aquaculture's small-scale and organic growing has made it tough to normalize, contributing to an extreme level of risk for new investors. Aquaculture's major risk factors are primarily determined by water management, production intensity, and the proximity of fish farms to one another. Aquaculture now has a place of importance in fisheries administrations and private sector industries, despite decades of hesitation or outright skepticism. Though aquaculture has been a way of life for farmers in many Asian countries for centuries, its status in terms of global food production, aquatic resource management, and rural socioeconomic development has remained a point of contention until recently. With changes in global fisheries and the spectacular success of certain types of aquaculture ventures, the scenario has changed dramatically.

Aquaculture is a vital and rapidly expanding segment of global agriculture. Soon, new technological advancements and increased demand for fish as an animal protein source are expected to accelerate the industry's growth. As the industry grows, the cultivation methods have become more intensive to produce higher yields per unit area. In intensive culture operations, infectious disease is the leading cause of financial loss. Current disease treatment options in both developing and developed countries are partial to a small amount of government-approved antibiotics or chemotherapeutics that are only marginally effective. High cost, creation of antibiotic-resistant pathogens, required withdrawal period, and ecological contamination are some of the issues that arise from the use of the drugs, whether through medicated diets or water treatments. Aqua culturists are interested in developing cost-effective preventative measures to prevent outbreaks or reduce the severity of epizootics for these reasons. One such preventive measure is the development of various nutritional strategies that may reduce or eliminate diseases, which the aquaculture industry is currently investigating.

Over the past era, scientists have recognized the importance of nutrition in maintaining the health of humans and other animal species, including fish. Humans and other terrestrial animals were the focus of previous research on the links between nutrition, immune response, and disease resistance. However, attempts to conduct similar studies using fish have met with limited success in the last two decades due to a lack of understanding of the immune response in fish. Evidence from unintentional or intentional infection of fish in some of these nutritional studies suggests that most, if not all, dietary nutrients have an impact on immune role and disease resistance. A nutrient deficiency or excess could have a significant impact on fish infection and survival, owing to its effects on host defense mechanisms.

Other factors that affect fish health include nutrient bioavailability and interactions, the occurrence of immunostimulants and toxins, and feeding organization. This clearly demonstrates the potential role of nutrition in improving fish immune response and disease resistance. The book contains the chapters on nutrition, feed and feed additives, ecology, immunology, microbiology, toxicology, biochemistry, nanotechnology, pharmacology, and biotechnology, among other fields of basic and applied research. The chapters will serve as introductions to these fields and up-to-date reviews of recent research advances. This book is intended for a wide range of readers, including nutritionists, disease specialists, feed formulators, students, extension specialists, and farmers, as well as university teachers, graduates, and doctoral students in zoology, physiology, aquaculture, and biology in general.

Our sincere gratitude goes to the contributors for their insights on applications of various feed additives in aqua sector.

We sincerely thank Dr William Achauer, Director, Springer; Dr Anil Chandy, Managing Director, Springer; Ms. Emmy Lee, Associate Editor, Biomedicine & Life Science Books, for their generous assistance, constant support, and patience in finalizing this book.

Seoul, Korea (Republic of) — Balamuralikrishnan Balasubramanian
Zhanjiang, China — Wen-Chao Liu
Dimapur, Nagaland, India — Govindharajan Sattanathan

Contents

Editors and Contributors

About the Editors

B. Balamuralikrishnan, Ph.D., is an assistant professor in the Department of Food Science and Biotechnology, Sejong University, Seoul, South Korea. His area of research focuses multidisciplinary of biological science in molecular genetics, food microbiology, animal science, nutrition science and food biotechnology, especially food resources and microbiological science. His interests include nutrition in aquaculture; synthesis of bioactive compounds from natural by-products and their applications in nutraceutical products; and isolation and characterization of probiotic for food/feed supplementation and biological field. To his credit, he has participated in various international symposia and conferences in the USA, Canada, Japan, Austria, Italy, Czech Republic, Thailand, and South Korea and has published more than 100 research papers in international journal of repute. He has been serving as academic editor in Journal of "PlosOne" and guest editor in Animals [MDPI] and act as potential reviewer in many high-reputed journals. He is a life member in various scientific societies such as The Korean Society of Food Science and Technology, Poultry Science Association, Korean Society of Animal Science and Technology, and Animal Nutrition Society of India (ANSI). Dr. B. Balamuralikrishnan worked as post-doctoral researcher in the Department of Animal Science, Dankook University, Cheonan, South Korea, and research assistant in the Department of Zoology, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, India.

Wen-Chao Liu, Ph.D., is an associate professor in the Department of Animal Science, College of Coastal Agricultural Sciences, Guangdong Ocean University, China. His area of research focuses on animal nutrition and feed science, especially the nutritional regulation of immune response and redox status in stressed animals. His interests include extraction of bioactive compounds and synthesis of nanomaterials from natural by-products (especially the marine source) and their applications for animals and aquaculture. He has published more than 50 research papers in international peer-review journals, four of the papers were selected as Essential Science Indicators (ESI) Highly Cited Papers. He acted as potential reviewer in many high-reputed journals. He is a life member and director in various scientific societies such as Animal Ecology Branch of Chinese Society of Animal Husbandry and Veterinary Medicine, Animal Welfare and Healthy Production Branch of Chinese Society of Animal Husbandry and Veterinary Medicine.

Govindharajan Sattanathan, Ph.D., is an assistant professor at MASS College of Arts and Science and the Department of Life Science at Bharathidasan University, Trichy, Tamil Nadu, India, and is the author or co-author of seven peer-reviewed journal articles and eight conference papers and a newsletter. He is a reviewer and editorial board member of several peer-reviewed journals. He has been an active member of the organizing committees of several national and international seminars and conferences. He received a B.Sc. and M.Sc. (Zoology) from Government Arts College (Autonomous), Kumbakonam, Tamil Nadu, India. After graduating from Government Arts College (Autonomous), Kumbakonam, affiliated to Bharathidasan University, Trichy, he was selected UGC Project Fellow (Major Research Project) in Government College for Women (Autonomous), Kumbakonam, for the Ph.D. doctoral programme. He worked as an assistant professor in MASS College of

Arts and Science (Affiliated to Bharathidasan University, Trichy—24), Kumbakonam—612 501, Thanjavur, Tamil Nadu, India, from Nov 2017 to Feb 2021. Currently, he is working as an assistant professor and head, Department of Zoology, Sacred Heart Arts and Science College, Perani—605 651, Tindivanam, Villupuram, Tamil Nadu, India, from March 2021.

Contributors

M. Abinaya Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Trichy, Tamil Nadu, India

S. Adhithya Sankar CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

Juhee Ahn College of Biomedical Science, Department of Medical Biomaterials Engineering, Kangwon National University, Chuncheon, Republic of Korea

Isamma AkbarAli School of Ocean Science and Technology, Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies, Cochin, Kerala, India

Naif Abdullah Al-Dhabi Department of Botany and Microbiology, College of Science, King Saud University, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia

G. Allwyn Vyas CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

Vijaya Anand Arumugam Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Mariadhas Valan Arasu Department of Botany and Microbiology, College of Science, King Saud University, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia

B. Balamuralikrishnan Department of Food Science and Biotechnology, Sejong University, Seoul, South Korea

Preethi Basavaraju Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Haripriya Kuchi Bhotla Bioknowl Insights Private Limited, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Waleewan Changpasert Division of Food Science and Technology Management, Faculty of Science and Technology, Rajamangala University of Technology Thanyaburi, Pathum Thani, Thailand

Aarranee Chotiko Division of Food Science and Technology Management, Faculty of Science and Technology, Rajamangala University of Technology Thanyaburi, Pathum Thani, Thailand

Alexander Chouljenko Department of Food Bioprocessing and Nutrition Sciences, North Carolina State University, Center for Marine Sciences and Technology, Morehead City, NC, USA

Maheswaran Easwaran College of Veterinary Medicine and Research Institute of Veterinary Medicine, Chungnam National University, Daejeon, Republic of Korea

Murugesh Easwaran Bioknowl Insights Private Limited, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Damaris Eveline Department of Biomedical Engineering, Sethu Institute of Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

Jannathul Firdous Cluster for Integrative Physiology and Molecular Medicine (CIPMM), Faculty of Medicine, Royal College of Medicine Perak, Ipoh, Perak, Malaysia

Utthapon Issara Division of Food Science and Technology Management, Faculty of Science and Technology, Rajamangala University of Technology Thanyaburi, Pathum Thani, Thailand

Nayana Jagannath Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

Saranya Jayaram Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

T. Karpagam Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Tiruchirappalli, India

Hemalatha Karuppiah Department of Biomedical Engineering, Sethu Institute of Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

Bharathi Kathirvel Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Abhay Kumar Prajakt Life Science Pvt Ltd, Surat, Gujarat, India

Kruthi Ashok Kumar Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Shobana Kumar Sri Visalakshi College for Women, Tamil Nadu, India

Wen-Chao Liu Department of Animal Science, College of Coastal Agricultural Sciences, Guangdong Ocean University, Zhanjiang, P. R. China

Vignesh Marimuthu Prajakt Life Science Pvt Ltd, Surat, Gujarat, India

Swetha M. Menon Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Arun Meyyazhagan Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

Kaviya Mohandass Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

K. Mohan PG Research Department of Zoology, Sri Vasavi College, Erode, Tamil Nadu, India

N. Monford Paul Abishek Department of Biological Sciences, College of Biological Sciences and Biotechnology, Chungnam National University, Daejeon, Republic of Korea

T. Muralisankar Aquatic Ecology Laboratory, Department of Zoology, School of Life Sciences, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Arjunan Nareshkumar Department of Zoology, School of Life Sciences, Periyar University, Salem, India

Sampathkumar Palanisamy Department of Chemistry and Biosciences, SASTRA University—SRC, Tamil Nadu, India

Manikantan Pappuswamy Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

Shyamsundar Paul Prajakt Life Science Pvt Ltd, Surat, Gujarat, India

Ponnirul Ponmanickam Department of Zoology, Ayya Nadar Janaki Ammal College, Sivakasi, Tamil Nadu, India

Karthika Pushparaj Department of Zoology, School of Biosciences, Avinashilingam Institute for Home Science and Higher Education for Women, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Divya Kandathil Radhakrishnan School of Ocean Science and Technology, Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies, Cochin, Kerala, India

Nageshwari Raja Department of Biomedical Engineering, Sethu Institute of Technology, Tamil Nadu, India

Manoharan Rajesh Department of Biochemistry, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Manikandan Ramasamy Department of Biochemistry, University, M.I.E.T. Arts and Science College, Tiruchirappalli, Tamil Nadu, India

Mythili Ravichandran Department of Microbiology, K. S. Rangasamy College of Arts and Science, Tiruchengode, Namakkal, Tamil Nadu, India

Rengasamy Lakshminarayanan Rengarajan Department of Zoology, Bharathidasan University, Tiruchirappalli, Tamil Nadu, India

Sumathi Chettipalayam Samiappan Department of Chemistry and Biosciences, SASTRA University – SRC, Tamil Nadu, India

Vetriselvi Sampath Department of Animal Resource & Science, Dankook University, Chungnam, South Korea

K. Sapthami CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

V. Saradhasri Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Trichy, Tamil Nadu, India

Anurag Deendayal Sarawagi Prajakt Life Science Pvt Ltd, Surat, Gujarat, India

Suma Sarojini Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

A. Shanmugapriya Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Trichy, Tamil Nadu, India

Hyun-Jin Shin College of Veterinary Medicine and Research Institute of Veterinary Medicine, Chungnam National University, Daejeon, Republic of Korea

Bhadrapriya Sivakumar Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India
Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

R. Sridevi Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Trichy, Tamil Nadu, India

Liya Merin Stanly CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

V. Suganya Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Trichy, Tamil Nadu, India

Shanmugam Sureshkumar Department of Animal Resource & Science, Dankook University, Chungnam, South Korea

Sreehari Suresh CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

Sangeetha Thangavelu Department of Human Genetics and Molecular Genetics, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Basheer Thazeem Integrated Rural Technology Centre (IRTC), Palakkad, Kerala, India

V. Udhayakumar PG Research Department of Zoology, Sri Vasavi College, Erode, Tamil Nadu, India

Mridul Umesh Department of Life Sciences, CHRIST (Deemed to be University), Bangalore, Karnataka, India

B. Varalakshmi Department of Biochemistry, Shrimati Indira Gandhi College, Tiruchirappalli, India

S. Velayuthaprabhu Department of Biotechnology, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, India

Kannan Vijayarani Department of Education, Bharathiar University, Coimbatore, Tamil Nadu, India

Yue Zhao Department of Animal Science, College of Coastal Agricultural Sciences, Guangdong Ocean University, Zhanjiang, P. R. China

Preetham Elumalai
Sreeja Lakshmi *Editors*

Functional Foods and Therapeutic Strategies for Neurodegenerative Disorders

Springer

Functional Foods and Therapeutic Strategies for Neurodegenerative Disorders

Preetham Elumalai • Sreeja Lakshmi
Editors

Functional Foods and Therapeutic Strategies for Neurodegenerative Disorders

Springer

Editors
Dr. Preetham Elumalai
Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry
School of Marine Sciences, Cochin University of Science and Technology
Cochin, Kerala, India

Dr. Sreeja Lakshmi
School of Ocean Science and Technology, Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Cochin, Kerala, India

ISBN 978-981-16-6702-2 ISBN 978-981-16-6703-9 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-6703-9

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

I dedicate this book to my loving late mother without whom I would never be able to succeed in my life, to my late father who instigated me to stay independent and determined, and to all my diligent students whose feedback has always helped me to be a better teacher.

–Preetham Elumalai

Foreword

It is a great pleasure to write the foreword to the book *Functional Foods and Therapeutic Strategies for Neurodegenerative disorders* edited by Dr. Preetham Elumalai and Dr. Sreeja Lakshmi. The book carries importance in the current context where people practice healthy ageing encompassing natural treatment strategies.

Diseases are never ending as far as human life is concerned. Disorders of brain destroy us both physically and mentally. Ageing remains as the major risk factor for many diseases. The highly debated neurodegenerative disorders procure enormous fruitful investigations over the past years, towards a plethora of treatment strategies as these diseases make one's life really challenging owing to their disastrous approach and leaving a high healthcare cost. As age progresses, people suffering from neurodegenerative disorders like Alzheimer's, Parkinson's and Huntington's diseases are unable to bear the side effects as well as the cost of the medications prescribed for the same. As science inclines to natural treatment practices, scientific researches are successfully ahead with exploring natural resources for bioactive compounds that can be applied as efficient tools for treating diseases.

The book is a comprehensive collection of contemporary treatment strategies employing natural bioactive compounds as well as modern diagnostic applications with nanoparticles, biomarkers and in silico techniques towards neurodegenerative disorders. I take this opportunity to appreciate the editors and authors for their sincere effort to bring this book to enlighten and uplift the knowledge on the management and treatment of neurodegenerative disorders.

K. K. Shailaja Teacher
Former Kerala Health Minister,
Member, Kerala Legislative Assembly,
Mattannur, Kannur, Kerala, India

Foreword

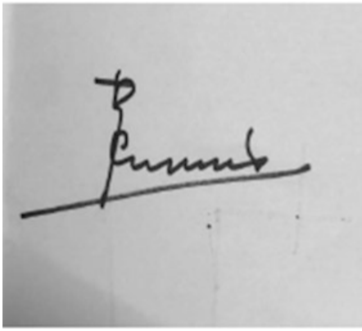
I am so pleased to have an opportunity to write the foreword for the book *Functional Foods and Therapeutic Strategies for Neurodegenerative Disorders* edited by Dr. Preetham Elumalai and Dr. Sreeja Lakshmi.

"Old age is the supreme evil, because it deprives us of all pleasures, leaving us only the appetite and it brings with it all sufferings. Nevertheless, we fear death, and we desire old age."- Giacomo Leopardi.

Aging and related health disorders have become an unavoidable phase in the life cycle of every human being. The mechanisms underlying aging, age-linked susceptibility to diseases and the consequential medical treatments for age-related health disorders are emerging as excellent researchable issues among researchers across the world. Neurodegenerative disorders have always been an invaluable research topic, and the most common type of diseases such as Alzheimer's, Parkinson's and Huntington's disease has seen long fruitful years of productive research during the past four decades. Neurodegenerative disorders are most frequently viewed as one of the life-threatening ailments and therefore highly challenging as they bring about heavy burden not only to the patients but to their families and societies at large which attract exorbitant healthcare costs.

We all need healthy brain. Nowadays people understand the importance of healthy aging and scientific practices to contain diseases through diet, lifestyle factors, exercises, etc. Owing to the high risk of side effects of medicines for neurodegenerative disorders, science is more inclined nowadays to naturopathy which is easily accessible, cost-effective and relatively free from side effects.

In the present book, the authors comprehensively illustrate contemporary treatment protocols in respect of diverse neurodegenerative disorders incorporating bioactive compounds from natural resources as well as advanced interdisciplinary diagnostic practices including nanoparticles, biomarkers and in silico techniques. I sincerely appreciate the painstaking efforts made by the authors in articulating this book which will definitely provide an enchanting reference material for validating the progress attained in the therapy and management of neurodegenerative disorders besides serving as a valuable addition to the existing body of knowledge.



Prof. Dr. B. Madhusoodana Kurup
Founder Vice Chancellor,
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies,
Former Advisor to Minister for Fisheries,
Govt. of Kerala,
Chairman, Scientific Advisory Committee,
RGCA, MPEDA, Govt. of India

Chairman, Research Advisory Committee,
ICAR-CIBA, CIFRI,
Cochin, Kerala, India

Preface

Aging is an inevitable phenomenon creating entropy in one's life by deteriorating one's physiological systems and anatomical structures. Senescence is associated with increased risk for a plethora of diseases and some of them end up with loss of homeostasis and finally death. As age progresses many of the biological processes as well as environmental factors conjointly lead to progressive neurodegeneration. Neurodegeneration is an inherent condition characterised by structural and functional impairment of neurons. The most prevalent neurodegenerative disorders—Alzheimer's disease (AD), Parkinson's disease (PD), Huntington's disease (HD), and Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)—are often hired as life threatening as well as a social and economic burden to the healthcare system. Despite the conventional beliefs and strategies, science along with the healthcare system has taken initiatives to step forward with healthy aging for better living of aged people. Past few year's scientific research has explored novel remedies, incorporating diet, lifestyle factors, and bioactive compounds/immunostimulants from natural resources to treat neurodegenerative disorders in the context where therapeutic drugs were found ineffective in reverting or pausing neurodegenerative disorders. Moreover, these natural antidotes are depicted as highlighters that boons the sustainability of healthy brain rendering protection against neurodegeneration.

Our book is anticipated to provide an overview of the current status of research and future perspectives in the field of treating neurodegenerative disorders. The book will integrate different aspects such as advancements in current treatment scenario incorporating prebiotics, phytochemicals, polyphenols and potential marine bioactive compounds towards the treatment strategies along with leading contemporary methods for prophylactic and diagnostic practices, comprising nanoparticles, in silico techniques and biomarkers. We expect that the contents of the book provide potential knowledge regarding future perspectives in the management of neurodegenerative disorders.

Cochin, Kerala, India

Preetham Elumalai
Sreeja Lakshmi

Contents

About the Editors

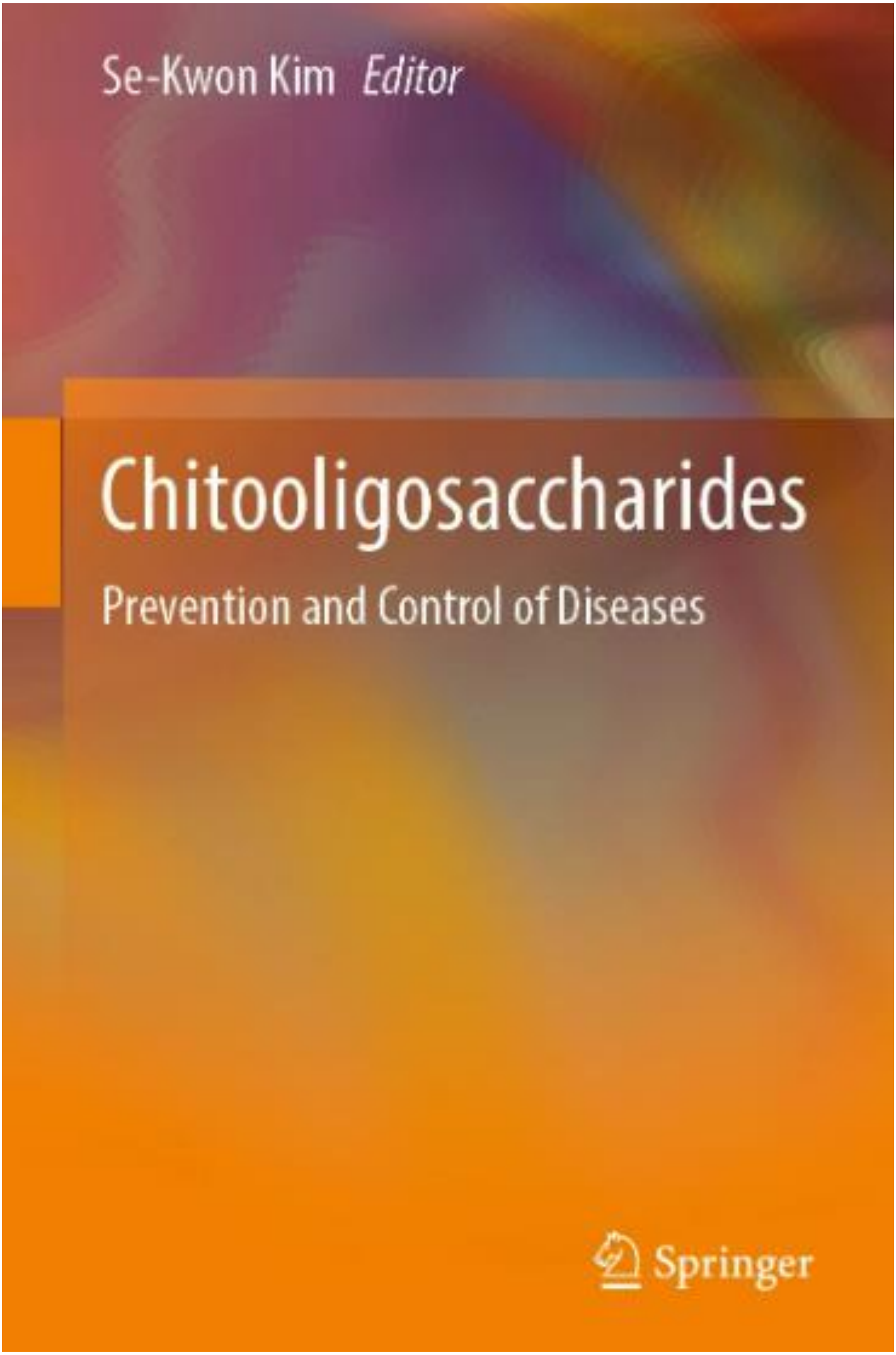
Preetham Elumalai is an Associate Professor (Biochemistry) in the Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry at Cochin University of Science and Technology (CUSAT), Cochin, Kerala, and completed his Master's from the University of Madras, Tamil Nadu. He has qualified the National Eligibility Test for Lecturership conducted by ASRB/ICAR/UGC. He received his PhD in Biochemistry and Molecular Immunology from the Institute for Immunology, University of Regensburg, Germany. He did his postdoctoral research in the same University and worked on lectin glycomics.

Dr. Preetham has worked at various universities and has quite a good experience in teaching and demonstrating concepts in Biochemistry and Immunology. His current research practice includes Proteomics and Functional genomic approach for the analysis of pathomechanisms of different aquatic diseases, application of nanotechnology for the regulation of nutrient uptake in fish using nutrigenomic approaches, genetic regulation of gene expression across tissues, time and environments.

He holds editorial positions in national and international journals and is a member of many prestigious societies, including Asian Fisheries Society, European Association of Fish Pathologists, International Veterinary Vaccinology Network, International Complement Society and Society of Neurochemistry. He has widely travelled to more than 20 countries on various teaching and research assignments. He was awarded with the prestigious INSA medal (2017) and MASTS (2019) UK visiting fellowship.

Sreeja Lakshmi holds a Master's degree in Biochemistry from the University of Calicut, Kerala. She pursued her PhD in Biochemistry from Molecular Cell Biology, University of Regensburg, Germany. She did her Postdoctoral Research in the Institute of Tropical Medicine, University of Tuebingen, Germany. Dr. Sreeja is an awardee of HRD Fellowship for Women Scientists by the Department of Health Research and MASTS (Marine Alliance Science & Technology, Scotland) Award for Postdoctoral and Early Career Research Exchanges (PECRE). Currently she is pursuing her Postdoctoral Research in collaboration with Moredun Research Institute (MRI), UK, with International Veterinary Vaccinology Network (IVVN) Fellowship Grant, UK. Her research interests extend through functional attributes of bioactive compounds for therapeutic applications, development of nano and glycovaccines against aquatic diseases, novel treatment strategies against neurodegenerative disorders and protein biochemistry.

Dr. Sreeja has published her works in many peer-reviewed journals and presented at national and international conferences. She holds memberships in International Veterinary Vaccinology Network (IVVN), Society of Biological Chemists, International Complement Society, Indian Academy of Neurosciences and Society for Neurochemistry India.


Se-Kwon Kim *Editor*
Chitooligosaccharides
Prevention and Control of Diseases
Springer

Chitooligosaccharides

Se-Kwon Kim
Editor

Chitooligosaccharides

Prevention and Control of Diseases

Springer

Editor
Se-Kwon Kim
Department of Marine Science
and Convergence Engineering
College of Science and Technology
Hanyang University ERICA
Seoul, Korea (Republic of)

ISBN 978-3-030-92805-6 ISBN 978-3-030-92806-3 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-92806-3

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Preface

Natural biomaterials have gained considerable attention in recent years for the development of medical products. For example, chitooligosaccharide (COS) is a natural biopolymer and is extensively studied in medical applications. COS is a chitosan derivative and can be produced using chemical and enzyme hydrolysis techniques. The essential advantages of COSs are their solubility in the neutral condition. This solubility property of COS opens up a way to research various applications, including cosmeceutical and pharmaceutical applications.

This book aims to provide COS synthesis and its biological and biomedical applications. This book is mainly focused on medical product development using COS and its derivatives. In the initial part of the book, the chapters are focused on the chemical and enzymatic preparation of COS from marine crustacean shell wastes. In some of the book chapters, systematic and step-by-step approaches were included for the production of COS. Different enzymes involved in the development of COS production were discussed. In addition, the isolation of chitinolytic enzymes and the development of COS were also discussed. Furthermore, the influence of isolation conditions on the physicochemical COS from crustacean shell wastes was presented. Finally, some of the chapters are focused on the synthesis of COS derivatives for biological applications.

In the middle of the book, chapters are covered on the biological application of COS. These biological applications are antimicrobial, antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, anti-allergy, and anticancer activities. Chapters reveal the current status, and future trends in disease-preventing bioactivities of COS are discussed. In addition to this biological activity, the mechanistic pathways for the various biological applications, including effects of matrix metalloproteinases, inhibitory effects for cancer studies, and immunomodulatory effects of COS and their derivatives, were included in the book. The development of single COS and their roles in various bioactivities are also reviewed.

The final part of the book includes the biomedical applications of COS. Nanoparticles, hydrogels, and biocomposites made up of COS are also discussed for medical applications. In addition, wound healing materials, tissue engineering, drug delivery, and food, and nutraceutical applications of COS are included in the book. The book provides a basic understanding of COS for medical product development.

Seoul, South Korea Prof. Se-Kwon Kim

Acknowledgements

Dr. **Jae-Chul Kim** is the chairman, president, and founder of the Dongwon group. The company was established in 1969 to explore and utilize the oceans and marine resources. Chairman Kim is the pioneer in the deep-sea fishing boats in South Korea. He started tuna fishing in 1958 as the first mate of Korea's first deep-sea fishing vessel.

After graduating from National Fisheries University of Busan, he jumped into tuna fishing, and the university was renamed as Pukyong National University. Further, he became the captain of a fleet of deep-sea fishing boats and a new tuna fishing method. He developed and succeeded in catching large amounts of tuna in the South Pacific and Indian Oceans.

He founded Dongwon Industries in 1969 at the age of 35 and started tuna fishing as the first president. After that, he built a tuna processing plant and started to produce canned food. He immersed himself in business management in earnest based on the experience he learned in the sea from his youth.

Dongwon Group has successfully expanded its business from the fishery industry as the primary industry to the manufacturing industry as the secondary industry and financial services as the tertiary industry. Currently, Mr. Kim runs 30 affiliated companies.

To contribute to social welfare, he also established the Dongwon Educational Foundation. He devoted himself, his heart, and his soul to nurturing competent people who are the backbone of our society. He has provided scholarships to numerous college students and grants R&D funds for researchers. He recognized the great value and potential of underutilized marine resources from his youth. He dedicated himself to publishing technical books emphasizing the scientific importance of marine life and related research.

With his help, this book has been published, providing readers with how the scientific values of marine life can enhance human health and wellbeing.

I want to thank him sincerely for his support in publishing this book.

Seoul, South Korea

Prof. Se-Kwon Kim
Distinguished Professor

Contents

About the Editor

Prof. Se-Kwon Kim Ph.D., is presently working as a Distinguished Professor in Hanyang University and Kolmar Korea Company. He worked as a Distinguished Professor at the Department of Marine Bio Convergence Science and Technology and Director of Marine Bioprocess Research Center (MBPRC) at Pukyong National University, Busan, South Korea.

He received his M.Sc. and Ph.D. degrees from Pukyong National University and conducted his postdoctoral studies at the Laboratory of Biochemical Engineering, University of Illinois, Urbana-Champaign, Illinois, USA. Later, he became a visiting scientist at the Memorial University of Newfoundland and the University of British Colombia in Canada.

Dr. Kim served as president of the 'Korean Society of Chitin and Chitosan' in 1986–1990, and the 'Korean Society of Marine Biotechnology' in 2006–2007. To the credit for his research, he won the best paper award from the American Oil Chemists' Society in 2002. Dr. Kim was also the chairman for '7th Asia-pacific Chitin and Chitosan Symposium', which was held in South Korea in 2006. He was the chief editor in the 'Korean Society of Fisheries and Aquatic Science' during 2008-2009. In addition, he is the board member of International Society of Marine Biotechnology Associations (IMBA) and International Society of Nutraceuticals and Functional Food (ISNFF).

His major research interests are investigation and development of bioactive substances from marine resources. His immense experience of marine bioprocessing and mass-production technologies for marine bio-industry is the key asset of holding majorly funded Marine Bio projects in Korea. Furthermore, he expanded his research fields up to the development of bioactive materials from marine organisms for their applications in oriental medicine, cosmeceuticals, and nutraceuticals. To this date, he has authored around 750 research papers, 70 books, and 120 patents.

Preetham Elumalai
Sreeja Lakshmi *Editors*

Lectins

Innate Immune Defense and Therapeutics

Springer

Lectins

Preetham Elumalai • Sreeja Lakshmi
Editors

Lectins

Innate Immune Defense and Therapeutics

Springer

Editors
Dr. Preetham Elumalai
Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry, School of Marine Sciences
Cochin University of Science and Technology
Cochin, Kerala, India

Dr. Sreeja Lakshmi
School of Ocean Science and Technology
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Cochin, Kerala, India

ISBN 978-981-16-7461-7 ISBN 978-981-16-7462-4 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-7462-4

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

This book is lovingly dedicated to my late parents whose sacrifice, care and unconditional love brought me to this stage and to all my diligent students for being a huge factor in helping me to be a better teacher.

—Preetham Elumalai

Foreword by Dr. Devaraj & Dr. Niranjali Devaraj

It is our pleasure to write the foreword for the book titled *Lectins: Innate Immune Defense and Therapeutics*, which contains quality and informative chapters that enable the reader to understand the role of lectins in current science. In recent years, fruitful investigations have led to new insights into lectins, making them exciting topics of debate. The book provides a comprehensive overview of lectins, with special reference to their therapeutic applications and their role in immune defense. Each chapter is intended to provide specific aspects of lectins.

The immune system of vertebrates involves both innate and acquired immune responses. Innate immunity is more generalized with a robust response whereas the latter has a highly specific response to pathogens. The innate immunity components which identify sugars are called as lectins. The innate immune recognition process depends largely on the pattern-based recognition of microbial targets as "non-self" by host lectins and related proteins and their subsequent destruction by complement and phagocytic cells.

All lectins possess one carbohydrate recognition domain (CRD) which specifically and reversibly binds to a specific carbohydrate. Lectins are widely distributed in bacteria, fungi, viruses, plants and animals. Lectins are found in serum, plasma, mucosal surfaces and egg surface. The skin of several animal species, including fish, is assumed to be a rich source of novel and new unreported lectins. Different types of lectins such as ficolins, galectins, calnexin, pentraxin, F-type lectins, intelectins, and mannose-binding protein (MBP) are known to play important roles in innate immunity and disease resistance.

The complement system plays an essential role in protecting against invading microorganisms and acts through three activation pathways, namely, the classic, alternative and lectin pathways. In the lectin pathway, binding of the lectin-Mannose Binding Serine Proteases (MASPs) complexes to carbohydrates on the surface of pathogens activates MASPs to acquire proteolytic activity against complement components C4 and C2, resulting in the elimination of pathogens after a chain reaction of proteolysis of complement components and protein assembly. However, this defense mechanism is poorly understood. Therefore, identification of immune-related genes and their expression studies are imperative.

The collective efforts of the authors and editors of this book are greatly appreciated. It is our hope that the book will be both engrossing and inspiring to the scientists so that they can gain more knowledge in this specific field.

Best wishes

Dr. H. Devaraj, D.Sc.
Former Vice Chairman, UGC
UGC-BSR Faculty Fellow
Department of Zoology
University of Madras, Guindy Campus
Chennai, India

Dr. S. Niranjali Devaraj
Former Professor and Head
Emeritus Scientist, ICMR
Department of Biochemistry
University of Madras, Guindy Campus
Chennai, India

Foreword by Prof. Sadasivam J. Kaushik

It is my pleasure to write a foreword for this book entitled *Lectins: Innate Immune Defense and Therapeutics*, edited by Dr. Preetham Elumalai and Dr. Sreeja Lakshmi. The book covers a complete range of subjects dealing with lectins of diverse origin and on their potential roles in health and immune defense. I am convinced that this book will provide updated information on lectins of diverse origin to a wide audience of readers from academia, research and education.

As proteins which bind to specific carbohydrate structures, mono- or oligosaccharides, hundreds of “lectins” have been identified in almost all phyla, plants, animals or microbials. Knowledge on the identification, classification and their role as hemo-agglutinating agents has been increasing ever since the first discovery in the late nineteenth century.

The book covers indeed a full range of subjects dealing with these more or less ubiquitous proteins and their involvement in the immune system of higher animals and humans. In animal or human nutrition, lectins of plant origin are often considered as anti-nutritional, pathogenic factors. The book also covers the mechanisms involved in the actions of lectins within the target organisms. The implication of some lectins in eliciting innate-immune response is an aspect which is duly covered, adding new dimensions to the putative beneficial roles of specific lectins. The book also provides information on the possibility of producing lectins of interest using biotechnological tools. Given the phenomenal growth in knowledge on and application of lectins, it is but timely to welcome such a complete book covering different aspects of lectins in an integrated and systematic manner.

I am sure this book will be well received with a wide readership, and I commend the sincere efforts by the authors and editors for bringing this compilation.

Prof. Sadasivam J. Kaushik, D.Sc.
Honorary Director, EcoAqua Inst, ULPGC
Former European Research Area (ERA) Chair, Ecoaqua
Past Director of Research, INRA, France

Ecoaqua University Institute
University of Las Palmas de Gran Canaria (ULPGC)
Las Palmas, Spain

ECOAQUA

Preface

Lectins: Innate Immune Defense and Therapeutics focuses on exploring the importance of lectins in immune defense and modern therapeutic approaches. Lectins are protein molecules, widely distributed in different species in almost all organisms including plants, animals, viruses, bacteria, cyanobacteria and yeasts. They serve as receptors for recognizing carbohydrate moieties present on the pathogenic surfaces and exert a specific interaction with them. Following the discovery of animal lectins, research in basic and applied biosciences experienced an accelerated thrust because of its role in mediating cell-cell interactions, host cell-pathogen interactions, antimicrobial activity, drug discovery, etc. Our book is anticipated to provide an overview on different types of lectins and future perspectives in scientific research as recognition and effector molecules in innate immunity or regulators of adaptive immune responses. We really appreciate the contributions of the authors for their expertise and skilful renditions. The facts about Lectins presented in this book will provide an overview to newcomers and a meticulous illustration to the specialists in the field.

Cochin, Kerala, India

Preetham Elumalai
Sreeja Lakshmi

Contents

About the Editors

Preetham Elumalai is an Associate Professor (Biochemistry) in the Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry at Cochin University of Science and Technology (CUSAT), Cochin, and completed his master's degree from the University of Madras, Tamil Nadu. He has qualified the National Eligibility Test for Lecturership conducted by ASRB/ICAR/UGC. He received his PhD in Biochemistry and Molecular Immunology from the Institute for Immunology, University of Regensburg, Germany. He did his postdoctoral research in the same university and worked on lectin glycomics.

Dr. Preetham has worked at various universities and has quite a good experience in teaching and demonstrating concepts in Biochemistry and Immunology. His current research practice includes Proteomics and Functional genomic approach for the analysis of pathomechanisms of different aquatic diseases, application of nanotechnology for the regulation of nutrient uptake in fish using nutrigenomic approaches, genetic regulation of gene expression across tissues, time and environments.

He holds editorial positions in national and international journals and is a member of many prestigious societies, including Asian Fisheries Society, European Association of Fish Pathologists, International Veterinary Vaccinology Network, International Complement Society and Society of Neurochemistry. He has widely travelled to more than 20 countries on various teaching and research assignments. He was awarded with the prestigious INSA medal (2017) and MASTS (2019) UK visiting fellowship.

Sreeja Lakshmi holds a master's degree in Biochemistry from the University of Calicut, Kerala. She pursued her PhD in Biochemistry from Molecular Cell Biology, University of Regensburg, Germany. She did her Postdoctoral Research at the Institute of Tropical Medicine, University of Tuebingen, Germany. Dr. Sreeja is an awardee of HRD Fellowship for Women Scientist by the Department of Health Research and MASTS (Marine Alliance Science & Technology, Scotland) Award for Postdoctoral and Early Career Research Exchanges (PECRE). Currently she is pursuing her Postdoctoral Research in collaboration with Moredun Research Institute (MRI), UK, with International Veterinary Vaccinology Network (IVVN) Fellowship Grant, UK. Her Research interests extend through functional attributes of bioactive compounds for therapeutic applications, development of nano and glycovaccines against aquatic diseases, novel treatment strategies against neurodegenerative disorders and protein biochemistry.

Dr. Sreeja has published her work in many peer-reviewed journals and presented her works at national and international conferences. She holds memberships in International Veterinary Vaccinology Network (IVVN), Society of Biological Chemists, International Complement Society and Indian Academy of Neurosciences.

Preetham Elumalai
Sreeja Lakshmi *Editors*

Lectins

Innate Immune Defense and Therapeutics

Springer

Lectins

Preetham Elumalai • Sreeja Lakshmi
Editors

Lectins

Innate Immune Defense and Therapeutics

Springer

Editors
Dr. Preetham Elumalai
Department of Marine Biology,
Microbiology and Biochemistry,
School of Marine Sciences
Cochin University of Science
and Technology
Cochin, Kerala, India

Dr. Sreeja Lakshmi
School of Ocean Science and Technology
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean
Studies
Cochin, Kerala, India

ISBN 978-981-16-7461-7 ISBN 978-981-16-7462-4 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-7462-4

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

This book is lovingly dedicated to my late parents whose sacrifice, care and unconditional love brought me to this stage and to all my diligent students for being a huge factor in helping me to be a better teacher.

—Preetham Elumalai

Foreword by Dr. Devaraj & Dr. Niranjali Devaraj

It is our pleasure to write the foreword for the book titled *Lectins: Innate Immune Defense and Therapeutics*, which contains quality and informative chapters that enable the reader to understand the role of lectins in current science. In recent years, fruitful investigations have led to new insights into lectins, making them exciting topics of debate. The book provides a comprehensive overview of lectins, with special reference to their therapeutic applications and their role in immune defense. Each chapter is intended to provide specific aspects of lectins.

The immune system of vertebrates involves both innate and acquired immune responses. Innate immunity is more generalized with a robust response whereas the latter has a highly specific response to pathogens. The innate immunity components which identify sugars are called as lectins. The innate immune recognition process depends largely on the pattern-based recognition of microbial targets as “non-self” by host lectins and related proteins and their subsequent destruction by complement and phagocytic cells.

All lectins possess one carbohydrate recognition domain (CRD) which specifically and reversibly binds to a specific carbohydrate. Lectins are widely distributed in bacteria, fungi, viruses, plants and animals. Lectins are found in serum, plasma, mucosal surfaces and egg surface. The skin of several animal species, including fish, is assumed to be a rich source of novel and new unreported lectins. Different types of lectins such as ficolins, galectins, calnexin, pentraxin, F-type lectins, intelectins, and mannose-binding protein (MBP) are known to play important roles in innate immunity and disease resistance.

The complement system plays an essential role in protecting against invading microorganisms and acts through three activation pathways, namely, the classic, alternative and lectin pathways. In the lectin pathway, binding of the lectin-Mannose Binding Serine Proteases (MASPs) complexes to carbohydrates on the surface of pathogens activates MASPs to acquire proteolytic activity against complement components C4 and C2, resulting in the elimination of pathogens after a chain reaction of proteolysis of complement components and protein assembly. However, this defense mechanism is poorly understood. Therefore, identification of immune-related genes and their expression studies are imperative.

The collective efforts of the authors and editors of this book are greatly appreciated. It is our hope that the book will be both engrossing and inspiring to the scientists so that they can gain more knowledge in this specific field.

Best wishes

H. Devaraj

Dr. H. Devaraj, D.Sc.
Former Vice Chairman, UGC
UGC-BSR Faculty Fellow
Department of Zoology
University of Madras, Guindy Campus
Chennai, India

S. Niranjali Devaraj

Dr. S. Niranjali Devaraj
Former Professor and Head
Emeritus Scientist, ICMR
Department of Biochemistry
University of Madras, Guindy Campus
Chennai, India

Foreword by Prof. Sadasivam J. Kaushik

It is my pleasure to write a foreword for this book entitled *Lectins: Innate Immune Defense and Therapeutics***,** edited by Dr. Preetham Elumalai and Dr. Sreeja Lakshmi. The book covers a complete range of subjects dealing with lectins of diverse origin and on their potential roles in health and immune defense. I am convinced that this book will provide updated information on lectins of diverse origin to a wide audience of readers from academia, research and education.

As proteins which bind to specific carbohydrate structures, mono- or oligosaccharides, hundreds of "lectins" have been identified in almost all phyla, plants, animals or microbials. Knowledge on the identification, classification and their role as hemo-agglutinating agents has been increasing ever since the first discovery in the late nineteenth century.

The book covers indeed a full range of subjects dealing with these more or less ubiquitous proteins and their involvement in the immune system of higher animals and humans. In animal or human nutrition, lectins of plant origin are often considered as anti-nutritional, pathogenic factors. The book also covers the mechanisms involved in the actions of lectins within the target organisms. The implication of some lectins in eliciting innate-immune response is an aspect which is duly covered, adding new dimensions to the putative beneficial roles of specific lectins. The book also provides information on the possibility of producing lectins of interest using biotechnological tools. Given the phenomenal growth in knowledge on and application of lectins, it is but timely to welcome such a complete book covering different aspects of lectins in an integrated and systematic manner.

I am sure this book will be well received with a wide readership, and I commend the sincere efforts by the authors and editors for bringing this compilation.

Prof. Sadasivam J. Kaushik, D.Sc.
Honorary Director, EcoAqua Inst, ULPGC
Former European Research Area (ERA) Chair, Ecoaqua
Past Director of Research, INRA, France

Ecoaqua University Institute
University of Las Palmas de Gran Canaria (ULPGC)
Las Palmas, Spain

ECOAQUA

Preface

Lectins: Innate Immune Defense and Therapeutics focuses on exploring the importance of lectins in immune defense and modern therapeutic approaches. Lectins are protein molecules, widely distributed in different species in almost all organisms including plants, animals, viruses, bacteria, cyanobacteria and yeasts. They serve as receptors for recognizing carbohydrate moieties present on the pathogenic surfaces and exert a specific interaction with them. Following the discovery of animal lectins, research in basic and applied biosciences experienced an accelerated thrust because of its role in mediating cell-cell interactions, host cell-pathogen interactions, antimicrobial activity, drug discovery, etc. Our book is anticipated to provide an overview on different types of lectins and future perspectives in scientific research as recognition and effector molecules in innate immunity or regulators of adaptive immune responses. We really appreciate the contributions of the authors for their expertise and skilful renditions. The facts about Lectins presented in this book will provide an overview to newcomers and a meticulous illustration to the specialists in the field.

Cochin, Kerala, India

Preetham Elumalai
Sreeja Lakshmi

Contents

About the Editors

Preetham Elumalai is an Associate Professor (Biochemistry) in the Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry at Cochin University of Science and Technology (CUSAT), Cochin, and completed his master's degree from the University of Madras, Tamil Nadu. He has qualified the National Eligibility Test for Lecturership conducted by ASRB/ICAR/UGC. He received his PhD in Biochemistry and Molecular Immunology from the Institute for Immunology, University of Regensburg, Germany. He did his postdoctoral research in the same university and worked on lectin glycomics.

Dr. Preetham has worked at various universities and has quite a good experience in teaching and demonstrating concepts in Biochemistry and Immunology. His current research practice includes Proteomics and Functional genomic approach for the analysis of pathomechanisms of different aquatic diseases, application of nanotechnology for the regulation of nutrient uptake in fish using nutrigenomic approaches, genetic regulation of gene expression across tissues, time and environments.

He holds editorial positions in national and international journals and is a member of many prestigious societies, including Asian Fisheries Society, European Association of Fish Pathologists, International Veterinary Vaccinology Network, International Complement Society and Society of Neurochemistry. He has widely travelled to more than 20 countries on various teaching and research assignments. He was awarded with the prestigious INSA medal (2017) and MASTS (2019) UK visiting fellowship.

Sreeja Lakshmi holds a master's degree in Biochemistry from the University of Calicut, Kerala. She pursued her PhD in Biochemistry from Molecular Cell Biology, University of Regensburg, Germany. She did her Postdoctoral Research at the Institute of Tropical Medicine, University of Tuebingen, Germany. Dr. Sreeja is an awardee of HRD Fellowship for Women Scientist by the Department of Health Research and MASTS (Marine Alliance Science & Technology, Scotland) Award for Postdoctoral and Early Career Research Exchanges (PECRE). Currently she is pursuing her Postdoctoral Research in collaboration with Moredun Research Institute (MRI), UK, with International Veterinary Vaccinology Network (IVVN) Fellowship Grant, UK. Her Research interests extend through functional attributes of bioactive compounds for therapeutic applications, development of nano and glycovaccines against aquatic diseases, novel treatment strategies against neurodegenerative disorders and protein biochemistry.

Dr. Sreeja has published her work in many peer-reviewed journals and presented her works at national and international conferences. She holds memberships in International Veterinary Vaccinology Network (IVVN), Society of Biological Chemists, International Complement Society and Indian Academy of Neurosciences.

Water Science and Technology Library

Vijay P. Singh · Shalini Yadav ·
Krishna Kumar Yadav ·
Gerald Augusto Corzo Perez ·
Francisco Munoz-Arriola ·
Ram Narayan Yadava *Editors*

Application of Remote Sensing and GIS in Natural Resources and Built Infrastructure Management

Springer

Water Science and Technology Library

Volume 105

The aim of the *Water Science and Technology Library* is to provide a forum for dissemination of the state-of-the-art of topics of current interest in the area of water science and technology. This is accomplished through publication of reference books and monographs, authored or edited. Occasionally also proceedings volumes are accepted for publication in the series. *Water Science and Technology Library* encompasses a wide range of topics dealing with science as well as socio-economic aspects of water, environment, and ecology. Both the water quantity and quality issues are relevant and are embraced by *Water Science and Technology Library*. The emphasis may be on either the scientific content, or techniques of solution, or both. There is increasing emphasis these days on processes and *Water Science and Technology Library* is committed to promoting this emphasis by publishing books emphasizing scientific discussions of physical, chemical, and/or biological aspects of water resources. Likewise, current or emerging solution techniques receive high priority. Interdisciplinary coverage is encouraged. Case studies contributing to our knowledge of water science and technology are also embraced by the series. Innovative ideas and novel techniques are of particular interest.

Comments or suggestions for future volumes are welcomed.

Vijay P. Singh, Department of Biological and Agricultural Engineering & Zachry Department of Civil and Environment Engineering, Texas A&M University, USA Email: vsingh@tamu.edu

All contributions to an edited volume should undergo standard peer review to ensure high scientific quality, while monographs should also be reviewed by at least two experts in the field.

Manuscripts that have undergone successful review should then be prepared according to the Publisher's guidelines manuscripts: https://www.springer.com/gp/authors-editors/book-authors-editors/book-manuscript-guidelines

Vijay P. Singh · Shalini Yadav ·
Krishna Kumar Yadav ·
Gerald Augusto Corzo Perez ·
Francisco Muñoz-Arriola · Ram Narayan Yadava
Editors

Application of Remote Sensing and GIS in Natural Resources and Built Infrastructure Management

Springer

Editors
Vijay P. Singh
Department of Biological and Agricultural Engineering, Zachry Department of Civil and Environment Engineering
Texas A&M University
College Station, TX, USA

Krishna Kumar Yadav
Faculty of Science
Madhyanchal Professional University
Bhopal, India

Francisco Muñoz-Arriola
The School of Natural Resources and Department of Biological Systems Engineering
University of Nebraska-Lincoln
Lincoln, Nebraska, USA

Shalini Yadav
Department of Civil Engineering
Rabindranath Tagore University
Bhopal, Madhya Pradesh, India

Gerald Augusto Corzo Perez
IHE Delft Institute for Water Education
Delft, The Netherlands

Ram Narayan Yadava
Madhyanchal Professional University
Bhopal, India

ISSN 0921-092X ISSN 1872-4663 (electronic)
Water Science and Technology Library
ISBN 978-3-031-14095-2 ISBN 978-3-031-14096-9 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-031-14096-9

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Contents

About the Editors

Professor Vijay P. Singh Ph.D., D.Sc., D. Eng. (Hon.), Ph.D. (Hon.), P.E., P.H., Hon.D.WRE, Dist.M. ASCE, Dist.Hon. M. IWRA, Dist.F. AGGS, Hon. Member AWRA,NAE, holds the Caroline & William N. Lehrer Distinguished Chair in Water Engineering and is a Distinguished Professor and a Regents Professor, Department of Biological, and Agricultural Engineering, and Zachry Department of Civil & Environmental Engineering at Texas A&M University, USA. Professor Singh has been recognized for four decades of leadership in research, teaching and service to the hydrologic and water resources engineering profession. Singh's contribution to the state of the art has been significant in many different specialty areas, including hydrologic science and engineering, hydraulic engineering, water resources engineering, environmental engineering, irrigation science, soil and water conservation engineering, entropy-based modeling, copula-based modeling, and mathematical modeling. His extensive publications in these areas include 32 textbooks, 1432 refereed journal articles, 80 edited books, 115 book chapters, 330 conference proceedings papers, and 72 technical reports.

For his seminal contributions, Dr. Singh has been honored with more than 105national/international awards from professional organizations. As a sample, he is a recipient of the Arid Land Hydraulic Engineering Award, Ven Te Chow Award, Torrens Award, Norma Medal, Royce C. Tipton Award, Lifetime Achievement Award, Distinguished Membership, and OPAL Award, all given by ASCE. He was awarded the Ray K. Linsley Award for outstanding contributions to surface water hydrology and the Founders Award of AIH. He has been awarded three honorary doctorates. He is a fellow of ASCE, AWRA, IE, ISAE, IWRS, IASWC, and IAH; a member of AGU, IAHR, IAHS and WASER. He is member/fellow of 12 engineering/science academies, including National Academy of Engineering (NAE). Prof. Singh is licensed as a Professional Engineer (PE), a Professional Hydrologist (PH), and Honorary Diplomate, AAWRE.

Prof. Shalini Yadav is a Professor in the Dept. of Civil Engineering and Head of theCentre of Excellence in Advanced Water and Environmental Research, Rabindranath Tagore University, Bhopal, India. Her research interests include solid and hazardous waste management, construction management, environmental quality, and water resources. She has executed a variety of research/consultancy projects in the area of environment and water science, and has got rich experience in planning, formulating, organizing, executing, and management of R&D programs. She has got to her credit guiding of 35 M.Tech. and 10 Ph.D. students.

She has published more than 90 journal articles and technical reports. She is a member of the organizing and scientific committee of several conferences and reviewer in several of international journals. Also she has published a number of edited books, namely Climate Change Impacts, Water Resources Management, Groundwater, Energy and Environment, Environmental Pollution, Hydrologic Modeling, Water Quality Management, Environmental Degradation: Challenges and Strategies for Mitigation in the Water Science and Technology Library; and Environmental Management in India: Waste to Wealth, Wastewater Assessment, Treatment, Reuse and Development in India in the Earth and Environmental Sciences Library of Springer Nature.

Dr. Krishna Kumar Yadav is working on a position of Assistant Professor in the Faculty of Science and Information Technology of the Madhyanchal Professional University, Madhya Pradesh, India. His research interest is in Defluoridation of Groundwater, Waste Management, and Bioremediation/ Phytoremediation of Heavy Metals, and Energy Recovery from the Waste. He has executed a Varity of research and consultancy projects in the area Environmental Sciences, Sustainability, Water Quality and Water and Waste Water Treatment, and Material Science. Also Dr. Krishna Kumar has got rich experience in executing, and management of R&D programs, He has earned his Master of Science in Environmental Science from V. B. S. Purvanchal University, Jaunpur, India; Master of Philosophy and Doctor of Philosophy in Environmental Science from the Bundelkhand University, Jhansi, India. Also he is recipient of Young Environmental Scientist Award in an International Conference on Agriculture, Allied and Applied Sciences held at JNU New Delhi, India in 2018.

Dr. Krishna Kumar has published more than 70 journal articles and technical reports. He is a member of the organizing and scientific committee of several conferences and reviewer of Journal of cleaner production, Journal of Hazardous Materials, Energy; and Section Editor of International Journal of Environmental Chemistry. Also he has published a number of edited books.

Dr. Gerald Augusto Corzo Perez is Associate Professor at IHE Delft institute for water education. His research work covers a full range of water resources areas applying spatiotemporal statistics, pattern recognition and machine learning techniques. Since the last four year he has been working on the analysis of global hydrological extremes, exploring responses to drought and floods. In 2012 he won the Tison award as young scientist from the IAHS association. He has worked on different international institution like Wageningen University in the Netherlands and the Technologic of Monterrey in Mexico. He has coordinated the statistics of the Climate change inventory of adaptation and mitigation actions for Latin-America, presented at the WWF in 2012. Civil engineer by training with a strong background on computational science and an specialization on Telecommunications. He has developed methods for integrating computational intelligent algorithms and hydrological conceptual models for hydrological forecasting. During his Ph.D. he also worked in Flood Early Warning System models integrating Machine Learning models (Delft-FEWS). He developed scripts for areas of computational intelligence, optimization of water resources, online modeling and in fluid dynamics simulation in MATLAB. One of his recent projects focuses on exploring the use spatiotemporal rainfall objects as inputs for pattern recognition and tracking models. He is innovating in new paradigms in the areas of Natural Language processing and AI Chatbots for new concepts in decision support.

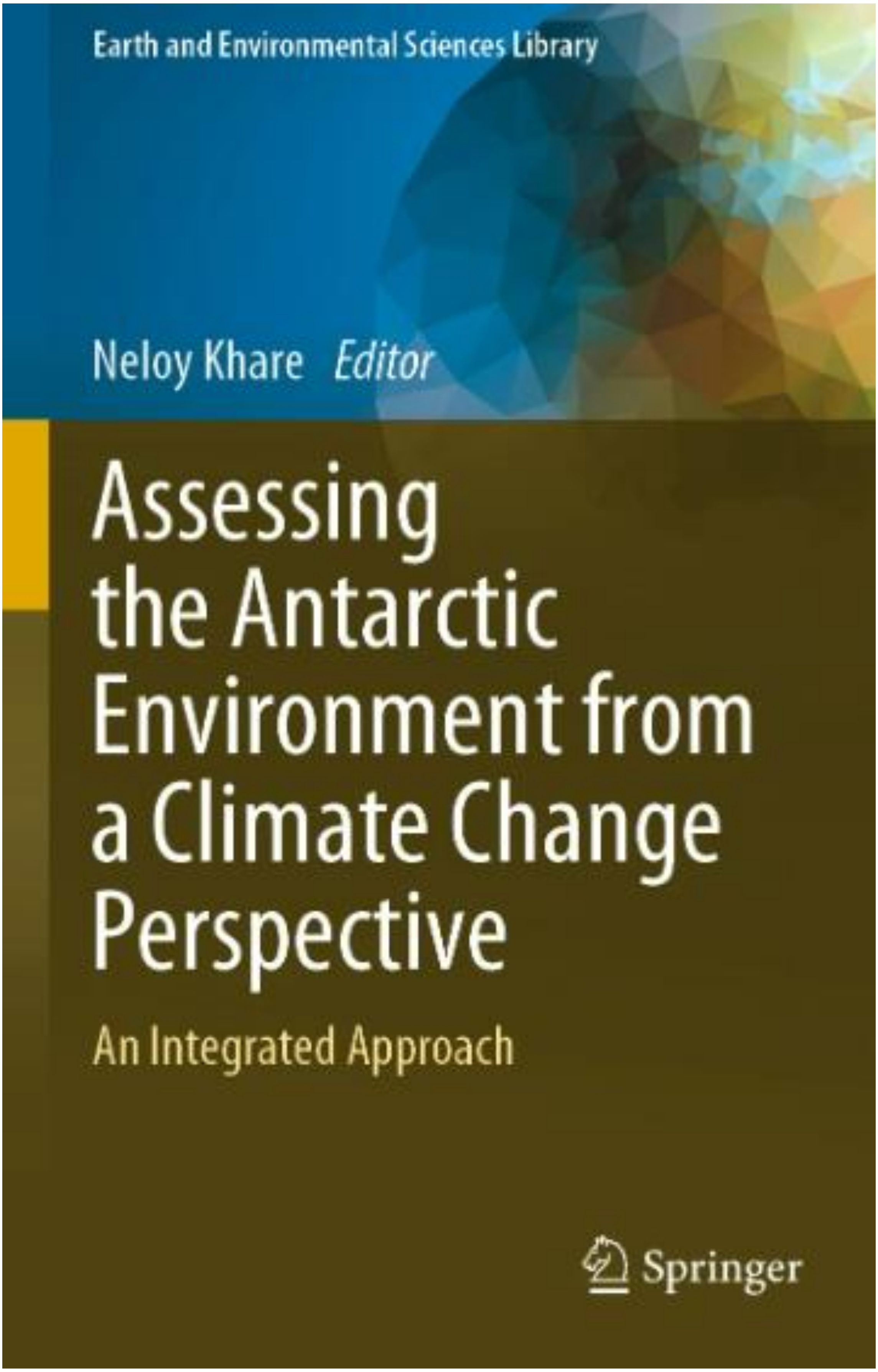
He have participated on research projects in different countries like China with the North China University for Water Conservancy and Electric Power in China, Colombia (CINARA), Mexico (Technologico of Monterrey), England (CEH), Norway (University of Oslo) and others. The last two years he served as chair of the session on geo-statistics at the European Geoscience Union. From 2011 to 2012 he created and leaded the LatinAqua network for water research scientist in Latin-America.

Dr. Francisco Muñoz-Arriola is an Associate Professor in "Climate Analytics, Analysis, and Synthesis" in the School of Natural Resources and the Department of Biological Systems Engineering at the University of Nebraska-Lincoln, and an Adjunct Faculty in the Department of Biosystems Engineering at Universidade do Sao Paulo. He is also a fellow of the Robert B. Daugherty Water for Food Global Institute, the University of Nebraska's Public Policy Center, and the Nebraska Governance and Technology Center. Francisco is a member of the American Meteorological Society (AMS) Water Resources Committee and co-chair of the presidential sessions on Food Security and Water Security at the 2022 AMS annual meeting. Francisco studies the predictability of hydrometeorological and climate extremes and their impacts on natural systems and infrastructure. He is member of the Climate-Resilient and Environmentally Adequate Infrastructure (CREA-I) research collective. CREA-I pursues to connect engineering with other disciplines creating adaptive planning and management strategies, information technologies, models, and theories. Some of Francisco's fundamental and applied research includes the study of the resilience of complex systems to changes in weather and climate, the predictability of regime shifts in water, agriculture, and public health, the integrated management of water quality and quantity, and the (re)design of climate-resilient infrastructure and actions. His collaborative network includes researchers from more than twenty countries in Asia, Europe, and the Americas, working on multiple disciplinary and transdisciplinary challenges. Francisco is an enthusiast mentor and advocate for a diverse, equal, inclusive, ethical, and accessible education. Francisco's Ph.D. is in Civil and Environmental Engineering from Duke University, and he has postdoctoral experiences at the University of Washington and the University of California, San Diego. His bachelor's degree is in Oceanography from the Facultad de Ciencias Marinas at the Universidad Autónoma de Baja California, México.

Prof. Ram Narayan Yadava holds position of Director of Research and International Affairs in Madhyanchal Professional University, Bhopal, (M.P.) India; and Director of Patel Group of Institutions, India. He has worked as a advisor of AISECT Group of Universities and a founding Vice Chancellor of the AISECT University, Hazaribag (Jharkhand), India. Prof. Yadava is also a founding member of Advanced Materials and Processes Research Institute (AMPRI) under the umbrella of Council of Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), India. His research interests include Solid Mechanics, Environmental Quality and Water Resources, Hydrologic Modeling, Environmental Sciences, and R&D Planning and Management. Dr. Yadava has executed a variety of research/consultancy projects in the area of Water Resources Planning and Management, Environment, Remote Sensing, Mathematical Modeling, Technology Forecasting, etc.

He has adequate experience in establishing institutes/organizations from scratch. In addition, he has adequate experience in planning, formulating, executing and managing of R&D programs including organizing seminars/symposia/conferences at national and international levels. He has got to his credit guiding a number of M. Tech. and Ph.D. students in the area of Mathematical Sciences and Earth Sciences. Dr. Yadava has visited and delivered invited lectures at different institutes/universities in India as well as in abroad in the various countries such as USA, Canada, UK, France, Thailand, Germany, South Korea, Malaysia, Singapore, South Africa, Costa Rica, The Netherlands, France, China, and Australia. He is Recipient of Raman Research Fellowship and other awards.

Dr. Yadava has been recognized for four decades of leadership in research and service to the hydrologic, environment and water resources profession. Dr. Yadava's contribution to the state of the art has been significant in many different specialty areas, including water resources management, environmental sciences, irrigation science, soil and water conservation engineering, and mathematical modeling. He has published more than 100 journal articles; four text books; sixteen edited reference books. He is reviewer of scientific journals and member of the scientific committee of international conferences. He also holds position of Vice President of International Association of Water, Environment, Energy and Society.


Earth and Environmental Sciences Library
Neloy Khare Editor
Assessing the Antarctic Environment from a Climate Change Perspective
An Integrated Approach
Springer

Earth and Environmental Sciences Library

Earth and Environmental Sciences Library (EESL) is a multidisciplinary book series focusing on innovative approaches and solid reviews to strengthen the role of the Earth and Environmental Sciences communities, while also providing sound guidance for stakeholders, decision-makers, policymakers, international organizations, and NGOs.

Topics of interest include oceanography, the marine environment, atmospheric sciences, hydrology and soil sciences, geophysics and geology, agriculture, environmental pollution, remote sensing, climate change, water resources, and natural resources management. In pursuit of these topics, the Earth Sciences and Environmental Sciences communities are invited to share their knowledge and expertise in the form of edited books, monographs, and conference proceedings.

More information about this series at https://link.springer.com/bookseries/16637

Neloy Khare
Editor

Assessing the Antarctic Environment from a Climate Change Perspective

An Integrated Approach

Springer

Editor
Neloy Khare
Government of India
Ministry of Earth Sciences
New Delhi, India

ISSN 2730-6674 ISSN 2730-6682 (electronic)
Earth and Environmental Sciences Library
ISBN 978-3-030-87077-5 ISBN 978-3-030-87078-2 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-87078-2

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Foreword

Antarctica is the last great untouched wilderness. Antarctica's frozen continent is an incredible continent of stunning and alien beauty with a rich history of adventure, exploration, and discovery. It is known for diversified uniqueness and is a key to understanding how anthropogenic activities adversely impact the world's climate and carry an associated impact on it. Indubitably, Antarctica is also essential for science because of its profound effect on the Earth's climate and ocean systems which has also revealed much about the impact of human activity on the natural world.

The looming danger of global warming on Antarctica is not confined but spreading fast across the continent, long thought to be untouched by warming. But now, the glaciers and ice shelves in this frigid region are showing signs of melting. Such unprecedented development portends dramatic rises in sea levels in this century and beyond. The collapse of the Larsen C ice shelf warns us against the Antarctic's fragile environment. The subtle climatic changes may primarily pose dire global consequences because collapsing ice shelves prompt the glaciers behind them to retreat more quickly, causing further sea-level rise, thus increasing peril, especially for island countries.

Some of the changes Antarctica is facing are already irreversible, and the situation may turn out to be devastating if the issues are not timely managed through appropriate strategies. To tackle the potential impact of climate, it becomes imperative to prepare futuristic climate change trends to prepare humankind in a larger perspective. It necessitates an in-depth assessment of the Antarctic Environment through an integrated approach.

Over four decades, India has been actively pursuing Antarctic research commensurate with its scientific strength and global visibility. A particular focus has been paid towards climate change. The present book, *Assessing the Antarctic Environment from Climate Change perspective: An Integrated Approach,* provides a comprehensive overview of Antarctic Environmental changes in space and time and assesses climate change scenarios in the present context global warming. It is aptly brought out with eighteen dedicated chapters, where each chapter has its specific significance.

The book begins with *Dhanasree Jayaram's* detailed account on current geopolitical issues arising out of ongoing environmental shift due to unfavourable activities elsewhere, causing damage to the icy continent's pristine nature requiring a firm committed and transparent Antarctic Governance. *Dastidar and Khare* used the data obtained from the web of science and analysed various trends and patterns from the scientific literature on Antarctic Climate Change science. Such analyses significantly impact the direction of the present research to help understand climate change and variability. Subsequently, a detailed assessment is made by *Choudhary and Khare* on how climate change over the Antarctic and the Southern Ocean impacts the global climate system. Gleaning clues drawn from the marine sedimentary records. *Singh et al.* illustriously elaborated Cenozoic Evolution of Antarctic Ice sheet, Circum Antarctic Circulation and Antarctic climate.

To understand the Antarctic region's climate scenarios, a firm understanding of the past climatic evolution is exciting and a key factor. *Baba et al.* studied the variations in the cosmogenic radionuclides. They reconstructed the climatic conditions and glacial history over the DronningMaudland region. Whereas' *Shrivastava et al.* utilised yet another proxy (Terrestrial Diamicts and Lacustrine Sediments) to illuminate Late Quaternary Climate Change in Schirmacher Region, East Antarctica. It is well corroborated with *Govil and Mazumder's* focused review on lacustrine signatures of the palaeoclimatic conditions. Glacial-interglacial paleoenvironmental records have been retrieved from lake sediments of Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica, by *Warier et al.*

On the contrary, Nutrient cycling and productivity in Antarctic lakes have been detailed by *Choudhary et al.* In contrast, the Chemical and isotopic characterisation of lakes in the Larsemann Hills, East Antarctica, has been addressed by *Reshmi et al.*

Gwal et al. studied the effect of Ionospheric scintillation and observed the loss of lock-in GPS signals. Further the effect of Ionospheric Scintillation on the positional error and loss of lock of GPS Signal have also been investied in details by *Gwal et al.* Towards understanding biological response to ongoing climate changes over the Antarctic region, *Pande* and *Kuppusamy* highlighted that the rapid changes in the physical environment of the Antarctic and the Southern Ocean affect marine life at all trophic levels, from the primary prey species (zooplankton including Antarctic Krill) to mesopredators (like squids) to top predators such as marine mammals and seabirds. They also postulated that the Seabird populations across the globe are threatened with human-induced changes. Long-term monitoring programs have highlighted exciting trends, including foreseen threats and the declining status of seabirds worldwide.

Similarly, *Nayaka and Rai* have examined the response of Antarctic lichen to climate change. Their evaluation was primarily based on the evidence from natural gradients and temperature enchantment. Simultaneously, *Singh et al.* found a higher Pigment Synthesis rate in Antarctic Plants as an adaptive survival strategy under U.V. radiation.

Catherine et al. have provided an overview of Antarctica's Geoscience studies. In contrast, the Antarctic region's seismogenesis and seismic potential have been assessed for the future comprehensive study by *Mishra.* On the contrary, *Sunil et al.* demonstrated the Antarctic plate's new kinematics using GPS and GRACE data.

Understanding is a continuous process, so the Scientific advancements in Antarctic Science may pose a more significant database to attend to challenging scientific questions. It requires enhanced monitoring, long-ranged time series climate data, efficient models and strong international collaborations to help understand Antarctic climates' evolution.

This book aptly consolidates recent scientific findings and insights related to the ongoing climate change in and around the Antarctic region through an integrated approach. This book will act as a ready reference to all avid researchers and students.

This book will be a good source of information about the Antarctic climate and act as a reference for students, professionals and researchers.

April 2021

A. E. Muthunayagam
Former Secretary, Department
of Ocean Development
Government of India
Thiruvananthapuram, India

Preface

Over 100 million years ago, Antarctica was part of the supercontinent Gondwana. Gondwana gradually broke apart with passing time, and Antarctica in its present situation was formed around 25 million years ago, owing to the opening of the Drake Passage between it and South America. The vast frozen landmass at the southernmost part of the planet is more than just spectacular icing worldwide. The Antarctic ice deflects some of the sun's rays away from the Earth, keeping temperatures liveable. It could be vital for our survival too.

Historically, the first confirmed sighting of mainland Antarctica was recorded on January 27, 1820. Antarctica's discovery is attributed to the Russian expedition led by Fabian Gottlieb von Bellingshausen and Mikhail Lazarev. They discovered an ice shelf at Princess Martha Coast, subsequently known as the Fimbul Ice Shelf. This continent carries many superlatives like it holds most of the world's freshwater but remains a desert. Antarctica used to be as warm as any other tropical place. The Antarctic, which has active volcanoes and several subglacial lakes, has no time zone.

Owing to ongoing global warming, the Antarctic Peninsula has become one of Earth's most rapidly warming areas. The high ice sheet and the polar location make Antarctica a powerful heat sink that strongly affects the climate of the whole Earth. The Antarctic ice sheet contains sufficient ice to raise worldwide sea level by more than 60 meters if melted completely. Through Antarctica, we can understand the Earth's past, present, and future. It also exhibits a platform to understand and value our planet. The ice sheets over the Antarctic region also holds over half-million-years old climatic change signatures. The major threats to this pristine region are climate change which is the greatest long-term threat to the area, increased fishing pressure and illegal fishing, marine pollution, persistent organic pollutants (POPs), and invasive species. It is now a fact that Antarctica and its surrounding waters are under pressure from a variety of forces that are already transforming the area. The most immediate threats are regional warming, ocean acidification, and sea ice loss, all linked to global levels of carbon dioxide. Environmental impacts in Antarctica occur at a range of scales. Global warming, ozone depletion, and global contamination have planet-wide consequences. These affect Antarctica at the most significant scale. Fishing and hunting have more localized impacts but still, have the potential to cause region-wide effects. Indubitably, if all the ice covering Antarctica, Greenland, and mountain glaciers worldwide were to melt, the sea level would rise about 70 meters. The ocean would cover all the coastal cities, and the land area would shrink significantly. However, all the ice is not going to melt. Altogether, Greenland and Antarctica have lost 6.4 trillion tons of ice since the 1990s. The resulting meltwater boosted global sea levels by 0.7 inches. Therefore, it is essential but vital to understand the environmental conditions vis-a-vis the impact of global climate change on this icy continent.

The present book *Assessing the Antarctic Environment from Climate Change perspective: An Integrated Approach* attempts to address various facets of the climate change being witnessed over the Antarctic region. The book begins with the Geopolitics, Environmental Change and Antarctic Governance ably highlighted by *Dhanasree Jayaram.* Although the Antarctic Treaty (AT) is considered a successful example of science diplomacy, as countries have set aside their territorial claims and the continent is a nuclear-free zone by shifting focus to scientific cooperation, its future remains uncertain with these developments. Science diplomacy always goes hand in hand with geopolitics. The AT that reflects Cold War geopolitics needs to be modified to represent present-day geopolitical realities for it to be enduring. A transformative approach to Antarctic governance (including the Southern Ocean), especially in terms of its resources, needs to be adopted. This chapter is followed by detailed data analyses obtained from the web of science dealing with the climate change-related research over Antarctica by world's researchers by *Dastidar and Khare.* Their efforts observe peculiar trends and patterns in the climate change research suggesting priority for climate change research since the 1970s. *Choudhary and Khare* have addressed the climate change over the Antarctic and the Southern Ocean and its impact and bearing on the global climate system. They advocated for a thorough understanding and knowledge of the causes and impacts of climate change and the duration and rates of change, requiring the integration of observational and modelling knowledge from all Earth system-based scientific disciplines.

In a significant manner, *Singh et al.* put forth the evolution of the Antarctic Ice sheet, Circum Antarctic Circulation, and Antarctic climate during Cenozoic by gleaning clues from marine sedimentary records. This chapter ably covers the geological evidence for the origin and evolution of the Antarctic Ice sheet, which primarily includes marine sediments deposited from southern to lower latitudes and summarizes crucial research regarding the origin and development of the Antarctic Ice Sheet (AIS) and offers some future directions for research.

While *Baba et al.* utilized cosmogenic radionuclides to reconstruct the glacial history of the Dronning Maudland region of East Antarctica, this chapter deliberates on the comprehensive outline of DML, basics of cosmogenic radionuclide and its application, and major glacial events from DML. Further, meltwater pulse due to deglaciation of EAIS and evidence related to the marine isotope stages are discussed to understand the impact of deglaciation on the global ocean. This region shows sparse or no evidence of ice thickening during the last glacial maximum (LGM). Field observations and ice core models show that the ice sheet's interior parts, the ice dome, were possibly 100 m lower during LGM than the present. On the other hand, *Shrivastava et al.* discussed the Late Quaternary climate change in the Schirmacher region, based on the terrestrial diamicts and lacustrine sediments. The multi-proxy data, generated from the moraines and sediment cores of a variety of lakes from the Schirmacher region, cDML, has provided better insight into the Late Pleistocene to Holocene paleoclimatic evolution of the region during the Late Quaternary. This chapter highlights the glacial signatures, which are very well preserved in all kinds of sediments of this region. The clay minerals indicate a gradual shift in the weathering regime and that in climate from strongly glacial to fluvio-glacial during Late Quaternary. The results of surface textures of quartz grains have been discussed depth wise and in the same samples. In general, it shows dominant glacial and glaciofluvial actions. The OSL chronology on moraines has provided information on different events of deglaciation in Schirmacher region, East Antarctica. An overview of the paleoclimate changes archived in the lacustrine sediments has been provided by *Govil and Mazumder*. Major palaeoclimatic/palaeoenvironmental studies from this region reveal the presence of several episodes of alternating warm–cold events during Holocene and even beyond, based on a large number of proxies, mainly biological, geochemical, and sedimentological parameters. On the basis of these data, the morphological evolution of the lakes and palaeoclimatic reconstruction of the Schirmacher Oasis have been deciphered. The lacustrine signatures have further been explored to synthesize a glacial–interglacial paleoenvironmental conditions of Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. Paleoclimatic studies using lake sediments drew scientific attention due to its efficiency to record long, high-resolution climate records. Recent studies have employed multiple proxies like environmental magnetism, isotope geochemistry, petrography, sedimentology, and geochronology on lake sediments of Schirmacher Oasis to decipher the past climate and the prevailing environmental conditions. The existing studies poorly record climatic events such as the Mid-Holocene Warm period, Hypsithermal and neoglacial cooling. Despite better chronometric control in these studies, coarse temporal resolution and sparsely documented finer scale climatic variations place the need for future high-resolution works in the East Antarctic region. To fill up this gap, *Warier et al.* have synthesized glacial–interglacial paleoenvironmental records from lake sediments of Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. The nutrient cycling and productivity in Antarctic lakes have been addressed by *Choudhary et al.,* who used sedimentary organic matter from the Antarctic lakes as the source of various proxies to study productivity changes. A total of three sediment cores have been analyzed for TOC, total nitrogen (TN), total phosphorus (TP), biogenic silica (BSi), and their ratios were computed to understand the nutrient cycling and productivity in Antarctic lakes. On the contrary, *Reshmi et al.* studied chemical and isotopic characterization of lakes in the Larsemann Hills, East Antarctica. The ionic and isotopic ratios of some lakes kinetic controlled ice-water fractionation and evaporation processes are found to affect the isotopic evolution of lake water.

In the field of Antarctic ionospheric research, the effect of ionosphere scintillations on the loss of lock in GPS signals has been detailed by *Gwal et al.* during the five most disturbed days of the December 2006. During all the disturbed days weak, moderate or intense geomagnetic storms were observed. The amplitude and phase scintillation become frequently, the visible PRNSs does not remain stable for longer periods. The loss of lock occurs frequently whenever the GPS signals scintillate. Similarly, *Gwal et al.* also attempted to understand the effect of Ionospheric Scintillation on the Positional Error and Loss of Lock of GPS Signal in Antarctic Region. They reported that during all the five geomagnetically disturbed days, the positional error increases significantly.

In Antarctic Biology, *Pande and Kuppusamy* provided an insight into the impacts of ongoing climate changes on Antarctic birds. They have assessed the population status, distribution, and genetic structure of key seabird species (Adelie penguin, snow petrel, south polar skua, Wilson's storm petrel) breeding around Indian research stations, whereas *Nayaka and Rai* have detailed the response of lichens to temperature rise. The extreme climatic conditions such as temperature, precipitation, and smaller ice-free regions allow only cryptogams like bryophytes and lichens to grow dominantly. Lichens are well-known biomonitors and bioindicators of climate change, environmental pollution, and anthropogenic perturbations, they have explored their potential. The study points out that climate warming will cause the extinction of sensitive species. Simultaneously, some will increase their geographical extension due to the increased water availability and nutrients in changed ecosystems. On the contrary, *Singh et al.* assessed the Strategy of Antarctic plants for survival under UV radiations. Antarctic cryptogams are growing in the photosynthetically active radiation (PAR), and ultraviolet radiations (UV-R), closely associated with the synthesis of photosynthetic and photo protective pigments. Antarctic cryptogams cope with high UV radiation stress by synthesizing UV-absorbing compounds; UV-B absorbs pigments and other compounds; the pigment synthesis provides protection to cryptogamic flora.

An exhaustive collation of significant geoscientific studies in Antarctica has been made by *Catherine et al.,* with special mention of CSIR-NGRI which has been participating in these expeditions and has established seismological and GPS observatories for monitoring seismicity and to understand the tectonics of the Antarctica plate and has carried out some geological and geophysical studies too. They summarize some of the important contributions of CSIR-NGRI. While seismogenesis and seismic potential of Antarctic region has not yet been well understood because of unique and complex tectonic settings of the region, besides several causative factors associated with natural and anthropogenic, which are still enigmatic in sense to unravel the fact what and how the genesis of earthquakes is related to the glacial dynamics. *Mishra* have ably provided a comprehensive overview on these aspects to suggest future course of action to undertake detailed study on the glacial mass change induced earthquakes (GMCIE) for the Antarctic regions. The book ends with a dedicated chapter dealing with the Gravity Recovery and Climate Experiment (GRACE) satellites data by *Sunil et al.* which indicates global sea level rise by 0.35 millimetres per year. Antarctic GPS and GRACE data were reanalyzed and discussed to understand in this chapter to understand and estimate the kinematics of Antarctic plate.

The present book shall act as a ready reference to all researchers/academicians who have curiosity to know about various dimensions of the Antarctic climate. The latest insight and data shall be of immense use to climate scientists and policy makers.

New Delhi, India
April 2021

Neloy Khare

Acknowledgements

Generous support and help received from all contributing authors are sincerely acknowledged. Without their valuable inputs on various facets of Climate change over the Antarctic region, the book would not have been possible. Various learned experts who have reviewed different Chapters are sincerely acknowledged for their timely, essential, and critical reviews.

Professor Goverdhan Mehta, FRS, has always been the source of inspiration for my scientific pursuit, and I owe a lot for his kind encouragement, moral support, and guidance. I express my sincere thanks to Dr. M. N. Rajeevan, Secretary to the Government of India, at the Ministry of Earth Sciences, New Delhi (India), for his various valuable inputs and suggestions. Dr. Prem Chand Pandey, founder Director, National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research, Goa (India) and Dr. K. J. Ramesh, former Director-General, India Meteorological Department (IMD), New Delhi (India), have always been supportive as a true well-wisher.

Professor Anil Kumar Gupta, Indian Institute of Technology, Kharagpur (India) and Dr. Rajiv Nigam, former Adviser at the National Institute of Oceanography, Goa (India), are deeply acknowledged for providing many valuable suggestions to this book. This book has received significant support from Akshat Khare and Ashmit Khare, who helped me during the book preparation. Dr. Rajni Khare has unconditionally supported enormously during various stages of this book. Dr. Shabnam Choudhary, Shri Hemant Kumar, and Shri Hari Dass Sharma from the Ministry of Earth Sciences, New Delhi (India), have helped immensely formatting the text and figures of this book and bring the book to its present form. Publishers (Springer Nature) have done a commendable job and are sincerely acknowledged.

New Delhi, India
April 2021

Neloy Khare

Dedication

Late Professor Surendra Kumar
(14.8.1942 – 20.4.2021)

Professor Surendra Kumar was born in Lucknow. His schooling and college education are from Jubilee Inter College, Lucknow, and thereafter shifted to Lucknow University for graduation, postgraduation, and Ph. D. He worked on Almora Crystallines, Lesser Himalaya. He joined the Department of Geology as a faculty in September 1967.

He was a noted sedimentologist, however, also contributed significantly on Precambrian stromatolites and microbiota. He has worked on Lesser Himalaya, Tethys Himalaya, Vindhyan Supergroup, Marwar Supergroup, and Ganga River basin. His contributions on Vindhyan stromatolites are noteworthy in Indian geology as established and reported many new forms including *Maiharia maiharensis*. Similarly, reassessment and refinement of the Marwar Supergroup stratigraphy, based on organo-sedimentary structures, is again quite significant. Closely associated people are well aware of his systematic approach, planning, and skill of minute observations during the field work. Either as a leader or member of expedition, he visited the high-altitude, hostile, and glacial terrain of Malla Johar area, Tethys Himalaya for 3–4 timed and scaled more than 20,000 ft for sample and data collections. He was also concerned with the recent problems of river pollution and environmental hazards, therefore, concentrated on various aspects of the Ganga basin, helpful in planning and management for both State and Centre governments.

He is also the recipient of prestigious Alaxender von Humboldt Fellowship at Heidelberg. He has also been awarded the National Mineral Award by the Government of India in the year 1999. Served as an active member of Palaeontological Society of India in various capacities including the responsibility of the Editor of the Journal for many years. He has more than 100 research articles of national and international reputes in his credit besides three books/field guides on Lameta, Vindhyan Basin, and Marwar Supergroup. Superannuated in the year 2005, but committed to research activity for more than a decade. His sudden demise on April 20, 2021, has created a void in the field of Geology As his student, I pay my sincere tribute to his noble soul and humbly dedicate this book to him.

Neloy Khare

Contents

Editors and Contributors

About the Editor

Dr. Neloy Khare presently Adviser/Scientist G to the Government of India at MoES. has a very distinctive acumen not only of administration but also of quality science and research in his areas of expertise covering a large spectrum of geographically distinct locations like Antarctic, Arctic, Southern Ocean, Bay of Bengal, Arabian Sea, Indian Ocean, etc. He has almost 30 years of experience in the field of paleoclimate research using paleobiology Paleontology)/teaching/science management/administration/coordination for scientific programmes (including Indian Polar Programme), etc. Having completed his doctorate (Ph.D.) on tropical marine region and Doctor of Science (D.Sc.) on Southern High latitude marine regions towards environmental/climatic implications using various proxies including foraminifera (micro-fossil), have made significant contributions in the field of palaeoclimatology of Southern high latitude regions (Antarctic and Southern Ocean) using Micropaleontology as a tool. These studies coupled with his palaeoclimatic reconstructions from tropical regions helped understand causal linkages and teleconnections between the processes taking place in Southern high latitudes with that of climate variability occurring in tropical regions. He has been conferred Honorary Professor and Adjunct Professor by many Indian universities. He has a very impressive list of publications to his credit (125 research articles in National and International Scientific journals; 3 special Issues of National Scientific Journals as Guest Editor; Edited Special Issue of Polar Science (Elsevier) as its Managing Editor, Quaternary International and Journal of Asian Earth Sciences as Guest Editor Authored/edited many books, 130 abstracts have been contributed to various seminars; 23 popular Science Articles; 5 technicalreports). Government of India and many professional bodies have bestowed him with many prestigious awards for his humble scientific contributions to Past climate changes/Oceanography/Polar Science and Southern Oceanography The most coveted award is Rajiv Gandhi National Award—2013 conferred by Honourable President of India. Other include ISCA Young Scientist Award, Boyscast Fellowship, CIES French Fellowship, Krishnan Gold Medal, Best Scientist Award, Eminent Scientist

Award, ISCA Platinum Jubilee Lecture, IGU Fellowship, besides many. He has made tremendous efforts to popularize ocean science and polar science across the country by the way of delivering many invited lectures, radio talks, and publishing popular science articles.

He has sailed in the Arctic Ocean as a part of "Science PUB" in 2008 during the International Polar Year campaign for scientific and became the first Indian to sail in the Arctic Ocean.

Contributors

Waseem Ahmad Baba Department of Geology, Central University of Punjab, Punjab, India

S. Amirtharaj Indian Institute of Geomagnetism, Mumbai, India

P. Arjun Centre for Water Resources Development and Management, Kozhikode, Kerala, India

Rajesh Asthana Geological Survey of India, Kolkata, India

Joshi K. Catherine CSIR-National Geophysical Research Institute, Uppal Raod, Hyderabad, India

Shabnam Choudhary National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research, Vasco da Gama, Goa-403802, India

Suryanshu Choudhary Department of Physics, Rabindranath Tagore University, Raisen, India;
Department of Physics, Dr A P J Abdul Kalam University, Indore, India

Prabir G. Dastidar Ministry of Earth Sciences, Prithvi BhawanNew Delhi, India

Ajay Dhar Indian Institute of Geomagnetism, Mumbai, India

Vineet K. Gahalaut CSIR-National Geophysical Research Institute, Uppal Raod, Hyderabad, India

Girish Gopinath Centre for Water Resources Development and Management, Kozhikode, Kerala, India;
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies, Kochi, Kerala, India

Pawan Govil Birbal Sahni Institute of Palaeosciences, Lucknow, UP, India

A. K. Gwal Department of Physics, Rabindranath Tagore University, Raisen, India;
Department of Physics, Dr A P J Abdul Kalam University, Indore, India

Dhanasree Jayaram Department of Geopolitics and International Relations, Old TAPMI Building, Manipal Academy of Higher Education, Manipal, Karnataka, India

Tushar Kaushik Biodiversity and Palaeobiology, Agharkar Research Institute, Pune, India

Neloy Khare Ministry of Earth Sciences, Prithvi Bhawan, New Delhi, India

Rajni Khare Delhi Public School, Sector Gama-2, Greater Noida, Gautam Buddh Nagar, Uttar Pradesh, India

Jitendra Kumar Pattanaik Department of Geology, Central University of Punjab, Punjab, India

Prakash Kumar Shrivastava Geological Survey of India, Kolkata, India

Amit Kumar CSIR-National Geophysical Research Institute, Uppal Raod, Hyderabad, India

K. Vijay Kumar Indian Institute of Geomagnetism, Mumbai, India

Pankaj Kumar AMS Division & Geochronology Group, Inter-University Accelerator Centre, New Delhi, India

Sivakumar Kuppusamy Department of Endangered Species Management, Wildlife Institute of India, Dehradun, Uttarakhand, India

B. S. Mahesh National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research, Ministry of Earth Sciences, Vasco-da-Gama, Goa, India

Kirtiranjan Mallick Department of Geology, Utkal University, Bhubaneswar, Odisha, India

Abhijit Mazumder Birbal Sahni Institute of Palaeosciences, Lucknow, UP, India

O. P. Mishra National Centre for Seismology, Ministry of Earth Sciences, New Delhi, India

Rahul Mohan National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research, Ministry of Earth Sciences, Vasco-da-Gama, Goa, India

Ch Mohana Lakshmi CSIR-National Geophysical Research Institute, Uppal Raod, Hyderabad, India

Saroj K. Mondal CSIR-National Geophysical Research Institute, Uppal Raod, Hyderabad, India

G. N. Nayak Marine Sciences, School of Earth, Ocean and Atmospheric Sciences, Goa University, Taleigao, Goa, India

Sanjeeva Nayaka Lichenology Laboratory, Plant Diversity, Systematics and Herbarium Division, CSIR-National Botanical Research Institute, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

Anant Pande Department of Endangered Species Management, Wildlife Institute of India, Dehradun, Uttarakhand, India

M. Ponraj Indian Institute of Geomagnetism, Mumbai, India

M. Praveenbabu Centre for Water Resources Development and Management, Kozhikode, Kerala, India

Vikram Pratap Singh Department of Geology, Indira Gandhi National Tribal University, Amarkantak, India

Himanshu Rai Lichenology Laboratory, Plant Diversity, Systematics and Herbarium Division, CSIR-National Botanical Research Institute, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

V Rajesheswar Rao CSIR-National Geophysical Research Institute, Uppal Raod, Hyderabad, India

Rahul Rawat Indian Institute of Geomagnetism, Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

T. R. Resmi Centre for Water Resources Development and Management, Kozhikode, Kerala, India

Sandip Roy Geological Survey of India, Kolkata, India

Ajish P. Saji Indian Institute of Geomagnetism, Mumbai, India

A. S. Yamuna Sali Centre for Climate Studies / Department of Civil Engineering (Manipal Institute of Technology), Manipal Academy of Higher Education, Manipal, Karnataka, India

Joju George Sebastian Centre for Climate Studies / Department of Civil Engineering (Manipal Institute of Technology), Manipal Academy of Higher Education, Manipal, Karnataka, India

Ankush Shrivastava Department of Geology, Mohanlal Sukhadia University, Udaipur, Rajasthan, India

Jaswant Singh Department of Environmental Sciences, Dr R M. L. Avadh University, Ayodhya, Uttar Pradesh, India

Ashutosh K. Singh Department of Geology, Centre of Advanced Studies, University of Delhi, Delhi, India

Rudra P. Singh Department of Environmental Sciences, Dr R M. L. Avadh University, Ayodhya, Uttar Pradesh, India

Devesh K. Sinha Department of Geology, Centre of Advanced Studies, University of Delhi, Delhi, India

P. S. Sunil Department of Marine Geology and Geophysics, CUSAT-NCPOR Centre for Polar Sciences, School of Marine Sciences, Cochin University of Science and Technology, Kochi, Kerala, India

Ritesh Yadav Department of Physics, Rabindranath Tagore University, Raisen, India;
Department of Physics, Dr A P J Abdul Kalam University, Indore, India

Anish Kumar Warrier Centre for Climate Studies / Department of Civil Engineering (Manipal Institute of Technology), Manipal Academy of Higher Education, Manipal, Karnataka, India

Shalini Dhyani
Mrittika Basu
Harini Santhanam
Rajarshi Dasgupta *Editors*

Blue-Green Infrastructure Across Asian Countries

Improving Urban Resilience and Sustainability

Springer

Blue-Green Infrastructure Across Asian Countries

Shalini Dhyani • Mrittika Basu •
Harini Santhanam • Rajarshi Dasgupta
Editors

Blue-Green Infrastructure Across Asian Countries

Improving Urban Resilience and Sustainability

Springer

Editors
Shalini Dhyani
National Environmental Engineering Research Institute, NM
Council Scientific and Industrial Research
Nagpur, Maharashtra, India

Mrittika Basu
Laboratory of Sustainable Rural Development
Kyoto University
Kyoto, Japan

Harini Santhanam
National Institute of Advanced Studies
Bangalore, India

Rajarshi Dasgupta
Institute for Global Environmental Strategies
Kanagawa, Japan

ISBN 978-981-16-7127-2 ISBN 978-981-16-7128-9 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-16-7128-9

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

Foreword

Cities are expanding and so are the number of people inhabiting these cities. Following the current trend, the global urban population is expected to be 70% or 6.3 billion by 2050, nearly doubling up from the urban population in 2010, i.e. 3.5 billion. This increase will not only be concentrated in megacities, but also across small- and medium-sized cities across the world. Pressure on the urban resources is anticipated to increase manifold including, but not limited to, depleting green and blue spaces, water scarcity, air pollution, urban heat islands, increasing disaster risks, noise pollution, waste dumping, etc. Maintaining a healthy and habitable urban life is one of the major challenges facing the *Anthropocene*.

There have been quite a few studies on urban infrastructural facilities like transportation systems, wastewater treatment, solid waste disposal, water supply, electricity supply and urban settlements. On the other hand, urban ecological infrastructures like open spaces, parks, waterbodies, urban wetlands, etc., collectively referred to as 'Blue-Green Infrastructure' (BGI), are the first prey to urban expansion and, yet they fail to get ample attention. Though much has been written about the benefits provided by urban ecosystems, development of new blue-green infrastructures and their mainstreaming in urban policy planning is yet to be realized, especially in the Global South. This book *Blue-Green Infrastructure Across Asian Countries—Improving Urban Resilience and Sustainability* fills up this gap impeccably. The book clearly exemplifies the importance of the Blue-Green Infrastructures through various case studies across different Asian countries and suggests convincing ways to mainstream this infrastructure in urban policy planning.

This book not only explores the benefits and challenges of Blue-Green Infrastructures, but also explores the different advances that can be adopted like citizen science initiatives, spatial planning and socio-ecological technological approaches to monitor and implement them. Different environmental designs are proposed for the inclusion of Blue-Green Infrastructures in urban settings. For example, home gardens of Sri Lanka delineate the multifunctional role of ecological infrastructures and present a unique design where both blue- and green-infrastructures can be designed together at a relatively smaller space. The different environmental designs presented in this book provide an opportunity to replicate them to include in other urban areas with some modifications, if needed.

Blue infrastructures in urban areas find a special place in this book. Very little information on urbanization impacts on blue infrastructures is available except for spatial maps that show the shrinkage in urban waterbodies. Starting from the ancient waterbodies in India to nature-based solutions for marine and coastal ecosystems to alleviating the impacts of disasters like flood, the role of blue infrastructures is explored in detail and their implementation discussed. The book opens up new avenues of research on the roles of blue infrastructure that will ameliorate the quality of life of urban dwellers. Likewise, case studies on the importance of EcoDRR demonstrate the role of Blue-Green Infrastructure in urban resilience building and disaster risk mitigation.

Considering the urban complexities and uncertainties, it is timely and important to explore alternative interventions for a sustainable urban future, as detailed in this book. The book not only quantifies and explores the importance of Blue-Green Infrastructure, but also suggests on mainstreaming it in the urban policy planning process which will eventually help in implementing the ecological infrastructures. Academicians, policy planners, city planners, local communities and both local government and non-governmental agencies will find this book helpful as the book delivers an integrated knowledge on Blue-Green Infrastructure and makes a valuable contribution towards building a sustainable and resilient urban future.

I congratulate the authors for presenting diverse concepts, cases and novel approaches on the subject that are relevant for diverse stakeholders including urban planners and policy makers. I also warmly congratulate the editors: Shalini Dhyani, Mrittika Basu, Harini Santhanam and Rajarshi Dasgupta—for their timely efforts to produce this insightful volume of concepts, innovations and case studies. This book is an important and timely contribution to the knowledge pool of urban ecosystems, nature-based solutions, disaster risk reduction and climate change adaptations. Readers will be highly benefited from the insightful chapter content and analysis presented in this book. I wish the editors and authors all success in their endeavour.

Resilience to Disasters and Conflicts Support Branch, UNEP
Geneva, Switzerland
Muralee Thummarukudy

Acknowledgements

Putting together a book on a relatively futuristic topic of *Blue-Green Infrastructure Across Asian Countries: Improving Urban Resilience and Sustainability* would not have been possible without the constant support, contributions, perseverance and dedication of expert authors. We are enormously grateful to many subject experts, scientists and researchers who volunteered their precious and busy time out of their heavily engaged academic involvements and helped to critically review the book chapters. We truly appreciate their cooperation and good understanding in meeting our rather strict paper submissions and review deadlines. Many of our supporters deserve special appreciation. We sincerely thank the Director CSIR-NEERI, Nagpur, for the valuable support during the preparation of this book. We are grateful to many of our very hard working and supportive research scholars without whose critical support our efforts alone would not have been enough to bring out this book in time. We specially thank Ms. Sunidhi Singh for her keeping record of all the email communications and attachments and Ms. Kavita Bramhanwade for her help in overseeing formatting and language correction to avoid major mistakes. Finally, the production team members of Springer deserve special appreciation for guiding us through the process of publishing this work. Despite our best efforts to avoid any mistake, it is, however, possible that a very few errors, may be grammatical in nature, remain owing to the fast pace of production and strict timelines we had to adhere to. Each individual chapter included in this book was finalized with the primary responsibility of author and co-authors. The editors have gone through all the chapters included and reviewed them personally as well, with careful scrutiny following international standards including ethics of publication. We shall be immensely grateful to receive constructive comments and suggestions from readers of this book for further improvement of our publications in future. Any errors found in this book are the collective responsibility of the chapter authors and of the editors. Last but not least, we thank our family members, especially our parents, spouses and children, for their understanding, adjustments, patience and encouragement to continue and complete this mammoth task well in time.

In closing, we express our gratitude to Dr. Muralee Thummarukudy, Chief, UNEP, for writing the foreword for this book.

Contents

About the Editors

Shalini Dhyani is a Senior Scientist in the Critical Zone Research Group of the Water Technology and Management Division at CSIR-NEERI, India. She is South Asia regional chair for IUCN-CEM (Commission on Ecosystems Management) and also serves as the lead author for IPBES Sustainable Use of Wild Species Assessment (2018–2021). She is a skilled ecologist with more than 17 years of strong experience in environmental impact assessment, ecosystem health assessment, climate change impact on natural ecosystems and species, nature-based solutions, climate-sensitive restoration and sustainability projects. She has extensively worked on the interlinkages between ecological, human and social systems through sustainability science approaches. Her research interest focuses on science-policy integration for better biodiversity and ecosystem-inclusive decision-making for impact assessment, sustainable development and disaster risk reduction. In the last few years, she has also contributed to assess the importance, threats and opportunities in fast expanding urban areas and mainstreaming blue-green infrastructure for ensuring urban resilience and sustainability. She has been involved in the gender task force of IUCN and has also helped to develop governance pathways for intergenerational partnerships in conservation. She was awarded first "IUCN-CEM Chair Young Professional Award" at the IUCN World Parks Congress 2014 in Sydney, Australia, for her excellent research and publications on forests of the Himalayan region. She is recipient of various national as well as international financial grants, viz. Indo-Italian joint bilateral research grant, Indo-Japan multilateral grant from APN, UNEP, GIZ, FAO, IUCN, UNU, European Union-LEANES, Rufford SGP and DST. She has more than 60 peer-reviewed national and international publications with many popular articles to her credit.

Mrittika Basu is an Assistant Professor in the Laboratory of Sustainable Rural Development, Graduate School of Global Environmental Studies (GSGES), Kyoto University, Japan. Prior to this position, she was a UNU-JSPS postdoctoral fellow in the United Nations University Institute for the Advanced Study of Sustainability (UNU-IAS), Tokyo. Her research mainly focused on understanding the change in ecosystem services, relational values and well-being among peri-urban communities affected by rapid urbanization and industrial development. She has also been a contributing author (CA) in the IPBES Global Assessment Report (2015–2018).

Currently, she is leading a project on migration decision-making in salinity-affected areas of Bangladesh and India (2020–2022), funded by Asia Pacific Network (APN) for Global Change Research. Apart from this, she is working on assessing nature connectedness and biophilia assessment among school children in India and Japan. Her research interests include, but not limited to, water ecosystem services, water resources management, ecosystem values and services and human–nature relations. She has published several peer-reviewed scientific papers in international journals.

Harini Santhanam is an Assistant Professor with the National Institute of Advanced Studies, Bangalore, India, studying multiple aspects of natural lake systems such as biogeochemistry, hydro-geological processes and land-water-human nexus from an ecosystem perspective. She has been a long-term researcher with IISc Bangalore, working in multidisciplinary teams with a focus on analytical and modelling techniques, with implications towards influencing management measures for the resource base. Recently, she led an investigation of the hydrochemistry of Pulicat Lake in detail, as the principal investigator of a DST-funded Women Scientists project (2015–2018) at IISc. She was awarded the National Doctoral Fellowship from AICTE, India (2004–2008). Her research interests are largely multidisciplinary, bringing together the insights from aquatic biogeochemistry (especially on themes like trophic status and ecosystem indices), geomatics-based integrative modelling, paleo-ecological reconstructions and investigating the anthropogenic influence on the recycling of nutrients through the aquatic food web, among others. Her work also encompasses the development and application of novel environmental proxies and indices. Further, she investigates the challenges towards sustainable development of urban lake environments and models the lake–land interactions from the perspective of urban blue-green infrastructure development and adopting nature-based solutions for enhancing urban resilience. She has more than 20 publications in national and international journals and conferences.

Rajarshi Dasgupta is a Senior Researcher in the domain of natural resource and ecosystem services at the Institute for Global Environmental Strategies (IGES), Kanagawa, Japan. He holds diverse research interests in the field of landscape ecology and planning, which include Ecosystem-based Disaster Risk Reduction (Eco-DRR), spatial quantification of ecosystem services, land change simulation, development of socio-ecological scenarios, participatory conservation and social forestry. Earlier, he has worked extensively with mangrove communities in India, Bangladesh and Myanmar. Prior to joining IGES, he was working with the University of Tokyo as the Japan Society for the Promotion of Science (JSPS) postdoctoral fellow in the Graduate School of Agriculture and Life Sciences. Previously, he has worked in multiple technical and administrative capacities, including government, NGO and academia, and also served as a lead author (LA) for IPBES Asia-Pacific Regional Assessment Report. He is currently serving as the lead author for IPBES Sustainable Use of Wild Species Assessment (2018–2021), as chapter scientist/ contributing author of IPCC AR-6 (WG-II) and as a visiting associate professor in the Institute for Future Initiatives, University of Tokyo.

Abbreviations

ABC	Active, Beautiful, Clean Waters
ACB	ASEAN Centre for Biodiversity
ACCCRN	Asian Cities Climate Change Resilience Network
ADB	Asian Development Bank
AIIMS	All India Institute of Medical Sciences
ALI	Advanced Land Imager
ALOS- PALSAR	Advanced Land Observing Satellite- Phased Array type L-band Synthetic Aperture Radar
AMRUT	Atal Mission for Rejuvenation and Urban Transformation
AMS	Accelerator Mass Spectrometry
ANOVA	Analysis of Variance
AQI	Air Quality Index
AQMS	Air Quality Management System
ASDMA	Assam State Disaster Management Authority
ASTER	Advanced Spaceborne Thermal Emission and Reflector Radiometer
ATLAS	Advanced Topographic Laser Altimeter System
AZN	Currency of Azerbaijan: Azerbaijani Manat
B	Balancing loop
BAU	Business As Usual
BBA	Blue to Built-up Area
BDA	Bengaluru Development Authority
BGI	Blue-Green Infrastructure
BMCs	Biodiversity Management Committees
BMPs	Best Management Practices
BOD	Biological Oxygen Demand
C	Carbon
CALABARZON	Cavite, Laguna, Batangas, Rizal, Quezon
CAS	Climate Adaptation Summit
CBA	Community-Based Adaptation
CBD	Convention on Biodiversity
CBI	City Biodiversity Index
CCA	Climate Change Adaptation

CCBA	Climate Community and Biodiversity Alliance
CCC	Chittagong City Corporation
CDA	Chittagong Development Authority
CDD	Cooling Degree Days
CER-GI-CON	Ceramic-Galvanized Iron-Concrete
CER-GI-WD	Ceramic-Galvanized Iron-Wood
CER-LS-MXD	Ceramic-Long Span-Mixed Materials
CER-TEG-CON	Ceramic-Tegula-Concrete
CFD	Computational Fluid Dynamics
C-HED	Centre for Heritage, Environment and Development
CICES	Common International Classification of Ecosystem Services
CIS	Coupled Infrastructure System
Cl	Chlorine
CLD	Causal Loop Diagrams
CO_2	Carbon Dioxide
COD	Chemical Oxygen Demand
CON-GI-CON	Concrete-Galvanized Iron-Concrete
CON-GI-WD	Concrete-Galvanized Iron-Wood
CON-TEG-BR	Concrete-Tegula-Brick
CON-TEG-CON	Concrete-Tegula-Concrete
COP	Conference of the Parties
CPCB	Central Pollution Control Board
CSO	Combined Sewer Overflow
CSO	Civil Society Organisation
CV	Contingent Valuation
CWs	Constructed Wetlands
DADP	Detailed Area Development Planning
DAP	Detailed Area Plan
DEM	Digital Elevation Model
DMDP	Dhaka Metropolitan Development Plan
DN	Digital Numbers
DO	Dissolved Oxygen
DPSIR	Driver Pressure State Impact Response Framework
DRM	Disaster Risk Management
DRR	Disaster Risk Reduction
DSM	Digital Surface Models
DSP	Dolphin Space Programme
EAF	Ecosystem Approach to Fisheries
EbDRR	Ecosystem-based Disaster Risk Reduction approaches
EBM	Ecosystem-Based Management
EMR	Electro Magnetic Radiation
EnMAP	Environmental Mapping and Analysis Program
ENPHO	Environmental Public Health Organization
ERI	Ecological Risk Index
ESS	Ecosystem Services

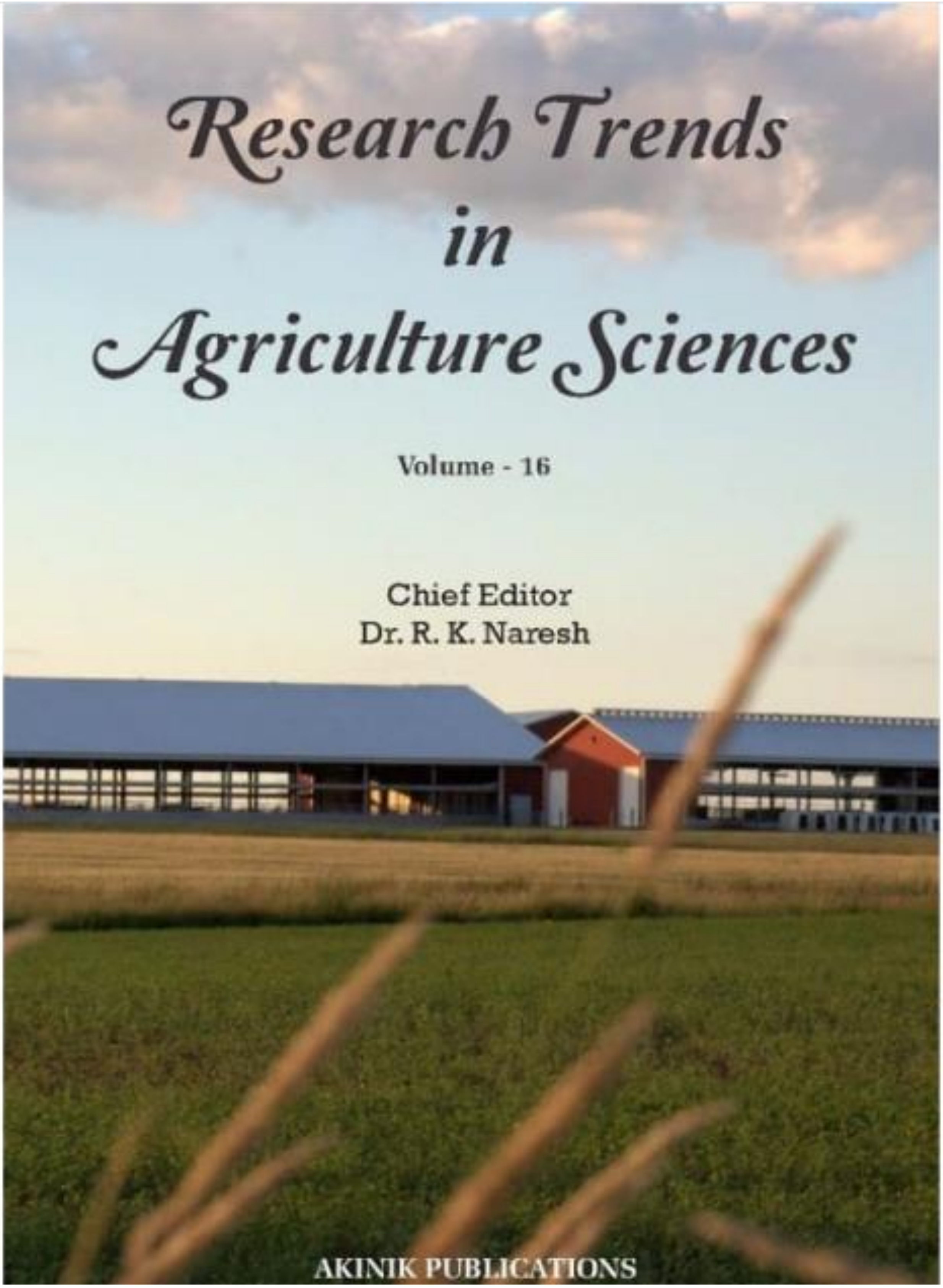
ESZ	Eco-Sensitive Zone
ETM	Enhanced Thematic Mapper
EV	Egyptian Vultures
EWS	Early Warning System
FAO	Food and Agricultural Organization
FD	Forest Department
FDPP	Full Depth Permeable Pavement
FEMA	Federal Emergency Management Agency
FGD	Focus Group Discussions
FPI	Fabry-Pérot Interferometer
GBA	Greater Baku Area
GBR	Green-to-Blue Ratio
GCDA	Greater Cochin Development Authority
GCF	Green Climate Fund
GDP	Gross Domestic Product
GE	Google Earth
GEDI	Global Ecosystem Dynamics Investigation
GEE	Google Earth Engine
GGF	Green Growth Framework
GHGs	Greenhouse Gases
GI	Green Infrastructure
GIM	National Mission for Green India
GIS	Geographical Information Systems
GLAS	Geoscience Laser Altimeter System
GMC	Guwahati Municipal Corporation
GMDA	Guwahati Metropolitan Development Authority
GPS	Global Positioning Systems
GR-GI-BAM	Ground-Galvanized Iron-Bamboo
GR-GI-MXD	Ground-Galvanized Iron-Mixed Materials
GR-GI-WD	Ground-Galvanized Iron-Wood
GR-NIP-MXD	Ground-Nipa-Mixed Materials
GR-NP-BAM	Ground-Nipa-Bamboo
GR-NP-WD	Ground-Nipa-Wood
GS	Guwahati-Shillong
HAC	Hoi An City
HDD	Heating Degree Days
HHMI	Hard Human-Made Infrastructure
HI	Human Infrastructure
HRIDAY	Heritage City Development and Augmentation Yojana
HySIS	Hyper Spectral Imaging Satellite
ICAP	India Cooling Action Plan
ICCC	Integrated Command and Control Center
ICELI KCC	ICLEI Kaohsiung Capacity Center
ICZM	Integrated Coastal Zone Management
IFM	Integrated Flood Management

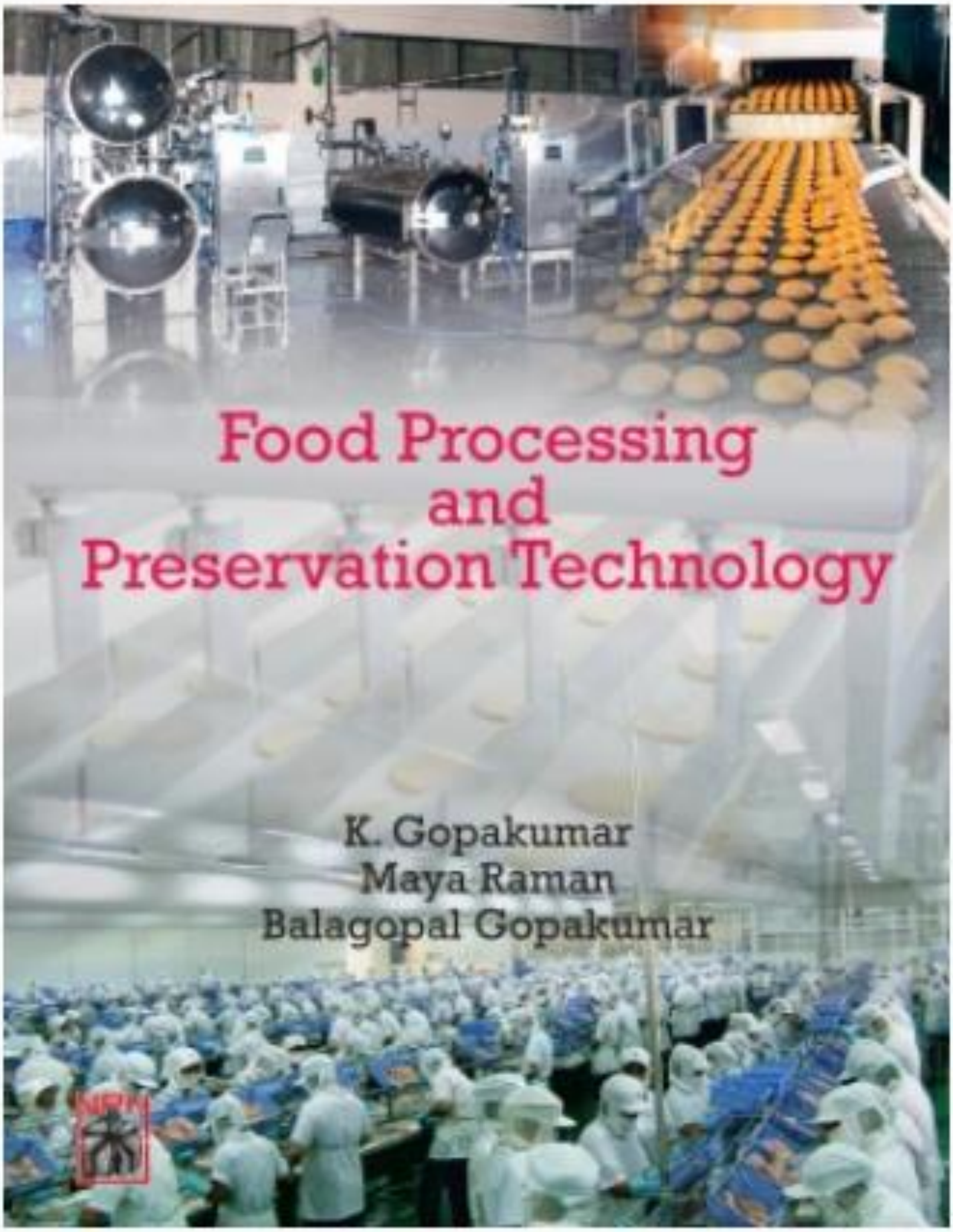
IISD	International Institute for Sustainable Development
IMFFS	Integrated Mangroves Fisheries Farming System
INCOIS	Indian National Centre for Ocean Information Services
IPBES	Intergovernmental Science-Policy Platform on Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services
IPCC	Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change
IPZ	Island Protection Zone
IRS LISS	Indian Remote Sensing Satellite Linear Imaging Self Scanning Sensor
ISA	Percentage Impervious Surface Area
ISRO	Indian Space Research Organisation
IUCN	International Union for Conservation of Nature
IUWM	Integrated Urban Water Management
JNNURM	Jawaharlal Nehru National Urban Renewal Mission
KDA	Khulna Development Authority
KHGs	Kandyan Homegardens
KSDMA	Kerala State Disaster Management Authority
KUIDFC	Karnataka Urban Infrastructure Development Finance Corporation
LAI	Leaf Area Index
LaP	Local Area Planning Authority
LBSAP	Local Biodiversity Strategy Action Plan
LBV	Long-Billed Vultures
LCS	Low-Carbon Society
LID	Low-Impact Development
LiDAR	Light Detection and Ranging
LLDA	Laguna Lake Development Authority
LPG	Liberalisation-Privatisation-Globalisation
LST	Land Surface Temperature
LULC	Land Use Land Cover
MFAs	Marine Fishery Advisories
MFF	Mangroves for the Future
MIMAROPA	Mindoro, Marinduque, Romblon, Palawan
MIMES	Multiscale Integrated Model of Ecosystem Services
MLC	Maximum Likelihood Classifier
MLIT	Ministry of Land, Infrastructure, Transport and Tourism, Japan
MNDWI	Modified Normalized Difference Water Index
MODIS	Moderate Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer
MoE	Ministry of the Environment, Japan
MoEFCC	Ministry of Environment, Forest and Climate Change
MoES	Ministry of Earth Sciences
MONRE	Ministry of Natural Resources and Environment
MoUD	Ministry of Urban Development
MS	Multi Spectral
MSS	Multispectral Scanner System

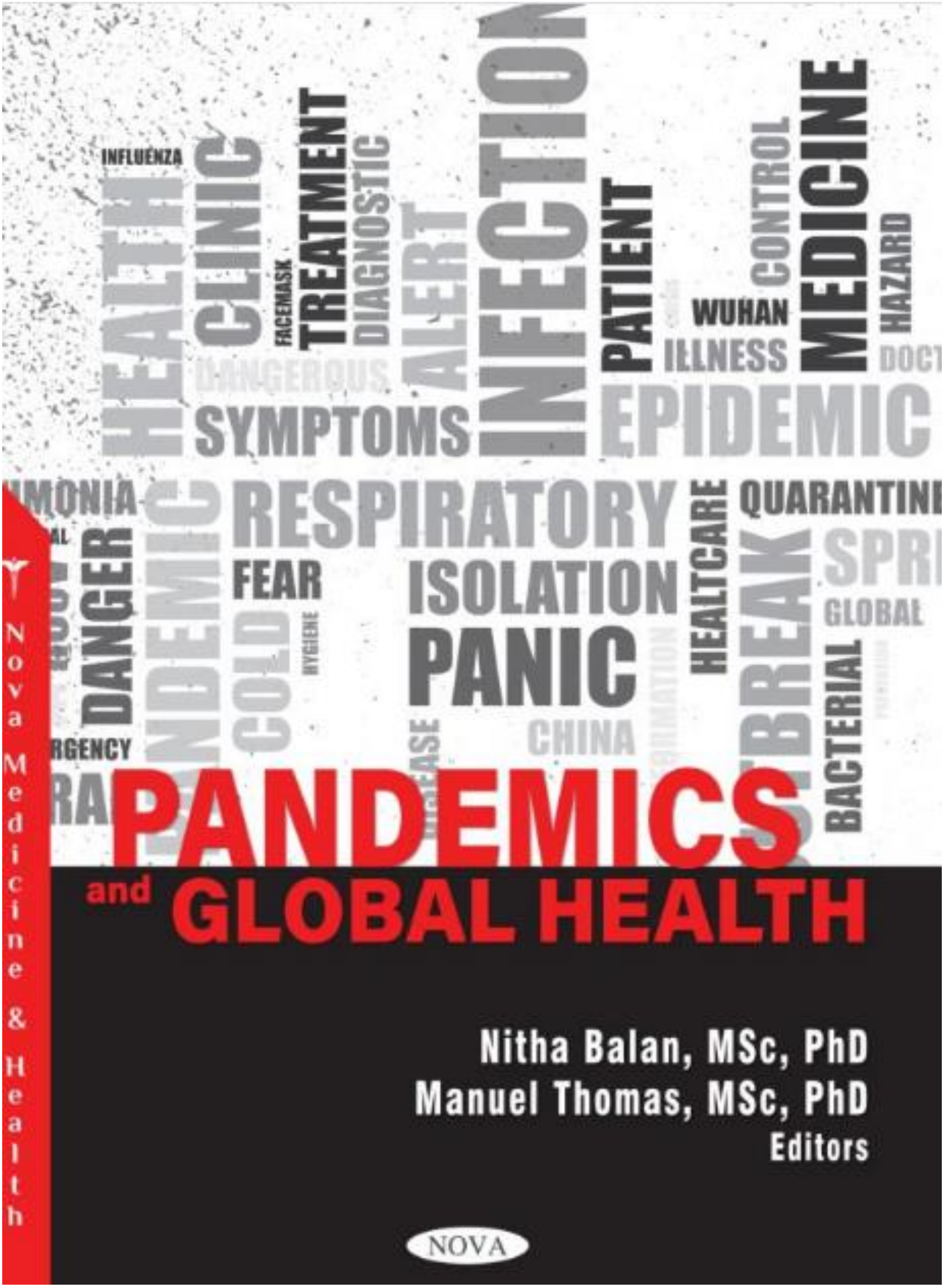
MSWM	Municipal Solid Waste Management
MXD-GI-MXD	Mixed Materials-Galvanized Iron-Mixed Materials
MXD-TEG-BR	Mixed Materials-Tegula-Brick
N	Nitrogen
NAPCA	National Association for the Promotion of Community Universities, Taiwan
NAPCC	National Action Plan on Climate Change
NASA	National Aeronautics and Space Administration
NAT	NbS Assisting Technologies
NBA	National Biodiversity Act
NBS	Nature-Based Solutions
NCAER	National Council of Applied Economic Research
NCR	National Capital Region
NDC	Nationally Determined Contributions
NDMA	National Disaster Management Agency
NDRRMC	National Disaster Risk Reduction and Management Council
NDRRMP	National Disaster Risk Reduction and Management Plan
NDVI	Normalized Difference Vegetation Index
NDWI	Normalized Difference Water Index
NE	North East
NFCP	Natural Forest Conservation Program
NFPP	Natural Forest Protection Program
NGOs	Non-Governmental Organisations
NI	Natural Infrastructure
NIR	Near Infrared
NMEEE	National Mission of Enhanced Energy efficiency
NO_3	Nitrate
NRC	National Research Council
NRM	Natural Resources Management
NSCB	National Statistics Coordination Board
NSSL	National Severe Storms Laboratory
NTFP	Non-Timber Forest Products
OLI	Operational Land Imager
OP	Oriented-plan
OSF	Ocean State Forecast
OTH-GI-WD	Others-Galvanized Iron-Wood
OTH-TEG-BAM	Others-Tegula-Bamboo
PA	Protected Areas
PAGASA	Philippine Atmospheric, Geophysical and Astronomical Services Administration
PAN	Panchromatic
PBL	Planetary Boundary Layer
PFZ	Potential Fishing Zone
PHI-2	Push broom Hyperspectral Imaging II
PI	Public Infrastructure

PIP	Public Infrastructure Provider
PM	Particulate Matter
PMCG	Pembrokeshire Marine Code Group
PPP	Public–Private Partnership
PPS	Permeable Pavement Systems
PSA	Philippine Statistics Authority
PUB	Public Utilities Board
PV	Proportion of Vegetation cover
QGIS	Quantum GIS
R	Reinforcing Loop
RADAR	Radio Detection and Ranging
RBP	Reference Behaviour Pattern
RBTS	Reed Bed Treatment System
RCM	RADARSAT Constellation Mission
RDA	Rajshahi Development Authority
RF	Reserve Forest
RMDP	Rajshahi Metropolitan Development Plan
RMP	Revised Master Plan
RPI	River Pollution Index
RS	Remote Sensing
RS	Resource System
RU	Resource User
RVS	Ramadevarabetta Vulture Sanctuary
S	Scenario
S&T	Science and Technology
SAR	Synthetic Aperture Radar
SAVi	Sustainable Asset Valuation
SCC	Sponge City Concept
SCP-Asia	Sustainable Cities Programme-Asia
SDGs	Sustainable Development Goals
SDWF	Shannon Dolphin and Wildlife Foundation
SESs	Social-Ecological Systems
SET	Social-Ecological Technological
SHMI	Soft Human-Made Infrastructure
SIDS	Small Islands Developing States
SMCE	Spatial Multi-Criteria Evaluation
SNC	Second National Communication
SOI	Survey of India
SPC	Sponge City Program
SS	Suspended Solids
SSNN	Self-Adapting Selection of Multiple Artificial Neural Networks
SuDS	Sustainable Urban Drainage Systems
SUNRM	Sustainable Urban Natural Resources Management
SW	Southwest Monsoon
SWIR	Short-Wave Infrared

SWM	Solid Waste Management
TCPO	Town and Country Planning Organisation
TIR	Thermal Infrared
TIRS	Thermal Infrared Sensor
TM	Thematic Mapper
TSS	Total Suspended Solids
UAV	Unmanned Aerial Vehicle
UBGI	Urban Blue-Green Infrastructure
UCCR	Urban Climate Change Resilience
UCI	Urban Cooling Islands
UDA	Urban Development Authority
UESs	Urban Ecosystem Services
UGI	Urban Green Infrastructure
UGS	Urban Green Spaces
UHI	Urban Heat Islands
UN	United Nations
UNDESA	United Nations Department of Economic and Social Affairs
UNEP	United Nations Environment Programme
UNFCCC	United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change
UNFPA	United Nations Fund for Population Activities
UNHABITAT	United Nations Human Settlements Programme
UNICEF	United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund
URR	Urban Risk Resiliency
UT	Union Territories
UV	Ultraviolet
VC	Ventilation Coefficient
VI	Vegetation Index
VNIR	Visible and Near-Infrared
WD-TEG-BAM	Wood-Tegula-Bamboo
WHO	World Health Organization
WI	Water Index
WRF	Weather Research and Forecasting
WSUD	Water Sensitive Urban Design
WTP	Willingness to Pay
WWT	Wastewater Treatment


Research Trends
in
Agriculture Sciences
Volume - 16
Chief Editor
Dr. R. K. Naresh
AKINIK PUBLICATIONS


Food Processing
and
Preservation Technology
K. Gopakumar
Maya Raman
Balagopal Gopakumar
NIPA


Nova Medicine & Health
PANDEMICS
and
GLOBAL HEALTH
Nitha Balan, MSc, PhD
Manuel Thomas, MSc, PhD
Editors
NOVA

Sourav Das
Tuhin Ghosh *Editors*

Estuarine Biogeochemical Dynamics of the East Coast of India

Springer

Estuarine Biogeochemical Dynamics of the East Coast of India

Sourav Das • Tuhin Ghosh
Editors

Estuarine Biogeochemical Dynamics of the East Coast of India

Springer

Editors
Sourav Das
School of Oceanographic Studies
Jadavpur University
Kolkata, West Bengal, India

Tuhin Ghosh
School of Oceanographic Studies
Jadavpur University
Kolkata, West Bengal, India

ISBN 978-3-030-68979-7 ISBN 978-3-030-68980-3 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-68980-3

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

In the loving memory of

Late Prof. Ananda Deb Mukhopadhyay
(3 May 1938 – 8 October 2020)

Prof. Ananda Deb Mukhopadhyay was an eminent academician and a renowned researcher in multifarious fields of geology, oceanography, and environmental studies. He was a well-loved teacher with father-like character and guided a number of students in academia and their personal lives. His love and affection towards the student community is still cherished by many who came in touch with him. Being a professor in the Department of Geological Sciences at Jadavpur University, West Bengal, India, he founded the School of Oceanographic Studies. He has also served as the Vice Chancellor of Vidyasagar University, West Bengal, India. Till his last day, he was actively involved with the National Council of Education, India.

Preface

Estuaries, located at the interface between land and coastal oceans, are dynamic, highly productive systems that, in many cases, have been historically associated with the development of many of the great centers of early human civilization. Biogeochemistry of estuaries offers a comprehensive and interdisciplinary approach to understanding biogeochemical cycling in estuaries. Estuary and river systems play a critical role in the natural self-regulation of Earth's surface conditions by serving as a significant sink for anthropogenic CO_2. Approximately 90% of global carbon burial occurs in ocean margins, and the majority of this carbon remains buried in large delta-front estuaries. Many of the existing books in estuarine science comprise a suite of edited volumes, typically focused on specific topics in estuaries all over the world. However, the present book entitled *Estuarine Biogeochemical Dynamics of the East Coast of India* provides a unique foundation for the first time on the east coast of India. This book utilizes numerous illustrations and an extensive literature base to impart the current state-of-the-art knowledge in this field on the east coast of India adjacent to the Bay of Bengal. We collated chapters on geomorphology, carbon dynamics, bacterial population, estuarine pollution, and nutrient cycling of this region. The book also comprised the role of microbial diversity, microzooplankton variability in estuaries, CDOM dynamics of the east coast of India, and anthropogenic impacts of Indian Sundarbans (the largest mangrove forest in the world) with linkages to physical and biological processes in estuarine sciences. Consequentially, these systems have and continued to be severely impacted by anthropogenic inputs. This timely book can act as the foundational basis of elemental cycling in estuaries of the east coast of India and estuarine management issues. Estuarine and marine scientists, ecologists, biogeochemists, and environmentalists around India and other parts of the world would find interest in the present title. Intermediate to advanced level students can benefit by going through this book. This book presents both review and original study findings involving estuaries on the east coast of India. The future state of all of these estuaries may be a sensitive indicator of shifts in global weather patterns.

The book opens with an introductory chapter by the editors (Dr. Sourav Das and Prof. Tuhin Ghosh). Then, Mr. B. K. Saha (Former Senior Deputy Director-General, Geological Survey of India) presents a brief account of the geology of the east coast of India. Studies about the estuarine carbon dynamics along the east coast of India have seen tremendous growth over the past decade. Dr. Kunal Chakraborty (Scientist-E, INCOIS, Govt. of India) has reviewed these works in one of the chapters. A synthesis of previous research works on the biogeochemistry of the Mahanadi estuarine ecosystem is presented in one of the chapters by Dr. Tamoghna Acharyya (focusing on increased anthropogenic interferences). Dr. Abhra Chanda (Assistant Professor, School of Oceanographic Studies, Jadavpur University) has reviewed different pollution parameters along the east coast of India in three of the chapters (focusing on persistent organic pollutants, heavy metals, eutrophication, algal bloom, fecal coliform, organic matter, and petroleum hydrocarbon). Dr. Anirban Mukhopadhyay illustrated the variability of suspended particulate matter with the help of geo-statistical analysis. Dr. Rajdeep Roy (Scientist-E, National Remote Sensing Centre, India) has described the nutrient cycling, phytoplankton community structure, and seasonal dynamics of primary production of the estuarine waters of the east coast of India. Mercury-resistant marine bacterial population has been synthesized by Dr. Surajit Das. Dr. Biraja Kumar Sahu covered the microzooplankton studies carried out in estuaries, mangroves, and lagoons of the east coast of India. The book continues with a chapter by Dr. Sudarsanarao Pandi covering all the information and gap on CDOM-related researches carried out in estuaries and rivers draining into the Bay of Bengal. The book closes with an overview of the current understanding of biogeochemical dynamics and anthropogenic impacts on the Indian Sundarbans ecosystems by A. C. G. Henderson (Faculty, School of Geography, Politics & Sociology, Newcastle University, UK), Dr. S. Das, Prof. T. Ghosh, Dr. V. N. Panizzo, Dr. H. L. Moorhouse, Dr. L. R. Roberts, Dr. R. E. Walton, Dr. Y. Zheng, Dr. A. M. Bass, and Dr. S. McGowan.

Kolkata, India

Sourav Das
Tuhin Ghosh

Acknowledgments

We thank Dr. Rajdeep Roy, Dr. Sanjibakumar Baliar Singh, Dr. Tamoghna Acharyya, Dr. Anirban Akhand, and Dr. Abhra Chanda for their help in reviewing several chapters. We also thank Mr. Aaron Schiller, editor at Springer Nature, for his kind help and encouragement. We specially thank Dr. Andrew C. G. Henderson (School of Geography, Politics & Sociology, Newcastle University, UK) for his kind support and encouragement throughout this book project.

Contents

List of Figures

List of Tables

Chaitanya B. Pande
Kanak N. Moharir *Editors*

Groundwater Resources Development and Planning in the Semi-Arid Region

Springer

Groundwater Resources Development and Planning in the Semi-Arid Region

Chaitanya B. Pande • Kanak N. Moharir
Editors

Groundwater Resources Development and Planning in the Semi-Arid Region

Springer

Editors
Chaitanya B. Pande
Sant Gadge Baba Amravati University
Amravati, Maharashtra, India

All India Coordinated Research Project
for Dryland Agriculture
Akola, Maharashtra, India

Kanak N. Moharir
Sant Gadge Baba Amravati University
Amravati, Maharashtra, India

ISBN 978-3-030-68123-4 ISBN 978-3-030-68124-1 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-68124-1

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Dedicated to my parents and all my teachers

Preface

Semi-arid regions of the earth are today suffering from lack of sustainable water and groundwater. There is a growing demand throughout the world for sustainable watershed development, management, and planning. The demand is more significant in the rain-fed and drought-prone areas of earth surface, where watershed management is poorer and groundwater is limited. The primary focus of the book is the improvement of groundwater, aquifer mapping, soil and water conservation planning, suitable zones of groundwater development, flood mapping with surface runoff, trends of rainfall, land use impact on the groundwater, watershed development and planning, and water resource and environmental management. Conservation measures involve the preparation and implementation of various projects to improve the management of watershed functions that affect the plants, animals, and human communities within the watershed boundary. Rapid, accurate, and cost-effective latest technologies, Modflow software, machine learning, artificial intelligence, and geospatial technologies can be used for planning for groundwater development in the semi-arid region.

The book discusses on the groundwater related issues such as groundwater flow, watershed development, land use, rainfall, delineation of groundwater potential zones, soil and water conservation planning, and development of water and soil resources in the semi-arid region. The book highlights the recent application areas of groundwater flow modelling software, wavelets techniques, remote sensing, GIS, methods in rainfall trends, water conservation techniques in the field of watershed development, groundwater planning, changes of land use, monitoring and modelling of groundwater and aquifer mapping, hydrological modelling, and sustainable land management. This book has 26 chapters contributed by various researchers, scientists, and professors from various countries.

The book includes the research work of professors, planners, scientists, and research scholars from various universities, international organisation, and institutions from India as well as from other countries of the world, such as National

Institute of Hydrology, University of Bergen, Geophysical Institute, CIMA Research Foundation—International Centre on Environmental Monitoring, Helmholtz-Zentrum für Umweltforschung, Fiji National University, James Cook University, Australia, Bahir Dar University, University of Mumbai, Maulana Azad National Urdu University, Indian Institute Technology Roorkee, Indian Institute of Technology (BHU), Varanasi, École des mines d'Alès, avenue de Clavières, National Institute of Technology Raipur, Sathyabama Institute of Science and Technology, Bharathidasan University, All India Coordinated Research Project for Dryland Agriculture, Dr. Panjabrao Deshmukh Krishi Vidyapeeth, Akola, M. Kumarasamy College of Engineering, Chemiqua Water & Wastewater Company Kraków, University of Naples Federico II, RWTH Aachen University, National Centre for Earth Science Studies, University of Kerala, The Gandhigram Rural Institute-Deemed to be University, University of Lucknow, Indian Institute of Remote Sensing, ISRO, and Asian Institute of Technology, Bangkok.

Amravati, Maharashtra, India Chaitanya Baliram Pande
Akola, Maharashtra, India Kanak N. Moharir

Contents

About the Editors

Chaitanya B. Pande (Dr. PDKV, Akola) received his Ph.D. from Sant Gadge Baba Amravati University, Amravati. He has more than a decade of university, research, and industrial experience. Dr. Pande is a reviewer of *Earth Science Research Journal*, *American Journal of Geophysics, Geochemistry, and Geosystems*, *Sustainable Water Resources Management* (Springer journal), *Modeling Earth Systems and Environment* (Springer journal), *Applied Geomatics* (Springer journal), *Journal of Agriculture Sciences* (Bioinfo Publication), *Applied Water Science* (Springer), *Journal of the Institution of Engineers (India): series A* (Springer), *Groundwater Sustainable Development* (Elsevier journal), and *Environmental Sustainable Development* (Springer journal). He has published 40 research papers in international journals with Springer, Taylor and Francis, and Elsevier with citations more than 355. He has published one book with Springer. He has presented more than 20 research papers in national and international conferences. His research interests include remote sensing, GIS, watershed management, hydrogeology, hydrological modelling, land use and land cover analysis, groundwater quality, urban planning, hydro-geochemistry, groundwater modelling, geology, hyperspectral remote sensing, remote sensing and GIS application in natural resources management, watershed management, and environmental monitoring and assessment subjects.

Kanak N. Moharir works in the Department of Geology, Sant Gadge Baba Amravati University, Amravati, and is a Researcher in the Department of Geology at Amravati University, Amravati. With more than 6 years of teaching and research experience, she has published more than 37 research papers in various national and international journals and has presented 15 research papers in national and international conferences with citations more than 280. Her research interests include remote sensing, watershed management hydrology, land use and land cover, aquifer mapping, groundwater modelling, hydrogeology, geomorphology, and geology. She is a reviewer of eight springer journals and other journals.

ICT Tools for Knowledge Management and Control of Emerging Zoonoses and Animal Health Threats

Edited by
Dr. M K Narayanan
Dr. Shahaji Phand
Dr. Prejit
Dr. Jess Vergis
Dr. Asha K
Dr. Vidya P

Edition 2021

Kerala Veterinary and Animal Sciences University
Centre for One Health Education, Advocacy, Research and Training, (COHEART), Wayanad, Kerala
&
National Institute of Agricultural Extension Management, Hyderabad

COHEART, KVASU, Wayanand & MANAGE, Hyderabad

ICT Tools for Knowledge Management and Control of Emerging Zoonoses and Animal Health Threats

Programme Coordination

Kerala Veterinary and Animal Sciences University, Centre for One Health Education, Advocacy, Research and Training, (COHEART), Pookode, Wayanad, Kerala

Jointly Published By

Directorate of Entrepreneurship, KVASU, COHEART, KVASU & MANAGE, Hyderabad

ICT Tools for Knowledge Management and Control of Emerging Zoonoses and Animal Health Threats

Editors: Dr. M K Narayanan, Dr. Shahaji Phand, Dr. Prejit, Dr. Jess Vergis, Dr. Asha K, Dr. Vidya P

Edition: 2021. All rights reserved.

ISBN: 978-93-91668-22-8

Citation: Narayanan, M.K. Shahaji Phand, Prejit, Jess Vergis, Asha K. and Vidya P. (2021). *ICT Tools for Management and control of Emerging Zoonoses and Animal Health Threats* [e-book]. Hyderabad: National Institute of Agricultural Extension Management (MANAGE) & Kerala Veterinary and Animal Sciences Univerity.

Published for Dr.P.Chandra Shekara, Director General, National Institute of Agricultural Extension Management (MANAGE), Hyderabad, India by Dr. Srinivasacharyulu Attaluri, Program Officer, MANAGE and printed at MANAGE, Hyderabad as e-publication.

MESSAGE

National Institute of Agricultural Extension Management (MANAGE), Hyderabad is an autonomous organization under the Ministry of Agriculture & Farmers Welfare, Government of India. The policies of liberalization and globalization of the economy and the level of agricultural technology becoming more sophisticated and complex, calls for major initiatives towards reorientation and modernization of the agricultural extension system. Effective ways of managing the extension system needed to be evolved and extension organizations enabled to transform the existing set up through professional guidance and training of critical manpower. MANAGE is the response to this imperative need. Agricultural extension to be effective, demands sound technological knowledge to the extension functionaries and therefore MANAGE has focused on training program on technological aspect in collaboration with ICAR institutions and state agriculture/veterinary universities, having expertise and facilities to organize technical training program for extension functionaries of state department.

New and reemerging zoonoses have evolved throughout the last three decades partly as a consequence of the increasing interdependence of humans on animals and their products and our close association with companion animals. Zoonosis is the single most critical risk factor to human health and well-being, with regard to infectious diseases. The first, and the most significant step towards the management of outbreak of zoonotic diseases is forecasting the occurrence of outbreaks. There have been unprecedented advancements in use of technology during the pandemic. ICT tools gives significant credence to the importance of examining health effects across species, in order to fully understand the public health and economic impact of such diseases and to help implement treatment and preventive programs by veterinarians.

It is a pleasure to note that, SAU-Kerala Veterinary and Animal Sciences University, Centre for One Health Education, Advocacy, Research and Training, (COHEART), Wayanad, Kerala and MANAGE, Hyderabad, Telangana is organizing a collaborative training program on ICT Tools for Knowledge Management and Control of Emerging Zoonoses and Animal Health Threats from 20-23 September, 2021 and coming up with this joint publication as e-book as immediate outcome of the training program.

I wish the program be very purposeful and meaningful to the participants and also the e-book will be useful for stakeholders across the country. I extend my best wishes for success of the program and also I wish SAU-Kerala Veterinary and Animal Sciences University, Centre for One Health Education, Advocacy, Research and Training, (COHEART), Wayanad, Kerala many more glorious years in service of Indian livestock sector ultimately benefitting the farmers. I would like to compliment the efforts of Dr. Shahaji Phand, Center Head-EAAS, MANAGE and Dr. M. K. Narayanan, Director of Entrepreneurship, KVASU for this valuable publication.

Dr. P. Chandra Shekara
Director General, MANAGE

MESSAGE

Livestock sector contributes nearly one-fourth to the national GDP; still the animal health and productivity remains a major concern in the country. The existing lacunae in the animal husbandry sector such as inappropriate managemental practices, infectious as well as metabolic diseases, inadequate marketing infrastructure, and unorganised marketing could only be transformed into full productive potential meeting quality livestock support services by exploiting the use of ICT or web based tools and also by improving the knowledge provided to the Veterinarians as well as para-veterinarians. Zoonoses are yet another significant public health concern that cause considerable socioeconomic problems globally. A wealth of new technologies is becoming increasingly available for more accurate monitoring of zoonotic disease activity.

In changing times, ICT tools could provide effective media for spreading awareness about the latest scientific managemental practices among Veterinarians as well as para-vets with an intention to improve the production performance and health status of animals of the country. With the recent resurgence of COVID pandemic, the significance of ICT tools in various sectors including, animal husbandry has increased manifold. Hence, it is pertinent to note that the Directorate of Entrepreneurship and Centre for One Health Education Advocacy Research and Training (COHEART) of our university in collaboration with MANAGE, Hyderabad is organising a four-day training programme in online mode (Sept. 20-23). It gives me pleasure to note that the topic of training 'ICT Tools for Knowledge Management and Control of Emerging Zoonoses and Animal Health Threats' is relevant. As we grapple with the gigantic task to manage the COVID-19 pandemic, ICT tools will broaden the horizon for its control.

I understand that this training has been designed in such a way to provide ample exposure to the participants in assimilating the thematic concept of ICT tools in knowledge dissemination for the control of public health threats and applying this doctrine in their respective domains of expertise. It is of utmost importance to note that this deliberation envisages the participants to learn and discuss across disciplines beyond boundaries and in close association with the stake holders in capacity building and evolve suitable models for regional, national as well as global leadership.

Let me congratulate the dynamic team behind conceptualization of this training into reality. Without their commitment and contributions, this e- book would not been possible and successfully delivered at this time.

Once again, I wish the faculty and participants all the best.

With warm regards,

Prof. (Dr.) M.R. Saseendranath
Vice Chancellor, KVASU

MESSAGE

Animal welfare is human welfare too. It is all the most revealed in the current scenario of pandemic. In most of the infectious disease, we can observe an involvement of animals in its course of spread which mark the relevance of “One Health” approach. The health and veterinary sectors in the country has undergone considerable transformation during this pandemic. The major breakthrough is the introduction of Information technology and Artificial Intelligence based approaches to control Emerging Zoonoses and Animal Health Threats. Such tools can reduce the risk of Zoonoses becoming epidemics and pandemics, by understanding disease origins, their drivers and dynamics. An early warning or forecasting system communicates information about impending risk to vulnerable population before a hazard event occurs. Thus, ICT initiatives will be the futuristic requirements of the society, immensely helping in conceptualizing and strategizing control measures of zoonotic diseases.

It is of immense pleasure to organize the training on "ICT Tools for Knowledge Management and Control of Emerging Zoonoses and Animal Health Threats" in collaboration with National Institute of Agricultural Extension Management (MANAGE), Hyderabad. I would like to underline and reiterate the fact that a healthy nation could only be built by the healthy individuals and the animals and the surrounding environment. As we are in the era of global health crisis due to COVID-19 pandemic, the animal husbandry and allied sectors should take all the care and measures for controlling the emerging zoonoses and health threat in animals at large for which we will have to make best use of ICT tools. Also, technologies evolve rapidly as new tools become available, allowing for the development of more sophisticated surveillance methods and more accurate predictive models. To make it a reality One Health collaboration between institutions, scientists and public health networks involved in diseases surveillance is important in order to timely detect and respond to novel threats and pandemics.

I am pleased to note the joint publication of e-book as the outcome of the training program. I also hope, the deliberations held during the training would bring out the vital understanding on the use of ICT Tools for Control of Emerging Zoonoses and Animal Health Threats. I wish the training a grand success.

Prof. (Dr.) M. K. Narayanan
Director of Entrepreneurship, KVASU

PREFACE

This e-book is an outcome of collaborative online training program on "ICT Tools for Knowledge Management and Control of Emerging Zoonoses and Animal Health Threats". This is intended to sensitize the veterinarians and related health workers to learn about various ICT tools for Knowledge management and control of emerging zoonoses as well as other animal health threats, and also to practice and implement One Health approach, as back-up to the Global Health Security Agenda using technology driven approach. Furthermore, this e-book will update their knowledge regarding recent advances in technologies and innovations in the domain of zoonoses and animal health threats

Veterinary and Human health systems must continuously adapt and evolve to their contexts giving significance to latest technologies. ICT tools are such technologies that provide access to information through telecommunications, and includes networks, the Internet, wireless, mobile devices and other communications-related technology. The content of training programme was designed to provide updated information towards capacity building in proposed area. Attempt has been made to cover topics on Emerging Zoonoses and Animal health threats, Epidemiological Surveillance and Disease Modeling, tools such as National Animal Disease Referral Expert System and Integrated Health Information Platform. Focus was also on Artificial Intelligence driven approach for control of vector borne diseases, existing early warning system for the spread of emerging diseases and Application of Artificial Intelligence for animal health threats. The topics shall also cover GIS and Web based tools for Disaster risk mapping and innovative Participatory Disease Surveillance model that is successfully used in various countries. The applied aspects of the use of ICT tools for knowledge management of wild animal health as well as for Animal Husbandry are also covered.

Taken together, these experiences are enriched with technical insights and operational know-how. They provide practical evidence of actions that have proven imperative for improving services delivery.ICTs tools have the potential to transform the way in which the veterinary and health services are accessed and delivered. ICTs can provide information systems for reporting and research, and deliver healthcare services and advice to even the most remote locations.

The valuable suggestions for future improvements are always welcome.

September, 2021 **Editors**

CONTENTS

OVERVIEW OF EMERGING ZOONOSES AND EARLY WARNING SYSTEMS

Prejit, Officer-in-Charge,
Centre for One Health Education, Advocacy Research and Training
Kerala Veterinary and Animal Sciences University, Pookode, Wayanad- 673576

Introduction

Emerging and re-emerging zoonoses are a significant public health concern and cause considerable socio-economic problems globally. The COVID-19 pandemic has made us to realize that man do not have complete dominion over animals, nature or even minute organisms like virus. There are about 60 per cent of human infectious diseases that are zoonotic (Taylor *et. al*., 2001) and among the latest one (Emergng) 75% are zoonotic in nature. Emerging zoonoses are those which are newly identified and previously unknown, that cause public health problems either locally or internationally (eg: Avian Influenza, Ebola, Nipah, Zika, MERS COVID etc). Re-emerging zoonoses are those that have been known for some time, had fallen to such low levels that they were no longer considered public health problem and are now showing upward trends in incidence or prevalence worldwide (eg: Chikungunya, Japanese Encephalitis etc). The factors that make India a hotspot of zoonoses include its large area (32,87,263 sq. km, 2.4% of worlds surface area), coastal area of 7516.6km, border sharing with 7 countries , diversity of climate and physical conditions, great variety of fauna (over 92,037 species), whopping population of 135.26 crores (17.7% of world's population) and having agriculture in more than 58% of the population.

India has initiated One Health action strategies for control of emerging zoonoses such as Avian Influenza. Multi-sectoral approaches under a One Health (OH) umbrella are more expedient and effective, and lead to efficient utilization of limited resources (Heymann *et al*., 2014). Kerala has demonstrated One Health success stories for control of emerging zoonoses such as Kyasannur Forest Disease. As it is recognized that emerging infectious diseases occur at the interface of human, animal, and ecosystem health, the world now promotes a trans-sectoral approach to address infectious disease risk management. Emerging infectious diseases will continue to challenge health infrastructure, test credibility of health services, and threaten to devastate health and economic development unless a strategic vision and an effective plan of action are developed to combat these.

Emerging Zoonoses

Zoonoses are not something that is rare but it still remains one of the world's greatest threats to human and animal life, the environment, local communities and economies. A vast majority of the emerging and remerging infectious diseases have their origins in animals. Emerging zoonosescould be as a result of the globalization of trade, breakdown of public health measures, expanding human population, intensification of wildlife farming, change in land use (Japanese encephalitis, Lyme disease), agricultural industry, medical industry, food industry, International travel and commerce (SARS, MERS, COVID 19), disasters (plague, leptospirosis), climate and weather (West nile fever), human demography & behavior (KFD), bush meat consumption (Ebola). Early detection helps keep infection to its area of origin, which in our increasingly mobile world is vital in stopping life threatening diseases such as Zika, Ebola and Yellow Fever.

From age old Rabies to the recent COVID-19, the list of zoonoses keeps growing day by day. But the major hurdle in combating the zoonoses is the presence of animal reservoirs. In global scenario, there is a significant increase in the emergence of zoonotic diseases causing about 1 billion cases of illness and millions of deaths every year (Karesh *et al.*, 2012). In the last two decades, emerging diseases had direct costs of more than US$100 billion; if these outbreaks had become human pandemics, the losses would have amounted to several trillion dollars (World Bank, 2012). The greatest burden on human health and livelihoods is caused by endemic zoonoses that are persistent regional health problems around the world (ILRI, 2012). Given the high economic and societal cost of recent outbreaks (World Bank, 2012), policy decisions and investments can be oriented to create incentives for advancing a One Health approach aimed at preventing (and not just responding to) disease outbreaks.Globally, the top 13 zoonoses deemed most impactful to poor livestock keepers in developing countries are responsible for an estimated 2.7 million deaths and 2.4 billion cases of human illness each year (Grace *et al.*, 2012). The Livestock Revolution paradigm is leading to rapid increases in livestock populations in developing countries, which increases the likelihood of disease transmission (Pica-Ciamarra and Otte, 2011) with repeated outbreaks from meat, eggs, milk, and cheese, or meat by-products (Karesh*et al.*, 2012).

After the emergence of SARS in 2002 and MERS in 2012, COVID 19 was the third coronavirus resulting in a major global public health crisis. At the end of the SARS epidemic, there were more than 8,000 cases of the disease and 774 deaths, with a case-fatality rate of 7% (Anderson *et al.*, 2004). Following, MERS epidemic there were a total 2494 cases of disease and 858 deaths with 34.4% case-fatality rate (Al-Omari *et al.*, 2019). Currently

COVID 19 has become a serious global public health concern. In the current scenario, the SARS-CoV-2 has spread rapidly to various parts of the world (Yoo and Yoo, 2020). As COVID-19 spreads, there is a significant role for veterinarians under One Health framework to reduce the economic impacts on the livestock industry and food supply (Yoo and Yoo, 2020). Thus, the global impact of emerging and endemic zoonoses on both human and animal populations make their control and prevention a natural starting point for collaboration between human and animal health sectors (Rist*et al.*, 2014).

Early warning systems

The use of technology has been under constant expansion following pandemic. Early detection of diseases and infections at animal source will help us to understand the etiology, epidemiology and pathogenesis of them and will pave a way to prevent transmission of them into humans. The first, and the most significant step towards the management of outbreak of zoonotic diseases is forecasting the occurrence of outbreaks. Forecasting refers to the monitoring of specific risk factors that could lead to the occurrence, and subsequent spread of the disease. The early warning or forecasts can be considered as "alert signals" intended to increase epidemic preparedness of the public. It will save the time as well as resources during an emergency. Prevention and control of zoonoses is the best strategy one could adopt in a crisis situation. Apart from emerging viral zoonoses, there are several emerging food borne zoonoses such as enterohaemorrhagic *Escherichia coli* (*E coli* O157:H7) and silent pandemics like anti microbial resistance that are becoming a major concern now. The major components of early warning system involves; routine surveillance of the targeted disease and identification of its risk indicators, examination of feasibility of their monitoring using existing data sources or modeling the risk of disease based on historical surveillance and contemporary environmental data, forecasting future risk through the use of predictive models and continued epidemiological and environmental surveillance.

Epidemiologists use ‘predictive models’ as to analyse when and where the next occurrence may occur. The use of Geographical Information System (GIS) to study associations between environmental variables like temperature, humidity, vector density etc. using satellite mapping has been gaining acceptance as a disease forecasting tool. Initiatives, such as GLEWS (Global Early Warning and response System), a joint system developed by WHO, OIE and FAO, assists in prediction, prevention and control of zoonotic disease outbreak through field work, epidemiological analysis, and sharing of the acquired information. Disease-specific collaborations such as the network for animal influenza (OFFLU), are active between the three Organizations. These collaborations range beyond surveillance to incorporate joint response mechanisms as events demand. The Joint FAO/OIE Crisis Management Centre for Animal Health supports rapid response capacities to assist countries for animal diseases events (domestic, wildlife, terrestrial or aquatic), and has collaborated in outbreak responses with WHO and the Global Outbreak Alert and Response Network (GOARN). Similarly, a cross-sectoral 'One Health' approach is increasingly being adopted within and amongst countries to address these problems.

OIE-WAHIS (OIE World Animal Health Information System) is a unique comprehensive database through which information on the animal health situation worldwide is reported and disseminated throughout the world. OIE-WAHIS data reflects the information gathered by the Veterinary Services from OIE Members and non-Members Countries and Territories on OIE-listed diseases in domestic animals and wildlife, as well as on emerging diseases and zoonoses.

Existing Surveillance systems in India include, integrated Disease Surveillance Project (IDSP, Medical Sector), National Animal Disease Reporting System(NADRS) and National Animal Disease Referral Expert System (NADRES, Veterinary Sector), ICAR - NIVEDI (Epidemic diseases), ICAR – NIHSAD (Exotic diseases), Inter-sectorial collaboration on avian influenza: Joint Task Force & Joint Monitoring Group and also on zoonoses (National Standing Committee on Zoonoses).Decreasing interactions with wild animals lowers our exposure to diseases such as Kysannur Forest Disease which is endemic in karnataka and now in Kerala, Tamil nadu and Goa. Studies of the incidence and prevalence of such diseases are necessary in the endemic areas. If a disease is preventable by vaccination, it is better to vaccinate the susceptible populations. For diseases such as rabies, apart from vaccinating the pet animals, stray dog population control is a much needed strategy.

Conclusion

Prevention is a broad and continuous effort that requires people's participation and expert knowledge. The prerequisites for controlling emerging infectious disease includes availability of diagnostic assays for mass-scale testing of samples, generating baseline data about the disease, new and better vaccines, intensify border checking at entry points at borders, enforce strict quarantine measures. Furthermore, the use of ICT based system has great advantages such as Geographic Imaging Systems, IT tools monitoring disease dynamics, dashboards for surveillance and forecasting, risk mapping tools for knowing wild life sources for diseases.

Reference

Anderson RM, Fraser C, Ghani AC et al. (2004). Epidemiology, transmission dynamics and control of SARS: the 2002-2003 epidemic. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal SocietyBiological Sciences*, 359:1091–105.

Grace, D., Mutua, F., Ochungo, P., Kruska, R., Jones, K. 2012. Mapping of poverty and likely zoonoses hotspots. Zoonoses Project 4. Report to the UK Department for International Development. Nairobi, Kenya

Heymann, D.L and Dar, O.A. 2014. Prevention is better than cure for emerging infectious diseases. *British J. Med.* 348: 1499-1511.

Karesh, W. B., Dobson, A., Lloyd-Smith, J. O., Lubroth, J., Dixon, M. A., Bennett, M., Aldrich, S., Harrington, T., Formenty, P., Loh, E. H., Machalaba, C. C., Thomas, M. J. and Heymann, D. L. (2012). Ecology of zoonoses: natural and unnatural histories. *Lancet*, 380*:* 1936–1945

Pica-Ciamarra, U. and Otte, J. 2011. The 'Livestock Revolution: Rhetoric and reality. *Outlook on Agriculture*, 40(1): 7-19.

Rist, C.L., Arriola, C.S. and Rubin, C. 2014. Prioritizing Zoonoses: A Proposed One Health Tool for Collaborative Decision-Making. PLoS ONE 9(10): e109986. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0109986

Taylor, L.H., Latham, S.M., Woolhouse, M.E. 2001. Risk factors for human disease emergence. *Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B Biol. Sci.* 356: 983-989

World Bank. 2012. People, Pathogens, and Our Planet: The Economics of One Health, vol. 2; 2012

Yoo, H. S. and Yoo, D. 2020. COVID-19 and veterinarians for one health, zoonotic- and reverse-zoonotic transmissions. *J. Vet. Sci. 21*: 51-59

PARTICIPATORY ONE HEALTH DISEASE DETECTION (PODD) TOOL TO DETECT EMERGING ANIMAL AND ENVIRONMENTAL HEALTH THREATS: A THAILAND EXAMPLE MODEL

Terdsak Yano

Department of Food Animal Clinics, Faculty of Veterinary Medicine, Chiang Mai University

Introduction

The COVID-19 is the great example of pandemic which effect the global in several aspects, especially in economic. In tourism industry, COVID-19 causes a loss of more than $4 trillion to the global GDP during 2020 and 2021 (UNCTAD,2021). It has high potential of emerging disease occur and affect human, mostly possibly originating from animal. Animal-health surveillance provides an essential component of the evidence required to protect animal-health, facilitate trade, and ultimately protect public health, especially from zoonosis. Through early detection and informed response, surveillance reduces the impact of animal disease on animal production and welfare and on public health. Effective surveillance also ensures that confidence in the health status of animal moving between countries is maintained and ensures that trade barriers are justified. When trade is maintained, the impact of disease outbreaks on the economy is reduced, including: Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS); Bovine Spongiform Encephalopathy (BSE); Foot-and-Mouth Disease (FMD); and Highly Pathogenic Avian Influenza (HPAI). The frequent movement of animals and their products around the world means that there is an increasing risk that infection will spread. Therefore, there is a need for exchange of comparable information about disease incidence and lead to protect population's health.

One Health approach is an effective concept that allow people monitor disease in animal and environment before spilling over to human (Stärk *et al.*, 2015). One health indicated the strong relationship of health among animal, human and environment. It plays an important role in global disease prevention with engaging multidiscipline to achieve better health. The people in community can be a part ofOne Health by participate the disease or abnormal health event reporting. The community also can responses those reports in advance before the authority takes any action.

Since the digital technology has been exploded, people increase the usage of mobile phone and internet. It has been introduced disease surveillance system and allow people to participate by reporting via their mobile or computer. The US Flu Near You system having previously demonstrated how participatory reporting using digital tools can help detect influenza outbreaks in human populations faster than traditional surveillance (*Smolinski et al.*, 2015)

PODD system

PODD system or "Participatory One-health Digital Disease Detection" system has been developed, which integrated One-health into disease surveillance activities in community level. The aim of PODD system is to early detect and response the animal health, human health and environmental problems in communities by the collaborative efforts of authorities, Local governments (LGs) and people in communities. There are 3 key elements, LG, volunteers and digital system, that are the structure of PODD system (figure 1). Volunteer reporters, who are members of the communities, report abnormal events in their communities through application on smartphone, called "PODD", then an automated system verify the reported and notify all stakeholder (i.e., researchers, provincial and district DLD officers, provincial and district public health officers and LG staff). LGs are the front-line teams of problem response and be supported by authorities, either district or provincial level.

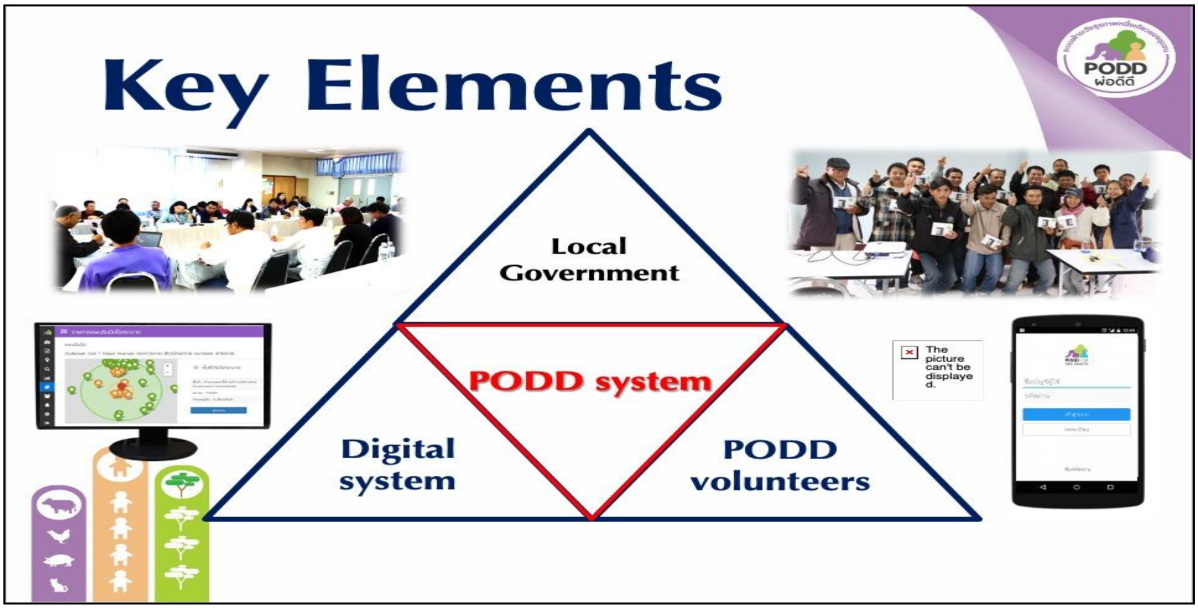


Figure 1 The key elements of PODD system, consist of Local government (LG), PODD volunteers and digital technology.

The primary objective of PODD in pilot phase was to detect abnormal deaths in backyard animal in order to elicit rapid investigation and response. Abnormal numbers or types of death can be a signal of zoonotic diseases which transmits to human and causes pandemic as a subsequence, such as abnormal death in poultry could be an early clinical sign of highly pathogenic avian influenza (HPAI), a potential precursor of an AI pandemic in humans. Use of smart phones and digital technology is one of the key factors making the PODD system workable. The daily reports of poultry health and abnormal poultry death are automatically captured, filtered with predefined case and outbreak definitions, and projected onto a GIS mapping system. The real time analysis of incoming reports allows rapid detection of outbreaks and the generation of automatic SMS warning messages to activate community contingency plans. A disease investigation team is dispatched to confirm the outbreak by clinical examination and, as necessary, laboratory confirmation. The system follows up automatically until 3 weeks after the last report of sick animals or death in the affected area. All stakeholders are notified after complete recovery to normal (figure 2)

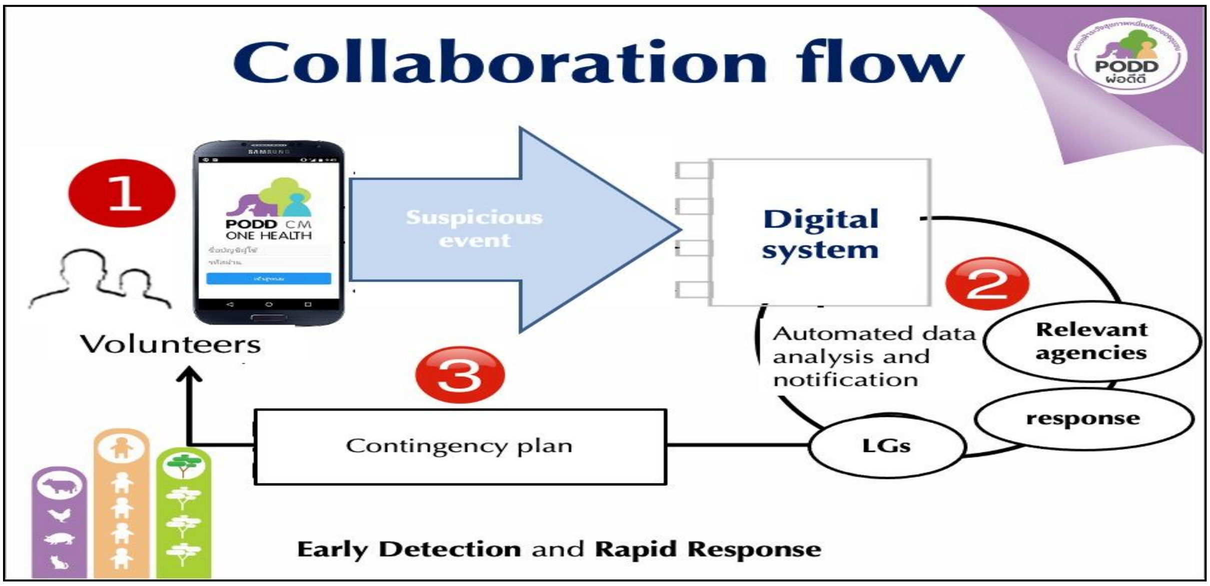


Figure 2 The workflow of PODD system for abnormal health surveillance, which aim to early detect and rapid respond.

Not only animal disease, but human health and environmental health have been added in PODD mobile application. Dengue and zoonosis in human, animal bite which has potential to be rabies, food safety issue, annoyance issues in community and disaster have been expanded the range of reporting. The PODD volunteers can report cover animal, human and environmental health through PODD mobile application (Yano et al., 2018).

The success

The PODD system has been developed and preliminary implemented in 75 LGs in Chiang Mai, Thailand, in early 2015. The community at sub-district level has been engaged to develop and own the system. After two years of implementation, the PODD system has been extended to other provinces throughout Thailand. From January 2015 to August 2021, total of 378,010 reports were sent to PODD system. Those reported included zero report and abnormal event reports. Currently, PODD system has been used in 30 provinces, within 201

LGs, together with the support of 838 active community reporters who uses PODD mobile application.

The PODD system empowered community to prevent, detect and respond disease outbreak, either human and animal, through the One-Health Operation Center and the support from PODD system. In January 2017, NongKhwai and Ban Pae LGs controlled disease outbreak in their area by the operation of the One-Health Operation Center. After PODD volunteer reported an abnormal death in chicken and owner showed flu-like symptoms, the notification was sent to LGs, district livestock and public health officers. The center activated the operation and staffs from LGs were indicated to work in the affected area and the outbreak could be controlled within a week. From August 2016 until March 2017, 38 from 68 One-Health Operation Centers have started their activity and 4 outbreaks can be controlled by the center.

Next step

The PODD research project has been transformed to be the "PODD center" in 2020. The center aims to promote and engage LGs throughout Thailand to use PODD system in their community. The PODD system added more features to reach LG's requirement, such as bedridden patients, accidental risk area or road, larva counting for Dengue prevention, COVID-19 monitoring, etc. For COVID-19 monitoring, the PODD system has been applied to monitor COVID-19 in selected communities since late 2020. The community volunteers report the strangers or people, who is not community member, come into the community, especially the people who do not notify the community headman. In the near future, the tons of data is coming to the PODD center and it will be the asset for the center. The data management and manipulation will be performed to create an impact information for the health society.

Conclusion

The community participatory combine with digital technology can be integrated with One Health approach for early disease detection and rapid response. It also empowers community to encounter the pandemic and establish the collaboration between community and authority to control disease outbreak. These practices can help the global to fight the new diseases in the future.

References

Smolinski et al. (*2015)*. Flu Near You: Crowdsourced Symptom Reporting Spanning 2 Influenza Seasons. American Journal of Public Health; 105(10): 2124-2130

Stärk K.D.C. et al. (2015). One Health surveillance- More than a buzz world? Preventive Veterinary Medicine; 120: 124–130

UNCTAD (2021). COVID-19 and tourism: An update. p 15. [Online]. Available at: https://unctad.org/system/files/official-document/ditcinf2021d3_en_0.pdf (Accessed: 29 June 2021).

Yano T. et al. (2018). A Participatory System for Preventing Pandemics of Animal Origins: Pilot Study of the Participatory One Health Disease Detection (PODD) System. JMIR Public Health Surveill; 4(1) e25

INFORMATION NETWORK FOR ANIMAL PRODUCTIVITY & HEALTH

***e-resource provided by*: S. K. Rana**

National Dairy Development Board

In today's ever-changing world, the way you disseminate information assumes great significance. We must provide the right people with right information at the right time. Keeping this in view, an advanced information network has been created that can be easily accessed by all key stakeholders. This technology-driven user-friendly information network would provide reliable and timely information to enable better decision-making for improving productivity. At the heart of such a system is the unique identity assigned to each animal.

Developed and implemented by NDDB, the Information Network for Animal Productivity and Health (INAPH) would support the delivery of animal identification, breeding, nutrition, extension and health services at the doorstep of farmers. The system has multi-lingual capability and is based on best practices and Standard Operating Procedures (SOPs) recommended by domain experts.

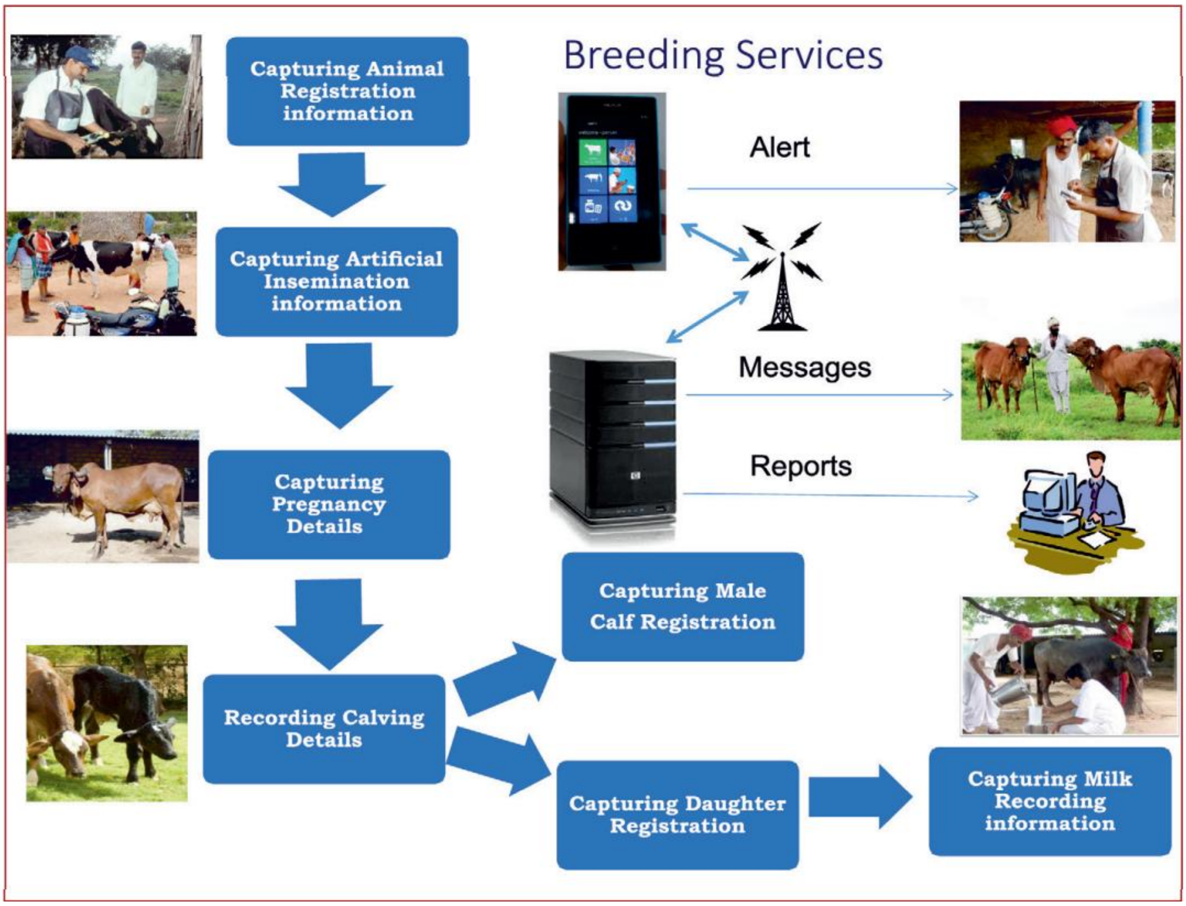
Ear-tagging with a unique 12 digit number is mandatory for each animal registered in the network which enables tracking and monitoring of these animals. NDDB administers and centrally manages the animal identification system in the country.

Animal Breeding

INAPH captures data related to animal registration, artificial insemination (AI), pregnancy diagnosis, calving, milk recording, milk sample collection for component analysis, typing, body measurement for growth rate monitoring and animal movement.

Data captured is processed for use in field activities under Progeny Testing and Pedigree Selection programmes. Operational, review and analytical reports, alerts and SMS messages are generated and forwarded to all concerned.

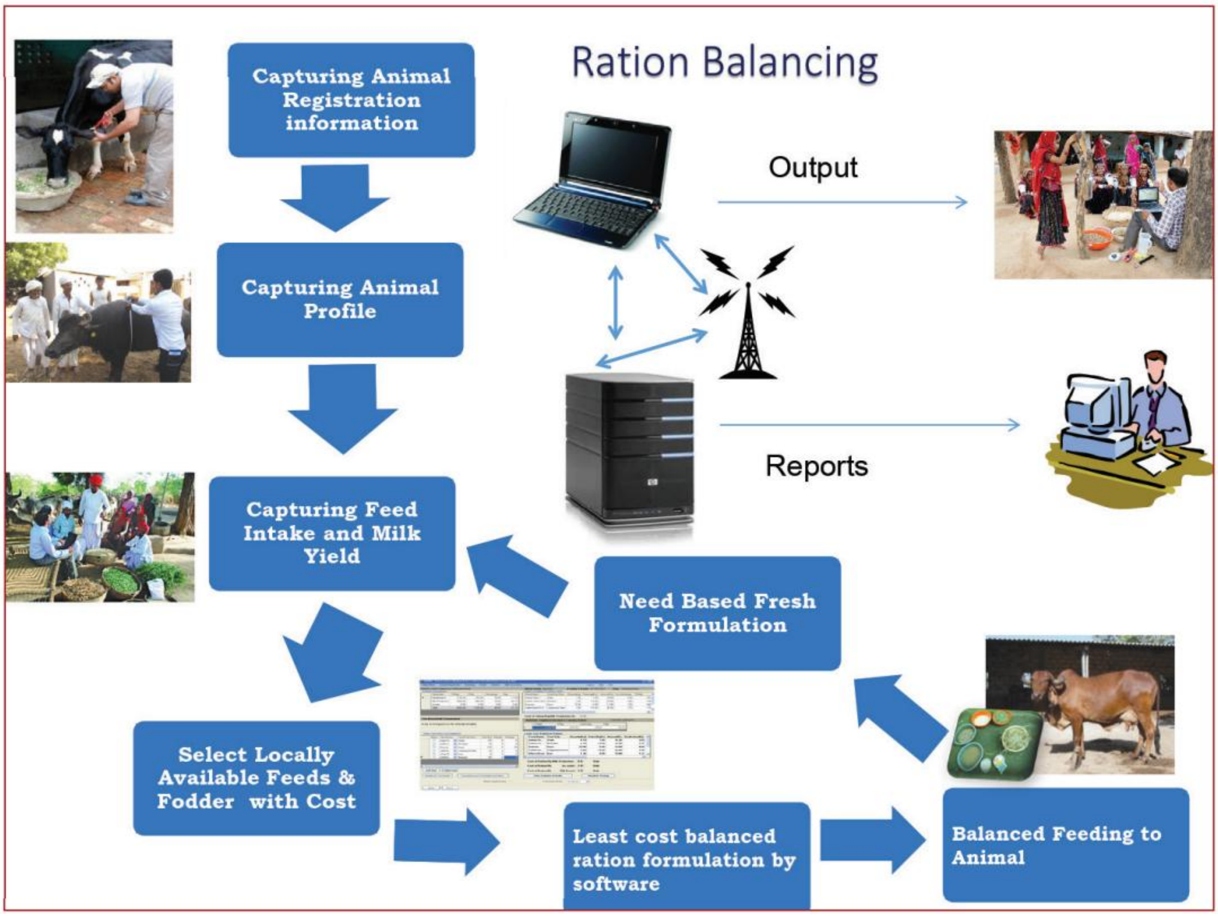
INAPH helps in monitoring AI delivery system to assess and improve conception rate, minimise inter-calving period. It also helps to evaluate breeding values of bulls as well as identification of elite animals.



Animal Nutrition

INAPH supports the Ration Balancing Programme (RBP). It has a data library on chemical composition of commonly available feed resources in India and the nutrient requirements based on body weight, milk yield/milk fat, pregnancy status etc. Based on the feeding practices, prevailing nutrient status can be seen. As per the availability of feed resources and area specific mineral mixture, a least cost ration is worked out, which is then given to the milk producers in local language, in a format easy to understand.

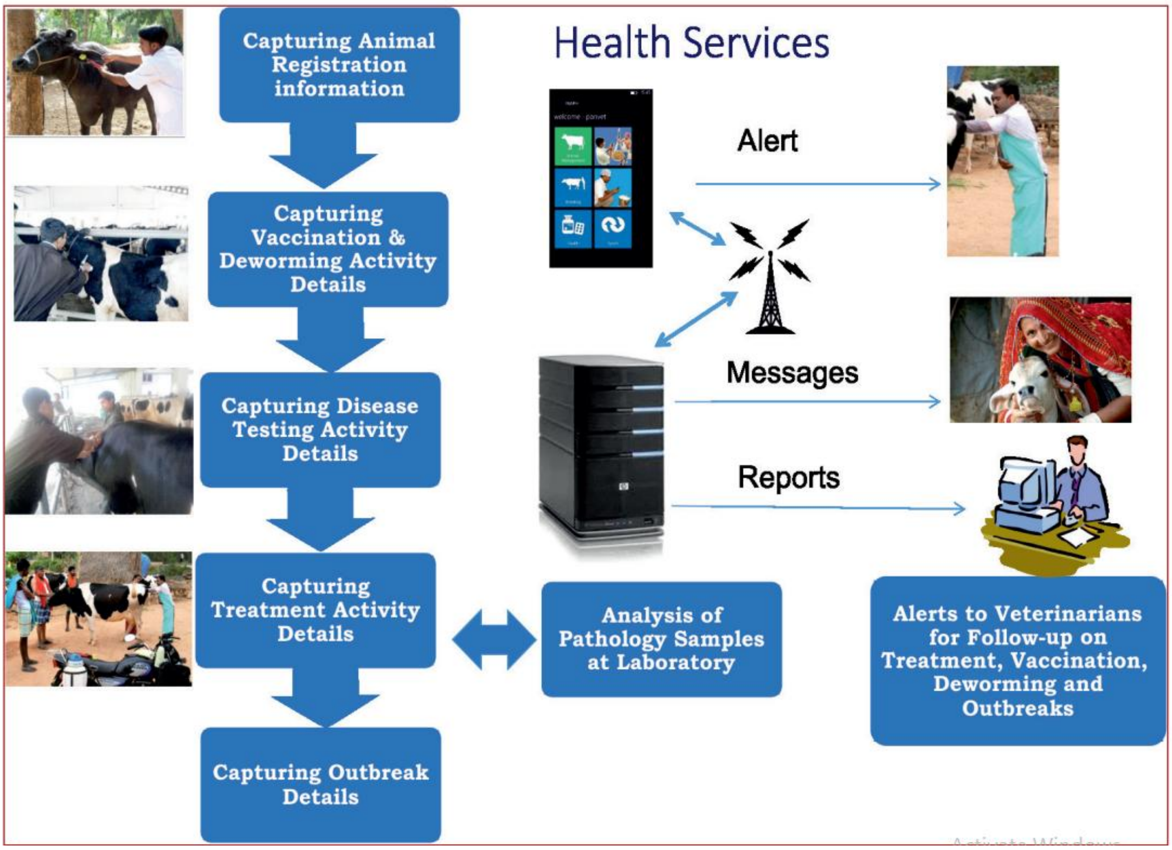
Balanced ration advisory services through INAPH based on data of one and a half lakh cows/buffaloes resulted in increase in net daily income of milk producers between ` 15-35 per animal, by enhancing daily milk yield/milk fat and/or reduction in cost of feeding per litre of milk.



Animal Health

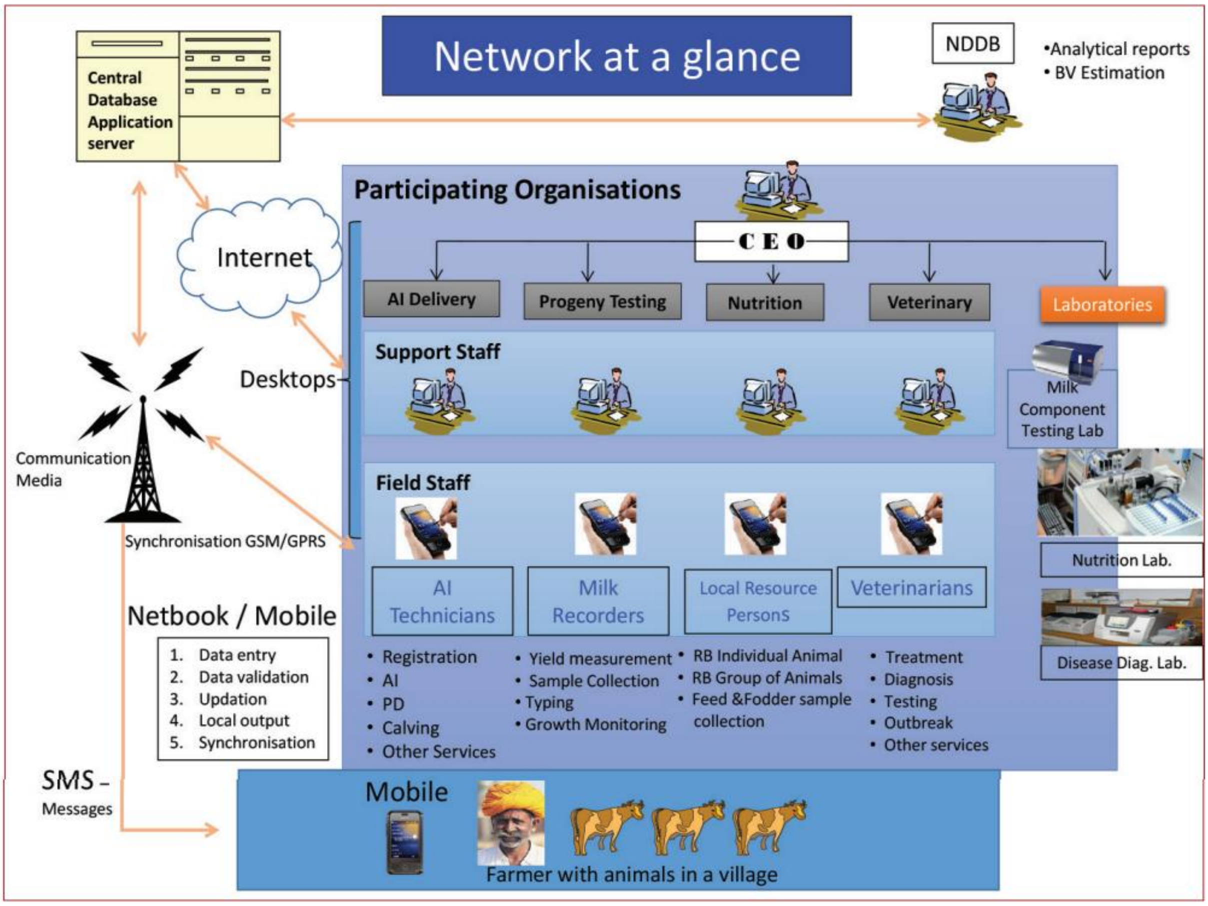
The Animal Health module of INAPH is designed to capture health related data of animals such as vaccinations, de-worming, disease testing, treatment, outbreak management and fertility camps. The complete health profile of each animal is being maintained by the system, enabling better health management and treatment. Data can also be captured at the village level on most health related interventions

INAPH is currently providing support to over 220 lakh animals belonging to around 127 lakh farmers in more than 1.70 lakh villages spread across 29 states. The system is being used by over 1.19 lakh field users in the country.



System Architecture & Deployment

The system is designed to meet the various information needs of farmers, field technicians, End Implementation Agencies (EIAs) such as Milk Unions/Federations, Producer Companies, analysts and policy makers. The application can be operated through computers/netbooks as well as hand-held devices (Android phone & tablets) with internet connectivity. Data collected in the field is stored in the central database at NDDB, Anand. In the absence of network connection (offline mode), there is a provision for data to be captured and stored for later synchronisation with the central server through the GPRS network.



INAPH is equipped to send messages to farmers, providing appropriate advice regarding their animals, when required. Web based reports are available to the managerial team and other decision makers for analysis.

Benefits

- Unique identification of animal along with the pedigree facts, lactation yields and owner details
- Record keeping of all activities related to Breeding, Nutrition & Health
- Identification of superior bull & elite female
- Tracking disease outbreak & disease pattern for different species/breed/village/district
- Healthier/productive animals increase earning of farmers
- Assess the efficiency & effectiveness of AI services & Ration Balancing Advisory Services
- Monitor and follow up genetic improvement and Ration Balancing Programmes

INAPH helps in monitoring AI delivery system to assess and improve conception rate, minimise inter-calving period. It also helps to evaluate breeding values of bulls as well as identification of elite animals.

RESISTANCEMAP: AN ICT BASED TOOL FOR GLOBAL DATA ON ANTIMICROBIAL USE AND RESISTANCE

Geetanjali Kapoor

Research Fellow, The Center for Disease Dynamics Economics & Policy

About ResistanceMap

Resistance Map (ResMap) is a web-based collection of data visualization tools that allows interactive exploration of antimicrobial resistance (AMR) and antibiotic use trends in countries across the globe, now including several low- and middle-income countries (LMICs). CDDEP first developed ResistanceMap in 2010 to display national and some subnational AMR data for the United States, Canada and over 30 European countries for the year 2009, as well as antibiotic use data for United States from 2000 to 2009.

In the current iteration, which is supported by a new grant from the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, CDDEP has expanded ResistanceMap to include more up-to-date AMR data from invasive isolates only (blood and cerebrospinal fluid) from the countries included in the previous iteration of ResistanceMap, as well as additional countries including South Africa, India, Thailand, Vietnam, Kenya, Argentina, Chile, Equador, Mexico, Venezuela, Australia, and New Zealand. Where available, data are displayed at the national, subnational or regional level. The primary sources of data are public and private laboratory networks that routinely collect AMR test results.

In addition to updated and expanded AMR data, this iteration of ResistanceMap also includes antibiotic consumption data from 75 countries from years 2000 to 2014 obtained from IQVIA's MIDAS and Xponent databases. Moreover, this iteration includes an update to the web tool itself, so that non-technical users can more easily explore trends in antibiotic use and resistance around the world.

Antimicrobial Resistance Data

Resistance data from 46 countries are represented in ResMap. AMR data are available from 1999 to 2017, depending on the country.

Twelve organisms are included - *Acinetobacter baumannii, Entero bacteraerogenes/ cloacae, Enterococcus faecalis/ faecium, Escherichia coli, Klebsiella pneumoniae , Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Salmonella Typhi/ Paratyphi, Staphylococcus aureus and Streptococcus pneumoniae.* Details of AMR data and methods for calculating resistance proportions are described in the methodology section.

Antibiotic Consumption Data

Antibiotic consumption data from 76 countries are represented. Antibiotic consumption data are available from 2000 to 2015. Sub-national antibiotic consumption data are available only for the United States through 2017. Data sources are IQVIA XPonent and IQVIA MIDAS databases.

Seventeen antibiotic classes are included: aminoglycosides, broad-spectrum penicillins, carbapenems, cephalosporins, chloramphenicols, glycopeptides, glycylcyclines, lipopeptides, macrolides, monobactams, narrow-spectrum penicillins, oxazolidinones, phosphonics, polymixins, quinolones, tetracyclines, and trimethoprim combinations.

Details of antibiotic use data and methods for calculating antibiotic consumption are described in the methodology section.

Citing Resistance Map

Please cite data or figures from ResistanceMap in the following style:

The Center for Disease Dynamics Economics & Policy. ResistanceMap: [Page Name]. 2018. [URL]. Date accessed: [Date].

Methodology

1) Antibiotic Resistance

ResistanceMap (ResMap) aggregates data on antibiotic resistance from several sources. The data have been harmonized to present similar definitions of resistance across countries and regions to enable comparisons between countries. However, comparing resistance rates between countries should be undertaken with some caution as the breadth of testing varies between countries.

The following sections describe the source of the data, the bacterial species included, and the pathogen-antibiotic combinations used to determine resistance rates.

Sources: The underlying data are obtained from multiple sources in one of two formats: (1) microbiology and test data at isolate level; (2) aggregated data listing at a minimum, the number or percentage of isolates resistant and the number of isolates tested. The following table details the source of data for each country.

Bacterial species: Depending on the country, resistance data is currently available for all or some of the following bacterial species:

- *Acinetobacter baumannii*
- *Enterobacteraerogenes/cloacae*
- *Enterococcus faecalis*

- *Enterococcus faecium*
- *Escherichia coli*
- *Klebsiellapneumoniae*
- *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*
- *Salmonella paratyphi*
- *Salmonella typhi*
- *Staphylococcus aureus*
- *Streptococcus pneumoniae*

Isolates were classified as susceptible (S), intermediate (I), or resistant (R). Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) or European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) breakpoints were used for antimicrobial susceptibility testing in the laboratories contributing the data. For example, laboratories in the United States use CLSI guidelines, while European countries use EUCAST guidelines.

The data presented on ResistanceMap include only invasive isolates obtained from blood, cerebrospinal fluid or both. In addition, all non-susceptible isolates (I+R) are classified as resistant and the data is presented for a pathogen only when 30 or more isolates were tested against an antibiotic. Some countries do not have data for every pathogen-antibiotic combination listed, and for certain combinations, only a few countries have data. For instance, India is currently the only country with Salmonella data available.

For each data point we calculated the 95% confidence interval using the Wilson score method for binomial data.

Pathogen-antibiotic combinations: Antibiotics are classified into several groups as needed to compensate for the lack of susceptibility data on every antibiotic and to facilitate examination of resistance based on clinical relevance. Antibiotic groups are often classes of antibiotics, but not always. Resistance to an antibiotic group was defined as non-susceptibility to at least one antimicrobial agent in that group, though not all isolates were tested against every antibiotic in a group. The pathogens and the groupings of antibiotic agents against which they are tested can be obtained from methodology on antibiotic resistance.

2) Antibiotic use

Sources: Data on antibiotic use for all countries currently included comes from the IQVIA MIDAS database. This database estimates antibiotic consumption from the volume of antibiotics sold in retail and hospital pharmacies based on national sample surveys done by pharmaceutical sales distribution channels (i.e. from manufacturer to wholesaler to retailer). In each sector, data are collected regularly to estimate direct sales from antibiotic drug manufacturers and indirect sales from wholesalers. The sales estimates from this sample are projected with use of an algorithm developed by IQVIA to approximate total volumes for sales and consumption. The algorithm uses regional, sectorial-specific, and distribution-channel-specific factors to project national estimates of antibiotic consumption. However, precise details of the algorithm are withheld for proprietary reasons.

Data on antibiotic sales in standard units (SUs) and kilograms were obtained from the IQVIA MIDAS database. SU is an IQVIA designation that represents a single dose unit such as a pill, capsule, or equal amount of liquid. Sales expressed in kilograms were converted into defined daily doses (DDDs) using the Anatomical Therapeutic Chemical Classification System (ATC/DDD, 2016) developed by the WHO Collaborating Centre for Drug Statistics Methodology. For molecules not included in the ATC/DDD index, DDD values were estimated from other sources or as the average of DDD unit values by class. DDD unit values were provided in the ATC/DDD index for 199 of the molecules in the IQVIA MIDAS database. When possible, DDD unit values not available through the ATC/DDD index were estimated from other sources. Data in SUs were available for all years, whereas kilogram data were available only for the period 2005-2015. The ratio of SUs to kilograms for 2005-2015 was used to estimate kilograms and DDDs for 2000 to 2004. Countries' annual antibiotic consumption rate in DDDs per 1,000 inhabitants was calculated using population estimates from the World Bank DataBank. In countries where hospital and retail data were both reported for some but not all years (2000-2015), consumption in the missing sector was estimated by interpolation, using the ratio of antibiotic consumption in the hospital and retail sectors for the years data had been reported. Data collection procedures imposed additional limitations for a few countries that could not be (completely) accounted for. For example, some countries had sales data reported for only hospital or retail sectors, and in some cases, certain types of antibiotic sales—such as those in supermarkets or through government channels—were not included.

To allow for a meaningful comparison across countries, standard units/DDDs per 1,000 population was calculated by dividing the reported number of standard units/DDDs by population estimates from the World Bank. Taiwan’s population size data was not available in the World Bank’s database, so the values from Penn World Table 7.1 were used. Antibiotic use data was available only at a grouped regional level for some countries. For the two regional groupings—Central America and French West Africa—that had such data, we pooled the population estimates for the constituent countries to generate standard units/DDDs per 1,000 population.

For the United States, additional data was available at a subnational level. This data comes from IQVIA's Xponent database. The Xponent database contains data on dispensed drug prescriptions collected from retail pharmacies (chain, mass merchandisers, independent pharmacies, and food stores) in the United States. The database covers more than 70% of all prescriptions filled in the United States, and records are then weighted to project 100% of total prescriptions dispensed. Precise details of the weighting algorithm are withheld for proprietary reasons. These data are available at the zip code level and have been aggregated into state-level values. Data were then divided by state population estimates from the US Census to give the number of prescriptions per 1,000 people.

Antibiotics: All the antibiotic products listed in MIDAS and Xponent databases constituted 90 different antibiotic molecule types. These generic antibiotics have been further combined into 18 different classes for comparisons across countries. The distribution of antibiotics into classes can be obtained from methodology on antibiotic use.

3) Drug Resistance Index

The Drug Resistance Index (DRI) is a composite measure that combines the ability of antibiotics to treat infections with the extent of their use in clinical practice. Described by Science Magazine as a Dow Jones for Drug Resistance, the DRI provides an aggregate trend measure of the effectiveness of available drugs, akin to the way composite economic indices are used to track movement in consumer prices and stock market values. DRI was developed by CDDEP researchers led by Professor RamananLaxminarayan.

The DRI can be calculated at the country, region, state, or even hospital level. Country-level DRI estimates were recently published in BMJ Global Health for a subset of countries for a single year to demonstrate the power of the DRI to communicate problems with resistance. Here we present that data, plus additional countries and years for which we have gathered enough data to calculate a composite DRI. The results underscore the urgent challenges facing the globe as DRI values are high (meaning poorer efficacy of antibiotics) in many countries, particularly many low- and middle-income countries. In the highly connected world in which we live, the disparity in efficacy is a threat to global public health as resistant pathogens can rapidly spread between countries. The DRI can also be applied to national and regional data.

References

The Center for Disease Dynamics Economics & Policy. ResistanceMap: [About ResistanceMap]. 2021. [https://resistancemap.cddep.org/About.php]. Date accessed: [15 August 2021].

The Center for Disease Dynamics Economics & Policy. ResistanceMap: [Methodology: Antibiotic Resistance]. 2021. [https://resistancemap.cddep.org/Methodology.php]. Date accessed: [15 August 2021].

The Center for Disease Dynamics Economics & Policy. ResistanceMap: [Methodology: Antibiotic Use]. 2021. [https://resistancemap.cddep.org/MethodologyAU.php]. Date accessed: [15 August 2021]

Klein E, Smith DL, Laxminarayan R. Hospitalizations and deaths caused by methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus, United States, 1999–2005. Emerging infectious diseases. 2007 Dec;13(12):1840. DOI: 10.3201/eid1312.070629

Flamm RK, Weaver MK, Thornsberry C, Jones ME, Karlowsky JA, Sahm DF. Factors associated with relative rates of antibiotic resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolates tested in clinical laboratories in the United States from 1999 to 2002. Antimicrobial agents and chemotherapy. 2004 Jul 1;48(7):2431-6. DOI: 10.1128/AAC.48.7.2431-2436.2004

Jones ME, Mayfield DC, Thornsberry C, Karlowsky JA, Sahm DF, Peterson D. Prevalence of oxacillin resistance in Staphylococcus aureus among inpatients and outpatients in the United States during 2000. Antimicrobial agents and chemotherapy. 2002 Sep 1;46(9):3104-5. DOI: 10.1128/AAC.46.9.3104-3105.2002

Karlowsky JA, Draghi DC, Jones ME, Thornsberry C, Friedland IR, Sahm DF. Surveillance for antimicrobial susceptibility among clinical isolates of Pseudomonas aeruginosa and Acinetobacterbaumannii from hospitalized patients in the United States, 1998 to 2001. Antimicrobial agents and chemotherapy. 2003 May 1;47(5):1681-8. DOI: 10.1128/AAC.47.5.1681-1688.2003

Sahm DF, Marsilio MK, Piazza G. Antimicrobial resistance in key bloodstream bacterial isolates: electronic surveillance with the Surveillance Network Database—USA. Clinical Infectious Diseases. 1999 Jul 15;29(2):259-63. DOI: 10.1086/520195

Styers D, Sheehan DJ, Hogan P, Sahm DF. Laboratory-based surveillance of current antimicrobial resistance patterns and trends among Staphylococcus aureus: 2005 status in the United States. Annals of clinical microbiology and antimicrobials. 2006 Jan;5(1):2. DOI: 10.1186/1476-0711-5-2

May L, Klein EY, Rothman RE, Laxminarayan R. Trends in antibiotic resistance in coagulase-negative staphylococci in the United States, 1999 to 2012. Antimicrobial agents and chemotherapy. 2014 Mar 1;58(3):1404-9. DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01908-13

Klein EY, Sun L, Smith DL, Laxminarayan R. The changing epidemiology of methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus in the United States: a national observational study. American journal of epidemiology. 2013 Feb 28;177(7):666-74. DOI: 10.1093/aje/kws273

Braykov NP, Eber MR, Klein EY, Morgan DJ, Laxminarayan R. Trends in resistance to carbapenems and third-generation cephalosporins among clinical isolates of Klebsiellapneumoniae in the United States, 1999–2010. Infection Control & Hospital Epidemiology. 2013 Mar;34(3):259-68. DOI: 10.1086/669523

Sun L, Klein EY, Laxminarayan R. Seasonality and temporal correlation between community antibiotic use and resistance in the United States. Clinical infectious diseases. 2012 Jun 28;55(5):687-94. DOI: 10.1093/cid/cis509

INTEGRATED HEALTH INFORMATION PLATFORM (IHIP) FOR COMMUNICABLE DISEASE SURVEILLANCE

SnehaNaik

State Data Manager, IDSP

Integrated Health Information Portal (IHIP) is designed and developed by WHO at the request of MoHFW in order to have a holistic picture of data reported under different National Health Programmes with "One-Health Approach" on a common platform. It is a web-enabled, near real time electronic health information system that is embedded with all applicable Government of India's e-governance standards, Information Technology (IT), data & meta data standards to provide state-of-the-art single operating picture with geospatial information for obtaining village wise and case-based disease surveillance data in real time mode & managing disease outbreaks in the Country.

The Integrated Disease Surveillance Programme (IDSP) is a nationwide disease surveillance system in India incorporating both the state and central governments aimed at early detection and long-term monitoring of diseases for enabling efficient policy decisions. It was started in 2004 with the assistance of the World Bank. A central surveillance unit has been set up at the National Centre for Disease Control in Delhi. All states, union territories, and district headquarters of India have established surveillance units. Weekly data is submitted from all the peripheral units.

Data from medical colleges, health centres, hospitals, labs, etc. is being utilized for the purpose of tracking and reporting of diseases.The data is being collected on 'S' syndromic; 'P' presumptive; & 'L' laboratory formats using standard case definitions.

Under IDSP data is collected on epidemic prone diseases on a weekly basis (Monday–Sunday) and entered on the IDSP weekly portal. Whenever there is a rising trend of illnesses in any area, it is investigated by the Rapid Response Teams (RRT) to diagnose and control the outbreak.

Currently, IHIP portal is used for online reporting under Integrated Disease Surveillance Programme (IDSP) according to real time bases through peripheral units from different logins.

DISEASE MODELLING AND FORECASTING RISK OF LIVESTOCK DISEASES IN INDIA

(With reference to NADRES $_{V2}$)

K. P Suresh, D. Hemadri and S.S Patil

ICAR-National Institute of Veterinary Epidemiology & Disease Informatics

Bengaluru-560064

Livestock disease Forecasting system is an important component of livestock disease risk management strategies under livestock disease surveillance program. This minimizes the morbidity and mortality of animals and subsequently helps in building efficient production system. India is endowed with vast livestock resources of 535.78 million livestock heads includes 192.49 million cattle population of which 50.42 million are exotic/Crossbreed, 109.85 million buffaloes, 74.26 million sheep, 148.88 million goats, 9.06 million pigs, 4.4 lakhs of Mithun& yaks etc., (20th Livestock Census of India, Department of Animal Husbandry & Dairying (DAHD)under the ministry of Fisheries, Animal husbandry & Dairying, Govt of India) with increased production of milk at 187.75 million tonnes by increase of 6.5% over previous year and per capita availability of milk stood at 394.gms/day(2018-19) compared to previous year 375 grams/day. The main purpose of forecasting system is to assess the risk of disease in given area and issue warnings. Forecasting systems for livestock diseases in India comprises four inter-related elements. 1. Assessment and knowledge of livestock disease risks in the area, 2. Local hazard monitoring and warning service, 3. Disease risk dissemination and communication service and 4. Community response capabilities. This type of multifunctional system improves the community preparedness & awareness for risk of livestock disease occurrence, in terms of both warnings and increased understanding of risks associated and response of policy makers, veterinarians and farmers.

Epidemiological surveillance systems that are ongoing and systematic, that use standardized routines for quality assurance, and that provide for analysis and timely dissemination of of information are critical for Expert system. Human activities are generating wave of change in the natural environment, while new technologies and globalization continue to alter economic and social patterns across the planet. It is known that global climate change and degradation of air, land and water in many areas are capable of endangering animal health. In light of this, it is to examine the potential of these changes to exacerbate the spread of infectious diseases. Systematic climatic and non-climatic observations are an important component of any forecasting system.

Ecological observations and climate forecasts can potentially be used in efforts to predict the appearance of a pathogen and thus allow opportunities to minimize its transmission. This approach is likely to have a much lower predictive value, however, given the uncertainties associated with most climate/disease relationships and the confounding influences of other factors. It is highly unlikely that precise predictions of an epidemic could be made solely on the basis of climate forecasts and environmental observations. Yet, this information can feasibly be used as the basis for issuing an alert (or a "watch") that environmental conditions are conducive to disease outbreak, which in turn can trigger intensive surveillance efforts for the area in question. If surveillance data is available, then one can confirm the presence of the pathogen or an increase in its abundance subsequent warnings could be issued as needed,

An early warning system or forecasting system is an instrument for communicating information about impending risk to vulnerable population before a hazard event occurs, thereby enabling actions to be taken to mitigate potential harm, and sometimes, providing an opportunity to prevent the hazardous event from occurring. Early warning systems are routinely used for hazardous natural events such as hurricanes and volcano eruptions. In contrast, to date very little attention has been paid to the development of such systems for infectious disease epidemics in livestock. The goal of a disease early warning system would be to provide veterinary health officials and the farmers with as much advance notice as possible about the likelihood of a disease outbreak in a particular location, thus widening the range of feasible response options.

Machine Learning (ML) models has background concept which requires fewer assumptions and coherent statistical methods for dealing with overlaps between presence and background points. ML models are numerical tools that combine observations of species occurrence or abundance, it will be used to correlate disease outbreaks with environmental variability. The models will be evaluated using discrimination capacity in which the power of the model is the discrimination of epi units or geo-spaces of outbreaks and no-outbreaks. The reliability of ML models refers to the capability of predicted probabilities to reflect the observed proportion of locations where disease events are measured.

Finally, risk communication used to be viewed primarily as the dissemination of information to the public about health **risks** and events, such as outbreaks of **disease** and instructions on how to change behaviour to mitigate those **risks**. Risk communication has been identified as a core competence for guiding public health responses to infectious disease threats. It is a call to build capacity and a comprehensive understanding of health risks before a veterinary health emergency to allow systematic and coherent communication, response and management. Research studies indicate that while outbreak and crisis communication concepts and tools have long been on the agenda of veterinary health officials, there is still a need to clarify and integrate risk communication concepts into more standardised practices and improve risk communication and health, particularly among disadvantaged populations.

Reference

Suresh, K.P., Hemadri, D., Kurli, R., Dheeraj, R., Roy, P. 2019. Application of artificial intelligence for livestock disease prediction. Indian Farm. 69, 60–62

Livestock disease Forewarning Bulletin for the month of January-December2020. Published in January-December 2020, Volume no. 8, Issue 1-12. Prepared by: Dr. K.P. Suresh, Dr. D. Hemadri, Dr. S.S.Patil, Dr. P. Krishnamoorthy, Dr. S.J. Siju and © ICAR-NIVEDI.https://www.nivedi.res.in/Nadres_v2/nadres_bulletin.php

DISASTER RISK MAPPING USING GEOSPATIAL TECHNOLOGY

Girish Gopinath

Associate Professor (Remote Sensing & GIS)

Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies (KUFOS), Kochi

Principal Scientist (On lien), CWRDM, Kozhikode

1. Introduction

Geospatial Technology is a blend of computer hardware and software designed to capture, store, display and analyses geographic (Chaudhary, N., 2014). The capturing of geographic data often relies on remote sensing and global positioning technology. Remote sensing is a common term used for data acquisition from platforms such as aircraft or satellites, that provide a bird's eye view Remote sensing (RS) is the observation of an object, surface or phenomenon through the use of a variety of recording devices that are wireless, or not in physical or intimate contact with the object. An aircraft, spacecraft, satellite or ship may be used for this purpose and equipped with recording devices such as camera, laser, radar, sonar etc.

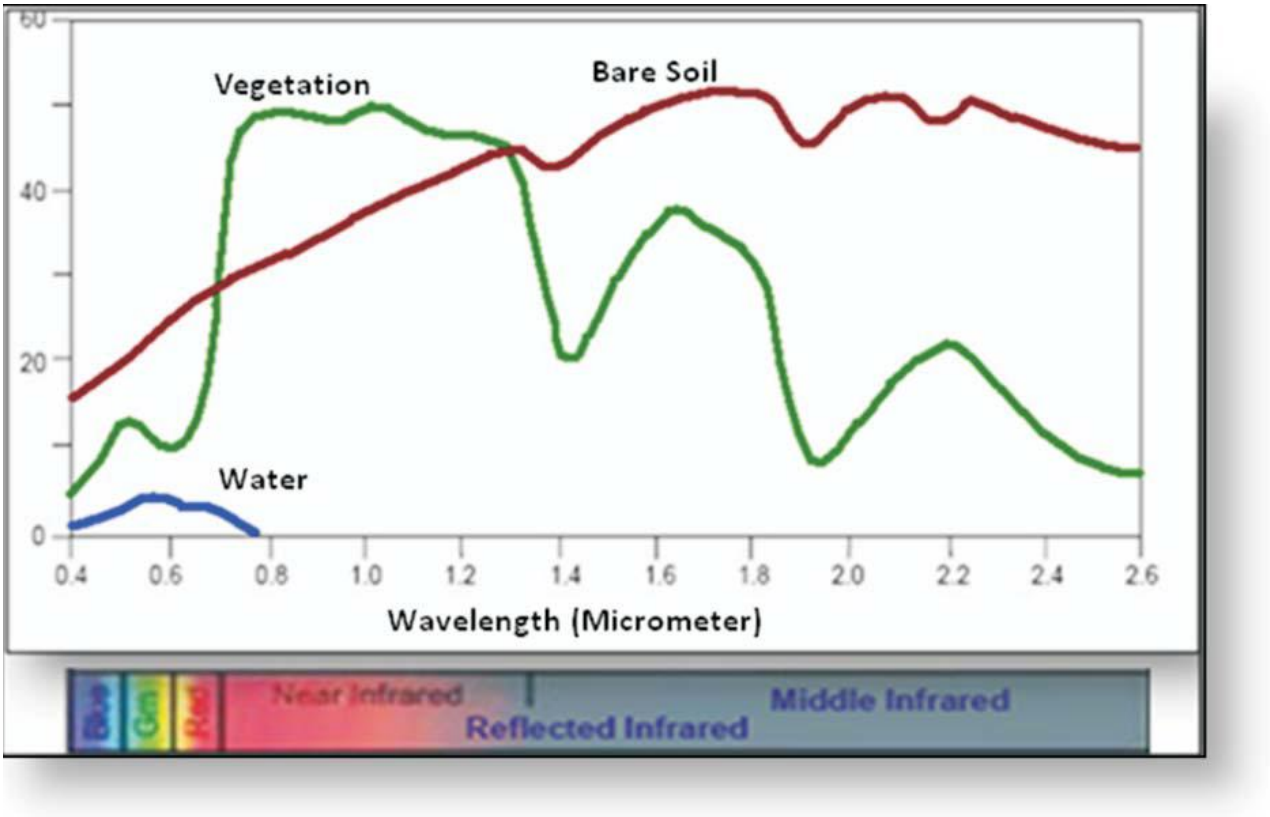
Stages in Remote Sensing

- A source of electromagnetic energy
- Transmission of Energy from the source to the surface of earth
- Interaction with the intervening atmospheres
- Interaction of EMR with the earth's surface
- Transmission of Energy from the surface to the remote sensor
- Sensor Data output
- Data transmission, Processing and Analysis

Remote sensing deals with inventory, monitoring and assessment of natural resources through analysis of data obtained from remote sensing platform. Remote Sensing measures energy such as ultra-violet, infrared, microwave, which that can- not be reached by human vision. Remote sensing data has a unique advantage of multidisciplinary application. The basic principle involved in remote sensing is that different objects reflect or emit radiations in different wavelengths and intensities depending upon properties of the objects serves as the main communication link between the sensor and the objects. All object matter that has temperature higher than absolute zero 0^0 emit EMR continuously. The intensity of the emitted radiation depends upon the composition and temperature of the body. A blackbody is an ideal body that absorbs all radiation incidents on it without any reflection. It represents a continuous spectral emission curve, in contrast to natural bodies that emit only at separate spectral bands. Temperature plays great role on the intensity of blackbody emitted radiation. This relationship is called Wien's displacement Law. Law represents as: max = A/ T where max is the wavelength (cm) where highest radiation occurs. A is constant (= 0.29 cm K) and T is the temperature (K) of the object. Using this law, it can estimate the temperature of objects by measuring the wavelength of peak radiation. The above figure shows spectral distribution of energy radiated from black bodies of various temperatures such as sun, incandescent lamp, fire and Earth. For the Sun max occurs at 0.48 µm, which measures the temperature of the Sun approx. as 6000 K similarly for the earth, the ambient temperature is 3000 K and max occurs at 9.7µm. The ambient temperature of fire is 5000 K and for incandescent lamp it is 4000 K. Most useful regions of the EMR are visible, Infra-red and thermal and microwave for carrying out RS activities. The human eye can detect energy in the visible portion of the electromagnetic spectrum. Photographic cameras are sensitive to broader range of wavelength ranges from 0.3 µm — 0.9 µm, the near ultraviolet to the near infrared. Thermal scanners operate in the thermal infrared portion of the spectrum. Multispectral scanners operate over a broad range of wavelengths from ultraviolet to thermal infrared. Passive microwave and active radar systems operate in microwave portion of the electromagnetic spectrum.

Spectral reflectance signature

The reflectance characteristics of the different features of the earth surface are measured by the incident energy that is reflected by the surface. This spectral reflectance of natural features is collected and stored by satellite sensors. Spectral reflectance of any object usually varies according to the wavelength of the EMR. A graph showing the spectral reflectance of an object for various wavelengths is known as a Spectral Reflectance Curve. It helps in selecting the wavelength bands for identifying the object. Spectral reflectance characteristics are the most important aspect for feature classification in any satellite imagery. Typical spectral reflectance curve for soil, vegetation, water is shown in below graph.



Spectral reflectance of vegetation, soil and water

Geographical Information System (GIS)

GIS is a computer-based system used to digitally represent and analyze the geographical features and events taking place. In ancient time people used maps as a tool to represent and share information about earth surface. Geographic surveyors, navigators, explorers have made many efforts to collect map data for various purposes. Science of map making has undergone many changes. Today there is a new dimension of spatial data handling with respect to various natural resources, and features. A GIS is a collection of computer hardware, software, and geographic data for digitally capturing, managing, analyzing, and displaying all forms of geographically referenced information. It allows us to capture, view, understand, acquire, interpret, and visualize data. The various themes of the same area such as Land cover/ land Use, water, soil, street can be integrated to reveal relationships, patterns, and trends in the form of maps, globes, reports, and charts.

A GIS is a computer application program that stores Spatial and Non-Spatial information in a digital form. Location Information describes where a particular geographic feature is situated on Earth. Attribute Information describes the feature details like what it is, how much it is, what it contains, etc. Non-Spatial data, also called as attribute data, which refers to information like demographic distribution of a town or a village, daily discharge of a river at a particular place, Traffic contiguity of a road etc. The fundamental key of GIS is that, the association of Geographic features present on earth' surface, which can be geo-referenced with a database related to it. The figure shows the tree location and its description such as age, height, and species. GIS manages all variety of data in a single electronic file in a computer by storing different spatial features as sub-files. These sub-files are called map layers / themes (soil, water, street etc) These map layers are conveniently stored and accessed with the computer in a same scale which are very much helpful for regional planner or any administrative body to accurate study of the earth features. GIS can open all the layers showing all features. It can be displayed and overlaid depending on the requirements. For example, the land-use layer may be displayed along with elevation contours by keeping another layer off.

2. Application of Geospatial technology in drought management

Drought is the major climatic threat that affects agriculture of arid areas. Detection and evaluating the impact of drought with traditional methods has been laborious and time consuming. Recently methods for drought monitoring are improved. Space technology has made substantial contribution in all the three phases such as preparedness, prevention and relief phases of drought disaster management. The Earth Observation satellites which include both geostationary and polar orbiting satellites provide comprehensive, synoptic and multi temporal coverage of large areas in real time and at frequent intervals and 'thus' - have become valuable for continuous monitoring of atmospheric as well as surface parameters related to droughts and floods (Jeyaseelan, 2003). Geo-stationary satellites provide continuous and synoptic observations over large areas on weather including cyclone monitoring. Polar orbiting satellites have the advantage of providing much higher resolution imageries, even though at low temporal frequency, which could be used for detailed monitoring, damage assessment and long-term relief management. Advancements in the remote sensing technology and the Geographic Information Systems help in real time monitoring, early warning and quick damage assessment of both drought and flood disasters.

Monitoring and assessment of drought through remote sensing and GIS depend on the factors that cause drought and the factors of drought impact. Based on the causative factors, drought can be classified into Meteorological, Hydrological and Agricultural droughts. An extensive survey of the definition of droughts by WMO found that droughts are classified on the basis of: (i) rainfall, (ii) combinations of rainfall with temperature, humidity and or evaporation, (iii) soil moisture and crop parameter, (iv) climatic indices and estimates of evapotranspiration, and finally (v) the general definitions and statements.

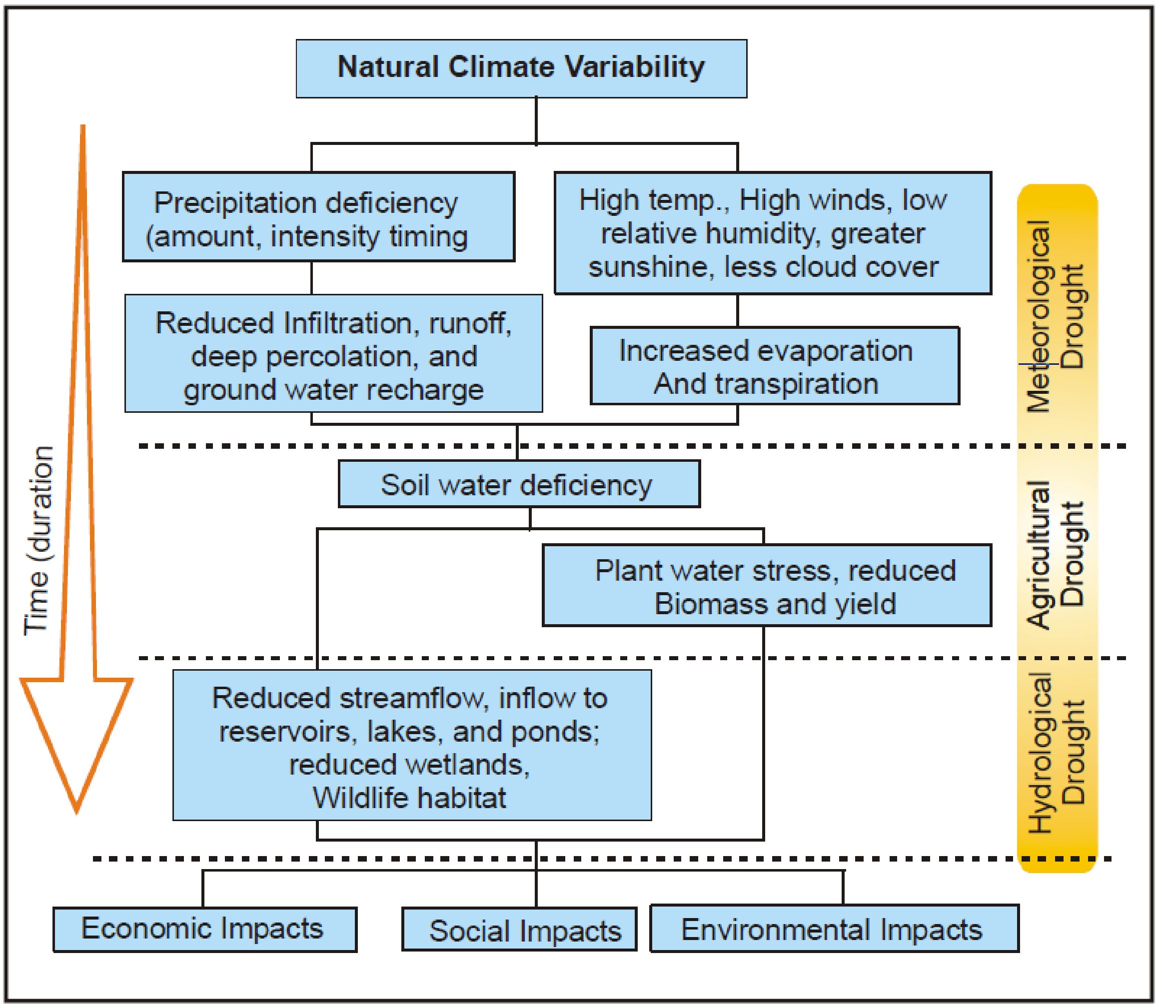


Figure 1: Sequence of Drought impacts

Drought is a normal, recurrent feature of climate and occurs in all climatic zones, although its characteristics vary significantly from one region to another. Drought produces a complex web of impacts that span many sectors of the economy and reach well beyond the area experiencing physical drought. Drought impacts are commonly referred to as direct or indirect. Reduced crop, rangeland, and forest productivity; increased fire hazard; reduced water levels; increased livestock and wildlife mortality rates; and damage to wildlife and fish.

Drought Preparedness Phase

Long before the drought event occurs, the preparedness in terms of identifying the drought prone / risk zone area and the prediction of drought and its intensity is essential. Drought Prone/Risk zone identification. The drought prone area or risk zone identification is usually carried out on the basis of historic data analysis of rainfall or rainfall and evaporation and the area of irrigation support. The conventional methods lack identification of spatial variation and do not cover man's influence such as land use changes like irrigated area developed and the area affected due to water logging and salinity. The remote-sensing based method for identification of drought prone areas (Jeyaseelan and Chandrasekar, 2002) uses historical vegetation index data derived from NOAA satellite series and provides spatial information on drought prone area depending on the trend in vegetation development, frequency of low development and their standard deviations.

Drought prediction

The remote sensing use for drought prediction can benefit from climate variability predictions using coupled ocean/atmosphere models, survey of snow packs, persistent anomalous circulation patterns in the ocean and atmosphere, initial soil moisture, assimilation of remotely sensed data into numerical prediction models and amount of water available for irrigation. Nearly-global seasonal climate anomaly predictions are possible due to the successful combination of observational satellite networks for operational meteorological, oceanographic and hydrological observations. Improved coupled models and near-real time evaluation of in situ and remote sensing data - allows for the first time physically-based drought warnings several months in advance, to which a growing number of countries already relate their policies in agriculture, fisheries and distribution of goods.

The quality of seasonal predictions of temperature and precipitation (NCRC) of United States, the European Centre for Medium Range Weather Forecasts (ECMWF), the India Meteorological Department (IMD), the National Centre for Medium Range Weather Forecast of India (NCMRWF) is a function of the quality and amount of satellite data assimilated into the starting fields (e.g., SST from AVHRR and profiles from TOVS on NOAA satellites, ERS-2 scatterometer winds, SSM/I on DMSP satellites and all geostationary weather satellites: Geostationary Operational Environmental Satellites (GOES), i.e. GOES-East, GOES-West of USA, METeorologicalSATellite (METEOSAT) of Europe, Geostationary Meteorological Satellites (GMS) of Japan, Indian National Satellites (INSAT) of India etc.). The new assimilation techniques have produced a stronger impact of space data on the quality of weather and seasonal climate predictions. The potential contribution by existing satellites is by far not fully exploited, since neither the synergy gained by the combination of satellite sensors is used nor all the satellite data are distributed internationally. For example, better information flow is needed from satellite data producers to the intermediary services such as CLIPS (Climate Information and Prediction Services) project of World Meteorological Organisation (WMO), and prediction centres including the European Centre for Medium Range Weather Forecasts (ECMWF), National Centres for Environmental Predictions (NCEP), Japan Meteorological Agency (JMA), India Meteorological Department (IMD), National Centre for Medium Range Weather Forecast, India (NCMRWF) etc. to local services and ultimately to end users. Further the drought predictions need to be improved with El Niño predictions and should be brought down to larger scales. anomalies by various centres such as the National Climate Research Centre.

Drought Prevention Phase

Drought Monitoring and Early Warning

Drought monitoring mechanism exists in most of the countries based on ground-based information on drought related parameters such as rainfall, weather, crop condition and water availability, etc. Earth observations from satellite are highly complementary to those collected by in-situ systems. Satellites are often necessary for the provision of synoptic, wide-area coverage and frequent information required for spatial monitoring of drought conditions. The present state of remotely sensed data for drought monitoring and early warning is based on rainfall, surface wetness, temperature and vegetation monitoring. Currently, multi-channel and multi sensor data sources from geostationary platforms such as GOES, METEOSAT, INSAT and GMS and polar orbiting satellites such as National Oceanic Atmospheric and Administration (NOAA), EOS-Terra, Defense Meteorological Satellite Program (DMSP) and Indian Remote Sensing Satellites (IRS) have been used or planned to be used for meteorological parameter evaluation, interpretation, validation and integration. These data are used to estimate precipitation intensity, amount, and coverage, and to determine ground effects such as surface (soil) wetness. In addition, web based real time drought assessment is also proposed by Gopinath et al. (2015) and Gopinath et al (2020).

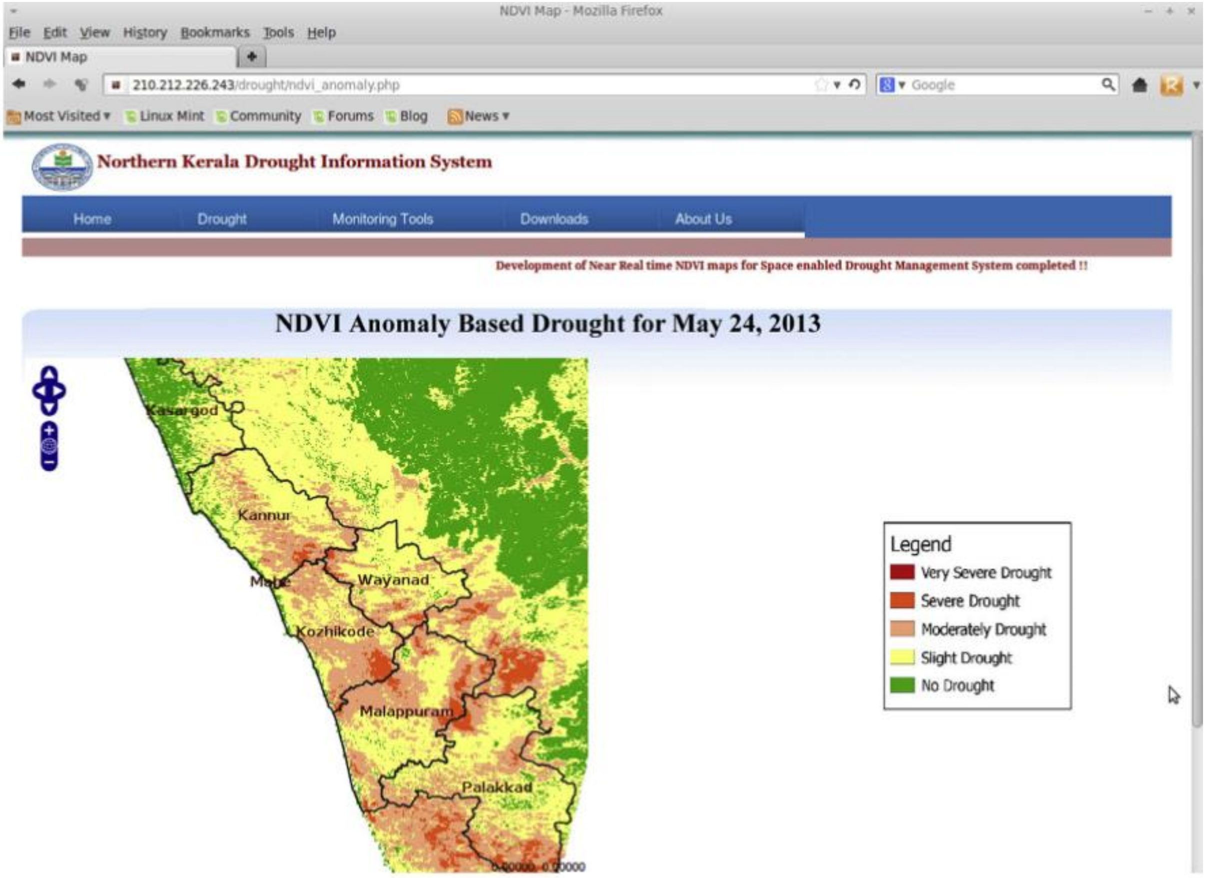
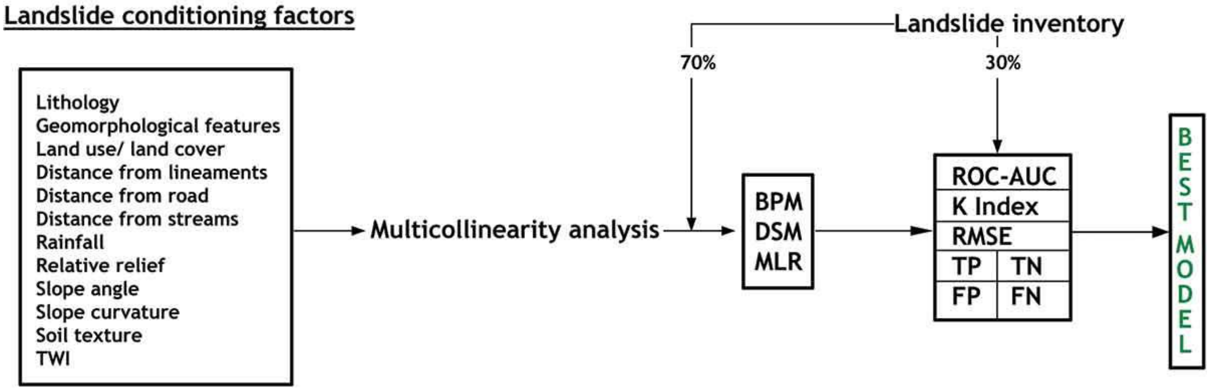


Fig. 3. Screenshot of the recent NDVI Anomaly map displayed on the Web page.

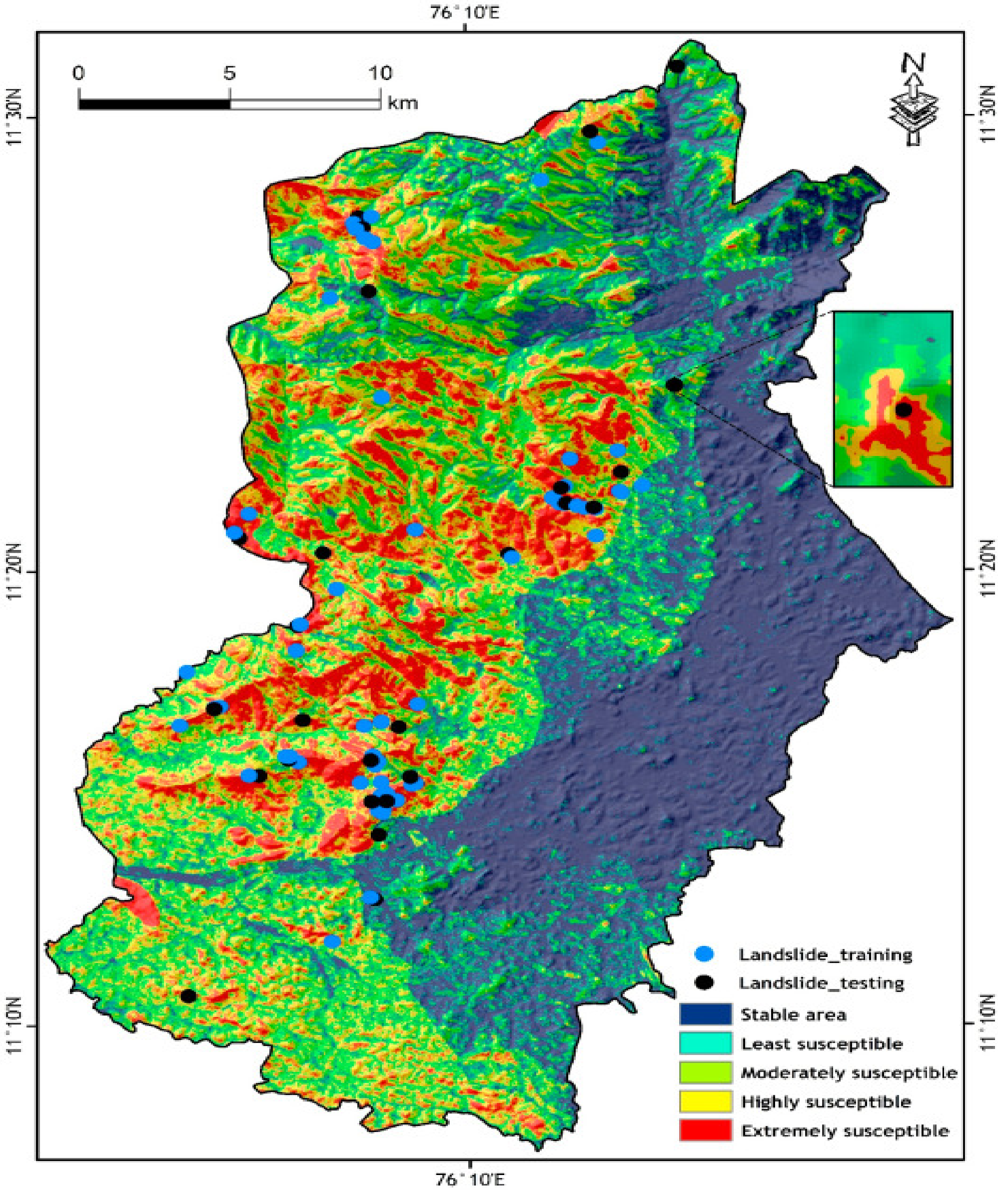
Source Gopinath et al., 2015.

3. Application of geospatial technology in Landslide susceptibility mapping

A landslide is a type of mass wasting process that acts on natural and engineered slopes. It is the movement of a mass of rock, debris, or earth down a slope, under the influence of gravity. Landslides involve flowing, sliding, toppling, falling, or spreading, and many landslides exhibit a combination of different types of movements, at the same time or during the lifetime of the landslide. Landslides are present in all continents, and play an important role in the evolution of landscapes. In many areas they also pose a serious threat to the population (Petley, 2012; Swetha& Girish Gopinath 20220; Achu et al., 2021a). Landslides are complex geomorphic processes influenced by several geo-environmental factors such as regional lithology, morphological characteristics, soil type, rainfall, slope and land use pattern, makes is difficult to predict the spatial and temporal occurrences. However, with the introduction of geospatial technology, many researchers predicted landslide susceptibility (likelihood of occurrences) by applying various heuristic, deterministic and statistical methods (Achu et al., 2020: Feby et al., 2020; Pham et al., 2021).The landslide susceptibility modelling have three major phases, starting from collecting previous landslide location, finding the suitable landslide influencing parameters like slope angle, lithology etc and modelling the probability of occurrences using weighted overlay/AHP or other statistical/ machine learning modellings as shows below.



A general methodology for landslide susceptibility analysis (Source Achu et al., 2020)



Example of landslide susceptibility map (Source Feby et al., 2020)

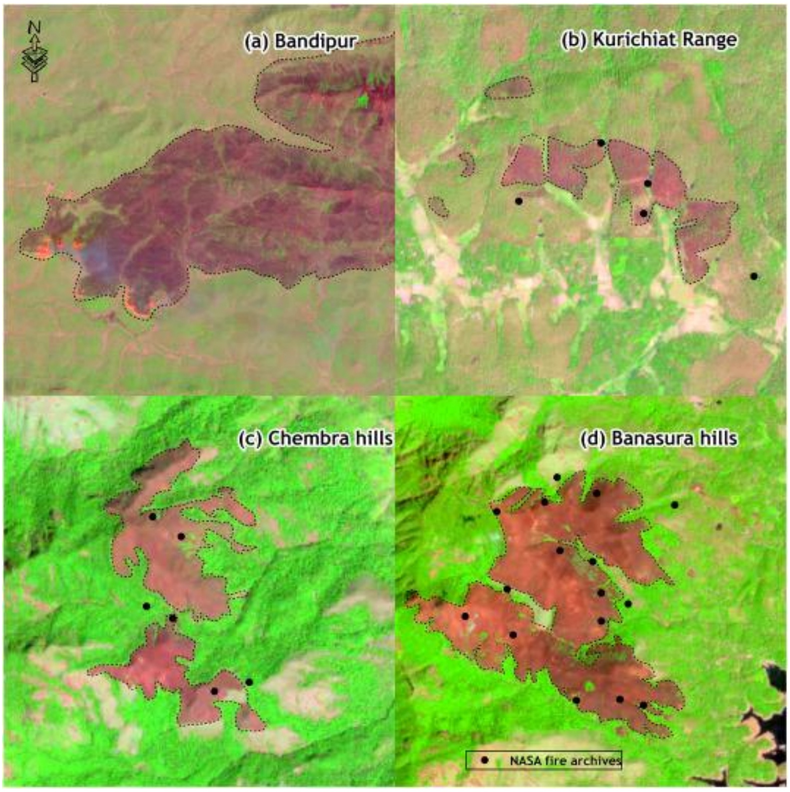
4. Application of Geospatial technology in forest fire prediction and mapping

Forest Fire is a natural phenomenon. It is part of the nitrogen cycle and it helps forests to grow healthy. However, “wildfire” is a huge and out of control fire which destroys human wealth and therefore, it is kind of disaster. The very first strategy to defend the forests against wildfire is to avoid it. So fire risk maps are produced and even prescribed burning is done. Nevertheless, wildfire happens and the only choice in this case is to control it. Knowing the fire behavior, one can use forest fire simulation to predict and control the wildfire. Nowadays application of Geospatial Information Systems (GIS) in disaster management has extended considerably and, in some cases, it is even unavoidable. Forest fire happens from time to time and this has given human a chance to observe and develop different models for forest fire behavior. GIS as a powerful tool for management of spatial information, has also proved its potential in forest fire management. There are different applications of GIS in forest fire management out of which the most important ones are hazard map production, forest fire simulation and resource management. Simulation by itself has a main role in the management of forest fire. GIS uses various information layers such as Digital Elevation Model (DEM) and index of flammability along with different models for the purpose of forest fire management. Models can be simple or complex. Simple models have few parameters and can be implemented even without GIS, however, because of their simplicity their results are not so reliable. On the other hand, very complex models which use detailed physical characteristics of fire are not reliable either as there is not either enough or up to date information on their parameters. So, finding an optimum model that takes advantage of sufficient number of parameters while has an acceptable level of simplicity is very important.

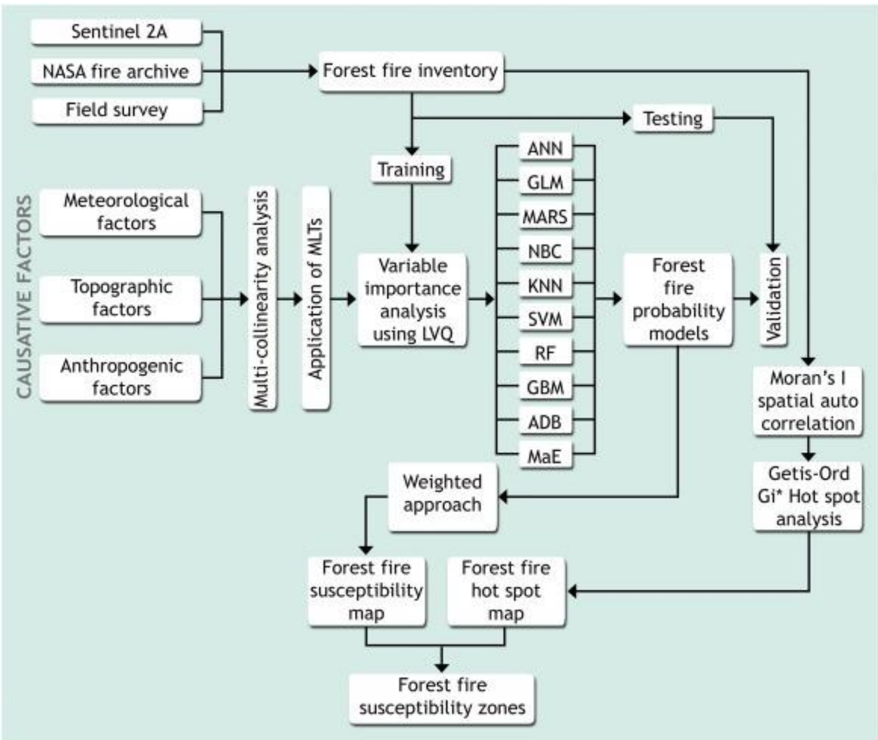
GIS is a powerful spatial processing tool which is used to solve many complex problems. In the context of forest fire some applications of GIS are as following:

1. GIS in fire risk/probability assessment
2. GIS in prescribed burn planning
3. GIS in preventing fire and its spread
4. GIS in fire simulation
5. GIS in post fire assessment and monitoring
6. GIS in disaster management

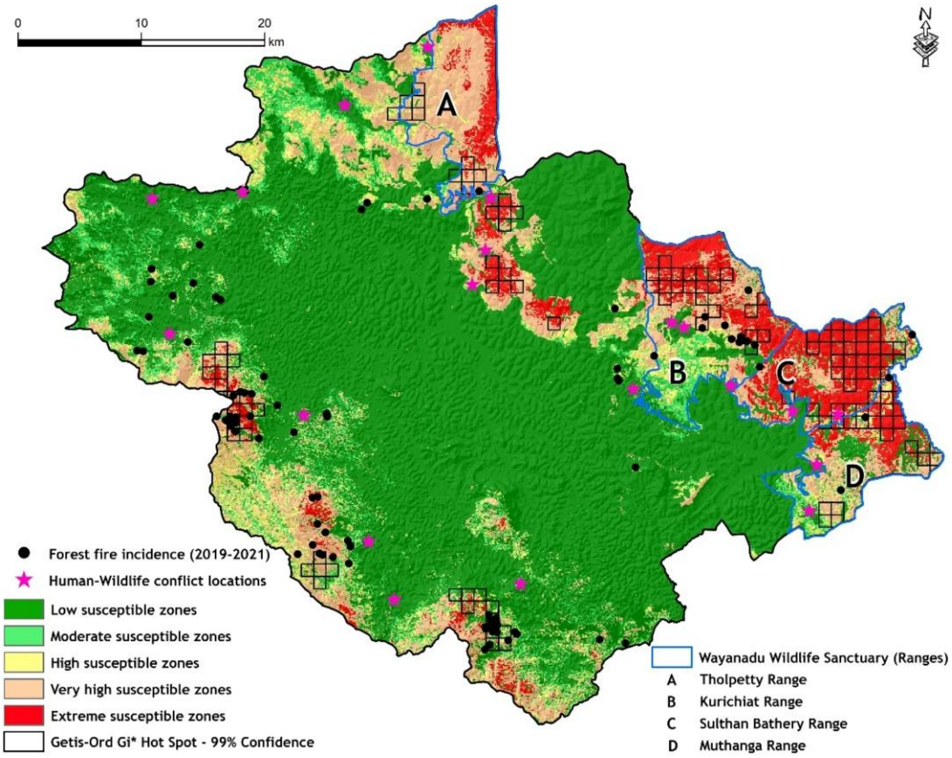
Below figure shows a live tracking of active forest fire and other burned areas in Wayanad district using Sentinel 2 Satellite images.



Forest fire inventory: Sentinel 2A 12-8-4 band combination with NASA fire archive data (a) Bandipur National Park, (b) Kurichiat forest range, (c) Chembra hills and (d) Banasura hills. (Source AchuA L 2021b)



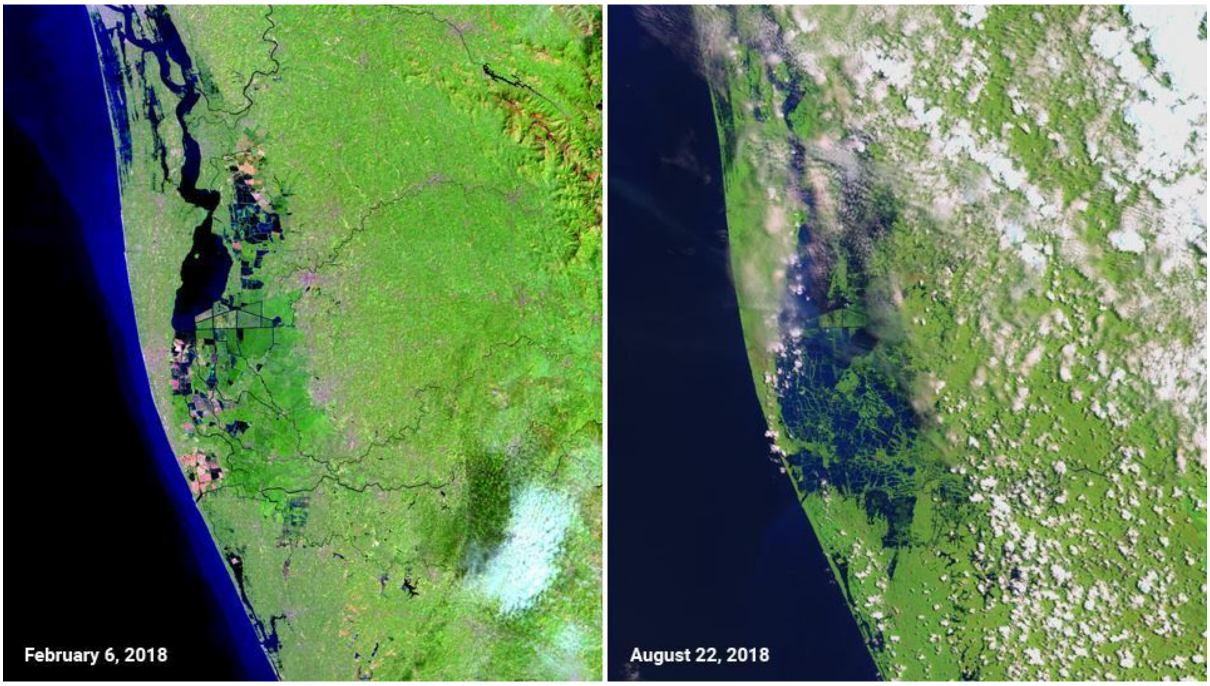
Methodology flow chart for forest fire susceptibility modelling using machine learning models (Source Achu et al., 2021b)



Forest fire susceptibility map using machine learning models in Wayanad district (Source Achu et al., 2021b).

Application of geospatial technology in flood modelling and mapping Kerala flood

Accurate and current floodplain maps can be the most valuable tools for avoiding severe social and economic losses from floods. Accurately updated floodplain maps also improve public safety. Early identification of flood-prone properties during emergencies allows public safety organizations to establish warning and evacuation priorities. Armed with definitive information, government agencies can initiate corrective and remedial efforts before disaster strikes. GIS is ideally suited for various floodplain management activities such as, base mapping, topographic mapping, and post-disaster verification of mapped floodplain extents and depths. For example, GIS was used to develop a River Management Plan for the Santa Clara River in Southern California. A GIS overlay process was used to further plan efforts and identify conflicting uses along the river and areas for enhancing stakeholder objectives. A 1 inch = 400 ft (1 cm = 122 m) scale base map was created to show topography, planimetric features, and parcels. Attribute data were entered into a separate database and later linked to the appropriate map location. Six layers were created for flood protection related work: 100-year floodplain, 100-year flood way, 25-year interim line, existing facilities, proposed facilities, and flood deposition. The lessons learned from this mapping project indicate that GIS is useful in capturing and communicating a vast amount of information about the study area and the river. While the use of GIS and the process to gather and record data were not without problems, the overall value of GIS was found to overweigh those challenges.

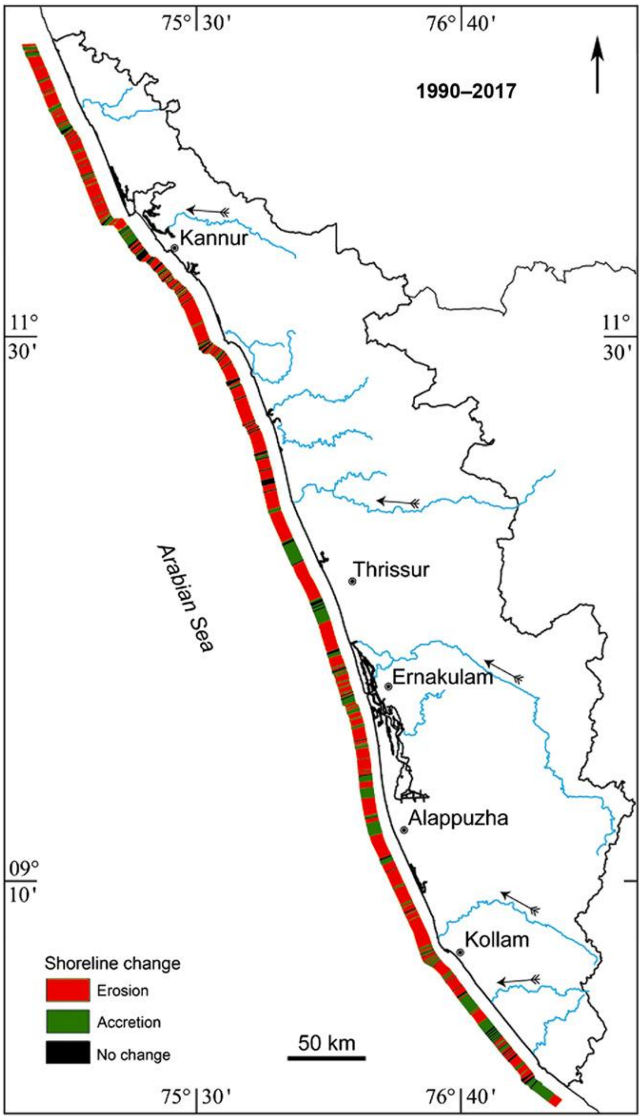


Kerala flood (Source NASA 2018)

Spatial probability of flood occurrence can be computed using GIS, often called flood susceptibility modelling.

5. Application of Geospatial technology in coastal vulnerability mapping

Coastal zone for the purpose of this paper, shall mean the area, on both side of the actual land water interface, where both territorial as well as Marine environmental influences each other. In addition, interaction between various natural processes and human activity are important factor in the coastal area. The coastal zone shows high population density with large number of urban conglomeration and in consequence, a fast population growth. Again, as a consequence, coastal zone are characterized by a high concentration of economic and, in particular, industrial activities with all the resulting problems of resource consumption, waste management and technological risk. On coastal water side, fisheries and aquaculture exploits a generally highly productive system. Very specific, and valuable as well as vulnerable, typical coastal ecosystems include estuaries, salt marshes, mangroves, coral reefs etc. Offshore activities such as oil and gas, as well as mining, are additional forms of exploitation of the coastal zone. In addition, the coastal zone is also the recipient of all water borne waste streams, primarily attributable to agriculture, its fertilizers and agrochemical, and all treated and untreated waste water the hinter land produce in their respective catchment. Determining the accurate length of the coastline is important for such coastal zone management application as shoreline classification, monitoring erosion, mapping biological resources, habitat assessment and for the planning and response to nature (e.g., storm surges) and man-made disasters (e.g. oil spills). Coastal zone management, by definition, is spatial management. Geo referenced spatial data is map data in a digital form which mean that each of the earth's features that are stored as spatial data has a unique geographic reference such as latitude and longitude. The increasing use of spatial data and GIS (Geographic Information System) by organizations and researchers is a valuable tool to help solve the planning and management issues in the coastal zone. There are many different Geographic Information Systems in use today and they tend to differ in certain aspects such as "how they link geographic location with information about those locations, the accuracy with which they specify Geographic location, the level of analysis they perform and the way they present information as graphic drawing". Following is an example of shore line changes along the coast of Kerala using time series satellite images.



Map showing the changes along the Kerala state during 1990–2017 (source Kumar et al., 2019)

Coastal region	**Time Interval**	**Erosion Length (km)**	**Accretion Length (km)**	**Stable Length (km)**	**Area lost by Erosion (km^2)**	**Area gained by deposition (km^2)**	**Net Loss (km^2)**
Kerala State	1990-2017	327	172	91	23	10	13

Source: Kumar et al., 2019

References

Achu, A.L., Aju, C.D. and Reghunath, R., 2020. Spatial modelling of shallow landslide susceptibility: a study from the southern Western Ghats region of Kerala, India. Annals of GIS, 26(2), pp.113-131. https://doi.org/10.1080/19475683.2020.1758207

Achu, A.L., Joseph, S., Aju, C.D. and Mathai, J., 2021a. Preliminary analysis of a catastrophic landslide event on 6 August 2020 at Pettimudi, Kerala State, India. Landslides, 18(4), pp.1459-1463. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10346-020-01598-x

Achu, A.L., Thomas, J., Aju, C.D., Gopinath, G., Kumar, S. and Reghunath, R., 2021b. Machine-learning modelling of fire susceptibility in a forest-agriculture mosaic landscape of southern India. Ecological Informatics, p.101348. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoinf.2021.101348

Chaudhary, N., 2014. Geospatial technology: Opportunity in fostering social entrepreneurship. Annual Research Journal of, p.82.

Colwell, J.E. 1974. Vegetation canopy reflectance. Remote Sens. Environ., 3: 175-183.

Deering, D.W., 1978. Rangeland reflectance characteristics measured by aircraft and spacecraft sensors (Doctoral dissertation, Texas A&M University. Libraries).

Feby, B., Achu, A.L., Jimnisha, K., Ayisha, V.A. and Reghunath, R., 2020. Landslide susceptibility modelling using integrated evidential belief function based logistic regression method: A study from Southern Western Ghats, India. Remote Sensing Applications: Society and Environment, 20, p.100411. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rsase.2020.100411

Gopinath, G., Ambili, G.K., Gregory, S.J. and Anusha, C.K., 2015. Drought risk mapping of south-western state in the Indian peninsula–A web-based application. Journal of environmental management, 161, pp.453-459.

Gopinath, G., Surendran, U., Abhilash, S., NagaKumar, K.C.V. and Anusha, C.K., 2020. Assessment of drought with a real-time web-based application for drought management in humid tropical Kerala, India. Environmental Monitoring and Assessment, 192(11), pp.1-15.

Hook, S.J., A.R. Gabell, A.A. Green and P.S. Kealy 1992. A comparison of techniques for extracting emissivity information from thermal infrared data for geological studies. Remote Sens. Environ., 42: 123-135.

Jeyaseelan, A.T. and Chandrasekar, K. 2002. Satellite based identification for updation of Drought prone area in India. ISPRS-TC-VII, International Symposium on Resource and Environmental Monitoring, Hyderabad.

Jeyaseelan, A.T., 2003. Droughts & floods assessment and monitoring using remote sensing and GIS. Satellite remote sensing and GIS applications in agricultural meteorology, 291.

Kahle, A.B. 1986. Surface emittance, temperature and thermal inertia derived from Thermal infrared multispectral scanner (TIMS) data for Death Valley, California. Geophysics, 52 (7): 858-874.

Kahle, A.B., D.P. Madura and J.M. Soha, 1980. Middle infrared multispectral aircraft scanner data: analysis of geological applications. Appl. Optics, 19: 2279-2290.

Petley, D., 2012. Global patterns of loss of life from landslides. Geology 40 (10), 927–930. http://dx.doi.org/10.1130/G33217.1.

Pham, Q.B., Achour, Y., Ali, S.A., Parvin, F., Vojtek, M., Vojteková, J., Al-Ansari, N., Achu, A.L., Costache, R., Khedher, K.M. and Anh, D.T., 2021. A comparison among fuzzy multi-criteria decision making, bivariate, multivariate and machine learning models in landslide susceptibility mapping. Geomatics, Natural Hazards and Risk, 12(1), pp.1741-1777.

Kumar, K.C.V.N., Demudu, G., Dinesan, V.P., Gopinath, G., Deepak, P.M., Lakshmanadinesh, K. and Rao, K.N., 2019. Erosional Responses of Eastern and Western Coastal Regions of India, Under Global, Regional, and Local Scale Causes. In Coastal Zone Management (pp. 155-179). Elsevier.

Swetha T V and Girish Gopinath (2020) Landslides susceptibility assessment by analytical network process: a case study for Kuttiyadi river basin (Western Ghats, southern India), SN Applied Science, Springer Nature Switzerland AG, DOI: 10.1007/s42452-020-03574-5

APPLICATION OF ICTs IN LIVESTOCK PRODUCTION AND HEALTH MANAGEMENT

Dr.Vivek M. Patil

Associate Professor & Head, Dept. of Livestock Production and Management, Veterinary College Hebbal, Bangalore, Karnataka, India

---

Information and Communication Technologies (ICT) is a broader term as compared to Information Technology (IT), and refers to all communication technologies, including the internet, wireless networks, cell phones, computers, software, middleware, video-conferencing, social networking, and other media applications and services enabling users to access, retrieve, store, transmit, and manipulate information in a digital form (FAO, 2021).ICT encompasses both the internet-enabled sphere as well as the mobile one powered by wireless networks. It also includes antiquated technologies, such as landline telephones, radio and television broadcast -- all of which are still widely used today alongside cutting-edge ICT pieces such as artificial intelligence and robotics (Pratt, 2019).

Modern ICTs applications are made up of four layers, namely the cloud, edge, physical, andnetwork layers. The cloud layers is made up of the virtual server with the presence ofbig data analytics. There is also the presence of database clusters with potential for datavisualization and enabled machine learning (ML) and artificial intelligence (AI) potentials.The edge layer is where the users' computational activities are enabled with the existenceof ML and AI models and data processing capability.The physical layer is the layer responsible for enabling the sensors that are placed on the animalsand fittedinto farm equipment to collect data. The network layer performs thefunction of offering the gateway to allow data communication and connectivity (Akhigbe *et al.*, 2021).

ICT-enabled applications which enhance the efficiency of livestock farms and aid in precision farming can be broadly grouped into four categories – Sensors, Automation, Decision Support Systems (DSS) and Information dissemination.

A. **Sensors**: These can be of various types depending on the requirement.Bio-sensors can either be wearable (neck, ears, legs, tail, skin surface) or implanted (sub-cutaneous, intra-ruminal, intra-vaginal). They can record temperature, pH, activity (accelerometer), heart rate, respiration rate, mounting pressure, GPS location, biomarkers etc. depending on their location and utility. External sensors which can record animal data comprise video camera, microphone, thermal infrared camera and load cells. Other sensors record environmental parameters like temperature, humidity, air speed, light intensity and levels of noxious gases. In dairy farms, special sensors in the milking parlour can record milk quantity, flow rate, temperature, composition, electrical conductivity, somatic cell count, progesterone levels and antibiotic residues. In most cases, a combination of sensors is utilized to achieve desired management objective.

B. **Automation**: In view of the rising costs and unreliability of skilled labour, and the reduction in prices of automatic farm equipment, many livestock farms have adopted automation in routine operations milking, feeding, livestock handling, weighing, body condition scoring and climate control. This enables timely and precise farm operations. The data generated from automatic farm equipment is vital for handling large herds/flocks.

C. **Decision Support Systems**: Data from biosensors, environmental sensors and external sources is fused to form a Decision Support System which aids the farmer in taking appropriate management decisions. These can in the form of livestock breeding, feeding, herd management and disease control. Computerization of these process increases speed of decision making and reduces errors. Incorporation of ICTs leads to change in livestock management strategy from Reactive to Proactive to Predictive, with the system being able to predict the best management response in the future based on past data.

D. **Information Flow**: Creating awareness about scientific livestock management practices is vital for enhancing efficiency and saving of scare national resources. With the advent of wider mobile network coverage and low-cost smartphones and internet data, mobile apps have become the preferred route for information dissemination as compared to earlier technologies like information kiosks or CDs. They have advantages in the form of multi-lingual text, audio and video content, and timely updates and notifications. In addition to extension activities, critical information regarding extreme weather events, emerging diseases and vaccination drives can also be shared using ICT tools. Access to market information and online trading of livestock, livestock products and inputs like feed ingredients etc. can greatly enhance the profitability of farmers by removing middlemen.

Advanced digitalization technologies can help modern farms optimizeeconomic contribution per animal, reduce the drudgery of repetitivefarming tasks, and overcome less effective isolated solutions. Thereis now a strong cultural emphasis on reducing animal experiments andphysical contact with animals in-order-to enhance animal welfare andavoid disease outbreaks. This trend has the potential to fuel moreresearch on the use of novel biometric sensors, big data, and blockchaintechnology for the mutual benefit of livestock producers, consumers,and the farm animals themselves (Neethirajan and Kemp, 2021).Some of the ICT-enabled applications which enhance the efficiency of livestock farms and aid in precision farming are given below:

1. **Identification**: Development and commercialization of animal identification systems has reached a very advanced state. A variety of systems based on Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) are available, some of which work reasonably well and have been adopted at the country level. These systems greatly facilitate the traceability and certification of products, particularly of meat, and therefore are crucial tools to minimize the losses and market disruptions caused by localized diseases. RFID systems communication with other ICT enabled systems to aid data logging in milking, feeding, and weighing equipment.

2. **Instrumentation***:* This involves acontrol system that consists of sensors that measure variables related to the system's state and actuators that provide input of mass, momentum or information to the system towards directional modification of the state. Animal state is estimated by the history up to a recent time, position, activity, temperature, live weight and other physiological variables of all individuals in the herd. This is especially observed in commercial poultry farms where controlled environmental conditions are essential for the profitability in high producing lines.

3. **GPS**: The use of GPS collars for livestock and wildlife has opened the possibility of recording detailed position information for long periods of time, thus allowing a more complete understanding of the habits and causes of spatial distribution of ruminants. Current commercial GPS technology can determine position of individual animals with a precision of 10 m or better. The position information can be stored on small flash cards together with large amounts of behaviour and physiological data and it can be transmitted to a management centre in real time or in periodical sessions.

4. **Animal behaviour sensors**: The data recorded by these sensors is somewhat ambiguous, but models can be developed to infer activity. Various types of sensors are necessary for a detailed record of behaviour. Accelerometers have been useful to document not only head movements but also walking and lying behaviour. Sensors have been tested for measuring head angle, head acceleration, leg acceleration, steps (pedometers),

swallowing, jaw movements, biting and chewing sounds, weight, heart rate, core temperature etc.

5. **Health monitoring**: Sensors and techniques for heath monitoring are well developed for dairy production under confined conditions. Behaviour and changes in behaviour can be used to detect health problems before disease affects animal productivity. Sensors were able to detect 80% of health problems related to ketosis, locomotion and lameness at least one day sooner than the farm staff by analysis of short-term feeding. Use of the estrus mount detectors, pedometer and advanced time series analysis to detect oestrus in dairy cows has been quite successful. Mastitis detection using in-line sensors which evaluate electrical conductivity and somatic cell count have proven to be very effective in detecting sub-clinical mastitis. Rumen pH sensors enable early detection of acidosis and aid in proper feeding. Thermal infrared imaging, especially of the eye region can monitor stress and detect disease 4-6 days earlier than traditional methods (Neethirajan and Kemp, 2021). Other devices like thermometers, accelerometers, and microphones, and camerasallow farmers to monitor temperature, activity levels, sound levels in the barn (e.g., vocalizations, sneezing, and coughing) and specific behaviors (e.g. aggression in pigs, pain estimation using 'grimace scale').

6. **Weighing**: Body weight measurement, either using statically or walk over load cells, or through captured digital images have very good accuracy and minimise the stress associated with restraint and body weight measurement.

7. **Body Condition Scoring**: This can be done either with image processing from video cameras or using thermal imaging. The captured images and associated expert score are used to train the computer neural network model, which can predict BCS of animals with very high accuracy.

8. **Lameness score**: This can be measured using data from load cells during milking or while the animal is walking over a grid of load cells. Newer techniques use video tracking and gait analysis; these, however, need an unobscured view of the flank of a single cow. Accuracy of these methods is still not adequate for commercial use.

9. **Herd management software:** The ability to digitally store herd information is a valuable tool for all farms. Data can be entered into this software application manually or automatically through the use of other digital devices (such as milk meters, cow weighing scales) linked to this database. This enables the farmer to easily view, analyze, manipulate and sort data. Such information storage and manipulation capabilities provide farmers with an extremely valuable resource to aid them in their farm management activities and decisions.

10. **Big data analytics and Machine learning:**The use of biometric sensors and biosensors for monitoring the health and welfare of livestock results in huge amounts of data that need to be processed and analysed to provide meaningful insights for animal management.Precision livestock farming relies upon proper use of big data analytics and modelling to inform management about nutritional needs, reproductive status, and declining trends in productivity, that may indicate animal health and welfare issues. Big data models extract information from sensors, process it, and then use it to detect abnormalities in the data that may be affecting the animals. Machine learning technology allows computer algorithms to progressively learn from sensor big data sets and improve themselves accordingly, eliminating the need for a human data analyst(Neethirajan and Kemp, 2021).

11. **Blockchain**: This technology provides several important benefits to livestock agriculture, including decentralized, automated transactions that could contribute to more efficient auditing systems for certification and regulatory organizations, system integration, organized records of chain transactions throughout the life of an animal from farm to table and greater traceability and transparency within livestock agriculture.

Conclusions

Livestock production is in a period of rapid adjustment and development, both regionally and globally. ICT has the potential to change the economy of livestock, agriculture, and rural artisans in India. There are intense pressures and concurrent opportunities associated with the need to produce safe and environmentally friendly livestock products. This has created the need and opportunity to use ICTsin the form of computer software, sensors and other electronic material in regards to livestock disease control, dairy herd management, livestock production, and marketing of livestock and livestock produce.

Simultaneously, advances in electronic communications and GPS technologies have driven major declines in prices and improvements in performance, opening a window of opportunity to create cost-effective systems for large scale precision livestock production.

References

Akhigbe, B.I., Munir, K., Akinade, O.,Akanbi, L. andOyedele, L.O. (2021) IoT technologies for livestock management: A review of present status, opportunities and future trends. Big Data and Cognitive Computing, 5(10). [Online] DOI: 10.3390/bdcc5010010(Accessed: 16Sep 2021).

FAO (2021) Information and communication technologies (ICT) [Online]. Available at: http://aims.fao.org/information-and-communication-technologies-ict (Accessed: 16Sep 2021).

Neethirajan, S. and Kemp, B. (2021) Digital livestock farming. Sensing and Bio-Sensing Research, 32. [Online] DOI: 10.1016/j.sbsr.2021.100408(Accessed: 16Sep 2021).

Pratt, M.K. (2019) ICT (information and communications technology, or technologies)[Online]. Available at:https://searchcio.techtarget.com/definition/ICT-information-and-communications-technology-or-technologies(Accessed: 16Sep 2021).

EPIDEMIOLOGICAL SURVEILLANCE AND DISEASE MODELLING

Pankaj Dhaka, J.S. Bedi and Deepthi Vijay

Centre for One Health, College of Veterinary Science, Guru Angad Dev Veterinary and Animal Sciences University, Ludhiana-141004, Punjab, India

Public Health surveillance can be described as *"the ongoing, systematic collection, analysis and interpretation of health-related events or data with the a priori purpose of preventing or controlling health hazards (disease outbreaks) and identifying unusual events of health importance, followed by the dissemination and use of such information for public health action"* (Bordier*et al.*, 2020). Effective health surveillance systems require reliable, high-quality, and timely data for decision making.

Why animal health surveillance is important?

The important objectives of animal health surveillanceare (Hoinville*et al.*, 2013):

- It helps in protection of animal health and welfare. The effective surveillance also provides the real scenario on the health status of the livestock population which helps in the upliftment of national and international trade in animal and animal food products
- To protect the public health by informing our understanding of incidences of zoonoses and its prevention and assuring food safety to the consumers.
- To fulfil the requirements of international organizations, *viz.* World Organization for Animal Health (OIE)– such as reporting of outbreaks, preparing emergency reports, weekly updates etc.

The data collection, analysis and dissemination are important components of surveillance system. The various types of widely used surveillance systems are depicted in Table 1.

Table 1. Types of Surveillance systems with their description

Surveillance Category	**Brief description**
Active surveillance ('Proactive surveillance')	It includes 'investigator-initiated' collection of targeted disease data using a defined protocol to perform scheduled actions. *Disadvantage:* Not economical, especially for rare diseases where large sample sizes are necessary because of the low expected prevalence.
Passive surveillance	It includes 'observer-initiated' provision of health data (e.g., voluntary notification) or the use of pre-existing data for surveillance.

(‘Reactive surveillance’)	*Disadvantage:* In practice, apart from underreporting, the sensitivity and timeliness of passive surveillance are often not optimal.
Sentinel surveillance	Depending on the objective, sentinel surveillance can either be passive or active. It comprises the group of unexposed non-vaccinated population/regions that are managed at fixed locations and sampled regularly for investigation of the disease.
Vector surveillance	Systematic identification of potential vector(s) can be correlated with particular relevance to targeted vector-borne diseases in a given ecology. *Disadvantage:* Not recommended as routine procedure due to its labour-intensive protocols.
Serological surveillance	Detection of antibodies against specific diseases is highly effective method to detect infection in a population. However, the positive results must be interpreted carefully within one of the 04 categories, *viz.*, natural infection, maternal antibodies, vaccination, false positive
Syndromic surveillance	It is based on the use of pre-diagnostic indicators which can be used for early detection of health events in a population (e.g., clinical cases, high mortalities, post-mortem findings) which can be defined as syndromes. *Disadvantage:* The indicators used in syndromic surveillance are not very specific and can lead to many false positives.
Targeted surveillance and **Risk-based surveillance**	It is recommended when the frequency of given health event is higher in target group. In risk-based surveillance, exposure and risk assessment methods can been applied together with traditional design approaches. *Disadvantage:* It can be expensive as it uses structured epidemiological surveys and needs a clear definition of the objectives.
Scanning surveillance	In scanning surveillance, the health services records can be used to obtain relevant information. *Disadvantage:* Underreporting and low-quality data are the limitations.
Event-based surveillance	It is organised collection of unstructured *ad hoc* information regarding health events or risks and is a functional component of early warning and response systems. *Disadvantage:* The information collected is diverse and originate from multiple sources
Indicator-based	It is routine collection of structured data of ‘indicators’ in health-based

surveillance	formal sources and usually measure the impact of health programmes *Disadvantage:* The data cannot be employed for early warning and response systems

As per Dufour and Audige (1997), the important set of criteria for the classification of surveillance networks are:

1. The type of disease to be monitored (exotic disease *versus* endemic diseases)
2. The number of diseases to be covered: focused networks *versus* broad networks (including multiple health events)
3. The area to be covered(regional, national or international)
4. The population to be monitored (suspected, susceptible, infected etc.)
5. Sampling strategy: sample-based networks *versus* exhaustive networks covering large population
6. Method of data collection (active or passive)
7. Network management (autonomous management *versus* integrated networks)

Key considerations for surveys and use of diagnostic tools in surveillance system: The choice of sample size, required design prevalence and confidence interval for surveys should be justified based on prevailing epidemiological situations. The sample size should be large enough to detect the infections even at a predetermined minimum rate (Bedi*et al.*, 2021).

The proper validation of the sensitivity and specificity of the diagnostic tests for targeted species should be exercised. In addition, it is important to differentiate 'vaccinated *versus* infected' animals by the diagnostic test for interpretation of the surveillance data. The surveillance framework can be supported by development of inexpensive, rapid and reliable screening tests along with the expansion of powerful information management systems to disseminate the information to the stakeholders.

Disease modelling

"A model is a representation of a system, which allows the behaviour of that system to be simulated, and manipulated, under controlled conditions". Models are used to test (verify) and improve the understanding of a system, and to analyse the behaviour of different components of the complex system (Power and Sharda, 2007).

To build a model of an infectious disease outbreak, the knowledge of epidemiological aspects of disease is very crucial so that the components of the model can be put together correctly. In animal health settings, the infectious disease models can be used for retrospective analysis of the past epidemics, contingency and resource planning, can be used as 'virtual epidemic simulators' for training purposes, and real time decision support (Potter, 2019).

Modelling disease transmission

The epidemiological models make better use of existing and potential data sources for early warning surveillance.The epidemiological models can be classified as:

1. *Deterministic and stochastic models:* The deterministic models use single point value for inputs and hence outputs; whereas the stochastic models include the 'uncertainty and variability' by using range of values for inputs and hence can produce varying outputs. The stochastic models are considered as more appropriate for modelling the real-life biological systems (Garner and Hamilton, 2011).
2. *Compartmental (or state-based) and individual-based (agent-based) models:* The compartmental (or state-based) models group individuals into different states as per the characteristics of the infectious disease processes. E.g., SIR (susceptible–infected–recovered) model and its variant. Whereas, the individual-based (agent-based) models explicitly represent the differentiation in biology or behaviour of individuals. Being stochastic, they offer more value when individual heterogeneity in transmission and structure of intervention is important.

Example of Compartmental (or state-based) model:

The infectious disease can be modelled as a state-transition model using an iterative approach. The common three states of transitions in basic **S-I-R models** are: susceptible, infected and recovered (immune) or removed.

$$S \xrightarrow{\text{ß x I x S/N}} I \xrightarrow{\gamma \text{ x I}} R$$

ß = Infection rate (transmission rate)

I = Number of infections

S/N = Proportion of susceptible

1/γ = Infectious period

In the outbreak of a contagious disease, the new cases of disease in a population occur as a result of infected units having 'effective contact' with susceptible units. These effective contacts are depending on many underlying factors like:

- the number of infected units
- the population density and intensity of mixing of the population – determined by the management system and environment
- the intensity of contact needed to be 'effective' – a property of the disease itself

It is important to understand the spread of disease in terms of basic reproduction number (R_0), that is, '*the number of new cases produced by each infected person*' (assuming that no one is immune in the population). Most of the disease control programs aim to reduce R_0 to < 1, such that each infected human/animal, on average, transmits to less than one other human/animal.

In simple equation, $\mathbf{R_0 = C \times P \times I}$

C = Contact rate (i.e., how many people get contact with infected person in unit time)

P = Probability of transmission for a given contact

I = How long an infected person can transmit the infection (infectiousness of disease)

References

Bedi, J.S., Vijay, D., Dhaka, P., Gill, J.P.S. and Barbuddhe, S.B. (2021) 'Emergency preparedness for public health threats, surveillance, modelling & forecasting', Indian Journal of Medical Research, 153, pp. 287-298.

Bordier, M., Uea-Anuwong, T., Binot, A., Hendrikx, P. and Goutard, F.L. (2021) 'Characteristics of one health surveillance systems: a systematic literature review'. Preventive Veterinary Medicine, 181, pp. 104560.

Dufour, B. and Audige, L. (1997) 'A proposed classification of veterinaryepidemiosurveillance networks', Revue Scientifique et Technique de l'OfficeInternational des Epizooties, 16(3), pp. 746–758.

Garner, M.G. and Hamilton, S.A. (2011) 'Principles of epidemiological modelling', Revue Scientifique et Technique, 30, pp. 407.

Hoinville, L.J., Alban, L., Drewe, J.A., Gibbens, J.C., Gustafson, L., Häsler, B., Saegerman, C., Salman, M. and Stärk, K.D.C. (2013) 'Proposed terms and concepts for describing and evaluating animal-health surveillance systems', Preventive Veterinary Medicine, 112(1-2), pp.1-12.

Potter, M.A. (2019) 'Preparedness for Public Health: A Long Story, Short'. Journal of Public Health Management and Practice, 25(1), pp.19-21.

Power, D.J. and Sharda, R. (2007) Model-driven decision support systems: Concepts and research directions. Decision support systems, 43(3), pp.1044-1061.

ROLE OF MASS MEDIA AND ICT TOOLS ON DISASTER MANAGEMENT IN ANIMALS

Jess Vergis, Arya P.R., VarshaUnni, Abishad P.M., Prejit and Asha K.

Department of Veterinary Public Health, College of Veterinary and Animal Sciences, Pookode, KVASU, Wayanad, Kerala- 673 576

Centre for One Health Education Advocacy Research and Training (COHEART), Pookode, KVASU, Wayanad, Kerala- 673 576

Introduction

The term disaster was originated from the Greek word '*krinon*' which implies a turning point, specifically in terms of diseases and dangeroussituations in political, social, and economical problems (Soltani, 2015). Usually, disaster is regarded as a turning point that could lead to an inevitablechange (Said and Rezapour, 2010). Disasters are often followed by an unexpected series of covert and overt consequences so that thedisaster managers must always be well prepared to deal withthese consequences in a suitable manner (Ali, 2002). Hence, the mass media along with various ICT tools is regarded as the first organization by frequent reporting and reviewing all incidents and rescue actions during disasters afterward and thus became the most significant strategic tools in disaster management.

Although the complexity of health- related communication through mass media exposes professionals to the significant challenges in diverse disciplines, mass media are often considered as important tools for the transfer of various ideas and information to the public, and even contributes for achievement of public health goals. It is believed that the catastrophic impacts of disasters on animal and human sufferings can considerably be reduced through an international devoted system of co-operation, incorporating public health education, improved early warning systems, proper disaster preparedness and mitigation (Sonet, 2018).

Mass media could indulge in any stage of disaster risk reduction (DRR) cycle, starting from the pre-disaster phase to the preparedness phase, response, and immediate relief phase, finally ending in a post- disaster phase. Within a fraction of second, people around theworld are informed about the horrific news reports at their fingertips, communicated by various sources of the media at the speed of light. Immediately after a few moments of any disaster, public might have perceived the news and would anxiously be awaiting the updates and facts, from all the corners of theworld (An and Gower, 2009).

It is therefore clearly convincing that the mass media could effectively perform the bridging and channelling between people and other coordinating bodies along with NGOs and any other community level organizations in successfully dealing with disaster risk reduction cycle (Hardjosoekarto*et al*., 2013). Hence, by creating new insights regarding disasters and promoting the belief that mutual help and co-operation can bring down the adverse effects of disasters among the public, mass media has now become an inseparable part of disasters (Williams and Oliniranb, 2002). Moreover, a complete coordination and effective working relationship between media and disaster management organizations has to be established and well maintained for the fulfillment of disaster risk reduction roles of the media. Despite the sensitivity makes media into a subsidiary power of bases, it clearly focusses on the necessity of careful, and calculated planning toturn itself into a tool that enables the effective remedy to the problem insteadof making things worse (Taherian, 2009).

Technology in media

The two types of media that exists nowadays are electronic media and print media. Among the electronic media, radio and television are the most prominent players, whereas newspaper, magazines and journals form the integral components of the print media.

Technology plays a crucial role in the acquisition of information, analysis, forecasting as well as its dissemination. Newer advancement in information communication technologies (ICT) offer considerable improvement both in the prediction of sudden onset of disaster as well as dealing with its consequences. However, communication itself virtually underlines all elements of hazard mitigation. Nowadays, the capabilities of communications, data gathering and data management technology have leaped forward in parallel with our increasing knowledge in tracing out the origins and behavior of natural hazards as well as mitigation of these effects. In addition, recent advancements in the telecommunications and computer sciences are the major contributors for the recognition of the most appropriate technology which can significantly reduce the impacts of natural hazards.

The use of super computers along with the deployment of geosynchronous satellites for telecommunications and earth observation for the analysis of data gathered from space has led to the development of highly sophisticated models of tropical storm formation and providing earlier information for planning evacuations and hazard mitigation strategies. Moreover, the changes in the color of earth's surface can be effectively monitored by remote sensing, thereby enabling insect infestation. Similarly, seismological devices linked with super computers also provide updated knowledge about earthquake propagation. This updated information related to the anticipation of disasters will enable us in time to give early warnings to get prepared and plan mitigation strategies for various meteorological events (Dave, 2004).

Role of mass media:

1. **Providing early warning to people**: Electronic media like radio and television can provide early information about the likely disasters and could thereby save lives of human beings and livestock. Besides, the loss brought about to the property can also be minimized to a considerable extent. Indeed, it can also play a significant role in preparing the community by means of training and making them aware about do's and don'ts during disasters.
2. **As a watchdog on disaster machinery**: During the rehabilitation works of post-disaster, media plays the crucial role of a watch dog. In the present democratic set up, the pressure of media is tremendous, and it should be utilized in a constructive and responsible manner for the benefit of the society. The responsibility of supplying resources necessary for rehabilitation such as relief materials, search and rescue equipment and money lie with the government. Nevertheless, sometimes the system becomes lethargic, and all these responses takes some time to effect. Specifically, during these circumstances, media plays a vital role by continuous monitoring of rehabilitation works by being a watch dog and keeps the disaster machinery active.
3. **In creating an appeal to the people**: The responsive image of media in front of public can be effectively utilized for the generation of resources to help disaster management efforts. Additionally, the real pictorial depiction of miseries through the media acts as an eye opener to the people to come forward to render help in various ways.
4. **In the prevention of panic and rumors**: During the post-disaster period, with the complete breakdown of communications, rumors can have a negative impact on the relief work. By conveying the right information regarding the immediate measures to be taken, media can considerably reduce the spread of rumors.
5. **Facilitating the creation of early warning systems**: By providing information on the risks and existing technologies, media can help the disaster mitigation experts for the creation of early warning systems. Emergency Alert System (EAS) consisting of radio, television and cable network across USA for providing early warning prior to disasters is one such example.

6. **Aid prioritization of disaster risk issues**: By influencing the government in prioritization of disaster risk issues, it strictly ensures that the political interests are not emphasized at the expense of the wide population.
7. **Increase of international donations**: Media pushes the government to increase the budgetary allocations of disaster response programs. Additionally, the media invites international attention for donations subsequent to the disaster occurrence.
8. **Co-ordination of risk assessment activities**: Media can make a considerable improvement in co-ordination of risk assessment activities between policy makers and donor communities. The increased resource availability and improved work programs created as a result of integrated efforts pave the way for saving lives of vulnerable communities of affected population.
9. **Control of law-and-order situation**: The antisocial elements trying to take advantage of situations can be highlighted by the media. In addition, they can assist the law-and-order machinery in peace restoration and harmony of the affected community (Soltani, 2018)

Impacts of media

It is the media who informs the and highlights its awareness among the public. This awareness created by the media play a pivotal role in determining the plan of disaster management actions which is to be executed and level of attention that the relief agencies have to pay for it (Dave, 2004).

Positive effects of media

1. Trusted source of updated information
2. Continuous and factual coverage of events during and after disaster aids in evoking immediate response and decision making, thereby saving lives
3. Rapid dissemination of information regarding public safety at times of disaster
4. Gives a glimpse of affected communities to the outside world

Negative effects of media

1. Exaggeration of events and creation of unnecessary panic
2. Chances of bias due to manipulation of certain matters for personal or political gains
3. Biased coverage by irresponsible news reporters for purposeful sensationalism
4. Create chances of looting and lawlessness

Role of ICT tools for disaster risk reduction in Indian scenario

Disaster management and supporting IT infrastructure is firmly rooted at the state/local level in the Indian scenario. Being the responsible authority during the disaster events, it is the responsibility of the state government to provide most of the resources, infrastructure and personnel; majority of these ICT infrastructure would be used by the state government. In addition, the crucial role for facilitation of ICT infrastructure necessary for linking state-central and state-state government organizations along with standards and guideline protocols to be followed by each state is instituted by the national government. In fact, the ICT design, adoption and acquisition on pan- India basis for the purpose of disaster management is quite challenging due to the distributed responsibility of disaster management and geo-political diversities across the country within the Indian system (Dave, 2012).

The EOC network

The Government of India has integrated administrative strategy for disaster management at the national, state and sub-district levels.

At the event of disaster, the state government affords the basic responsibility of undertaking rescue, relief and rehabilitation measures. The efforts of state government are supplemented with the financial and logistic support. The departments of relief and rehabilitation handles the relief at the state level. These coordinated efforts have been restructured to form the State Disaster Management Authority (SDMA), which indulges in the relief and rehabilitation activities besides preparedness and mitigation. Moreover, the lead role in managing response during disasters goes to the administrative hierarchy of government revenue departments.

At the district level, the same system is followed by the district co-ordination and relief committee and the district magistrate would the major coordinating officer to coordinate these activities. The incident response system (IRS) guidelines issued by the NDMA recommends the network of emergency operation center (EOC) up to the district level in each state for ensuring seamless coordination, communication and collaboration activities during the disaster management cycle.

EOC is an offsite facility functioning from the National/State/District headquarters encompassing an augmented control room with data acquisition, analysis, compilation, risk assessment, video projections, and communication, alert and warning facilities to accommodate various ESFs. The EOC analyzes emerging situation and facilitate assessment, identification, mobilization and deployment of required resources. It is on the basis of EOC service requirements and geographical coverage considerations, the ICT infrastructure for emergency response and disaster management need to be planned and established.

GIS and decision support system

GIS and spatial data have characteristic role in preparing, detecting, responding and recovering from the natural as well as technological disasters (Amdahel, 2002). As the spatial data are major inputs for GIS and Emergency Response Modelling and Simulation Systems (ERMSS)s, in their absence the process of disaster management will be ineffective. Furthermore, with recent advancements in geomatic engineering and spatial data management incorporating information communication technology (ICT), with integration of Remote sensing, Geographical information services (GIS) and Global positioning system (GPS), the different phases of disaster management have undergone significant improvement (Dave, 2012).

Conclusions

The media plays a quintessential role in all stages of disaster management from before disaster to after disaster and during rebuilding efforts. For effective achievement of disaster management roles, a well-built institutional framework and close working relationship has to be established between the disaster management agencies and the media. It is necessary that the media as well as ICT tools should emphasize on the close linkages with disaster mitigation community and shares their information gathering and transmission resources with these organizations. In addition, media can educate people and increase the awareness among the public, leading to increased involvement of different parts of society and can also help use these new involvements in disaster risk reduction and minimizing its adverse effects. Taking the fact into consideration that the disasters can happen at any moment and anywhere, it is advised to make use of the mass media for improving the society's involvement in disaster management and its prevention or else help to lessen its adverse effects. Moreover, a new group of disaster correspondents, as a part of disaster journalism, can improve the supply of information about nature and high-tech hazards.

References

Ali R. 2002. Principles of Organization and Management. 4th ed. Tehran: The Study and Formulation Books Humanities Universities. p. 526

Amdahl, G. 2001. *Disaster response: GIS for public safety* (Vol. 13). Redlands, CA: (Disaster and Authority, 2004) ESRI press.

An, S.K. and Gower, K.K. 2009. How do the news media frame crises? A content analysis of crisis news coverage. *Public relations review*, 35(2), pp.107-112.

Dave, R.K. 2004. Role of Media in Disaster Management. http://osou.ac.in/eresources/role-of-media-in-disaster-management.pdf (Accessed on 15.09.2021).

Dave, R.K. 2012. Developing ICT infrastructure for Disaster Risk Reduction (DRR) in India. In *International Workshop and Exhibition on Disaster Risk Reduction and Contingency Planning*.

Hardjosoekarto, S., Yovani, N. and Santiar, L., 2014. Institutional strengthening for the role of mass media in disaster risk reduction in Japan and Indonesia: an application of SSM-based action research. *Systemic Practice and Action Research*, *27*(3), pp.227-246.

Said A, Rezapour A., 2010. Health Services Administration. 3rd ed. Qazvin: Hadith Today, p. 457**.**

Sonet, S.M. 2018.The role of mass media in disaster management of Bangladesh. file:///C:/Users/Admin/Downloads/The_Role_of_Mass_Media_in_Disaster_Manag%20(1).pdf (Accessed on 15.09.2021)

Soltani, F. 2015. Mass media and its role in increasing society's involvement in disaster management. *International Journal of Health System and Disaster Management*, *3*(5), p.12.

Taherian, M. 2009. In the Lead Role of the Media, Settle and Crisis Management. Media Crisis Management [2]: Media Research Group, No. 38. 0.157 to 192 ps. Source Site Available from: http://www.noormags.ir/view/fa/articlepage/905252.

Williams, D. and Olaniran, B. 2002. Crisis communication in racial issues. *Journal of Applied Communication Research*, 30(4), pp.293-313.

WILDLIFE MONITORING AND MANAGEMENT USING REMOTE SENSING AND GIS

Laxmi N. Goparaju

Vindhyan Ecology and Natural History Foundation, Mirzapur, Uttar Pradesh, India.

Introduction

Mapping the wildlife and monitoring their habitats has long been one of the aims of Geospatial technology. Traditional methods of inventorying wildlife have always left some lacuna and hindered in providing a good database. The advent of remote sensing satellites has eased this labour intensive task by making use of satellite data which is measured remotely with sensors and cameras in different spatial, spectral and temporal resolution. Thus, this serves as the quickest possible method for inventorying and observing the natural resources. The advantage of remotely sensed data is that it provides synoptic, regular, near real time and quite accurate data which can be utilized by the wildlife managers for assessing the species-habitat relationship and how they are impacted by the environment (Keller et al., 2014). The latest satellite images provide with higher spatial, spectral and temporal resolutions which are now made available for free via USGS, NOAA and Copernicus portal (https://earthexplorer.usgs.gov/; https://www.copernicus.eu/en).Besides, availability of big data in cloud has made computations easier. One such platform is Global Forest Watch which is based on Google Earth Engine platform and makes use of Landsat data from the past 40years. It helps in analyses by indirect methods such as species occurrence indicators for example forest fragmentation (Riiters et al., 2014). The progress made in other technologies like in in situ sensors for example bioacoustics, tags and camera traps help in providing non – destructive and partially automated ground surveying opportunities (Lausch et al., 2016; Hansen et al., 2013). Animals are associated with their environments at different spatial and temporal scales, and they differ in having specific ranges. Animal locations on ground coupled with remote sensing data and its analysis in Geographic Information System (GIS) domain provides us with better results regarding their habitat and ranges and also their interaction with the environment. Thus, conservation policies can be benefitted from such technological solutions.

Learning Outcomes

- Wildlife Habitat Suitability analysis using remote sensing and GIS

- Some online interactive web applications like Map of Life, FIRECAST, Global Forest Watch and Half-life.

Before going further, I would like to introduce what is satellite remote sensing and GIS?

Remote sensing satellites

A satellite with remote sensors to observe the Earth and its features is called a remote-sensing satellite, or Earth observation satellite. They are characterized by their altitude, orbit and sensor. The data is available in various types of resolution; they are spectral, radiometric, spatial and temporal resolution. Resolution is defined as the ability of an entire remote-sensing system, including lens antennae, display, exposure, processing, and other factors, to render a sharply defined image.

1. **Spectral Resolution**: of a remote sensing instrument (sensor) is determined by the band-widths of the Electro-magnetic radiation of the channels used. High spectral resolution, thus, is achieved by narrow bandwidths width, collectively, are likely to provide a more accurate spectral signature for discrete objects than broad bandwidth.
2. **Radiometric Resolution**: is determined by the number of discrete levels into which signals may be divided. Thus, it is a measure of how many grey levels are there between pure black and pure white. It is measured in bits, 7bit (0-127); 8bit (0-255); 9bit (0-511) and 10bit (0-1023). Examples: IRS -1A/1B (1988, 1991) measure images in 7 bits. Cartosat -2 (2007) produces images in 10-bit radiometric resolution.16-bit images are obtained from IRS -P3 (1996) MOS –A, MOS –B and MOS – C.
3. **Spatial Resolution**: in terms of the geometric properties of the imaging system, is usually described as the instantaneous field of view (IFOV) that is defined as the maximum angle of view in which a sensor can effectively detect electro-magnetic energy.
4. **Temporal Resolution**: is related to the repetitive coverage of the ground by the remote sensing system. For example, the temporal resolution of Landsat 4/5 is sixteen days.

Remote Sensing science and application can be summarized in the following segments: 1) Source of electromagnetic energy (sun, transmitter carried by the sensor) 2) Transmission of energy from the source to the surface of the earth and its interaction with the intervening atmosphere 3) Interaction of energy with the earth surface 4) Transmission of the reflected/emitted energy to the remote sensor placed on suitable platform 5) Detection of the energy by the sensor converting into photographic image or electrical output 6) Transmission/recording of the sensor output 7) Preprocessing of the data for generation of data products 8) Collection of ground truth and other collateral information and 9) Data processing and interpretation.

Geographic Information System

The main components involved are computer software and hardware systems for creating, managing, manipulating, evaluating, condensing, and displaying spatial data. Many GIS packages represent geographic features in the form of points, lines and polygons. This format is known as vector as illustrated by points, lines and polygons which are connected to each other by vectors (directional line segments). Each feature in GIS database has its own identity and is associated with its coordinates and attributes. It is capable of querying and answering searches based on one's interests. The biggest advantage of GIS is that it integrates various thematic layers and finally displays as a single map for better comprehension and visualization.

Google Earth Engine

The problem of big data management was overcome by the Google Earth Engine which goes a long way in providing solutions within a smaller time frame. Large datasets can be used from local to regional levels, reduced the computation time. A repository of coves written in Javascript helps the researchers to utilize them with proficiency even though not being a professional. Active online support of developers is also commendable. The limitations of desktop computing are overcome, the major role is played by Application Programming Interface (API) and a web based Interactive Development Environment (IDE) (Tamiminia, 2020). The time series analysis (Time-lapse of GEE) and Climate Engine App helps in monitoring temporal changes.

Wildlife Habitat Suitability

Traditional methods and ground based studies have been employed in studying wildlife habitat and corridor use (Bhat and Rawat 1995, Johnsingh and Joshua 1994, Mishra and Johnsingh 1996). They are time consuming and inefficient in hilly and inaccessible areas. Studies in wildlife using geospatial technology have been gaining importance since the past few decades in India and have emphasized its role in habitat evaluation, identification and management of wildlife corridors (Khanna et al. 2001, Kushwaha and Hazarika 2004, Nandy et al. 2007).

From the conservation point of view, if wildlife habitats are known those areas can be protected and conserved from degradation and destruction. GIS platform helps in modelling wherein various parameters are included like water, land use and land cover, forests, roads, railways, streams, drainage and slope. Various criteria are decided by the researcher/analyst based on literature and ground knowledge. All the thematic layers are combined using weighted overlay technique in GIS is used to derive a suitability map. Species distribution models are prepared using various data, which identify other regions with similar environment conditions which can be potential habitat for a specific species. Such models use raster based layers such as land use/land cover and other above mentioned layers. This data is then combined with ground based information and statistical computations which predict the suitability and potentiality of the habitat (Goparaju et al., 2017; Ahmad et al., 2018).

Map of Life: Putting Biodiversity on the Map.

Utilizing various sources of data which describe species distribution worldwide, The Map of Life plays a major role in integrating them. Various organizations like International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN), World Wide Fund for Nature (WWF), Global Biodiversity Information Facility (GBIF) have provided data like expert species range maps, species occurrence points, ecoregions, and protected areas which have been put together into a cloud platform where the data is stored, managed, backed up and also can be accessed. Thus, one of the target areas where Map of Life is focusing is "the best – possible" species range information and species list for any geographic area. Besides, by accumulating a wide range of knowledge about species distributions and their dynamic state over a period of time, it also aims to support effective global biodiversity education, research and monitoring and guiding decision support system for policy makers.

MoL (https://mol.org/) provides

- Information on Species range and species list for any geographic area on Earth.
- There are multiple tools to assist in exploring species habitat and trends in biodiversity.
- There is also a Mobile App which can be used for discovering, identifying and recording biodiversity.

- https://www.gbif.org/ GBIF provides free and open access to data regarding all type of lifeform throughout the world.

Forest health assessment: Web based systems like Fire Information for Resource Management System (FIRMS) and FIRECAST

This is a web-based platform which disseminates Near Real Time active fire data within 3 hours of satellite overpass. It also generates web-based fire maps, email alerts and also has provision for active fire data download (SHP, TXT, and KML). FIRECAST utilizes satellite data observations to track ecosystem disturbances such as fires, fire risk conditions, deforestation and protected area encroachment, and ensure the details are delivered to decision makers via E-mail alerts, maps and reports. It also detects active fires (MODIS AND VIIRS), satellite-based weather conditions are also studied (https://firecast.conservation.org).

GLOBAL FOREST WATCH (https://www.globalforestwatch.org/)

The best available data about forests is available for free on Global Forest Watch Platform. Global Forest Watch (GFW) is an online platform that provides satellite data and other tools for monitoring forests. Alerts informed via E-mails and community participation has help governments and companies accountable for illegal activities. It was launched in 2014, its aim for to provide transparent data and scientific information about the forests to preserve them and decimate deforestation. GFW is free and user friendly, enabling anyone to create customized maps, analyze the changes in forest and study the trends from local to regional scale, subscribe to alerts, or download data for their local area or the entire world. Users can also contribute to GFW by sharing data and stories from the ground via GFW's crowdsourcing tools, blogs, and discussion groups.

Half – Earth Project: (https://www.half-earthproject.org/)

This is a combined initiative of ESRI and Sir E. O. Wilson's Biodiversity Foundation which aims to conserve half the earth's lands and seas in order to protect 85 percent or more of the planet's biodiversity to reverse the current species extinction crisis. According to Wilson, out of the 10million species present on the earth, only 2 million have been successfully documented. They have introduced the concept of National Report cards which will evaluate countries based on conservation efforts taken by them. It is expected that this innovative way will help theEarth restore back its green cover and could save many more species.

References

Ahmad,F., Goparaju,L., and Qayum,A., (2018) Wildlife habitat suitability and conservation hotspot mapping: Remote sensing and GIS based decision support system. AIMS Geosciences. 4(1), pp 66 -87.

Bhat S.D., RawatG.S.(1995) Habitat use by Chetal(Axis axis) in Dhaulkhand, RajajiNatonal Park, India. Tropical Ecology, 36(2), pp177-189.

Keller, Jeffrey K., Smith, Charles R (eds). (2014) Improving GIS-based wildlife-habitat analysis. New York, Springer.

Goparaju, L., Ahmad, F. & Sinha, D. (2017) Wildlife Habitat Suitability Analysis Around Madihan Forest, Mirzapur District, Uttar Pradesh, India: A Geospatial Approach. Eurasian Journal of Forest Science. 5(1), pp13-28

Hansen, M. C., P. V. Potapov, R. Moore, M. Hancher, S. A. Turubanova, A. Tyukavina, D. Thau, S. V. Stehman, S. J. Goetz, T. R. Loveland, A. Kommareddy, A. Egorov, L. Chini, C. O. Justice, and Townshend, J. R. G.. (2013) "High-Resolution Global Maps of 21st-Century Forest Cover Change." Science 342 (15 November): 850–53. Data available on-line from: http://earthenginepartners.appspot.com/science-2013-global-forest.

Jetz, W., McPherson, J. M., and Guralnick, R. P. (2012) Integrating biodiversity distribution knowledge: toward a global map of life. Trends in Ecology and Evolution 27:151-159. DOI:10.1016/j.tree.2011.09.007.

Johnsingh, A.J.T., Joshua, J. (1994) Conserving Rajaji and Corbett national Parks: the Elephant as a flagship species. Orya 28, pp135-140.

Khanna, V., Ravichandran, M.S., Kushwaha, S.P.S. (2001) Corridor analysis in Rajaji – Corbett Elephant reserve .A remote sensing and GIS approach. Journal of the Indian Society of Remote Sensing 29, pp 41-46.

Kushwaha, S.P.S., Hazarika, R. (2004) Assessment of habitat loss in Kameng and Sonitpur elephant reserves. Current Science 87, pp1447-1453.

Lausch, A.; Bannehr, L.; Beckmann, M.; Boehm, C.; Feilhauer, H.; Hacker, J.M.; Heurich, M.; Jung, A.; Klenke, R.; Neumann, C.; et al. Linking earth observation and taxonomic, structural and functional biodiversity: Local to ecosystem perspectives. Ecol. Indic. (2016) 70, pp 317–339.

Mishra, C., Johnsingh, A.J.T. (1996) On habitat selection by the Goral (Naemorhaedus goral) bedfordi (BovidaeArtiodactyla). Journal of Zoology 240, pp 573-80.

Riitters, K.; Wickham, J.; Costanza, J.K.; Vogt, P. A global evaluation of forest interior area dynamics using tree cover data from 2000 to 2012. (2016) Landsc. Ecol., 31, pp 137–148.

Riitters, K.; Wickham, J.; O'Neill, R.; Jones, K.B.; Smith, E. (2000) Global-scale patterns of forest fragmentation. Conserv. Ecol., 4, 3.

Tamiminia,H., Salehi,B., Mahdianpari,M.,Quackenbush,L., Adeli,S., and Brisco,B., (2020) Google Earth Engine for geo-big data applications: A meta-analysis and systematic review," ISPRS J. Photogrammetry Remote Sens., vol. 164, pp. 152–170.

https://earthexplorer.usgs.gov/(accessed on 15th August 2021).

https://www.copernicus.eu/en (accessed on 15th August 2021).

https://www.half-earthproject.org/(accessed on 15th August 2021).

https://www.globalforestwatch.org/(accessed on 15th August 2021).

https://mol.org/(accessed on 15th August 2021).

INNOVATIVE SOLUTION OF VECTOR, DISEASE SURVEILLANCE, MONITORING & ENHANCING CURRENT STRATEGIES OF INTERVENTIONS

Satish Cherukumalli

Co-Founder; CEO

Technology Background

Mosquito sensor system is based on multiple classification rules to separate mosquitoes from other flying insects. It is widely known that mosquitoes can be identified by measuring their wing beat frequency (Batista, G *et al*., 2011; Chen, Y *et al*., 2014). The use of sound to detect and classify flying insects was first reported in the literature from work done at Cornell University in 1945. Since then, many other researchers (see references below) have shown that the wing beat frequency can be used as one of the parameters to classify the flying insect. In fact, wing beat frequency alone can yield 75% to 85% accuracy from other insect populations. If wing beat frequency is converted from the time domain to the frequency domain, then increased accuracy can be obtained. Work at Iowa State University (Raman, D *et al.,* 2007) and at the University of California, Riverside has been instrumental in developing algorithms that a can be used in the accurate classification of flying insects using relatively inexpensive sensors and be light weight enough so the computations can be done by the sensors' microcontroller. Previously mosquito classification devices, such as the device developed by NASA (NASA Tech. Briefs., 2007) made use of an on-sight computer and expensive hardware and software from NI Labview or MatLab. Our sensor makes use of a lightweight transform and probability algorithms to carry out most of the classification at the sensor level before sending the data to our cloud-based server.

Wing beat frequency will be measured by the disturbance of light on a phototransistor array as a mosquito enters the target zone of the sensor. Large flying insects will be prohibited from entering the zone by a 7 mm screen. Light is emitted from a constant light source. This light is reflected back onto phototransistors. Any disturbance of the light on the phototransistors is detected as a change in the current from the transistors (Unwin, D.M and Ellington, C.P., 1979).

Our sensor system uses several other measures for classification of mosquitoes. It makes use of the time of intercept and classifies on the basis of the known differences in circadian rhythm. It is known for instance that the circadian rhythm for the Aedes mosquito is different from the anopheles mosquito. The frequency spectrum for the Aedes and the Culex mosquito genus has significant overlap. As a result, frequency alone is not as accurate as needed. If the time of intercept is in the morning the *AedesAegypti*may be distinguished from the Culex. In the evening however, the *CulexPipien* and the *Aedes Detritus* are both active. By combining both the frequency spectrum and the time of intercept, the probability accuracies are increased (Kim, D *et al*., 2021).

The system also makes use of location of intercept. Different genus and species are found in different locations. By adding just these three factors in classification, accuracy can be improved beyond 95%. Location of intercept initially is based on what is known about the types of mosquitoes in the area. As data is collected for area or even a sensor location, the accuracy can be increased based on the continually expanding history. Although the frequency of the Aedes and Culex genus has significant overlap, the central tendency for the one is higher than for the other. This can shift the weighting of the frequency based on the specific sensors' location and history. Another obvious location factor is the terrain. Some mosquitoes are more prevalent in urban areas and others are more prevalent near water.

Coloration, light, sound and location will be used to help attract mosquitoes to the sensors. It is important to realize for any given sensor in a specific location, the data collected prior to and after vector control measures can be compared. The comparison can be made as a repeated measure on a particular sensor as well as across numerous sensors in a specified area of concern.

Solution:

Moskeet solution is a Smart Mosquito Diseases Control System that uses state-of-the-art sensors (IoT) and Artificial Intelligence (AI) technology to operate autonomously and provides real-time mosquito population data both by location and species. We believe that you must understand the problem before you solve it, and our network does just that. There are four key components to the solution - Sensor network, Social network, Real-time analytics, and Predictive analytics. The network of sensors (traps) across the communities identifies where problems exist, the efficacy of control methods, and when to reapply. Moskeet sensors use novel artificial intelligence (AI) algorithms to classify mosquitoes. The application provides density heat maps, conditions affecting breeding, health information, and vector control history. The platform is designed to capture data across several areas like epidemiology, entomology, human population, socioeconomic conditions, location, and the weather to help in the effective management of diseases. Using advanced assays and RT-

LAMP to identify disease-related RNA in mosquito saliva, we can pinpoint the most urgent areas and the type of vector control needed to reduce disease.

Moskeet platform integrates several stakeholders like citizens, governments, pest control and pesticide companies, hospitals, research agencies, foundations etc., to share and consume real-time data to promote efficient & transparent vector & disease control operations. TrakitNow's approach is to disrupt the Health Security sector by shifting the focus to "prevention" from "treatment" using deep technologies – AI (Artificial Intelligence) and Sensors (IoT – Internet of Things).

Moskeet platform provides situational awareness through its "always on", surveillance of mosquito population count, species make-up, and disease pressure showing the effectiveness of control measures against the vectors of infectious mosquito-borne disease. By providing historical, current, and predictive data, it allows agencies to make data-driven decisions as to what efforts are working, what efforts need to be improved, and where/when more effort is required. Getting mosquito-borne diseases under control and monitoring for potentially new diseases by exclusion requires a unified view shared across multiple activities with multiple agencies. Our system allows such a view, scalable to add new relevant data from emerging sources and to be analyzed with the latest AI and analytical tools including result graphing and geospatial mapping.

Impact:

The activity of collecting species-specific population data provides an output showing the increase or decrease the potential of the vector which is used to determine if the vector control methods are working and how efficiently. Another outcome of this activity is determining when reapplication is required, whether the application is being appropriately applied or the population is becoming resistant to pesticides.

The activity of determining the viral or parasitic load present at a given location provides an output showing where vector control needs are critical to curtailing outbreaks. The outcome of further control can lead to alerting the health community to take steps to reduce the disease potential by working with the potentially affected population of mitigating steps they can take. The activity of combining all known relevant data into a unified, holistic view provides the output of actionable data which can lead to an outcome of better understanding the impact of the vector control activities, leading to revising their strategies and focusing their resources more effectively. These outcomes can all lead to a long-term goal in the reduction of mosquito-borne disease and reduce the physical, emotional, and economic impact thereof.

Surveillance is borne on the premise that control requires being able to observe and then measure the targeted event. Our system provides the ability of stakeholders to observe and measure the effectiveness of their control activities on several levels of disease prevention.

Patents:

World Intellectual Property Organization International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

- Pub. No .: **US 2020/0245604 A1**
- Pub. Date :**Aug.6, 2020**

Discussion:

Moskeet's major benefit is to reduce the disease burden. A single disease occurrence in a family can push it into poverty and force the kids to stop school and go to work. Other key benefits include lowering the cost of control operations, reduce pesticide usage thereby reducing the impact of pesticides on the environment, facilitate awareness campaigns and reduce the health care costs at public and family levels. Data generated across the public and private is also shared with leading pest control & pest repellent companies. This approach helps to sustain and expand the platform thereby reaching out to a large percentage of the population. This in turn helps us to be cost-effective and provide better strategic value to customers. Our data from our initial deployments indicated the following trends,

1) Improve pesticide effectiveness
2) Reduce pesticide usage
3) Reduce operational costs
4) Lower disease burden
5) Reduction in mosquito populations

References

Batista, G., Keogh, E. and Mafra-Nero, A. (2011) 'Counting and Classifying Mosquitoes from A Distance with Ultra Cheep Sensors', American Mosquito Control Association 77th conference.

Chen, Y., Why, A., Batista, G., Mafra-Neto, A. and Keogh, E. (2014) 'Flying Insect Detection and Classification with Inexpensive Sensors', Journal of Visualized Experiments (92), URL: http://www.jove.com/video/52111 DOI: doi: 10.3791/52111(15/10/2014).

Raman, D., R.R. Gerhardt. and Wilkerson, J.B. (2007) ‘Detecting insect flight sounds in the field: implications for acoustical counting of mosquitoes’, Transactions of the ASABE, 50(4), pp. 1481–1485

Stennis, Space Center. (2007) ‘An Automated Flying-Insect Detection System; Real-time monitoring and early detection networks detect harmful flying insects’, NASA Tech Briefs, (228), pp. 688-1929, Refer to SSC-00192.

Unwin, D.M. and Ellington, C.P. (1979) ‘An Optical Tachometer For Measurement Of The Wing-Beat Frequency of Free-Flying Insects,’ Journal of Experimental Biology, 82(1), pp. 377-378

Kim, D., DeBriere, T.J., Cherukumalli, S., Gregory, S. White and Nathan D. Burkett-Cadena. (2021) ‘Infrared light sensors permit rapid recording of wingbeat frequency and bioacoustic species identification of mosquitoes’, Scientific Reports, 11, Article number: 10042 (2021). https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-021-89644-z

INDIAN NETWORK OF FISHERIES AND ANIMAL ANTIMICROBIAL RESISTANCE (INFAAR)- UNDERTAKING SURVEILLANCE OF AMR IN ANIMAL HEALTH SECTOR

Rajesh Bhatia

FAO Consultant

"Antimicrobial resistance (AMR) is a global threat to health, livelihoods and the achievement of the Sustainable Development Goals (SDG)," the statement by UN Secretary Generalduring May 2019 in relation to SDG Goal 3 "Good Health and Wellbeing" (https://undocs.org/en/A/73/869) was enough to raise alarm bells of shift in human pathogen interactions. World Health Organization has called AMRas one of the most important public health threats of the 21st century. Currently, death of 700,000 people per annum is linked to AMR and is estimated to rise to10 million annual deaths by 2050[1]. The AMR is projected to cause $100 trillion loss to global economy by 2050 which is equivalent to 3.5% reduction in global GDP[1]. In May 2015, the sixty-eighth World Health Assembly endorsed the Global Action Plan on AMR (https://apps.who.int/gb/ebwha/pdf_files/WHA68-REC1/A68_R1_REC1-en.pdf#page=27). India responded with a National Action Plan (NAP) on AMR which was launched by Ministry of Health and Family Welfare in 2017 (https://www.ncdc.gov.in/WriteReadData/linkimages/AMR/File645.pdf).

Antimicrobial resistance (AMR) is the ability of micro-organisms to resist the effects of antimicrobials. AMR can occur naturally as all microbes can adapt to their surrounding environment. However, AMR is increasing by inappropriate and excessive use of antimicrobials in both human healthcare and the animal sector. In 2014, India was the highest consumer of antibiotics in human sector, followed by China and the United States (Reference and please recheck if it is highest quantity used or number of doses). India was the fifth largest consumer of antibiotics in food animals in 2010. Antibiotic consumption is projected to grow by 312%, making India the fourth-largest consumer of antibiotics in food animals by 2030[2].

Antimicrobials are used in animal production practices to manage animal and fish health, and also as growth promoters at a sub-therapeutic level. In recent decades, the intensification of animal production due to the increasing demand for animal protein has led to an increasing overall use of antimicrobials. AMR makes disease treatments ineffective, increase severity of disease, reduces productivity and leads to economic losses. In addition, more than half the quantity of antimicrobials used in animals/fish are excreted in waste contaminating soil, water and the environment. This also contributes to the emergence and spread of AMR through selection pressure on pathogens in environment. Besides, antimicrobials residues can be present in animal/fish products which also increases public health risks.

Currently, there is limited data available on AMR in livestock and aquaculture sector in India, which is based on individual studies with limited geographical coverage, samples and questionable quality. Thus, it is important to quantify the burden of AMR in food producing animals and aquaculture through structured surveillance with pan India coverage. Implementation of a systematic approach to generate AMR data has been initiated through forging and operationalization of the Indian Network for Fisheries and Animal Antimicrobial Resistance (INFAAR) is aimed to document antibiotic resistance levels in different production systems, describe the spread of resistant bacterial strains and resistance genes, identify trends in resistance and generate hypotheses about sources and reservoirs of resistant bacteria. The crucial data emerging on spatial level will be input to formulate strategies and policies to prevent and reduce the spread of AMR in farmed animals and fish and subsequently to human population.

INFAAR is a technical collaboration program between Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR) and Food and Agricultural Organization (FAO) since August, 2018 with financial support from the ICAR, State agriculture Universities and the USAID. In INFAAR network, ICAR-NBFGR, Lucknow, is the leading institute for Fisheries and ICAR-IVRI, Bareilly for Animal Science. To assure maximum national coverage, INFAAR is being operationalized through 21 centers (18 ICAR and 3 State agriculture Universities) with 8 partners from fisheries and 13 from livestock sector. The INFAAR envisions to (i) undertake surveillance of antimicrobial resistance (AMR) in target microorganisms isolated from healthy farmed animals and fish/shellfish with an aim to quantify its burden and monitor the spatial and temporal trends of AMR in India. (ii) improve awareness and understanding of AMR among the farming community, veterinary and fish health professionals and policy makers, through effective communication, education and training so as to promote judicious use of antimicrobials in farmed food animals and fish.

The priority microorganisms identified under fisheries component of INFAAR are *E. coli*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, other Coagulase negative *Staphylococcus* species (CONS) and *Aeromonas* species in farmed freshwater fish; and *E. coli*, *S. aureus*, CONS and *Vibrio* species including *Vibrio parahemolyticus* in farmed shrimps and cage cultured marine fish.

Standard operating procedures (SOP) for isolation, identification and antibiotic sensitivity testing (AST) of microorganisms for fisheries sector has been developed for use by partners[3]. A field-based questionnaire is used to survey of farms to establish link between AMR data and actual use of antibiotic in culture practices. The results are analysed using internationally accepted WHONET software.

The issue of AMR also needs to be addressed by raising awareness amongst all stakeholders and especially farmers and industries on AMR and by implementing good practices to reduce the need for antimicrobials. Every year INFAAR creates awareness on "judicious use of antibiotics" among public focusing on farmers, students, school children, especially during "World Antibiotics Awareness Week" celebrated between 18-24th November in different parts of the country and world. INFAAR has launched a dedicated website (www.infaar.icar.gov.in), which provides the latest information on AMR in the country specifically on policy meetings, trainings, and other activities related to INFAAR its SOP, as well as recent and forthcoming activities of INFAAR.

The functioning and the activities of INFAAR are being regularly guided and reviewed, twice a year, by the INFAAR Advisory Board established by the Government of India.

The INFAAR is working towards safe food production for human consumption without the risk of transmitting AMR to humans through food production cycle. Safe food production without AMR risk will promote healthier human and animal health; and clean environment. The data generated by INFAAR will lead to identification of strategies to prevent and reduce the development and spread of AMR in aquaculture and food animals. Successful implementation of the program will be a key component of National Action Plan on AMR for protection of human health, animal health and food safety in India.

ONE HEALTH APPROACH AND REGIONAL DISEASE SURVEILLANCE NETWORKS

Prejit, Officer-in-Charge,
Centre for One Health Education, Advocacy Research and Training
Kerala Veterinary and Animal Sciences University, Pookode, Wayanad- 673576

The One Health (OH) approach is about collaboration between the different sectors such as human medicine, veterinary medicine, and environmental sciences. The world is experiencing increasing interaction of people and domestic animals in the last few years that led to events of emerging and re-emerging infectious diseases. Zoonotic diseases have always been, and are still today, a major burden for human and animal populations (Morens *et al*., 2004). This burden is particularly high in low middle income countries (Molyneux *et al*., 2011), and India is considered as the hot spot for many infectious diseases (Kessler and Peterson, 2008). Understanding the ecology of zoonotic diseases at the human–animal interface is a complex challenge. Furthermore, increasing incidence of antimicrobial resistance (AMR) has been recognized as a serious public health and animal health threat. The challenges of EIDs and AMR require a One Health approach that supports a holistic, multisectoral, coordinated and collaborative network. The international organizations such as WHO, FAO, OIE (under Tripartite agreement), and other international non-governmental organizations (NGOs) such as Rockefeller Foundation, the SGTF and the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, amongst others have been supporting One Health approach and establishment of regional networks for early detection and sharing of information, and responding to outbreaks in a coordinated and collective manner by multiple countries.

Animals can be used as surveillance tools for monitoring naturally occurring environmental & human health hazards. They are ideal surveillance tools because they share the same environment as humans & spend more time outdoors than humans increasing their exposure risk. Identifying the biological and environmental factors that cause interspecies pathogen leaps to predict the future zoonotic outbreaks has so far been cumbersome. But even with growing understanding of pathogen behaviour along with data pointing to regions where spillover might occur, precise outbreak predictions cannot be guaranteed. Connecting Organizations for Regional Disease Surveillance (CORDS) is an international non-governmental organization focused on information exchange between disease surveillance networks in different areas of the world. By linking regional disease surveillance networks, CORDS, an umbrella network organization based in France, builds a trust-based social fabric of experts who share best practices, surveillance tools and strategies, training courses, and innovations. CORDS exemplifies the shifting patterns of international collaboration needed to prevent, detect, and counter all types of biological dangers – not just naturally occurring infectious diseases, but also terrorist threats. Representing a network-of-networks approach, the mission of CORDS is to link regional disease surveillance networks to improve global capacity to respond to infectious diseases. The regional networks (Southeast Asia, East Africa, South East Europe, Southern Africa, and Middle East) were created in many regions of the worlds

The One Health approach

COVID-19 is one of the baleful pandemic the world had ever witnessed. The continued emergence and re-emergence of zoonoses point to the need for changes in the disease monitoring and management systems and the best solution is adopting one health approach. In 2010, recognizing the need for multidisciplinary collaboration to address health threats at the human–animal–ecosystem interface, the FAO-WHO-OIE formalized their collaboration and identified zoonotic diseases as a priority area to collaborate (OIE, 2017). The success of One Health approaches was reported in many instances such as, controlling Cysticercosis in Portugal (Fonseca *et al.,* 2018), Rabies in the Serengeti ecosystem (Cleavelandet *al.,* 2003), Brucellosis in Mongolia (McDermott *et al.,* 2013) and Malta (Buttigieg*et al.,* 2018), West Nile in Northern Italy (Paternoster *et al*., 2017). In consonance with IHR (2005), One Health approach has been advocated by the WHO, FAO and OIE for combating health threats to humans and animals and a tripartite agreement between these three organizations has been in vogue since 2010 to apply One Health approach (WHO, 2017; OIE, 2017) . The essence of One Health approach is that the actions are more strategically and collaboratively planned rather than having a reactive approach. A close networking between veterinary and medical laboratories and professionals at different levels has to be developed, along with sociologist, epidemiologists, environmentalists and climatologists. All the concerned professionals must become part of Rapid Response force to investigate epidemics of zoonoses and to formulate and enforce control strategies. The inter-faces that exist between man, livestock, wildlife, and environment are recognized as the hotspot for emerging infectious diseases. Such hotspot is considered as multifaceted problem zone that calls for multifaceted solutions where no one particular discipline can act wisely to control such threats (Prejit, 2017). We need to break the silos and plan a joint strategy by integrating ideas of the connections among humans, animals and ecosystems within the political, economic and social systems in which they operate. A clear advantage of One Health is that interventions in animal populations can result in public health and societal benefits more cost-effectively than just interventions in humans (Prejit, 2017).

Regional Disease Surveillance networks

The Asia-Pacific Strategy for Emerging Diseases (APSED) develops Member State and regional surveillance and response capacity through a policy of intersectoral collaboration and coordination, with FAO and OIE, for detection and control of zoonotic disease emerging at the human/animal/ecosystem interface. Some of the active regional disease surveillance networks includes, ***The Mekong Basin Disease Surveillance network (MBDS)***(established in 2003)comprised of Cambodia, Southern China, Lao PDR, Myanmar, Thailand, and Vietnam, coordinates efforts to mitigate H5N1, cholera, and Dengue Hemorrhagic Fever, and to develop joint strategies for containing disease in the region. ***Middle East Consortium on Infectious Disease Surveillance (MECIDS)*** (established in 1999) is a disease surveillance network made up of public health experts and ministry of health officials from Israel, the Palestinian Authority, and Jordan. This group has had success in finding common ground across borders in conflict and has acted together to meet disease threats, including 2009 H1N1 influenza. ***The Southern African Centre for Disease Surveillance (SACIDS)*** (established in 2009)includes diseaseexperts from Tanzania, Mozambique, Zambia, Democratic Republic of Congo, and South Africa, works to improve the capacity of African institutions to detect, identify, and monitor infectious diseases affecting humans and animals, including new infectious diseases of animal origin. The network has partnered with a number of institutions, includingSokoine University of Agriculture (SUA), the Royal Veterinary College, and the London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, to create an interdisciplinary network that embodies the One Health approach for collaboration between human and animal health sectors. ***The East African Integrated Disease Surveillance Network (EAIDSNet)*** (established in 2000)is a regional, inter-governmental collaborative initiative of the national ministries responsible for humanand animal health as well as the national health research and academic institutions of the five East African Community Partner States, namely the Republic of Burundi, the Republic of Kenya, the Republic of Rwanda, the Republic of Uganda, and the United Republic of Tanzania. The main objectives of EAIDSNet are to: (1) enhance and strengthen cross-country and cross-institutional collaboration through regional coordination of activities for the prevention and control of both human and animal diseases under the One Health Initiative; (2) promote exchange and dissemination of appropriate information; (3) harmonize integrated disease surveillance systems in the region; (4) strengthen capacity for implementing integrated disease surveillance and control activities; and (5) ensure continuous exchange of expertise and best practices for integrated disease surveillance and response (CORDS.2011)

Conclusion

Although we face many outbreaks of emerging zoonoses, it is also true that the world has made significant strides in tackling major public health challenges over the last several decades. One of the reasons are the collaboration among stakeholders between different disciplines, efficient and timely conveyance of information to various strata associated with disease control, and imparting proper training to public health workers and susceptible population. Effective surveillance and timely multidisciplinary action should be coupled with education and research for shackling emerging and re-emerging zoonoses. This is possible by certain strong networks that work in an One Health mode like CORDS, which unites regional disease surveillance networks from critical hotspots around the world to promote exchanges of best practices in surveillance and catalyze innovation in early disease detection. Such collaborative surveillance unit cultivates networks of professionals who have the collective strength to translate information into near-real-time action during emergency situations. The need for innovations and more effective scale-up of existing ICT tools is required so that we can control many of the emerging diseases.

Reference

Buttigieg, S.C., Savic, S., Cauchi, D., Lautier, E., Canali, M. and Aragrande, M. 2018. Brucellosis Control in Malta and Serbia: One Health Evaluation. *Front. Vet. Sci.* 5:147.

CORDS. 2011. Connecting Organizations for Regional Disease Surveillance Strategic Plan.

Cleaveland, S., Kaare, M., Tiringa, P., Mlengeya, T. and Barret, J. 2003. A dog rabies vaccination campaign in rural Africa: impact on the incidence of dog rabies and human dog-bite injuries. *Vaccine*, 21, 1965-1973.

Fonseca, A.G., Torgal, J., de Meneghi, D., Gabriël, S., Coelho, A.C. and Vilhena, M. 2018. One Health-ness Evaluation of Cysticercosis Surveillance Design in Portugal. *Front. Public Hlth.* 6:74.

Kessler R. and Peterson, H. 2008. Global Disease Hotspots 2.0, Accessed from: https://www.ecohealthalliance.org/2017/10/global-disease-hotspots-2-0

McDermott, J., Grace, D. and Zinsstag, J. 2013. Economics of brucellosis impact and control in low-income countries. *Rev. Sci. Tech. Off. Int. Epiz*, 32: 249-261.

Morens, D.M., Folkers, G.K. and Fauci, A. S. 2004.The challenge of emerging and reemerging infectious diseases. Nature, 430: 242–249

Molyneux, D., Hallaj, Z., Keusch, G.T., McManus, D.P., Ngowi, H., Cleaveland, S., et al. 2011. Zoonoses and marginalised infectious diseases of poverty: where do we stand? *Parasit. Vectors*, 4: 106-112

Paternoster, G., Tomassone, L., Tamba, M., Chiari, M., Lavazza, A., Piazzi, M., Favretto, A.R., Balduzzi, G., Pautasso, A. and Vogler, B.R. 2017. The Degree of One Health Implementation in the West Nile Virus Integrated Surveillance in Northern Italy, 2016. *Front. Public Hlth* 5: 236-242

Prejit. 2017. "One Health- Vision for future" In: Veterinary Public Health: One Health, Edited by Sushovan Roy *et al*. New Delhi Publishers

WHO. 2017. World Health Organization. The Tripartite's commitment providing multi-sectoral, collaborative leadership in addressing health challenges. Geneva

PROSPECTS OF TELEMEDICINE IN VETERINARY PRACTICE

Dr Sooryadas S, Assistant Professor,
Department of Veterinary Surgery and Radiology, CVAS Pookode
Kerala Veterinary and Animal Sciences University, Pookode, Wayanad- 673576

World Health Organisation defines telemedicine as the delivery of health care services, where distance is a critical factor, by all health care professionals using information and communication technologies for the exchange of valid information for diagnosis, treatment and prevention of disease and injuries, research and evaluation, and for the continuing education of health care providers, all in the interests of advancing the health of individuals and their communities. While telehealth is defined as the delivery and facilitation of health and health-relatedservices including medical care, health information services and self care via telecommunications and digital communication technologies.

Tele veterinary medicine can be defined as extension of veterinary medical service to a remote location, using information and communication technologies. In general, the term tele veterinary medicine can be used to denote veterinary clinical services delivered by a registered veterinary practitioner while the term tele veterinary health can be used to denote use of technology for delivery of veterinary health and health related services including tele veterinary medicine. The registered veterinary practitioner or specialist may use any telemedicine tool suitable for carrying out technology-based consultation eg. telephone,video, devices connected over LAN, WAN, Internet, mobile or landline phones, chat platforms like WhatsApp, Facebook Messenger, etc., or Internet based digital platforms for telemedicine or data transmission systems like Skype/email/fax etc. irrespective of the tool of communication used, the core principles of tele veterinary medicine practice remain the same.

Let us divide Telemedicine in Veterinary practice into

Real-time telemedicine - Here, the consulting veterinary expert or specialist will see and discuss the case real-time with the referring veterinarian.

Store-and-forward telemedicine - Here, electronically stored information related to a case is forwarded to a consultant who reviews the case later.

A variant of the above two where the electronically stored information related to a case is sent to a specialist and the referring vet discuss the same with the specialist over telephone for getting the interpretation of the case and for decision making.

Few disciplines where Telemedicine can be practised in Veterinary are

1. Tele radiology
2. Tele ultrasonography
3. Tele ECG
4. Tele pathology
5. Tele ophthalmology
6. Tele cytology
7. Tele dermatology
8. Tele endoscopy
9. Tele-guided surgery

The prospects of this emerging field in veterinary practice are plenty. The paper describes a basic knowhow, possibilities and challenges of telemedicine in veterinary practice, along with experience of tele-guiding few surgeries abroad for correction of challenging surgical conditions in puppies.

ISBN: 978-93-91668-22-8

Jointly Published By

Directorate of Entrepreneurship, COHEART, KVASU & MANAGE, Hyderabad

Maritime Climate Change: Physical Drivers and Impact, *Series Editor: Neloy Khare*

Climate Change in the Arctic

An Indian Perspective

edited by

Neloy Khare

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group

Climate Change in the Arctic

Maritime Climate Change: Physical Drivers and Impact

Series Editor:
Neloy Khare

As global climate change continues to unfold, the two-way links between the tropical oceans and the poles will play key determining factors in these sensitive regions' climatic evolution. Now is the time to take a detailed look at how the tropical oceans and the poles are coupled climatically. The signatures of environmental and climatic conditions are well preserved in many natural archives available over land and ocean. Many efforts have been made to unravel such mysteries of climate through many natural geological archives from tropics to the polar region. This series makes an effort to cover in pertinent time various depositional regimes, different proxies – planktic, benthic, pollens and spores, invertebrates, geochemistry, sedimentology, etc., and emerged teleconnections between the poles and tropics at regional and global scales, besides sea-level changes and neo-tectonism. This book series will review theories and methods, analyse case studies, identify and describe the evolving spatial-temporal variations in climate, and provide a better process-level understanding of these patterns. It will discuss significantly, generalisable insights that improve our understanding of climatic evolution across time – including the future. It aims to serve all professionals, students and researchers, scientists alike in academia, industry, government and beyond.

Climate Change in the Arctic
An Indian Perspective
Neloy Khare

Climate Change in the Arctic

An Indian Perspective

Edited by

Neloy Khare

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
Boca Raton London New York

CRC Press is an imprint of the
Taylor & Francis Group, an **informa** business

First edition published 2022
by CRC Press
6000 Broken Sound Parkway NW, Suite 300, Boca Raton, FL 33487-2742

and by CRC Press
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4RN

CRC Press is an imprint of Taylor & Francis Group, LLC

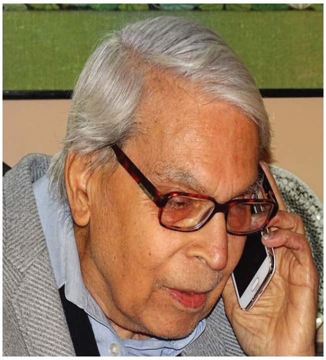
Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Names: Khare, Neloy, editor.
Title: Climate change in the Arctic : an Indian perspective / edited by
Neloy Khare.
Description: First edition. | Boca Raton : CRC Press, [2022] | Series:
Maritime climate change: physical drivers and impact | Includes
bibliographical references and index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2021044897 | ISBN 9780367482695 (hbk) |
ISBN 9781032207780 (pbk) | ISBN 9781003265177 (ebk)
Subjects: LCSH: Arctic regions—Environmental conditions. | Climatic
changes—Arctic regions. | Pollution—Arctic regions. | Environmental
protection—Research—India. | Ecology—Arctic regions.
Classification: LCC GE160.A68 C56 2022 | DDC 551.6911/3—dc23/eng/20211119
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2021044897

ISBN: 9780367482695 (hbk)
ISBN: 9781032207780 (pbk)
ISBN: 9781003265177 (ebk)

DOI: 10.1201/9781003265177

Typeset in Times
by codeMantra

Dedicated to



Late Prof Shashi Bhushan Bhatia

(18.03.1980–01.05.2021)

Prof Shashi Bhushan Bhatia was born on 18 March 1930 at Lucknow. Prof Bhatia post graduated in 1950 from the Lucknow University, obtained Ph.D. degree from the London University and D.I.C. from the Imperial College of London. He joined the Lucknow University as a Lecturer in 1953. In 1958, he was selected in the Geological Survey of India. Subsequently in 1959, Prof Bhatia was appointed as a Reader in the newly created Department of Geology in the Panjab University, Chandigarh, where he superannuated as a Professor and then continued as an Emeritus Professor.

Prof Bhatia's contributions to the Indian geology cover a vast time span. Foraminifera was his original field of specialisation. He is credited with the first discovery of the Permian foraminifera in India. Later he made important contributions to the study of Cretaceous and Paleogene ostracods. His research on the Cretaceous sediments aided in determining the time of extinction of the dinosaurs and initiation of the Deccan Volcanicity. Another important input to the Cretaceous was the report of bryozoa in the Neelkanth Formation – considered at that time a part of the Tal Group. The most important contributions made by Prof S. B. Bhatia, however, are to the Palaeogene sediments of the Himalaya. He studied fauna of the Subathu, Dagshai and Siwalik sequences. His findings precisely fixed the lower age limit of the Kakara sediments at 56.5 Ma, which signifies the time of collision of the Indian and Asian Plates. His research on the Subathu and the Dagshai formations makes significant contributions to the biostratigraphy, event stratigraphy and environment of deposition of that time. He put India on the world map of Chara studies.

Prof Bhatia had around 250 publications in reputed journals. He guided a dozen students for Ph.D. degree. He was a highly decorated scientist. In 1958, he was appointed as Indian Correspondent of the Journal of Micropaleontology. He was a Fellow of the prestigious Indian National Science Academy and recipient of L. Rama Rao award. Oil and Natural Gas Corporation decorated him with a silver plaque. He was an excellent teacher with exceptional skills of communication. He was a perfectionist and demanded the best from his students.

Prof Shashi Bhushan Bhatia breathed his last peacefully on 1 May 2021. His death is a great loss to Indian geology.

Contents

Foreword

Undertaking research in the Polar Regions is complex and challenging. The sustained vitality of polar research is intrinsically linked to the specialised logistics and infrastructural support available, which allows scientists to work in a challenging environment. It necessitates strong international cooperation and sharing of resources and infrastructural facilities. Ny-Ålesund at Svalbard in the Arctic has emerged as a vibrant symbol of international partnership. The Norwegian Government has ably guided many non-Arctic countries to research new areas of Arctic Science.

Having achieved a long and resilient experience in Antarctica, India forayed into Arctic Science over a decade back and recently joined the Arctic Council as an Observer. In collaboration with Norway, India has established its research base ‘Himadri’ at Ny-Ålesund, the well-known ‘Science village’ in the Arctic. With more than a decade’s effort, many exciting findings and results have emerged, especially in the science of climate change as evident in the Arctic region. With quality scientific output in a short period, India has made its presence strongly felt in Arctic Science and has contributed significantly to the knowledge base of Arctic research. Indian scientists have attempted to unravel the past and understand the present in order to elucidate the future trends on climate change patterns.

The multi-sectoral climate issues associated with Arctic change transcend national boundaries. The stakeholders including governments, indigenous communities, civil society, policymakers and industry need to be equally concerned. For any adaptation and mitigation efforts, informed decisions on the Arctic must be evidence-based and not geopolitically driven. Scientists, therefore, have a cardinal role to play in providing insightful data that can be translated to enable policy paradigm and sound advisory mechanism on climate change and its impact on the globe.

The Indian efforts made in Arctic climate science must be synthesised so that a comprehensive picture could emerge. The present book *Climate Change in the Arctic: An Indian Perspective* is an illustrious effort in this direction, covering a wide range of topics addressing various aspects of climate change in the Arctic. As changes in the Arctic region will have a profound effect on human life on Earth, there is a need for our polity and people including the industry leaders to have up-to-date and robust information on the science of Arctic climate change. This book amply provides a clear picture of the ongoing global climatic changes, their impacts on the Arctic and how the changing Arctic will influence the rest of the world. The message conveyed is clear: we must collectively work to reduce our carbon footprint to save one of the last frontiers on planet Earth, the Arctic.

Arbinda Mitra
Scientific Secretary
Date: June 2021
Place: New Delhi

Preface

The Polar Regions are an essential focus of research as unique systems, but they also play a pivotal role in global Earth systems. Situated at the northernmost part of *Earth*, the Arctic is a spectacular *polar region*. It is a unique area among Earth's ecosystems. The unique characteristics and cultures of the Arctic indigenous peoples are an adaptive mechanism to cope with the cold and extreme conditions. Historically, the Arctic regions' scientific activity is intimately linked with the post-World War II and the subsequent Cold War era's geopolitical circumstances. It has always been a pristine environment owing to least human interventions. For many years, the Arctic region was designated as a North 'dead land' that was not perceived as a place for living or economic activities. However, the situation during the past few decades has changed significantly. Now the Arctic is connected to global natural and anthropogenic chemicals via winds, ice movement and marine currents. Global warming has made the Arctic region more accessible and desirable. It is a complex region that is experiencing unprecedented changes. Based on long-term monitoring, it has been found that the Arctic is warming up much faster than expected, essentially due to Arctic amplification of the worldwide warming scenario. The Arctic holds the world's largest remaining oil and gas reserves, an enormous untapped mineral wealth.

A reduction in Arctic summer ice cover has become more intense in recent years, culminating in an area of a record low of 3.4 million square kilometres in 2012. Ice melting opens a place for new research and economic activities. It allows for exploring the possible amount of natural resources in the Arctic region.

The Arctic's responses to global change are too sensitive. It may be capable of initiating dramatic climatic changes through alterations induced in the oceanic *thermohaline circulation* by its cold, southward-moving currents or through its effects on the global *albedo* resulting from changes in its total ice cover.

Many scientific disciplines and engineering applications have significantly advanced based on the knowledge gained from polar research. Many of the discoveries that took place over Polar Regions have provided a critical understanding of direct benefit to humanity and served the society. It makes sense that access to the polar areas is fundamentally vital from its scientific viewpoints. Evidence continues to accumulate that the scientific value of the Arctic warrants significant investment for polar research. Sustained efforts must be on to continue and indeed flourish over the next several decades.

The Arctic Ocean is primarily surrounded by land and has difficult, terrain and adjacent shorelines. The ice and extreme weather conditions make it further challenging to reach. The logistics constraints make it difficult to conduct research on land and coastal areas; thus, such observations tend to be sparse.

Atmospheric processes in the Arctic are distinctive and scientifically significant. Among many, the transport and disposition of solar radiation, the formation and persistence of clouds, and variability in the atmospheric pressure fields exhibit large-scale patterns that influence the global climate.

A more detailed understanding and representation of these global climate models' processes are essential to improving future climate predictions. It requires intensive observations of the Arctic atmosphere over the oceans with specialised (ice breaker) vessel support.

Similarly, sea ice provides the interface between atmosphere and water, and it is one of the essential components of the system. Inadequate spatiotemporal observations limit our ability to describe the variability, change, and extremes of the polar region environment. Records of past environmental conditions, retrieved from paleo-archives such as ice cores or sediments, provide clues to nature's response to climate change force. Still, these too are incomplete, especially in terms of spatial coverage.

The Arctic Basin plays a pivotal role in the global carbon balance. Nonetheless, the mechanism by which this carbon is transported from the Arctic continental shelf to the deep basin is yet to be adequately understood.

The apparent changes are occurring in the intricate balance between Pacific's and Atlantic's waters. These may bring out a subtle change in the thermohaline profile features because the heat and salt balance prevents melting of surface ice.

The tectonics of ocean gateways, which allow passage of warm and cold currents between oceans, is useful for understanding climate changes in the Arctic region. India takes the honour to have a separate ministry dealing with the Earth System Sciences under which the entire gamut of polar science and logistics falls. Having acute concern on the global climate change issues and the significance both poles carry in a deeper understanding of the climate change system holistically, India opted to adopt a bipolar scientific approach by venturing into Arctic Science. The rich scientific and logistics experience gained through a glorified and meaningful journey of launching more than 40 annual scientific expeditions to the icy continent 'Antarctica' was an ambitious plan to launch unique scientific expeditions to the Arctic region addressing diversified climate-related issues apart from many other scientific objectives to be accomplished through Arctic Science. As a humble beginning, India deputed an exploratory team to visit the Arctic and establish tie-ups with the Norwegian colleagues as the site identified for India was the Norwegian territorial region. Having fruitful, supportive and healthy linkages with the Norway, India was initially allowed to use Norway's International Research Facilities at Ny-Ålesund, Svalbard. And a full-fledged Indian Arctic Research base namely 'Himadri' was finally set up in 2008 at Ny-Ålesund amidst the research bases of other participating countries. During this period, Indian researchers visited the Arctic a number of times in a year and conducted their exceptional dedicated experimentation to obtain observational data. Many significant studies have been undertaken by Indian Climate Scientists focusing on the Arctic Climate changes and their global relevance including Indian tropical climates, specialising in the Indian Summer Monsoon (ISM).

This book titled *Climate Change in the Arctic: An Indian Perspective* highlights some of the most exciting Arctic research conducted by Indian scientists ever since India entered the Arctic Science foray. Indian polar researchers have contributed to a wide range of disciplines, in a bid to get an insight into the essential information about Earth's systems and how they operate. Nevertheless, the research conducted by Indian scientists addressing various facets of the climate change occurring over the

Arctic region has exclusively been collated in 15 chapters to put forth Arctic climate changes through an Indian perspective.

Accordingly, **Khare** introduces the theme in the first chapter highlighting the overall climate change assessment over the Arctic through the Indian Polar Programme. Under Arctic Atmosphere Weather and Climate Change theme, **Maheskumar and Sunitha Devi** discuss in detail the Arctic weather and climate patterns, **Gwal et al.** investigate GPS-derived total electron content (TEC) and Scintillation Index for the Arctic and Antarctic Stations, and **Sonbawne et al.** monitor the atmospheric aerosols to help assess their sources and effects on Arctic climate.

To get an insight into the signatures of climate change through sediments, **Singh et al.** concentrate on the sedimentary parameters of the Arctic region in space and time to reconstruct past climatic conditions. On the contrary, **Choudhary et al.** have identified biogenic silica as an indicator of paleo productivity in lacustrine sediments of Svalbard, Arctic. They provide a comprehensive review of the studies that dealt with the biogenic silica over the Arctic region. **Tiwari and Megan Da Lima Leitao** touch upon the critical role of persistent organic pollutants and mercury in the Arctic environment. Also, they discuss about the indirect impact of these pollutants on climate change. Besides, **Gopikrishna et al.** studied the fjord sediments for their contamination and Implications for the Arctic Climate changes.

The impact of climate change on Arctic life has been assessed by **Hatha and Krishnan** who reported non-polar isolates in the Arctic fjords and Tundra and pointed out a warming trend in the Arctic environment. Simultaneously, **Jasmine Purushothaman et al.** concentrate on the Mesozooplankton community structure in Kongsfjorden, the Arctic, and assess impacts of climate changes through space and time. On the contrary, **Aswathy Shaji and Anu Gopinath** characterise the humic acids isolated from diverse Arctic environments.

The most critical aspect of the great potential Arctic microbes possess for pharmaceutical purposes lies in the biotechnological processes which have various characteristics. Such aspects have been detailed by **Dubey and Babel**. Interestingly, bio-optical characteristics in relation to phytoplankton composition and productivity in the Arctic fjord ecosystem have been highlighted by **Tripathy**.

In the Polar Regions, the present-day Circum-Arctic region comprises a variety of tectonic settings due to varied geophysical conditions: from active seafloor spreading in the North Atlantic and Eurasian Basin, and subduction in the North Pacific, to long-lived stable continental platforms in North America and Asia. A detailed account on the recent advances in seismo-geophysical studies conducted so far for the Arctic region in different tectonic environs has been provided by **Mishra et al.** in a bid to understand the efficacies of various geophysical and seismological tools.

On the contrary, **Luis and Roy** have addressed the impact of climate change on sea ice. They have studied the decadal Arctic Sea-Ice Variability to observe the pattern and its implication to climate change.

As Arctic Science advances, more and more challenging scientific questions will require sustained and continuous observations and measurements in the Arctic regions. It will help us understand the evolution of northern climates. Prediction of future changes can be based only on a full understanding of the Arctic and Antarctic systems.

This book collates recent scientific findings and sights related to the ongoing climate change in and around the Arctic region from the Indian perspective. This book will help satisfy the curiosity; usually, young minds carry. These youngsters and budding researchers will get an insight into the ongoing climate changes taking place over the Arctic region.

Neloy Khare
Date: June 2021
Place: New Delhi

Acknowledgements

Immense supports and help received from all contributing authors are graciously acknowledged; without their valuable inputs on various facets of climate change over the Arctic region, the book would not have been possible. Various learned experts who have reviewed different chapters are sincerely acknowledged for their timely, important, and critical reviews.

I express my sincere thanks to the Ministry of Earth Sciences, Government of India, New Delhi (India) for various inputs, support, and encouragement. Dr M.N. Rajeevan, Secretary, Ministry of Earth Sciences, and Government of India, Dr Arbinda Mitra, Secretary, Office of the Principal Scientific Advisor to Prime Minister, Government of India, New Delhi, and Prof Govardhan Mehta, FRS have always been the source of inspiration and are acknowledged for their kind support. Dr Vipin Chandra, Joint Secretary to Government of India at Ministry of Earth Sciences, New Delhi (India), Dr Prem Chan Pandey, former Director, National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research, Goa (India) and Dr K.J. Ramesh, former Director-General, India Meteorological Department (IMD), New Delhi (India) have always been supportive as true well-wishers. Prof Anil Kumar Gupta, Indian Institute of Technology, Kharagpur (India) and Dr Rajiv Nigam, former Adviser at the National Institute of Oceanography, Goa (India) are deeply acknowledged for providing many valuable suggestions to this book. This book has received significant support from Akshat Khare and Ashmit Khare who have helped me during the book preparation. Dr Rajni Khare has unconditionally supported enormously during various stages of this book. Dr Shabnam Choudhary and Shri Hari Dass Sharma from the Ministry of Earth Sciences, New Delhi (India) have helped immensely in formatting the text and figures of this book, and they have brought the book to its present form. The publisher Taylor and Francis has done a commendable job and is sincerely acknowledged.

Neloy Khare
Date: June 2021
Place: New Delhi

Editor

Dr Neloy Khare, presently Adviser/Scientist G to the Government of India at MoES, has a unique understanding not only of administration but also of quality science and research in his areas of expertise covering a large spectrum of geographically distinct locations like Antarctic, Arctic, Southern Ocean, Bay of Bengal, Arabian Sea, Indian Ocean, etc. Dr Khare has almost 30 years of experience in the field of paleoclimate research using palaeobiology and palaeontology/teaching/science management/administration/coordination for scientific programmes (including Indian Polar Programme). Dr Khare has completed his doctorate (Ph.D.) in tropical marine region and Doctor of Science (D.Sc.) in southern high-latitude marine regions.

Dr Khare has been conferred Honorary Professor and Adjunct Professor by many Indian universities. He has an awe-inspiring list of publications to his credit (125 research articles in national and international scientific journals; three special issues in national scientific journals as Guest Editor; edited a special issue of *Polar Sciences* as its Managing Editor). The Government of India and many professional bodies have bestowed him with many prestigious awards for his humble scientific contributions to past climate changes/oceanography/polar science and southern oceanography. The most coveted award is the Rajiv Gandhi National Award – 2013 conferred by the Honourable President of India. Others include ISCA Young Scientist Award, Boys Cast Fellowship, CIES French Fellowship, Krishnan Gold Medal, Best Scientist Award, Eminent Scientist Award, ISCA Platinum Jubilee Lecture, and IGU Fellowship. Dr Khare has made tremendous efforts to popularise ocean science and polar science across the country by delivering many invited lectures, giving radio talks, and publishing popular science articles. Many books authored/edited on thematic topics and published by reputed international publishers are testimony to his commitment to popularise science among the masses.

Dr Khare has sailed in the Arctic Ocean as a part of ‘Science PUB’ in 2008 during the International Polar Year campaign for scientific exploration and became the first Indian to sail in the Arctic Ocean.

Contributors

Priyanka Babel
Department of Biotechnology
Mohanlal Sukhadia University
Udaipur, Rajasthan

Purushottam Bhawre
Department of Physics
Govt. Sanjay Gandhi P.G. College
Ganjbasoda, India

Kailash Chandra
Protozoology Section
Zoological Survey of India
Kolkata, India

Shabnam Choudhary
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

Suryanshu Choudhary
Department of Physics
Rabindranath Tagore University
Raisen, India

Tara Megan Da Lima Leitao
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

P.C.S. Devara
Centre of Excellence in Ocean-Atmospheric Science and Technology and
Environmental Science and Health
Amity University Haryana (AUH)
Gurugram, India

Chetan Anand Dubey
Centre of Advanced Study in Geology
University of Lucknow
Lucknow, India

Rajesh Kumar Dubey
UGC-Human Resource Development Centre
JNV University Jodhpur
Rajasthan, India

Gopikrishna VG
School of Environmental Sciences
Mahatma Gandhi University
Kerala, India

Anu Gopinath
Department of Aquatic Environment Management
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Kochi, India

A.K. Gwal
Department of Physics
Rabindranath Tagore University
Raisen, India

Kannan VM
School of Environmental Sciences
Mahatma Gandhi University
Kerala, India

Neloy Khare
Ministry of Earth Sciences
Govt. of India
New Delhi, India

Krishnan KP
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

Alvarinho Luis
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

R.S. Maheskumar
Ministry of Earth Sciences
Govt. of India
New Delhi, India

G. Meena
High Altitude Cloud Physics Laboratory
Indian Institute of Tropical Meteorology
Pune, India

O.P. Mishra
National Centre for Seismology
New Delhi

A.A. Mohamed Hatha
Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry, School of Marine Sciences
Cochin University of Science and Technology
Kochi, Kerala

Mahesh Mohan
School of Environmental Sciences
International Centre for Polar Studies
Mahatma Gandhi University
Kerala, India

G N Nayak
Marine Sciences, School of Earth, Ocean and Atmospheric Sciences
Goa University
Goa, India

G. Pandithurai
High Altitude Cloud Physics Laboratory
Indian Institute of Tropical Meteorology
Pune, India

Haritha Prasad
Protozoology Section
Zoological Survey of India
Kolkata, India

Priya Singh
National Centre for Seismology
New Delhi

Jasmine Purushothaman
Protozoology Section
Zoological Survey of India
Kolkata, India

Rasik Ravindra
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research (Formerly)
Goa, India

Neelakshi Roy
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

and

Centre of Excellence for Natural Resources Data Management System, Department of Remote Sensing and GIS
Kumaun University
Almora, India

P.D. Safai
Cloud-Aerosol Interaction and Precipitation Enhancement EXperiment
Indian Institute of Tropical Meteorology
Pune, India

S.K. Saha
High Altitude Cloud Physics Laboratory
Indian Institute of Tropical Meteorology
Pune, India

Aswathy Shaji
School of Ocean Science and Technology
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Kochi, India

Anoop Kumar Singh
Centre of Advanced Study in Geology
University of Lucknow
Lucknow, India

Dhruv Sen Singh
Centre of Advanced Study in Geology
University of Lucknow
Lucknow, India

S.M. Sonbawne
High Altitude Cloud Physics Laboratory
Indian Institute of Tropical Meteorology
Pune, India

Sunitha Devi S
India Meteorological Department
New Delhi, India

Anoop Kumar Tiwari
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

Sarat Chandra Tripathy
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

Abbreviation List

A.O.	Arctic Ocean
AAS	Atomic absorption spectrometry
ABL	Atmospheric boundary layer
AMDEs	Atmospheric mercury depletion events
AMAP	Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme
ANOVA	Analysis of variance
AQUA-GAPS	Global aquatic passive sampling
ASE	Accelerated solvent extraction
ATOS	Antarctic Tourism Opportunity Spectrum
BDL	Below the detection limit
BSTFA	N,O-Bis(trimethylsilyl)trifluoroacetamide
BTBPE	1,2-Bis(2,4,6-tribromophenoxy)ethane
BWP	Brake wear plastics
CA	California
CAA	Canadian Arctic Archipelago
CEC	Capillary electro-chromatography
CFCs	Chlorofluorocarbons
CG	Congeners in the gas phase
CUPs	Current-use pesticides
CVAFS	Cold vapour atomic fluorescence spectrometry
D.M.	Diabetes mellitus
DB_XLB	Type of GC column
DB-5	Type of GC column
DBA	Dibromoanisole
DCM	Dichloromethane
DDC-CO	Dechlorane plus
DDE	Dichlorodiphenyldichloroethylene
DDT	Dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane
DF	Detection frequency
DOC	Dissolved organic carbon
DPTE	2,3-Dibromopropyl-2,4,6-tribromophenyl ether
ECD	Electron capture detection
EDGARv4.tox2	Emission Database for Global Atmospheric Research v4.tox2
ENV	SPE Cartridge Bond Elut-ENV for extraction of polar residues
ESSO	Earth System Science Organisation
Et-FOSA	N-Ethyl perfluorooctane sulphonamide
Et-FOSEs	Ethyl perfluorooctane sulphonamido ethanols
ETHeBB	2-Ethyl-1-hexyl-2,3,4,5-tetrabromobenzoate
EVA	Ethylene-vinyl acetate copolymer
FLD	Fluorescence detection
FOSAs	Perfluorooctane sulphonamides
FTAs	Fluorotelomer acrylates

FTIR	Fourier transform infra-red spectrometry
FTOHs	Fluorotelomer alcohols
G.C.	Greenland Current
GC-MS or GC/MS	Gas chromatography-mass spectrometer
GEM	Gaseous elemental mercury
GFFs or GF/Fs	Glass fibre filters
GOM	Gaseous oxidized mercury
GRAHM	Global/Regional Atmospheric Heavy Metals
HBB	Hexabromobenzene 2,3-dibromopropyl-2,4,6-tribromophenyl ether
HCBs	Hexachlorobenzenes
HCH	Hexachlorocyclohexanes; Hexachlorocyclohexane
HDPE	High-density polypropylene
HFRs	Halogenated flame retardants
HNPs	Halogenated natural products
HP/H.P.	Hewlett Packard
HPLC	High-performance liquid chromatography
HS-SPME	Headspace solid-phase microextraction
HVS	High-volume samplers
HYSPLIT	Hybrid Single-Particle Lagrangian Integrated Trajectory
ICP/OES	Inductively coupled plasma - optical emission spectrometry
ICP-AES	Inductively coupled plasma atomic emission spectrometry
L/minute	Litre per minute
LCCP	Long-chain chlorinated paraffins
LDPE	Low-density polyethylene
LOD	Loss on drying
LRAT	Long-range atmospheric transport
LVS	Low-volume sampler
MCCP	Medium-chain chlorinated paraffins
Me-FBSA	N-Methyl perfluorobutane sulphonamide
Me-FBSE	N-Methyl perfluorobutane sulphonamidoethanol
Me-FOSA	N-Methyl perfluorooctane sulphonamide
Me-FOSEs	Methyl perfluorooctane sulphonamido ethanols
MeHg	Methylmercury
MEKC	Micellar electrokinetic chromatography
merB, hgcA	Methylation genes and analogues
Mg/a1	Penetration of light/penetration depth unit
MMHG or MMHg	Monomethyl mercury
MoES	Ministry of Earth Sciences
MPs	Microplastics
MSD	Mass spectrometer detector
MSD GC-ECNI-MS	Mass spectrometer detector gas chromatography with electron capture negative ion mass spectrometry
NBFRs	New/novel brominated flame retardants

NCP	Northern Contaminants Programme
NCPOR	National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
NEEM	North Greenland Eemian Ice Drilling
NIC	Nippon Instruments Corporation
NILU	Norwegian Institute for Air Research
NU	Nunavut
OBPs	Organo-brominated pesticides
OCPs	Organo-chlorinated pesticides
OCS	Oxidation of carbonyl sulphide
ODE	Ozone depletion events
–OH	Hydroxyl functional group
PAD-3	Type of polymer resin cartridge
PAHs	Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons
PBBz	Pentabromobenzene
PBDEs	Polybrominated diphenyl ethers
PBM	Particulate bromine mercury
PBT	Pentabromotoluene
PCBs	Polychlorinated biphenyls
PCDD/Fs	Polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins and furans
PCI	Positive chemical ionization
PDM	Pic du Midi
PFAAs	Perfluoroalkyl acids
PFAS	Polyfluoroalkyl substance
PFBA	Perfluorobutyrate; Perfluorobutanoic acid
PFBS	Perfluorobutanesulphonic acid
PFCAs	Perfluorinated carboxylates
PFHxA	Perfluorohexanoic acid
PFHxS	Perfluorohexanesulphonic acid
PFOA	Perfluorooctanoic acid
PFOS	Perfluorooctanesulphonic acid
PFRs	Organophosphorus flame retardants
PFSAs	Perfluoroalkyl sulphonic acids
PFTE	Polytetrafluoroethylene
pH	Potential of hydrogen
PL	Pacific Mode Layer
PML	Polar mixed layer
POPs	Persistent organic pollutants
PPE	Polypropylene
PUFs	Polyurethane foams
QM-A	High-purity grade for particulate matter 10 sampling and analysis
RGM	Reactive gaseous mercury
SBSE	Stir bar sorptive extraction
SCCP	Short chain chlorinated paraffins
SFC	Supercritical fluid chromatography

SIM	Selected ion monitoring
SOAs	Secondary organic aerosols
SOM	Soil organic matter
SPE	Solid-phase extraction
SPSS	Statistical software
SVOCs	Semi-volatile organic compounds
TBA	Tribromoanisole
TBPH	Bis(2-ethyl-1-hexyl) tetrabromophthalate
TCMX	2,4,5,6-Tetrachloro-m-xylene
TGM	Total gaseous mercury
THg	Total mercury
TLC	Thin-layer chromatography
TMS	Trimethylsilyl
TWP	Tyre wear plastics
USEPA	United States Environmental Protection Agency
UV	Ultraviolet
XAD	Adsorbent resin for dioxins and furans

1 Climate Change Assessment over the Arctic Region

Initiatives through Indian Polar Programme

Neloy Khare
Ministry of Earth Sciences

CONTENTS

The Arctic Ocean, surrounding the North Pole, which consists of a large ocean surrounded by land, is like no other ocean on earth because of its unique location and climate. It is the region above the Arctic Circle (at approximately 66° 34′N). The sun does not set on the *summer solstice* and does not rise on the *winter solstice* above the Arctic Circle.

DOI: 10.1201/9781003265177-1

The industrial revolution produced an excess of carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gas emissions. The rising temperatures in the Polar regions result in the rapid melting of the glaciers. The glaciers are diminishing from the land, calving off into the sea (http://www.sciencemag.org/news/2013/08/scienceshot). The impact of changing climate over the Arctic region is reflected in the Arctic amplification and reflected by the Arctic Ocean's shrinking sea ice cover in summer. Decrease in the snow cover over land in the Arctic, especially in spring, and glaciers in Alaska, Greenland and northern Canada is retreating. The permafrost, also known as the frozen ground in the Arctic, is thawing due to warming. Scientists began gathering evidence of changes in Arctic climate since the 1980s, which have become much more pronounced. The Arctic is experiencing unprecedented extremes in sea ice, temperature and precipitation, which remained unreported in the historical records and emerged as an enigma of climate mystery. Indubitably global warming has severely impacted the Arctic's climate, with many strange climatic events such as witnessing a rainy season almost equal to India's and up to 10 months without snow.

Since the late 1970s, the sea ice in the Arctic has decreased dramatically. According to National Snow and Ice Data Center, the Arctic summer sea ice extent in September 2012 was a record low, shown (in white) compared to the median summer sea ice extent for 1979–2000 (shown in orange) (Figure 1.1).

Climate change is a reality and has exhibited dramatic patterns across the Arctic (The National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) and its partners – Annual Arctic Report Card – 2019). Some salient findings of this report (https://arctic.noaa.gov/Report-Card/Report-Card-2019) are enumerated below:

- The average annual surface air temperature in the Arctic from October 2018 through August 2019 was the second warmest in the observational record. Satellite recorded the second-lowest Arctic sea ice extent in 2019.

FIGURE 1.1 The Arctic summer sea ice extent measured in 2012 (white outline) compared with the observed changes from 1979 to 2000 (orange outline). In 2013, the Arctic summer sea ice extent rebounded somewhat but was still the sixth smallest extent on record. (Source: National Snow and Ice Data Center)

- The Bering Sea saw record low winter sea ice in 2018 and 2019.
- Birds are being affected, including the breeding population of ivory gull in the Canadian Arctic falling 70% since the 1980s.
- Greenland's ice sheet also experienced rapid melting in 2019, beginning earlier than usual and reaching 95% of the surface.

Arctic's climate changes are significant because the Arctic acts as a barometer of global climate change. Such ongoing changes in the Arctic climate harm the food chain, including phytoplankton and many marine mammals. It includes seals, walrus, whales, and polar bears. Well-known feedback mechanism acting in the Arctic region may lead to further warming. The Arctic *amplified response* to global warming is the repercussion of global temperature rise. Consequently, Greenland's ice sheet is shrinking drastically at an alarming rate (http://news.uga.edu/releases/article/study-2015-melting-greenland-ice-faster-arctic-warming-0616/, Tedesco et al. 2016).

1.1 FEEDBACK MECHANISM AND ARCTIC AMPLIFICATION

Due to sea ice melting in summer, dark open water areas are exposed, absorbing more heat from the sun (Figure 1.2). More ice melts due to excess heat. The sea ice's loss is one of the Arctic amplification drivers (Figure 1.3) (Slivka 2012; Goldenberg 2012). Permafrost may also play a role in positive feedbacks. As the thawing of permafrost starts, plants and animals frozen in the ground begin to decay. Their decomposition releases carbon dioxide and methane back to the atmosphere. It can further induce warming. The shifting Arctic vegetation also affects the surface brightness and adds up to warming. More water vapour is held up due to more warming of the

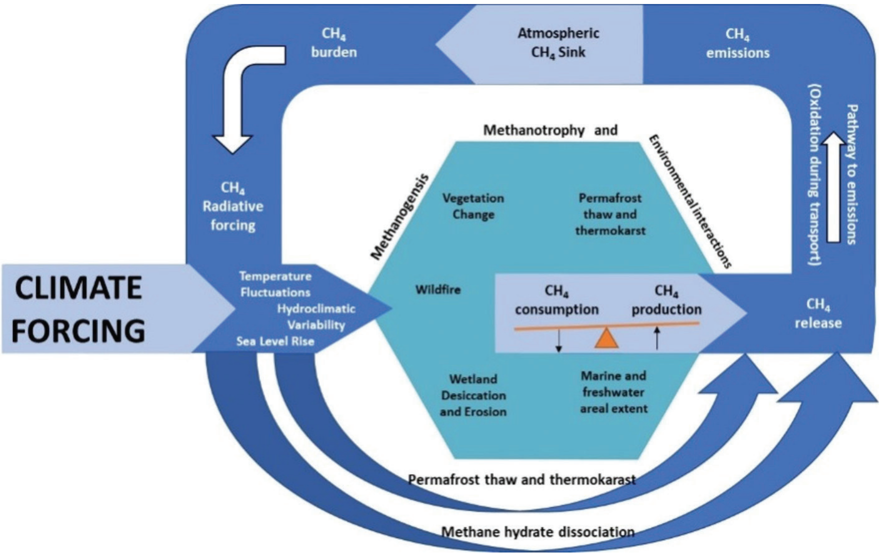


FIGURE 1.2 Feedback mechanism at the Arctic.

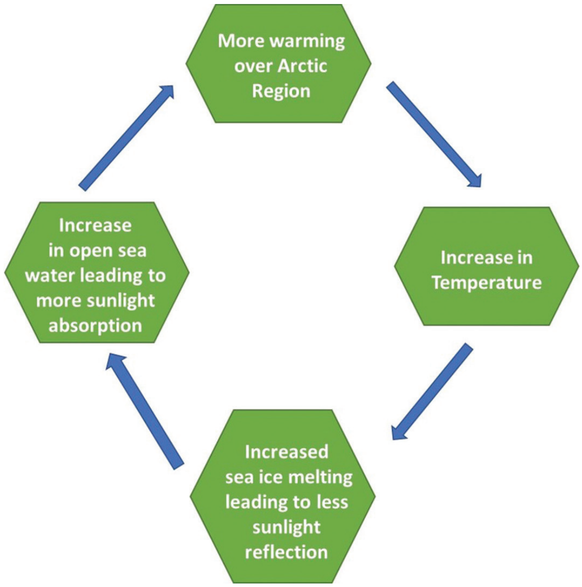


FIGURE 1.3 Arctic amplification.

Arctic atmosphere, which is an important greenhouse gas (Slivka 2012; Goldenberg 2012). In the Arctic, warming is causing further warming in the following manner.

There is no doubt that global warming tends to increase temperatures in the Arctic. It tends to melt ice, decreasing the area covered by sea ice and expanding the scope of darker exposed ocean, which tends to reduce sunlight reflection, as ice is far more reflective than the newly exposed Ocean. It tends to increase the sunlight that is absorbed by the sea. It tends to add to global warming, and the cycle repeats.

Other feedbacks from the loss of Arctic Ocean ice, ranging from a possible slowdown of the so-called "global ocean conveyor belt" to significant shifts in the northern hemisphere's jet stream, could also have severe climatic impacts.

The main consequences of global warming on the Arctic are the increase in temperatures (air and sea), *loss of sea ice* and melting of the *Greenland ice sheet* with a related *cold temperature anomaly*, observed since the 1970s (Foster 2012; Slivka 2012; Goldenberg 2012). Ongoing climate change over the Arctic region is also expected to impact ocean circulation changes, increased input of freshwater (Graeter 2018; Rabe et al. 2011) and ocean acidification (Qi et al. 2017), potential methane releases through the thawing of *permafrost* and methane clathrates (Schuur et al. 2015).

It has also been postulated that due to the potential climate teleconnections to mid-latitudes, these regions are expected to witness a greater frequency of extreme weather events (flooding, fires and drought) (Cohen et al. 2014). It will lead to ecological, biological and phenological changes. Other factors include physical migrations and extinctions (Grebmeier 2012), natural resource stresses, human health, displacement and security issues.

1.2 INDIA AND THE ARCTIC

India's engagement with the Arctic dates back to a century. It was in 1920 when British overseas Dominions signed the Treaty with other signatories like the US, Denmark, France, Italy, Japan, the Netherlands, Norway, Great Britain, Ireland and Sweden concerning Spitsbergen's 'Svalbard Treaty' in February 1920 in Paris.

India has been closely following the Arctic region's developments in the backdrop of the emerging opportunities and challenges due to the global warming-induced melting of the Arctic ice cap. Science, environment, commerce and strategy are the main concerns of India in the Arctic region.

India paved its way in the Arctic by launching a research programme in 2007 to thrust on climate change in the circumpolar north. The primary objectives of the Indian research in Arctic region are as follows:

1. To study the hypothesised teleconnections between the Arctic climate and the Indian monsoon by analysing records archived in the sediment and ice cores from the Arctic glaciers and the Arctic Ocean.
2. To characterise sea ice in the Arctic using satellite data to estimate the effect of global warming on the northern Polar region.
3. To research Arctic glaciers' dynamics and mass budget focusing on the impact of melting glaciers towards sea level changes.
4. To assess the Arctic flora and fauna vis-à-vis their response to anthropogenic activities. Besides, a bi-polar comparison is proposed to be undertaken in life forms.

India launched its first scientific expedition to the Arctic Ocean in 2007. A research base named "Himadri" was established at Ny-Ålesund, Svalbard, Norway, in July 2008 for researching disciplines like glaciology, atmospheric sciences and biological sciences. The area used for the Indian research base is the International Arctic Research Base at Svalbard. A Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) has also been signed with the Norwegian Polar Research Institute of Norway, for cooperation in science, as even with Kings Bay (a company of the Norwegian Government) Ny-Ålesund. It provides logistics and infrastructure facilities for undertaking Arctic research and maintaining the Indian research base 'Himadri' in the Arctic region.

Several scientists from various national institutions have participated in our Arctic programme. India became a member of the Council of the International Arctic Science Committee (IASC) in 2012. India's claim for Observer Status received attention in 2012 with widespread support from all member countries. In recognition of India's commitment and sustained interest in Arctic science, during the Eighth Biennial meeting of the Arctic Council held in Kiruna, Norway on 1 May 2013, under Sweden's Chairmanship, India was provided Observer Status to the Arctic Council.

1.3 BLACK CARBON

In contrast to most atmospheric aerosols, black carbon (BC) aerosols are good candidates for absorbing solar radiation. Due to such absorption, a warming effect on the planet is perceived. On the contrary, other aerosols such as sulphate aerosols provide the cooling effect due to scattering. BC aerosols play a critical role in affecting the climate system by changing and heating the clouds (semi-direct effect) or acting as cloud condensation nuclei (indirect effect). BC aerosols have emerged as third among the most extensive human-generated causes. CO_2 and CH_4, having a present-day radiative forcing of ~0.40 W/m^2 which is ~25% more of the pre-industrial period (Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change 2014).

Despite its importance, only a few modelling studies have addressed BC aerosols' effectiveness in warming the planet relative to CO_2 forcing (e.g. Roberts and Jones 2004; Cook and Highwood 2004; Hansen et al. 2005; Stjern et al. 2017; Smith et al. 2018). The results indicate that the BC aerosols are less effective in warming the earth than CO_2 (Yoshimori and Broccoli 2008). The concept of 'efficacy' to measure forcing agents' effectiveness was introduced by Hansen et al. (2005). The efficacy of BC aerosols emitted by burning of fossil fuel and biomass was 0.930 and 0.80, respectively, when effective radiative forcing (ERF) definition is used to estimate the radiative forcing (Hansen et al. 2005). This cloud enhancement in the lower troposphere dramatically reduces the direct warming effect of the BC aerosols. Stjern et al. (2017) found that multi-model median efficacy of the BC aerosols is less than one (0.80).

The decrease in efficacy with BC aerosols' altitude has been found in some recent studies (Ban-Weiss et al. 2012; Samset and Myhre 2015). Ban-Weiss et al. (2012) showed that near-surface BC aerosols cause warming. On the contrary, when BC aerosols are at heights, the varying climate response from BC aerosols at different sizes arises primarily due to various fast climate adjustments. These are defined as the climate response before any change in the average surface temperature globally (Bala et al. 2010; Ban-Weiss et al. 2012). BC warms the surface through diabatic heating. At heights in increased longwave radiation without heating the body, the absorbed solar radiation is lost to space. We note that the efficacy decreases with the size of BC aerosols. BC aerosols' efficiency to exert more significant radiative forcing due to the direct aerosol effect strengthens with altitude (Samset and Myhre 2011, 2015).

Because of the above, it may be postulated that the in-modulating Arctic Climate BC aerosols play an influential role in further strengthening the feedback mechanism, leading to Arctic amplification, and therefore a detailed investigation on this aspect must be made.

The consequences of the impact of rapid changes in the Arctic region go beyond the coastal states. To respond to such challenges warrants the active participation of all those actors who have a stake in global commons' governance. It requires a legitimate and credible mechanism. The interplay between science and policy can significantly contribute to addressing the complex issues facing the Arctic. India, which has significant expertise in polar research matters due to its long experience of launching annual scientific expeditions to the Antarctic and association with the Antarctic Treaty System, can play a constructive role in securing an influential position in Arctic affairs. As a permanent observer in the Arctic Council, India is committed to contributing to evolve and strengthen the effective cooperative partnerships that can contribute to a safe, stable and secure Arctic.

The warming of the Arctic region has recently gained worldwide attention due to its projected impacts on the global climate system. The effect of anthropogenic BC aerosol on snow is of enduring interest due to its role in aerosol radiative forcing (ARF) and further consequences for the Arctic and global climate changes. Having demonstrated its sincere pursuit of Arctic science ever since the Indian research base is set up at Ny-Ålesund (Svalbard), India has been continuously generating data on BC aerosol over the Arctic region. MoES-Indian Institute of Tropical Meteorology (IITM), Pune (India), participated in the Arctic expedition to study BC over the Himadri research base, Ny-Ålesund. Similarly, CSIR-National Physical Laboratory, New Delhi (India), participated in the Arctic expedition to measure the concentration of carbon monoxide (CO) over the Arctic region to compare it with the CO concentration in the Antarctic area. We discuss here briefly some of the Indian contributions to the assessment of BC and CO in a bid to help understand Arctic climate change and associated amplification vis-à-vis its teleconnection with the tropical countries like India.

1.4 ASSESSMENT OF BLACK CARBON AEROSOLS AND SOLAR RADIATION OVER HIMADRI, NY-ÅLESUND

India ventured into assessing the BC and measuring solar spectral at 'Indian Arctic Station, Himadri', Ny-Ålesund, during 2011–2014. The contribution from long-range transport of pollutants from far-away places is found to dominate the local sources such as emissions from shipping and power plants to the annual cycle with maximum BC mass concentration during winter/early-spring season and minimum during the summer season. Moreover, higher BC concentrations were observed during 2012 as compared to other years during the study period. The aerosol optical depth's (AOD) spectral variations observed during the summer months indicate an immense contribution of fine-mode aerosol particles to the BC mass concentration, particularly during 2012. Further, the zenith skylight spectra in the spectral range of 200–1100 nm indicate maximum particle scattered intensity around 500 nm (Dr. S.M. Sonbawne, personal communication). These results play a vital role in the earth-atmosphere radiation balance and hence exhibit profound influence on regional and global climate changes (Stohl et al. 2013).

Raju et al. (2011) attempted to study the BC radiative forcing over the Indian Arctic Station, Himadri, during the Arctic summer of 2012 by using an aethalometer. Measurements of BC aerosols were carried out continuously over the Indian Arctic Station, Himadri, during the Arctic summer (23 July to 19 August) of 2012. The monthly mean BC mass concentration during July and August was 0.093 ± 0.046 and 0.069 ± 0.050 μg/m^3, respectively. BC mass concentration showed maximum loading during 0800–1600 LT. Transport from distant sources (as observed from air mass back trajectories) apart from some local anthropogenic activities (emissions from shipping and power plants) could be the possible sources for the observed BC concentration at Himadri. Using the OPAC and SBDART models, optical properties and ARF in the spectral range of 0.2–4 μm for composite aerosol and without-BC aerosol at the top of the atmosphere, surface and atmosphere were computed. The presence of BC resulted in positive radiative forcing in the atmosphere leading to a warming effect (+2.1 W/m^2), whereas cooling was observed at the top of the atmosphere (−0.4 W/m^2) and surface (−2.5 W/m^2). BC formed about 57% of atmospheric ARF.

1.5 PRODUCTION OF CARBON MONOXIDE FROM ICE PACKS

Carbon monoxide is the most critical atmospheric gas which is produced due to the combustion of fossil fuel. It is also produced in large amounts by industries and motor vehicles. Carbon monoxide is a poisonous gas that has a short composition in the atmosphere. The hydroxyl radical (OH) gets combined with it chemically and converts it into non-poisonous material. It helps in monitoring the quantity of the hydroxyl compound. Hydroxyl being an oxidiser controls the composition of many greenhouse gases of the atmosphere. Recent studies show that carbon monoxide is continuously produced and liberated in large amounts in glacier areas. Indian scientists also conducted experiments related to carbon monoxide at Indian Research Centre, Maitri, situated in Antarctic Islands. With the help of various experiments, they know about the regular production cycle of carbon monoxide because of regular consideration of solar actinic rays. Consequently, scientists realised that carbon monoxide production is due to a photochemical reaction in Antarctic glaciers (Dr B.C. Arya, personal communication).

It is considered that some organic materials, like formaldehyde (HCHO), that are entrapped in ice crystals are decomposed through photochemical reactions and produced CO. Carbon monoxide, oxygen, nitrogen oxide analyser, solar photometer, portable climate centre, pyrometer, etc. are the main instruments on which experiments are generally conducted in Polar regions.

Indian scientists performed various experiments to produce carbon monoxide from snowpacks and came to know about the regular alterability in carbon monoxide production in Ny-Ålesund in 2008, especially in March and August. Despite all, Indian scientists also measured the concentration of BC, the size, distribution and composition of aerosols, and the amount of water vapour in the atmospheric air of Ny-Ålesund. In the summer of 2008, ozone analyser was used to measure surface ozone concentration (Dr B.C. Arya, personal communication).

Lucknow University, Lucknow, Birbal Sahni Institute of Paleosciences, Lucknow, Jawahar Lal Nehru University, New Delhi, Indian Institute of Technology, Kharagpur, Wadia Institute of Himalayan Geology, Dehradun, and MoES-National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research, Goa, among many others, have participated in the research and contributed to the understanding of climate change in the Arctic regions and its global impacts. Some of the significant Indian initiatives to address climate change issues impacting Arctic regions are detailed below.

1.6 CLIMATE CHANGE AND ARCTIC GLACIERS

Many changes of glaciers of the Arctic have been noticed in previous years. Indian scientists have also shown much interest to get information related to these changes in glaciers. They have studied West Craig, Borger, and Mindralavan Glaciers in this reference.

1.7 GEOMORPHOLOGY AND SEDIMENTOLOGY OF DIVERSIFIED MORPHOLOGICAL ZONES OF GLACIATED TERRAIN OF THE NY-ÅLESUND

Diversified surface processes of the Ny-Ålesund region carve the landscape and exhibit distinguished Arctic's landforms. Many studies are done on climate change using various proxies. Yet, meagre attention has been paid to geomorphological and sedimentological parameters. Sediment characteristics, AMS^{14}C dates and geomorphic features have been used to reconstruct paleoclimate. Based on the landforms and sediments, this region has been classified into five morphological zones: glacial (moraines GL), proglacial (lacustrine deposits LD), outwash plain (sand deposits OWP), fluvial deposits (FD) and coastal cliff (CC). The glacial moraines (GL) suggest devoid of any sedimentary structures and coarse-grained, matrix-supported boulders, and it is composed of unconsolidated, unstratified, massive.

In contrast, OWP, LD, FD and CC are semi-consolidated, stratified, fine-grained layers of sand, silt, and clay with gravels and faint sedimentary structures. CC's and LD's sediments are very poorly sorted, very positively skewed and very leptokurtic, and is comprised of medium to fine sand, silt and clay. The sediment characteristics of various morphological zones' geomorphic features explain that this region was carved and dominated by glaciers (Prof. D.S. Singh, personal communication).

The poorly sorted sediments of all the geomorphological zones explain the depositional environment's fluctuating energy, especially under warm climate at interglacial stages during 44, 27, 12, 10.5 ka BP. It may be inferred that the prevailing environment was not consistent and persistent for an extended period (Schuur et al. 2015).

1.8 QUARTZ GRAIN MICROTEXTURE AND MAGNETIC SUSCEPTIBILITY ASSESSMENT OF THE NY-ÅLESUND REGION

The quartz grain microtexture reveals predominant glacial activities in the top 40 cm of the section, while the middle 40–55 cm part represents some aeolian activities along with glacial signatures. The bottommost part, in addition to glacial markers, exhibits some aqueous evidence as well. The lithology shows medium-grained sand in the upper leg and coarse-grained sand with occasional shell pieces in the lower leg. Angular gravels (2–12 mm) are present throughout with increasing size from top to bottom. Based on the above observations and ^{14}C AMS dates, it can be summarised that after the Last Glacial Maximum (LGM), the pre-Holocene period shows rapid glacial retreat, followed by a warmer period during the early Holocene. Mid- and late Holocene is marked by a predominantly glacial environment characterised by meltwater streams originating from the glaciers and flowing into the fjord. Magnetic susceptibility studies have also been attempted. Four alternate stages of colder and warmer phases have been established (Dr R. Kar, personal communication). Though some similarities among the different climatic phases are discernible between the quartz grain microtexture and magnetic susceptibility studies, they are not entirely compatible, probably due to their different responses to the climatic variations (http://www.sciencemag.org/news/2013/08/scienceshot-arctic-warming-twice-fast-rest-world).

Indubitably, the sea ice is frozen ocean water that grows and melts in the ocean. On the contrary, icebergs, glaciers and ice shelves float in the sea, having originated on the land. Sea ice is typically covered with snow, and Arctic sea ice keeps the Polar regions cool. It also helps modulate and control the global climate. Having a bright surface, 80% of the sunlight that strikes sea ice gets reflected into space. As sea ice melts in the summer, it exposes the dark ocean surface. Therefore, instead of reflecting 80% of the sunlight, the ocean absorbs 90% of the sunlight. Thus, the oceans heat up, and Arctic temperatures rise further.

A slight rise in temperature at the poles leads to still more significant warming over time, thus making the Polar regions the most sensitive areas to a subtle change in earth's climates. Accordingly, both the thickness and extent of the Arctic's summer sea ice have shown a dramatic decline over the past 30 years, consistent with observations of a warming Arctic. The loss of sea ice can also accelerate global warming trends and change climate patterns.

Sea ice extent is a measurement of ocean area where there is at least some sea ice. Usually, scientists define a minimum concentration threshold to mark the ice edge; the most common cut-off is 15%.

The Arctic sea ice extent is focused more closely than other aspects of sea ice because satellites measure the volume more accurately than other measurements, such as thickness. The Arctic's sea ice minimum is considered when the Arctic's sea ice exhibits the lowest areal extent. It occurs at the end of the summer melting season. The Arctic sea ice maximum is regarded as the day of the year when Arctic sea ice reaches its most considerable areal extent. It occurs at the end of the winter cold season.

1.9 REMOTE SENSING OBSERVATIONS AND MODEL REANALYSIS

Applications of remote sensing techniques and modelling have been applied to assess and quantify the Arctic sea ice loss in July–September, with particular attention to September on a daily, monthly, annual and decadal basis.

Coincidently, the 12 lowest extents in the satellite era occurred in the last 12 years. It is attributed to the impacts of land-ocean warming and the northward heat advection into the Arctic Ocean over the past 40 years (1979–2018); actual warming rates have been identified in the Arctic Ocean in the last 40 years. The study demonstrates the linkages of sea ice dynamics to ice drifting and accelerated melting. It occurs due to persistent low pressure and high air-ocean temperatures, supplemented by the coupled ocean-atmospheric forcing (http://news.uga.edu/releases/article/study-2015-melting-greenland-ice-faster-arctic-warming-0616/). The accelerated decline is recorded in the Arctic sea ice extent and sea ice concentration over the past four decades.

The ocean-atmosphere coupled mechanism plays a vital role in the global climate change. Sea ice variability and trends were computed using satellite and model reanalysis measurements for the whole Arctic and each of its nine regions: (i) Seas of Okhotsk and Japan, (ii) the Bering Sea, (iii) Hudson Bay, (iv) the Baffin Bay/Labrador Sea, (v) Gulf of St. Lawrence, (vi) Greenland Sea, (vii) Kara and Barents Seas, (viii) the Arctic Ocean and (ix) Canadian Archipelago. Overall, Arctic sea ice declined in all seasons and on a yearly average basis, although the highest and lowest negative trends were recorded in summer and winter/spring, respectively. The study reveals that the Arctic Ocean, Kara and Barents Seas, the Greenland Sea, and the Baffin Bay region are majorly responsible for the total negative sea ice extent trend in the Arctic (Dr. Avinash Kumar, personal communication). The study demonstrated the interannual and seasonal variabilities of Arctic sea ice and interactions among the atmosphere, ice and ocean (Tedesco et al. 2016).

1.10 ASSESSMENT OF SPATIO-TEMPORAL VARIABILITY OF SNOWMELT ACROSS SVALBARD

Indian researchers have monitored snowmelt over the Svalbard region as significant changes in the interannual variation of Arctic snow and sea ice are connected to the global climate changes using active microwave sensors. These sensors are frequently used to detect surface melting because of their sensitivity to the presence of liquid water in snow/ice. Data of QuikScat, OSCAT, ASCAT, and OSCAT-2 are used to map the annual melt duration and summer melt onset for the Svalbard archipelago. It provides one of the most extended and continuous radar backscatter records to estimate snowmelt onset and melt duration on Svalbard spanning from 2000 to 2017. A single threshold-based model was used to detect snowmelt timing; the threshold was calculated using meteorological data from the human-crewed weather stations. The results capture the timing and extent of melt events caused by warm air temperature and precipitation because of the influx of moist, mild air from the Norwegian and Barents seas. The highest melt duration and earlier melt onset occurred in southernmost and western Svalbard in response to the influence of the warm west Spitsbergen current. Compared to previous studies, we found considerable interannual variability and regional differences. Though the record is short, there is an indication of an increasing trend in total days of melt duration and earlier summer melt onset date possibly linked to the general warming trend (Dr A.J. Luis, personal communication). Climate indices such as Interdecadal Pacific Oscillation and Pacific Decadal Oscillation are well correlated with onset melt and duration across Svalbard. With the reported year-after-year decrease in sea ice cover over the Arctic Ocean, the trend towards longer snowmelt duration inferred from this study is expected to enhance the Arctic amplification (McCarthy 2011).

1.11 ASSESSMENT OF MASS BALANCE OF THE ARCTIC GLACIERS

Prof. A.L. Ramanathan (personal communication) studied the changes in the area from 1993 to 2018 and mass balance of Vestre Broggerbreen glacier, Ny-Ålesund, Arctic from 2011 to 2017. The glaciated area had decreased from 3.96 km^2 in 1993 to 3.57 km^2 in 2018. Its range varied between 0.011 and 0.02 km^2, resulting into a total area loss of 0.39 km^2 (~10% at 0.016 km^2 a-**1**). A comparatively rapid decrease in the glaciated area was found during 1998–2010 (0.02 km^2 a-1), whereas less retreat rate was found in 1993–1998 (0.011 km^2 a-1) and 2010–2018 (0.012 km^2 a-1 13). The Vestre Broggerbreen glacier's mass balance was negative throughout the entire study period (2011–2018). Mass balance ranged between −0.08 (2013–14) and −1.22 m w.e. (2015–2016) with a cumulative mass balance of −4.31 m w.e. (0.016 km^2 a-1). A strong relationship between mass balance and summer temperature was found with $R^2 = 0.97$ at $P < 0.05$ (Rajmund 2007).

1.12 SCIENTIFIC EXPLORATION OF KONGSFJORDEN

Kongsfjorden, an icy archipelago with a length of about 40 km and a width ranging from 5 to 10 km, is a glacial-fjord in the Arctic (Svalbard) which lies in the N-W coast of Spitsbergen, the main island of Svalbard. It is a site where warmer waters of the Atlantic meet the colder waters of the Arctic. An open fjord without a sill is primarily under the influence of the adjacent shelf processes. The Transformed Atlantic Water (TWA) from the west Spitsbergen current and the glacier-melt freshwater at the inner fjord create intense temperature and salinity gradients along the fjord's length. Southerly winds will result in down-welling at the coast. Such winds also hinder the exchange processes that take place between the shelf and the fjord, while the northerly winds will move the TWA water below the upper layer towards the coast. During summer, the meltwater not only stratifies the upper water column but significantly alters the turbidity.

It also impacts the seasonal changes in the biomass of phytoplankton. Thus, any altered interaction between the Atlantic water and the (turbid) meltwaters from tidal glaciers on a seasonal to interannual timescale is likely to affect the fjord's aquatic ecosystem. The long-term changes in the fjord hydrography and sedimentation will affect the benthic ecosystem.

Against the above backdrop of the fjord system's climate sensitivity, India has evolved a multi-institutional programme of long-term monitoring of the Kongsfjorden. It was initiated by the deployment of an ocean-atmosphere mooring system along regular repeat transects. It was designed to measure seasonal physical, chemical and biological parameters to establish a long-term comprehensive data set on physical, chemical, biological and atmospheric measurements. The influence of interaction between the warm Atlantic water and the cold glacial-melt fresh water and their effects on the biological productivity and phytoplankton species composition and diversity within the fjord are equally essential to be addressed.

1.13 DEPLOYMENT OF UNDERWATER MOORED OBSERVATORY IN THE KONGSFJORDEN FJORD

The Kongsfjorden is a natural laboratory. It is ideal for studying Arctic climate variability. Scientists predict that the melting of the Arctic glaciers will trigger patterns of weather and ocean circulations. Such changes could affect the climate of other parts of the world. One of the significant limitations in the logistics has been to reach the location and collect data, especially during the severe Arctic winter. The IndARC observatory is an attempt to overcome this lacuna. Data collected by IndARC would be used for climate modelling studies to understand the Arctic processes that influence Indian monsoons. The IndARC, the country's first underwater moored observatory deployed in the Kongsfjorden fjord, halfway between Norway and the North Pole, represents a significant milestone in India's scientific endeavours in the Arctic region. The engineers and scientists from the MoES-National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research (NCPOR), MoES-National Institute of Ocean Technology (NIOT) and MoES-Indian National Centre for Ocean Information Services (INCOIS) developed the IndARC. It was deployed from *RV Lance*, a research vessel belonging to the Norwegian Polar Institute. The observatory is moored and anchored at a depth of 192 m. It has an array of 10 state-of-the-art oceanographic sensors strategically positioned at various depths in the water. The sensors were programmed to collect real-time data on seawater temperature, salinity, ocean currents and other vital parameters of the fjord (https://ncpor.res.in/).

The correlation between less and more ice in the Arctic is very close to how the monsoon behaves. Just as we know that the *El Nino effect* (hot ocean temperatures in the Equatorial Pacific) is having a global impact on weather patterns, including the Indian monsoon, we learn that the Arctic ice also has a significant effect. The Arctic precipitation and temperatures from June to October hint at the monsoon likely to occur in the coming year. The oscillation in the air creates the western disturbance as it moves over ice and snow in the Arctic. If there is less oscillation, the air will have less moisture, leading to less rainfall in the monsoons.

1.14 EXPLORING TELECONNECTION BETWEEN ARCTIC CLIMATE AND TROPICAL INDIAN MONSOON

The climate change over the Arctic region and North Atlantic shows a mechanistic link with the Indian Summer Monsoon (ISM) during the Holocene. The marine and continental archives of ISM precipitation suggest significant shifts during the Holocene aligned with the Arctic climate over multi-time scales. The ISM strengthened during the Greenlandian (11.7–8.3 kyr BP), showing variable but overall decreasing precipitation during the Northgrippian (8.3–4.2 kyr BP). Synchronicity exists in palaeoclimatic records. It could be due to possible age errors and resolution and proxy response to the changing climate. During the Meghalayan age (4.2 kyr to recent), the Indian subcontinent witnessed a protracted dry event beginning at ~4.2 kyr BP and ended at ~3.4 kyr BP. Other significant events of the Meghalayan age include the Medieval Climate Anomaly (MCA). The Current Warm Period (CWP) showing a strong ISM, interrupted by the Little Ice Age (LIA) – a cold phase with low precipitation in the Indian subcontinent (Prof. A.K. Gupta, personal communication). The millennial-scale variability in the ISM is associated with the Heinrich and Bond events. The cooling in the Arctic sea, ice expansion in the North Atlantic and weakening of the Atlantic overturning meridional oscillations due to high freshwater flux and ice rafting in the North Atlantic caused weak ISM precipitation over the south and southeast Asia (http://www.rivm.nl/en/Documents_and_publications/Common_and_Present/Newsmessages/2016/Documentary_Sea_Blind_on_Dutch_Television).

In conclusion, we may submit that India is striving to obtain deep insight into the climate changes occurring over the Arctic region as its impacts are expected to influence Indian climate. Sustained monitoring and observational network shall be an added advantage to strengthen our understanding of Arctic climate and its teleconnection with Indian monsoons.

REFERENCES

Bala G, Caldeira K and Nemani R 2010 Fast versus slow response in climate change: implications for the global hydrological cycle. *Clim. Dyn.* 35: 423–34.

Ban-Weiss GA, Cao L, Bala G and Caldeira K 2012 Dependence of climate forcing and response on the altitude of black carbon aerosols. *Clim. Dyn.* 38: 897–911.

Cohen J et al. 2014. Recent Arctic amplification and extreme mid-latitude weather (PDF). *Nat. Geosci.* 7 (9): 627–637.

Cook J and Highwood EJ 2004 Climate response to tropospheric absorbing aerosols in an intermediate general-circulation model Q. *J. R. Meteorol. Soc.* 130: 175–91.

Foster JM 2012. From 2 satellites, the big picture on ice melt. New York Times.

Goldenberg S 2012. Greenland ice sheet melted at an unprecedented rate during July. In *The Guardian*. London. Retrieved 4 November 2012.

Graeter KA 2018. Ice core records of west greenland melt and climate forcing. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 45 (C7): 3164–3172.

Grebmeier J 2012. Shifting patterns of life in the pacific arctic and sub-arctic seas. *Ann. Rev. Marine Sci.* 4: 63–78.

Hansen J et al. 2005. Efficacy of climate forcings. *J. Geophys. Res.* 110: 1–45.

McCarthy JJ 2001. *Climate Change 2001: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Qi D et al. 2017. Increase in acidifying water in the western Arctic Ocean. *Nat. Climate Change* 7 (3): 195–199.

Rabe B et al. 2011. An assessment of Arctic Ocean freshwater content changes from the 1990s to the 2006–2008 period. *Deep-Sea Res. Part I* 56 (2): 173.

Rajmund P 2007. Recent air-temperature changes in the Arctic (PDF). *Ann. Glaciol.* 46: 316–324.

Raju MP, Safai PD, Rao PSP, Devara PCS and Budhavant KB 2011. Seasonal characteristics of black carbon aerosols over a high-altitude station in Southwest India. *Atmos. Res.* 100 (1): 103–110.

Roberts DL and Jones A 2004. Climate sensitivity to black carbon aerosol from fossil fuel combustion. *J. Geophys. Res.* 109: D16202.

Samset B H and Myhre G 2011. Vertical dependence of black carbon, sulphate and biomass burning aerosol radiative forcing. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 38: L24802.

Samset BH and Myhre G 2015. Climate response to externally mixed black carbon as a function of altitude. *J. Geophys. Res. Atmos.* 120: 2913–2927.

Schuur EAG et al. 2015. Climate change and the permafrost carbon feedback. *Nature* 520 (7546): 171–179.

Slivka K 2012. Rare burst of melting seen in greenland ice sheet. NYTimes.com. Retrieved 4 November 2012.

Smith CJ et al. 2018. Understanding rapid adjustments to diverse forcing agents. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 45, 12023–12031.

Source: https://arctic.noaa.gov/Report-Card/Report-Card-2019.

Source: https://ncpor.res.in/.

Source: http://news.uga.edu/releases/article/study-2015-melting-greenland-ice-faster-arctic-warming-0616/.

Source: http://www.rivm.nl/en/Documents_and_publications/Common_and_Present/News messages/2016/Documentary_Sea_Blind_on_Dutch_Television.

Source: http://www.sciencemag.org/news/2013/08/scienceshot-arctic-warming-twice-fast-rest-world.

Stjern CW et al. 2017. Rapid adjustments cause weak surface temperature response to increased black carbon concentrations. *J. Geophys. Res. Atmos.* 122: 11462–81.

Stohl A, Klimont Z, Eckhardt S, Kupiainen K, Chevchenko VP, Kopeikin VM, and Novigatsky AN 2013. Black carbon in the Arctic: the underestimated role of gas flaring and residential combustion emissions. *Atmos. Chem. Phys.* 13 (17): 8833–8855.

Tedesco M, Mote T, Fettweis X, Hanna E, Jeyaratnam J, Booth JF, Datta R, and Briggs K, 2016. Arctic cutoff high drives the poleward shift of a new Greenland melting record. *Nat. Commun.* 7: 11723.

Yoshimori M and Broccoli A 2008. Equilibrium response of an atmosphere-mixed layer ocean model to various radiative forcing agents: global and zonal mean response. *J. Clim.* 21: 4399.

Climate Change Assessment over the Arctic Region

Bala G , Caldeira K and Nemani R 2010 Fast versus slow response in climate change: implications for the global hydrological cycle. Clim. Dyn. 35: 423–434.

Ban-Weiss GA , Cao L , Bala G and Caldeira K 2012 Dependence of climate forcing and response on the altitude of black carbon aerosols. Clim. Dyn. 38: 897–911.

Cohen J et al. 2014. Recent Arctic amplification and extreme mid-latitude weather (PDF). Nat. Geosci. 7 (9): 627–637.

Cook J and Highwood EJ 2004 Climate response to tropospheric absorbing aerosols in an intermediate general-circulation model Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc. 130: 175–191.

Foster JM 2012. From 2 satellites, the big picture on ice melt. New York Times.

Goldenberg S 2012. Greenland ice sheet melted at an unprecedented rate during July. In The Guardian. London. Retrieved 4 November 2012 .

Graeter KA 2018. Ice core records of west greenland melt and climate forcing. Geophys. Res. Lett. 45 (C7): 3164–3172.

Grebmeier J 2012. Shifting patterns of life in the pacific arctic and sub-arctic seas. Ann. Rev. Marine Sci. 4: 63–78.

Hansen J et al. 2005. Efficacy of climate forcings. J. Geophys. Res. 110: 1–45.

McCarthy JJ 2001. Climate Change 2001: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Qi D et al. 2017. Increase in acidifying water in the western Arctic Ocean. Nat. Climate Change 7 (3): 195–199.

Rabe B et al. 2011. An assessment of Arctic Ocean freshwater content changes from the 1990s to the 2006–2008 period. Deep-Sea Res. Part I 56 (2): 173.

Rajmund P 2007. Recent air-temperature changes in the Arctic (PDF). Ann. Glaciol. 46: 316–324.

Raju MP , Safai PD , Rao PSP , Devara PCS and Budhavant KB 2011. Seasonal characteristics of black carbon aerosols over a high-altitude station in Southwest India. Atmos. Res. 100 (1): 103–110.

Roberts DL and Jones A 2004. Climate sensitivity to black carbon aerosol from fossil fuel combustion. J. Geophys. Res. 109: D16202.

Samset B H and Myhre G 2011. Vertical dependence of black carbon, sulphate and biomass burning aerosol radiative forcing. Geophys. Res. Lett. 38: L24802.

Samset BH and Myhre G 2015. Climate response to externally mixed black carbon as a function of altitude. J. Geophys. Res. Atmos. 120: 2913–2927.

Schuur EAG et al. 2015. Climate change and the permafrost carbon feedback. Nature 520 (7546): 171–179.

Slivka K 2012. Rare burst of melting seen in greenland ice sheet. NYTimes.com. Retrieved 4 November 2012 .

Smith CJ et al. 2018. Understanding rapid adjustments to diverse forcing agents. Geophys. Res. Lett. 45, 12023–12031.

Source : https://arctic.noaa.gov/Report-Card/Report-Card-2019.

Source : https://ncpor.res.in/.

Source: http://news.uga.edu/releases/article/study-2015-melting-greenland-ice-faster-arctic-warming-0616/.

Source : http://www.rivm.nl/en/Documents_and_publications/Common_and_Present/Newsmessages/2016/Documentary_Sea_Blind_on_Dutch_Television.

Source : http://www.sciencemag.org/news/2013/08/scienceshot-arctic-warming-twice-fast-rest-world.

Stjern CW et al. 2017. Rapid adjustments cause weak surface temperature response to increased black carbon concentrations. J. Geophys. Res. Atmos. 122: 11462–11481.

Stohl A , Klimont Z , Eckhardt S , Kupiainen K , Chevchenko VP , Kopeikin VM , and Novigatsky AN 2013. Black carbon in the Arctic: the underestimated role of gas flaring and residential combustion emissions. *Atmos. Chem. Phys* . 13 (17): 8833–8855.

Tedesco M , Mote T , Fettweis X , Hanna E , Jeyaratnam J , Booth JF , Datta R , and Briggs K , 2016. Arctic cutoff high drives the poleward shift of a new Greenland melting record. *Nat.*

Commun . 7: 11723.
Yoshimori M and Broccoli A 2008. Equilibrium response of an atmosphere-mixed layer ocean model to various radiative forcing agents: global and zonal mean response. J. Clim. 21: 4399.

Arctic Weather and Climate Patterns

J. C. Fyfe , K. von Salzen , N. P. Gillett , V. K. Arora , G. M. Flato , and J. R. McConnell , One hundred years of Arctic surface temperature variation due to anthropogenic influence, Nature Scientific Reports 3, 2013, 2645.

D.-Y. Gong , S.-W. Wang , and J.-H. Zhu , East Asian winter monsoon and Arctic Oscillation, Geophysical Research Letters 28, 2001, 2073–2076, doi: 10.1029/2000GL012311.C.

G. Grunseich and B. Wang , Arctic sea ice patterns driven by the Asian summer monsoon, Journal of Climate 29, 2016, 9097–9112.

L. C. Hamilton and M. Lemcke-Stampone , Arctic warming and your weather: public belief in the connection, International Journal of Climatology 34, 2014, 1723–1728, doi: 10.1002/joc.3796.

IPCC , Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, S. Solomon , D. Qin , M. Manning , Z. Chen , M. Marquis , K. B. Averyt , M. Tignor , and H. L. Miller , eds., Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK and New York, NY, 2007, p. 996.

E. Kalnay , M. Kanamitsu , R. Kistler , W. Collins , D. Deaven , L. S. Gandin , M. Iredell , S. Saha , G. White , J. Woollen , Y. Zhu , M. Chelliah , W. Ebisuzaki , W. Higgins , J. Janowiak , C. Kingste , C. Ropelewski , J. Wang , and A. Leetmaa , The NMC/NCAR 40-year reanalysis project. Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society 77, 1996.

National Snow and Ice Data Center. All About Arctic Climatology and Meteorology https://nsidc.org/cryosphere/arctic-meteorology/.

J. E. Overland and M. Wang , Arctic-midlatitude weather linkages in North America, Polar Science 16, 2018, 1–9.

J. E. Overland and M. Wang , Large-scale atmospheric circulation changes are associated with the recent loss of Arctic sea ice, Tellus 62A, 2010, 1–9, doi: 10.1111/j.1600-0870.2009.00421.x.

J. Overland , J. A. Francis , R. Hall , E. Hanna , S. J. Kim , and T. Vihma , The melting arctic and midlatitude weather patterns: are they connected? Journal of Climate 28(20), 7917–7932. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-14-00822.1.

D. W. Thompson and J. M. Wallace , Regional climate impacts of the Northern Hemisphere annular mode, Science 293, 2001, 85–89, doi: 10.1126/science.1058958.

T. Vihma , Effects of arctic sea ice decline on weather and climate: a review, Surveys in Geophysics 35, 2014, 1175–1214.

Investigation of GPS-Derived Total Electron Content (TEC) and Scintillation Index for Indian Arctic and Antarctic Stations

Aarons, J. , 1982. Global morphology of ionospheric scintillations. Proc. IEEE 70(4), 360–378.

Aarons, J. , Mullen, J. P. , Whitney, H. E. , 1981. UHF scintillation activity over polar latitudes. Geophys. Res. Lett. 8(3), 277–280.

Basler, R. P. , DeWitt, R. N. , 1962. The height of ionospheric irregularities in the auroral zone. J. Geophys. Res. 67, 587–593.

Basu, S. , Basu, S. , Weber, E. J. , Coley, W. R. , 1988. Case study of polar cap scintillation modelling using DE-2 irregularity measurements at 800 km. Radio Sci. 23, 545.

Basu, S. , Valladares, C. , 1999. Global aspects of plasma structures. J. Atmos. Sol. Terr. Phys. 61, 127–139.

Da Rasa, A. V. , Waldman, H. , Bendito, J. , Garriott, O. K. , 1973. The response of the ionospheric electron content to fluctuations in solar activity. J. Atmos. Terr. Phys. 35, 1429–1442.

Feichter, E. , Leitinger, R. , 1997. A 22-year cycle in the F-layer ionisation of the ionosphere. Ann. Geophys. 15, 1015–1027.
Forte, B. , Radicella, S. M. , 2002. A different approach to the analysis of GPS scintillation data. Ann. Geophys. 45(3–4), 551–561.
Kersley, L. , Russell, C. D. , Rice, D. L. , 1995. Phase scintillations and irregularities in the northern polar ionosphere. Radio Sci. 30, 619–629.
Krankowski, A. , Shagimuratov, I. , 2006. Impact of TEC Fluctuations in the Antarctic ionosphere on GPS positioning oczapowski St. 1,10–957. Russ Artif. Satell. 41(1), doi: 10.2478/V10018-007-0005-5.
Lansinger, J. M. , Fremeuw, E. J. , 1967. The scale size of scintillation-producing irregularities in the auroral ionosphere. J. Atmos. Terr. Phys. 29, 1229–1242.
Rino, C. L. , Matthews, S. J. , 1980. On the morphology of auroral zone radio wave scintillation. J. Geophys. Res. 85, 4139.
Rodger, A. S. , Pinnock, M. , Dudney, J. R. , Baker, K. B. , Greenwald, R. A. , 1994. A new mechanism for polar patch formation. J. Geophys. Res. 99, 6425–6436.
Soicher, H. , 1988. Travelling ionospheric disturbances (TIDs) at mid-latitude: solar cycle phase dependence. Radio Sci. 23, 283–291.
Sojka, J. J. , Bowline, M. D. , Schunk, R. W. , Decker, D. T. , Valladares, C. E. , Sheehan, R. , Anderson, D. N. , Heelis, R. A. , 1993. Modelling polar cap F-region patches using time-varying convection. Geophys. Res. Lett. 20(17), 1783–1786.
Tsunoda, R. T. , 1988. High-latitude F-region irregularities: a review and synthesis. Rev. Geophys. 26, 719–760.
Valladares, C. E. , Basu, S. , Buchau, J. , Friis-Christiansen, E. , 1994. Experimental evidence for the formation and entry of patches into the polar cap. Radio Sci. 29, 167–194.
Van Velthoven, P. J. , 1990. Medium-scale irregularities in the ionospheric electron content, Ph.D. Thesis, Technische Universiteit Eindhoven.
Weber, E. J. , Buchau, J. , Moore, J. G. , Sharber, J. R. , Livingston, R. C. , Winningham, J. D. , Reinisch, B. W. , 1984. F-layer ionisation patches in the polar cap. J. Geophys. Res. 89, 1683–1694.
Weber, E. J. , Klobuchar, J. A. , Buchau, J. , Carlson, H. C. , Livingston, R. C. , de la Beaujardiere, O. , McCreday, M. , Moore, J. G. , Bishop, J. G. , 1986. Polar cap F-layer patches: structure and dynamics. J. Geophys. Res. 91, 2121–2129.
Whitney, H. E. , Aarons, J. , Malik, C. , 1969. A proposed index for measuring ionospheric scintillations. Planet. Space Sci. 17, 1069–1073.

Multi-Year Measurements of Black Carbon Aerosols and Solar Radiation over Himadri, Ny-Ålesund

Arnold, S.R. , Law, K.S. , Brock, C.A. et al., 2016. Arctic air pollution: Challenges and opportunities for the next decade. *Elementa: Science of the Anthropocene*, 4, 000104, ISSN 2325-1026.
Babu, S.S. , Chaubey, J.P. , Moorthy, K.K. , Gogoi, M.M. , Kompalli, S.K. , Sreekanth, V. , Bagare, S.P. , Bhatt, B.C. , Gaur, V.K. , Prabhu, T.P. , and Singh, N.S. , 2011. High altitude (~4520 m amsl) measurements of black carbon aerosols over western trans-Himalayas: seasonal heterogeneity and source apportionment. *J. Geophys. Res.* 116, D24201. http://dx.doi.org/10.1029/2011JD016722.
Barrie, L.A. , 1986. Arctic air pollution an overview of current knowledge. Atmospheric Environment. 20, 643–663.
Chambers, J.M. , Cleveland, W.S. , Kleiner, B , and Tukey, P.A. , 1983. Graphical methods for data Analysis. Duxbury Press. Wadsworth & Brooks / Cole Statistics/Probability Series.
Clarke, A.D. and Noone, K.J. , 1985. Soot in Arctic snowpack: A cause for perturbation in radiative transfer. Atmospheric Environment. 19, 2045–2053.
Corbett, J.J. , Lack, J.J. , Winebrake Harder, S. , Silberman, J.A. , and Gold, M. , 2010. Arctic shipping D. A. emissions inventories and future scenarios. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics. 10(19), 9689–9704, doi:10.5194/acp-10-9689-2010.

Croft, B. , Martin, R.V. , Leaitch, W.R. , Tunved, P., Breider, T.J. , D' Andrea, S.D. , and Pierce, J. R. , 2016. Processes controlling the annual cycle of Arctic aerosol number and size distributions. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 16, 3665–3682. www.atmos-chem-phys.net/16/3665/2016/; doi:10.5194/acp-16-3665-2016.

DeAngelo, B.E. , 2011. An assessment of emissions and mitigation options for black carbon for the Arctic Council. Technical report of the Arctic Council Task Force on Short-Lived Climate Forcers. Tromso: Arctic Council.

Deshpande, C.G. and Kamra, A.K. , 2014. Physical properties of the arctic summer aerosol particles in relation to sources at Ny-Ålesund, Svalbard. J. Earth Syst. Sci. 123 (1), 201–212.

Doherty, S.J. , Warren, S.G. , Grenfell, T.C. , Clarke, A.D. , Brandt , and R.E., 2010. Light Absorption from Impurities in Arctic Snow. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 10, 1647–11680.

Draxler, R.R. and Hess, G. D. , 1998. An overview of the HYSPLIT 4 modelling system for trajectories, dispersion and deposition, Aust. Met. Mag. 47, 295–308.

Dubovik, O. , Holben, B. , Eck, T.F. , Smirnov, A. , Kaufman, Y.J. , King, M.D. , Tanré, D. , and Slutsker, I. , 2002. Variability of absorption and optical properties of key aerosol types observed in world wide locations. Atmos. Sci. 59(3), 590–608. http://dx.doi.org/10.1175/1520-0469(2002),059-590:VOAAOP,2.0.CO;2.

Eckhardt, S. , Hermansen, O. , Grythe, H. , Fiebig, M. , Stebel, K. , Cassiani, M. , Baecklund, A. , and Stohl, A. , 2013. The influence of cruise ship emissions on air pollution in Svalbard — a harbinger of a more polluted Arctic? Atmos. Chem. Phys. 13, 8401–8409. http://dx.doi.org/10.5194/acp-13-8401-2013.

Garrett, T.J. , Brattstrom, S. , Sharma, S. , and Worthy D.E.J. , 2011. The role of scavenging in the seasonal transport of black carbon and sulfate to the Arctic. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 38, L16805. doi:10.1029/2011GL048221.

Gogoi, M.M. , Suresh Babu, S. , Krishna Moorthy, K. , Thakur, R.C. , Chaubey, J.P. , and Nair, V.S. 2016. Aerosol black carbon over Svalbard regions of Arctic. Polar Science. 10(2016), 60–70.

Granier, C. , Niemeier, U. , Jungclaus, J.H. , Emmons, L. , Hess, P. , Lamarque, J.F. , Walters, S. , and Brasseur, G. P. , 2006. Ozone pollution from future ship traffic in the Arctic northern passages, *Geophys. Res. Lett.,* 33, L13807. doi:10.1029/2006GL026180.

Hansen, J. , Nazarenko, L. , 2004. Soot climate forcing via snow and ice albedos. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 101(2), 423–428.

Hirdman, D. , Aspmo, K. , Burkhart J.F. , Eckhardt, S. , Sodemann, H. , and Stohl, A. , 2009. Transport of mercury in the Arctic atmosphere: evidence for a spring-time net sink and summer-time source. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 36, L12814. doi:10.1029/2009GL038345.

Hirdman, D. , et al. 2010. Long-term trends of black carbon and sulphate aerosol in the Arctic: Changes in atmospheric transport and source region emissions. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 10, 9351–9368. doi: 10.5194/acp-10-9351-2010.

Huang, L. , Gong, S.L. , Sharma, S. , Lavoué, D., Jia, C.Q. , 2010b. A trajectory analysis of atmospheric transport of black carbon aerosols to Canadian High Arctic in winter and spring (1990–2005). Atmos. Chem. Phys. Discuss. 10(2), 2221–2244. doi:10.5194/acpd1022212010.

Ikeda, K. , Tanimoto, H. , Sugita, T. , Akiyoshi, H. , Kanaya, Y. , Zhu, C. , and Taketani, F. , 2017. Tagged tracer simulations of black carbon in the Arctic: transport, source contributions, and budget. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 17, 10515–10533. https://doi.org/10.5194/acp-17-10515-2017.

Koch, D. , Schulz, M. , Kinne, S. , McNaughton, C. , Spackman, J.R. , Balkanski, Y. , Bauer, S. , Berntsen, T. , Bond, T.C. , Boucher, O. , Chin, M. , Clarke, A. , De Luca, N. , Dentener, F. , Diehl, T. , Dubovik, O. , Easter, R. , Fahey, D.W. , Feichter, J. , Fillmore, D. , Freitag, S. , Ghan, S. , Ginoux, P. , Gong, S. , Horowitz, L. , Iversen, T. , Kirkevåg, A., Klimont, Z. , Kondo, Y. , Krol, M. , Liu, X. , Miller, R. , Montanaro, V. , Moteki, N. , Myhre, G. , Penner, J.E. , Perlwitz, J. , Pitari, G. , Reddy, S. , Sahu, L. , Sakamoto, H. , Schuster, G. , Schwarz, J.P. , Seland, Ø., Stier, P. , Takegawa, N. , Takemura, T. , Textor, C. , van Aardenne, J.A. , and Zhao, Y. , 2009. Evaluation of black carbon estimations in global aerosol models. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 9, 9001–9026. doi:10.5194/acp-9-9001-2009.

Koch, D. , et al. 2011. Couple aerosol-chemistry-climate twentieth-century transient model investigation: trends in short-lived species and climate responses. J. Clim. 24(11), 2693–2714. doi:10.1175/2011JCLI3582.1.

Lee, D.S. and Co-authors , 2010. Transport impacts on atmosphere and climate: Aviation, Atmospheric Environ. 44(37), 4678–4734, doi:10.1016/j.atmosenv.2009.06.005.

Markowicz, K.M. , Flatau, P.J. , Kardas, A.E. , Remiszewska, J. , Stelmaszczyk, K. , Woeste, L. , 2008. Ceilometer retrieval of the boundary layer vertical aerosol extinction structure. J. Atmos. Ocean. Technol. 25(6), 928–944, http://dx.doi.org/10.1175/2007JTECHA1016.1.

Mazzola, M. , Stone, R.S. , Herber, A. , Tomasi, C. , Lupi, A. , Vitale, V. , Lanconelli, C. , Toledano, C. , Cachorro, V.E. , O'Neill, N.T. , Shiobara, M. , Aaltonen, V. , Stebel, K. , Zielinski, T. , Petelski, T. , Ortiz de Galisteo, J.P. , Torres, B. , Berjon, A. , Goloub, P. , Li, Z. , Blarel, L. , Abboud, I. , Cuevas, E. , Stock, M. , Schulz, K.-H., and Virkkula, A. , 2012. Evaluation of sun photometer capabilities for retrievals of aerosol optical depth at high latitudes: the POLAR-AOD inter comparison campaigns. Atmos. Environ. 52, 4–17. http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.atmosenv.2011.07.042.

Meena, G.S. , Londhe, A.L. , Bhosale, C.S. , and Jadhav, D.B. , 2009. Remote sensing 'ground-based automatic UV/Visible spectrometer' for the study of atmospheric trace gases. Int. Jr. Remote Sensing. 30(21), 5633–5653.

Pfeilsticker, K. , Erle, F. , and Platt, U. , 1997. Absorption of solar radiation by atmospheric O4. J. Atmos. Sci. 54, 933–939.

Quinn, P.K. , Stohl, A. , Arneth, A. , Berntsen, T. , Burkhart, J. F., Christensen, J. , Flanner, M. , Kupiainen, K. , Lihavainen, H. , Shepherd, M. , Shevchenko, V. , Skov H. , and Vestreng V. , 2011. The Impact of Black Carbon on Arctic Climate. Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP), Oslo, 72 pp., ISBN-978-82-7971-069-1.

Rahul, P.R.C. , Sonbawne, S.M. , and Devara, P.C.S. , 2014. Unusual high values of aerosol optical depth evidenced in the Arctic during summer 2011. Atmos. Environ. 94, 606–615. http://doi:10.1016/j.atmosenv.2014.01.052.

Raju, M.P. , Safai, P.D. , Sonbawne, S. M. , and Naidub, C. V. , 2015. Black carbon radiative forcing over the Indian Arctic station, Himadri during the Arctic Summer of 2012. Atmos. Res. 157(2015), 29–36.

Ramanathan, V. , and Carmichael, G. , 2008. Global and regional climate changes due to black carbon. Nat. Geosci. 1, 221–227. doi:10.1038/ngeo156.

Safai, P.D. , Raju, M.P. , Budhavant, K.B. , Rao, P.S.P. , and Devara, P.C.S. , 2013. Long term studies on characteristics of black carbon aerosols over a tropical urban station Pune, India. *Atmos. Res.,* 132–133, 173–184. http://doi:10.1016/j.atmosres.2013.05.002

Safai, P.D. , Devara, P.C.S. , Raju, M.P. , Vijaykumar, K. , and Rao, P.S.P. , 2014. Relationship between black carbon and associated optical, physical and radiative properties of aerosols over two contrasting environments. Atmos. Res. 149. http://doi:10.1016/j.atmosres.2014.07.006,292-299.

Seung, S.P. , Anthony, D.A. , Hansen, Sung , Y. Cho , 2010. Measurement of real time black carbon for investigating spot loading effects of Aethalometer data. Atmos. Environ. 44(11), 1449–1455.

Sharma, S. , Ishizawa, M. , Chan, D. , Lavoué, D., Andrews, E. , Eleftheriadis, K. , Maksyutov, S. , 2013. 16-year simulation of Arctic black carbon: transport, source contribution, and sensitivity analysis on deposition. J. Geophys. Res. 118, 1–22. http://doi:10.1029/2012JD017774.

Sharma, S. , Lavoué, D. , Cachier, H. , Barrie, L.A. , and Gong S.L. , 2004. Long-term trends of the black carbon concentrations in the Canadian Arctic. *J. Geophys. Res.* 109, D15203. http://doi:10.1029/2003JD004331.

Sharma, S. , Andrews, E. , Barrie, L.A. , Ogren, J.A. , and Lavoué, D. , 2006. Variations and sources of the equivalent black carbon in the high Arctic revealed by long-term observations at Alert and Barrow. J. Geophys. Res. 111, D14208, 2989–12003. http://doi:10.1029/2005JD006581.

Shindell, D.T. et al., 2008. A multi-model assessment of pollution transport to the Arctic. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 8, 5353–5372. doi:10.5194/acp-8-5353-2008.

Solomon, S. , Schmeltekopf, A.Z. , and Sanders, R.W. , 1987. On the interpretation of zenith sky absorption measurements. J. Geophys. Res. 92D, 8311–8319.

Sonbawne, S.M. , Devara, P.C.S. , Rohini, B. , Rahul, P.R.C., Siingh, D. , Fadnavis, S. , Panicker, A.S. and Pandithurai, G. , 2021. Aerosol physico–optical–radiative characterization and classification during summer over Ny-Ålesund, Arctic. Intl. J. Remote Sens., 42(22), 8760–8781, DOI:10.1080/01431161.2021.1987576.

Spackman, J.R. , Gao, R.S. , Neff, W.D. , Schwarz, J.P. , Watts. L.A. , Fahey D.W. , Holloway, J. S. , Ryerson, T.B. , Peischl, J. , and Brock, C.A. , 2010. Aircraft observations of enhancement and depletion of black carbon mass in the springtime Arctic. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 10,

9667–9680, www.atmos-chem-phys.net/10/9667/2010/doi:10.5194/acp-10-9667-2010.
Stohl, A. , 2006. Characteristics of atmospheric transport into the Arctic troposphere. J. Geophys. Res. 111, D11306. doi:10.1029/2005JD006888.
Stohl, A. , Klimont, Z. , Eckhardt, S. , and Kupiainen, K. , 2013. Black carbon in the Arctic: the underestimated role of gas flaring and residential combustion emissions. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 13, 8833–8855. doi:10.5194/acp-13-8833-2013, 2013.
Stone, R.S. , Sharma, S. , Herber, A. , Eleftheriadis, K. , and Nelson, D.W. , 2014. A characterization of Arctic aerosols on the basis of aerosol optical depth and black carbon measurements. Elem.: Sci. Anthropocene 2, 000027 (22 pp). http://dx.doi.org/10.12952/journal.elementa.
Sumit, K. , Devara, P.C.S. , Manoj, M.G. , and Safai P.D. , 2011. Winter aerosol and trace gas characteristics over a high-altitude station in the Western Ghats, India. Atmosfera. 24, 311–328.
Virkkula, A. , Makela, T. , Hillamo, R. , Yli-Yuomi, T., Hirsikko, A. , Hemari, K. , and Koponen, I.K. , 2007. A simple procedure for correcting loading effects of Aethalometer. J. Air Waste Manag Assoc. 57, 1214–1222.
Zielinski, T. , 2004. Studies of aerosol physical properties in coastal areas. Aerosol Sci. Technol. 38(5), 513–524. http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/02786820490466738.
Zielinski, T. , Petelski, T. , Makuch, P. , Strzalkowska, A. , Ponczkowska, A. , Drozdowska, V. , Gutowska, D. , Kowalczyk, J. , Darecki, M. , and Piskozub, J. , 2012. Studies of aerosols advected to coastal areas with use of remote techniques. Acta Geophys. 60(5), 1359–1385. http://dx.doi.org/10.2478/s11600-011-0075-4.

Geomorphology and Landscape Evolution of Ny-Ålesund Region and Its Implication for Tectonics, Svalbard, Arctic

Burbank, D.W. & Anderson, R.S. (2001). Tectonic Geomorphology. Backwell Science.
Comiso, J.C. , Parkinson, C.L. , Gersten, R. , & Stock, L. (2008). Accelerated decline in the Arctic ice cover. Geophysical Research Letters 35(L01703), 6.
Elvevold, S. (2007). Geology of Svalbard. Norwegian Polar Institute, Norway.
Folk, R.L. & Ward, W.C. (1957). Brazos River bar: a study in the significance of grain size parameters. Journal of Sedimentary Petrology 27, 3–26.
Forland, E.J. , Hansee-Bauer, I. , & Nordli, P.O. (1997). Climate statistics and long term series of temperature and precipitation at Svalbard and Jan Mayen, 21/97. Norwegian Meteorological Institute, Oslo, p. 72.
Hagen, J.O. & Liestol, O. (1990). Long-term glacier mass balance investigations in Svalbard 1950–88. Annals of Glaciology 14, 102–106.
Hagen, J.O. (1987). Glacier surge in Svalbard with examples from Usherbreen. Norwegian Journal of Geography 42(4), 203–213.
Hjelle, A. (1993). The Geology of Svalbard. Norwegian Polar Institute, Oslo.
Keller, E.A. & Printer, N. (2002). Active Tectonics: Earthquakes, Uplift, and Landscape (2nd Ed.). Prentice-Hall, New Jersey.
Kumar, D. , Singh, A.K. , Taloor, A.K. & Singh, D.S. (2021a). Recessional Pattern of Thelu and Swetvarn glaciers between 1968 and 2019 Bhagirathi basin, Garhwal Himalaya, India. *Quaternary International* 575–576, 227–235.
Kumar, D. , Singh, A.K. & Singh, D.S. (2021b). Spatio-temporal fluctuations over Chorabari glacier, Garhwal Himalaya, India between 1976 and 2017. *Quaternary International* 575–576, 178–189.
Liestol, O. (1988). The glaciers in the Kongsfjorden area, Spitsbergen. NorskGeografiskTidsskrift 42, 231–238.
Lovell, H. , Benn, D.I. , Lukas, S. , Spagnolo, M. , Cook, S.J. , Swift, D.A. , Clark, C.D. , Yde, J.C. , & Watts, T.P. (2018). Geomorphological investigation of multiphase glacitectonic composite ridge systems in Svalbard. Geomorphology 300, 176–188.
Nuth, C. , Moholdt, G. , Kohler, J. , Hagen, J.O. , & Kaab, A. (2010). Svalbard glacier elevation changes and contribution to sea-level rise. Journal of Geophysical Research 115(1), F01008.

Overpeck, J. , Hughen, K. , Hardy, D. , Bradley, R. , Case, R. , Douglas, M. , Finney, B. , Gajewski, K. , Jacoby, G. , Jennings, A. , Lamoureux, S. , Lasca, A. , MacDonald, G. , Moore, J. , Retelle, M. , Smith, S. , Wolfe, A. , & Zielinski, G. (1997). Arctic environmental change of the last four centuries. Science 278, 1251–1256.

Rigor, I.G. & Wallace, J.M. (2004). Variation in the age of Arctic sea-ice and summer sea ice extent. Geophysical Research Letters 31, L0940.

Serreze, M.C. , Walsh, J.E. , Chapin, F.S. , III, Osterkamp, T. , Dyurgerov, M. , & Romanovsky, V. (2000). Observational evidence of recent change in the northern high-latitude environment. Climate Change 46, 59–207.

Singh, D. S. (2014). Surface processes during flash floods in the glaciated terrain of Kedarnath, Garhwal Himalaya and their role in modifying landforms. Current Science 106(4), 594–597.

Singh, D.S. & Awasthi, A. (2009). Impact of land use and landscape change on the environment. Urban Panorama 8(2), 72–78.

Singh D.S. & Awasthi, A. (2011). Natural hazards in the Ghaghara River area, Ganga Plain, India. Natural Hazards 57, 213–225.

Singh, A.K. , Kumar, D. , Kumar, V. & Singh, D.S. , (2020). Study of temporal response (1976–2019) and associated mass movement event (during 2017) of Meru glacier, Bhagirathi valley, Garhwal Himalaya, India. Quaternary International 565, 12–21.

Singh, D.S. & Mishra, A. (2001). Gangotri Glacier characteristics, retreat and processes of sedimentation in the Bhagirathi valley. Geological Survey of India Special Publication 65(III), 17–20.

Singh, D.S. & Mishra, A. (2002). Role of tributary glaciers on landscape modification in the Gangotri Glacier area, Garhwal Himalaya, India. Current Science 82(5), 101–105.

Singh, D.S. & Ravindra R. (2011a). Geomorphology of the MidreLoven Glacier, Ny-Alesund, Svalbard, Arctic. In Singh, D.S. & Chhabra N.L. (Eds.), Geological Processes and Climate Change (pp. 269–281). Macmillan Publishers India Limited.

Singh, D.S. & Ravindra R. (2011b). Control of glacial and fluvial environments in the Ny-Alesund region, Arctic. Mausam 62(4), 641–646.

Singh, D.S. & Singh, I.B. (2005). Facies architecture of the GandakMegafan, Ganga Plain, India. Journal of Paleontological Society of India 12, 125–140.

Singh, D.S. (2004). Late quaternary morpho-sedimentary processes in the Gangotri Glacier area Garhwal Himalaya, India. Geological Survey of India, Special Publication 80, 97–103.

Singh, D.S. (2013a). Causes of Kedarnath tragedy and human responsibilities. Journal Geological Society of India 82(3), 303–304.

Singh, D.S. (2013b). Snow Melt Ephemeral Streams in the Gangotri Glacier Area, Garhwal Himalaya, India. In Kotlia, B.S. (Ed.), Holocene: Perspectives, Environmental Dynamics and Impact Events (pp. 157–164). NOVA Publisher, USA.

Singh, D.S. , Dubey, C.A. , Kumar, D. , Kumar, P. , & Ravindra, R. (2018). Climate events between 47.5 and 1 ka BP in the Ny-Alesund region’s glaciated terrain, Arctic, using geomorphology and sedimentology of diversified morphological zones. Polar Science 18(2018), 123–134.

Singh, D.S. , Dubey, C.A. , Kumar, D. , Vishawakarma, B. , Singh, A.K. , Tripathi, A. , Gautam, P.K. , Bali, R. , Agarwal, K.K. , & Sharma, R. (2019). Monsoon variability and significant climatic events between 25 and 0.05 ka BP using sedimentary parameters in the Gangotri Glacier region, Garhwal Himalaya, India. Quaternary International 507, 148–155.

Singh, D.S. , Tangri, A.K. , Kumar, D. , Dubey, C.A. , & Bali, R. (2017). Pattern of retreat and related morphological zones of Gangotri Glacier, Garhwal Himalaya, India. Quaternary International 444, 172–181.

Singh, V. , Farooqui, A. , Mehrotra, N.C. , Singh, D.S. , Tewari, R. , Jha, N. & Kar, R. (2011). Late Pleistocene and early Holocene climate of Ny-Alesund, Svalbard (Norway): a study based on biological proxies. Journal of Geological Society of India 78(2), 109–116.

Svendsen, J.I. & Mangerud, J. (1997) Holocene glacial and climatic variations on Spitsbergen, Svalbard. Holocene 7, 45–57.

Ukkonen, P. , Arppe, L. , Houmark-Nielsen, M. , Kjaer, K.H. & Karhu, J.A. (2007). MIS 3mammoth remains from Sweden-implications for faunal history, palaeoclimate and glaciations history. Quaternary Science Review 26, 3081–3098.

Wentworth, C.K. (1922). A scale of grade and class terms for clastic sediments. Journal of Geology 30(5), 377–392.

Biogenic Silica Indicator of Paleoproductivity in Lacustrine Sediments of Svalbard, Arctic

Birks HJB , Jones VJ and Rose NL (2004). Recent environmental change and atmospheric contamination on Svalbard as recorded in lake sediments–synthesis and general conclusions. Journal of Paleolimnology 31(4), 531–546.

Birnie J (1990). Holocene environmental change in South Georgia: evidence from lake sediments. Journal of Quaternary Science 5(3), 171–187.

Carter SJ and Colman SM (1994). Biogenic silica in Lake Baikal sediments: results from 1990–1992 American cores. Journal of Great Lakes Research 20(4), 751–760.

Choudhary S (2019). Multiproxy paleoclimate reconstruction from the sediments of high latitude regions. Unpublished PhD. Thesis. Goa University, India.

Choudhary S , Nayak GN and Khare N (2018d). Provenance, processes and productivity through the spatial distribution of the surface sediments from Kongsfjord to Krossfjord system, Svalbard. Journal of Indian Association of Sedimentologists 35(1), 47–56.

Choudhary S , Nayak GN and Khare N (2020). Source, mobility and bioavailability of metals in fjord sediments of Krossfjord and Kongsfjord system, Arctic, Svalbard. Environmental Science and Pollution Research 27, 15130–15148.

Choudhary S , Nayak GN , Tiwari AK and Khare N (2018b). Sediment composition and its effect on productivity in Larsemann Hills, East Antarctica. Arabian Journal of Geosciences 11(15), 416.

Choudhary S , Nayak GN , Tiwari AK and Khare N (2018c). Source, processes and productivity from distribution of surface sediments, Prydz Bay, East Antarctica. Polar Science 18, 63–71.

Choudhary S , Tiwari AK , Nayak GN and Bejugam P (2018a). Sedimentological and geochemical investigations to understand the source of sediments and recent past processes in Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. Polar Science 15, 87–98.

Colman SM , Peck JA , Karabanov EB , Carter SJ , Bradbury JP , King JW and Williams DF (1995). Continental climate response to orbital forcing from biogenic silica records in Lake Baikal. Nature 378, 769–771.

Conley DJ (1998). An inter-laboratory comparison for the measurement of biogenic silica in sediments. Marine Chemistry 63(1), 39–48.

Conley DJ , Schelske CL and Stoermer EF (1993). Modification of the biogeochemical cycle of silica with eutrophication. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 101, 179–192.

Gaillardet J , Dupré B , Louvat P and Allègre CJ (1999). Global silicate weathering and CO2 consumption rates deduced from the chemistry of large rivers. Chemical Geology 159 (1–4), 3–30.

Guilizzoni P , Marchetto A , Lami A , Brauer A , Vigliotti L , Musazzi S , Langone L , Manca M , Lucchini F , Calanchi N and Dinelli E (2006). Records of environmental and climatic changes during the late Holocene from Svalbard: palaeolimnology of Kongressvatnet. Journal of Paleolimnology 36(4), 325–351.

Jiang S , Liu X , Sun J , Yuan L , Sun L and Wang Y (2011). A multi-proxy sediment record of late Holocene and recent climate change from a lake near Ny-Ålesund, Svalbard. Boreas 40(3), 468–480.

Kaplan M.R. , Wolfe AP and Miller GH (2002). Holocene environmental variability in southern Greenland inferred from lake sediments. QuaternaryResearch 58(2), 149–159.

Liu B , Xu H , Lan J , Sheng E , Che S and Zhou X (2014). Biogenic silica contents of Lake Qinghai sediments and their environmental significance. Frontiers of Earth Science 8(4), 573–581.

Mortlock RA and Froelich PN (1989). A simple method for the rapid determination of biogenic opal in pelagic marine sediments. Deep-Sea Research, Part A Oceanography Research Papers 36(9), 1415–1426.

Muller PJ and Schneider R (1993). An automated leaching method for the determination of opal in sediments and particulate matter. Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanography Research Papers 40(3), 425–444.

Rickert D , Schluter M and Wallmann K (2002). Dissolution kinetics of biogenic silica from the water column to the sediments. Geochemica et Cosmochimica Acta 66 (3), 439–455.

Roberts D , Van Ommen TD , McMinn A , Morgan V and Roberts JL (2001). Late-Holocene East Antarctic climate trends from ice-core and lake-sediment proxies. The Holocene 11(1), 117–120.

Schelske CL , Conley DJ , Stoermer EF , Newberry TL and Campbell CD (1986a). Biogenic silica and phosphorus accumulation in sediments as indices of eutrophication in the Laurentian Great Lakes. Hydrobiologia 143, 79–86.
Schelske CL , Stoermer EF , Conley DJ , Robbins JA and Glover R (1983). Early eutrophication in the lower Great Lakes: new evidence from biogenic silica in sediments. Science 222, 320–322.
Shan J , XiaoDong L , Liqiang XU and LiGuang S (2011). The potential application of biogenic silica as an indicator of paleo-primary productivity in East Antarctic lakes. Advances in Polar Science 22(3), 131–142.
Stumm W and Morgan JJ (1970). Aquatic Chemistry: An Introduction Emphasising Chemical Equilibria in Natural Waters. Wiley- Interscience, New York.
Svendsen H , Beszczynska-Moller A , Hagen JO , Lefauconnier B , Tverberg V , Gerland S , BorreOrbaek J , Bischof K , Papucci C , Zajaczkowski M and Azzolini R (2002). The physical environment of Kongsfjorden–Krossfjorden, an Arctic fjord system in Svalbard. Pollution Research 21(1):133–166.
Van Bennekom AJ , Berger GW , Van der Gaast SJ and De Vries RTP (1988). Primary productivity and the silica cycle in the Southern Ocean (Atlantic sector). Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 67(1–2), 19–30.
Wang L , Fan D , Li W , Liao Y , Zhang X , Liu M and Yang Z (2014). Grain-size effect of biogenic silica in the surface sediments of the East China Sea. Continental Shelf Research 81, 29–37.

Role of Persistent Organic Pollutants and Mercury in the Arctic Environment and Indirect Impact on Climate Change

Aboul-Enein, H.Y. , and Ali, I. (2004) Analysis of the chiral pollutants by chromatography. Toxicological & Environmental Chemistry 86: 1–22.
Ademollo, N. , Patrolecco, L. , Rauseo, J. , Nielsen, J. , and Corsolini, S. (2018) Bioaccumulation of nonylphenols and bisphenol A in the Greenland shark Somniosus microcephalus from the Greenland seawaters. Microchemical Journal 136: 106–112.
Amyot, M. , Lean, D.R. , Poissant, L. , and Doyon, M.-R. (2000) Distribution and transformation of elemental mercury in the St. Lawrence River and Lake Ontario. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 57: 155–163.
Ariya, P.A. , Dastroor, A.P. , Amyot, M. , Schroeder, W.H. , Barrie, L. , Anlauf, K. , et al. (2004) The arctic: a sink for mercury. Tellus B: Chemical and Physical Meteorology 56: 397–403.
Balmer, J.E. , Hung, H. , Vorkamp, K. , Letcher, R.J. , and Muir, D.C.G. (2019b) Hexachlorobutadiene (HCBD) contamination in the Arctic environment: a review. Emerging Contaminants 5: 116–122.
Balmer, J.E. , Hung, H. , Yu, Y. , Letcher, R.J. , and Muir, D.C.G. (2019a) Sources and environmental fate of pyrogenic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) in the Arctic. Emerging Contaminants 5: 128–142.
Barrie, L. , and Hoff, R. (1985) Five years of air chemistry observations in the Canadian Arctic. Atmospheric Environment (1967) 19: 1995–2010.
Barrie, L.A. , Bottenheim, J.W. , Schnell, R.C. , Crutzen, P.J. , and Rasmussen, R.A. (1988) Ozone destruction and photochemical reactions at polar sunrise in the lower Arctic atmosphere. Nature 334: 138–141.
Bartlett, P.W. , Isaksson, E. , and Hermanson, M.H. (2019) 'New' unintentionally produced PCBs in the Arctic. Emerging Contaminants 5: 9–14.
Basu, N. , Scheuhammer, A.M. , Sonne, C. , Letcher, R.J. , Born, E.W. , and Dietz, R. (2009) Is dietary mercury of neurotoxicological concern to wild polar bears (Ursus maritimus)? Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 28: 133.
Becker, S. , Halsall, C.J. , Tych, W. , Kallenborn, R. , Su, Y. , and Hung, H. (2008) Long-term trends in atmospheric concentrations of α- and γ-HCH in the Arctic provide insight into the effects of legislation and climatic fluctuations on contaminant levels. Atmospheric Environment 42: 8225–8233.

Berg, T. , Sekkesæter, S. , Steinnes, E. , Valdal, A.-K. , and Wibetoe, G. (2003) Springtime depletion of mercury in the European Arctic as observed at Svalbard. Science of the Total Environment 304: 43–51.
Bernhoft, A. , Wiig, Ø. , and Utne Skaare, J. (1997) Organochlorines in polar bears (Ursus maritimus) at Svalbard. Environmental Pollution 95: 159–175.
Bidleman, T.F. , Andersson, A. , Jantunen, L.M. , Kucklick, J.R. , Kylin, H. , Letcher, R.J. , et al. (2019) A review of halogenated natural products in arctic, subarctic and Nordic ecosystems. Emerging Contaminants 5: 89–115.
Bidleman, T.F. , Laudon, H. , Nygren, O. , Svanberg, S. , and Tysklind, M. (2017) Chlorinated pesticides and natural brominated anisoles in the air at three northern Baltic stations. Environmental Pollution 225: 381–389.
Binnington, M.J. , Curren, M.S. , Chan, H.M. , and Wania, F. (2016) Balancing the benefits and costs of traditional food substitution by indigenous arctic women of childbearing age: Impacts on the persistent organic pollutant, mercury, and nutrient intakes. Environment International 94: 554–566.
Bloom, N. , and Fitzgerald, W.F. (1988) Determination of volatile mercury species at the picogram level by low-temperature gas chromatography with cold-vapour atomic fluorescence detection. Analytica Chimica Acta 208: 151–161.
Bloom, N. , and Watras, C. (1989) Observations of methylmercury in precipitation. Science of the Total Environment 87: 199–207.
Bodaly, R. , Rudd, J. , Fudge, R. , and Kelly, C. (1993) Mercury concentrations in fish related to the size of remote Canadian Shield lakes. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 50: 980–987.
Bogan, J.A. , and Bourne, W.R.P. (1972) Organochlorine levels in Atlantic seabirds. Nature 240: 358–358.
Borgå, K. , Fisk, A.T. , Hoekstra, P.F. , and Muir, D.C.G. (2004) biological and chemical factors of importance in the bioaccumulation and trophic transfer of persistent organochlorine contaminants in arctic marine food webs. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 23: 2367.
Borgå, K. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , and Skaare, J.U. (2001) Biomagnification of organochlorines along a Barents Seafood chain. Environmental Pollution 113: 187–198.
Bowes, G.W. , and Jonkel, C.J. (1975) Presence and distribution of polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB) in arctic and subarctic marine food chains. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 32: 2111–2123.
Bowman, K.L. , Collins, R.E. , Agather, A.M. , Lamborg, C.H. , Hammerschmidt, C.R. , Kaul, D. , et al. (2020) Distribution of mercury-cycling genes in the Arctic and equatorial Pacific Oceans and their relationship to mercury speciation. Limnology and Oceanography 65.
Braman, R.S. , and Johnson, D.L. (1974) Selective absorption tubes and emission technique for determination of ambient forms of mercury in the air. Environmental Science & Technology 8: 996–1003.
Carlsson, P. , Vrana, B. , Sobotka, J. , Borgå, K. , Bohlin Nizzetto, P. , and Varpe, Ø. (2018) New brominated flame retardants and dechlorane plus in the Arctic: local sources and bioaccumulation potential in the marine benthos. Chemosphere 211: 1193–1202.
Carlsson, P. , Warner, N.A. , Hallanger, I.G. , Herzke, D. , and Kallenborn, R. (2014) Spatial and temporal distribution of chiral pesticides in Calanus spp. from three Arctic fjords. Environmental Pollution 192: 154–161.
Carlsson, P.M. (2013) Selective processes for bioaccumulative up-take of persistent organic pollutants (POPs) in Arctic food webs.
Casida, J.E. , Holmstead, R.L. , Khalifa, S. , Knox, J.R. , Ohsawa, T. , Palmer, K.J. , and Wong, R.Y. (1974) Toxaphene insecticide: a complex biodegradable mixture. Science 183: 520–521.
Chasar, L.C. , Scudder, B.C. , Stewart, A.R. , Bell, A.H. , and Aiken, G.R. (2009) Mercury cycling in stream ecosystems. 3. Trophic dynamics and methylmercury bioaccumulation. Environmental Science & Technology 43: 2733–2739.
Cheng, M.-D. , and Schroeder, W.H. (2000) Potential atmospheric transport pathways for mercury measured in the Canadian high arctic. Journal of Atmospheric Chemistry 35: 101–107.
Chételat, J. , Amyot, M. , Arp, P. , Blais, J.M. , Depew, D. , Emmerton, C.A. , et al. (2015) Mercury in freshwater ecosystems of the Canadian Arctic: recent advances on its cycling and fate. Science of the Total Environment 509–510: 41–66.

Choi, S.-D. , Baek, S.-Y. , Chang, Y.-S. , Wania, F. , Ikonomou, M.G. , Yoon, Y.-J. , et al. (2008) Passive air sampling of polychlorinated biphenyls and organochlorine pesticides at the Korean arctic and antarctic research stations: implications for long-range transport and local pollution. Environmental Science & Technology 42: 7125–7131.

Clarkson, T.W. , Vyas, J.B. , and Ballatori, N. (2007) Mechanisms of mercury disposition in the body. American Journal of Industrial Medicine 50: 757–764.

Connell, D.W. , Miller, G.J. , Mortimer, M.R. , Shaw, G.R. , and Anderson, S.M. (1999) Persistent lipophilic contaminants and other chemical residues in the Southern Hemisphere. Critical Reviews in Environmental Science and Technology 29: 47–82.

Curren, M. S. , Davis, K. , Liang, C. L. , Adlard, B. , Foster, W. G. , Donaldson, S. G. , et al. (2014). Comparing plasma concentrations of persistent organic pollutants and metals in primiparous women from northern and southern Canada. Science of the Total Environment, 479: 306–318.

Curren, M.S. , Liang, C.L. , Davis, K. , Kandola, K. , Brewster, J. , Potyrala, M. , and Chan, H.M. (2015) Assessing determinants of maternal blood concentrations for persistent organic pollutants and metals in the eastern and western Canadian Arctic. Science of the Total Environment 527–528: 150–158.

Dall Osto, M. , Geels, C. , Beddows, D.C.S. , Boertmann, D. , Lange, R. , Nojgaard, J.K. et al. (2018) Regions of open water and melting sea ice drive new particle formation in North East Greenland. Scientific Reports 8: 6109.

Daly, G.L. , and Wania, F. (2004) Simulating the influence of snow on the fate of organic compounds. Environmental Science & Technology 38: 4176–4186.

Dastoor, A. , and Moran, M. (2010) Global/regional atmospheric heavy metals model (GRAHM2005) estimates of atmospheric mercury deposition rates at sites in northern Canada. Air Quality Research Division, Environment Canada.

Dastoor, A. , Ryzhkov, A. , Durnford, D. , Lehnherr, I. , Steffen, A. , and Morrison, H. (2015) Atmospheric mercury in the Canadian Arctic. Part II: Insight from modelling. Science of the Total Environment 509–510: 16–27.

Demuth, N. , and Heumann, K.G. (2001) Validation of methylmercury determinations in aquatic systems by alkyl derivatization methods for GC analysis using ICP-IDMS. Analytical Chemistry 73: 4020–4027.

Derwent, R.G. , and Eggleton, A.E.J. (1981) On the validation of one-dimensional CFC–ozone depletion models. Nature 293: 387–389.

Diamond, M.L. , Bhavsar, S.P. , Helm, P.A. , Stern, G.A. , and Alaee, M. (2005) Fate of organochlorine contaminants in arctic and subarctic lakes estimated by mass balance modelling. Science of the Total Environment 342: 245–259.

Dibb, J.E. , Ziemba, L.D. , Luxford, J. , and Beckman, P. (2010) Bromide and other ions in the snow, firn air, and atmospheric boundary layer at Summit during GSHOX. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 10: 9931–9942.

Dietz, R. , Sonne, C. , Basu, N. , Braune, B. , O‘Hara, T. , Letcher, R.J. , et al. (2013) What are the toxicological effects of mercury in arctic biota? Science of the Total Environment 443: 775–790.

DiMento, B.P. , Mason, R.P. , Brooks, S. , and Moore, C. (2019) The impact of sea ice on the air-sea exchange of mercury in the Arctic Ocean. Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 144: 28–38.

Dommergue, A. , Ferrari, C.P. , Gauchard, P.A. , Boutron, C.F. , Poissant, L. , Pilote, M. , et al. (2003) The fate of mercury species in a subarctic snowpack during snowmelt. Geophysical Research Letters 30.

Douglas, T.A. , Sturm, M. , Simpson, W.R. , Brooks, S. , Lindberg, S.E. , and Perovich, D.K. (2005) Elevated mercury measured in snow and frost flowers near-Arctic sea ice leads: elevated mercury near sea ice leads. Geophysical Research Letters 32.

Durnford, D. , Dastoor, A. , Figueras-Nieto, D. , and Ryjkov, A. (2010) Long-range transport of mercury to the Arctic and across Canada. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics Discussions 10: 4673–4717.

Eljarrat, E. , Guerra, P. , and Barceló, D. (2008) Enantiomeric determination of chiral persistent organic pollutants and their metabolites. TrAC Trends in Analytical Chemistry 27: 847–861.

Eriksson, P.G. , Banerjee, S. , Catuneanu, O. , Corcoran, P.L. , Eriksson, K.A. , Hiatt, E.E. , et al. (2013) Secular changes in sedimentation systems and sequence stratigraphy. Gondwana Research 24: 468–489.

Evangeliou, N. , Grythe, H. , Klimont, Z. , Heyes, C. , Eckhardt, S. , Lopez-Aparicio, S. , & Stohl, A. (2020). Atmospheric transport is a major pathway of microplastics to remote regions. Nature Communications, 11(1): 1–11.
Evenset, A. , Carroll, J. , Christensen, G.N. , Kallenborn, R. , Gregor, D. , and Gabrielsen, G.W. (2007a) Seabird guano is an efficient conveyer of persistent organic pollutants (POPs) to arctic lake ecosystems. Environmental Science & Technology 41: 1173–1179.
Evenset, A. , Christensen, G.N. , Carroll, J. , Zaborska, A. , Berger, U. , Herzke, D. , and Gregor, D. (2007b) Historical trends in persistent organic pollutants and metals recorded in sediment from Lake Ellasjøen, Bjørnøya, Norwegian Arctic. Environmental Pollution 146: 196–205.
Evenset, A. , Leknes, H. , Christensen, G.N. , Warner, N. , Remberger, M. , and Gabrielsen, G.W. (2009) Screening of New Contaminants in Samples from the Norwegian Arctic: Silver, Platinum, Sucralose, Bisphenol A, Tetrabrombisphenol A, Siloxanes, Phtalates (DEHP), Phosphororganic Flame Retardants.
Fenstad, A.A. , Jenssen, B.M. , Moe, B. , Hanssen, S.A. , Bingham, C. , Herzke, D. , et al. (2014) DNA double-strand breaks concerning persistent organic pollutants in a fasting seabird. Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety 106: 68–75.
Ferrari, C.P. , Dommergue, A. , Boutron, C.F. , Skov, H. , Goodsite, M. , and Jensen, B. (2004) Nighttime production of elemental gaseous mercury in interstitial air of snow at Station Nord, Greenland. Atmospheric Environment 38: 2727–2735.
Fisk, A. , Hoekstra, P. , Gagnon, J. , Duffe, J. , Norstrom, R. , Hobson, K. , et al. (2003) Influence of habitat, trophic ecology and lipids on, and spatial trends of, organochlorine contaminants in Arctic marine invertebrates. Marine Ecology Progress Series 262: 201–214.
Fox, A. L. , Hughes, E. A. , Trocine, R. P. , Trefry, J. H. , Schonberg, S. V. , McTigue, N. D. , et al. (2014). Mercury in the northeastern Chukchi Sea: Distribution patterns in seawater and sediments and biomagnification in the benthic food web. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 102: 56–67.
Frame, G.M. (1997) A collaborative study of 209 PCB congeners and 6 Aroclors on 20 different HRGC columns 2. Semi-quantitative Aroclor congener distributions. Fresenius' Journal of Analytical Chemistry 357: 714–722.
Fu, P. , Kawamura, K. , and Barrie, L.A. (2009a) Photochemical and other sources of organic compounds in the Canadian high Arctic aerosol pollution during winter-spring. Environmental Science & Technology 43: 286–292.
Fu, P. , Kawamura, K. , Chen, J. , and Barrie, L.A. (2009b) Isoprene, monoterpene, and sesquiterpene oxidation products in the high Arctic aerosols during late winter to early summer. Environmental Science & Technology 43: 4022–4028.
Fu, X. , Marusczak, N. , Heimbürger, L.-E. , Sauvage, B. , Gheusi, F. , Prestbo, E.M. , and Sonke, J.E. (2016) Atmospheric mercury speciation dynamics at the high-altitude Pic du Midi observatory, southern France. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 16: 5623–5639.
Gabrielsen, G.W. , Skaare, J.U. , Polder, A. , and Bakken, V. (1995) Chlorinated hydrocarbons in glaucous gulls (Larus hyperboreus) in the southern part of Svalbard. Science of the Total Environment 160–161: 337–346.
Galarneau, E. , Harner, T. , Shoeib, M. , Kozma, M. , and Lane, D. (2006) A preliminary investigation of sorbent-impregnated filters (SIFs) as an alternative to polyurethane foam (PUF) for sampling gas-phase semivolatile organic compounds in the air. Atmospheric Environment 40: 5734–5740.
Galbán-Malagón, C. , Berrojalbiz, N. , Ojeda, M.-J. , and Dachs, J. (2012) The oceanic biological pump modulates the atmospheric transport of persistent organic pollutants to the Arctic. Nature Communications 3: 862.
Gamberg, M. , Chételat, J. , Poulain, A.J. , Zdanowicz, C. , and Zheng, J. (2015) Mercury in the canadian arctic terrestrial environment: an update. Science of the Total Environment 509–510: 28–40.
Gorzelska, K. (1989) Locally generated atmospheric trace metal pollution in Canadian Arctic as reflected by the chemistry of snowpack samples from the MacKenzie delta region. Atmospheric Environment (1967) 23: 2729–2737.
Gouin, T. , and Wania, F. (2007) Time trends of arctic contamination concerning emission history and chemical persistence and partitioning properties. Environmental Science & Technology 41: 5986–5992.

Gustafsson, Ö. , Andersson, P. , Axelman, J. , Bucheli, T.D. , Kömp, P. , McLachlan, M.S. , et al. (2005) Observations of the PCB distribution within and in-between ice, snow, ice-rafted debris, ice-interstitial water, and seawater in the Barents Sea marginal ice zone and the North Pole area. Science of the Total Environment 342: 261–279.
Halbach, K. , Mikkelsen, Ø. , Berg, T. , and Steinnes, E. (2017) The presence of mercury and other trace metals in surface soils in the Norwegian Arctic. Chemosphere 188: 567–574.
Hallanger, I.G. , Ruus, A. , Warner, N.A. , Herzke, D. , Evenset, A. , Schøyen, M. , et al. (2011) Differences between Arctic and Atlantic fjord systems on bioaccumulation of persistent organic pollutants in zooplankton from Svalbard. Science of the Total Environment 409: 2783–2795.
Halsall, C.J. (2004) Investigating the occurrence of persistent organic pollutants (POPs) in the arctic: their atmospheric behaviour and interaction with the seasonal snowpack. Environmental Pollution 128: 163–175.
Halsall, C.J. , Bailey, R. , Stern, G.A. , Barrie, L.A. , Fellin, P. , Muir, D.C.G. , et al. (1998) Multi-year observations of organohalogen pesticides in the Arctic atmosphere. Environmental Pollution 102: 51–62.
Halsall, C.J. , Sweetman, A.J. , Barrie, L.A. , and Jones, K.C. (2001) Modelling the behaviour of PAHs during atmospheric transport from the UK to the Arctic. Atmospheric Environment 35: 255–267.
Hammerschmidt, C.R. , and Fitzgerald, W.F. (2006) Methylmercury in Freshwater Fish Linked to Atmospheric Mercury Deposition. Environmental Science & Technology 40: 7764–7770.
Hansen, J.C. , Tarp, U. , and Bohm, J. (1990) Prenatal exposure to methyl mercury among Greenlandic polar Inuits. Archives of Environmental Health: An International Journal 45: 355–358.
Hansson, K. , Palm Cousins, A. , Brorström-Lundén, E. , and Leppanen, S. (2006) Atmospheric Concentrations in Air and Deposition Fluxes of POPs at Råö and Pallas Trends and Seasonal and Spatial Variations. In.
Hao, Y. , Meng, W. , Li, Y. , Han, X. , Lu, H. , Wang, P. , et al. (2020) Concentrations and distribution of novel brominated flame retardants in the atmosphere and soil of Ny-Ålesund and London Island, Svalbard, Arctic. Journal of Environmental Sciences: S1001074220301790.
Harner, T. , Kylin, H. , Bidleman, T.F. , Halsall, C. , Strachan, W.M. , Barrie, L.A. , and Fellin, P. (1998) Polychlorinated naphthalenes and coplanar polychlorinated biphenyls in Arctic air. Environmental Science & Technology 32: 3257–3265.
Harner, T. , Pozo, K. , Gouin, T. , Macdonald, A.-M. , Hung, H. , Cainey, J. , and Peters, A. (2006) Global pilot study for persistent organic pollutants (POPs) using PUF disk passive air samplers. Environmental Pollution 144: 445–452.
Haugerud, A.J. (2011) Levels and Effects of Organohalogenated Contaminants on Thyroid Hormone Levels in Glaucous Gulls (Larus hyperboreus) from Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. In: Institutt for Biologi.
Helm, P.A. , Bidleman, T.F. , Li, H.H. , and Fellin, P. (2004) Seasonal and Spatial Variation of Polychlorinated Naphthalenes and Non-/Mono-Ortho-Substituted Polychlorinated Biphenyls in Arctic Air. Environmental Science & Technology 38: 5514–5521.
Herbert, B. , Halsall, C. , Jones, K. , and Kallenborn, R. (2006) Field investigation into the diffusion of semi-volatile organic compounds into fresh and aged snow. Atmospheric Environment 40: 1385–1393.
Herger, M. , van Roye, P. , Romney, D.K. , Brinkmann-Chen, S. , Buller, A.R. , and Arnold, F.H. (2016) Synthesis of β-branched tryptophan analogues using an engineered subunit of tryptophan synthase. Journal of the American Chemical Society 138: 8388–8391.
Hoferkamp, L. , Hermanson, M.H. , and Muir, D.C. (2010) Current use pesticides in Arctic media; 2000–2007. Science of the Total Environment 408: 2985–2994.
Holden, A.V. , and Topping, G. (1972) XIV.—Occurrence of Specific Pollutants in Fish in the Forth and Tay Estuaries. Proceedings of the Royal Society of Edinburgh Section B Biology 71: 189–194.
Holdrinet, M.V.H. , Frank, R. , Thomas, R. , and Hetling, L. (1978) Mirex in the sediments of Lake Ontario. Journal of Great Lakes Research 4: 69–74.
Holmes, C.D. , Jacob, D.J. , and Yang, X. (2006) Global lifetime of elemental mercury against oxidation by atomic bromine in the free troposphere. Geophysical Research Letters 33: L20808.
Huang, K. , Fu, J. S. , Prikhodko, V. Y. , Storey, J. M. , Romanov, A. , Hodson, E. L. , et al. (2015). Russian anthropogenic black carbon: Emission reconstruction and Arctic black carbon

simulation. Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres, 120(21): 11–306.
Hung, H. , Blanchard, P. , Halsall, C.J. , Bidleman, T.F. , Stern, G.A. , Fellin, P. , et al. (2005) Temporal and spatial variabilities of atmospheric polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), organochlorine (OC) pesticides and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) in the Canadian Arctic: Results from a decade of monitoring. Science of the Total Environment 342: 119–144.
Hung, H. , Kallenborn, R. , Breivik, K. , Su, Y. , Brorström-Lundén, E. , Olafsdottir, K. , et al. (2010) Atmospheric monitoring of organic pollutants in the Arctic under the Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP): 1993–2006. Science of the Total Environment 408: 2854–2873.
Hung, H. , Katsoyiannis, A.A. , Brorström-Lundén, E. , Olafsdottir, K. , Aas, W. , Breivik, K. , et al. (2016) Temporal trends of Persistent Organic Pollutants (POPs) in arctic air: 20 years of monitoring under the Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP). Environmental Pollution 217: 52–61.
Inoko, M. (1981) Studies on the photochemical decomposition of organomercurials—methylmercury (II) chloride. Environmental Pollution Series B, Chemical and Physical 2: 3–10.
Jia, S. , Wang, Q. , Li, L. , Fang, X. , Shi, Y. , Xu, W. , and Hu, J. (2014) Comparative study on PCDD/F pollution in soil from the Antarctic, Arctic, and Tibetan Plateau. Science of the Total Environment 497–498: 353–359.
Johansen, S.F. (2019) Riverine Inputs of Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) and Chlorobenzenes to Isfjorden, Svalbard: Implications for Spatial Distribution and Bioavailability. In: Norwegian University of Life Sciences, Ås.
Kalinchuk, V.V. , Mishukov, V.F. , and Astakhov, A.S. (2018) Arctic source for elevated atmospheric mercury (Hg 0) in the western Bering Sea in the summer of 2013. Journal of Environmental Sciences 68: 114–121.
Kallenborn, R. , Hung, H. , and Brorström-Lundén, E. (2015) Atmospheric long-range transport of persistent organic pollutants (POPs) into polar regions. In Comprehensive Analytical Chemistry. Elsevier, pp. 411–432.
Katsoyiannis, A. , and Samara, C. (2004) Persistent organic pollutants (POPs) in the sewage treatment plant of Thessaloniki, northern Greece: occurrence and removal. Water Research 38: 2685–2698.
Ke, H. , Chen, M. , Liu, M. , Chen, M. , Duan, M. , Huang, P. , et al. (2017) Fate of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons from the North Pacific to the Arctic: field measurements and fugacity model simulation. Chemosphere 184: 916–923.
Kelly, B.C. , and Gobas, F.A. (2003) An arctic terrestrial food-chain bioaccumulation model for persistent organic pollutants. Environmental Science & Technology 37: 2966–2974.
Kenny, T. A. (2019). Climate change, contaminants, and country food: collaborating with communities to promote food security in the Arctic. In Predicting Future Oceans. Elsevier, pp. 249–263.
Kirk, J.L. , Lehnherr, I. , Andersson, M. , Braune, B.M. , Chan, L. , Dastoor, A.P. , et al. (2012) Mercury in Arctic marine ecosystems: sources, pathways, and exposure. Environmental Research 119: 64–87.
Konoplev, A.V. , Volkova, E.F. , Kochetkov, A.I. , Pervunina, R.I. , and Samsonov, D.P. (2012) Monitoring of persistent organic pollutants in the ambient air as an element of the implementation of the Stockholm Convention on persistent organic pollutants. Russian Journal of Physical Chemistry B 6: 652–658.
Krata, A.A. , and Vassileva, E. (2019) Cold vapour matrix-independent generation and isotope dilution inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometry for reference measurements of Hg in marine environmental samples. Environmental Science and Pollution Research 26: 22051–22060.
Krey, A. , Kwan, M. , and Chan, H.M. (2012) Mercury speciation in brain tissue of polar bears (Ursus maritimus) from the Canadian Arctic. Environmental Research 114: 24–30.
Kwok, K.Y. , Yamazaki, E. , Yamashita, N. , Taniyasu, S. , Murphy, M.B. , Horii, Y. , et al. (2013) Transport of Perfluoroalkyl substances (PFAS) from an arctic glacier to downstream locations: Implications for sources. Science of the Total Environment 447: 46–55.
Lacerda, L.D. , and Marins, R.V. (1997) Anthropogenic mercury emissions to the atmosphere in Brazil: the impact of gold mining. Journal of Geochemical Exploration 58: 223–229.
Lacorte, S. , Quintana, J. , Tauler, R. , Ventura, F. , Tovar-Sánchez, A. , and Duarte, C.M. (2009) Ultra-trace determination of Persistent Organic Pollutants in Arctic ice using stir bar

sorptive extraction and gas chromatography coupled to mass spectrometry. Journal of Chromatography A 1216: 8581–8589.
LaKind, J.S. , Overpeck, J. , Breysse, P.N. , Backer, L. , Richardson, S.D. , Sobus, J. et al. (2016) Exposure science in an age of rapidly changing climate: challenges and opportunities. Journal of Exposure Science and Environmental Epidemiology 26: 529–538.
Landis, M.S. , Keeler, G.J. , Al-Wali, K.I. , and Stevens, R.K. (2004) Divalent inorganic reactive gaseous mercury emissions from a mercury cell chlor-alkali plant and its impact on the near-field atmospheric dry deposition. Atmospheric Environment 38: 613–622.
Larose, C. , Prestat, E. , Cecillon, S. , Berger, S. , Malandain, C. , Lyon, D. , et al. (2013) Interactions between snow chemistry, mercury inputs and microbial population dynamics in an arctic snowpack. PLoS One 8: e79972.
Lebedev, A.T. , Mazur, D.M. , Polyakova, O.V. , Kosyakov, D.S. , Kozhevnikov, A.Y. , Latkin, T.B. , et al. (2018) Semi volatile organic compounds in the snow of Russian arctic islands: Archipelago Novaya Zemlya. Environmental Pollution 239: 416–427.
Lee, D.-H. , Lind, P.M. , Jacobs, D.R. , Salihovic, S. , van Bavel, B. , and Lind, L. (2011) Polychlorinated biphenyls and organochlorine pesticides in plasma predict development of type 2 diabetes in the elderly: the prospective investigation of the vasculature in uppsala seniors (PIVUS) study. Diabetes Care 34: 1778–1784.
Leermakers, M. , Meuleman, C. , and Baeyens, W. (1995) Mercury speciation in the Scheldt Estuary. Water, Air, & Soil Pollution 80: 641–652.
Leitch, D.R. (2006) Mercury Distribution in Water and Permafrost of the Lower Mackenzie Basin, Their Contribution to the Mercury Contamination in the Beaufort Sea Marine Ecosystem, and Potential Effects of Climate Variation.
Li, Y. , Macdonald, R. , Ma, J. , Hung, H. , and Venkatesh, S. (2004) Historical α-HCH budget in the Arctic Ocean: the Arctic Mass Balance Box Model (AMBBM). Science of the Total Environment 324: 115–139.
Liao, J. , Sihler, H. , Huey, L. G. , Neuman, J. A. , Tanner, D. J. , Friess, U. , et al. (2011). A comparison of Arctic BrO measurements by chemical ionization mass spectrometry and long pathdifferential optical absorption spectroscopy. Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres 116(D14). https://doi.org/10.1029/2010JD014788
Lindberg, S.E. , Brooks, S. , Lin, C.-J. , Scott, K. , Meyers, T. , Chambers, L. , et al. (2001) Water, Air, and Soil Pollution: Focus 1: 295–302.
Lindberg, S.E. , Brooks, S. , Lin, C.-J. , Scott, K.J. , Landis, M.S. , Stevens, R.K. , et al. (2002) Dynamic oxidation of gaseous mercury in the arctic troposphere at polar sunrise. Environmental Science & Technology 36: 1245–1256.
Lohmann, R. , and Muir, D. (2010) Response to comment on "Global Aquatic Sampling (AQUA-GAPS): using passive samplers to monitor POPs in the waters of the world". Environmental Science & Technology 44: 4386–4386.
Lu, J.Y. , Schroeder, W.H. , Barrie, L.A. , Steffen, A. , Welch, H.E. , Martin, K. , et al. (2001) Magnification of atmospheric mercury deposition to polar regions in springtime: the link to tropospheric ozone depletion chemistry. Geophysical Research Letters 28: 3219–3222.
Lu, J.Y. , Schroeder, W.H. , Berg, T. , Munthe, J. , Schneeberger, D. , and Schaedlich, F. (1998) A device for sampling and determination of total particulate mercury in ambient air. Analytical Chemistry 70: 2403–2408.
Luo, J. , Han, Y. , Zhao, Y. , Huang, Y. , Liu, X. , Tao, S. , et al. (2020) Effect of northern boreal forest fires on PAH fluctuations across the arctic. Environmental Pollution 261: 114186.
Lusher, A. L. , Tirelli, V. , O'Connor, I. , and Officer, R. (2015). Microplastics in Arctic polar waters: the first reported values of particles in surface and sub-surface samples. Scientific Reports, *5* (1): 1–9.
Lydersen, C. , Fisk, A.T. , and Kovacs, K.M. (2016) A review of Greenland shark (Somniosus microcephalus) studies in the Kongsfjorden area, Svalbard Norway. Polar Biology 39: 2169–2178.
Lyman, S.N. , and Jaffe, D.A. (2012) Formation and the fate of oxidized mercury in the upper troposphere and lower stratosphere. Nature Geoscience 5: 114–117.
Ma, J. , Hung, H. , Tian, C. , and Kallenborn, R. (2011) Revolatilization of persistent organic pollutants in the arctic induced by climate change. Nature Climate Change 1: 255–260.
Ma, Y. , Halsall, C.J. , Xie, Z. , Koetke, D. , Mi, W. , Ebinghaus, R. , and Gao, G. (2017) Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in ocean sediments from the North Pacific to the Arctic

Ocean. Environmental Pollution 227: 498–504.
Macdonald, R.W. , Wang, F. , Stern, G. , and Outridge, P. (2008) The overlooked role of the ocean in mercury cycling in the arctic. Marine Pollution Bulletin 56: 1963–1965.
Malehase, T. , Daso, A.P. , and Okonkwo, J.O. (2016) Determination of mercury and its fractionation products in samples from legacy use of mercury amalgam in gold processing in Randfontein, South Africa. Emerging Contaminants 2: 157–165.
Malmquist, C. , Bindler, R. , Renberg, I. , van Bavel, B. , Karlsson, E. , Anderson, N.J. , and Tysklind, M. (2003) Time trends of selected persistent organic pollutants in lake sediments from Greenland. Environmental Science & Technology 37: 4319–4324.
Mangano, M.C. , Sarà, G. , and Corsolini, S. (2017) Monitoring of persistent organic pollutants in the polar regions: knowledge gaps & gluts through evidence mapping. Chemosphere 172: 37–45.
Meng, W. , Wang, P. , Yang, R. , Sun, H. , Matsiko, J. , Wang, D. , et al. (2018) Altitudinal dependence of PCBs and PBDEs in soil along the two sides of Mt. Sygera, southeastern Tibetan Plateau. Scientific Reports 8: 1–7.
Möller, A. , Xie, Z. , Sturm, R. , and Ebinghaus, R. (2010) Large-scale distribution of dechlorane plus in air and seawater from the arctic to Antarctica. Environmental Science & Technology 44: 8977–8982.
Möller, A. , Xie, Z. , Sturm, R. , and Ebinghaus, R. (2011) Polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDEs) and alternative brominated flame retardants in air and seawater of the European arctic. Environmental Pollution 159: 1577–1583.
Monitoring, A. (2014) Trends in Stockholm Convention Persistent Organic Pollutants (POPs) in Arctic Air, Human media and Biota. In: Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP).
Muir, D. , and Lohmann, R. (2013). Water as a new matrix for global assessment of hydrophilic POPs. TrAC Trends in Analytical Chemistry 46: 162–172.
Muir, D. , Zhang, X. , de Wit, C.A. , Vorkamp, K. , and Wilson, S. (2019) Identifying further chemicals of emerging arctic concern based on 'in silico' screening of chemical inventories. Emerging Contaminants 5: 201–210.
Muir, D.C.G. , and de Wit, C.A. (2010) Trends of legacy and new persistent organic pollutants in the circumpolar arctic: overview, conclusions, and recommendations. Science of the Total Environment 408: 3044–3051.
Muir, D.C.G. , Wagemann, R. , Hargrave, B.T. , Thomas, D.J. , Peakall, D.B. , and Norstrom, R.J. (1992) Arctic marine ecosystem contamination. Science of the Total Environment 122: 75–134.
Mullins, M.D. , Pochini, C.M. , McCrindle, S. , Romkes, M. , Safe, S.H. , and Safe, L.M. (1984) High-resolution PCB analysis: synthesis and chromatographic properties of all 209 PCB congeners. Environmental Science & Technology 18: 468–476.
Muntean, M. , Janssens-Maenhout, G. , Song, S. , Giang, A. , Selin, N.E. , Zhong, H. , et al. (2018) Evaluating EDGARv4.tox2 speciated mercury emissions ex-post scenarios and their impacts on modelled global and regional wet deposition patterns. Atmospheric Environment 184: 56–68.
Murvoll, K.M. , Skaare, J.U. , Moe, B. , Anderssen, E. , and Jenssen, B.M. (2006) spatial trends and associated biological responses of organochlorines and brominated flame retardants in hatchlings of north Atlantic kittiwakes (Rissa tridactyla). Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 25: 1648.
Oehme, M. , and Stray, H. (1982) Quantitative determination of ultra-traces of chlorinated compounds in high-volume air samples from the Arctic using polyurethane foam as collection medium. Fresenius' Zeitschrift für Analytische Chemie 311: 665–673.
Ortiz, J.M.C. (2016) Levels of Persistent Organic Pollutants (POPs) and Metals in Breeding Kittiwakes (Rissa tridactyla) from Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. In: Universitat de Barcelona (UB) & the Norwegian University of Science and Technology: 1–46
Overland, J.E. , and Wang, M. (2010) Large-scale atmospheric circulation changes are associated with the recent loss of arctic sea ice. Tellus A: Dynamic Meteorology and Oceanography 62: 1–9.
Pacyna, J. , and Keeler, G.J. (1995) Sources of Mercury in the Arctic. In Mercury as a Global Pollutant. Springer, pp. 621–632.
Pacyna, J. M. , Cousins, I. T. , Halsall, C. , Rautio, A. , Pawlak, J. , Pacyna, E. G. , et al. (2015). Impacts on human health in the Arctic owing to climate-induced changes in contaminant

cycling–The EU ArcRisk project policy outcome. Environmental Science & Policy 50: 200–213.
Pawlak, F. , Kozioł, K. , Ruman, M. , and Polkowska, Z· . (2019) Persistent organic pollutants (POPs) as an indicator of surface water quality in the vicinity of the Polish Polar Station, Horsund. Monatshefte für Chemie - Chemical Monthly 150: 1573–1578.
Pearce, J. , Caracciolo, J. , Greig, R. , Wenzloff, D. , and Steimle Jr, F. (1979) Benthic fauna and heavy metal burdens in marine organisms and sediments of a continental slope dumpsite off the northeast coast of the United States (Deepwater Dumpsite 106). Ambio Special Report 101–104.
Peeken, I. , Bergmann, M. , Gerdts, G. , Katlein, C. , Krumpen, T. , Primpke, S. , and Tekman, M. B. (2018). Microplastics in the Marine Realms of the Arctic with special emphasis on sea ice. Arctic Report Card 2018: 88.
Perron, T. , Chételat, J. , Gunn, J. , Beisner, B.E. , and Amyot, M. (2014) Effects of experimental thermocline and oxycline deepening on methylmercury bioaccumulation in a Canadian shield lake. Environmental Science & Technology 48: 2626–2634.
Pidwirny, M. (2006) Introduction to the Oceans. Retrieved from: http://wwwphysicalgeographynet/fundamentals/8ohtml.
Podar, M. , Gilmour, C.C. , Brandt, C.C. , Soren, A. , Brown, S.D. , Crable, B.R. , et al. (2015) Global prevalence and distribution of genes and microorganisms involved in mercury methylation. Science Advances 1: e1500675.
Pouch, A. , Zaborska, A. , and Pazdro, K. (2017) Concentrations and origin of polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) in sediments of western Spitsbergen fjords (Kongsfjorden, Hornsund, and Adventfjorden). Environmental Monitoring and Assessment 189: 175.
Poulain, A.J. , Garcia, E. , Amyot, M. , Campbell, P.G.C. , and Ariya, P.A. (2007a) Mercury distribution, partitioning and speciation in coastal vs. inland high arctic snow. Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta 71: 3419–3431.
Poulain, A.J. , Garcia, E. , Amyot, M. , Campbell, P.G.C. , Raofie, F. , and Ariya, P.A. (2007b) Biological and chemical redox transformations of mercury in fresh and salt waters of the high arctic during spring and summer. Environmental Science & Technology 41: 1883–1888.
Prather, M.J. , and Watson, R.T. (1990) Stratospheric ozone depletion and future levels of atmospheric chlorine and bromine. Nature 344: 729–734.
Pućko, M. , Stern, G.A. , Burt, A.E. , Jantunen, L.M. , Bidleman, T.F. , Macdonald, R.W. , et al. (2017) Current use pesticide and legacy organochlorine pesticide dynamics at the ocean-sea ice-atmosphere interface in a resolute passage, Canadian arctic, during the winter-summer transition. Science of the Total Environment 580: 1460–1469.
Pućko, M. , Stern, G.A. , Macdonald, R.W. , Barber, D.G. , Rosenberg, B. , and Walkusz, W. (2013) When will α-HCH disappear from the western arctic ocean? Journal of Marine Systems 127: 88–100.
Pućko, M. , Stern, G.A. , Macdonald, R.W. , Jantunen, L.M. , Bidleman, T.F. , Wong, F. , et al. (2015) The delivery of organic contaminants to the arctic food web: why sea ice matters. Science of the Total Environment 506–507: 444–452.
Qiu, C. , and Cai, M. (2010) Ultra trace analysis of 17 organochlorine pesticides in water samples from the Arctic based on the combination of solid-phase extraction and headspace solid-phase microextraction–gas chromatography-electron-capture detector. Journal of chromatography A 1217: 1191–1202.
Radke, L.F. , Friedli, H.R. , and Heikes, B.G. (2007) Atmospheric mercury over the NE Pacific during spring 2002: gradients, residence time, upper troposphere lower stratosphere loss, and long-range transport. Journal of Geophysical Research 112: D19305.
Ramlal, P.S. , Kelly, C.A. , Rudd, J.W.M. , and Furutani, A. (1993) Sites of methyl mercury production in remote Canadian shield. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 50: 972–979.
Rapsomanikis, S. , and Craig, P. (1991) Speciation of mercury and methylmercury compounds in aqueous samples by chromatography-atomic absorption spectrometry after ethylation with sodium tetraethyl borate. Analytica Chimica Acta 248: 563–567.
Ratcliffe, D.A. (1967) Decrease in eggshell weight in certain birds of prey. Nature 215: 208–210.
Ratcliffe, D.A. (1970) Changes attributable to pesticides in egg breakage frequency and eggshell thickness in some British birds. The Journal of Applied Ecology 7: 67.

Rayne, S. , and Forest, K. (2009) Perfluoroalkyl sulfonic and carboxylic acids: a critical review of physicochemical properties, levels and patterns in waters and wastewaters, and treatment methods. Journal of Environmental Science and Health Part A 44: 1145–1199.

Reppas-Chrysovitsinos, E. , Sobek, A. , and MacLeod, M. (2017) Screening-level exposure-based prioritization to identify potential POPs, vPvBs, and planetary boundary threats among Arctic contaminants. Emerging Contaminants 3: 85–94.

Rigét, F. , Bignert, A. , Braune, B. , Stow, J. , and Wilson, S. (2010) Temporal trends of legacy POPs in arctic biota, an update. Science of the Total Environment 408: 2874–2884.

Rotander, A. , van Bavel, B. , Polder, A. , Rigét, F. , Auðunsson, G.A. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , et al. (2012) Polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDEs) in marine mammals from arctic and north Atlantic regions, 1986–2009. Environment International 40: 102–109.

Rowland, F.S. (1990) Stratospheric ozone depletion by chlorofluorocarbons. Ambio 281–292.

Rudels, B. , Muench, R. D. , Gunn, J. , Schauer, U. , and Friedrich, H. J. (2000). Evolution of the Arctic Ocean boundary current north of the Siberian shelves. Journal of Marine Systems 25(1), 77–99.

Sakin, A.E. , Esen, F. , and Tasdemir, Y. (2017) Effects of sampling interval on the passive air sampling of atmospheric PCBs levels. Journal of Environmental Science and Health, Part A 52: 673–679.

Sanei, H. , Outridge, P.M. , Goodarzi, F. , Wang, F. , Armstrong, D. , Warren, K. , and Fishback, L. (2010) Wet deposition mercury fluxes in the Canadian sub-arctic and southern Alberta, measured using an automated precipitation collector adapted to cold regions. Atmospheric Environment 44: 1672–1681.

Savinov, V. , Muir, D.C.G. , Svetochev, V. , Svetocheva, O. , Belikov, S. , Boltunov, A. , et al. (2011) Persistent organic pollutants in ringed seals from the Russian arctic. Science of the Total Environment 409: 2734–2745.

Scheuhammer, A.M. , Meyer, M.W. , Sandheinrich, M.B. , and Murray, M.W. (2007) Effects of environmental methylmercury on the health of wild birds, mammals, and fish. AMBIO: A Journal of the Human Environment 36: 12–19.

Schroeder, W. , Anlauf, K. , Barrie, L. , Steffen, A. , and Lu, J. (1999) Depletion of mercury vapour in the arctic troposphere after polar sunrise. WIT Transactions on Ecology and the Environment 36.

Schroeder, W.H. , Anlauf, K. , Barrie, L. , Lu, J. , Steffen, A. , Schneeberger, D. , and Berg, T. (1998) Arctic springtime depletion of mercury. Nature 394: 331–332.

Schroeder, W.H. , Keeler, G. , Kock, H. , Roussel, P. , Schneeberger, D. , and Schaedlich, F. (1995) International Field Intercomparison of Atmospheric Mercury Measurement Methods. In Mercury as a Global Pollutant. Porcella, D.B. , Huckabee, J.W. , and Wheatley, B. (eds.), Dordrecht: Springer Netherlands, pp. 611–620.

Seki, O. , Kawamura, K. , Bendle, J.A. , Izawa, Y. , Suzuki, I. , Shiraiwa, T. , and Fujii, Y. (2015) Carbonaceous aerosol tracers in ice-cores record multi-decadal climate oscillations. Scientific Reports 5: 14450.

Semkin, R.G. , Mierle, G. , and Neureuther, R.J. (2005) Hydrochemistry and mercury cycling in a high arctic watershed. Science of the Total Environment 342: 199–221.

Shia, R.-L. , Seigneur, C. , Pai, P. , Ko, M. , and Sze, N.D. (1999) Global simulation of atmospheric mercury concentrations and deposition fluxes. Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres 104: 23747–23760.

Shiraiwa, M. , Li, Y. , Tsimpidi, A.P. , Karydis, V.A. , Berkemeier, T. , Pandis, S.N. , et al. (2017a) Global distribution of particle phase state in atmospheric secondary organic aerosols. Nature Communications 8: 1–7.

Shiraiwa, M. , Ueda, K. , Pozzer, A. , Lammel, G. , Kampf, C.J. , Fushimi, A. , et al. (2017b) Aerosol health effects from molecular to global scales. Environmental Science & Technology 51: 13545–13567.

Shrestha, R.A. , Pham, T.D. , and Sillanpää, M. (2009) Effect of ultrasound on removal of persistent organic pollutants (POPs) from different types of soils. Journal of Hazardous Materials 170: 871–875.

Skov, D.S. , Andersen, J. , Olsen, J. , Jacobsen, B. , Knudsen, M. , Jansen, J. , et al. (2020) Constraints from cosmogenic nuclides on the glaciation and erosion history of Dove Bugt, northeast Greenland. Geological Society of America Bulletin 132: 2282–2294.

Skyllberg, U. , Qian, J. , Frech, W. , Xia, K. , and Bleam, W.F. (2003) Distribution of mercury, methyl mercury and organic sulphur species in soil, soil solution and stream of a boreal forest catchment. Biogeochemistry 64: 53–76.

Sobolev, N. , Aksenov, A. , Sorokina, T. , Chashchin, V. , Ellingsen, D.G. , Nieboer, E. , et al. (2019) Essential and non-essential trace elements in fish consumed by indigenous peoples of the European Russian arctic. Environmental Pollution 253: 966–973.

Soerensen, A.L. , Jacob, D.J. , Schartup, A.T. , Fisher, J.A. , Lehnherr, I. , St. Louis, V.L. , et al. (2016) A mass budget for mercury and methylmercury in the arctic ocean: arctic ocean hg and mehg mass budget. Global Biogeochemical Cycles 30: 560–575.

Sonne, C. (2010) Health effects from long-range transported contaminants in arctic top predators: An integrated review based on studies of polar bears and relevant model species. Environment International 36: 461–491.

St. Pierre, K. , St. Louis, V. , Kirk, J. , Lehnherr, I. , Wang, S. , and La Farge, C. (2015) Importance of open marine waters to the enrichment of total mercury and monomethyl mercury in lichens in the Canadian high arctic. Environmental Science & Technology 49: 5930–5938.

Steffen, A. , Bottenheim, J. , Cole, A. , Ebinghaus, R. , Lawson, G. , and Leaitch, W.R. (2014a) Atmospheric mercury speciation and mercury in snow over time at alert, Canada. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 14: 2219–2231.

Steffen, A. , Bottenheim, J. , Cole, A. , Ebinghaus, R. , Lawson, G. , and Leaitch, W. (2014b) Atmospheric mercury speciation and mercury in snow over time at alert, Canada. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 14: 2219.

Steffen, A. , Douglas, T. , Amyot, M. , Ariya, P. , Aspmo, K. , Berg, T. , et al. (2008) A synthesis of atmospheric mercury depletion event chemistry in the atmosphere and snow. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 8: 1445–1482.

Steffen, A. , Lehnherr, I. , Cole, A. , Ariya, P. , Dastoor, A. , Durnford, D. , et al. (2015) Atmospheric mercury in the Canadian arctic. Part I: a review of recent field measurements. Science of the Total Environment 509–510: 3–15.

Steffen, K. , Emery, C.A. , Romiti, M. , Kang, J. , Bizzini, M. , Dvorak, J. , et al. (2013) High adherence to a neuromuscular injury prevention programme (FIFA 11+) improves functional balance and reduces injury risk in Canadian youth female football players: a cluster randomised trial. British Journal of Sports Medicine 47: 794–802.

Stern, G.A. , Halsall, C.J. , Barrie, L.A. , Muir, D.C.G. , Fellin, P. , Rosenberg, B. , et al. (1997) Polychlorinated biphenyls in arctic air. 1. Temporal and spatial trends: 1992−1994. Environmental Science & Technology 31: 3619–3628.

Stohl, A. (2006) Characteristics of atmospheric transport into the arctic troposphere. Journal of Geophysical Research 111: D11306.

Štrok, M. , Baya, P.A. , Dietrich, D. , Dimock, B. , and Hintelmann, H. (2019) Mercury speciation and mercury stable isotope composition in sediments from the Canadian arctic archipelago. Science of the Total Environment 671: 655–665.

Su, Y. , Hung, H. , Blanchard, P. , Patton, G.W. , Kallenborn, R. , Konoplev, A. , et al. (2008) A circumpolar perspective of atmospheric organochlorine pesticides (OCPs): results from six arctic monitoring stations in 2000–2003. Atmospheric Environment 42: 4682–4698.

Sweetman, A.J. , Dalla Valle, M. , Prevedouros, K. , and Jones, K.C. (2005) The role of soil organic carbon in the global cycling of persistent organic pollutants (POPs): interpreting and modelling field data. Chemosphere 60: 959–972.

Szczybelski, A.S. , van den Heuvel-Greve, M.J. , Kampen, T. , Wang, C. , van den Brink, N.W. , and Koelmans, A.A. (2016) Bioaccumulation of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, polychlorinated biphenyls and hexachlorobenzene by three Arctic benthic species from Kongsfjorden (Svalbard, Norway). Marine Pollution Bulletin 112: 65–74.

Temme, C. , Einax, J.W. , Ebinghaus, R. , and Schroeder, W.H. (2003) Measurements of atmospheric mercury species at a coastal site in the Antarctic and over the South Atlantic Ocean during polar summer. Environmental Science & Technology 37: 22–31.

Toyota, K. , Dastoor, A.P. , and Ryzhkov, A. (2013) Air-snowpack exchange of bromine, ozone, and mercury in the springtime arctic simulated by the 1-D model PHANTAS – Part 2: mercury and its speciation. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics Discussions 13: 22151–22220.

Toyota, K. , McConnell, J. , Staebler, R. , and Dastoor, A. (2014) Air–snowpack exchange of bromine, ozone, and mercury in the springtime arctic simulated by the 1-D model PHANTAS–Part 1: in-snow bromine activation and its impact on ozone. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 14: 4101–4133.

Turk, M. , Jakšić, J. , Vojinović Miloradov, M. , and Klanova, J. (2007) Post-war levels of persistent organic pollutants (POPs) in the air from Serbia determined by active and passive sampling methods. Environmental Chemistry Letters 5: 109–113.

Ubl, S. , Scheringer, M. , Stohl, A. , Burkhart, J.F. , and Hungerbuhler, K. (2012) Primary source regions of polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) measured in the Arctic. Atmospheric Environment 62: 391–399.

Urba, A. , Kvietkus, K. , Sakalys, J. , Xiao, Z. , and Lindqvist, O. (1995) A new sensitive and portable mercury vapor analyzer Gardis-1A. In Mercury as a Global Pollutant. Springer, pp. 1305–1309.

Vieweg, I. , Hop, H. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , Brey, T. , and Huber, S. (2010) Persistent organic pollutants in four bivalve species from Kongsfjorden and Liefdefjorden, Svalbard. In.

Vorkamp, K. , Balmer, J. , Hung, H. , Letcher, R.J. , and Rigét, F.F. (2019a) A review of chlorinated paraffin contamination in arctic ecosystems. Emerging Contaminants 5: 219–231.

Vorkamp, K. , Balmer, J. , Hung, H. , Letcher, R.J. , Rigét, F.F. , and de Wit, C.A. (2019b) Current-use halogenated and organophosphorous flame retardants: a review of their presence in arctic ecosystems. Emerging Contaminants 5: 179–200.

Waite, D.T. , Hunter (Retired), F.G. , and Wiens, B.J. (2005) Atmospheric transport of lindane (γ-hexachlorocyclohexane) from the Canadian prairies—a possible source for the Canadian Great Lakes, Arctic, and Rocky mountains. Atmospheric Environment 39: 275–282.

Wang, K. , Munson, K.M. , Beaupré-Laperrière, A. , Mucci, A. , Macdonald, R.W. , and Wang, F. (2018) Subsurface seawater methylmercury maximum explains biotic mercury concentrations in the Canadian Arctic. Scientific Reports 8: 14465.

Wang, Z. , Na, G. , Ma, X. , Ge, L. , Lin, Z. , and Yao, Z. (2015) Characterizing the distribution of selected PBDEs in soil, moss, and reindeer dung at Ny-Ålesund of the arctic. Chemosphere 137: 9–13.

Wang-Andersen, G. , Utne Skaare, J. , Prestrud, P. , and Steinnes, E. (1993) Levels and congener pattern of PCBs in arctic fox, Alopex lagopus, in Svalbard. Environmental Pollution 82: 269–275.

Wania, F. , Hoff, J. , Jia, C. , and Mackay, D. (1998) The effects of snow and ice on the environmental behaviour of hydrophobic organic chemicals. Environmental Pollution 102: 25–41.

Warner, N.A. , Evenset, A. , Christensen, G. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , Borgå, K. , and Leknes, H. (2010) Volatile siloxanes in the European arctic: assessment of sources and spatial distribution. Environmental Science & Technology 44: 7705–7710.

Wiener, J.G. (2013) Mercury exposed: advances in environmental analysis and ecotoxicology of a highly toxic metal: advances in environmental mercury research. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 32: 2175–2178.

Wittsiepe, J. , Schrey, P. , Lemm, F. , Eberwein, G. , and Wilhelm, M. (2008) Polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins/polychlorinated dibenzofurans (PCDD/Fs), polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), and organochlorine pesticides in human blood of pregnant women from Germany. Journal of Toxicology and Environmental Health, Part A 71: 703–709.

Wong, F. , Jantunen, L.M. , Pućko, M. , Papakyriakou, T. , Staebler, R.M. , Stern, G.A. , and Bidleman, T.F. (2011) Air−water exchange of anthropogenic and natural organohalogens on International Polar Year (IPY) expeditions in the Canadian arctic. Environmental Science & Technology 45: 876–881.

Wu, X. , Lam, J.C.W. , Xia, C. , Kang, H. , Xie, Z. , and Lam, P.K.S. (2014) Atmospheric hexachlorobenzene determined during the third China arctic research expedition: sources and environmental fate. Atmospheric Pollution Research 5: 477–483.

Xiao, H. , Shen, L. , Su, Y. , Barresi, E. , DeJong, M. , Hung, H. , et al. (2012) Atmospheric concentrations of halogenated flame retardants at two remote locations: the Canadian High Arctic and the Tibetan Plateau. Environmental Pollution 61: 154–161.

Xie, Z. , Wang, Z. , Mi, W. , Möller, A. , Wolschke, H. , and Ebinghaus, R. (2015) Neutral poly-/perfluoroalkyl substances in air and snow from the arctic. Scientific Reports 5: 8912.

Ye, Z. , Mao, H. , Lin, C. J. , and Kim, S. Y. (2016) Investigation of processes controlling summertime gaseous elemental mercury oxidation at midlatitudinal marine, coastal, and inland sites. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 16(13): 8461–8478.

Zaborska, A. , Carroll, J. , Pazdro, K. , and Pempkowiak, J. (2011) Spatio-temporal patterns of PAHs, PCBs, and HCB in sediments of the western Barents Sea. Oceanologia 53: 1005–1026.

Zepp, R. , Wolfe, N. , Azarraga, L. , Cox, R. , and Pape, C. (1977) Photochemical transformation of the DDT and methoxychlor degradation products, DDE and DMDE, by sunlight. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 6: 305–314.
Zhang, H. (2006) Photochemical Redox Reactions of Mercury. In Recent Developments in Mercury Science. Atwood, D.A. (ed.), Berlin/Heidelberg: Springer-Verlag, pp. 37–79.
Zhang, H. , Yin, R.-S. , Feng, X.-B. , Sommar, J. , Anderson, C.W. , Sapkota, A. , et al. (2013) Atmospheric mercury inputs in montane soils increase with elevation: evidence from mercury isotope signatures. Scientific Reports 3: 1–8.
Zhang, Y. , Gao, T. , Kang, S. , and Sillanpää, M. (2019). Importance of atmospheric transport for microplastics deposited in remote areas. Environmental Pollution, 254: 112953.

Fate and Transport of Mercury in the Arctic Environmental Matrices under Varying Climatic Conditions

AMAP , 1997. AMAP Assessment Report: Heavy Metals. In Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP), Oslo, Norway.
AMAP , 1998. AMAP Assessment Report: Arctic Pollution Issues. In Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP), Oslo, Norway.
AMAP , 2005. AMAP Assessment: Heavy Metals in the Arctic. In Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP), Oslo, Norway.
AMAP , 2019. Arctic Climate Change Update 2019. In Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP), Oslo, Norway.
Aubail, A. , Dietz, R. , Rigét, F. , Sonne, C. , Wiig, Ø. , & Caurant, F. (2012). Temporal trend of mercury in polar bears (Ursus maritimus) from Svalbard using teeth as a biomonitoring tissue. Journal of Environmental Monitoring 14(1), 56–63.
Bennett, M.M. (2014). North by Northeast: toward an Asian-Arctic region. Eurasian Geography and Economics 55(1), 71–93.
Bloom, N.S. , Preus, E. , Katon, J. , & Hiltner, M. (2003). Selective extractions to assess the biogeochemically relevant fractionation of inorganic mercury in sediments and soils. Analytica Chimica Acta 479(2), 233–248.
Boening, D.W. (2000). Ecological effects, transport, and the fate of mercury: a general review. Chemosphere 40(12), 1335–1351.
Budnik, L.T. , & Casteleyn, L. (2019). Mercury pollution in modern times and socio-medical consequences. Science of the Total Environment 654, 720–734.
Callaghan, T.V. , & Jonasson, S. (1995). Arctic terrestrial ecosystems and environmental change. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London. Series A: Physical and Engineering Sciences 352(1699), 259–276.
Constant, P. , Poissant, L. , Villemur, R. , Yumvihoze, E. , & Lean, D. (2007). The fate of inorganic mercury and methyl mercury within the snow cover in the low arctic tundra on the shore of Hudson Bay (Québec, Canada). Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres 112(D8).
Dastoor, A.P. , & Durnford, D.A. (2013). Arctic Ocean: is it a sink or a source of atmospheric mercury? Environmental Science & Technology 48(3), 1707–1717.
Dietz, R. , Riget, F. , & Born, E.W. (2000). Geographical differences of zinc, cadmium, mercury and selenium in polar bears (Ursus maritimus) from Greenland. Science of the Total Environment 245(1–3), 25–47.
Dommergue, A. , Larose, C. , Faïn, X. , Clarisse, O. , Foucher, D. , Hintelmann, H. , Schneider, D. , & Ferrari, C.P. (2010). Deposition of mercury species in the Ny-Ålesund area (79 N) and their transfer during snowmelt. Environmental Science & Technology 44(3), 901–907.
Epa, U. (1998). Method 7473 (SW-846): mercury in solids and solutions by thermal decomposition, amalgamation, and atomic absorption spectrophotometry, Revision 0. Washington, DC, p. 17.
Fisk, A.T. , Hobbs, K. , & Muir, D.C.G. (2003). Contaminant levels, trends and effects in the biological environment. Canadian Arctic Contaminants Assessment Report II. Ottawa: Indian and Northern Affairs Canada.

Ford, J. , Landers, D. , Kugler, D. , Lasorsa, B. , Allen-Gil, S. , Crecelius, E. , & Martinson, J. (1995). Inorganic contaminants in Arctic Alaskan ecosystems: long-range atmospheric transport or local point sources? Science of the Total Environment 160, 323–335.

Fortin, C. , Beauchamp, G. , Dansereau, M. , Lariviere, N. , & Belanger, D. (2001). Spatial variation in mercury concentrations in wild mink and river otter carcasses from the James Bay Territory, Quebec, Canada. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 40(1), 121–127.

Gauthier, L. , Nault, R. , & Crête, M. (1989). Seasonal variation in the diet of George River Caribou Herd, Québec. Naturaliste Canadien 116, 101–112.

Givelet, N. , Roos-Barraclough, F. , Goodsite, M.E. , Cheburkin, A.K. , & Shotyk, W. (2004). Atmospheric mercury accumulation rates between 5900 and 800 calibrated years BP in the high arctic of Canada recorded by peat hummocks. Environmental Science & Technology 38(19), 4964–4972.

GMA , (2018). Global Mercury Assessment, 2018. UN-Environment Programme, Chemicals and Health Branch, Geneva, Switzerland. p. 59.

Gouin, T. , Mackay, D. , Jones, K.C. , Harner, T. , & Meijer, S.N. (2004). Evidence for the “grasshopper” effect and fractionation during long-range atmospheric transport of organic contaminants. Environmental Pollution 128(1–2), 139–148.

Hallanger, I.G. , Fuglei, E. , Yoccoz, N.G. , Pedersen, Å.Ø. , König, M. , & Routti, H. (2019). Temporal trend of mercury in relation to feeding habits and food availability in arctic foxes (Vulpes Lagopus) from Svalbard, Norway. Science of the Total Environment 670, 1125–1132.

Hui, A. , Takekawa, J.Y. , Baranyuk, V.V. , & Litvin, K.V. (1998). Trace element concentrations in two subpopulations of lesser snow geese from Wrangel Island, Russia. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 34(2), 197–203.

Hwang, B. , Aksenov, Y. , Blockley, E. , Tsamados, M. , Brown, T. , Landy, J. , Stevens, D. , & Wilkinson, J. (2020). Impacts of climate change on arctic sea ice. MCCIP Science Review 2020, 208–227.

Iannilli, V. , Pasquali, V. , Setini, A. , & Corami, F. (2019). The first evidence of microplastics ingestion in benthic amphipods from Svalbard. Environmental Research 179, 108811.

Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (2013). Climate change 2013: The physical science basis. Working Group I Contribution to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Jiang, S. , Liu, X. , & Chen, Q. (2011). Distribution of total mercury and methylmercury in lake sediments in Arctic Ny-Ålesund. Chemosphere 83(8), 1108–1116.

Jorgenson, M.T. , Shur, Y.L. , & Pullman, E.R. (2006). The abrupt increase in permafrost degradation in Arctic Alaska. Geophysical Research Letters 33(2).

Kallenborn, R. , & Herzke, D. (2001). Long-Range Transport of persistent pollutants in the northern hemisphere. Environmental Science and Pollution Research 8(3), 215–215.

Kim, M.K. , & Zoh, K.D. (2012). Fate and transport of mercury in environmental media and human exposure. Journal of Preventive Medicine and Public Health 45(6), 335.

Kirk, J.L. , St. Louis, V.L. , & Hintelmann, H. (2005). What Is the Source of Methyl Mercury in the Canadian Arctic Oceans? ArcticNet Annual Scientific Meeting. Banff, Alberta.

Klaminder, J. , Yoo, K. , Rydberg, J. , & Giesler, R. (2008). An explorative study of mercury export from a thawing palsa mire. Journal of Geophysical Research: Biogeosciences 113(G4).

Kofinas, G. , Forbes, B. , Beach, H. , Berkes, F. , Berman, M. , Chapin, T. , Csonka, Y. , Kjell, D. , Osherenko, G. , Semenova, T. , & Tetlichi, J. (2005). A research plan for the study of rapid change, resilience, and vulnerability in social-ecological systems of the Arctic. The Common Property Resource Digest 73, 1–10.

Kovacs, K. M. , Lydersen, C. , Overland, J. E. , & Moore, S. E. (2011). Impacts of changing sea-ice conditions on Arctic marine mammals. Marine Biodiversity 41(1), 181–194.

Larose, C. , Dommergue, A. , De Angelis, M. , Cossa, D. , Averty, B. , Marusczak, N. , Soumis, N. , Schneider, D. , & Ferrari, C. (2010). Springtime changes in snow chemistry lead to new insights into mercury methylation in the Arctic. Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta 74(22), 6263–6275.

Larter, N.C. , & Nagy, J.A. (2004). Seasonal changes in the composition of the diets of Peary caribou and muskoxen on Banks Island. Polar Research 23(2), 131–140.

Leitch, D.R. (2006). Mercury distribution in water and permafrost of the lower Mackenzie Basin, their contribution to the mercury contamination in the Beaufort Sea marine ecosystem, and

potential effects of climate variation.
Letcher, R.J. , Bustnes, J.O. , Dietz, R. , Jenssen, B.M. , Jørgensen, E.H. , Sonne, C. , Verreault, J. , Vijayan, M.M. , & Gabrielsen, G.W. (2010). Exposure and effects assessment of persistent organohalogen contaminants in arctic wildlife and fish. Science of the Total Environment 408(15), 2995–3043.
Loseto, L.L. , Siciliano, S.D. , & Lean, D.R. (2004). Methylmercury production in High Arctic wetlands. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry: An International Journal 23(1), 17–23.
Lyman, S.N. , Cheng, I. , Gratz, L. E. , Weiss-Penzias, P. , & Zhang, L. (2020). An updated review of atmospheric mercury. Science of the Total Environment 707, 135575.
Macdonald, R.W. , Harner, T. , & Fyfe, J. (2005). Recent climate change in the Arctic and its impact on contaminant pathways and interpretation of temporal trend data. Science of the Total Environment 342(1–3), 5–86.
Maggi, C. , Berducci, M.T. , Bianchi, J. , Giani, M. , & Campanella, L. (2009). Methylmercury determination in marine sediment and organisms by direct mercury analyzer. Analytica Chimica Acta 641(1–2), 32–36.
Maiti, S.K. (2003). Handbook of Methods in Environmental Studies, Vol. 2: Air, Noise, Soil, Overburden, Solid Waste and Ecology. Japur: ABD Publishers.
Mechirackal Balan, B. , Shini, S. , Krishnan, K.P. , & Mohan, M. (2018). Mercury tolerance and biosorption in bacteria isolated from Ny-Ålesund, Svalbard, arctic. Journal of Basic Microbiology 58(4), 286–295.
Moerlein, K.J. , & Carothers, C. (2012). Total environment of change: impacts of climate change and social transitions on subsistence fisheries in northwest Alaska. Ecology and Society 17(1).
Mohan, M. , Sreelakshmi, U. , Vishnu, S. , Gopikrishna, V.G. , Pandit, G.G. , Sahu, S.K. , Tiwari, M. , Ajmal, P.Y. , Kannan, V.M. , Abdul Shukur, M. , & Krishnan, K.P. (2018). Metal contamination profile and sediment accumulation rate of arctic fjords: implications from a sediment core. Kongsfjorden. Svalbard. Marine Pollution Bulletin 42, 131.
Moritz, R.E. , Bitz, C.M. , & Steig, E.J. (2002). Dynamics of recent climate change in the arctic. Science 297(5586), 1497–1502.
Muir, D.C.G. , Wang, X. , Yang, F. , Nguyen, N. , Jackson, T.A. , Evans, M.S. , Douglas, M. , Kock, G. , Lamoureux, S. , Pienitz, R. , & Smol, J.P. (2009). Spatial trends and historical deposition of mercury in eastern and northern Canada inferred from lake sediment cores. Environmental Science & Technology 43(13), 4802–4809.
Nevitt, M.P. , & Percival, R.V. (2018). Polar opposites: assessing the state of environmental law in the world’s polar regions. BCL Review 59, 1655.
Nghiem, S.V. , Rigor, I.G. , Perovich, D.K. , Clemente-Colón, P. , Weatherly, J.W. , & Neumann, G. (2007). Rapid reduction of Arctic perennial sea ice. Geophysical Research Letters 34(19).
O’Driscoll, N.J. , Rencz, A. , & Lean, D.R. (2005). The biogeochemistry and fate of mercury in the environment. Metal Ions in Biological Systems 43, 221–238.
O’Driscoll, N.J. , Vost, E. , Mann, E. , Klapstein, S. , Tordon, R. , & Lukeman, M. (2018). Mercury photoreduction and photooxidation in lakes: effects of filtration and dissolved organic carbon concentration. Journal of Environmental Sciences 68, 151–159.
Outridge, P.M. , Sanei, H. , Stern, G.A. , Hamilton, P.B. , & Goodarzi, F. (2007). Evidence for control of mercury accumulation rates in Canadian High Arctic lake sediments by variations of aquatic primary productivity. Environmental science & technology 41(15), 5259–5265.
Pirrone, N. , & Mason, R. (2009). Mercury Fate and Transport in the Global Atmosphere. Dordrecht, The Netherlands: Springer. 1–532.
Pistone, K. , Eisenman, I. , & Ramanathan, V. (2014). Observational determination of albedo decrease caused by vanishing Arctic sea ice. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 111(9), 3322–3326.
Poulain, A.J. , Garcia, E. , Amyot, M. , Campbell, P.G. , & Ariya, P.A. (2007). Mercury distribution, partitioning and speciation in coastal vs. inland High Arctic snow. Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta 71(14), 3419–3431.
Ramasamy, E. V. , Toms, A. , Shylesh, C. M. S. , Jayasooryan, K. K. , & Mahesh, M. (2012). Mercury fractionation in the sediments of Vembanad wetland, west coast of India. Environmental Geochemistry and Health 34(5), 575–586.
Ravichandran, M. (2004). Interactions between mercury and dissolved organic matter—a review. Chemosphere 55(3), 319–331.

Riget, F. , Dietz, R. , Johansen, P. , & Asmund, G. (2000). Lead, cadmium, mercury and selenium in Greenland marine biota and sediments during AMAP phase 1. Science of the Total Environment 245(1–3), 3–14.
Selin, N.E. (2009). Global biogeochemical cycling of mercury: a review. Annual Review of Environment and Resources 34, 43–63.
Semeena, V.S. , & Lammel, G. (2005). The significance of the grasshopper effect on the atmospheric distribution of persistent organic substances. Geophysical Research Letters 32(7).
Semkin, R.G. , Mierle, G. , & Neureuther, R.J. (2005). Hydrochemistry and mercury cycling in a High Arctic watershed. Science of the Total Environment 342(1–3), 199–221.
Serreze, M.C. , & Barry, R.G. (2011). Processes and impacts of Arctic amplification: A research synthesis. Global and Planetary Change 77(1–2), 85–96.
Skaar, J.S. , Ræder, E.M. , Lyche, J.L. , Ahrens, L. , & Kallenborn, R. (2019). Elucidation of contamination sources for poly-and perfluoroalkyl substances (PFASs) on Svalbard (Norwegian Arctic). Environmental Science and Pollution Research 26(8), 7356–7363.
Sommar, J. , Wängberg, I. , Berg, T. , Gårdfeldt, K. , Munthe, J. , Richter, A. , Urba, A. , Wittrock, F. , & Schroeder, W.H. (2004). Circumpolar transport and air-surface exchange of atmospheric mercury at Ny-Ålesund (79 N), Svalbard, Spring 2002. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 7(1), 151–166.
Sprovieri, F. , Pirrone, N. , Landis, M.S. , & Stevens, R.K. (2005). Atmospheric mercury behavior at different altitudes at Ny Alesund during Spring 2003. Atmospheric Environment 39(39), 7646–7656.
St. Louis, V.L. , Sharp, M.J. , Steffen, A. , May, A. , Barker, J. , Kirk, J.L. , Kelly, D.J. , Arnott, S.E. , Keatley, B. , & Smol, J.P. (2005). Some sources and sinks of monomethyl and inorganic mercury on Ellesmere Island in the Canadian High Arctic. Environmental Science & Technology 39(8), 2686–2701.
Steinnes, E. (1995). A critical evaluation of the use of naturally growing moss to monitor the deposition of atmospheric metals. Science of the Total Environment 160, 243–249.
Stern, G.A. , Macdonald, R.W. , Outridge, P.M. , Wilson, S. , Chetelat, J. , Cole, A. , Hintelmann, H. , Loseto, L.L. , Steffen, A. , Wang, F. , & Zdanowicz, C. (2012). How does climate change influence arctic mercury? Science of the Total Environment 414, 22–42.
Streets, D.G. , Horowitz, H.M. , Lu, Z. , Levin, L. , Thackray, C.P. , & Sunderland, E.M. (2019). Global and regional trends in mercury emissions and concentrations, 2010–2015. Atmospheric Environment 201, 417–427.
Stroeve, J.C. , Markus, T. , Boisvert, L. , Miller, J. , & Barrett, A. (2014). Changes in arctic melt season and implications for sea ice loss. Geophysical Research Letters 41(4), 1216–1225.
Svendsen, H. , Beszczynska-Møller, A. , Hagen, J.O. , Lefauconnier, B. , Tverberg, V. , Gerland, S. , BørreØrbæk, J. , Bischof, K. , Papucci, C. , Zajaczkowski, M. , & Azzolini, R. (2002). The physical environment of Kongsfjorden–Krossfjorden, an Arctic fjord system in Svalbard. Polar Research 21(1), 133–166.
Tabelin, C.B. , Igarashi, T. , Villacorte-Tabelin, M. , Park, I. , Opiso, E.M. , Ito, M. , & Hiroyoshi, N. (2018). Arsenic, selenium, boron, lead, cadmium, copper, and zinc in naturally contaminated rocks: a review of their sources, modes of enrichment, mechanisms of release, and mitigation strategies. Science of the Total Environment 645, 1522–1553.
UNEP , 2002. Global Mercury Assessment 2002. United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP), Geneva, Switzerland.
Walker, G. (2007). Climate change 2007: a world melting from the top down. Nature 446, 718–721.
Warner, N.A. , Sagerup, K. , Kristoffersen, S. , Herzke, D. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , & Jenssen, B.M. (2019). Snow buntings (Plectrophenax nivealis) as bio-indicators for exposure differences to legacy and emerging persistent organic pollutants from the Arctic terrestrial environment on Svalbard. Science of the Total Environment 667, 638–647.
Whalin, L. , Kim, E.H. , & Mason, R. (2007). Factors influencing the oxidation, reduction, methylation and demethylation of mercury species in coastal waters. Marine Chemistry 107(3), 278–294.
Witherow, R.A. , & Lyons, W.B. (2008). Mercury deposition in a polar desert ecosystem. Environmental Science & Technology 42(13), 4710–4716.
Yadav, J. , Kumar, A. , & Mohan, R. (2020). The dramatic decline of arctic sea ice linked to global warming. Natural Hazards: Journal of the International Society for the Prevention and

Mitigation of Natural Hazards 103, 1–5.

Increasing Presence of Non-Polar Isolates in the Tundra and Fjord Environment – A Pointer towards Warming Trends in the Arctic

Agouge, H. , Lamy, D. , Neal, P.R. , Sogin, M.L. and Herndl, G.J. (2011) Water mass specificity of bacterial communities in the North Atlantic revealed by massively parallel sequencing. Molecular Ecology 20(2): 258–274.

Bosshard, P.P. , Santini, Y. , Gruter, D. , Stettler, R. and Bachofen, R. (2000) Bacterial diversity and composition in the chemocline of the meromictic alpine lake Cadagnoa reveal by 16S rDNA analysis. FEMS Microbial Ecology 31: 173–182.

Brooke, J.S. (2012) *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*: an emerging global opportunistic pathogen. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* 25(1): 2–41.

Chandran, A. and Hatha, A.A.M. (2005) Relative survival of *Escherichia coli* and *Salmonella typhimurium* in a tropical estuary. WaterResearch 39: 1397–1403.

Goethals, K. , Vereecke, D. , Jaziri, M. , Van Montagu, M. and Holsters, M. (2001) Leafy gall formation by *Rhodococcusfascians* . Annual Reviews in Phytopathology 39: 27–52.

Hoffman, H. , Stindle, S. , Stumpf, A. , Mehlen, A. , Monget, D. , Heeseman, J. , Sleifer, K.H. and Roggenkamp, A. (2005) Description of Enterobacterludwigii sp. Nov., a novel Enterobacter species of clinical significance. Systematic and Applied Bacteriology 28(3): 206–212.

Hop, H. , Pearson, T. , Hegseth, E.N. , Kovacs, K.M. , Wiencke, C. , Kwaniewski, S. , Eiane, K. , Mehlum, F. , Gulliksen, B. , Wlodarsk-Kowalczuk, M. , Lydersen, C. , Weslawski, J.M. , Cochrane, S. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , Leakey, R.J.G. , Lonee, O.J. , Zajaczkowski, M. , Falk-Petersen, S. , Kendall, M. , Wnagberg, S.A. , Bischof, K. , Voronkov, A.Y. , Kovaltchouk, N.A. , Wiktor, J. , Poltermann, M. , di Prisco, G. , Papucci, C. and Gerland, S. (2002) The marine ecosystem of Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Polar Research 21: 167–208.

Ito, H. and Kudoh, S. (1997) Characteristics of water in Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Proceedings of NIPR Symposium. Polar Meteorology and Glaciology 11: 211–232.

Jorgensen, B.B. , Glud, R.N. and Holby, O. (2005) Oxygen distribution and bioirrigation in Arctic fjord sediments (Svalbard, Barents Sea). Marine Ecology Progressive Series 292: 85–95.

Kirchman, D. L. , Moran, X. A.G. and Ducklow, H. (2009) Microbial growth in polar oceans – the role of temperature and potential impact of climate change. Nature Reviews in Microbiology 7: 451–459.

Kwa, A.L. , Low, J.G. , Lim, T.P. , Leow, P.C. , Kurup, A. and Tam, V.H. (2008) Independent predictors for mortality in patient with positive *Stenotrophomonasmaltophilia* cultures. Annals of Academy of Medicine Singapore 37(10): 826–830.

National Research Council (2015) Arctic Matters: The Global Connection to Changes in the Arctic. Washington DC. The National Academic Press, https://doi.org/10.17226/21717.

Orcutt, B.N. , Sylvan, J.B. , Knab, N.J. and Edwards, K.J. (2011) Microbial Ecology of the dark ocean above, at, and below the seafloor. Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews 75: 361–422.

Overland, J.E. , Wang, M. , Walsh, J.E. and Stroeve, J.C. (2014) Future arctic climate changes: Adaptation and mitigation time scales. Earths Future 2, 68–74.

Paez, J.I. , Tengan, F.M. , Barone, A.A. , Levine, A.S. and Costa, F.S. (2008) Factors associated with mortality in patients with bloodstream infection and pneumonia due to *Stenotrophomonasmaltophilia* . European Journal of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases 27(10): 901–906.

Perreault, N.N. , Greer, C.W. , Andersen, D.T. , Tille, S. , Couloume, G.L. , Lollar, B.S. and Whyte, L.G. (2008) Heterotrophic and autotrophic microbial populations in cold perennial springs of the high Arctic. Applied and Environmental Microbiology 74: 898–907.

Piontek, J. , Borchard, C. , Sperling, M. , Schulz, K.G. , Riebesell, U and Engel, A (2012) Response of bacterioplankton activity in an Arctic fjord system to elevated pCO 2 : results from a mesocosm perturbation study. BiogeosciencesDiscussion 9: 10467–10511.

Piquet, A.M.-T. , Scheepens, J.F. , Bolhuis, H. , Wiencke, C. and Buma, A.G.J. (2010) Variability of protistan and bacterial communities in two Arctic fjords (Spitsbergen). Polar Biology 33:1521–1536.

Piwosz, K. , Walkusz, W. , Hapter, R. , Wieczorek, P. , Hop, H. and Wiktor, J. (2009) Comparison of productivity and phytoplankton in a warm (Kongsfjorden) and a cold (Hornsund) Spitzbergen fjord in mid summer 2002. Polar Biology 32: 549–559.

Renaud, P.E. , Carrol, M.L. and Ambrose, W.G. Jr. (2008) Effect of global warming on Arctic seafloor communities and its consequences for higher trophic levels. In Impacts of Global Warming on Polar Ecosystems. C.M. Duarte (Ed.). Fundacion BBVA, Spain. ISBN 978–84–96515-74-1. pp. 1–39.

Sinha, R.K. , Krishnan, K.P. , Hatha, A.A.M. , Rahiman, K.M.M. , Thresyamma, D.D. and Kerkar, S. (2017) Diversity of retrievable heterotrophic bacteria in Kongsfjorden, an Arctic fjord. Brazilian Journal of Microbiology 48: 51–61.

Sjolund, M. , Bonnedhal, J. , Hernandez, J. , Bengtsson, S. , Cederbrant, G. , Pinhassi, J. , Kahlmeter, G. and Olssen, B. (2008) Dissemination of multidrug-resistant bacteria into the Arctic. Emerging Infectious Diseases 14, 70–72.

Srinivas, T.N.R. , Nageswara Rao, S.S.S. , Reddy, P.V.V. , Pratibha, M.S. , Sailaja, B. , Kavya, B. , Kishore, K.H. , Begum, Z. , Singh, S.M. and Shivaji, S. (2009) Bacterial diversity and bioprospecting for cold-active lipases, amylases and proteases, from culturable bacteria of Kongsfjorden and Ny-Alesund, Svalbard, Arctic. CurrentMicrobiology 59: 537–547.

Svendson, H. , Beszczynska-Møller, A. , Hagen, J. O. , Lefauconnier, B. , Tverberg, V. and Gerland, S. (2002) The physical environment of Kongsfjorden--Krossfjorden, an Arctic fjord system in Svalbard. Polar Research 21, 133–166.

Tamura, K. , Peterson, D. , Peterson, N. , Stecher, G. , Nei M. and Kumar, S. (2011) MEGA5: Molecular evolutionary genetics analysis using maximum likelihood, evolutionary distance and maximum parsimony methods. Molecular Biology and Evolution 28(10): 2731–2739.

Teske, A. , Durbin, A. , Ziervogel, K. , Cox, C. and Arnosti, C. (2011) Microbial community composition and function in permanently cold seawater and sediments from an Arctic fjord of Svalbard. Applied Environmental Microbiology 77(6): 2008–2018.

Vandeputte, O. , Oden, S. , Mol, A. , et al. (2005) Biosynthesis of auxin by the gram-positive phytopathogen *Rhodococcusfascians* is controlled by compounds specific to infected plant tissues. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology* 71(3): 1169–1177.

Walkusz, W. , Kwaniewski, S. , Falk-Petersen, S. , Hop, H. , Tverberg, V. , Wieczorek, P. and Weslawski, J.M. (2009) Seasonal and spatial changes in the zooplankton community in Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Polar Research 28: 254–281.

Wang, M. and Overland, J.E. (2009) A sea ice-free summer in the Arctic within 30 years? Geophysical Research Letters 36. doi: 10.1029/2009GL037820.

Winker, K. , McCracken, K.G. , Gibson, D.D. , Pruett, C.L. , Meier, R. , Huettmann, F. , Wege, M. , Kulikova, I.V. , Zhuravlev I.N. , Perdue, M.L. , Spackman, E. , Suarez, D.L. and Swayne, D.E. (2007) Movement of birds and avian influenza from Asia into Alaska. Emerging Infectious Diseases 13: 547–552.

Zajaczkowski, M. (2008) Sediment supply and fluxes in glacial and outwash fjords, Kongsfjorden and Adventfjorden, Svalbard. Polar Research 1: 59–72.

Zeng, Y. , Zou, Y. , Grebmeier, J.M. , He, J. and Zheng, T. (2009) Culture-independent and dependent methods to investigate the diversity of planktonic bacteria in the northern Bering Sea. Polar Biology 35: 117–129.

Zheng, Y. , Zheng, T. and Li, H. (2009) Community composition of the marine bacterioplankton in Kongsfjorden (Spitzbergen) as revealed by 16S rRNA gene analysis. Polar Biology 32: 1447–1460.

Zheng, Y. , Zou, Y. , Chen, B. , Grebmeir, J.M. , Li, H. , Yu, Y. and Zheng, T. (2011) Phylogenetic diversity of sediment bacteria in the northern Bering Sea. Polar Biology 34: 907–919.

Zooplankton of the Past, Present and Future

Aagaard, K. , & Carmack, E.C. (1989). The role of sea ice and other fresh water in the Arctic circulation. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 94(C10), 14485–14498.

Abe, Y. , Matsuno, K. , Fujiwara, A. , & Yamaguchi, A. (2020). Review of spatial and inter-annual changes in the zooplankton community structure in the western Arctic Ocean during

summers of 2008–2017. Progress in Oceanography 102391.
Ashjian, C.J. , Campbell, R.G. , Welch, H.E. , Butler, M. , & Van Keuren, D. (2003). The annual cycle in abundance, distribution, and size about hydrography of important copepod species in the western Arctic Ocean. Deep-Sea Research Part I 50, 1235–1261.
Astthorsson, O.S. , & Gislason, A. (1995). Long-term changes in zooplankton biomass in Icelandic waters in spring. ICES Journal of Marine Science 52(3–4), 657–668.
Auel, H. , & Hagen, W. (2002). Mesozooplankton community structure, abundance and biomass in the central Arctic Ocean. Marine Biology 140, 1013–1021.
Basedow, S.L. , Eiane, K. , Tverberg, V. , & Spindler, M. (2004). Advection of zooplankton in an Arctic fjord (Kongsfjorden, Svalbard). Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 60(1), 113–124.
Basedow, S.L. , Sundfjord, A. , von Appen, W.J. , Halvorsen, E. , Kwasniewski, S. , & Reigstad, M. (2018). Seasonal variation in the transport of zooplankton into the Arctic basin through the Atlantic gateway, Fram Strait. Frontiers in Marine Science, *5* , 194.
Berge, J. , Cottier, F. , Varpe, Ø. , Renaud, P.E. , Falk-Petersen, S. , Kwasniewski, S. , ... & Bjærke, O. (2014). Arctic complexity: a case study on diel vertical migration of zooplankton. Journal of Plankton Research 36(5), 1279–1297.
Blachowiak-Samolyk, K. , Kwasniewski, S. , Richardson, K. , Dmoch, K. , Hansen, E. , Hop, H. , ... & Mouritsen, L.T. (2006). Arctic zooplankton does not perform diel vertical migration (DVM) during periods of the midnight sun. Marine Ecology Progress Series 308, 101–116.
Borga˚ K , Gabrielsen GW , Skaare J.U. (2002). Differences in contamination load between pelagic and sympagic invertebrates in the Arctic marginal ice zone: Influence of habitat, diet, and geography. Marine Ecology Progress Series 235, 157–169.
Brodsky, K.A. , & Nikitin, M.N. (1955). Observational data of the scientific research drifting station of 1950–1951. Hydrobiological Work. Morskoy Transport 1, 404–410.
Brodsky, K.A. , & Pavshtiks, E.A. (1976). Plankton of the central part of the Arctic Basin. Polar Geography 1, 143–161.
Buesseler, K.O. , Lamborg, C.H. , Boyd, P.W. , Lam, P.J. , Trull, T.W. , Bidigare, R.R. , ... & Honda, M. (2007). Revisiting carbon flux through the ocean's twilight zone. Science 316(5824), 567–570.
Carmack, E. , Barber, D.G. , Christensen, J.R. , Macdonald, R.W. , Rudels, B. , & Sakshaug, E. (2005). Climate variability and physical forcing of the food webs and the carbon budget on panarctic shelves. Progress in Oceanography 71, 145–181.
Carmack, E.C. , Aagaard, K. , Swift, J.H. , MacDonald, R.W. , McLaughlin, F.A. , Jones, E.P. , Perkin, R.G. , Smith, J.N. , Elis, K.M. , & Killius, L.R. (1997). Changes in temperature and tracer hdistributions within the Arctic Ocean results from the 1994 Arctic Ocean section. Deep-Sea Research Part II. Topical Studies in Oceanography 44, 1487–1502.
Comiso, J.C. , Parkinson, C.L. , Gersten, R. , & Stock, L. (2008). Accelerated decline in the Arctic sea ice cover. Geophysical Research Letters III 35, L01703. doi: 10.1029/2007GL031972.
Conover, R.J. , & Siferd, T.D. (1993). Dark-season survival strategies of coastal zone zooplankton in the Canadian Arctic. The Arctic 303–311.
Cottier, F.R. , Tarling, G.A. , Wold, A. , & Falk-Petersen, S. (2006). Unsynchronised and synchronised vertical migration of zooplankton in a high Arctic fjord. Limnology and Oceanography 51(6), 2586–2599.
Dalpadado, P. , Ingvaldsen, R. , & Hassel, A. (2003). Zooplankton biomass variation in relation to climatic conditions in the Barents Sea. Polar Biology 26(4), 233–241.
Dalpadado, P. , Ingvaldsen, R.B. , Stige, L.C. , Bogstad, B. , Knutsen, T. , Ottersen, G. , & Ellertsen, B. (2012). Climate effects on Barents Sea ecosystem dynamics. ICES Journal of Marine Science 69, 1303–1316.
Dam, H.G. , & Baumann, H. (2017). Climate change, zooplankton and fisheries. Climate Change Impacts on Fisheries and Aquaculture: A Global Analysis 2, 851–874.
Darnis, G. , & Fortier, L. (2012). Zooplankton respiration and the export of carbon at depth in the Amundsen Gulf (Arctic Ocean). Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 117(C4).
Darnis, G. , Hobbs, L. , Geoffroy, M. , Grenvald, J.C. , Renaud, P.E. , Berge, J. , ... & Wold, A. (2017). From polar night to midnight sun: diel vertical migration, metabolism and biogeochemical role of zooplankton in a high Arctic fjord (Kongsfjorden, Svalbard). Limnology and Oceanography 62(4), 1586–1605.

Dawson, J.K. (1978). Vertical distribution of *Calanus hyperboreus* in the central Arctic Ocean. Limnology and Oceanography 23, 950–957.
Ellingsen, I.H. , Dalpadado, P. , Slagstad, D. , & Loeng, H. (2008). Impact of climatic change on the biological production in the Barents Sea. Climatic Change 87(1–2), 155–175.
Falk-Petersen, S. , Leu, E. , Berge, J. , Kwasniewski, S. , Nygård, H. , Røstad, A. , ... & Gulliksen, B. (2008). Vertical migration in high Arctic waters during autumn 2004. Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 55(20–21), 2275–2284.
Feng, M. , Zhang, W. , & Xiao, T. (2014). Spatial and temporal distribution of tintinnid (Ciliophora: Tintinnida) communities in Kongsfjorden, Svalbard (Arctic), during summer. Polar Biology 37(2), 291–296.
Fischer, J. , & Visbeck, M. (1993). Seasonal variation of the daily zooplankton migration in the Greenland Sea. Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 40(8), 1547–1557.
Fisk, A.T. , Stern, G.A. , Hobson, K.A. , Strachan, W.J. , Loewen, M.D. , & Norstrom, R.J. (2001). Persistent organic pollutants (POPs) in a small, herbivorous, Arctic marine zooplankton (Calanus hyperboreus): trends from April to July and the influence of lipids and trophic transfer. Marine Pollution Bulletin 43(1–6), 93–101.
Garzke, J. , Ismar, S.M.H. , & Sommer, U. (2016). Climate change affects low trophic level marine consumers: warming decreases copepod size and abundance. Oecologia 177, 849–860.
Gislason, A. , & Astthorsson, O.S. (1998). Seasonal variations in biomass, abundance and composition of zooplankton in the subarctic waters north of Iceland. Polar Biology 20(2), 85–94.
Gluchowska, M. , Trudnowska, E. , Goszczko, I. , Kubiszyn, A. M. , Blachowiak-Samolyk, K. , Walczowski, W. , & Kwasniewski, S. (2017). Variations in the structural and functional diversity of zooplankton over vertical and horizontal environmental gradients en route to the Arctic Ocean through the Fram Strait. PloS One 12(2), e0171715.
Grainger, E.H. (1965). Zooplankton forms the Arctic Ocean and adjacent Canadian waters. Journal of the Fisheries Board of Canada 22(2), 543–564.
Grainger, E.H. (1989). Vertical distribution of zooplankton in the central Arctic Ocean. In *Proceedings of the sixth conference of the ComitéArctique International* . pp. 48–60.
Grebmeier, J.M. , Overland, J. , Moore, S.E. , Farley, E.V. , Carmack, E. , Cooper, L.W. , Frey, K. , Helle, J.H. , McLaughlin, F.A. , & McNutt, S.L. (2006). A major ecosystem shift in the Northern Bering Sea. Science 311, 1461–1464. doi: 10.1126/science.1121365.
Grenvald, J.C. , Callesen, T.A. , Daase, M. , Hobbs, L. , Darnis, G. , Renaud, P.E. , ... & Berge, J. (2016). Plankton community composition and vertical migration during polar night in Kongsfjorden. Polar Biology 39(10), 1879–1895.
Haakstad, M. , Kogeler, J.W. , & Dahle, S. (1994). Studies of sea surface temperatures in selected northern Norwegian fjords using Landsat TM data. Polar Research 13(1), 95–110.
Hagen, W. , & Auel, H. (2001). Seasonal adaptations and the role of lipids in oceanic zooplankton. Zoology 104(3–4), 313–326.
Haug, T. , Bogstad, B. , Chierici, M. , Gjøsæter, H. , Hallfredsson, E. H. , Høines, Å.S. , Hoel, A.H. , Ingvaldsen, R.B. , Jørgensen, L.L. , Knutsen, T. , Loeng, H. , Naustvoll, L.J. , Røttinger, I. , & Sunnanå, K. (2017). Future harvest of living resources in the Arctic Ocean north of the Nordic and Barents seas: a review of possibilities and constraints. Fisheries Research 188, 38–57.
Hays, G.C. , Kennedy, H. , & Frost, B.W. (2001). Individual variability in diel vertical migration of a marine copepod: why some individuals remain at depth when others migrate. Limnology and Oceanography 46(8), 2050–2054.
Hirche, H.J. , & Kosobokova, K.N. (2003). Early reproduction and development of dominant calanoid copepods in the ice zone of the Barents Sea – need for a change of paradigms? Marine Biology 143, 769–781.
Hirche, H.J. , & Kosobokova, K.N. (2007). Distribution of Calanus finmarchicus in the northern North Atlantic and Arctic Ocean – expatriation and potential colonization. Deep-Sea Research Part II 54, 2729–2747.
Hirche, H.J. , & Kosobokova, K.N. (2011). Winter studies on zooplankton in Arctic seas: the Storfjord (Svalbard) and adjacent ice-covered the Barents Sea. Marine Biology 158(10), 2359–2376.

Hirche, H.J. , & Mumm, N. (1992). Distribution of dominant copepods in the Nansen Basin, Arctic Ocean, in summer. Deep-Sea Research 39(Suppl. 2), S485–S505.
Hop, H. , Borga, K. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , Kleivane, L. , & Skaare, J.U. (2002). Food web magnification of persistent organic pollutants in poikilotherms and homeotherms from the Barents Sea. Environmental Science and Technology 36, 2589–2597.
Hop, H. , Pearson, T. , Hegseth, E.N. , Kovacs, K.M. , Wiencke, C. , Kwasniewski, S. , ... & Lydersen, C. (2002). The marine ecosystem of Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Polar Research 21(1), 167–208.
Hop, H. , Wold, A. , Vihtakari, M. , Daase, M. , Kwasniewski, S. , Gluchowska, M. , ... & Falk-Petersen, S. (2019). Zooplankton in Kongsfjorden (1996–2016) in Relation to Climate Change. In The Ecosystem of Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. pp. 229–300. Springer, Cham.
Hopcroft, R.R. , Clarke, C. , Nelson, R.J. , & Raskoff, K.A. (2005). Zooplankton communities of the Arctic’s Canada Basin: the contribution by smaller taxa. Polar Biology 28(3), 198–206.
Hopcroft, R.R. , Kosobokova, K.N. , & Pinchuk, A.I. (2010). Zooplankton community patterns in the Chukchi Sea during summer 2004. Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 57(1–2), 27–39.
Hopkins, T.L. (1969a). Zooplankton standing crop in the Arctic Basin. Limnology and Oceanography 14(1), 80–85.
Hopkins, T.L. (1969b). Zooplankton biomass related to hydrography along the drift track of Arlis II in the Arctic Basin and the East Greenland Current. Journal of Fisheries Research Board of Canada 26, 305–310.
Hughes, K.H. (1968). Seasonal Vertical Distribution of Copepods in the Arctic Water in the Canadian Basin of the North Polar Sea. M.Sc. thesis, University of Washington.
Johnson, M.W. (1963). Zooplankton collections from the high polar basins with special reference to the Copepoda. Limnology and Oceanography 8, 89–102.
Kasyan, V.V. (2020). Variability and spatial distribution of zooplankton communities in the western Chukchi Sea during early fall. Polar Science 100508.
Kielhorn, W.V. (1952). The biology of the surface zone zooplankton of a boreo-arctic Atlantic Ocean area. Journal of the Fisheries Board of Canada 9(5), 223–264.
Klein Breteler, W.C.M. , & Schogt, N. (1994). Development of Acartiaclausi (Copepoda, Calanoida) cultured at different conditions of temperature and food. Hydrobiologia 292–293, 469–479.
Koplin, J. (2020). Community composition of epipelagic zooplankton in the Eurasian Basin 2017 determined by ZooScan image analysis (Doctoral dissertation, University of Hamburg).
Kordas, R.L. , Harley, C.D.G. , & O’Connor, M.I. (2011.) Community ecology in a warming world: the influence of temperature on interspecific interactions in marine systems. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 400, 218–226.
Kosobokova, K. , & Hirche, H.J. (2000). Zooplankton distribution across the Lomonosov Ridge, Arctic Ocean: species inventory, biomass and vertical structure. Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 47(11), 2029–2060.
Kosobokova, K. , & Hirche, H.J. (2001). Reproduction of Calanus glacialis in the Laptev Sea, Arctic Ocean. Polar Biology 24, 33–43.
Kosobokova, K. , & Hirche, H.J. (2009). Biomass of zooplankton in the eastern Arctic Ocean–a baseline study. Progress in Oceanography 82(4), 265–280.
Kosobokova, K.N. (1978). Diurnal vertical distribution of *Calanus hyperboreus* Kroyer and *Calanus glacialis* Jaschnov in the Central Polar Basin. Oceanology 18, 476–480.
Kosobokova, K.N. (1981). Zooplankton of the Arctic Ocean. PhD. Thesis, Institute of Oceanology, Academy of Sciences, Moscow, pp. 1–150.
Kosobokova, K.N. (1982). Composition and distribution of the biomass of zooplankton in the central Arctic Basin. Oceanology 22, 744–750.
Kosobokova, K.N. (1989). Vertical distribution of plankton animals in the eastern part of the central Arctic Basin. Explorations of the Fauna of the Seas, Marine Plankton, Leningrad 41(49), 24–31.
Kosobokova, K.N. , Hopcroft, R.R. , & Hirche, H.J. (2011). Patterns of zooplankton diversity through the depths of the Arctic’s central basins. Marine Biodiversity 41(1), 29–50.
Kwasniewski, S. , Gluchowska, M. , Walkusz, W. , Karnovsky, N.J. , Jakubas, D. , Wojczulanis-Jakubas, K. , Harding, A.M.A. , Goszczko, I. , Cisek, M. , Beszczynska-Möller, A. , Walczowski, W. , Weslawski, J.M. , & Stempniewicz, L. (2012). Interannual changes in zooplankton on the

West Spitsbergen Shelf in relation to hydrography and their consequences for the diet of planktivorous seabirds. Journal of Marine Science 69, 890–901.
Kwasniewski, S. , Hop, H. , Falk-Petersen, S. , & Pedersen, G. (2003). Distribution of Calanus species in Kongsfjorden, a glacial fjord in Svalbard. Journal of Plankton Research 25(1), 1–20.
Kwasniewski, S. , Walkusz, W. , Cottier, F.R. , & Leu, E. (2013). Mesozooplankton dynamics in relation to food availability during spring and early summer in a high latitude glaciated fjord (Kongsfjorden), with a focus on Calanus. Journal of Marine Systems 111, 83–96.
Lampert, W. (1989). The adaptive significance of diel vertical migration of zooplankton. Functional Ecology 3(1), 21–27.
Lane, P.V.Z. , Llinás, L. , Smith, S.L. , & Pilz, D. (2008). Zooplankton distribution in the western Arctic during summer 2002: hydrographic habitats and implications for food chain dynamics. Journal of Marine Systems 70, 97–133.
Last, K.S. , Hobbs, L. , Berge, J. , Brierley, A.S. , & Cottier, F. (2016). Moonlight drives ocean-scale mass vertical migration of zooplankton during the Arctic winter. Current Biology 26(2), 244–251.
Lee, R.F. (1975). Lipids of Arctic zooplankton. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part B: Comparative Biochemistry 51(3), 263–266.
Maslanik, J.A. , Fowler, C. , Stroeve, J. , Drobot, S. , Zwally, J. , Emery, D. , & Yi, W. (2007). A younger, thinner Arctic ice cover: Increased potential for rapid, extensive sea-ice loss. Geophysical Research Letters 34, L24501. doi: 10.1029/2007GL032043.
Melnikov, I.A. , & Kolosova, E.G. (2001). The Canada Basin zooplankton in recent environmental changes in the Arctic. In Semiletov, I.P. (Ed.), Proceedings of the Arctic Regional Center, vol. 3. Pacific Institute of Oceanology, Vladivostok, pp. 165–176.
Minoda, T. (1967). Seasonal distribution of Copepoda in the Arctic Ocean from June to December 1964. Records of Oceanographic Works in Japan 9, 61–168.
Miquel, J.C. , Gasser, B. , Martín de Nascimento, J. , Marec, M. , Babin, M. , Fortier, L. , & Forest, A. (2015). Downward particle flux and carbon export in the Beaufort Sea, Arctic Ocean; the role of zooplankton.
Møller, E.F. , & Nielsen, T.G. (2020). Borealization of Arctic zooplankton—smaller and less fat zooplankton species in Disko Bay, Western Greenland. Limnology and Oceanography 65(6), 1175–1188.
Mumm, N. (1993). Composition and distribution of mesozooplankton in the Nansen Basin, Arctic Ocean, during summer. Polar Biology 13, 451–461.
Mumm, N. , Auel, H. , Hanssen, H. , Hagen, W. , Richter, C. , & Hirche, H.-J. (1998). Breaking the ice, large-scale distribution of mesozooplankton after a decade of Arctic and transpolar cruises. Polar Biology 20, 189–197.
Nelson, R.J. , Carmack, E.C. , McLaughlin, F.A. , & Cooper, G.A. (2009). Penetration of Pacific zooplankton into the western Arctic Ocean tracked with molecular population genetics. Marine Ecology Progress Series 381, 129–138.
NOAA National Centers for Environmental information, Climate at a Glance: Global Time Series , published November 2021, retrieved on November 25, 2021 from https://www.ncdc.noaa.gov/cag/
Ohman, M.D. (1990). The demographic benefits of diel vertical migration by zooplankton. Ecological Monographs 60(3), 257–281.
Olli, K. , Wassmann, P. , Reigstad, M. , Ratkova, T. , Arashkevich, E. , Pasternak, A. , Matrai, P.A. , Knulst, J. , Tranvik, L. , Klais, R. , & Jacobbsen, A. (2007). The fate of production in the central Arctic Ocean – top–downregulation by zooplankton expatriates? Progress in Oceanography 72, 84–113.
Ormańczyk, M.R. , Głuchowska, M. , Olszewska, A. , & Kwasniewski, S. (2017). Zooplankton structure in high latitude fjords with contrasting oceanography (Hornsund and Kongsfjorden, Spitsbergen). Oceanologia 59(4), 508–524.
Pautzke, C.G. (1979). Phytoplankton primary production below the Arctic Ocean pack ice, an ecosystems analysis. PhD. Thesis, University of Washington, p. 181.
Perovich, D.K. , Richter-Menge, J.A. , Jones, K.F. , & Light, B. (2008). Sunlight, water, and ice: Extreme Arctic sea ice melt during the summer of 2007. Geophysical Research Letters 35, L11501. doi: 10.1029/2008GL034007.
Raskoff, K.A. , Purcell, J. E. , & Hopcroft, R. R. (2005). Gelatinous zooplankton of the Arctic Ocean: in situ observations under the ice. Polar Biology 28(3), 207–217.

Richter, C. (1994). Regional and seasonal variability in the vertical distribution of mesozooplankton in the Greenland Sea. BerichtezurPolarforschung (Reports on Polar Research) 154.
Riser, C.W. , Wassmann, P. , Reigstad, M. , & Seuthe, L. (2008). Vertical flux regulation by zooplankton in the northern Barents Sea during Arctic spring. Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 55(20–21), 2320–2329.
Rudels, B. , Muench, R.D. , Gunn, J. , Schauer, U. , & Friedrich, H.J. (2000). Evolution of the Arctic boundary current north of the Siberian Shelves. Journal of Marine Systems 25, 77–99.
Saiz, E. , Calbet, A. , Isari, S. , Anto, M. , Velasco, E. M. , Almeda, R. , ... & Alcaraz, M. (2013). Zooplankton distribution and feeding in the Arctic Ocean during a Phaeocystispouchetii bloom. Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 72, 17–33.
Schauer, U. , Muench, R.D. , Rudels, B. , & Timokhov, L. (1997). Impact of eastern shelf waters on the Nansen Basin intermediate layers. Journal of Geophysical Research 102(C2), 3371–3382.
Schmid, M.S. , Aubry, C. , Grigor, J. , & Fortier, L. (2016). The LOKI underwater imaging system and an automatic identification model for the detection of zooplankton taxa in the Arctic Ocean. Methods in Oceanography 15, 129–160.
Sherr, E.B. , Sherr, B.F. , Wheeler, P.A. , & Thompson, K. (2003). Temporal and spatial variation in stocks of autotrophic and heterotrophic microbes in the upper water column of the central Arctic Ocean. Deep-Sea Research Part I 50, 557–571.
Slagstad, D. , Ellingsen, I.H. , & Wassmann, P. (2011). Evaluating primary and secondary production in an Arctic Ocean void of summer sea ice: an experimental simulation approach. Progress in Oceanography 90, 117–131.
Sobek, A. , Reigstad, M. , & Gustafsson, Ö. (2006). Partitioning of polychlorinated biphenyls between Arctic seawater and size-fractionated zooplankton. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry: An International Journal 25(7), 1720–1728.
Taylor, A.H. , Allen, I. , & Clark, P.A. (2002). Extraction of a weak climatic signal by an ecosystem. Nature 416, 629–632.
Thibault, D. , Head, E.J.H. , & Wheeler, P.A. (1999). Mesozooplankton in the Arctic Ocean in summer. Deep-Sea Research Part I 46, 1391–1415.
Trudnowska, E. , Basedow, S. , & Blachowiak-Samolyk, K. (2014). Mid-summer mesozooplankton biomass, its size distribution, and estimated production within glacial Arctic fjord (Hornsund, Svalbard). Journal of Marine Systems 137, 55–66.
Trudnowska, E. , Dąbrowska, A. M. , Boehnke, R. , Zaj ą czkowski, M. , & Blachowiak-Samolyk, K. (2020). Particles, protists, and zooplankton in glacier-influenced coastal svalbard waters. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 106842.
Trudnowska, E. , Stemmann, L. , Błachowiak-Samołyk, K. , & Kwasniewski, S. (2020). Taxonomic and size structures of zooplankton communities in the fjords along the Atlantic water passage to the Arctic. Journal of Marine Systems 204, 103306.
Turner, J.T. (2015). Zooplankton fecal pellets, marine snow, phytodetritus and the ocean's biological pump. Progress in Oceanography 130, 205–248.
Vihtakari, M. , Welcker, J. , Moe, B. , Chastel, O. , Tartu, S. , Hop, H. , Bech, C. , Descamps, S. , & Gabrielsen, G.W. (2018). Black-legged kittiwakes as messengers of Atlantification in the Arctic. Scientific Reports 8, 1178.
Vinogradov, M.E. , & Melnikov, I.A. (1980). Studies of the pelagic ecosystems of the central Arctic basin. In Vinogradov, M.E. (Ed.), BiologiyaTsentral'nogoArkicheskogobasseyna (Biology of the central Arctic Basin). Nauka, Moscow, pp. 5–14.
Virketis, M.A. (1959). Materials on the Zooplankton of the Central Part of the Arctic Ocean (in Russian). Results of Scientific Observations on the Drift Stations "North Pole 4" and North Pole 5", 1955–1956, Moscow, 132–206.
Walkusz, W. , Kwasniewski, S. , Petersen, S.F. , Hop, H. , Tverberg, V. , Wieczorek, P. , & Weslawski, J.M. (2009). Seasonal and spatial changes in the zooplankton community of Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Polar Research 28(2), 254–281.
Wallace, M.I. , Cottier, F.R. , Berge, J. , Tarling, G.A. , Griffiths, C. , & Brierley, A.S. (2010). Comparison of zooplankton vertical migration in an ice-free and a seasonally ice-covered Arctic fjord: an insight into the influence of sea ice cover on zooplankton behavior. Limnology and Oceanography 55(2), 831–845.

Wassmann, P. , & others. (2015). The contiguous domains of Arctic Ocean advection: trails of life and death. Progress in Oceanography 139, 42–65.
Weydmann, A. , Carstensen, J. , Goszczko, I. , Dmoch, K. , Olszewska, A. , & Kwasniewski, S. (2014). Shift towards the dominance of boreal species in the Arctic: inter-annual and spatial zooplankton variability in the West Spitsbergen Current. Marine Ecology Progress Series 501, 41–52.
Weydmann, A. , Søreide, J.E. , Kwaśniewski, S. , Leu, E. , Falk-Petersen, S. , & Berge, J. (2013). Ice-related seasonality in zooplankton community composition in a high Arctic fjord. Journal of Plankton Research 35(4), 831–842.
Weydmann, A. , Walczowski, W. , Carstensen, J. , & Kwaśniewski, S. (2018) Warming of Subarctic waters accelerates the development of a key marine zooplankton Calanus finmarchicus. Global Change Biology 24, 172–183.
Wheeler, P.A. , Gosselin, M. , Sherr, E. , Thibault, D. , Kirchman, D.L. , Benner, R. , & Whitledge, T.E. (1996). Active cycling of organic carbon in the central Arctic Ocean. Nature 380, 697–699.
Willis, K. , Cottier, F. , Kwasniewski, S. , Wold, A. , & Falk-Petersen, S. (2006). The influence of advection on zooplankton community composition in an Arctic fjord (Kongsfjorden, Svalbard). Journal of Marine Systems 61(1–2), 39–54.

Spectroscopic Characterizations of Humic Acids Isolated from Diverse Arctic Environments

Anuradha, V. , Nair, S.M. , Kumar, N.C. , 2011. Humic acids from the sediments of three ecologically different estuarine systems: a comparison. Int. J. Environ. 2, 174–184. doi: 10.6088/ijes.00202010018.
APHA , 1995. Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater. Am. Public Health Assoc. 5, 47–48.
Aslbrecht, R. , Petit, J.L. , Terrom, G. , Perissol, C. , 2011. Comparison between UV spectroscopy and nirs to assess the humification process during sewage sludge and green wastes co-composting. Bioresour. Technol. 102, 4495–4500. doi: 10.1016/j.biortech.2010.12.053.
Bailly, V.R. , 1976. Spectroscopie infra-rouge de quelques fractions d'acideshumiquesobtenues. Plant Soil. 45, 95–111. doi: org/10.1007/BF00011132.
Barnes, H. , Blackstock, J. , 1973. Estimation of lipids in marine animals and tissues: detailed investigation of the sulphophosphovanilun method for 'total' lipids. J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol. 12, 103–118. doi: 10.1016/0022-0981(73)90040-3.
Baruah, M.K. , 1983. Organo-geochemical aspects of the formation of pyrite and organic sulphur in coal. PhD Thesis. Gauhati University.
Baruah, M.K. , 1986. Assignment of the I.R. absorption band at 1050 cm -1 in lignite humic acid. Fuel 65, 1756–1759. doi: 10.1016/0016-2361(86)90281-4.
Ching, Y. , Aiken, G.R. , Danielsen, K.M. , 1997. Binding of pyrene to aquatic and commercial humic substances: the role of molecular weight and aromaticity. Environ. Sci. Technol. 31, 1630–1635. doi: org/10.1021/es960404k.
Christensen, J.P. , 1989. Sulphate reduction and carbon oxidation rates in continental shelf sediments, an examination of off-shelf carbon transport. Cont. Shelf Res. 9, 223–246. doi: 10.1016/0278-4343(89)90025-3.
Cividanes, S. , Incera, M. , Lopez, J. , 2002. Temporal variability in the biochemical composition of sedimentary organic matter in an intertidal flat of the Galician coast (NW Spain). Oceanol. Acta. 25, 1–12. doi: org/10.1016/S0399-1784(01)01178-1.
Colombo, J.C. , Silverberg, N. , Gearing, J.N. , 1996. Biogeochemistry of organic matter in the Laurentian Trough, II. Bulk composition of the sediments and relative reactivity of major components during early diagenesis. Mar. Chem. 51, 295–314. doi: org/10.1016/0304-4203(95)00060-7.
Cottier, F.R. , Nilsen, F. , Skogseth, R. , Tverberg, V. , Skardhamar, J. , Svendsen, H. , 2014. Arctic fjords: a review of the oceanographic environment and dominant physical processes. Geol. Soc. Spec. Publ. 344, 35–50. doi: org/10.1144/SP344.4.

Danovaro, R. , Fabiano, M. , Dell Croce, N. , 1993. Labile organic matter and microbial biomass in deep-sea sediments (Eastern Mediterranean Sea). Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I. 40, 953–965. doi: 10.1016/0967-0637(93)90083-F.

Davies, G. , Ghabbor, E.A. , 1998. Humic Substances: Structures, Properties and Uses. Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge.

Dell'Anno, A. , Fabiano, M. , Mei, M.L. , Danovaro, R. , 2000. Enzymatically hydrolyzed protein and carbohydrate pools in deep-sea sediments: estimates of the bioavailable fraction and methodological considerations. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 196, 15–23. doi: 10.3354/meps196015.

Dell'Anno, A. , Mei, M.L. , Pusceddu, A. , Danovaro, R. , 2002. Assessing the trophic state and eutrophication of coastal marine systems. A new approach based on the biochemical composition of sediment organic matter. Mar. Pollut. 44, 611–622. doi: 10.1016/s0025-326x(01)00302-2.

Dick, D.P. , Burba, P. , Herzog, H. , 1999. Influence of extractant and soil type on molecular characteristics of humic substances from two Brazilian soils. J. Braz. Chem. Soc. 10, 140–145. doi: 10.1590/S0103-50531999000200012.

Fabiano, M. , Danovaro, R. , 1998. Enzymatic activity, bacterial distribution and organic matter composition in sediments of the Ross Sea (Antarctica). App. Environ. Microbiol. 64, 3838–3845. doi: 10.1128/AEM.64.10.3838-3845.1998.

Fabiano, M. , Danovaro, R. , Fraschetti, S. , 1995. A three-year time-series of the elemental and biochemical composition of organic matter in sub-tidal sandy sediments of the Ligurian Sea (Northwestern Mediterranean). Cont. Shelf Res. 15, 1453–1469. doi: 10.1016/0278-4343(94)00088-5.

Fengler, G. , Grossman, D. , Kersten, M. , Liebezeit, G. , 1994. Trace metals in humic acids from recent Skagerrak sediments. Mar. Pollut. Bull. 28, 143–147. doi: org/10.1016/0025-326X(94)90389-1.

Field, J.A. , Lettinga, G. , 1987. The methanogenic toxicity and anaerobic degradability of a hydrolysable tannin. Wat. Res. 21, 367–374. doi: 10.1016/0043-1354(87)90217-X.

Finar, I.L. , 1976. Organic Chemistry, Volume I, Longman, Singapore.

Fong, S.S. , Lau, I.L. , Chong, W.N. , Asing, J. , Faizal, M. , Nor, M. , Satirawaty, A. , Pauzan, M. , 2006. Characterization of coal-derived humic acids from Mukah, Sarawak as a soil conditioner. J. Braz. Chem. Soc. 17, 582–587. doi: 10.1590/S0103-50532006000300023.

Galois, R. , Blanchard, G. , Seguignes, M. , Huet, V. , Joassard, L. , 2000. Spatial distribution of sediment particulate organic matter on two estuarine intertidal mudflats: a comparison between Marennes-Oleron Bay (France) and the Humber Estuary (UK). Cont. Shelf Res. 20, 1199–1217. doi: 10.1016/S0278-4343(00)00019-4.

Gerachov, S.M. , Hatcher, P.G. , 1972. Improved technique for analysis of carbohydrate in the sediment. Limnol. Oceanogr. 17, 938–943. doi: 10.4319/lo.1972.17.6.0938.

Ghosh, K. , Schnitzer, M. , 1979. UV and visible absorption spectroscopic investigations in relation to macromolecular characteristics of humic substances. J. Soil Sci. 30, 735–745. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2389.1979.tb01023.x.

Giovanela, M. , Parlanti, E. , Soriano-Sierra, E.J. , Soldi, M.S. , Sierra, M.M.D. , 2004. Elemental compositions, FTIR spectra and thermal behaviour of sedimentary fulvic and humic acids from aquatic and terrestrial environments. Geochem. J. 38, 255–264. doi: 10.2343/geochemj.38.255.

Gremare, A. , Medernach, L. , deBovee, F. , Amouroux, J.M. , Vetion, G. , Albert, P. , 2002. Relationships between sedimentary organics and benthic meiofauna on the continental shelf and the upper slope of the Gulf of Lions (NW Mediterranean). Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 234, 85–94. doi: 10.3354/meps234085.

Hatcher, P.G. , Breger, I.A. , Mattingly, M. , 1980. A structural characterization of fulvic acids from continental shelf sediments. Nature 285, 560–562. doi: 10.1038/285560a0.

Henrichs, S.M. , 1992. Early diagenesis of organic matter in marine sediments: progress and perplexity. Mar. Chem. 39, 119–149. doi: org/10.1016/0304-4203(92)90098-U.

IHSS , 2010a. Natural organic matter research, Isolation of IHSS samples. http://www.humicsubstances.org/isolation.html.

IHSS , 2010b. Natural organic matter research, Elemental composition and stable isotopic ratios of IHSS samples. http://www.humicsubstances.org/elements.html.

Joseph, M.M. , Kumar, C.R.S. , Kumar, T.G.R. , Renjith K.R. , Chandramohanakumar, N. , 2008. Biogeochemistry of surficial sediments in the intertidal systems of a tropical environment. Chem. Ecol. 24, 247–258. doi: 10.1080/02757540802119871.

Kachari, M. , Belwar, P. , Dutta, K. , Sarmah, A. , Saikia, P.P. , Baruah, M.K. , 2015. Ultraviolet-visible and Infrared spectroscopic studies of soil humic acids. *Int. J. Plant Soil Sci* . 6, 194–202.

Kalesh, N.S. , Sujatha, C.H. , Nair, S.M. , 2001. Dissolved Folin phenol active substances (Tannin and Lignin) in the seawater along the west coast of India. J. Oceanogr. 57, 29–36. doi: 10.9734/IJPSS/2015/16032.

Klavins, M. , Purmalis, O. , Rodinov, V. , 2013. Peat humic acid properties and factors influencing their variability in a temperate bog ecosystem. Est. J. Ecol. 62, 35–52. doi: 10.3176/eco.2013.1.04.

Kononova, M.M. , 1966. Soil Organic Matter, Its Nature, Its Role in Soil Formation and Soil Fertility. Second English edition, Pergamon, Oxford.

Kumada, K. , 1987. Chemistry of Soil Organic Matter. Japan Scientific Societies Press, Tokyo.

Loring, D.H. , Rantala, R.T.T. , 1992. Manual for the geochemical analyses of marine sediments and suspended particulate matter. Earth Sci. Rev. 32, 235–283. doi: 10.1016/0012-8252(92)90001-A.

Lowry, O.H. , Rosebrough, N.J. , 1951. Protein measurement with the Folin phenol reagent. J. Biol. Chem. 193, 265–275.

Maccarthy, P. , 2001. The principles of humic substances. Soil Sci. 166, 738–751. doi: 10.1097/00010694-200111000-00003.

Naidja, A. , Huang, P.M. , Anderson, D.W. , Kessel, C.V. , 2002. Fourier Transform Infrared, UV-Visible, and X-ray Diffraction analyses of organic matter in humin, humic acid and fulvic acid fractions in soil exposed to elevated CO 2 and N fertilization. Appl. Spectrosc. 56, 318–324. doi: 10.1366/0003702021954908.

Nair, S.M. , Balchand, A.N. , Nambisan, P.N.K. , 1989. On the determination and distribution of hydroxylated aromatic compounds in estuarine waters. Toxicol. Environ. Chem. 23, 203–213. doi: 10.1080/02772248909357439.

Nissenbaum, A. , Swaine, D.J. , 1976. Organic matter-metal interactions in recent sediments: the role of humic substances. Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta 40, 809–816. doi: 10.1016/0016-7037(76)90033-8.

Perminova, I.V. , 1999. Size exclusion chromatography of humic substances: Complexities of data interpretation attributable to non-size exclusion effects. Soil Sci. 164, 834–840. doi: 10.1097/00010694-199911000-00008.

Peuravuori, J. , Pihlaja, K. , 1997. Molecular size distribution and spectroscopic properties of aquatic humic substances. Anal. Chim. Acta. 337, 133–149. doi: 10.1016/S0003-2670(96)00412-6.

Pusceddu, A. , Bianchelli, S. , Gambi, C. , Danovaro, R. , 2011. Assessment of the benthic trophic status of marine coastal ecosystems: Significance of nneiofaunal rare taxa. Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci. 93, 420–430. doi: 10.1016/j.ecss.2011.05.012.

Pusceddu, A. , Dell Anno, A. , Fabiano, M. , 2000. Organic matter composition in coastal sediments at Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea) during summer 1995. Pol. Biol. 23, 288–293. doi: 10.1007/s003000050446.

Pusceddu, A. , Dell’Anno, A. , Fabiano, M. , Danovaro, R. , 2009. Quantity and bioavailability of sediment organic matter as signatures of benthic trophic status. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 375, 41–52. doi: 10.3354/meps07735.

Rashid, M.A. , 1972. Amino acids associated with marine sediments and humic compounds and their role in the solubility and complexing of metals. *Proc. 24th Int. Geol. Congr., Montreal 1972, Section 10 (Geochemistry)* . pp. 346–353.

Rashid, M.A. , 1985. Geochemistry of Marine Humic Compounds. Springer Verlag, New York.

Rashid, M.A. , King, L.H. , 1969. Molecular weight measurements on humic and fulvic acid fractions from marine clays on the Scotian Shelf. Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta 33, 147–151. doi: 10.1016/0016-7037(69)90099-4.

Rashid, M.A. , King, L.H. , 1971. Chemical characteristics of fractionated humic acids associated with marine sediments. Chem. Geol. 7, 37–43. doi: 10.1016/0009-2541(71)90030-1.

Renjith, K.R. , Joseph, M.M. , Ghosh, P. , Rahman, K.H. , Kumar, C.S.R. , Chandramohanakumar, N. , 2012. Biogeochemical facsimile of the organic matter quality and trophic status of a micro-tidal tropical estuary. Environ. Earth Sci. 70, 729–742. doi: 10.1007/s12665-012-2159-0.

Rice, J.A. , MacCarthy, P. , 1991. Statistical evaluation of the elemental composition of humic substances. Org. Geochem. 17, 635–648. doi: 10.1016/0146-6380(91)90006-6.

Saito, Y. , Hayano, S. , 1981. Characterization of humic and fulvic acids isolated from marine sediments of Sagami and Suruga Bays with C-13 and proton nuclear magnetic resonance. J. Oceanogr. Soc. Jpn. 36, 286–292. doi: 10.1007/BF02070157.
Sarma, B.K. , 2011. Spectroscopy. Goel Publishing House, Meerut.
Schnitzer, M. , 1971. Characterization of humic constituents by spectroscopy. In: McLaren, A.D. , Skujins, J. , (Eds.), Soil Biochemistry, Marcel Dekker, New York.
Schnitzer, M. , 1977. Recent findings on the characterization of humic substances extracted from soils from widely differing climatic zones. Soil Org. Matter Stud. 117–132.
Schnitzer, M. , Khan, S.U. , 1972. Humic Substances in the Environment. Marcel Dekker, New York.
Sierra, M.M.D. , Giovanel, M. , Parlanti, E. , Esteves, V.I. , Duarte, A.C. , Fransozo, A. , Soriano, S.E.J. , 2004. Structural description of humic substances from subtropical coastal environments using elemental analysis, FT-IR and 13Csolid-state NMR data. J. Coast. Res. 42, 219–231.
Silverstain, R.M. , Bassler, G.C. , Morrill, T.C. , 1981. Spectroscopic Identification of Organic Compounds, John Wiley & Sons, New York.
Solomon, D. , Lehmann, J. , Martinez, C.E. , 2003. Sulfur K-edge XANES spectroscopy as a tool for understanding sulfur dynamics in soil organic matter. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 67, 1721–1731. doi: 10.2136/sssaj2003.1721.
Stevenson, F.J. , 1982. Extraction, Fraction and General Chemical Composition of Soil Organic Matter, In Stevenson, F.J. (Ed.), Humus Chemistry, Genesis, Composition, Reactions. John Wiley and Sons, New York.
Stevenson, F.J. , 1994. Humus Chemistry- Genesis, Composition, Reactions. 2nd edition, Wiley, New York.
Stevenson, F.J. , Goh, K.M. , 1971. Infra-red spectra of humic acids and related substances. Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta 35, 471–483. doi: 10.1016/0016-7037(71)90044-5.
Stevenson, I.L. , Schnitzer, M. , 1982. Transmission electron microscopy of extracted fulvic and humic acids. Soil Sci. 133, 179–185.
Stuermer, D.H. , Harvey, G.R. , 1978. Structural studies on marine humus: a new reduction sequence for carbon skeleton determination. Mar. Chem. 6, 55–70. doi: 10.1016/0304-4203(78)90006-3.
Stuermer, D.H. , Peters, K.E. , Kaplan, I.R. , 1978. Source indicators of humic substances and protokerogen: stable isotope ratios, elemental compositions and electron-spin resonance spectra. Gechim. Cosmochim. Acta 42, 989–997. doi: 10.1016/0016-7037(78)90288-0.
Uyguner, C.S. , Bekbolet, M. , 2004. Implementation of spectroscopic parameters for practical monitoring of natural organic matter. Desalination 176, 47–55. doi: 10.1016/j.desal.2004.10.027.

Arctic Phyto-Technology

Carlson PS , Smith HN , and Dearing R.D. 1972. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 69: 2292–2294.
Chaturvedi HC , and Mitra G.C. 1975. Ann. Bot. 39: 683–687.
Chaturvedi HC , and Sharma A.K. 1985. Planta 165: 142–144.
Chaturvedi HC , and Sharma A.K. 1988. Plant Tissue Culture, In: Proc. Natl. Seminar on Plant Tissue Culture, ICAR, New Delhi, pp. 36–46.
Chaturvedi HC , and Sharma M. 1990. Proc. VII Intl. Cong., Plant Tissue and Cell Culture, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, p. 247.
Chaturvedi HC , and Sinha M. 1979a. Indian J. Exp. Biol. 17: 153–157.
Chaturvedi HC , and Sinha M. 1979b. *Mass Propagation of Dioscorea floribunda by Tissue Culture. Extn. Bull. No. 6*, EBIS, NBRI, Lucknow, p. 12.
Chaturvedi HC , Prasad RN , Sharma AK , Mishra P , Sharma M , Jain M , and Bhattacharya A. 1995. Advances in Horticulture, In: vol. 12, Ornamental Plants. Eds. K.L. Chadha and S.K. Bhattacharjee , Malhotra Publishing House, New Delhi, pp. 562–581.
Chaturvedi HC , Sharma AK , Prasad RN , and Sharma M. 1988. Plant Tissue Culture, In: Proc. Natl. Seminar, ICAR, New Delhi, pp. 76–90.
Chaturvedi HC , Sharma AK , Sharma M , and Sane P.V. 1991. Conservation of Plant Genetic Resources through *In Vitro* Methods, In: FRIM/MNCPGR, Univ. Kebangsaan, Malaysia, pp.

29–41.
Chaturvedi HC , Sharma M , and Sharma A.K. 1994. Proc. 81st Ind. Sci. Cong. Pt. III (Bot.), p. 183.
Chaturvedi H.C. 1975. Curr. Sci. 44: 839–841.
Chaturvedi H.C. 1979. Progress in Plant Research, In: vol. 1. Eds. T.N. Khoshoo and P.K.K. Nair , Today and tomorrow's Printers and Publishers, New Delhi, pp. 265–288.
Chupeau Y , Missonier C , Hommel MC , and Goujaud J. 1979. Mol. Gen. Genet. 165: 239–245.
Dale PJ , Trwin JA , and Scheffler J.A. 1993. Plant Breed. 111: 1–22.
Dubey R.K. 2013, Indian J. Appl. Res. 3(11): 18–21.
Durzan D.J. 1985. Tissue Culture in Forestry and Agriculture. Eds. R.R. Henke , K.W. Hughes , M.J. Constantin and A. Hollaender , Plenum Press, NY, pp. 233–256.
Elliott F.C. 1958. Plant Breeding and Cytogenetics. McGraw Hill, NY.
Finnegan J , and McElory D. 1994. Bio/Technology 12: 883–888.
Gautheret R.J. 1948. C.R. Soc. Biol. 142: 807–808.
Gmitter FG, Jr. and Ling X. 1991. J. Am. Soc. Hort. Sci. 116: 317–321.
Haberlandt G. 1902. Sitzber. Kais Akad. WIss, Math-natur wiss I, 69–92.
Hazarika B.N. 2006. Sci. Hort. 108: 105–120.
Hu H. 1978. Proc. Symp. On Plant Tissue Culture. Science Press, Peking, pp. 3–10.
Hulse JH , and Spurgeon D. 1974. Sci. Am. 231: 72–80.
Jain M , Banerji R , Nigam SK , Scheffer JJC , and Chaturvedi H.C. 1991. Planta Medica 57: 122–124.
Jain, S.M. , Sopory, S.K. and Veilleux, R.E. (Eds.) 1996. *In Vitro* Haploid Production in Higher Plants, In: vol. 1, Fundamental Aspects and Methods, Kluwer Academic Publishers, The Netherlands, p. 356.
Johnson, I.S. 1983. Science 219: 632–637.
Kartha K.K. 1985. Cryopreservation of Plant Cells and Organs, CRC Press Inc., Boca Raton, pp. 116–134.
Kassanis B. 1957. Ann. Appl. Biol. 45: 422–427.
Kreuger M , and van Holst G. 1993. Planta 189: 243–248.
Kumar D.R. , and Kumar S.A. 2015, Eur. Acad. Res. III(6): 6134–6157.
Kumar D.R. , and Kumar S.A. 2015, Int. J. Innov. Res. Sci. Eng. Technol. 4(8): 7007–7007.
Laibach F. 1925. Z. Bot. 17: 417–559.
Larkin PJ , and Scowcroft W.R. 1981. Theor. Appl. Genet. 60: 197–214.
Lazar MD , Chen THH , Scoles GJ , and Kartha K.K. 1987. Plant Sci. 51: 77–81.
Liu C , Xu Z , and Chua N. 1993. The Plant Cell 5: 621–630.
Macilwain C. 1996. Nature 882: 289.
Meghwal PR , Sharma HC , Goswami AM , and Srivastava K.N. 2001. Indian J. Hort. 58: 328–331.
Miller CO , Skoog F , Okumura FS , von Saltza MH , and Strong F.M. 1955. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 77: 2662–2663.
Morel G , and Martin C. 1952. C.R. Acad. Sci. 235: 1324–1325.
Morel G. 1960. Am. Orchid Soc. Bull. 29: 495–497.
Morel G. 1964. Am. Orchid Soc. Bull. 31: 473–477.
Morris P , Scragg AM , Stafford A , and Fowler M.W. (Eds.) 1986. Secondary Metabolism in Plant Cell Cultures, Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge.
Mu S , Liu S , Zhou Y , Quan N , Zhang P , Xie H , Zhang F , and Yen Z. 1977. Sci. Sin. 55: 370–376.
Navarro L , and Juarez J. 1977. Acta Hortic. 78: 425–435.
Oelck MM , and Schieder O. 1983. Z. Pflanzenzucht. 91: 312–321.
Pospisilova J , Ticha I , Kadlecek P , Haisel D , and Plazakova S. 1999. Biol. Plant. 42: 481–489.
Redenbaugh K , Paasch BD , Nichol JW , Kossler ME , Viss PR , and Walker K.A. 1986. Bio/Technology 4: 797–801.
Redenbaugh K. 1993. Synseeds, Applications of Synthetic Seeds to Crop Improvement, CRC Press Inc., Boca Raton, p. 481.

Robbins WJ , and Bartley M.A. 1937. Science 86: 290–291.
Robbins WJ , and Bartley S.M. 1939. Prof. Natl. Acad. Sci. 25: 1–3.
Sahu J , and Sahu R.K. 2013. J. Pharm. Biosci. 1: 38–41.
Semal J , and Lepoivre P. 1990. Plant Tissue Culture: Applications and Limitations, Ed. S.S. Bhojwani , Elsevier Science Publishing Co. Inc., The Netherlands, pp. 301–315.
Shields R , Robinson SJ , and Anslow P.A. 1984. Plant Cell Rep. 3: 33–36.
Shuquiong L , and Jaiqu L. 1980. Acta Bot. Sin. 22: 198–199.
Skirvin RM , Motoike S , Norton MA , Ozgur M , Al–Juboory K , and McMeans O.M. 1999. In Vitro Cell. Dev. Biol.-Plant 35: 278–280.
Skoog F , and Miller C.O. 1957. Symp. Soc. Exp. Biol. 11: 118–131.
Smith HH , Kao KN , and Combatti N.C. 1976. J. Hered. 67: 123–128.
Srivastava P.S. 1973. Z. Pflanzenphysiol. 69: 270–273.
Steward F.C. 1958. Am. J. Bot. 45: 709–713.
Thorpe A. (Ed.) 1995. In Vitro Embryogenesis in Plants, Kluwer Academic Publishers, The Netehrlands, p. 558.
Tulecke W , and Nickell L.G. 1959. Science 130: 863–864.
Wang T , and Chang C. 1978. Proc. Symp. on Plant Tissue Cutlure, Science Press, Peking, pp. 463–467.
White P.R. 1934. Phytopath 24: 1003–1011.
Xiao Y , Niu G , and Kozai T. 2011. Plant Cell Tiss. Org. Cult. 105(2): 149–158.
Yang HY , and Zhou C. 1990. Plant Tissue Culture: Applications and Limitations, Ed. S.S. Bhojwani , Elsevier Sci. Publishing Co. Inc., The Netherlands.
Zenkteler M. 1984. Cell Culture and Somatic Cell Genetics of Plants, In: vol. 1, Laboratory Procedures and their Applications, Ed. I.K. Vasil , Acad. Press Inc., NY, pp. 269–275.

Bio-Optical Characteristics in Relation to Phytoplankton Composition and Productivity in a Twin Arctic Fjord Ecosystem during Summer

Aguilar-Maldonado J , Santamaría-del-Ángel E , González-Silvera A , Cervantes-Rosas O , López L , Gutiérrez-Magness A , Cerdeira-Estrada S , Sebastiá-Frasquet MT (2018) Identification of phytoplankton blooms under the index of Inherent Optical Properties (IOP index) in optically complex waters. Water 10(2), 129.
Alcântara E , Watanabe F , Rodrigues T , Bernardo N (2016) An investigation into the phytoplankton package effect on the chlorophyll-a specific absorption coefficient in Barra Bonita reservoir, Brazil. Remote Sensing Letters 7(8), 761–770.
Bhaskar JT , Parli BV , Tripathy SC (2020) Spatial and seasonal variations of dinoflagellates and ciliates in the Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Marine Ecology 41(3), 1–12.
Bhaskar JT , Tripathy SC , Sabu P , Laluraj CM , Rajan S (2016) Variation of phytoplankton assemblages of Kongsfjorden in early autumn 2012: a microscopic and pigment ratio-based assessment. Environmental Monitoring Assessment 188(4), 1–13.
Bischof K. et al. (2019) Kongsfjorden as Harbinger of the Future Arctic: Knowns, Unknowns and Research Priorities. In: Hop H. , Wiencke C. (eds.), The Ecosystem of Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Advances in Polar Ecology, Vol 2. Springer, Cham.
Bricaud A , Babin M , Morel A , Claustre H (1995) Variability in the chlorophyll-specific absorption coefficients of natural phytoplankton: analysis and parameterization. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 100(C7), 13321–13332.
Bricaud A , Claustre H , Ras J , Oubelkheir K (2004) Natural variability of phytoplanktonic absorption in oceanic waters: influence of the size structure of algal populations. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 109(C11).
Calleja ML , Kerhervé P , Bourgeois S , Kędra M , Leynaert A , Devred E , Babin M , Morata N (2017) Effects of increase glacier discharge on phytoplankton bloom dynamics and pelagic geochemistry in a high Arctic fjord, Progress in Oceanography doi.: 10.1016/j.pocean.2017.07.005.
Chakraborty S , Lohrenz SE , Gundersen K (2017) Photophysiological and lightabsorption properties of phytoplankton communities in the river-dominated margin of the northern Gulf of

Mexico. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 122, 4922–4938.
Cleveland JS , Weidemann AD (1993) Quantifying absorption by aquatic particles: A multiple scattering correction for glassfiber filters. Limnology and Oceanography 38(6), 1321–1327.
Cohen JH , Screen JA , Furtado JC , Barlow M , Whittleston D , Coumou D , et al. (2014) Recent arctic amplification and extreme mid-latitude weather. Nature Geoscience 7, 627–637.
Darlington E (2015) Meltwater Delivery from the Tidewater Glacier Kronebreen to Kongsfjorden, Svalbard; Insights from in situ and Remote-Sensing Analyses of sediment plumes (PhD Thesis). Loughborough University.
David DT , Krishnan, KP (2017) Recent variability in the Atlantic water intrusion and water masses in Kongsfjorden, an Arctic fjord. Polar Science 11, 30–41.
Eilertsen HC , Taasen JP , Weslawski JM (1989) Phytoplankton studies in the fjords of West Spitzbergen: physical environment and production in spring and summer. Journal of Plankton Research 11, 1245–1260.
Ferrari GM (2000) The relationship between chromophoric dissolved organic matter and dissolved organic carbon in the European Atlantic coastal area and in the West Mediterranean Sea (Gulf of Lions). Marine Chemistry 70(4), 339–357.
Ferreira A , Ciotti AM , Mendes CRB , Uitz J , Bricaud A (2017) Phytoplankton light absorption and the package effect in relation to photosynthetic and Photoprotective pigments in the northern tip of Antarctic Peninsula Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 122, 7344–7363. doi: 10.1002/2017JC012964.
Halbach L , Vihtakari M , Duarte P , Everett A , Granskog MA , Hop H , Kauko HM , Kristiansen S , Myhre PI , Pavlov AK , Pramanik A , Tatarek A , Torsvik T , Wiktor JM , Wold A , Wulff A , Steen H , Assmy P (2019) Tidewater glaciers and bedrock characteristics control the phytoplankton growth environment in a fjord in the arctic. Frontiers in Marine Science 6, 254.
Harrison PJ , Conway HL , Holmes RW , Davis CO (1977) Marine diatoms in chemostats under silicate or ammonium limitation.III. Cellular chemical composition and morphology of three diatoms. Marine Biology 43, 19–31.
Hegseth EN , Assmy P , Wiktor J , Kristiansen S , Leu E , Piquet AMT , et al. (2019) Phytoplankton seasonal dynamics in Kongsfjorden, Svalbard and the adjacent shelf, In The Ecosystem of Kongsfjorden, Svalbard, Advances in Polar Ecology 2, H. Hop and C. Wiencke (eds.), Cambridge, Springer, pp. 173–228.
Hegseth EN , Tverberg V (2013) Effect of Atlantic water inflow on timing of the phytoplankton spring bloom in a high Arctic fjord (Kongsfjorden, Svalbard). Journal of Marine Systems 113–114, 94–105.
Hodal H , Falk-Petersen S , Hop H , Kristiansen S , Reigstad M (2012) Spring bloom dynamics in Kongsfjorden, Svalbard: nutrients, phytoplankton, protozoans and primary production. Polar Biology 35, 191–203.
Hop H , Falk–Petersen S , Svendsen H , Kwasniewski S , Pavlov V , Pavlova O , Søreide JE (2006) Physical and biological characteristics of the pelagic system across Fram Strait to Kongsfjorden. Progress in Oceanography 71, 182–231.
Hop H , Pearson TH , Hegset EN , Kovacs KM , Wiencke C , Kwasniewski S , et al. (2002) The marine ecosystemof Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Polar Research 21, 167–208.
JGOFS (1994) Protocols for the joint global ocean flux study (JGOFS) core measurements. IOC Manual and Guides 29, 181.
Johnsen G , Sakshaug E (2007) Bio-optical characteristics of PSII and psi in 33 species (13 pigment groups) of marine phytoplankton, and the relevance for pulse amplitude-modulated and fast-repetition-rate fluorometry. Journal of Phycology 43, 1236–1251.
Kerkar AU , Tripathy SC , David JH , Pandi SR , Sabu P , Tiwari M (2021) Characterization of phytoplankton productivity and bio-optical variability of a polar marine ecosystem. Progress in Oceanography 195, 102573.
Kerkar AU , Tripathy SC , Minu P , Baranval N , Sabu P , Patra S , Mishra RK , Sarkar A (2020) Variability in primary productivity and bio-optical properties in the Indian sector of the Southern Ocean during an austral summer. Polar Biology 43(10), 1469–1492.
Kirk JTO (1994) Light and Photosynthesis in Aquatic Ecosystems. Cambridge University Press, p. 509.
Kowalczuk P , Sagan S , Makarewicz A , Meler J , Borzycka K , Zabłocka M , et al. (2019) Bio-optical properties of surface waters in the Atlantic Water inflow region off Spitsbergen (Arctic Ocean). Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 124, 1964–1987.

Kulk G , van de Poll WH , Buma AGJ (2018) Photophysiology of nitrate limited phytoplankton communities in Kongsfjorden, *Spitsbergen Limnology and Oceanography* 63, 2606–2617.
Kurian S , Roy R , Repeta DJ , Gauns M , Shenoy DM , Suresh T. et al. (2012) Seasonal occurrence of anoxygenic photosynthesis in Tillari and Selaulim reservoirs, western India. Biogeosciences 9(7), 2485–2495. doi: 10.5194/bg-9-2485-2012.
Levasseur ME , Therriault JC (1987) Phytoplankton biomass and nutrient dynamics in a tidally induced upwelling: the role of NO 3 :SiO 4 ratio. Marine Ecology Progress Series 39, 87–97.
Lohrenz SD , Weidemann AD , Tuel M (2003) Phytoplankton spectral absorption as influenced by community size structure and pigment composition. Journal of Plankton Research 25(1), 35–61.
Matsuoka A , Larouche P , Poulin M , Vincent W , Hattori H (2009) Phytoplankton community adaptation to changing light levels in the southern Beaufort Sea, Canadian Arctic. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 82, 537–546.
Mendes CRB , Kerr R , Tavano V.M. et al. (2015) Cross-front phytoplankton pigments and chemotaxonomic groups in the Indian sector of the Southern Ocean. Deep-Sea Research II 118, 221–232.
Mitchell BG (1990) Algorithms for determining the absorption coefficient for aquatic particulates using the quantitative filter technique. In Ocean Optics X, Vol 1302, International Society for Optics and Photonics, pp. 137–148.
Mitchell BG , Kahru M , Wieland J , Stramska M (2002) Determination of spectral absorption coefficients of particles, dissolved material and phytoplankton for discrete water samples. In GS Fargion , JL Mueller (eds.), Ocean Optics Protocols For Satellite Ocean Color Sensor Validation, Revision 3, NASA Tech. Memo., Vol 2, Greenbelt, MD, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Goddard Space Flight Center, pp. 231–257.
Not F , Massana R , Latasa M. et al. (2005) Late summer community composition and abundance of photosynthetic picoeukaryotes in Norwegian and Barents Sea. Limnology Oceanography 50, 1677–1686.
Palmisano AC , SooHoo JB , SooHoo SL , Kottmeier ST , Craft LL , Sullivan CW (1986): Photoadaptation in *Phaeocystispouchetii* advected beneath annual sea ice in McMurdo Sound, Antarctica. Journal of Plankton Research 8(5), 891–906.
Para J , Coble PG , Charriere B , Tedetti M , Fontana C , Sempere R (2010) Fluorescence and absorption properties of chromophoric dissolved organic matter (CDOM) in coastal surface waters of the northwestern Mediterranean Sea, influence of the Rhone River. Biogeosciences 7, 4083–4103.
Pavlov AK , Silyakova A , Granskog MA , Bellerby RGJ , Engel A , Schulz KG , Brussaard, CPD (2014) Marine CDOM accumulation during a coastal Arctic mesocosm experiment: no reposne to elevated pCO 2 levels. Journal of Geophysical Research 119, 1216–1230.
Payne CM , Roesler CS (2019) Characterizing the influence of Atlantic water intrusion on water mass formation and phytoplankton distribution in Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Continental Shelf Research 191, 104005. doi: 10.1016/j.csr.2019.104005.
Pettersen R , Johnsen G , Berge J , Hovland EK (2011) Phytoplankton chemotaxonomy in waters around the Svalbard archipelago reveals high amounts of Chl *b* and presence of gyroxanthin-diester. Polar Biology 34:627–635.
Pielou EC (1966) The measurement of diversity in different types of biological collections. Journal of Theoretical Biology 13, 131–144.
Piquet AMT , Scheepens JF , Bolhuis H , Wiencke C , Buma AGJ (2010) Variability of protistan and bacterial communities in two Arctic fjords (Spitsbergen). Polar Biology 33, 1521–1536. doi: 10.1007/s00300-010-0841-9.
Piquet AMT , van de Poll WH , Visser RJW , Wiencke C , Bolhuis H , Buma AGJ (2014) Springtime phytoplankton dynamics in Arctic Krossfjorden and Kongsfjorden (Spitsbergen) as a function of glacier proximity. Biogeosciences 11, 2263–2279.
Piwosz K , Walkusz W , Hapter R , Wieczorek P , Hop H , Wiktor J (2009) Comparison of productivity and phytoplankton in a warm (Kongsfjorden) and a cold (Hornsund) Spitsbergen fjord in mid-summer 2002. Polar Biology 32, 549–559. doi: 10.1007/s00300-008-0549-2.
Shannon C , Weaver W (1949) The Mathematical Theory of Communication. Urbana, IL, University of Illinois Press, p. 117.
Shuman FR , Lorenzen CJ (1975) Quantitative degradation of chlorophyll by a marine herbivore. Limnology and Oceanography 20(4), 580–586.

Singh A , Krishnan KP (2019) The spatial distribution of phytoplankton pigments in the surface sediments of the Kongsfjorden and Krossfjorden ecosystem of Svalbard, Arctic. Regional Studies in Marine Science 31, 100815. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rsma.2019.100815.

Stedmon CA , Markager S (2001) The optics of chromophoric dissolved organic matter (CDOM) in the Greenland Sea: an algorithm for differentiation between marine and terrestrially derived organic matter. Limnology Oceanography 46(8), 2087–2093.

Stedmon CA , Markager S , Kaas H (2000) Optical properties and signatures of Chromophoric Organic Dissolved Matter (CDOM) in Danish Coastal waters. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 51, 267–278.

Stramska M , Stramski D , Hapter R , Kaczmarek S , Stoń J (2003) Bio-optical relationships and ocean color algorithms for the north polar region of the Atlantic. Journal of Geophysical Research 108(C5), 3143. doi: 10.1029/2001JC001195.

Stramski D , Bricaud A , Morel A (2001) Modeling the inherent optical properties of the ocean based on the detailed composition of the planktonic community, Applied Optics 40(18), 2929–2945.

Svendsen H , Beszczynska-Møller A , Hagen JO , Lefauconnier B , Tverberg V , Gerland S , Ørbæk JB , Bischof K , Papucci C , Zajaczkowski M , Azzolini R , Bruland O , Wiencke C , Winther J-G , Dallmann W (2002) The physical environment of Kongsfjorden-Krossfjorden, an Arctic fjord system in Svalbard. Polar Research 21, 133–166.

Tripathy SC , Pavithran S , Sabu P , Naik RK , Noronha SB , Bhaskar PV , Kumar NA (2014) Is primary productivity in the Indian Ocean sector of Southern Ocean affected by pigment packaging effect? Current Science 107(6), 00113891.

Uitz J , Claustre H , Morel A , Hooker SB (2006) Vertical distribution of phytoplankton communities in open ocean: an assessment based on surface chlorophyll. Journal of Geophysical Research 111, C08005. doi: 10.1029/2005JC003207.

van de Poll WH , Kulk G , Rozema PD , Brussaard CPD , Visser JW , Buma AGJ (2018) Contrasting glacial meltwater effects on post-bloom phytoplankton on temporal and spatial scales in Kongsfjorden, Spitsbergen. Elementa: Science of the Anthropocene 6, 50. doi: 10.1525/elementa.307.

van de Poll WH , Maat D , Fischer P , Rozema P , Daly O , Koppelle S , et al. (2016) Atlantic advection driven changes in glacial meltwater: effects on phytoplankton chlorophyll-a and taxonomic composition in Kongsfjorden, Spitsbergen. Frontiers Marine Science 3, 200.

Vihtakari M , Welcker, J , Moe, B , Chastel O , Tartu S , Hop H , Bech C , Descamps S. , Gabrielsen GW (2018) Blacklegged kittiwakes as messengers of Atlantification in the Arctic. Scientific Reports 8, 1178.

Walczowski W , Beszczynska-Möller A , Wieczorek P , Merchel M , Grynczel A (2017) Oceanographic observations in the Nordic sea and fram strait in 2016 under the IO PAN long-term monitoring program AREX. Oceanologia 59, 187–194.

Wang J , Cota GF , Ruble DA (2005) Absorption and backscattering in the Beaufort and Chukchi Seas. Journal of Geophysical Research 110, doi: 10.1029/2002JC001653.

Wang SQ , Ishizaka J , Yamaguchi H , Tripathy SC , Hayashi M , Xu YJ , Mino Y , Matsuno T , Watanabe Y , Yoo SJ (2014) Influence of the Changjiang River on the light absorption properties of phytoplankton from the East China Sea. Biogeosciences 11(7), 1759–1773.

Welschmeyer NA (1994) Fluorometric analysis of chlorophyll a in the presence of chlorophyll b and pheopigments. Limnology Oceanography 39(8), 1985–1992.

Welschmeyer NA , Lorenzen CJ (1985) Chlorophyll budgets: Zooplankton grazing and phytoplankton growth in a temperate fjord and the Central Pacific Gyres. Limnology Oceanography 30(1), 1–21.

Woźniak B , Dera J , Ficek D , Majchrowski R , Kaczmarek S , Ostrowska M , Koblentz-Mishke OI (1999) Modelling the influence of acclimation on the absorption properties of marine phytoplankton. Oceanologia 41(2), 187–210.

Recent Advances in Seismo-Geophysical Studies for the Arctic Region under Climate Change Scenario

Aadlandsvik, B. , Loeng, H. , 1991. A study of the climate system of the Barents Sea, Polar Research 10(1), 45–49.

Alvey A. , Gaina, C. , Kusznir, N.J. , Torsvik, T.H. , 2008. Integrated crustal thickness mapping and plate reconstructions for the high Arctic, Earth and Planetary Science Letters 274, 310–321.

Ananyin, L.V. , Mordvinova, V.V. , Gots, M.F. , Kanao, M. , Suvorov, V.D. , Tatkov, G.I. , Thubanov, T.A. , 2009. Velocity structure of the crust and upper mantle in the Baikal Rift Zone on the long-term observations of broad-band seismic stations, Doklady Earth Science 428, 1067–1071.

Antonovskaya, G. , Konechnaya, Y. , Kremenetskaya, E.O. , Asming, V. , Kværna, T. , Schweitzer, J. , Ringdal F. , 2015. Enhanced earthquake monitoring in the European Arctic. Polar Science 9, 158–167. doi: 10.1016/j.polar.2014.08.003.

Artemieva, I.M. , Thybo, H. , 2013. EUNAseis: a seismic model for Moho and crustal structure in Europe, Greenland, and the North Atlantic region, Tectonophysics doi: 10.1016/j.tecto.2013.1008.1004.

Beka, T.I. , Bergh, S.G. , Smirnov, M. , Birkelund, Y. 2017a. Magnetotelluric signatures of the complex tertiary fold–thrust belt and extensional fault architecture beneath Brøggerhalvøya, Svalbard, Polar Research 36(1):1409586. doi: 10.1080/17518369.2017.1409586.

Beka, T.I. , Senger, K. , Autio, U.A. , Smirnov, M. , Birkelund, Y. , 2017b Integrated electromagnetic data investigation of a Mesozoic CO 2 storage target reservoir-cap-rock succession, Svalbard, Journal of Applied Geophysics 136, 417–430.

Bense, V.F. , Ferguson, G. , Kooi, H. , 2009. Evolution of shallow groundwater flow systems in areas of degrading permafrost, Journal of Geophysical Research 2009, 36.

Bjerregaard, P. , 1995. Health and environment in Greenland and other circumpolar areas, Science of the Total Environment 160/161, 521–527.

Bliss, L.C. , 1981. North American and Scandinavian tundras and polar deserts. In: L.C. Bliss , O.W. Heal and J.J. Moore (eds.), Tundra Ecosystems: A Comparitive Analysis. pp. 8–24. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Bondár, I. , Storchak, D. , 2011. Improved location procedure at the International Seismological Centre, Geophysical Journal International 186, 1220–1244.

Butler, R. , Anderson, K. , 2008. Global Seismographic Network (GSN), IRIS Annual Report, pp. 6–7.

CAFF , 1996. Proposed protected areas in the circumpolar Arctic (1996). Conservation of Arctis Flora and Fauna, Directorate for Nature Management, Trondheim, Habitat Conservation Report No. 2.

Chalmers, J.A. , Laursen, K.H. , 1995. Labrador Sea — the extent of continental and oceaniccrust and the timing of the onset of sea-floor spreading, Marine and Petroleum Geology 12, 205–217.

Chiu, K. , Snyder, D.B. , 2015. Regional seismic wave propagation (Lg & Sn phases) in the Amerasia Basin and High Arctic, Polar Science 130–145.

Dahl-Jensen, T. , Larsen, T.B. , Voss, P.H. , the GLISN Group , 2010. Greenland Ice Sheet Monitoring Network (GLISN): A Seismological Approach. GEUS Report of Survey Activities (ROSA) for 2009, pp. 55–58.

Dziak, R.P. , Park, M. , Lee, W.S. , Matsumoto, H. , Bohnenstiehl, D.R. , Haxel, J.H. , 2009. Tectono-magmatic activity and ice dynamics in the Bransfield Strait back-arc basin, Antarctica, Proceedings of the International Symposium on Polar Sciences 16, 59–68.

Einarsson, T. , 1980. Geology (in Icelandic). Mal og Menning, Reykjavik. p. 240.

Elíasson, J. , 1994. Northern hydrology in Iceland. In: T.D. Prowse , C.S.L. Ommaney and L.E. Watson (eds.). Northern Hydrology: International Perspectives. pp. 41–80. Environment Canada, Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, NHRI Science Report No. 3.

Encyclopedia Britannica , 1990. The New Encyclopedia Britannica. Chicago. Vol. 14, pp. 288–292.

Everett, K.R. , Vassiljevskaya, V.D. , Brown, J. , Walker, B.D. , 1981. Tundra and analogous soils. In: L.C. Bliss , O.W. Heal and J.J. Moore (eds.). Tundra Ecosystems: A Comparative Analysis. pp. 139–179. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Forsberg, R. , Kenyon, S. , 2004. Gravity and geoid in the Arctic region—the northern polar gap now filled, in Proceedings of the GOCE Workshop, p. 6, ESA-ESRIN Frascati, Italy, ESA Publications Division, Noordwijk, http://earth.esa.int/workshops/goce04/goce_proceedings/57_forsberg.pdf.
Gaina, C. , Roest, W.R. , Muller, R.D. , 2002. Late Cretaceous–Cenozoic deformation of northeast Asia, Earth and Planetary Science Letters 197, 273–286.
Geological Survey of Canada , 1995. Generalized Geological Map of the World, and Linked Databases.
Glebovsky, V.Y. , Kovacs, L.C. , Maschenkov, S.P. , Brozena, J.M. , (1998). Joint compilation of Russian and US Navy aeromagnetic data in the central Arctic seas. In: N. Roland and F. Tessesnsons , (eds.). *ICAM III; Third International Conference on Arctic Margins* . Polarforshung, pp. 35–40.
Grad M. , Mjelde, R. , Krysinski, L. , Czuba, W. , Libak, A. , Guterch, A. , IPY Project Group , 2015. Geophysical investigations of the area between the Mid-Atlantic Ridge and the Barents Sea: from water to the lithosphere-asthenosphere system, Polar Science 9(1), 168–183.
Hardisty, P. , Schilder, V. , Dabrowski, T. , Wells, J. , 1991. Yukon and Northwest Territories groundwater database. In: T.D. Prowse , C.S.L. Ommaney and L.E. Watson (eds.). Northern Hydrology: International Perspectives. pp. 465–482. Environment Canada, Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, NHRI Science Report No. 3.
Harrison, J.C. , Brent, T.A. , 2005. Basins and fold belts of Prince Patrick Island and adjacent area, Canadian Arctic Islands, Geological Survey of Canada, Bulletin 560, 208. doi: 10.4095/220345. CDROM.
Graham, H.J. , 2020. On the use of electromagnetics for earth imaging of the polar regions, Surveys in Geophysics 5–45, doi: 10.1007/s10712-019-09570-8.
Ikeda, M. , 1990a. Decadal oscillation of the air-sea-ocean system in the northern hemisphere, Atmosphere-Ocean 28, 106–139.
Ikeda, M. , 1990b. Feedback mechanism among decadal oscillations in the northern hemisphere atmospheric circulation, sea ice and ocean circulation, Annals Glaciology 14, 120–123.
International Seismological Centre , 2011. On-line Bulletin, http://www.isc.ac.uk. (International Seismological Centre, Thatcham, United Kingdom).
IOC, IHO, BODC , 2003. Centenary Edition of GEBCO Digital Atlas, published on CD-ROM on behalf of the Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission and the International Hydrographic Organization as part of the General Bathymetric Cart of the Oceans British Oceanographic Data Centre, Liverpool, UK.
IPCC , 2007. Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), 2007. Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis. Contributions of Working Group1 to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press, p. 996.
Ives, J.D. , 1974. Permafrost. In: J.D. Ives and R.G. Barry (eds.). Arctic and Alpine Environments. pp. 159–194. Methuen and Co. Ltd., London.
Jacob, A.W.B. , Vees, R. , Braile, L.W. , Criley, E. , 1994. Optimization of wide-angle seismic signal-to-noise ratios and P-wave transmission in Kenya, Tectonophysics 236, 61–79.
Jordan, T.A. , Martin, C. , Ferraccioli, F. , Matsuoka, K. , Corr, H. , Forsberg, R. , Olesen, A. , Siegert, M. , 2018a. Anomalously high geothermal fux near the South Pole, Scientific Reports 8, 16785. doi: 10..1038/s41598-018-35182-0.
Jordan, T.M. , Williams, C.N. , Schroeder, D.M. , Martos, Y.M. , Cooper, M.A. , Siegert, M.J. , Paden, J.D. , Huybrechts, P. , Bamber, J.L. , 2018b. A constraint upon the basal water distribution and thermal state of the Greenland Ice Sheet from radar bed echoes, Cryosphere 12, 2831–2854 https://doi.org/10.5194/tc-12-2831-2018.
Kanao, M. , 2018a. Studies on Seismicity in the Polar Region in Book ‘Polar Seismology - Advances and Impact’, doi: 10.5772/intechopen.78554.
Kanao, M. , 2018b. Introduction: Progress of Seismology in Polar Region in Book ‘Polar Seismology - Advances and Impact’, doi: 10.5772/intechopen.78550.
Kanao, M. , 2018c. Seismological Studies on the Deep Interiors of the Earth Viewed from the Polar Region in Book ‘Polar Seismology - Advances and Impact’, doi: 10.5772/intechopen.78552.
Kanao, M. , Tsuboi, S. , Butler, R. , Anderson, K. , Dahl-Jensen, T. , Larsen, T. , Nettles, M. , Voss, P. , Childs, D. , Clinton, J. , Stutzmann, E. , Himeno, T. , Toyokuni, G. , Tanaka, S. ,

Tono, Y. , 2012. Greenland ice sheet dynamics and glacial earthquake activities. In: J. Müller and L. Koch (eds.). Ice Sheets: Dynamics, Formation and Environmental Concerns. pp. 93–120. Nova Science Publishers, Inc., Hauppauge, NY. Chap. 4.
Kanao, M. , Zhao, D. , Wiens, D.A. , Stutzmann, É. , 2015. Recent advance in polar seismology: Global impact of the International Polar Year, Polar Science 9(1), 1–4.
Kanao, M. , Suvorov, V.D. , Toda, S. , Tsuboi, S. , 2015. Seismicity, structure and tectonics in the Arctic region, Geoscience Frontiers 665–677.
Kennett, B.L.N. , 1986. Lg waves and structural boundaries, Bulletin of the Seismological Society of America 76, 1133–1141.
Khare, N. , Mishra, O.P. , Taguchi, S. , 2018. Recent advances in climate science of polar region, Polar Science 18, 1–4.
Kozlovskaya, E. , 2013. Monitoring of slow seismic events from Arctics using the data of the POLENET/LAPNET broadband temporary array. In: IAHS-IASPO-IASPEI.IUGG Joint Assembly, S105S2.03, Gothenburg, Sweden.
Sebastian, S.A. , Pomeroy, J.W. , Marsh, P. , 2017. Diagnosis of the hydrology of a small Arctic basin at the tundra-taiga transition using a physically based hydrological model, Journal of Hydrology 550, 685–703.
Kumar, P. , Kind, R. , Priestley, K. , Dahl-Jensen, T. , 2007. Crustal structure of Iceland and Greenland from receiver function studies, Journal of Geophysical Research: Solid Earth 112.
Kyle, P.R. , Moore, J.A. , Thirlwall, M.F. , 1992. Petrologic evolution of anorthoclase phonolite lavas at Mount Erebus, Ross Island, Antarctica, Journal of Petrology 3, 849–875.
Laidler, G.J. , Treitz, P. , 2003. Biophysical remote sensing of arctic environments, Progress in Physical Geography 27(1), 44–68.
Laske, G. , Masters, T.G. , , 1997. A global digital map of sediment thickness. Eos, Transactions. American Geophysical Union, p. 483.
Lebedeva-Ivanova, N.N. , Zamansky, Y.Y. , Langinen, A.E. , Sorokin, M.Y. , 2006. Seismic profiling across the Mendeleev Ridge at 82 N: evidence of continental crust. Geophysical Journal International 165, 527–544.
Lecher, A.L. , 2017. Groundwater discharge in the arctic: a review of studies and implications for biogeochemistry. Hydrology 4, 41; doi: 10.3390/hydrology403004.
Lecher, A.L. , Chuang, P.-C. , Singleton, M. , Paytan, A. , 2017. Sources of methane to an Arctic lake in Alaska: an isotopic investigation, Journal of Geophysical Research: Biogeosciences 122, 753–766.
Linell, K.A. , Tedrow, J.C.F. , 1981. Soil and Permafrost Surveys in the Arctic. Clarendon Press, Oxford, p. 279.
Logatchev, N.A. , Zorin, Y.A. , Rogozhina, V.A. , 1983. Baikal rift: active or passive? E comparison of the Baikal and Kenya rift zones. Tectonophysics 94(1–4), 223–240.
Loshchicov, V.S. , 1965. Snow cover on the ice of the central Arctic. Probl. Arktiki 17: 36–45. (In Russian).
Luzin, G.P. , Pretes, M. , Vasiliev, V.V. , 1994. The Kola Peninsula: geography, history and resources. Arctic 47: 1–15.
Mackay, D.K. , Løken, O.H. , 1974. Arctic hydrology. In: J.D. Ives and R.G. Barry (eds.). Arctic and Alpine Environments. pp. 111–132. Methuen and Co. Ltd., London.
Melnik E.A. , Suvorov, V.D. , Pavlov, E.V. , Mishenkina, Z.R. , 2015. Seismic and density heterogeneities of lithosphere beneath Siberia: evidence from the Craton long-range seismic profile. Polar Science 119–129.
Mishra, O.P. , 2014. Intricacies of the Himalayan seismotectonics and seismogenesis: need for integrated research. Current Science 106(2).
Mishra, O.P. , Khare, N. , Das, S.B. , Kumar, V. , Singh, J. , Singh, P. , Ghatak, M. , Shekhar, S. , Tiwari, A. , Gera, S.K. , Mahto, R. , Gusain, P. , 2021. Glacial mass change induced earthquakes in the Himalayan region of South Asia: one of the proxies of climate change? In: N. Khare (eds.). Understanding Present and Past Arctic Environments. Elsevier.
Molnar, P. , Tapponnier, P. , 1975. Cenozoic tectonics of Asia: effects of a continental collision: features of recent continental tectonics in Asia can be interpreted as results of the India-Eurasia collision. Science 189(4201), 419–426.
Moore, J.J. , 1981. Mires. In: L.C. Bliss , O.W. Heal and J.J. Moore (eds.). Tundra Ecosystems: A Comparative Analysis. pp. 35–37. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Murray, J.L. , Hacquebord, L. , Gregor, D.J. , Loeng, H. , 1998. Physical/geographical characteristics of the arctic. In: J.L. Murray (ed.). AMAP Assessment Report: Arctic Pollution. pp. 9–24. Oslo, AMAP.

Natural Resources Canada , 1994. Geology and Canada. Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa, p. 32.

Nettles, M. , Ekström, G. , 2010. Glacial earthquakes in Greenland and Antarctica. Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences 38, 467–491.

NOAA , 1988. Data Announcement 88-MGG-02, Digital relief of the surface of the Earth. NOAA, National Geophysical Data Center, Boulder, Colorado.

Nordic Council of Ministers , 1996. The Nordic Arctic Environment – Unspoilt, Exploited, Polluted? Nordic Council of Ministers, Copenhagen. Nord 26, 240.

Olivieri, M. , Spada, G. , 2015. Ice melting and earthquake suppression in Greenland. Polar Science 9, 94–106.

Prik, Z.M. , 1959. Mean position of surface pressure and temperature distribution in the Arctic. Tr. Arkticheskogo Nauch.-Issled, Inst. 217, 5–34.

Prowse, T.D. , 1990. Northern hydrology: an overview. In: T.D. Prowse and C.S.L. Ommanney (eds.). Northern Hydrology: Canadian Perspectives. pp. 1–36. Environment Canada, Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, NHRI Science Report No. 1.

Rieger, S. , 1974. Arctic soils. In: J.D. Ives and R.G. Barry (eds.). Arctic and Alpine Environments. pp. 749–769. Methuen and Co. Ltd., London.

Schlindwein, V. , Andrea, D. , Edith, K. , Christine, L. , Florian, S. , 2015. Seismicity of the Arctic mid-ocean Ridge system, *Polar Science* 146–157.

Shulgin, A. , Hans, T. , 2015. Seismic explosion sources on an ice cap – Technical considerations. Polar Science 107–118.

Sly, P.G. , 1995. Human impacts on the Hudson Bay region: present and future environmental concerns. In: M. Munawar and M. Luotola (eds.). The Contaminants in the Nordic Ecosystem: Dynamics, Processes and Fate, pp. 171–263. SPB Academic Publishing, Amsterdam.

Stonehouse, B. , 1989. Polar Ecology. Blackie, London, p. 222.

Storchak, D.A. , Masaki, K. , Emily, D. , James, H. , 2015. Long-term accumulation and improvements in seismic event data for the polar regions by the International Seismological Centre. Polar Science 5–16.

Toyokuni, G. , Takenaka, H. , Kanao, M. , Tsuboi, S. , Tono, Y. , 2015. Numerical modeling of seismic waves for estimating influence of the Greenland ice sheet on observed seismograms. Polar Science 9(1), pp 80–93.

van Everdingen, R.O. , 1990. Groundwater hydrology. In: T.D. Prowse and C.S.L. Ommanney (eds.). Northern Hydrology. Canadian Perspectives, pp. 77–101. National Hydrology Research Institute, Environment Canada, Saskatoon, NHRI Science Report No. 1.

Verhoef, J. , Roest, W.R. , Macnab, R. , Arkani-Hamed, J. , 1996. Magnetic anomalies of the Arctic and North Atlantic oceans and adjacent land areas.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.
Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.
Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.
Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and voluminous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Research Letters 170, 580–604.
Wadhams, P. 2012. Arctic ice cover, ice thickness and tipping points. AMBIO 41, 23–33.
Wadhams, P. , Davis, N.R. , 2000. Further evidence of ice thinning in the Arctic Ocean. Geophysical Research Letters 27(24): 3973–3975, doi: 10.1029/2000GL011802.
Woo, M.K. , Gregor, D.J. , 1992. Arctic Environment: Past, Present and Future. McMaster University, Department of Geography, Hamilton, Ont, p. 164.
Wood, W. 2000. Attitude change: persuasion and social influence. Annual Review of Psychology 51: 539–570.
Wu, P. , Paul, J. , 2000. Can deglaciation trigger earthquakes in N. America? Geophysical Research Letters 27, 1323–1326.
Zhao, D. , Lei, J. , Inoue, T. , Yamada, A. , Gao, S.S. , 2006. Deep structure and origin of the Baikal Rift Zone. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 243, 681–691.
Zonenshain, L.P. , Savostin, L.L. , 1981. Geodynamics of the Baikal rift zone and plate tectonics of Asia. Tectonophysics 76, 1–45.
Zonenshain, L.P. , Savostin, L.L. , 1981. Geodynamics of the Baikal rift zone and plate tectonics of Asia. Tectonophysics 76, 1–45.
Zonenshain, L.P. , Savostin, L.L. , 1981. Geodynamics of the Baikal rift zone and plate tectonics of Asia. Tectonophysics 76, 1–45.

Decadal Arctic Sea Ice Variability and Its Implication in Climate Change

Årthun M , Eldevik T , Smedsrud LH , Skagseth Ø , Ingvaldsen RB , 2012. Quantifying the influence of Atlantic heat on Barents Sea ice variability and retreat. J. Clim. 25(13): 4736–4743. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-11-00466.1.
Årthun M , Schrum C , 2010. Ocean surface heat flux variability in the Barents Sea. J. Mar. Syst. 83: 88–98.
Aagaard K , Carmack EC , 1989. The role of sea ice and other fresh water in the Arctic circulation. J. Geophys. Res. 94. doi: 10.1029/JC094iC10p14485.
Agnew TA , Howell S , 2002. Comparison of digitized Canadian ice charts and passive microwave sea-ice concentrations. Geoscience and Remote Sensing Symposium, 2002. IGARSS ‘02. *2002 IEEE International.* pp. 231–233. doi: 10.1109/IGARSS.2002.1024996.
Cavalieri DJ , Parkinson CL , DiGirolamo N , Ivanoff A , 2012 Intersensor calibration between F13 SSMI and F17 SSMIS for global sea ice data records. IEEE Geosci. Remote Sens. Lett. 9: 233–236. doi: 10.1109/LGRS.2011.2166754.
Cavalieri DJ , Parkinson CL 2012 Arctic sea ice variability and trends, 1979–2010. Cryosphere 6: 881–889.
Cavalieri DJ , Parkinson CL , Gloersen P , Comiso JC , 1999. Zwally HJ1999Deriving long-term time series of sea ice cover from satellite passive-microwave multisensor data sets. J. Geophys. Res. 104(C7): 15803–15814. doi: 10.1029/1999JC900081.
Cavalieri DJ , Parkinson CL , Gloersen P , Zwally HJ , 1997. Arctic and Antarctic Sea Ice Concentrations from Multichannel Passive-Microwave Satellite Data Sets: October 1978-September 1995- User’s Guide. NASA TM 104647. Goddard Space Flight Center, Greenbelt, MD, p. 17.
Cavalieri DJ , St. Germain KM , Swift CT , 1995. Reduction of weather effects in the calculation of sea ice concentration with the DMSP SSM/I. J. Glaciol. 41: 455–464.

Cavalieri DJ , Gloersen P , Campbell WJ , 1984. Determination of sea ice parameters with the Nimbus 7 SMMR. J. Geophys. Res. 89: 5355–5369.
Chatterjee S , Raj RP , Bertino L , Skagseth Ø , Ravichandran M , Johannessen OM , 2018. Role of Greenland Sea gyre circulation on Atlantic Water temperature variability in the Fram Strait. Geophys. Res. Lett. 45: 8399–8406. doi: 10.1029/2018GL079174.
Clem KR , Renwick JA , 2015. Austral spring Southern Hemisphere circulation and temperature changes and links to the SPCZ. J. Clim. 28(18): 7371–7384. doi: 10.1175/JCLID150125.1.
Comiso JC , 2006. Abrupt decline in the Arctic winter sea ice cover. Geophys. Res. Lett. 33: L18504. doi: 10.1029/2006GL027341.
Comiso JC , 1995. SSM/I sea ice concentrations using the bootstrap algorithm. NASA Ref. Pub. 1380, 49.
Deser C , Teng H , 2008. Evolution of arctic sea ice concentration trends and the role of atmospheric circulation forcing, 1979–2007. Geophys. Res. Lett. 35: L02504, doi: 10.1029/2007GL032023.
Emery WJ , Fowler C , Maslanik J , 1994. Arctic sea ice concentrations from special sensor microwave imager and advanced very high-resolution radiometer satellite data. J. Geophys. Res. 99: 18329–18342. doi: 10.1029/94JC01413.
Fetterer F , Knowles K , Meier WN , Savoie M , Windnagel AK , 2017. Updated daily. Sea Ice Index, Version 3. Boulder, Colorado USA. NSIDC: National Snow and Ice Data Center. https://doi.org/10.7265/N5K072F8. Accessed on 20 February 2020 .
Figurkin AL , Zhigalov IA , 2008. Vanin NS2008 Oceanographic conditions in the Sea of Okhotsk in the early 2000s. Izvestiya TINRO 152, 240–252 (Russian).
Francis J , Vavrus S , 2012. Evidence linking Arctic amplification to extreme weather in mid-latitudes. Geophys. Res. Lett. 39: L06801. doi: 10.1029/2012GL051000.
Francis JA , Hunter E 2007 Drivers of declining sea ice in the Arctic winter: a tale of two seas. Geophys. Res. Lett. 34: L17503. doi: 10.1029/2007GL030995.
Gloersen P , 1995. Modulations of hemispheric sea ice cover by ENSO events. Nature 373: 503–506.
Graversen RG , Langen PG , Mauritsen T , 2014. Arctic amplification in CCSM4: Contributions from the lapse rate and surface albedo feedbacks. J. Clim. 27: 4433–4450 doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-13-00551.1.
Häkkinen S , Rhines PB , Worthen DL , 2011. Atmospheric blocking and Atlantic multidecadal ocean variability. Science 334(6056): 655–659. doi: 10.1126/science.1205683.
Häkkinen S , Cavalieri DJ 1989 A study of oceanic surface heat fluxes in the Greenland, Norwegian, and Barents Sea. J. Geophys. Res. 94(C5): 6145–6157.
Hall A , 2004. Role of surface albedo feedback in climate. J. Clim. 17: 1550–1568 doi: 10.1175/1520-0442(2004)017<1550:TROSAF>2.0.CO;2.
Hartmann DL , et al. 2013. Observations: atmosphere and surface. In Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis, T. F. Stocker et al., Eds., Cambridge University Press, pp. 159–254.
Hersbach H , Dee D 2016, ERA5 reanalysis is in production, ECMWF Newsletter 147: 7. https://www.ecmwf.int/en/newsletter/147/news/era5-reanalysis-production (last access: 14 May 2020).
Hilmer M , Harder M , Lemke P , 1998. Sea ice transport: a highly variable link between the Arctic and North Atlantic. Geophys. Res. Lett. 25(17): 3359–3362.
Holland MM , Bitz CM , Tremblay B , 2006. Future abrupt reductions in the summer Arctic sea ice. Geophys. Res. Lett. 33: L23503. doi: 10.1029/2006GL028024.
Kidson J , Taschetto AS , Thompson DWJ , England MH , 2011. The influence of Southern Hemisphere sea-ice extent on the latitude of the mid-latitude jet stream. Geophys. Res. Lett. 38: L15804. doi: 10.1029/2011GL048056.
Kim ST , 2012. A review of the Sea of Okhotsk ecosystem response to the climate with special emphasis on fish populations. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 69(7): 1123–1133. doi: 10.1093/icesjms/fss107.
Kumar A , Yadav J , Mohan R , 2020. Global warming leading to alarming recession of the Arctic sea-ice cover: insights from remote sensing observations and model reanalysis. Heliyon 6(7): e04355. doi: 10.1016/j.heliyon.2020.e04355.
Kwok R , 2009. Outflow of Arctic Ocean sea ice into the Greenland and Barents Seas: 1979–2007. J. Clim. 22: 2438–2457.

Li F , Orsolini YJ , Wang HJ , Gao YQ , He SP , 2018. Modulation of the Aleutian–Icelandic low seesaw and its surface impacts by the Atlantic Multidecadal Oscillation. Adv. Atmos. Sci. 35(1): 95–105. doi: 10.1007/s00376-017-7028-z.

Liu J , Curry JA , Hu Y , 2004. Recent Arctic Sea Ice Variability: Connections to the Arctic Oscillation and the ENSO. Geophys. Res. Lett. 31: L09211. doi: 10.1029/2004GL019858.

Lindsay RW , Zhang J 2005. The thinning of Arctic sea ice, 1988–2003: have we passed a tipping point? J. Clim. 18(22): 4879–4894. doi: 10.1175/JCLI3587.1.

Martin S , Munoz E , Drucker R , 1997. Recent observations of a spring-summer surface warming over the Arctic Ocean. Geophys. Res. Lett. 24 (10): 1259–1262.

Maslanik J , Drobot S , Fowler C , Emery W , Barry R , 2007. On the Arctic climate paradox and the continuing role of atmospheric circulation in affecting sea ice conditions. Geophys. Res. Lett. 34: L03711. doi: 10.1029/2006GL028269.

Mantua NJ , Hare SR , Zhang Y , Wallace JM , Francis RC , 1997. A Pacific interdecadal climate oscillation with impacts on salmon production. Bull. Am. Meteor. Soc. 78: 1069–1079. doi: 10.1175/1520-0477(1997)078<1069:APICOW>2.0.CO;2.

Mätzler C , Ramseier RO , Svendsen E 1984 Polarization effects in sea-ice signatures. IEEE J. Oceanic Eng. 9: 333–338.

McDonald M , Arragutainaq L , Novalinga Z , eds. 1997. Voices from the Bay: Traditional Ecological Knowledge of Inuit and Cree in the Hudson Bay Bioregion. Ottawa: Canadian Arctic Resources Committee and Sanikiluaq, NWT.

Legendre L , Ackley SF , Dieckmann GS , GuUiksen B , Horner SR , Hoshiai T , Melnikov I , Reeburgh WS , Spindler M , Sullivan CW , 1992. Ecology of sea ice biota 2: global significance. Pol. Biol. 12: 429–444.

Miles MW , Divine DV , Furevik T , Jansen E , Moros M , Ogilvie AEJ , 2014. A signal of persistent Atlantic multidecadal variability in Arctic sea ice. Geophys. Res. Lett. 41: 463–469. doi: 10.1002/2013GL058084.

Molnár PK , Bitz CM , Holland MM , Kay JE , Penk SR , Amstrup S.C. 2020. Fasting season length sets temporal limits for global polar bear persistence. Nat. Clim. Change 10: 732–738.

Murray RJ , Simmonds I , 1995. Responses of climate and cyclones to reductions in Arctic winter sea ice. J. Geophys. Res. 100: 4791–4806.

Nihashi S , Ohshima KI , Saitoh S-I , 2017. Sea-ice production in the northern Japan Sea, Deep-Sea Res. Part I: Oceanogr. Res. Pap. 127: 65–76.

Nishii K , Nakamura H , Orsolini YJ , 2011. Geographical dependence observed in blocking high influence on the stratospheric variability through enhancement and suppression of upward planetary-wave propagation. J. Clim. 24(24): 6408–6423. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-10-05021.1.

Notz D , Stroeve J , 2016. Arctic sea ice loss directly follows cumulative anthropogenic CO2 emissions. Science 354(6313): 747–750. doi: 10.1126/science.aag2345.

Ohshima KI , Nakanowatari T , Riser S , Wakatsuchi M , 2010. Seasonal variation in the in- and outflow of the Okhotsk Sea with the North Pacific. Deep-Sea Res. II 57: 1247–1256. doi: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2009.12.012.

Ohshima KI , Nihashi S , Hashiya E , Watanabe T , 2006. Interannual variability of sea ice area in the Sea of Okhotsk: the importance of surface heat flux in fall. J. Meteorol. Soc. Jpn. 874: 907–919. doi: 10.2151/jmsj.84.907.

Olonscheck D , Mauritsen T , Notz D , 2019. Arctic sea-ice variability is primarily driven by atmospheric temperature fluctuations. Nat. Geosci. 12: 430–434. doi: 10.1038/s41561-019-0363-1.

Onarheim IH , Smedsrud LH , Ingvaldsen RB , Nilsen F , 2014. Loss of sea ice during winter north of Svalbard. Tellus A 66(1): 23933. doi: 10.3402/tellusa.v66.23933.

Onarheim IH , Eldevik T , Smedsrud LH , Stroeve JC , 2018. Seasonal and regional manifestation of arctic sea ice loss. J. Clim. 31: 4917–4932. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-17-0427.1.

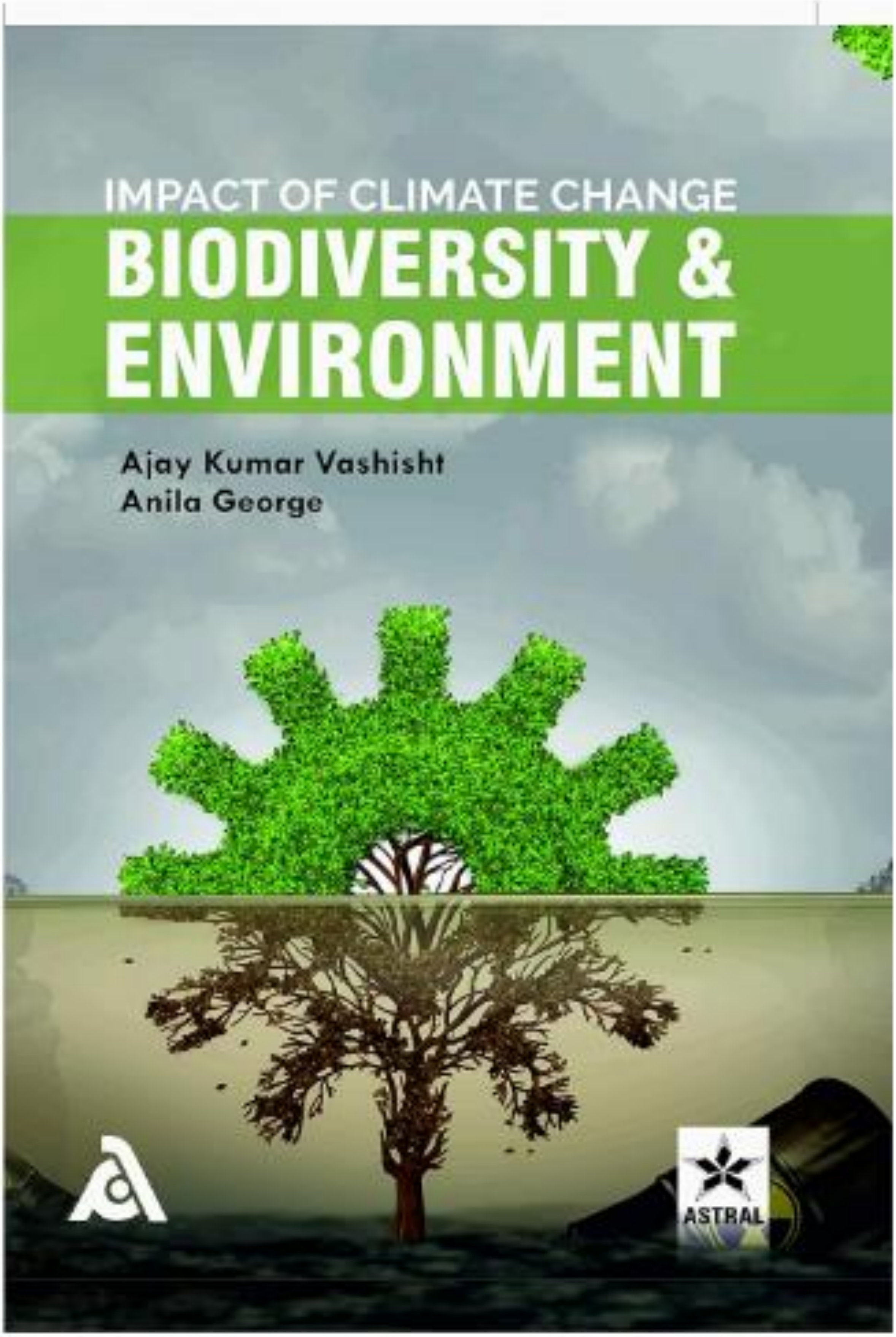
Osborne JM , Screen JA , Collins M , 2017. Ocean–atmosphere state dependence of the atmospheric response to Arctic sea ice loss. J. Clim. 30(5): 1537–1552. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-16-0531.1

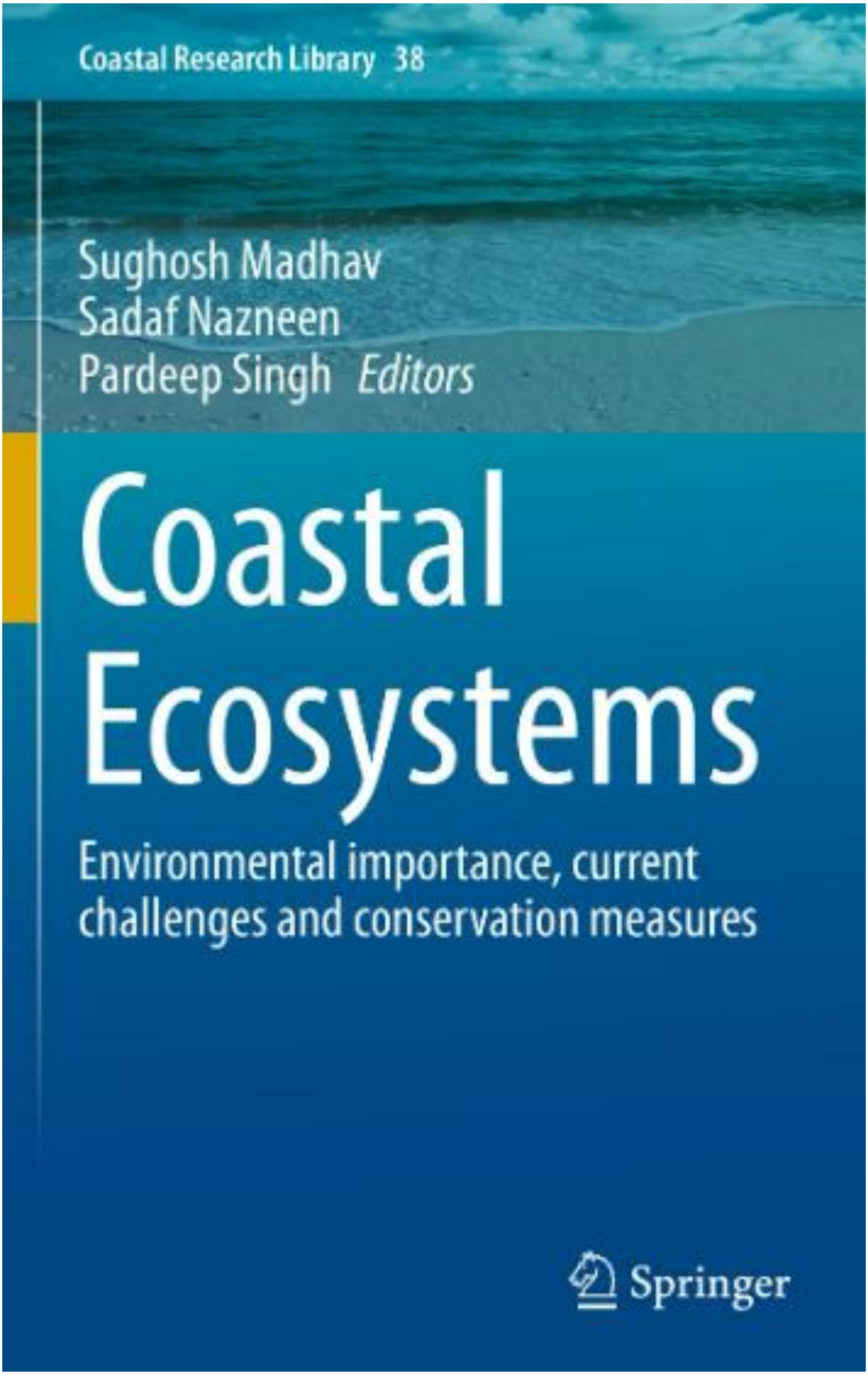
Park W , Latif M 2008. Multidecadal and multi-centennial variability of the meridional overturning circulation. Geophys. Res. Lett. 35: L22703. doi: 10.1029/2008GL035779.

Parkinson CL , 2019. A 40-y record reveals gradual Antarctic sea ice increases followed by decreases at rates far exceeding the rates seen in the Arctic. PNAS 116(29): 14414–14423.

Parkinson CL , Cavalieri DJ , 1989. Arctic sea ice 1973–1987: seasonal, regional, and interannual variability. J. Geophys. Res. 94(C10): 14499–14523. doi: 10.1029/JC094iC10p14499.
Parkinson CL , Cavalieri DJ , 2008. Arctic sea ice variability and trends, 1979–2006. J. Geophys. Res. 113: C07003. doi: 10.1029/2007JC004558.
Partington K , Flynn T , Lamb D , Bertoia C , Dedrick K , 2003. Late twentieth-century Northern Hemisphere sea-ice record from U.S. National Ice Center ice charts. J. Geophys. Res. 108(C11): 3343. doi: 10.1029/2002JC001623.
Peings Y , Magnusdottir G , 2014. Response of the wintertime Northern Hemisphere atmospheric circulation to current and projected Arctic sea ice decline: a numerical study with CAM5. J. Clim. 27(1): 244–264. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-13-00272.1.
Peterson IK , Pettipas R , 2013. Trends In air temperature and sea ice in the Atlantic Large Aquatic Basin and adjoining areas. Can. Tech. Rep. Hydrogr. Ocean Sci. 290: 3–8.
Pistone K , Eisenman I , Ramanathan V , 2014. Observational determination of albedo decrease caused by vanishing Arctic sea ice. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 111: 3322–3326. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1318201111.
Post E , Bhatt US , Bitz CM , Brodie JF , Fulton TL , Hebblewhite M , Kerby J , Kutz SJ , Stirling I , Walker DA , 2013. Ecological consequences of sea-ice decline. Science 341(6145): 519–524.
Randall D , Curry J , Battisti D , Flato G , Grumbine R , Hakkinen S , Martinson D , Preller R , Walsh J , Weatherly J , 1998. Status of and outlook for large-scale modelling of atmosphere–ice-ocean interactions in the Arctic. Bull. Am. Meteor. Soc. 79: 197–219.
Rigor IG , Colony RL , Martin S , 2000. Variations in surface air temperature observations in the Arctic, 1979–97. J. Clim. 13(5): 896–914.
Rigor IG , Wallace JM , Colony RL , 2002. Response of sea ice to the Arctic Oscillation. J. Clim. 15: 2648–2663.
Rigor IG , Wallace JM , 2004. Variations in the age of Arctic sea-ice and summer sea-ice extent. Geophys. Res. Lett. L09401. doi: 10.1029/2004GL019492.
Rösel A , Kaleschke L , Kern S , 2012. Influence of melt ponds on microwave sensors’ sea ice concentration retrieval algorithms, Conference: Geoscience and Remote Sensing Symposium (IGARSS), *2012 IEEE International* , p. 4. doi: 10.1109/IGARSS.2012.6350608.
Schlichtholz P , 2011. Influence of oceanic heat variability on sea ice anomalies in the Nordic Seas. Geophys. Res. Lett. 38: L05705. doi: 10.1029/2010G.
Schweiger A , Lindsay R , Zhang J , Steele M , Stern H , Kwok R , 2011. Uncertainty in modelled Arctic sea ice volume. J Geophys Res 116: C00D06. doi: 10.1029/2011JC007084.
Screen J , Francis J , 2016. Contribution of sea-ice loss to Arctic amplification is regulated by Pacific Ocean decadal variability. Nature Clim Change 6: 856–860. doi: 10.1038/nclimate3011.
Screen JA , Simmonds I , 2013. Exploring links between Arctic amplification and mid-latitude weather. Geophys Res Lett 40. doi: 10.1002/grl.50174.
Screen JA , Simmonds I , 2010. The central role of diminishing sea ice in recent Arctic temperature amplification. Nature 464:1334–1337.
Serreze MC , Barry RG 2011 Processes and impacts of Arctic amplification: a research synthesis. Glob. Planet Change 77: 85–96.
Simmonds I , Keay K 2009. Extraordinary September Arctic sea ice reductions and their relationships with storm behaviour over 1979–2008. Geophys. Res. Lett. 36: L19715, doi: 10.1029/2009GL039810.
Sorteberg A , Kvingedal B , 2006. Atmospheric forcing on the Barents Sea winter ice extent. J. Clim. 19: 4772–4784.
Steffen K , Schweiger A , 1991. NASA team algorithm for sea ice concentration retrieval from Defense Meteorological Satellite Program special sensor microwave imager: comparison with Landsat satellite imagery. J. Geophys. Res. 96(C12): 21971–21987.
Stroeve J , Notz D , 2018. Changing state of Arctic sea ice across all seasons. Environ. Res. Lett. 13 103001.
Stroeve JC , Markus T , Boisvert L , Miller J , Barrett A , 2014. Changes in Arctic melt season and implications for sea ice loss. Geophys. Res. Lett. 41: 1216–1225. doi: 10.1002/2013GL058951.
Stroeve JC , Serreze MC , Kay JE , Holland MM , Meier WN , BarrettAP2012The Arctic’s rapidly shrinking sea ice cover: a research synthesis. Clim. Change 110: 1005–1027. doi:

10.1007/s1058401101011.
Stroeve J , Holland MM , Meier W , Scambos T , Serreze M , 2007. Arctic sea ice decline: faster than forecast. Geophys. Res. Lett. 34(9): L09501. doi:10.1029/2007GL029703.
Timmermans ML , 2015. The impact of stored solar heat on Arctic sea ice growth. Geophys. Res. Lett. 42: 6399–6406. doi: 10.1002/2015GL064541.
Thompson DW , Wallace JM 2000 Annular modes in extratropical circulation, Part II: Trends, J. Clim. 13: 1018–1036.
Vihma T , 2014. Effects of Arctic sea ice decline on weather and climate: a review. Surv. Geophys. 35: 1175–1214.
Vinje T , 2001. Anomalies and trends of sea-ice extent and atmospheric circulation in the Nordic Seas during the period 1864–1998. J. Clim. 14: 255–267.
Walsh JE , 2013. Melting ice: What is happening to Arctic sea ice, and what does it mean for us? Oceanography 26: 171–181. doi: 10.5670/oceanog.2013.19.
Zhang R , 2015. Mechanisms for low-frequency variability of summer Arctic sea ice extent. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 112(15): 4570–4575. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1422296112.
Zhang X , Sorteberg A , Zhang J , Gerdes R , Comiso JC , 2008. Recent radical shifts of atmospheric circulations and rapid changes in Arctic climate system. Geophys. Res. Lett. 35: L22701. doi: 10.1029/2008GL035607.
Zhang J , Rothrock DA 2003 Modeling global sea ice with a thickness and enthalpy distribution model in generalized curvilinear coordinates. Mon. Weather Rev. 131: 845–861.
Zhang Y , Maslowski W , Semtner AJ 1999 Impact of mesoscale ocean currents on sea ice in high-resolution Arctic ice and ocean simulations. J. Geophys. Res. 104: 18409–18429.
Zhang Y , Wallace JM , Battisti DS , 1997. ENSO-like interdecadal variability: 1900–93. J. Clim. 10:1004–1020.
Zwally HJ , Schutz B , Abdalati W , Abshire J , Bentley C , Brenner A , Bufton J , Dezio J , Hancock D , Harding D , Herring T , Minster B , Quinn K , Palm S , Spinhirne J , Thomas R , 2002. ICESat’s laser measurements of polar ice, atmosphere, ocean, and land. J. Geodyn. 34: 405–445.


IMPACT OF CLIMATE CHANGE
BIODIVERSITY &
ENVIRONMENT
Ajay Kumar Vashisht
Anila George
ASTRAL


Coastal Research Library 38
Sughosh Madhav
Sadaf Nazneen
Pardeep Singh *Editors*
Coastal Ecosystems
Environmental importance, current challenges and conservation measures
Springer

Maritime Climate Change: Physical Drivers and Impact, *Series Editor: Neloy Khare*

Climate Change in the Arctic

An Indian Perspective

edited by

Neloy Khare

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group

Climate Change in the Arctic

Maritime Climate Change: Physical Drivers and Impact

Series Editor:
Neloy Khare

As global climate change continues to unfold, the two-way links between the tropical oceans and the poles will play key determining factors in these sensitive regions' climatic evolution. Now is the time to take a detailed look at how the tropical oceans and the poles are coupled climatically. The signatures of environmental and climatic conditions are well preserved in many natural archives available over land and ocean. Many efforts have been made to unravel such mysteries of climate through many natural geological archives from tropics to the polar region. This series makes an effort to cover in pertinent time various depositional regimes, different proxies – planktic, benthic, pollens and spores, invertebrates, geochemistry, sedimentology, etc., and emerged teleconnections between the poles and tropics at regional and global scales, besides sea-level changes and neo-tectonism. This book series will review theories and methods, analyse case studies, identify and describe the evolving spatial-temporal variations in climate, and provide a better process-level understanding of these patterns. It will discuss significantly, generalisable insights that improve our understanding of climatic evolution across time – including the future. It aims to serve all professionals, students and researchers, scientists alike in academia, industry, government and beyond.

Climate Change in the Arctic
An Indian Perspective
Neloy Khare

Climate Change in the Arctic

An Indian Perspective

Edited by

Neloy Khare

CRC Press
Taylor & Francis Group
Boca Raton London New York

CRC Press is an imprint of the
Taylor & Francis Group, an **informa** business

First edition published 2022
by CRC Press
6000 Broken Sound Parkway NW, Suite 300, Boca Raton, FL 33487-2742

and by CRC Press
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4RN

CRC Press is an imprint of Taylor & Francis Group, LLC

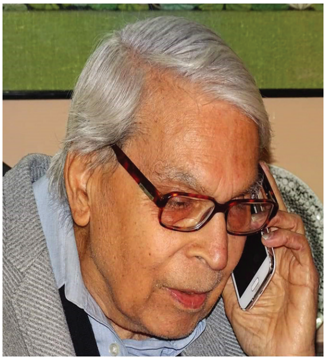
Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Names: Khare, Neloy, editor.
Title: Climate change in the Arctic : an Indian perspective / edited by
Neloy Khare.
Description: First edition. | Boca Raton : CRC Press, [2022] | Series:
Maritime climate change: physical drivers and impact | Includes
bibliographical references and index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2021044897 | ISBN 9780367482695 (hbk) |
ISBN 9781032207780 (pbk) | ISBN 9781003265177 (ebk)
Subjects: LCSH: Arctic regions—Environmental conditions. | Climatic
changes—Arctic regions. | Pollution—Arctic regions. | Environmental
protection—Research—India. | Ecology—Arctic regions.
Classification: LCC GE160.A68 C56 2022 | DDC 551.6911/3—dc23/eng/20211119
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2021044897

ISBN: 9780367482695 (hbk)
ISBN: 9781032207780 (pbk)
ISBN: 9781003265177 (ebk)

DOI: 10.1201/9781003265177

Typeset in Times
by codeMantra

Dedicated to



Late Prof Shashi Bhushan Bhatia

(18.03.1980–01.05.2021)

Prof Shashi Bhushan Bhatia was born on 18 March 1930 at Lucknow. Prof Bhatia post graduated in 1950 from the Lucknow University, obtained Ph.D. degree from the London University and D.I.C. from the Imperial College of London. He joined the Lucknow University as a Lecturer in 1953. In 1958, he was selected in the Geological Survey of India. Subsequently in 1959, Prof Bhatia was appointed as a Reader in the newly created Department of Geology in the Panjab University, Chandigarh, where he superannuated as a Professor and then continued as an Emeritus Professor.

Prof Bhatia's contributions to the Indian geology cover a vast time span. Foraminifera was his original field of specialisation. He is credited with the first discovery of the Permian foraminifera in India. Later he made important contributions to the study of Cretaceous and Paleogene ostracods. His research on the Cretaceous sediments aided in determining the time of extinction of the dinosaurs and initiation of the Deccan Volcanicity. Another important input to the Cretaceous was the report of bryozoa in the Neelkanth Formation – considered at that time a part of the Tal Group. The most important contributions made by Prof S. B. Bhatia, however, are to the Palaeogene sediments of the Himalaya. He studied fauna of the Subathu, Dagshai and Siwalik sequences. His findings precisely fixed the lower age limit of the Kakara sediments at 56.5 Ma, which signifies the time of collision of the Indian and Asian Plates. His research on the Subathu and the Dagshai formations makes significant contributions to the biostratigraphy, event stratigraphy and environment of deposition of that time. He put India on the world map of Chara studies.

Prof Bhatia had around 250 publications in reputed journals. He guided a dozen students for Ph.D. degree. He was a highly decorated scientist. In 1958, he was appointed as Indian Correspondent of the Journal of Micropaleontology. He was a Fellow of the prestigious Indian National Science Academy and recipient of L. Rama Rao award. Oil and Natural Gas Corporation decorated him with a silver plaque. He was an excellent teacher with exceptional skills of communication. He was a perfectionist and demanded the best from his students.

Prof Shashi Bhushan Bhatia breathed his last peacefully on 1 May 2021. His death is a great loss to Indian geology.

Contents

Foreword

Undertaking research in the Polar Regions is complex and challenging. The sustained vitality of polar research is intrinsically linked to the specialised logistics and infrastructural support available, which allows scientists to work in a challenging environment. It necessitates strong international cooperation and sharing of resources and infrastructural facilities. Ny-Ålesund at Svalbard in the Arctic has emerged as a vibrant symbol of international partnership. The Norwegian Government has ably guided many non-Arctic countries to research new areas of Arctic Science.

Having achieved a long and resilient experience in Antarctica, India forayed into Arctic Science over a decade back and recently joined the Arctic Council as an Observer. In collaboration with Norway, India has established its research base ‘Himadri’ at Ny-Ålesund, the well-known ‘Science village’ in the Arctic. With more than a decade’s effort, many exciting findings and results have emerged, especially in the science of climate change as evident in the Arctic region. With quality scientific output in a short period, India has made its presence strongly felt in Arctic Science and has contributed significantly to the knowledge base of Arctic research. Indian scientists have attempted to unravel the past and understand the present in order to elucidate the future trends on climate change patterns.

The multi-sectoral climate issues associated with Arctic change transcend national boundaries. The stakeholders including governments, indigenous communities, civil society, policymakers and industry need to be equally concerned. For any adaptation and mitigation efforts, informed decisions on the Arctic must be evidence-based and not geopolitically driven. Scientists, therefore, have a cardinal role to play in providing insightful data that can be translated to enable policy paradigm and sound advisory mechanism on climate change and its impact on the globe.

The Indian efforts made in Arctic climate science must be synthesised so that a comprehensive picture could emerge. The present book *Climate Change in the Arctic: An Indian Perspective* is an illustrious effort in this direction, covering a wide range of topics addressing various aspects of climate change in the Arctic. As changes in the Arctic region will have a profound effect on human life on Earth, there is a need for our polity and people including the industry leaders to have up-to-date and robust information on the science of Arctic climate change. This book amply provides a clear picture of the ongoing global climatic changes, their impacts on the Arctic and how the changing Arctic will influence the rest of the world. The message conveyed is clear: we must collectively work to reduce our carbon footprint to save one of the last frontiers on planet Earth, the Arctic.

Arbinda Mitra
Scientific Secretary
Date: June 2021
Place: New Delhi

Preface

The Polar Regions are an essential focus of research as unique systems, but they also play a pivotal role in global Earth systems. Situated at the northernmost part of *Earth*, the Arctic is a spectacular *polar region*. It is a unique area among Earth's ecosystems. The unique characteristics and cultures of the Arctic indigenous peoples are an adaptive mechanism to cope with the cold and extreme conditions. Historically, the Arctic regions' scientific activity is intimately linked with the post-World War II and the subsequent Cold War era's geopolitical circumstances. It has always been a pristine environment owing to least human interventions. For many years, the Arctic region was designated as a North 'dead land' that was not perceived as a place for living or economic activities. However, the situation during the past few decades has changed significantly. Now the Arctic is connected to global natural and anthropogenic chemicals via winds, ice movement and marine currents. Global warming has made the Arctic region more accessible and desirable. It is a complex region that is experiencing unprecedented changes. Based on long-term monitoring, it has been found that the Arctic is warming up much faster than expected, essentially due to Arctic amplification of the worldwide warming scenario. The Arctic holds the world's largest remaining oil and gas reserves, an enormous untapped mineral wealth.

A reduction in Arctic summer ice cover has become more intense in recent years, culminating in an area of a record low of 3.4 million square kilometres in 2012. Ice melting opens a place for new research and economic activities. It allows for exploring the possible amount of natural resources in the Arctic region.

The Arctic's responses to global change are too sensitive. It may be capable of initiating dramatic climatic changes through alterations induced in the oceanic *thermohaline circulation* by its cold, southward-moving currents or through its effects on the global *albedo* resulting from changes in its total ice cover.

Many scientific disciplines and engineering applications have significantly advanced based on the knowledge gained from polar research. Many of the discoveries that took place over Polar Regions have provided a critical understanding of direct benefit to humanity and served the society. It makes sense that access to the polar areas is fundamentally vital from its scientific viewpoints. Evidence continues to accumulate that the scientific value of the Arctic warrants significant investment for polar research. Sustained efforts must be on to continue and indeed flourish over the next several decades.

The Arctic Ocean is primarily surrounded by land and has difficult, terrain and adjacent shorelines. The ice and extreme weather conditions make it further challenging to reach. The logistics constraints make it difficult to conduct research on land and coastal areas; thus, such observations tend to be sparse.

Atmospheric processes in the Arctic are distinctive and scientifically significant. Among many, the transport and disposition of solar radiation, the formation and persistence of clouds, and variability in the atmospheric pressure fields exhibit large-scale patterns that influence the global climate.

A more detailed understanding and representation of these global climate models' processes are essential to improving future climate predictions. It requires intensive observations of the Arctic atmosphere over the oceans with specialised (ice breaker) vessel support.

Similarly, sea ice provides the interface between atmosphere and water, and it is one of the essential components of the system. Inadequate spatiotemporal observations limit our ability to describe the variability, change, and extremes of the polar region environment. Records of past environmental conditions, retrieved from paleo-archives such as ice cores or sediments, provide clues to nature's response to climate change force. Still, these too are incomplete, especially in terms of spatial coverage.

The Arctic Basin plays a pivotal role in the global carbon balance. Nonetheless, the mechanism by which this carbon is transported from the Arctic continental shelf to the deep basin is yet to be adequately understood.

The apparent changes are occurring in the intricate balance between Pacific's and Atlantic's waters. These may bring out a subtle change in the thermohaline profile features because the heat and salt balance prevents melting of surface ice.

The tectonics of ocean gateways, which allow passage of warm and cold currents between oceans, is useful for understanding climate changes in the Arctic region. India takes the honour to have a separate ministry dealing with the Earth System Sciences under which the entire gamut of polar science and logistics falls. Having acute concern on the global climate change issues and the significance both poles carry in a deeper understanding of the climate change system holistically, India opted to adopt a bipolar scientific approach by venturing into Arctic Science. The rich scientific and logistics experience gained through a glorified and meaningful journey of launching more than 40 annual scientific expeditions to the icy continent 'Antarctica' was an ambitious plan to launch unique scientific expeditions to the Arctic region addressing diversified climate-related issues apart from many other scientific objectives to be accomplished through Arctic Science. As a humble beginning, India deputed an exploratory team to visit the Arctic and establish tie-ups with the Norwegian colleagues as the site identified for India was the Norwegian territorial region. Having fruitful, supportive and healthy linkages with the Norway, India was initially allowed to use Norway's International Research Facilities at Ny-Ålesund, Svalbard. And a full-fledged Indian Arctic Research base namely 'Himadri' was finally set up in 2008 at Ny-Ålesund amidst the research bases of other participating countries. During this period, Indian researchers visited the Arctic a number of times in a year and conducted their exceptional dedicated experimentation to obtain observational data. Many significant studies have been undertaken by Indian Climate Scientists focusing on the Arctic Climate changes and their global relevance including Indian tropical climates, specialising in the Indian Summer Monsoon (ISM).

This book titled *Climate Change in the Arctic: An Indian Perspective* highlights some of the most exciting Arctic research conducted by Indian scientists ever since India entered the Arctic Science foray. Indian polar researchers have contributed to a wide range of disciplines, in a bid to get an insight into the essential information about Earth's systems and how they operate. Nevertheless, the research conducted by Indian scientists addressing various facets of the climate change occurring over the

Arctic region has exclusively been collated in 15 chapters to put forth Arctic climate changes through an Indian perspective.

Accordingly, **Khare** introduces the theme in the first chapter highlighting the overall climate change assessment over the Arctic through the Indian Polar Programme. Under Arctic Atmosphere Weather and Climate Change theme, **Maheskumar and Sunitha Devi** discuss in detail the Arctic weather and climate patterns, **Gwal et al.** investigate GPS-derived total electron content (TEC) and Scintillation Index for the Arctic and Antarctic Stations, and **Sonbawne et al.** monitor the atmospheric aerosols to help assess their sources and effects on Arctic climate.

To get an insight into the signatures of climate change through sediments, **Singh et al.** concentrate on the sedimentary parameters of the Arctic region in space and time to reconstruct past climatic conditions. On the contrary, **Choudhary et al.** have identified biogenic silica as an indicator of paleo productivity in lacustrine sediments of Svalbard, Arctic. They provide a comprehensive review of the studies that dealt with the biogenic silica over the Arctic region. **Tiwari and Megan Da Lima Leitao** touch upon the critical role of persistent organic pollutants and mercury in the Arctic environment. Also, they discuss about the indirect impact of these pollutants on climate change. Besides, **Gopikrishna et al.** studied the fjord sediments for their contamination and Implications for the Arctic Climate changes.

The impact of climate change on Arctic life has been assessed by **Hatha and Krishnan** who reported non-polar isolates in the Arctic fjords and Tundra and pointed out a warming trend in the Arctic environment. Simultaneously, **Jasmine Purushothaman et al.** concentrate on the Mesozooplankton community structure in Kongsfjorden, the Arctic, and assess impacts of climate changes through space and time. On the contrary, **Aswathy Shaji and Anu Gopinath** characterise the humic acids isolated from diverse Arctic environments.

The most critical aspect of the great potential Arctic microbes possess for pharmaceutical purposes lies in the biotechnological processes which have various characteristics. Such aspects have been detailed by **Dubey and Babel**. Interestingly, bio-optical characteristics in relation to phytoplankton composition and productivity in the Arctic fjord ecosystem have been highlighted by **Tripathy**.

In the Polar Regions, the present-day Circum-Arctic region comprises a variety of tectonic settings due to varied geophysical conditions: from active seafloor spreading in the North Atlantic and Eurasian Basin, and subduction in the North Pacific, to long-lived stable continental platforms in North America and Asia. A detailed account on the recent advances in seismo-geophysical studies conducted so far for the Arctic region in different tectonic environs has been provided by **Mishra et al.** in a bid to understand the efficacies of various geophysical and seismological tools.

On the contrary, **Luis and Roy** have addressed the impact of climate change on sea ice. They have studied the decadal Arctic Sea-Ice Variability to observe the pattern and its implication to climate change.

As Arctic Science advances, more and more challenging scientific questions will require sustained and continuous observations and measurements in the Arctic regions. It will help us understand the evolution of northern climates. Prediction of future changes can be based only on a full understanding of the Arctic and Antarctic systems.

This book collates recent scientific findings and sights related to the ongoing climate change in and around the Arctic region from the Indian perspective. This book will help satisfy the curiosity; usually, young minds carry. These youngsters and budding researchers will get an insight into the ongoing climate changes taking place over the Arctic region.

Neloy Khare
Date: June 2021
Place: New Delhi

Acknowledgements

Immense supports and help received from all contributing authors are graciously acknowledged; without their valuable inputs on various facets of climate change over the Arctic region, the book would not have been possible. Various learned experts who have reviewed different chapters are sincerely acknowledged for their timely, important, and critical reviews.

I express my sincere thanks to the Ministry of Earth Sciences, Government of India, New Delhi (India) for various inputs, support, and encouragement. Dr M.N. Rajeevan, Secretary, Ministry of Earth Sciences, and Government of India, Dr Arbinda Mitra, Secretary, Office of the Principal Scientific Advisor to Prime Minister, Government of India, New Delhi, and Prof Govardhan Mehta, FRS have always been the source of inspiration and are acknowledged for their kind support. Dr Vipin Chandra, Joint Secretary to Government of India at Ministry of Earth Sciences, New Delhi (India), Dr Prem Chan Pandey, former Director, National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research, Goa (India) and Dr K.J. Ramesh, former Director-General, India Meteorological Department (IMD), New Delhi (India) have always been supportive as true well-wishers. Prof Anil Kumar Gupta, Indian Institute of Technology, Kharagpur (India) and Dr Rajiv Nigam, former Adviser at the National Institute of Oceanography, Goa (India) are deeply acknowledged for providing many valuable suggestions to this book. This book has received significant support from Akshat Khare and Ashmit Khare who have helped me during the book preparation. Dr Rajni Khare has unconditionally supported enormously during various stages of this book. Dr Shabnam Choudhary and Shri Hari Dass Sharma from the Ministry of Earth Sciences, New Delhi (India) have helped immensely in formatting the text and figures of this book, and they have brought the book to its present form. The publisher Taylor and Francis has done a commendable job and is sincerely acknowledged.

Neloy Khare
Date: June 2021
Place: New Delhi

Editor

Dr Neloy Khare, presently Adviser/Scientist G to the Government of India at MoES, has a unique understanding not only of administration but also of quality science and research in his areas of expertise covering a large spectrum of geographically distinct locations like Antarctic, Arctic, Southern Ocean, Bay of Bengal, Arabian Sea, Indian Ocean, etc. Dr Khare has almost 30 years of experience in the field of paleoclimate research using palaeobiology and palaeontology/teaching/science management/administration/coordination for scientific programmes (including Indian Polar Programme). Dr Khare has completed his doctorate (Ph.D.) in tropical marine region and Doctor of Science (D.Sc.) in southern high-latitude marine regions.

Dr Khare has been conferred Honorary Professor and Adjunct Professor by many Indian universities. He has an awe-inspiring list of publications to his credit (125 research articles in national and international scientific journals; three special issues in national scientific journals as Guest Editor; edited a special issue of *Polar Sciences* as its Managing Editor). The Government of India and many professional bodies have bestowed him with many prestigious awards for his humble scientific contributions to past climate changes/oceanography/polar science and southern oceanography. The most coveted award is the Rajiv Gandhi National Award – 2013 conferred by the Honourable President of India. Others include ISCA Young Scientist Award, Boys Cast Fellowship, CIES French Fellowship, Krishnan Gold Medal, Best Scientist Award, Eminent Scientist Award, ISCA Platinum Jubilee Lecture, and IGU Fellowship. Dr Khare has made tremendous efforts to popularise ocean science and polar science across the country by delivering many invited lectures, giving radio talks, and publishing popular science articles. Many books authored/edited on thematic topics and published by reputed international publishers are testimony to his commitment to popularise science among the masses.

Dr Khare has sailed in the Arctic Ocean as a part of ‘Science PUB’ in 2008 during the International Polar Year campaign for scientific exploration and became the first Indian to sail in the Arctic Ocean.

Contributors

Priyanka Babel
Department of Biotechnology
Mohanlal Sukhadia University
Udaipur, Rajasthan

Purushottam Bhawre
Department of Physics
Govt. Sanjay Gandhi P.G. College
Ganjbasoda, India

Kailash Chandra
Protozoology Section
Zoological Survey of India
Kolkata, India

Shabnam Choudhary
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

Suryanshu Choudhary
Department of Physics
Rabindranath Tagore University
Raisen, India

Tara Megan Da Lima Leitao
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

P.C.S. Devara
Centre of Excellence in Ocean-Atmospheric Science and Technology and
Environmental Science and Health
Amity University Haryana (AUH)
Gurugram, India

Chetan Anand Dubey
Centre of Advanced Study in Geology
University of Lucknow
Lucknow, India

Rajesh Kumar Dubey
UGC-Human Resource Development Centre
JNV University Jodhpur
Rajasthan, India

Gopikrishna VG
School of Environmental Sciences
Mahatma Gandhi University
Kerala, India

Anu Gopinath
Department of Aquatic Environment Management
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Kochi, India

A.K. Gwal
Department of Physics
Rabindranath Tagore University
Raisen, India

Kannan VM
School of Environmental Sciences
Mahatma Gandhi University
Kerala, India

Neloy Khare
Ministry of Earth Sciences
Govt. of India
New Delhi, India

Krishnan KP
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

Alvarinho Luis
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

R.S. Maheskumar
Ministry of Earth Sciences
Govt. of India
New Delhi, India

G. Meena
High Altitude Cloud Physics Laboratory
Indian Institute of Tropical Meteorology
Pune, India

O.P. Mishra
National Centre for Seismology
New Delhi

A.A. Mohamed Hatha
Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry, School of Marine Sciences
Cochin University of Science and Technology
Kochi, Kerala

Mahesh Mohan
School of Environmental Sciences
International Centre for Polar Studies
Mahatma Gandhi University
Kerala, India

G N Nayak
Marine Sciences, School of Earth, Ocean and Atmospheric Sciences
Goa University
Goa, India

G. Pandithurai
High Altitude Cloud Physics Laboratory
Indian Institute of Tropical Meteorology
Pune, India

Haritha Prasad
Protozoology Section
Zoological Survey of India
Kolkata, India

Priya Singh
National Centre for Seismology
New Delhi

Jasmine Purushothaman
Protozoology Section
Zoological Survey of India
Kolkata, India

Rasik Ravindra
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research (Formerly)
Goa, India

Neelakshi Roy
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

and

Centre of Excellence for Natural Resources Data Management System, Department of Remote Sensing and GIS
Kumaun University
Almora, India

P.D. Safai
Cloud-Aerosol Interaction and Precipitation Enhancement EXperiment
Indian Institute of Tropical Meteorology
Pune, India

S.K. Saha
High Altitude Cloud Physics Laboratory
Indian Institute of Tropical Meteorology
Pune, India

Aswathy Shaji
School of Ocean Science and Technology
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Kochi, India

Anoop Kumar Singh
Centre of Advanced Study in Geology
University of Lucknow
Lucknow, India

Dhruv Sen Singh
Centre of Advanced Study in Geology
University of Lucknow
Lucknow, India

S.M. Sonbawne
High Altitude Cloud Physics Laboratory
Indian Institute of Tropical Meteorology
Pune, India

Sunitha Devi S
India Meteorological Department
New Delhi, India

Anoop Kumar Tiwari
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

Sarat Chandra Tripathy
National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
Goa, India

Abbreviation List

A.O.	Arctic Ocean
AAS	Atomic absorption spectrometry
ABL	Atmospheric boundary layer
AMDEs	Atmospheric mercury depletion events
AMAP	Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme
ANOVA	Analysis of variance
AQUA-GAPS	Global aquatic passive sampling
ASE	Accelerated solvent extraction
ATOS	Antarctic Tourism Opportunity Spectrum
BDL	Below the detection limit
BSTFA	N,O-Bis(trimethylsilyl)trifluoroacetamide
BTBPE	1,2-Bis(2,4,6-tribromophenoxy)ethane
BWP	Brake wear plastics
CA	California
CAA	Canadian Arctic Archipelago
CEC	Capillary electro-chromatography
CFCs	Chlorofluorocarbons
CG	Congeners in the gas phase
CUPs	Current-use pesticides
CVAFS	Cold vapour atomic fluorescence spectrometry
D.M.	Diabetes mellitus
DB_XLB	Type of GC column
DB-5	Type of GC column
DBA	Dibromoanisole
DCM	Dichloromethane
DDC-CO	Dechlorane plus
DDE	Dichlorodiphenyldichloroethylene
DDT	Dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane
DF	Detection frequency
DOC	Dissolved organic carbon
DPTE	2,3-Dibromopropyl-2,4,6-tribromophenyl ether
ECD	Electron capture detection
EDGARv4.tox2	Emission Database for Global Atmospheric Research v4.tox2
ENV	SPE Cartridge Bond Elut-ENV for extraction of polar residues
ESSO	Earth System Science Organisation
Et-FOSA	N-Ethyl perfluorooctane sulphonamide
Et-FOSEs	Ethyl perfluorooctane sulphonamido ethanols
ETHeBB	2-Ethyl-1-hexyl-2,3,4,5-tetrabromobenzoate
EVA	Ethylene-vinyl acetate copolymer
FLD	Fluorescence detection
FOSAs	Perfluorooctane sulphonamides
FTAs	Fluorotelomer acrylates

FTIR	Fourier transform infra-red spectrometry
FTOHs	Fluorotelomer alcohols
G.C.	Greenland Current
GC-MS or GC/MS	Gas chromatography-mass spectrometer
GEM	Gaseous elemental mercury
GFFs or GF/Fs	Glass fibre filters
GOM	Gaseous oxidized mercury
GRAHM	Global/Regional Atmospheric Heavy Metals
HBB	Hexabromobenzene 2,3-dibromopropyl-2,4,6-tribromophenyl ether
HCBs	Hexachlorobenzenes
HCH	Hexachlorocyclohexanes; Hexachlorocyclohexane
HDPE	High-density polypropylene
HFRs	Halogenated flame retardants
HNPs	Halogenated natural products
HP/H.P.	Hewlett Packard
HPLC	High-performance liquid chromatography
HS-SPME	Headspace solid-phase microextraction
HVS	High-volume samplers
HYSPLIT	Hybrid Single-Particle Lagrangian Integrated Trajectory
ICP/OES	Inductively coupled plasma - optical emission spectrometry
ICP-AES	Inductively coupled plasma atomic emission spectrometry
L/minute	Litre per minute
LCCP	Long-chain chlorinated paraffins
LDPE	Low-density polyethylene
LOD	Loss on drying
LRAT	Long-range atmospheric transport
LVS	Low-volume sampler
MCCP	Medium-chain chlorinated paraffins
Me-FBSA	N-Methyl perfluorobutane sulphonamide
Me-FBSE	N-Methyl perfluorobutane sulphonamidoethanol
Me-FOSA	N-Methyl perfluorooctane sulphonamide
Me-FOSEs	Methyl perfluorooctane sulphonamido ethanols
MeHg	Methylmercury
MEKC	Micellar electrokinetic chromatography
merB, hgcA	Methylation genes and analogues
Mg/a1	Penetration of light/penetration depth unit
MMHG or MMHg	Monomethyl mercury
MoES	Ministry of Earth Sciences
MPs	Microplastics
MSD	Mass spectrometer detector
MSD GC-ECNI-MS	Mass spectrometer detector gas chromatography with electron capture negative ion mass spectrometry
NBFRs	New/novel brominated flame retardants

NCP	Northern Contaminants Programme
NCPOR	National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research
NEEM	North Greenland Eemian Ice Drilling
NIC	Nippon Instruments Corporation
NILU	Norwegian Institute for Air Research
NU	Nunavut
OBPs	Organo-brominated pesticides
OCPs	Organo-chlorinated pesticides
OCS	Oxidation of carbonyl sulphide
ODE	Ozone depletion events
–OH	Hydroxyl functional group
PAD-3	Type of polymer resin cartridge
PAHs	Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons
PBBz	Pentabromobenzene
PBDEs	Polybrominated diphenyl ethers
PBM	Particulate bromine mercury
PBT	Pentabromotoluene
PCBs	Polychlorinated biphenyls
PCDD/Fs	Polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins and furans
PCI	Positive chemical ionization
PDM	Pic du Midi
PFAAs	Perfluoroalkyl acids
PFAS	Polyfluoroalkyl substance
PFBA	Perfluorobutyrate; Perfluorobutanoic acid
PFBS	Perfluorobutanesulphonic acid
PFCAs	Perfluorinated carboxylates
PFHxA	Perfluorohexanoic acid
PFHxS	Perfluorohexanesulphonic acid
PFOA	Perfluorooctanoic acid
PFOS	Perfluorooctanesulphonic acid
PFRs	Organophosphorus flame retardants
PFSAs	Perfluoroalkyl sulphonic acids
PFTE	Polytetrafluoroethylene
pH	Potential of hydrogen
PL	Pacific Mode Layer
PML	Polar mixed layer
POPs	Persistent organic pollutants
PPE	Polypropylene
PUFs	Polyurethane foams
QM-A	High-purity grade for particulate matter 10 sampling and analysis
RGM	Reactive gaseous mercury
SBSE	Stir bar sorptive extraction
SCCP	Short chain chlorinated paraffins
SFC	Supercritical fluid chromatography

SIM	Selected ion monitoring
SOAs	Secondary organic aerosols
SOM	Soil organic matter
SPE	Solid-phase extraction
SPSS	Statistical software
SVOCs	Semi-volatile organic compounds
TBA	Tribromoanisole
TBPH	Bis(2-ethyl-1-hexyl) tetrabromophthalate
TCMX	2,4,5,6-Tetrachloro-m-xylene
TGM	Total gaseous mercury
THg	Total mercury
TLC	Thin-layer chromatography
TMS	Trimethylsilyl
TWP	Tyre wear plastics
USEPA	United States Environmental Protection Agency
UV	Ultraviolet
XAD	Adsorbent resin for dioxins and furans

1 Climate Change Assessment over the Arctic Region

Initiatives through Indian Polar Programme

Neloy Khare
Ministry of Earth Sciences

CONTENTS

The Arctic Ocean, surrounding the North Pole, which consists of a large ocean surrounded by land, is like no other ocean on earth because of its unique location and climate. It is the region above the Arctic Circle (at approximately 66° 34′N). The sun does not set on the *summer solstice* and does not rise on the *winter solstice* above the Arctic Circle.

DOI: 10.1201/9781003265177-1

The industrial revolution produced an excess of carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gas emissions. The rising temperatures in the Polar regions result in the rapid melting of the glaciers. The glaciers are diminishing from the land, calving off into the sea (http://www.sciencemag.org/news/2013/08/scienceshot). The impact of changing climate over the Arctic region is reflected in the Arctic amplification and reflected by the Arctic Ocean's shrinking sea ice cover in summer. Decrease in the snow cover over land in the Arctic, especially in spring, and glaciers in Alaska, Greenland and northern Canada is retreating. The permafrost, also known as the frozen ground in the Arctic, is thawing due to warming. Scientists began gathering evidence of changes in Arctic climate since the 1980s, which have become much more pronounced. The Arctic is experiencing unprecedented extremes in sea ice, temperature and precipitation, which remained unreported in the historical records and emerged as an enigma of climate mystery. Indubitably global warming has severely impacted the Arctic's climate, with many strange climatic events such as witnessing a rainy season almost equal to India's and up to 10 months without snow.

Since the late 1970s, the sea ice in the Arctic has decreased dramatically. According to National Snow and Ice Data Center, the Arctic summer sea ice extent in September 2012 was a record low, shown (in white) compared to the median summer sea ice extent for 1979–2000 (shown in orange) (Figure 1.1).

Climate change is a reality and has exhibited dramatic patterns across the Arctic (The National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) and its partners – Annual Arctic Report Card – 2019). Some salient findings of this report (https://arctic.noaa.gov/Report-Card/Report-Card-2019) are enumerated below:

- The average annual surface air temperature in the Arctic from October 2018 through August 2019 was the second warmest in the observational record. Satellite recorded the second-lowest Arctic sea ice extent in 2019.

FIGURE 1.1 The Arctic summer sea ice extent measured in 2012 (white outline) compared with the observed changes from 1979 to 2000 (orange outline). In 2013, the Arctic summer sea ice extent rebounded somewhat but was still the sixth smallest extent on record. (Source: National Snow and Ice Data Center)

- The Bering Sea saw record low winter sea ice in 2018 and 2019.
- Birds are being affected, including the breeding population of ivory gull in the Canadian Arctic falling 70% since the 1980s.
- Greenland's ice sheet also experienced rapid melting in 2019, beginning earlier than usual and reaching 95% of the surface.

Arctic's climate changes are significant because the Arctic acts as a barometer of global climate change. Such ongoing changes in the Arctic climate harm the food chain, including phytoplankton and many marine mammals. It includes seals, walrus, whales, and polar bears. Well-known feedback mechanism acting in the Arctic region may lead to further warming. The Arctic *amplified response* to global warming is the repercussion of global temperature rise. Consequently, Greenland's ice sheet is shrinking drastically at an alarming rate (http://news.uga.edu/releases/article/study-2015-melting-greenland-ice-faster-arctic-warming-0616/, Tedesco et al. 2016).

1.1 FEEDBACK MECHANISM AND ARCTIC AMPLIFICATION

Due to sea ice melting in summer, dark open water areas are exposed, absorbing more heat from the sun (Figure 1.2). More ice melts due to excess heat. The sea ice's loss is one of the Arctic amplification drivers (Figure 1.3) (Slivka 2012; Goldenberg 2012). Permafrost may also play a role in positive feedbacks. As the thawing of permafrost starts, plants and animals frozen in the ground begin to decay. Their decomposition releases carbon dioxide and methane back to the atmosphere. It can further induce warming. The shifting Arctic vegetation also affects the surface brightness and adds up to warming. More water vapour is held up due to more warming of the

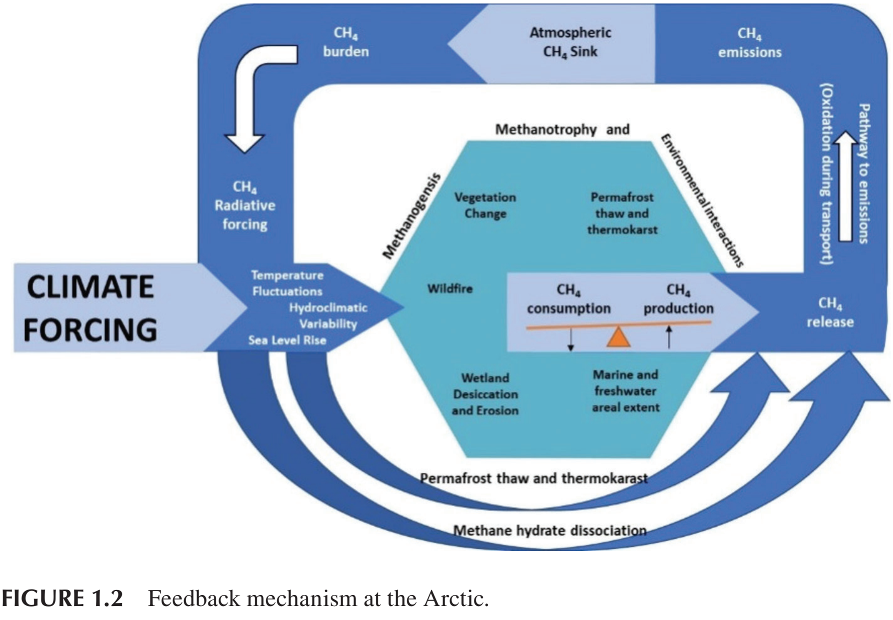


FIGURE 1.2 Feedback mechanism at the Arctic.

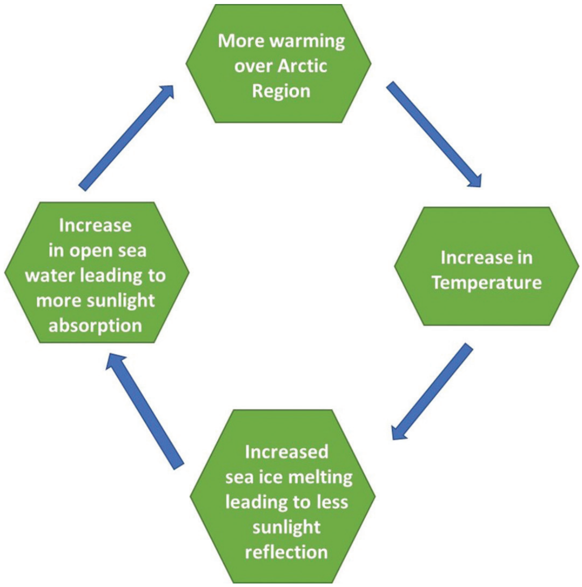


FIGURE 1.3 Arctic amplification.

Arctic atmosphere, which is an important greenhouse gas (Slivka 2012; Goldenberg 2012). In the Arctic, warming is causing further warming in the following manner.

There is no doubt that global warming tends to increase temperatures in the Arctic. It tends to melt ice, decreasing the area covered by sea ice and expanding the scope of darker exposed ocean, which tends to reduce sunlight reflection, as ice is far more reflective than the newly exposed Ocean. It tends to increase the sunlight that is absorbed by the sea. It tends to add to global warming, and the cycle repeats.

Other feedbacks from the loss of Arctic Ocean ice, ranging from a possible slowdown of the so-called "global ocean conveyor belt" to significant shifts in the northern hemisphere's jet stream, could also have severe climatic impacts.

The main consequences of global warming on the Arctic are the increase in temperatures (air and sea), *loss of sea ice* and melting of the *Greenland ice sheet* with a related *cold temperature anomaly*, observed since the 1970s (Foster 2012; Slivka 2012; Goldenberg 2012). Ongoing climate change over the Arctic region is also expected to impact ocean circulation changes, increased input of freshwater (Graeter 2018; Rabe et al. 2011) and ocean acidification (Qi et al. 2017), potential methane releases through the thawing of *permafrost* and methane clathrates (Schuur et al. 2015).

It has also been postulated that due to the potential climate teleconnections to mid-latitudes, these regions are expected to witness a greater frequency of extreme weather events (flooding, fires and drought) (Cohen et al. 2014). It will lead to ecological, biological and phenological changes. Other factors include physical migrations and extinctions (Grebmeier 2012), natural resource stresses, human health, displacement and security issues.

1.2 INDIA AND THE ARCTIC

India's engagement with the Arctic dates back to a century. It was in 1920 when British overseas Dominions signed the Treaty with other signatories like the US, Denmark, France, Italy, Japan, the Netherlands, Norway, Great Britain, Ireland and Sweden concerning Spitsbergen's 'Svalbard Treaty' in February 1920 in Paris.

India has been closely following the Arctic region's developments in the backdrop of the emerging opportunities and challenges due to the global warming-induced melting of the Arctic ice cap. Science, environment, commerce and strategy are the main concerns of India in the Arctic region.

India paved its way in the Arctic by launching a research programme in 2007 to thrust on climate change in the circumpolar north. The primary objectives of the Indian research in Arctic region are as follows:

1. To study the hypothesised teleconnections between the Arctic climate and the Indian monsoon by analysing records archived in the sediment and ice cores from the Arctic glaciers and the Arctic Ocean.
2. To characterise sea ice in the Arctic using satellite data to estimate the effect of global warming on the northern Polar region.
3. To research Arctic glaciers' dynamics and mass budget focusing on the impact of melting glaciers towards sea level changes.
4. To assess the Arctic flora and fauna vis-à-vis their response to anthropogenic activities. Besides, a bi-polar comparison is proposed to be undertaken in life forms.

India launched its first scientific expedition to the Arctic Ocean in 2007. A research base named "Himadri" was established at Ny-Ålesund, Svalbard, Norway, in July 2008 for researching disciplines like glaciology, atmospheric sciences and biological sciences. The area used for the Indian research base is the International Arctic Research Base at Svalbard. A Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) has also been signed with the Norwegian Polar Research Institute of Norway, for cooperation in science, as even with Kings Bay (a company of the Norwegian Government) Ny-Ålesund. It provides logistics and infrastructure facilities for undertaking Arctic research and maintaining the Indian research base 'Himadri' in the Arctic region.

Several scientists from various national institutions have participated in our Arctic programme. India became a member of the Council of the International Arctic Science Committee (IASC) in 2012. India's claim for Observer Status received attention in 2012 with widespread support from all member countries. In recognition of India's commitment and sustained interest in Arctic science, during the Eighth Biennial meeting of the Arctic Council held in Kiruna, Norway on 1 May 2013, under Sweden's Chairmanship, India was provided Observer Status to the Arctic Council.

1.3 BLACK CARBON

In contrast to most atmospheric aerosols, black carbon (BC) aerosols are good candidates for absorbing solar radiation. Due to such absorption, a warming effect on the planet is perceived. On the contrary, other aerosols such as sulphate aerosols provide the cooling effect due to scattering. BC aerosols play a critical role in affecting the climate system by changing and heating the clouds (semi-direct effect) or acting as cloud condensation nuclei (indirect effect). BC aerosols have emerged as third among the most extensive human-generated causes. CO_2 and CH_4, having a present-day radiative forcing of ~0.40 W/m^2 which is ~25% more of the pre-industrial period (Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change 2014).

Despite its importance, only a few modelling studies have addressed BC aerosols' effectiveness in warming the planet relative to CO_2 forcing (e.g. Roberts and Jones 2004; Cook and Highwood 2004; Hansen et al. 2005; Stjern et al. 2017; Smith et al. 2018). The results indicate that the BC aerosols are less effective in warming the earth than CO_2 (Yoshimori and Broccoli 2008). The concept of 'efficacy' to measure forcing agents' effectiveness was introduced by Hansen et al. (2005). The efficacy of BC aerosols emitted by burning of fossil fuel and biomass was 0.930 and 0.80, respectively, when effective radiative forcing (ERF) definition is used to estimate the radiative forcing (Hansen et al. 2005). This cloud enhancement in the lower troposphere dramatically reduces the direct warming effect of the BC aerosols. Stjern et al. (2017) found that multi-model median efficacy of the BC aerosols is less than one (0.80).

The decrease in efficacy with BC aerosols' altitude has been found in some recent studies (Ban-Weiss et al. 2012; Samset and Myhre 2015). Ban-Weiss et al. (2012) showed that near-surface BC aerosols cause warming. On the contrary, when BC aerosols are at heights, the varying climate response from BC aerosols at different sizes arises primarily due to various fast climate adjustments. These are defined as the climate response before any change in the average surface temperature globally (Bala et al. 2010; Ban-Weiss et al. 2012). BC warms the surface through diabatic heating. At heights in increased longwave radiation without heating the body, the absorbed solar radiation is lost to space. We note that the efficacy decreases with the size of BC aerosols. BC aerosols' efficiency to exert more significant radiative forcing due to the direct aerosol effect strengthens with altitude (Samset and Myhre 2011, 2015).

Because of the above, it may be postulated that the in-modulating Arctic Climate BC aerosols play an influential role in further strengthening the feedback mechanism, leading to Arctic amplification, and therefore a detailed investigation on this aspect must be made.

The consequences of the impact of rapid changes in the Arctic region go beyond the coastal states. To respond to such challenges warrants the active participation of all those actors who have a stake in global commons' governance. It requires a legitimate and credible mechanism. The interplay between science and policy can significantly contribute to addressing the complex issues facing the Arctic. India, which has significant expertise in polar research matters due to its long experience of launching annual scientific expeditions to the Antarctic and association with the Antarctic Treaty System, can play a constructive role in securing an influential position in Arctic affairs. As a permanent observer in the Arctic Council, India is committed to contributing to evolve and strengthen the effective cooperative partnerships that can contribute to a safe, stable and secure Arctic.

The warming of the Arctic region has recently gained worldwide attention due to its projected impacts on the global climate system. The effect of anthropogenic BC aerosol on snow is of enduring interest due to its role in aerosol radiative forcing (ARF) and further consequences for the Arctic and global climate changes. Having demonstrated its sincere pursuit of Arctic science ever since the Indian research base is set up at Ny-Ålesund (Svalbard), India has been continuously generating data on BC aerosol over the Arctic region. MoES-Indian Institute of Tropical Meteorology (IITM), Pune (India), participated in the Arctic expedition to study BC over the Himadri research base, Ny-Ålesund. Similarly, CSIR-National Physical Laboratory, New Delhi (India), participated in the Arctic expedition to measure the concentration of carbon monoxide (CO) over the Arctic region to compare it with the CO concentration in the Antarctic area. We discuss here briefly some of the Indian contributions to the assessment of BC and CO in a bid to help understand Arctic climate change and associated amplification vis-à-vis its teleconnection with the tropical countries like India.

1.4 ASSESSMENT OF BLACK CARBON AEROSOLS AND SOLAR RADIATION OVER HIMADRI, NY-ÅLESUND

India ventured into assessing the BC and measuring solar spectral at 'Indian Arctic Station, Himadri', Ny-Ålesund, during 2011–2014. The contribution from long-range transport of pollutants from far-away places is found to dominate the local sources such as emissions from shipping and power plants to the annual cycle with maximum BC mass concentration during winter/early-spring season and minimum during the summer season. Moreover, higher BC concentrations were observed during 2012 as compared to other years during the study period. The aerosol optical depth's (AOD) spectral variations observed during the summer months indicate an immense contribution of fine-mode aerosol particles to the BC mass concentration, particularly during 2012. Further, the zenith skylight spectra in the spectral range of 200–1100 nm indicate maximum particle scattered intensity around 500 nm (Dr. S.M. Sonbawne, personal communication). These results play a vital role in the earth-atmosphere radiation balance and hence exhibit profound influence on regional and global climate changes (Stohl et al. 2013).

Raju et al. (2011) attempted to study the BC radiative forcing over the Indian Arctic Station, Himadri, during the Arctic summer of 2012 by using an aethalometer. Measurements of BC aerosols were carried out continuously over the Indian Arctic Station, Himadri, during the Arctic summer (23 July to 19 August) of 2012. The monthly mean BC mass concentration during July and August was 0.093 ± 0.046 and 0.069 ± 0.050 μg/m^3, respectively. BC mass concentration showed maximum loading during 0800–1600 LT. Transport from distant sources (as observed from air mass back trajectories) apart from some local anthropogenic activities (emissions from shipping and power plants) could be the possible sources for the observed BC concentration at Himadri. Using the OPAC and SBDART models, optical properties and ARF in the spectral range of 0.2–4 μm for composite aerosol and without-BC aerosol at the top of the atmosphere, surface and atmosphere were computed. The presence of BC resulted in positive radiative forcing in the atmosphere leading to a warming effect (+2.1 W/m^2), whereas cooling was observed at the top of the atmosphere (−0.4 W/m^2) and surface (−2.5 W/m^2). BC formed about 57% of atmospheric ARF.

1.5 PRODUCTION OF CARBON MONOXIDE FROM ICE PACKS

Carbon monoxide is the most critical atmospheric gas which is produced due to the combustion of fossil fuel. It is also produced in large amounts by industries and motor vehicles. Carbon monoxide is a poisonous gas that has a short composition in the atmosphere. The hydroxyl radical (OH) gets combined with it chemically and converts it into non-poisonous material. It helps in monitoring the quantity of the hydroxyl compound. Hydroxyl being an oxidiser controls the composition of many greenhouse gases of the atmosphere. Recent studies show that carbon monoxide is continuously produced and liberated in large amounts in glacier areas. Indian scientists also conducted experiments related to carbon monoxide at Indian Research Centre, Maitri, situated in Antarctic Islands. With the help of various experiments, they know about the regular production cycle of carbon monoxide because of regular consideration of solar actinic rays. Consequently, scientists realised that carbon monoxide production is due to a photochemical reaction in Antarctic glaciers (Dr B.C. Arya, personal communication).

It is considered that some organic materials, like formaldehyde (HCHO), that are entrapped in ice crystals are decomposed through photochemical reactions and produced CO. Carbon monoxide, oxygen, nitrogen oxide analyser, solar photometer, portable climate centre, pyrometer, etc. are the main instruments on which experiments are generally conducted in Polar regions.

Indian scientists performed various experiments to produce carbon monoxide from snowpacks and came to know about the regular alterability in carbon monoxide production in Ny-Ålesund in 2008, especially in March and August. Despite all, Indian scientists also measured the concentration of BC, the size, distribution and composition of aerosols, and the amount of water vapour in the atmospheric air of Ny-Ålesund. In the summer of 2008, ozone analyser was used to measure surface ozone concentration (Dr B.C. Arya, personal communication).

Lucknow University, Lucknow, Birbal Sahni Institute of Paleosciences, Lucknow, Jawahar Lal Nehru University, New Delhi, Indian Institute of Technology, Kharagpur, Wadia Institute of Himalayan Geology, Dehradun, and MoES-National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research, Goa, among many others, have participated in the research and contributed to the understanding of climate change in the Arctic regions and its global impacts. Some of the significant Indian initiatives to address climate change issues impacting Arctic regions are detailed below.

1.6 CLIMATE CHANGE AND ARCTIC GLACIERS

Many changes of glaciers of the Arctic have been noticed in previous years. Indian scientists have also shown much interest to get information related to these changes in glaciers. They have studied West Craig, Borger, and Mindralavan Glaciers in this reference.

1.7 GEOMORPHOLOGY AND SEDIMENTOLOGY OF DIVERSIFIED MORPHOLOGICAL ZONES OF GLACIATED TERRAIN OF THE NY-ÅLESUND

Diversified surface processes of the Ny-Ålesund region carve the landscape and exhibit distinguished Arctic's landforms. Many studies are done on climate change using various proxies. Yet, meagre attention has been paid to geomorphological and sedimentological parameters. Sediment characteristics, AMS^{14}C dates and geomorphic features have been used to reconstruct paleoclimate. Based on the landforms and sediments, this region has been classified into five morphological zones: glacial (moraines GL), proglacial (lacustrine deposits LD), outwash plain (sand deposits OWP), fluvial deposits (FD) and coastal cliff (CC). The glacial moraines (GL) suggest devoid of any sedimentary structures and coarse-grained, matrix-supported boulders, and it is composed of unconsolidated, unstratified, massive.

In contrast, OWP, LD, FD and CC are semi-consolidated, stratified, fine-grained layers of sand, silt, and clay with gravels and faint sedimentary structures. CC's and LD's sediments are very poorly sorted, very positively skewed and very leptokurtic, and is comprised of medium to fine sand, silt and clay. The sediment characteristics of various morphological zones' geomorphic features explain that this region was carved and dominated by glaciers (Prof. D.S. Singh, personal communication).

The poorly sorted sediments of all the geomorphological zones explain the depositional environment's fluctuating energy, especially under warm climate at interglacial stages during 44, 27, 12, 10.5 ka BP. It may be inferred that the prevailing environment was not consistent and persistent for an extended period (Schuur et al. 2015).

1.8 QUARTZ GRAIN MICROTEXTURE AND MAGNETIC SUSCEPTIBILITY ASSESSMENT OF THE NY-ÅLESUND REGION

The quartz grain microtexture reveals predominant glacial activities in the top 40 cm of the section, while the middle 40–55 cm part represents some aeolian activities along with glacial signatures. The bottommost part, in addition to glacial markers, exhibits some aqueous evidence as well. The lithology shows medium-grained sand in the upper leg and coarse-grained sand with occasional shell pieces in the lower leg. Angular gravels (2–12 mm) are present throughout with increasing size from top to bottom. Based on the above observations and ^{14}C AMS dates, it can be summarised that after the Last Glacial Maximum (LGM), the pre-Holocene period shows rapid glacial retreat, followed by a warmer period during the early Holocene. Mid- and late Holocene is marked by a predominantly glacial environment characterised by meltwater streams originating from the glaciers and flowing into the fjord. Magnetic susceptibility studies have also been attempted. Four alternate stages of colder and warmer phases have been established (Dr R. Kar, personal communication). Though some similarities among the different climatic phases are discernible between the quartz grain microtexture and magnetic susceptibility studies, they are not entirely compatible, probably due to their different responses to the climatic variations (http://www.sciencemag.org/news/2013/08/scienceshot-arctic-warming-twice-fast-rest-world).

Indubitably, the sea ice is frozen ocean water that grows and melts in the ocean. On the contrary, icebergs, glaciers and ice shelves float in the sea, having originated on the land. Sea ice is typically covered with snow, and Arctic sea ice keeps the Polar regions cool. It also helps modulate and control the global climate. Having a bright surface, 80% of the sunlight that strikes sea ice gets reflected into space. As sea ice melts in the summer, it exposes the dark ocean surface. Therefore, instead of reflecting 80% of the sunlight, the ocean absorbs 90% of the sunlight. Thus, the oceans heat up, and Arctic temperatures rise further.

A slight rise in temperature at the poles leads to still more significant warming over time, thus making the Polar regions the most sensitive areas to a subtle change in earth's climates. Accordingly, both the thickness and extent of the Arctic's summer sea ice have shown a dramatic decline over the past 30 years, consistent with observations of a warming Arctic. The loss of sea ice can also accelerate global warming trends and change climate patterns.

Sea ice extent is a measurement of ocean area where there is at least some sea ice. Usually, scientists define a minimum concentration threshold to mark the ice edge; the most common cut-off is 15%.

The Arctic sea ice extent is focused more closely than other aspects of sea ice because satellites measure the volume more accurately than other measurements, such as thickness. The Arctic's sea ice minimum is considered when the Arctic's sea ice exhibits the lowest areal extent. It occurs at the end of the summer melting season. The Arctic sea ice maximum is regarded as the day of the year when Arctic sea ice reaches its most considerable areal extent. It occurs at the end of the winter cold season.

1.9 REMOTE SENSING OBSERVATIONS AND MODEL REANALYSIS

Applications of remote sensing techniques and modelling have been applied to assess and quantify the Arctic sea ice loss in July–September, with particular attention to September on a daily, monthly, annual and decadal basis.

Coincidently, the 12 lowest extents in the satellite era occurred in the last 12 years. It is attributed to the impacts of land-ocean warming and the northward heat advection into the Arctic Ocean over the past 40 years (1979–2018); actual warming rates have been identified in the Arctic Ocean in the last 40 years. The study demonstrates the linkages of sea ice dynamics to ice drifting and accelerated melting. It occurs due to persistent low pressure and high air-ocean temperatures, supplemented by the coupled ocean-atmospheric forcing (http://news.uga.edu/releases/article/study-2015-melting-greenland-ice-faster-arctic-warming-0616/). The accelerated decline is recorded in the Arctic sea ice extent and sea ice concentration over the past four decades.

The ocean-atmosphere coupled mechanism plays a vital role in the global climate change. Sea ice variability and trends were computed using satellite and model reanalysis measurements for the whole Arctic and each of its nine regions: (i) Seas of Okhotsk and Japan, (ii) the Bering Sea, (iii) Hudson Bay, (iv) the Baffin Bay/Labrador Sea, (v) Gulf of St. Lawrence, (vi) Greenland Sea, (vii) Kara and Barents Seas, (viii) the Arctic Ocean and (ix) Canadian Archipelago. Overall, Arctic sea ice declined in all seasons and on a yearly average basis, although the highest and lowest negative trends were recorded in summer and winter/spring, respectively. The study reveals that the Arctic Ocean, Kara and Barents Seas, the Greenland Sea, and the Baffin Bay region are majorly responsible for the total negative sea ice extent trend in the Arctic (Dr. Avinash Kumar, personal communication). The study demonstrated the interannual and seasonal variabilities of Arctic sea ice and interactions among the atmosphere, ice and ocean (Tedesco et al. 2016).

1.10 ASSESSMENT OF SPATIO-TEMPORAL VARIABILITY OF SNOWMELT ACROSS SVALBARD

Indian researchers have monitored snowmelt over the Svalbard region as significant changes in the interannual variation of Arctic snow and sea ice are connected to the global climate changes using active microwave sensors. These sensors are frequently used to detect surface melting because of their sensitivity to the presence of liquid water in snow/ice. Data of QuikScat, OSCAT, ASCAT, and OSCAT-2 are used to map the annual melt duration and summer melt onset for the Svalbard archipelago. It provides one of the most extended and continuous radar backscatter records to estimate snowmelt onset and melt duration on Svalbard spanning from 2000 to 2017. A single threshold-based model was used to detect snowmelt timing; the threshold was calculated using meteorological data from the human-crewed weather stations. The results capture the timing and extent of melt events caused by warm air temperature and precipitation because of the influx of moist, mild air from the Norwegian and Barents seas. The highest melt duration and earlier melt onset occurred in southernmost and western Svalbard in response to the influence of the warm west Spitsbergen current. Compared to previous studies, we found considerable interannual variability and regional differences. Though the record is short, there is an indication of an increasing trend in total days of melt duration and earlier summer melt onset date possibly linked to the general warming trend (Dr A.J. Luis, personal communication). Climate indices such as Interdecadal Pacific Oscillation and Pacific Decadal Oscillation are well correlated with onset melt and duration across Svalbard. With the reported year-after-year decrease in sea ice cover over the Arctic Ocean, the trend towards longer snowmelt duration inferred from this study is expected to enhance the Arctic amplification (McCarthy 2011).

1.11 ASSESSMENT OF MASS BALANCE OF THE ARCTIC GLACIERS

Prof. A.L. Ramanathan (personal communication) studied the changes in the area from 1993 to 2018 and mass balance of Vestre Broggerbreen glacier, Ny-Ålesund, Arctic from 2011 to 2017. The glaciated area had decreased from 3.96 km^2 in 1993 to 3.57 km^2 in 2018. Its range varied between 0.011 and 0.02 km^2, resulting into a total area loss of 0.39 km^2 (~10% at 0.016 km^2 a-**1**). A comparatively rapid decrease in the glaciated area was found during 1998–2010 (0.02 km^2 a-1), whereas less retreat rate was found in 1993–1998 (0.011 km^2 a-1) and 2010–2018 (0.012 km^2 a-1 13). The Vestre Broggerbreen glacier's mass balance was negative throughout the entire study period (2011–2018). Mass balance ranged between −0.08 (2013–14) and −1.22 m w.e. (2015–2016) with a cumulative mass balance of −4.31 m w.e. (0.016 km^2 a-1). A strong relationship between mass balance and summer temperature was found with $R^2 = 0.97$ at $P < 0.05$ (Rajmund 2007).

1.12 SCIENTIFIC EXPLORATION OF KONGSFJORDEN

Kongsfjorden, an icy archipelago with a length of about 40 km and a width ranging from 5 to 10 km, is a glacial-fjord in the Arctic (Svalbard) which lies in the N-W coast of Spitsbergen, the main island of Svalbard. It is a site where warmer waters of the Atlantic meet the colder waters of the Arctic. An open fjord without a sill is primarily under the influence of the adjacent shelf processes. The Transformed Atlantic Water (TWA) from the west Spitsbergen current and the glacier-melt freshwater at the inner fjord create intense temperature and salinity gradients along the fjord's length. Southerly winds will result in down-welling at the coast. Such winds also hinder the exchange processes that take place between the shelf and the fjord, while the northerly winds will move the TWA water below the upper layer towards the coast. During summer, the meltwater not only stratifies the upper water column but significantly alters the turbidity.

It also impacts the seasonal changes in the biomass of phytoplankton. Thus, any altered interaction between the Atlantic water and the (turbid) meltwaters from tidal glaciers on a seasonal to interannual timescale is likely to affect the fjord's aquatic ecosystem. The long-term changes in the fjord hydrography and sedimentation will affect the benthic ecosystem.

Against the above backdrop of the fjord system's climate sensitivity, India has evolved a multi-institutional programme of long-term monitoring of the Kongsfjorden. It was initiated by the deployment of an ocean-atmosphere mooring system along regular repeat transects. It was designed to measure seasonal physical, chemical and biological parameters to establish a long-term comprehensive data set on physical, chemical, biological and atmospheric measurements. The influence of interaction between the warm Atlantic water and the cold glacial-melt fresh water and their effects on the biological productivity and phytoplankton species composition and diversity within the fjord are equally essential to be addressed.

1.13 DEPLOYMENT OF UNDERWATER MOORED OBSERVATORY IN THE KONGSFJORDEN FJORD

The Kongsfjorden is a natural laboratory. It is ideal for studying Arctic climate variability. Scientists predict that the melting of the Arctic glaciers will trigger patterns of weather and ocean circulations. Such changes could affect the climate of other parts of the world. One of the significant limitations in the logistics has been to reach the location and collect data, especially during the severe Arctic winter. The IndARC observatory is an attempt to overcome this lacuna. Data collected by IndARC would be used for climate modelling studies to understand the Arctic processes that influence Indian monsoons. The IndARC, the country's first underwater moored observatory deployed in the Kongsfjorden fjord, halfway between Norway and the North Pole, represents a significant milestone in India's scientific endeavours in the Arctic region. The engineers and scientists from the MoES-National Centre for Polar and Ocean Research (NCPOR), MoES-National Institute of Ocean Technology (NIOT) and MoES-Indian National Centre for Ocean Information Services (INCOIS) developed the IndARC. It was deployed from *RV Lance*, a research vessel belonging to the Norwegian Polar Institute. The observatory is moored and anchored at a depth of 192 m. It has an array of 10 state-of-the-art oceanographic sensors strategically positioned at various depths in the water. The sensors were programmed to collect real-time data on seawater temperature, salinity, ocean currents and other vital parameters of the fjord (https://ncpor.res.in/).

The correlation between less and more ice in the Arctic is very close to how the monsoon behaves. Just as we know that the *El Nino effect* (hot ocean temperatures in the Equatorial Pacific) is having a global impact on weather patterns, including the Indian monsoon, we learn that the Arctic ice also has a significant effect. The Arctic precipitation and temperatures from June to October hint at the monsoon likely to occur in the coming year. The oscillation in the air creates the western disturbance as it moves over ice and snow in the Arctic. If there is less oscillation, the air will have less moisture, leading to less rainfall in the monsoons.

1.14 EXPLORING TELECONNECTION BETWEEN ARCTIC CLIMATE AND TROPICAL INDIAN MONSOON

The climate change over the Arctic region and North Atlantic shows a mechanistic link with the Indian Summer Monsoon (ISM) during the Holocene. The marine and continental archives of ISM precipitation suggest significant shifts during the Holocene aligned with the Arctic climate over multi-time scales. The ISM strengthened during the Greenlandian (11.7–8.3 kyr BP), showing variable but overall decreasing precipitation during the Northgrippian (8.3–4.2 kyr BP). Synchronicity exists in palaeoclimatic records. It could be due to possible age errors and resolution and proxy response to the changing climate. During the Meghalayan age (4.2 kyr to recent), the Indian subcontinent witnessed a protracted dry event beginning at ~4.2 kyr BP and ended at ~3.4 kyr BP. Other significant events of the Meghalayan age include the Medieval Climate Anomaly (MCA). The Current Warm Period (CWP) showing a strong ISM, interrupted by the Little Ice Age (LIA) – a cold phase with low precipitation in the Indian subcontinent (Prof. A.K. Gupta, personal communication). The millennial-scale variability in the ISM is associated with the Heinrich and Bond events. The cooling in the Arctic sea, ice expansion in the North Atlantic and weakening of the Atlantic overturning meridional oscillations due to high freshwater flux and ice rafting in the North Atlantic caused weak ISM precipitation over the south and southeast Asia (http://www.rivm.nl/en/Documents_and_publications/Common_and_Present/Newsmessages/2016/Documentary_Sea_Blind_on_Dutch_Television).

In conclusion, we may submit that India is striving to obtain deep insight into the climate changes occurring over the Arctic region as its impacts are expected to influence Indian climate. Sustained monitoring and observational network shall be an added advantage to strengthen our understanding of Arctic climate and its teleconnection with Indian monsoons.

REFERENCES

Bala G, Caldeira K and Nemani R 2010 Fast versus slow response in climate change: implications for the global hydrological cycle. *Clim. Dyn.* 35: 423–34.

Ban-Weiss GA, Cao L, Bala G and Caldeira K 2012 Dependence of climate forcing and response on the altitude of black carbon aerosols. *Clim. Dyn.* 38: 897–911.

Cohen J et al. 2014. Recent Arctic amplification and extreme mid-latitude weather (PDF). *Nat. Geosci.* 7 (9): 627–637.

Cook J and Highwood EJ 2004 Climate response to tropospheric absorbing aerosols in an intermediate general-circulation model Q. *J. R. Meteorol. Soc.* 130: 175–91.

Foster JM 2012. From 2 satellites, the big picture on ice melt. New York Times.

Goldenberg S 2012. Greenland ice sheet melted at an unprecedented rate during July. In *The Guardian*. London. Retrieved 4 November 2012.

Graeter KA 2018. Ice core records of west greenland melt and climate forcing. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 45 (C7): 3164–3172.

Grebmeier J 2012. Shifting patterns of life in the pacific arctic and sub-arctic seas. *Ann. Rev. Marine Sci.* 4: 63–78.

Hansen J et al. 2005. Efficacy of climate forcings. *J. Geophys. Res.* 110: 1–45.

McCarthy JJ 2001. *Climate Change 2001: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Qi D et al. 2017. Increase in acidifying water in the western Arctic Ocean. *Nat. Climate Change* 7 (3): 195–199.

Rabe B et al. 2011. An assessment of Arctic Ocean freshwater content changes from the 1990s to the 2006–2008 period. *Deep-Sea Res. Part I* 56 (2): 173.

Rajmund P 2007. Recent air-temperature changes in the Arctic (PDF). *Ann. Glaciol.* 46: 316–324.

Raju MP, Safai PD, Rao PSP, Devara PCS and Budhavant KB 2011. Seasonal characteristics of black carbon aerosols over a high-altitude station in Southwest India. *Atmos. Res.* 100 (1): 103–110.

Roberts DL and Jones A 2004. Climate sensitivity to black carbon aerosol from fossil fuel combustion. *J. Geophys. Res.* 109: D16202.

Samset B H and Myhre G 2011. Vertical dependence of black carbon, sulphate and biomass burning aerosol radiative forcing. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 38: L24802.

Samset BH and Myhre G 2015. Climate response to externally mixed black carbon as a function of altitude. *J. Geophys. Res. Atmos.* 120: 2913–2927.

Schuur EAG et al. 2015. Climate change and the permafrost carbon feedback. *Nature* 520 (7546): 171–179.

Slivka K 2012. Rare burst of melting seen in greenland ice sheet. NYTimes.com. Retrieved 4 November 2012.

Smith CJ et al. 2018. Understanding rapid adjustments to diverse forcing agents. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 45, 12023–12031.

Source: https://arctic.noaa.gov/Report-Card/Report-Card-2019.

Source: https://ncpor.res.in/.

Source: http://news.uga.edu/releases/article/study-2015-melting-greenland-ice-faster-arctic-warming-0616/.

Source: http://www.rivm.nl/en/Documents_and_publications/Common_and_Present/News messages/2016/Documentary_Sea_Blind_on_Dutch_Television.

Source: http://www.sciencemag.org/news/2013/08/scienceshot-arctic-warming-twice-fast-rest-world.

Stjern CW et al. 2017. Rapid adjustments cause weak surface temperature response to increased black carbon concentrations. *J. Geophys. Res. Atmos.* 122: 11462–81.

Stohl A, Klimont Z, Eckhardt S, Kupiainen K, Chevchenko VP, Kopeikin VM, and Novigatsky AN 2013. Black carbon in the Arctic: the underestimated role of gas flaring and residential combustion emissions. *Atmos. Chem. Phys.* 13 (17): 8833–8855.

Tedesco M, Mote T, Fettweis X, Hanna E, Jeyaratnam J, Booth JF, Datta R, and Briggs K, 2016. Arctic cutoff high drives the poleward shift of a new Greenland melting record. *Nat. Commun.* 7: 11723.

Yoshimori M and Broccoli A 2008. Equilibrium response of an atmosphere-mixed layer ocean model to various radiative forcing agents: global and zonal mean response. *J. Clim.* 21: 4399.

Climate Change Assessment over the Arctic Region

Bala G , Caldeira K and Nemani R 2010 Fast versus slow response in climate change: implications for the global hydrological cycle. Clim. Dyn. 35: 423–434.

Ban-Weiss GA , Cao L , Bala G and Caldeira K 2012 Dependence of climate forcing and response on the altitude of black carbon aerosols. Clim. Dyn. 38: 897–911.

Cohen J et al. 2014. Recent Arctic amplification and extreme mid-latitude weather (PDF). Nat. Geosci. 7 (9): 627–637.

Cook J and Highwood EJ 2004 Climate response to tropospheric absorbing aerosols in an intermediate general-circulation model Q. J. R. Meteorol. Soc. 130: 175–191.

Foster JM 2012. From 2 satellites, the big picture on ice melt. New York Times.

Goldenberg S 2012. Greenland ice sheet melted at an unprecedented rate during July. In The Guardian. London. Retrieved 4 November 2012 .

Graeter KA 2018. Ice core records of west greenland melt and climate forcing. Geophys. Res. Lett. 45 (C7): 3164–3172.

Grebmeier J 2012. Shifting patterns of life in the pacific arctic and sub-arctic seas. Ann. Rev. Marine Sci. 4: 63–78.

Hansen J et al. 2005. Efficacy of climate forcings. J. Geophys. Res. 110: 1–45.

McCarthy JJ 2001. Climate Change 2001: Impacts, Adaptation and Vulnerability. Contribution of Working Group II to the Third Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. New York: Cambridge University Press.

Qi D et al. 2017. Increase in acidifying water in the western Arctic Ocean. Nat. Climate Change 7 (3): 195–199.

Rabe B et al. 2011. An assessment of Arctic Ocean freshwater content changes from the 1990s to the 2006–2008 period. Deep-Sea Res. Part I 56 (2): 173.

Rajmund P 2007. Recent air-temperature changes in the Arctic (PDF). Ann. Glaciol. 46: 316–324.

Raju MP , Safai PD , Rao PSP , Devara PCS and Budhavant KB 2011. Seasonal characteristics of black carbon aerosols over a high-altitude station in Southwest India. Atmos. Res. 100 (1): 103–110.

Roberts DL and Jones A 2004. Climate sensitivity to black carbon aerosol from fossil fuel combustion. J. Geophys. Res. 109: D16202.

Samset B H and Myhre G 2011. Vertical dependence of black carbon, sulphate and biomass burning aerosol radiative forcing. Geophys. Res. Lett. 38: L24802.

Samset BH and Myhre G 2015. Climate response to externally mixed black carbon as a function of altitude. J. Geophys. Res. Atmos. 120: 2913–2927.

Schuur EAG et al. 2015. Climate change and the permafrost carbon feedback. Nature 520 (7546): 171–179.

Slivka K 2012. Rare burst of melting seen in greenland ice sheet. NYTimes.com. Retrieved 4 November 2012 .

Smith CJ et al. 2018. Understanding rapid adjustments to diverse forcing agents. Geophys. Res. Lett. 45, 12023–12031.

Source : https://arctic.noaa.gov/Report-Card/Report-Card-2019.

Source : https://ncpor.res.in/.

Source: http://news.uga.edu/releases/article/study-2015-melting-greenland-ice-faster-arctic-warming-0616/.

Source : http://www.rivm.nl/en/Documents_and_publications/Common_and_Present/Newsmessages/2016/Documentary_Sea_Blind_on_Dutch_Television.

Source : http://www.sciencemag.org/news/2013/08/scienceshot-arctic-warming-twice-fast-rest-world.

Stjern CW et al. 2017. Rapid adjustments cause weak surface temperature response to increased black carbon concentrations. J. Geophys. Res. Atmos. 122: 11462–11481.

Stohl A , Klimont Z , Eckhardt S , Kupiainen K , Chevchenko VP , Kopeikin VM , and Novigatsky AN 2013. Black carbon in the Arctic: the underestimated role of gas flaring and residential combustion emissions. *Atmos. Chem. Phys* . 13 (17): 8833–8855.

Tedesco M , Mote T , Fettweis X , Hanna E , Jeyaratnam J , Booth JF , Datta R , and Briggs K , 2016. Arctic cutoff high drives the poleward shift of a new Greenland melting record. *Nat.*

Commun . 7: 11723.
Yoshimori M and Broccoli A 2008. Equilibrium response of an atmosphere-mixed layer ocean model to various radiative forcing agents: global and zonal mean response. J. Clim. 21: 4399.

Arctic Weather and Climate Patterns

J. C. Fyfe , K. von Salzen , N. P. Gillett , V. K. Arora , G. M. Flato , and J. R. McConnell , One hundred years of Arctic surface temperature variation due to anthropogenic influence, Nature Scientific Reports 3, 2013, 2645.
D.-Y. Gong , S.-W. Wang , and J.-H. Zhu , East Asian winter monsoon and Arctic Oscillation, Geophysical Research Letters 28, 2001, 2073–2076, doi: 10.1029/2000GL012311.C.
G. Grunseich and B. Wang , Arctic sea ice patterns driven by the Asian summer monsoon, Journal of Climate 29, 2016, 9097–9112.
L. C. Hamilton and M. Lemcke-Stampone , Arctic warming and your weather: public belief in the connection, International Journal of Climatology 34, 2014, 1723–1728, doi: 10.1002/joc.3796.
IPCC , Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis. Contribution of Working Group I to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change, S. Solomon , D. Qin , M. Manning , Z. Chen , M. Marquis , K. B. Averyt , M. Tignor , and H. L. Miller , eds., Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK and New York, NY, 2007, p. 996.
E. Kalnay , M. Kanamitsu , R. Kistler , W. Collins , D. Deaven , L. S. Gandin , M. Iredell , S. Saha , G. White , J. Woollen , Y. Zhu , M. Chelliah , W. Ebisuzaki , W. Higgins , J. Janowiak , C. Kingste , C. Ropelewski , J. Wang , and A. Leetmaa , The NMC/NCAR 40-year reanalysis project. Bulletin of the American Meteorological Society 77, 1996.
National Snow and Ice Data Center. All About Arctic Climatology and Meteorology https://nsidc.org/cryosphere/arctic-meteorology/.
J. E. Overland and M. Wang , Arctic-midlatitude weather linkages in North America, Polar Science 16, 2018, 1–9.
J. E. Overland and M. Wang , Large-scale atmospheric circulation changes are associated with the recent loss of Arctic sea ice, Tellus 62A, 2010, 1–9, doi: 10.1111/j.1600-0870.2009.00421.x.
J. Overland , J. A. Francis , R. Hall , E. Hanna , S. J. Kim , and T. Vihma , The melting arctic and midlatitude weather patterns: are they connected? Journal of Climate 28(20), 7917–7932. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-14-00822.1.
D. W. Thompson and J. M. Wallace , Regional climate impacts of the Northern Hemisphere annular mode, Science 293, 2001, 85–89, doi: 10.1126/science.1058958.
T. Vihma , Effects of arctic sea ice decline on weather and climate: a review, Surveys in Geophysics 35, 2014, 1175–1214.

Investigation of GPS-Derived Total Electron Content (TEC) and Scintillation Index for Indian Arctic and Antarctic Stations

Aarons, J. , 1982. Global morphology of ionospheric scintillations. Proc. IEEE 70(4), 360–378.
Aarons, J. , Mullen, J. P. , Whitney, H. E. , 1981. UHF scintillation activity over polar latitudes. Geophys. Res. Lett. 8(3), 277–280.
Basler, R. P. , DeWitt, R. N. , 1962. The height of ionospheric irregularities in the auroral zone. J. Geophys. Res. 67, 587–593.
Basu, S. , Basu, S. , Weber, E. J. , Coley, W. R. , 1988. Case study of polar cap scintillation modelling using DE-2 irregularity measurements at 800 km. Radio Sci. 23, 545.
Basu, S. , Valladares, C. , 1999. Global aspects of plasma structures. J. Atmos. Sol. Terr. Phys. 61, 127–139.
Da Rasa, A. V. , Waldman, H. , Bendito, J. , Garriott, O. K. , 1973. The response of the ionospheric electron content to fluctuations in solar activity. J. Atmos. Terr. Phys. 35, 1429–1442.

Feichter, E. , Leitinger, R. , 1997. A 22-year cycle in the F-layer ionisation of the ionosphere. Ann. Geophys. 15, 1015–1027.
Forte, B. , Radicella, S. M. , 2002. A different approach to the analysis of GPS scintillation data. Ann. Geophys. 45(3–4), 551–561.
Kersley, L. , Russell, C. D. , Rice, D. L. , 1995. Phase scintillations and irregularities in the northern polar ionosphere. Radio Sci. 30, 619–629.
Krankowski, A. , Shagimuratov, I. , 2006. Impact of TEC Fluctuations in the Antarctic ionosphere on GPS positioning oczapowski St. 1,10–957. Russ Artif. Satell. 41(1), doi: 10.2478/V10018-007-0005-5.
Lansinger, J. M. , Fremeuw, E. J. , 1967. The scale size of scintillation-producing irregularities in the auroral ionosphere. J. Atmos. Terr. Phys. 29, 1229–1242.
Rino, C. L. , Matthews, S. J. , 1980. On the morphology of auroral zone radio wave scintillation. J. Geophys. Res. 85, 4139.
Rodger, A. S. , Pinnock, M. , Dudney, J. R. , Baker, K. B. , Greenwald, R. A. , 1994. A new mechanism for polar patch formation. J. Geophys. Res. 99, 6425–6436.
Soicher, H. , 1988. Travelling ionospheric disturbances (TIDs) at mid-latitude: solar cycle phase dependence. Radio Sci. 23, 283–291.
Sojka, J. J. , Bowline, M. D. , Schunk, R. W. , Decker, D. T. , Valladares, C. E. , Sheehan, R. , Anderson, D. N. , Heelis, R. A. , 1993. Modelling polar cap F-region patches using time-varying convection. Geophys. Res. Lett. 20(17), 1783–1786.
Tsunoda, R. T. , 1988. High-latitude F-region irregularities: a review and synthesis. Rev. Geophys. 26, 719–760.
Valladares, C. E. , Basu, S. , Buchau, J. , Friis-Christiansen, E. , 1994. Experimental evidence for the formation and entry of patches into the polar cap. Radio Sci. 29, 167–194.
Van Velthoven, P. J. , 1990. Medium-scale irregularities in the ionospheric electron content, Ph.D. Thesis, Technische Universiteit Eindhoven.
Weber, E. J. , Buchau, J. , Moore, J. G. , Sharber, J. R. , Livingston, R. C. , Winningham, J. D. , Reinisch, B. W. , 1984. F-layer ionisation patches in the polar cap. J. Geophys. Res. 89, 1683–1694.
Weber, E. J. , Klobuchar, J. A. , Buchau, J. , Carlson, H. C. , Livingston, R. C. , de la Beaujardiere, O. , McCreday, M. , Moore, J. G. , Bishop, J. G. , 1986. Polar cap F-layer patches: structure and dynamics. J. Geophys. Res. 91, 2121–2129.
Whitney, H. E. , Aarons, J. , Malik, C. , 1969. A proposed index for measuring ionospheric scintillations. Planet. Space Sci. 17, 1069–1073.

Multi-Year Measurements of Black Carbon Aerosols and Solar Radiation over Himadri, Ny-Ålesund

Arnold, S.R. , Law, K.S. , Brock, C.A. et al., 2016. Arctic air pollution: Challenges and opportunities for the next decade. *Elementa: Science of the Anthropocene*, 4, 000104, ISSN 2325-1026.
Babu, S.S. , Chaubey, J.P. , Moorthy, K.K. , Gogoi, M.M. , Kompalli, S.K. , Sreekanth, V. , Bagare, S.P. , Bhatt, B.C. , Gaur, V.K. , Prabhu, T.P. , and Singh, N.S. , 2011. High altitude (~4520 m amsl) measurements of black carbon aerosols over western trans-Himalayas: seasonal heterogeneity and source apportionment. *J. Geophys. Res.* 116, D24201. http://dx.doi.org/10.1029/2011JD016722.
Barrie, L.A. , 1986. Arctic air pollution an overview of current knowledge. Atmospheric Environment. 20, 643–663.
Chambers, J.M. , Cleveland, W.S. , Kleiner, B , and Tukey, P.A. , 1983. Graphical methods for data Analysis. Duxbury Press. Wadsworth & Brooks / Cole Statistics/Probability Series.
Clarke, A.D. and Noone, K.J. , 1985. Soot in Arctic snowpack: A cause for perturbation in radiative transfer. Atmospheric Environment. 19, 2045–2053.
Corbett, J.J. , Lack, J.J. , Winebrake Harder, S. , Silberman, J.A. , and Gold, M. , 2010. Arctic shipping D. A. emissions inventories and future scenarios. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics. 10(19), 9689–9704, doi:10.5194/acp-10-9689-2010.

Croft, B. , Martin, R.V. , Leaitch, W.R. , Tunved, P., Breider, T.J. , D' Andrea, S.D. , and Pierce, J. R. , 2016. Processes controlling the annual cycle of Arctic aerosol number and size distributions. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 16, 3665–3682. www.atmos-chem-phys.net/16/3665/2016/; doi:10.5194/acp-16-3665-2016.

DeAngelo, B.E. , 2011. An assessment of emissions and mitigation options for black carbon for the Arctic Council. Technical report of the Arctic Council Task Force on Short-Lived Climate Forcers. Tromso: Arctic Council.

Deshpande, C.G. and Kamra, A.K. , 2014. Physical properties of the arctic summer aerosol particles in relation to sources at Ny-Ålesund, Svalbard. J. Earth Syst. Sci. 123 (1), 201–212.

Doherty, S.J. , Warren, S.G. , Grenfell, T.C. , Clarke, A.D. , Brandt , and R.E., 2010. Light Absorption from Impurities in Arctic Snow. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 10, 1647–11680.

Draxler, R.R. and Hess, G. D. , 1998. An overview of the HYSPLIT 4 modelling system for trajectories, dispersion and deposition, Aust. Met. Mag. 47, 295–308.

Dubovik, O. , Holben, B. , Eck, T.F. , Smirnov, A. , Kaufman, Y.J. , King, M.D. , Tanré, D. , and Slutsker, I. , 2002. Variability of absorption and optical properties of key aerosol types observed in world wide locations. Atmos. Sci. 59(3), 590–608. http://dx.doi.org/10.1175/1520-0469(2002),059-590:VOAAOP,2.0.CO;2.

Eckhardt, S. , Hermansen, O. , Grythe, H. , Fiebig, M. , Stebel, K. , Cassiani, M. , Baecklund, A. , and Stohl, A. , 2013. The influence of cruise ship emissions on air pollution in Svalbard — a harbinger of a more polluted Arctic? Atmos. Chem. Phys. 13, 8401–8409. http://dx.doi.org/10.5194/acp-13-8401-2013.

Garrett, T.J. , Brattstrom, S. , Sharma, S. , and Worthy D.E.J. , 2011. The role of scavenging in the seasonal transport of black carbon and sulfate to the Arctic. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 38, L16805. doi:10.1029/2011GL048221.

Gogoi, M.M. , Suresh Babu, S. , Krishna Moorthy, K. , Thakur, R.C. , Chaubey, J.P. , and Nair, V.S. 2016. Aerosol black carbon over Svalbard regions of Arctic. Polar Science. 10(2016), 60–70.

Granier, C. , Niemeier, U. , Jungclaus, J.H. , Emmons, L. , Hess, P. , Lamarque, J.F. , Walters, S. , and Brasseur, G. P. , 2006. Ozone pollution from future ship traffic in the Arctic northern passages, *Geophys. Res. Lett.,* 33, L13807. doi:10.1029/2006GL026180.

Hansen, J. , Nazarenko, L. , 2004. Soot climate forcing via snow and ice albedos. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 101(2), 423–428.

Hirdman, D. , Aspmo, K. , Burkhart J.F. , Eckhardt, S. , Sodemann, H. , and Stohl, A. , 2009. Transport of mercury in the Arctic atmosphere: evidence for a spring-time net sink and summer-time source. *Geophys. Res. Lett.* 36, L12814. doi:10.1029/2009GL038345.

Hirdman, D. , et al. 2010. Long-term trends of black carbon and sulphate aerosol in the Arctic: Changes in atmospheric transport and source region emissions. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 10, 9351–9368. doi: 10.5194/acp-10-9351-2010.

Huang, L. , Gong, S.L. , Sharma, S. , Lavoué, D., Jia, C.Q. , 2010b. A trajectory analysis of atmospheric transport of black carbon aerosols to Canadian High Arctic in winter and spring (1990–2005). Atmos. Chem. Phys. Discuss. 10(2), 2221–2244. doi:10.5194/acpd1022212010.

Ikeda, K. , Tanimoto, H. , Sugita, T. , Akiyoshi, H. , Kanaya, Y. , Zhu, C. , and Taketani, F. , 2017. Tagged tracer simulations of black carbon in the Arctic: transport, source contributions, and budget. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 17, 10515–10533. https://doi.org/10.5194/acp-17-10515-2017.

Koch, D. , Schulz, M. , Kinne, S. , McNaughton, C. , Spackman, J.R. , Balkanski, Y. , Bauer, S. , Berntsen, T. , Bond, T.C. , Boucher, O. , Chin, M. , Clarke, A. , De Luca, N. , Dentener, F. , Diehl, T. , Dubovik, O. , Easter, R. , Fahey, D.W. , Feichter, J. , Fillmore, D. , Freitag, S. , Ghan, S. , Ginoux, P. , Gong, S. , Horowitz, L. , Iversen, T. , Kirkevåg, A., Klimont, Z. , Kondo, Y. , Krol, M. , Liu, X. , Miller, R. , Montanaro, V. , Moteki, N. , Myhre, G. , Penner, J.E. , Perlwitz, J. , Pitari, G. , Reddy, S. , Sahu, L. , Sakamoto, H. , Schuster, G. , Schwarz, J.P. , Seland, Ø., Stier, P. , Takegawa, N. , Takemura, T. , Textor, C. , van Aardenne, J.A. , and Zhao, Y. , 2009. Evaluation of black carbon estimations in global aerosol models. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 9, 9001–9026. doi:10.5194/acp-9-9001-2009.

Koch, D. , et al. 2011. Couple aerosol-chemistry-climate twentieth-century transient model investigation: trends in short-lived species and climate responses. J. Clim. 24(11), 2693–2714. doi:10.1175/2011JCLI3582.1.

Lee, D.S. and Co-authors , 2010. Transport impacts on atmosphere and climate: Aviation, Atmospheric Environ. 44(37), 4678–4734, doi:10.1016/j.atmosenv.2009.06.005.

Markowicz, K.M. , Flatau, P.J. , Kardas, A.E. , Remiszewska, J. , Stelmaszczyk, K. , Woeste, L. , 2008. Ceilometer retrieval of the boundary layer vertical aerosol extinction structure. J. Atmos. Ocean. Technol. 25(6), 928–944, http://dx.doi.org/10.1175/2007JTECHA1016.1.
Mazzola, M. , Stone, R.S. , Herber, A. , Tomasi, C. , Lupi, A. , Vitale, V. , Lanconelli, C. , Toledano, C. , Cachorro, V.E. , O'Neill, N.T. , Shiobara, M. , Aaltonen, V. , Stebel, K. , Zielinski, T. , Petelski, T. , Ortiz de Galisteo, J.P. , Torres, B. , Berjon, A. , Goloub, P. , Li, Z. , Blarel, L. , Abboud, I. , Cuevas, E. , Stock, M. , Schulz, K.-H., and Virkkula, A. , 2012. Evaluation of sun photometer capabilities for retrievals of aerosol optical depth at high latitudes: the POLAR-AOD inter comparison campaigns. Atmos. Environ. 52, 4–17. http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.atmosenv.2011.07.042.
Meena, G.S. , Londhe, A.L. , Bhosale, C.S. , and Jadhav, D.B. , 2009. Remote sensing 'ground-based automatic UV/Visible spectrometer' for the study of atmospheric trace gases. Int. Jr. Remote Sensing. 30(21), 5633–5653.
Pfeilsticker, K. , Erle, F. , and Platt, U. , 1997. Absorption of solar radiation by atmospheric O4. J. Atmos. Sci. 54, 933–939.
Quinn, P.K. , Stohl, A. , Arneth, A. , Berntsen, T. , Burkhart, J. F., Christensen, J. , Flanner, M. , Kupiainen, K. , Lihavainen, H. , Shepherd, M. , Shevchenko, V. , Skov H. , and Vestreng V. , 2011. The Impact of Black Carbon on Arctic Climate. Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP), Oslo, 72 pp., ISBN-978-82-7971-069-1.
Rahul, P.R.C. , Sonbawne, S.M. , and Devara, P.C.S. , 2014. Unusual high values of aerosol optical depth evidenced in the Arctic during summer 2011. Atmos. Environ. 94, 606–615. http://doi:10.1016/j.atmosenv.2014.01.052.
Raju, M.P. , Safai, P.D. , Sonbawne, S. M. , and Naidub, C. V. , 2015. Black carbon radiative forcing over the Indian Arctic station, Himadri during the Arctic Summer of 2012. Atmos. Res. 157(2015), 29–36.
Ramanathan, V. , and Carmichael, G. , 2008. Global and regional climate changes due to black carbon. Nat. Geosci. 1, 221–227. doi:10.1038/ngeo156.
Safai, P.D. , Raju, M.P. , Budhavant, K.B. , Rao, P.S.P. , and Devara, P.C.S. , 2013. Long term studies on characteristics of black carbon aerosols over a tropical urban station Pune, India. *Atmos. Res.,* 132–133, 173–184. http://doi:10.1016/j.atmosres.2013.05.002
Safai, P.D. , Devara, P.C.S. , Raju, M.P. , Vijaykumar, K. , and Rao, P.S.P. , 2014. Relationship between black carbon and associated optical, physical and radiative properties of aerosols over two contrasting environments. Atmos. Res. 149. http://doi:10.1016/j.atmosres.2014.07.006,292-299.
Seung, S.P. , Anthony, D.A. , Hansen, Sung , Y. Cho , 2010. Measurement of real time black carbon for investigating spot loading effects of Aethalometer data. Atmos. Environ. 44(11), 1449–1455.
Sharma, S. , Ishizawa, M. , Chan, D. , Lavoué, D., Andrews, E. , Eleftheriadis, K. , Maksyutov, S. , 2013. 16-year simulation of Arctic black carbon: transport, source contribution, and sensitivity analysis on deposition. J. Geophys. Res. 118, 1–22. http://doi:10.1029/2012JD017774.
Sharma, S. , Lavoué, D. , Cachier, H. , Barrie, L.A. , and Gong S.L. , 2004. Long-term trends of the black carbon concentrations in the Canadian Arctic. *J. Geophys. Res.* 109, D15203. http://doi:10.1029/2003JD004331.
Sharma, S. , Andrews, E. , Barrie, L.A. , Ogren, J.A. , and Lavoué, D. , 2006. Variations and sources of the equivalent black carbon in the high Arctic revealed by long-term observations at Alert and Barrow. J. Geophys. Res. 111, D14208, 2989–12003. http://doi:10.1029/2005JD006581.
Shindell, D.T. et al., 2008. A multi-model assessment of pollution transport to the Arctic. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 8, 5353–5372. doi:10.5194/acp-8-5353-2008.
Solomon, S. , Schmeltekopf, A.Z. , and Sanders, R.W. , 1987. On the interpretation of zenith sky absorption measurements. J. Geophys. Res. 92D, 8311–8319.
Sonbawne, S.M. , Devara, P.C.S. , Rohini, B. , Rahul, P.R.C., Siingh, D. , Fadnavis, S. , Panicker, A.S. and Pandithurai, G. , 2021. Aerosol physico–optical–radiative characterization and classification during summer over Ny-Ålesund, Arctic. Intl. J. Remote Sens., 42(22), 8760–8781, DOI:10.1080/01431161.2021.1987576.
Spackman, J.R. , Gao, R.S. , Neff, W.D. , Schwarz, J.P. , Watts. L.A. , Fahey D.W. , Holloway, J. S. , Ryerson, T.B. , Peischl, J. , and Brock, C.A. , 2010. Aircraft observations of enhancement and depletion of black carbon mass in the springtime Arctic. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 10,

9667–9680, www.atmos-chem-phys.net/10/9667/2010/doi:10.5194/acp-10-9667-2010.
Stohl, A. , 2006. Characteristics of atmospheric transport into the Arctic troposphere. J. Geophys. Res. 111, D11306. doi:10.1029/2005JD006888.
Stohl, A. , Klimont, Z. , Eckhardt, S. , and Kupiainen, K. , 2013. Black carbon in the Arctic: the underestimated role of gas flaring and residential combustion emissions. Atmos. Chem. Phys. 13, 8833–8855. doi:10.5194/acp-13-8833-2013, 2013.
Stone, R.S. , Sharma, S. , Herber, A. , Eleftheriadis, K. , and Nelson, D.W. , 2014. A characterization of Arctic aerosols on the basis of aerosol optical depth and black carbon measurements. Elem.: Sci. Anthropocene 2, 000027 (22 pp). http://dx.doi.org/10.12952/journal.elementa.
Sumit, K. , Devara, P.C.S. , Manoj, M.G. , and Safai P.D. , 2011. Winter aerosol and trace gas characteristics over a high-altitude station in the Western Ghats, India. Atmosfera. 24, 311–328.
Virkkula, A. , Makela, T. , Hillamo, R. , Yli-Yuomi, T., Hirsikko, A. , Hemari, K. , and Koponen, I.K. , 2007. A simple procedure for correcting loading effects of Aethalometer. J. Air Waste Manag Assoc. 57, 1214–1222.
Zielinski, T. , 2004. Studies of aerosol physical properties in coastal areas. Aerosol Sci. Technol. 38(5), 513–524. http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/02786820490466738.
Zielinski, T. , Petelski, T. , Makuch, P. , Strzalkowska, A. , Ponczkowska, A. , Drozdowska, V. , Gutowska, D. , Kowalczyk, J. , Darecki, M. , and Piskozub, J. , 2012. Studies of aerosols advected to coastal areas with use of remote techniques. Acta Geophys. 60(5), 1359–1385. http://dx.doi.org/10.2478/s11600-011-0075-4.

Geomorphology and Landscape Evolution of Ny-Ålesund Region and Its Implication for Tectonics, Svalbard, Arctic

Burbank, D.W. & Anderson, R.S. (2001). Tectonic Geomorphology. Backwell Science.
Comiso, J.C. , Parkinson, C.L. , Gersten, R. , & Stock, L. (2008). Accelerated decline in the Arctic ice cover. Geophysical Research Letters 35(L01703), 6.
Elvevold, S. (2007). Geology of Svalbard. Norwegian Polar Institute, Norway.
Folk, R.L. & Ward, W.C. (1957). Brazos River bar: a study in the significance of grain size parameters. Journal of Sedimentary Petrology 27, 3–26.
Forland, E.J. , Hansee-Bauer, I. , & Nordli, P.O. (1997). Climate statistics and long term series of temperature and precipitation at Svalbard and Jan Mayen, 21/97. Norwegian Meteorological Institute, Oslo, p. 72.
Hagen, J.O. & Liestol, O. (1990). Long-term glacier mass balance investigations in Svalbard 1950–88. Annals of Glaciology 14, 102–106.
Hagen, J.O. (1987). Glacier surge in Svalbard with examples from Usherbreen. Norwegian Journal of Geography 42(4), 203–213.
Hjelle, A. (1993). The Geology of Svalbard. Norwegian Polar Institute, Oslo.
Keller, E.A. & Printer, N. (2002). Active Tectonics: Earthquakes, Uplift, and Landscape (2nd Ed.). Prentice-Hall, New Jersey.
Kumar, D. , Singh, A.K. , Taloor, A.K. & Singh, D.S. (2021a). Recessional Pattern of Thelu and Swetvarn glaciers between 1968 and 2019 Bhagirathi basin, Garhwal Himalaya, India. *Quaternary International* 575–576, 227–235.
Kumar, D. , Singh, A.K. & Singh, D.S. (2021b). Spatio-temporal fluctuations over Chorabari glacier, Garhwal Himalaya, India between 1976 and 2017. *Quaternary International* 575–576, 178–189.
Liestol, O. (1988). The glaciers in the Kongsfjorden area, Spitsbergen. NorskGeografiskTidsskrift 42, 231–238.
Lovell, H. , Benn, D.I. , Lukas, S. , Spagnolo, M. , Cook, S.J. , Swift, D.A. , Clark, C.D. , Yde, J.C. , & Watts, T.P. (2018). Geomorphological investigation of multiphase glacitectonic composite ridge systems in Svalbard. Geomorphology 300, 176–188.
Nuth, C. , Moholdt, G. , Kohler, J. , Hagen, J.O. , & Kaab, A. (2010). Svalbard glacier elevation changes and contribution to sea-level rise. Journal of Geophysical Research 115(1), F01008.

Overpeck, J. , Hughen, K. , Hardy, D. , Bradley, R. , Case, R. , Douglas, M. , Finney, B. , Gajewski, K. , Jacoby, G. , Jennings, A. , Lamoureux, S. , Lasca, A. , MacDonald, G. , Moore, J. , Retelle, M. , Smith, S. , Wolfe, A. , & Zielinski, G. (1997). Arctic environmental change of the last four centuries. Science 278, 1251–1256.
Rigor, I.G. & Wallace, J.M. (2004). Variation in the age of Arctic sea-ice and summer sea ice extent. Geophysical Research Letters 31, L0940.
Serreze, M.C. , Walsh, J.E. , Chapin, F.S. , III, Osterkamp, T. , Dyurgerov, M. , & Romanovsky, V. (2000). Observational evidence of recent change in the northern high-latitude environment. Climate Change 46, 59–207.
Singh, D. S. (2014). Surface processes during flash floods in the glaciated terrain of Kedarnath, Garhwal Himalaya and their role in modifying landforms. Current Science 106(4), 594–597.
Singh, D.S. & Awasthi, A. (2009). Impact of land use and landscape change on the environment. Urban Panorama 8(2), 72–78.
Singh D.S. & Awasthi, A. (2011). Natural hazards in the Ghaghara River area, Ganga Plain, India. Natural Hazards 57, 213–225.
Singh, A.K. , Kumar, D. , Kumar, V. & Singh, D.S. , (2020). Study of temporal response (1976–2019) and associated mass movement event (during 2017) of Meru glacier, Bhagirathi valley, Garhwal Himalaya, India. Quaternary International 565, 12–21.
Singh, D.S. & Mishra, A. (2001). Gangotri Glacier characteristics, retreat and processes of sedimentation in the Bhagirathi valley. Geological Survey of India Special Publication 65(III), 17–20.
Singh, D.S. & Mishra, A. (2002). Role of tributary glaciers on landscape modification in the Gangotri Glacier area, Garhwal Himalaya, India. Current Science 82(5), 101–105.
Singh, D.S. & Ravindra R. (2011a). Geomorphology of the MidreLoven Glacier, Ny-Alesund, Svalbard, Arctic. In Singh, D.S. & Chhabra N.L. (Eds.), Geological Processes and Climate Change (pp. 269–281). Macmillan Publishers India Limited.
Singh, D.S. & Ravindra R. (2011b). Control of glacial and fluvial environments in the Ny-Alesund region, Arctic. Mausam 62(4), 641–646.
Singh, D.S. & Singh, I.B. (2005). Facies architecture of the GandakMegafan, Ganga Plain, India. Journal of Paleontological Society of India 12, 125–140.
Singh, D.S. (2004). Late quaternary morpho-sedimentary processes in the Gangotri Glacier area Garhwal Himalaya, India. Geological Survey of India, Special Publication 80, 97–103.
Singh, D.S. (2013a). Causes of Kedarnath tragedy and human responsibilities. Journal Geological Society of India 82(3), 303–304.
Singh, D.S. (2013b). Snow Melt Ephemeral Streams in the Gangotri Glacier Area, Garhwal Himalaya, India. In Kotlia, B.S. (Ed.), Holocene: Perspectives, Environmental Dynamics and Impact Events (pp. 157–164). NOVA Publisher, USA.
Singh, D.S. , Dubey, C.A. , Kumar, D. , Kumar, P. , & Ravindra, R. (2018). Climate events between 47.5 and 1 ka BP in the Ny-Alesund region's glaciated terrain, Arctic, using geomorphology and sedimentology of diversified morphological zones. Polar Science 18(2018), 123–134.
Singh, D.S. , Dubey, C.A. , Kumar, D. , Vishawakarma, B. , Singh, A.K. , Tripathi, A. , Gautam, P.K. , Bali, R. , Agarwal, K.K. , & Sharma, R. (2019). Monsoon variability and significant climatic events between 25 and 0.05 ka BP using sedimentary parameters in the Gangotri Glacier region, Garhwal Himalaya, India. Quaternary International 507, 148–155.
Singh, D.S. , Tangri, A.K. , Kumar, D. , Dubey, C.A. , & Bali, R. (2017). Pattern of retreat and related morphological zones of Gangotri Glacier, Garhwal Himalaya, India. Quaternary International 444, 172–181.
Singh, V. , Farooqui, A. , Mehrotra, N.C. , Singh, D.S. , Tewari, R. , Jha, N. & Kar, R. (2011). Late Pleistocene and early Holocene climate of Ny-Alesund, Svalbard (Norway): a study based on biological proxies. Journal of Geological Society of India 78(2), 109–116.
Svendsen, J.I. & Mangerud, J. (1997) Holocene glacial and climatic variations on Spitsbergen, Svalbard. Holocene 7, 45–57.
Ukkonen, P. , Arppe, L. , Houmark-Nielsen, M. , Kjaer, K.H. & Karhu, J.A. (2007). MIS 3mammoth remains from Sweden-implications for faunal history, palaeoclimate and glaciations history. Quaternary Science Review 26, 3081–3098.
Wentworth, C.K. (1922). A scale of grade and class terms for clastic sediments. Journal of Geology 30(5), 377–392.

Biogenic Silica Indicator of Paleoproductivity in Lacustrine Sediments of Svalbard, Arctic

Birks HJB , Jones VJ and Rose NL (2004). Recent environmental change and atmospheric contamination on Svalbard as recorded in lake sediments–synthesis and general conclusions. Journal of Paleolimnology 31(4), 531–546.

Birnie J (1990). Holocene environmental change in South Georgia: evidence from lake sediments. Journal of Quaternary Science 5(3), 171–187.

Carter SJ and Colman SM (1994). Biogenic silica in Lake Baikal sediments: results from 1990–1992 American cores. Journal of Great Lakes Research 20(4), 751–760.

Choudhary S (2019). Multiproxy paleoclimate reconstruction from the sediments of high latitude regions. Unpublished PhD. Thesis. Goa University, India.

Choudhary S , Nayak GN and Khare N (2018d). Provenance, processes and productivity through the spatial distribution of the surface sediments from Kongsfjord to Krossfjord system, Svalbard. Journal of Indian Association of Sedimentologists 35(1), 47–56.

Choudhary S , Nayak GN and Khare N (2020). Source, mobility and bioavailability of metals in fjord sediments of Krossfjord and Kongsfjord system, Arctic, Svalbard. Environmental Science and Pollution Research 27, 15130–15148.

Choudhary S , Nayak GN , Tiwari AK and Khare N (2018b). Sediment composition and its effect on productivity in Larsemann Hills, East Antarctica. Arabian Journal of Geosciences 11(15), 416.

Choudhary S , Nayak GN , Tiwari AK and Khare N (2018c). Source, processes and productivity from distribution of surface sediments, Prydz Bay, East Antarctica. Polar Science 18, 63–71.

Choudhary S , Tiwari AK , Nayak GN and Bejugam P (2018a). Sedimentological and geochemical investigations to understand the source of sediments and recent past processes in Schirmacher Oasis, East Antarctica. Polar Science 15, 87–98.

Colman SM , Peck JA , Karabanov EB , Carter SJ , Bradbury JP , King JW and Williams DF (1995). Continental climate response to orbital forcing from biogenic silica records in Lake Baikal. Nature 378, 769–771.

Conley DJ (1998). An inter-laboratory comparison for the measurement of biogenic silica in sediments. Marine Chemistry 63(1), 39–48.

Conley DJ , Schelske CL and Stoermer EF (1993). Modification of the biogeochemical cycle of silica with eutrophication. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 101, 179–192.

Gaillardet J , Dupré B , Louvat P and Allègre CJ (1999). Global silicate weathering and CO2 consumption rates deduced from the chemistry of large rivers. Chemical Geology 159 (1–4), 3–30.

Guilizzoni P , Marchetto A , Lami A , Brauer A , Vigliotti L , Musazzi S , Langone L , Manca M , Lucchini F , Calanchi N and Dinelli E (2006). Records of environmental and climatic changes during the late Holocene from Svalbard: palaeolimnology of Kongressvatnet. Journal of Paleolimnology 36(4), 325–351.

Jiang S , Liu X , Sun J , Yuan L , Sun L and Wang Y (2011). A multi-proxy sediment record of late Holocene and recent climate change from a lake near Ny-Ålesund, Svalbard. Boreas 40(3), 468–480.

Kaplan M.R. , Wolfe AP and Miller GH (2002). Holocene environmental variability in southern Greenland inferred from lake sediments. QuaternaryResearch 58(2), 149–159.

Liu B , Xu H , Lan J , Sheng E , Che S and Zhou X (2014). Biogenic silica contents of Lake Qinghai sediments and their environmental significance. Frontiers of Earth Science 8(4), 573–581.

Mortlock RA and Froelich PN (1989). A simple method for the rapid determination of biogenic opal in pelagic marine sediments. Deep-Sea Research, Part A Oceanography Research Papers 36(9), 1415–1426.

Muller PJ and Schneider R (1993). An automated leaching method for the determination of opal in sediments and particulate matter. Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanography Research Papers 40(3), 425–444.

Rickert D , Schluter M and Wallmann K (2002). Dissolution kinetics of biogenic silica from the water column to the sediments. Geochemica et Cosmochimica Acta 66 (3), 439–455.

Roberts D , Van Ommen TD , McMinn A , Morgan V and Roberts JL (2001). Late-Holocene East Antarctic climate trends from ice-core and lake-sediment proxies. The Holocene 11(1), 117–120.

Schelske CL , Conley DJ , Stoermer EF , Newberry TL and Campbell CD (1986a). Biogenic silica and phosphorus accumulation in sediments as indices of eutrophication in the Laurentian Great Lakes. Hydrobiologia 143, 79–86.
Schelske CL , Stoermer EF , Conley DJ , Robbins JA and Glover R (1983). Early eutrophication in the lower Great Lakes: new evidence from biogenic silica in sediments. Science 222, 320–322.
Shan J , XiaoDong L , Liqiang XU and LiGuang S (2011). The potential application of biogenic silica as an indicator of paleo-primary productivity in East Antarctic lakes. Advances in Polar Science 22(3), 131–142.
Stumm W and Morgan JJ (1970). Aquatic Chemistry: An Introduction Emphasising Chemical Equilibria in Natural Waters. Wiley- Interscience, New York.
Svendsen H , Beszczynska-Moller A , Hagen JO , Lefauconnier B , Tverberg V , Gerland S , BorreOrbaek J , Bischof K , Papucci C , Zajaczkowski M and Azzolini R (2002). The physical environment of Kongsfjorden–Krossfjorden, an Arctic fjord system in Svalbard. Pollution Research 21(1):133–166.
Van Bennekom AJ , Berger GW , Van der Gaast SJ and De Vries RTP (1988). Primary productivity and the silica cycle in the Southern Ocean (Atlantic sector). Palaeogeography, Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology 67(1–2), 19–30.
Wang L , Fan D , Li W , Liao Y , Zhang X , Liu M and Yang Z (2014). Grain-size effect of biogenic silica in the surface sediments of the East China Sea. Continental Shelf Research 81, 29–37.

Role of Persistent Organic Pollutants and Mercury in the Arctic Environment and Indirect Impact on Climate Change

Aboul-Enein, H.Y. , and Ali, I. (2004) Analysis of the chiral pollutants by chromatography. Toxicological & Environmental Chemistry 86: 1–22.
Ademollo, N. , Patrolecco, L. , Rauseo, J. , Nielsen, J. , and Corsolini, S. (2018) Bioaccumulation of nonylphenols and bisphenol A in the Greenland shark Somniosus microcephalus from the Greenland seawaters. Microchemical Journal 136: 106–112.
Amyot, M. , Lean, D.R. , Poissant, L. , and Doyon, M.-R. (2000) Distribution and transformation of elemental mercury in the St. Lawrence River and Lake Ontario. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 57: 155–163.
Ariya, P.A. , Dastroor, A.P. , Amyot, M. , Schroeder, W.H. , Barrie, L. , Anlauf, K. , et al. (2004) The arctic: a sink for mercury. Tellus B: Chemical and Physical Meteorology 56: 397–403.
Balmer, J.E. , Hung, H. , Vorkamp, K. , Letcher, R.J. , and Muir, D.C.G. (2019b) Hexachlorobutadiene (HCBD) contamination in the Arctic environment: a review. Emerging Contaminants 5: 116–122.
Balmer, J.E. , Hung, H. , Yu, Y. , Letcher, R.J. , and Muir, D.C.G. (2019a) Sources and environmental fate of pyrogenic polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) in the Arctic. Emerging Contaminants 5: 128–142.
Barrie, L. , and Hoff, R. (1985) Five years of air chemistry observations in the Canadian Arctic. Atmospheric Environment (1967) 19: 1995–2010.
Barrie, L.A. , Bottenheim, J.W. , Schnell, R.C. , Crutzen, P.J. , and Rasmussen, R.A. (1988) Ozone destruction and photochemical reactions at polar sunrise in the lower Arctic atmosphere. Nature 334: 138–141.
Bartlett, P.W. , Isaksson, E. , and Hermanson, M.H. (2019) 'New' unintentionally produced PCBs in the Arctic. Emerging Contaminants 5: 9–14.
Basu, N. , Scheuhammer, A.M. , Sonne, C. , Letcher, R.J. , Born, E.W. , and Dietz, R. (2009) Is dietary mercury of neurotoxicological concern to wild polar bears (Ursus maritimus)? Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 28: 133.
Becker, S. , Halsall, C.J. , Tych, W. , Kallenborn, R. , Su, Y. , and Hung, H. (2008) Long-term trends in atmospheric concentrations of α- and γ-HCH in the Arctic provide insight into the effects of legislation and climatic fluctuations on contaminant levels. Atmospheric Environment 42: 8225–8233.

Berg, T. , Sekkesæter, S. , Steinnes, E. , Valdal, A.-K. , and Wibetoe, G. (2003) Springtime depletion of mercury in the European Arctic as observed at Svalbard. Science of the Total Environment 304: 43–51.
Bernhoft, A. , Wiig, Ø. , and Utne Skaare, J. (1997) Organochlorines in polar bears (Ursus maritimus) at Svalbard. Environmental Pollution 95: 159–175.
Bidleman, T.F. , Andersson, A. , Jantunen, L.M. , Kucklick, J.R. , Kylin, H. , Letcher, R.J. , et al. (2019) A review of halogenated natural products in arctic, subarctic and Nordic ecosystems. Emerging Contaminants 5: 89–115.
Bidleman, T.F. , Laudon, H. , Nygren, O. , Svanberg, S. , and Tysklind, M. (2017) Chlorinated pesticides and natural brominated anisoles in the air at three northern Baltic stations. Environmental Pollution 225: 381–389.
Binnington, M.J. , Curren, M.S. , Chan, H.M. , and Wania, F. (2016) Balancing the benefits and costs of traditional food substitution by indigenous arctic women of childbearing age: Impacts on the persistent organic pollutant, mercury, and nutrient intakes. Environment International 94: 554–566.
Bloom, N. , and Fitzgerald, W.F. (1988) Determination of volatile mercury species at the picogram level by low-temperature gas chromatography with cold-vapour atomic fluorescence detection. Analytica Chimica Acta 208: 151–161.
Bloom, N. , and Watras, C. (1989) Observations of methylmercury in precipitation. Science of the Total Environment 87: 199–207.
Bodaly, R. , Rudd, J. , Fudge, R. , and Kelly, C. (1993) Mercury concentrations in fish related to the size of remote Canadian Shield lakes. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 50: 980–987.
Bogan, J.A. , and Bourne, W.R.P. (1972) Organochlorine levels in Atlantic seabirds. Nature 240: 358–358.
Borgå, K. , Fisk, A.T. , Hoekstra, P.F. , and Muir, D.C.G. (2004) biological and chemical factors of importance in the bioaccumulation and trophic transfer of persistent organochlorine contaminants in arctic marine food webs. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 23: 2367.
Borgå, K. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , and Skaare, J.U. (2001) Biomagnification of organochlorines along a Barents Seafood chain. Environmental Pollution 113: 187–198.
Bowes, G.W. , and Jonkel, C.J. (1975) Presence and distribution of polychlorinated biphenyls (PCB) in arctic and subarctic marine food chains. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 32: 2111–2123.
Bowman, K.L. , Collins, R.E. , Agather, A.M. , Lamborg, C.H. , Hammerschmidt, C.R. , Kaul, D. , et al. (2020) Distribution of mercury-cycling genes in the Arctic and equatorial Pacific Oceans and their relationship to mercury speciation. Limnology and Oceanography 65.
Braman, R.S. , and Johnson, D.L. (1974) Selective absorption tubes and emission technique for determination of ambient forms of mercury in the air. Environmental Science & Technology 8: 996–1003.
Carlsson, P. , Vrana, B. , Sobotka, J. , Borgå, K. , Bohlin Nizzetto, P. , and Varpe, Ø. (2018) New brominated flame retardants and dechlorane plus in the Arctic: local sources and bioaccumulation potential in the marine benthos. Chemosphere 211: 1193–1202.
Carlsson, P. , Warner, N.A. , Hallanger, I.G. , Herzke, D. , and Kallenborn, R. (2014) Spatial and temporal distribution of chiral pesticides in Calanus spp. from three Arctic fjords. Environmental Pollution 192: 154–161.
Carlsson, P.M. (2013) Selective processes for bioaccumulative up-take of persistent organic pollutants (POPs) in Arctic food webs.
Casida, J.E. , Holmstead, R.L. , Khalifa, S. , Knox, J.R. , Ohsawa, T. , Palmer, K.J. , and Wong, R.Y. (1974) Toxaphene insecticide: a complex biodegradable mixture. Science 183: 520–521.
Chasar, L.C. , Scudder, B.C. , Stewart, A.R. , Bell, A.H. , and Aiken, G.R. (2009) Mercury cycling in stream ecosystems. 3. Trophic dynamics and methylmercury bioaccumulation. Environmental Science & Technology 43: 2733–2739.
Cheng, M.-D. , and Schroeder, W.H. (2000) Potential atmospheric transport pathways for mercury measured in the Canadian high arctic. Journal of Atmospheric Chemistry 35: 101–107.
Chételat, J. , Amyot, M. , Arp, P. , Blais, J.M. , Depew, D. , Emmerton, C.A. , et al. (2015) Mercury in freshwater ecosystems of the Canadian Arctic: recent advances on its cycling and fate. Science of the Total Environment 509–510: 41–66.

Choi, S.-D. , Baek, S.-Y. , Chang, Y.-S. , Wania, F. , Ikonomou, M.G. , Yoon, Y.-J. , et al. (2008) Passive air sampling of polychlorinated biphenyls and organochlorine pesticides at the Korean arctic and antarctic research stations: implications for long-range transport and local pollution. Environmental Science & Technology 42: 7125–7131.

Clarkson, T.W. , Vyas, J.B. , and Ballatori, N. (2007) Mechanisms of mercury disposition in the body. American Journal of Industrial Medicine 50: 757–764.

Connell, D.W. , Miller, G.J. , Mortimer, M.R. , Shaw, G.R. , and Anderson, S.M. (1999) Persistent lipophilic contaminants and other chemical residues in the Southern Hemisphere. Critical Reviews in Environmental Science and Technology 29: 47–82.

Curren, M. S. , Davis, K. , Liang, C. L. , Adlard, B. , Foster, W. G. , Donaldson, S. G. , et al. (2014). Comparing plasma concentrations of persistent organic pollutants and metals in primiparous women from northern and southern Canada. Science of the Total Environment, 479: 306–318.

Curren, M.S. , Liang, C.L. , Davis, K. , Kandola, K. , Brewster, J. , Potyrala, M. , and Chan, H.M. (2015) Assessing determinants of maternal blood concentrations for persistent organic pollutants and metals in the eastern and western Canadian Arctic. Science of the Total Environment 527–528: 150–158.

Dall Osto, M. , Geels, C. , Beddows, D.C.S. , Boertmann, D. , Lange, R. , Nojgaard, J.K. et al. (2018) Regions of open water and melting sea ice drive new particle formation in North East Greenland. Scientific Reports 8: 6109.

Daly, G.L. , and Wania, F. (2004) Simulating the influence of snow on the fate of organic compounds. Environmental Science & Technology 38: 4176–4186.

Dastoor, A. , and Moran, M. (2010) Global/regional atmospheric heavy metals model (GRAHM2005) estimates of atmospheric mercury deposition rates at sites in northern Canada. Air Quality Research Division, Environment Canada.

Dastoor, A. , Ryzhkov, A. , Durnford, D. , Lehnherr, I. , Steffen, A. , and Morrison, H. (2015) Atmospheric mercury in the Canadian Arctic. Part II: Insight from modelling. Science of the Total Environment 509–510: 16–27.

Demuth, N. , and Heumann, K.G. (2001) Validation of methylmercury determinations in aquatic systems by alkyl derivatization methods for GC analysis using ICP-IDMS. Analytical Chemistry 73: 4020–4027.

Derwent, R.G. , and Eggleton, A.E.J. (1981) On the validation of one-dimensional CFC–ozone depletion models. Nature 293: 387–389.

Diamond, M.L. , Bhavsar, S.P. , Helm, P.A. , Stern, G.A. , and Alaee, M. (2005) Fate of organochlorine contaminants in arctic and subarctic lakes estimated by mass balance modelling. Science of the Total Environment 342: 245–259.

Dibb, J.E. , Ziemba, L.D. , Luxford, J. , and Beckman, P. (2010) Bromide and other ions in the snow, firn air, and atmospheric boundary layer at Summit during GSHOX. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 10: 9931–9942.

Dietz, R. , Sonne, C. , Basu, N. , Braune, B. , O'Hara, T. , Letcher, R.J. , et al. (2013) What are the toxicological effects of mercury in arctic biota? Science of the Total Environment 443: 775–790.

DiMento, B.P. , Mason, R.P. , Brooks, S. , and Moore, C. (2019) The impact of sea ice on the air-sea exchange of mercury in the Arctic Ocean. Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 144: 28–38.

Dommergue, A. , Ferrari, C.P. , Gauchard, P.A. , Boutron, C.F. , Poissant, L. , Pilote, M. , et al. (2003) The fate of mercury species in a subarctic snowpack during snowmelt. Geophysical Research Letters 30.

Douglas, T.A. , Sturm, M. , Simpson, W.R. , Brooks, S. , Lindberg, S.E. , and Perovich, D.K. (2005) Elevated mercury measured in snow and frost flowers near-Arctic sea ice leads: elevated mercury near sea ice leads. Geophysical Research Letters 32.

Durnford, D. , Dastoor, A. , Figueras-Nieto, D. , and Ryjkov, A. (2010) Long-range transport of mercury to the Arctic and across Canada. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics Discussions 10: 4673–4717.

Eljarrat, E. , Guerra, P. , and Barceló, D. (2008) Enantiomeric determination of chiral persistent organic pollutants and their metabolites. TrAC Trends in Analytical Chemistry 27: 847–861.

Eriksson, P.G. , Banerjee, S. , Catuneanu, O. , Corcoran, P.L. , Eriksson, K.A. , Hiatt, E.E. , et al. (2013) Secular changes in sedimentation systems and sequence stratigraphy. Gondwana Research 24: 468–489.

Evangeliou, N. , Grythe, H. , Klimont, Z. , Heyes, C. , Eckhardt, S. , Lopez-Aparicio, S. , & Stohl, A. (2020). Atmospheric transport is a major pathway of microplastics to remote regions. Nature Communications, 11(1): 1–11.

Evenset, A. , Carroll, J. , Christensen, G.N. , Kallenborn, R. , Gregor, D. , and Gabrielsen, G.W. (2007a) Seabird guano is an efficient conveyer of persistent organic pollutants (POPs) to arctic lake ecosystems. Environmental Science & Technology 41: 1173–1179.

Evenset, A. , Christensen, G.N. , Carroll, J. , Zaborska, A. , Berger, U. , Herzke, D. , and Gregor, D. (2007b) Historical trends in persistent organic pollutants and metals recorded in sediment from Lake Ellasjøen, Bjørnøya, Norwegian Arctic. Environmental Pollution 146: 196–205.

Evenset, A. , Leknes, H. , Christensen, G.N. , Warner, N. , Remberger, M. , and Gabrielsen, G.W. (2009) Screening of New Contaminants in Samples from the Norwegian Arctic: Silver, Platinum, Sucralose, Bisphenol A, Tetrabrombisphenol A, Siloxanes, Phtalates (DEHP), Phosphororganic Flame Retardants.

Fenstad, A.A. , Jenssen, B.M. , Moe, B. , Hanssen, S.A. , Bingham, C. , Herzke, D. , et al. (2014) DNA double-strand breaks concerning persistent organic pollutants in a fasting seabird. Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety 106: 68–75.

Ferrari, C.P. , Dommergue, A. , Boutron, C.F. , Skov, H. , Goodsite, M. , and Jensen, B. (2004) Nighttime production of elemental gaseous mercury in interstitial air of snow at Station Nord, Greenland. Atmospheric Environment 38: 2727–2735.

Fisk, A. , Hoekstra, P. , Gagnon, J. , Duffe, J. , Norstrom, R. , Hobson, K. , et al. (2003) Influence of habitat, trophic ecology and lipids on, and spatial trends of, organochlorine contaminants in Arctic marine invertebrates. Marine Ecology Progress Series 262: 201–214.

Fox, A. L. , Hughes, E. A. , Trocine, R. P. , Trefry, J. H. , Schonberg, S. V. , McTigue, N. D. , et al. (2014). Mercury in the northeastern Chukchi Sea: Distribution patterns in seawater and sediments and biomagnification in the benthic food web. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography, 102: 56–67.

Frame, G.M. (1997) A collaborative study of 209 PCB congeners and 6 Aroclors on 20 different HRGC columns 2. Semi-quantitative Aroclor congener distributions. Fresenius' Journal of Analytical Chemistry 357: 714–722.

Fu, P. , Kawamura, K. , and Barrie, L.A. (2009a) Photochemical and other sources of organic compounds in the Canadian high Arctic aerosol pollution during winter-spring. Environmental Science & Technology 43: 286–292.

Fu, P. , Kawamura, K. , Chen, J. , and Barrie, L.A. (2009b) Isoprene, monoterpene, and sesquiterpene oxidation products in the high Arctic aerosols during late winter to early summer. Environmental Science & Technology 43: 4022–4028.

Fu, X. , Marusczak, N. , Heimbürger, L.-E. , Sauvage, B. , Gheusi, F. , Prestbo, E.M. , and Sonke, J.E. (2016) Atmospheric mercury speciation dynamics at the high-altitude Pic du Midi observatory, southern France. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 16: 5623–5639.

Gabrielsen, G.W. , Skaare, J.U. , Polder, A. , and Bakken, V. (1995) Chlorinated hydrocarbons in glaucous gulls (Larus hyperboreus) in the southern part of Svalbard. Science of the Total Environment 160–161: 337–346.

Galarneau, E. , Harner, T. , Shoeib, M. , Kozma, M. , and Lane, D. (2006) A preliminary investigation of sorbent-impregnated filters (SIFs) as an alternative to polyurethane foam (PUF) for sampling gas-phase semivolatile organic compounds in the air. Atmospheric Environment 40: 5734–5740.

Galbán-Malagón, C. , Berrojalbiz, N. , Ojeda, M.-J. , and Dachs, J. (2012) The oceanic biological pump modulates the atmospheric transport of persistent organic pollutants to the Arctic. Nature Communications 3: 862.

Gamberg, M. , Chételat, J. , Poulain, A.J. , Zdanowicz, C. , and Zheng, J. (2015) Mercury in the canadian arctic terrestrial environment: an update. Science of the Total Environment 509–510: 28–40.

Gorzelska, K. (1989) Locally generated atmospheric trace metal pollution in Canadian Arctic as reflected by the chemistry of snowpack samples from the MacKenzie delta region. Atmospheric Environment (1967) 23: 2729–2737.

Gouin, T. , and Wania, F. (2007) Time trends of arctic contamination concerning emission history and chemical persistence and partitioning properties. Environmental Science & Technology 41: 5986–5992.

Gustafsson, Ö. , Andersson, P. , Axelman, J. , Bucheli, T.D. , Kömp, P. , McLachlan, M.S. , et al. (2005) Observations of the PCB distribution within and in-between ice, snow, ice-rafted debris, ice-interstitial water, and seawater in the Barents Sea marginal ice zone and the North Pole area. Science of the Total Environment 342: 261–279.
Halbach, K. , Mikkelsen, Ø. , Berg, T. , and Steinnes, E. (2017) The presence of mercury and other trace metals in surface soils in the Norwegian Arctic. Chemosphere 188: 567–574.
Hallanger, I.G. , Ruus, A. , Warner, N.A. , Herzke, D. , Evenset, A. , Schøyen, M. , et al. (2011) Differences between Arctic and Atlantic fjord systems on bioaccumulation of persistent organic pollutants in zooplankton from Svalbard. Science of the Total Environment 409: 2783–2795.
Halsall, C.J. (2004) Investigating the occurrence of persistent organic pollutants (POPs) in the arctic: their atmospheric behaviour and interaction with the seasonal snowpack. Environmental Pollution 128: 163–175.
Halsall, C.J. , Bailey, R. , Stern, G.A. , Barrie, L.A. , Fellin, P. , Muir, D.C.G. , et al. (1998) Multi-year observations of organohalogen pesticides in the Arctic atmosphere. Environmental Pollution 102: 51–62.
Halsall, C.J. , Sweetman, A.J. , Barrie, L.A. , and Jones, K.C. (2001) Modelling the behaviour of PAHs during atmospheric transport from the UK to the Arctic. Atmospheric Environment 35: 255–267.
Hammerschmidt, C.R. , and Fitzgerald, W.F. (2006) Methylmercury in Freshwater Fish Linked to Atmospheric Mercury Deposition. Environmental Science & Technology 40: 7764–7770.
Hansen, J.C. , Tarp, U. , and Bohm, J. (1990) Prenatal exposure to methyl mercury among Greenlandic polar Inuits. Archives of Environmental Health: An International Journal 45: 355–358.
Hansson, K. , Palm Cousins, A. , Brorström-Lundén, E. , and Leppanen, S. (2006) Atmospheric Concentrations in Air and Deposition Fluxes of POPs at Råö and Pallas Trends and Seasonal and Spatial Variations. In.
Hao, Y. , Meng, W. , Li, Y. , Han, X. , Lu, H. , Wang, P. , et al. (2020) Concentrations and distribution of novel brominated flame retardants in the atmosphere and soil of Ny-Ålesund and London Island, Svalbard, Arctic. Journal of Environmental Sciences: S1001074220301790.
Harner, T. , Kylin, H. , Bidleman, T.F. , Halsall, C. , Strachan, W.M. , Barrie, L.A. , and Fellin, P. (1998) Polychlorinated naphthalenes and coplanar polychlorinated biphenyls in Arctic air. Environmental Science & Technology 32: 3257–3265.
Harner, T. , Pozo, K. , Gouin, T. , Macdonald, A.-M. , Hung, H. , Cainey, J. , and Peters, A. (2006) Global pilot study for persistent organic pollutants (POPs) using PUF disk passive air samplers. Environmental Pollution 144: 445–452.
Haugerud, A.J. (2011) Levels and Effects of Organohalogenated Contaminants on Thyroid Hormone Levels in Glaucous Gulls (Larus hyperboreus) from Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. In: Institutt for Biologi.
Helm, P.A. , Bidleman, T.F. , Li, H.H. , and Fellin, P. (2004) Seasonal and Spatial Variation of Polychlorinated Naphthalenes and Non-/Mono-Ortho-Substituted Polychlorinated Biphenyls in Arctic Air. Environmental Science & Technology 38: 5514–5521.
Herbert, B. , Halsall, C. , Jones, K. , and Kallenborn, R. (2006) Field investigation into the diffusion of semi-volatile organic compounds into fresh and aged snow. Atmospheric Environment 40: 1385–1393.
Herger, M. , van Roye, P. , Romney, D.K. , Brinkmann-Chen, S. , Buller, A.R. , and Arnold, F.H. (2016) Synthesis of β-branched tryptophan analogues using an engineered subunit of tryptophan synthase. Journal of the American Chemical Society 138: 8388–8391.
Hoferkamp, L. , Hermanson, M.H. , and Muir, D.C. (2010) Current use pesticides in Arctic media; 2000–2007. Science of the Total Environment 408: 2985–2994.
Holden, A.V. , and Topping, G. (1972) XIV.—Occurrence of Specific Pollutants in Fish in the Forth and Tay Estuaries. Proceedings of the Royal Society of Edinburgh Section B Biology 71: 189–194.
Holdrinet, M.V.H. , Frank, R. , Thomas, R. , and Hetling, L. (1978) Mirex in the sediments of Lake Ontario. Journal of Great Lakes Research 4: 69–74.
Holmes, C.D. , Jacob, D.J. , and Yang, X. (2006) Global lifetime of elemental mercury against oxidation by atomic bromine in the free troposphere. Geophysical Research Letters 33: L20808.
Huang, K. , Fu, J. S. , Prikhodko, V. Y. , Storey, J. M. , Romanov, A. , Hodson, E. L. , et al. (2015). Russian anthropogenic black carbon: Emission reconstruction and Arctic black carbon

simulation. Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres, 120(21): 11–306.
Hung, H. , Blanchard, P. , Halsall, C.J. , Bidleman, T.F. , Stern, G.A. , Fellin, P. , et al. (2005) Temporal and spatial variabilities of atmospheric polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), organochlorine (OC) pesticides and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) in the Canadian Arctic: Results from a decade of monitoring. Science of the Total Environment 342: 119–144.
Hung, H. , Kallenborn, R. , Breivik, K. , Su, Y. , Brorström-Lundén, E. , Olafsdottir, K. , et al. (2010) Atmospheric monitoring of organic pollutants in the Arctic under the Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP): 1993–2006. Science of the Total Environment 408: 2854–2873.
Hung, H. , Katsoyiannis, A.A. , Brorström-Lundén, E. , Olafsdottir, K. , Aas, W. , Breivik, K. , et al. (2016) Temporal trends of Persistent Organic Pollutants (POPs) in arctic air: 20 years of monitoring under the Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP). Environmental Pollution 217: 52–61.
Inoko, M. (1981) Studies on the photochemical decomposition of organomercurials—methylmercury (II) chloride. Environmental Pollution Series B, Chemical and Physical 2: 3–10.
Jia, S. , Wang, Q. , Li, L. , Fang, X. , Shi, Y. , Xu, W. , and Hu, J. (2014) Comparative study on PCDD/F pollution in soil from the Antarctic, Arctic, and Tibetan Plateau. Science of the Total Environment 497–498: 353–359.
Johansen, S.F. (2019) Riverine Inputs of Polychlorinated Biphenyls (PCBs) and Chlorobenzenes to Isfjorden, Svalbard: Implications for Spatial Distribution and Bioavailability. In: Norwegian University of Life Sciences, Ås.
Kalinchuk, V.V. , Mishukov, V.F. , and Astakhov, A.S. (2018) Arctic source for elevated atmospheric mercury (Hg 0) in the western Bering Sea in the summer of 2013. Journal of Environmental Sciences 68: 114–121.
Kallenborn, R. , Hung, H. , and Brorström-Lundén, E. (2015) Atmospheric long-range transport of persistent organic pollutants (POPs) into polar regions. In Comprehensive Analytical Chemistry. Elsevier, pp. 411–432.
Katsoyiannis, A. , and Samara, C. (2004) Persistent organic pollutants (POPs) in the sewage treatment plant of Thessaloniki, northern Greece: occurrence and removal. Water Research 38: 2685–2698.
Ke, H. , Chen, M. , Liu, M. , Chen, M. , Duan, M. , Huang, P. , et al. (2017) Fate of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons from the North Pacific to the Arctic: field measurements and fugacity model simulation. Chemosphere 184: 916–923.
Kelly, B.C. , and Gobas, F.A. (2003) An arctic terrestrial food-chain bioaccumulation model for persistent organic pollutants. Environmental Science & Technology 37: 2966–2974.
Kenny, T. A. (2019). Climate change, contaminants, and country food: collaborating with communities to promote food security in the Arctic. In Predicting Future Oceans. Elsevier, pp. 249–263.
Kirk, J.L. , Lehnherr, I. , Andersson, M. , Braune, B.M. , Chan, L. , Dastoor, A.P. , et al. (2012) Mercury in Arctic marine ecosystems: sources, pathways, and exposure. Environmental Research 119: 64–87.
Konoplev, A.V. , Volkova, E.F. , Kochetkov, A.I. , Pervunina, R.I. , and Samsonov, D.P. (2012) Monitoring of persistent organic pollutants in the ambient air as an element of the implementation of the Stockholm Convention on persistent organic pollutants. Russian Journal of Physical Chemistry B 6: 652–658.
Krata, A.A. , and Vassileva, E. (2019) Cold vapour matrix-independent generation and isotope dilution inductively coupled plasma mass spectrometry for reference measurements of Hg in marine environmental samples. Environmental Science and Pollution Research 26: 22051–22060.
Krey, A. , Kwan, M. , and Chan, H.M. (2012) Mercury speciation in brain tissue of polar bears (Ursus maritimus) from the Canadian Arctic. Environmental Research 114: 24–30.
Kwok, K.Y. , Yamazaki, E. , Yamashita, N. , Taniyasu, S. , Murphy, M.B. , Horii, Y. , et al. (2013) Transport of Perfluoroalkyl substances (PFAS) from an arctic glacier to downstream locations: Implications for sources. Science of the Total Environment 447: 46–55.
Lacerda, L.D. , and Marins, R.V. (1997) Anthropogenic mercury emissions to the atmosphere in Brazil: the impact of gold mining. Journal of Geochemical Exploration 58: 223–229.
Lacorte, S. , Quintana, J. , Tauler, R. , Ventura, F. , Tovar-Sánchez, A. , and Duarte, C.M. (2009) Ultra-trace determination of Persistent Organic Pollutants in Arctic ice using stir bar

sorptive extraction and gas chromatography coupled to mass spectrometry. Journal of Chromatography A 1216: 8581–8589.
LaKind, J.S. , Overpeck, J. , Breysse, P.N. , Backer, L. , Richardson, S.D. , Sobus, J. et al. (2016) Exposure science in an age of rapidly changing climate: challenges and opportunities. Journal of Exposure Science and Environmental Epidemiology 26: 529–538.
Landis, M.S. , Keeler, G.J. , Al-Wali, K.I. , and Stevens, R.K. (2004) Divalent inorganic reactive gaseous mercury emissions from a mercury cell chlor-alkali plant and its impact on the near-field atmospheric dry deposition. Atmospheric Environment 38: 613–622.
Larose, C. , Prestat, E. , Cecillon, S. , Berger, S. , Malandain, C. , Lyon, D. , et al. (2013) Interactions between snow chemistry, mercury inputs and microbial population dynamics in an arctic snowpack. PLoS One 8: e79972.
Lebedev, A.T. , Mazur, D.M. , Polyakova, O.V. , Kosyakov, D.S. , Kozhevnikov, A.Y. , Latkin, T.B. , et al. (2018) Semi volatile organic compounds in the snow of Russian arctic islands: Archipelago Novaya Zemlya. Environmental Pollution 239: 416–427.
Lee, D.-H. , Lind, P.M. , Jacobs, D.R. , Salihovic, S. , van Bavel, B. , and Lind, L. (2011) Polychlorinated biphenyls and organochlorine pesticides in plasma predict development of type 2 diabetes in the elderly: the prospective investigation of the vasculature in uppsala seniors (PIVUS) study. Diabetes Care 34: 1778–1784.
Leermakers, M. , Meuleman, C. , and Baeyens, W. (1995) Mercury speciation in the Scheldt Estuary. Water, Air, & Soil Pollution 80: 641–652.
Leitch, D.R. (2006) Mercury Distribution in Water and Permafrost of the Lower Mackenzie Basin, Their Contribution to the Mercury Contamination in the Beaufort Sea Marine Ecosystem, and Potential Effects of Climate Variation.
Li, Y. , Macdonald, R. , Ma, J. , Hung, H. , and Venkatesh, S. (2004) Historical α-HCH budget in the Arctic Ocean: the Arctic Mass Balance Box Model (AMBBM). Science of the Total Environment 324: 115–139.
Liao, J. , Sihler, H. , Huey, L. G. , Neuman, J. A. , Tanner, D. J. , Friess, U. , et al. (2011). A comparison of Arctic BrO measurements by chemical ionization mass spectrometry and long pathdifferential optical absorption spectroscopy. Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres 116(D14). https://doi.org/10.1029/2010JD014788
Lindberg, S.E. , Brooks, S. , Lin, C.-J. , Scott, K. , Meyers, T. , Chambers, L. , et al. (2001) Water, Air, and Soil Pollution: Focus 1: 295–302.
Lindberg, S.E. , Brooks, S. , Lin, C.-J. , Scott, K.J. , Landis, M.S. , Stevens, R.K. , et al. (2002) Dynamic oxidation of gaseous mercury in the arctic troposphere at polar sunrise. Environmental Science & Technology 36: 1245–1256.
Lohmann, R. , and Muir, D. (2010) Response to comment on “Global Aquatic Sampling (AQUA-GAPS): using passive samplers to monitor POPs in the waters of the world”. Environmental Science & Technology 44: 4386–4386.
Lu, J.Y. , Schroeder, W.H. , Barrie, L.A. , Steffen, A. , Welch, H.E. , Martin, K. , et al. (2001) Magnification of atmospheric mercury deposition to polar regions in springtime: the link to tropospheric ozone depletion chemistry. Geophysical Research Letters 28: 3219–3222.
Lu, J.Y. , Schroeder, W.H. , Berg, T. , Munthe, J. , Schneeberger, D. , and Schaedlich, F. (1998) A device for sampling and determination of total particulate mercury in ambient air. Analytical Chemistry 70: 2403–2408.
Luo, J. , Han, Y. , Zhao, Y. , Huang, Y. , Liu, X. , Tao, S. , et al. (2020) Effect of northern boreal forest fires on PAH fluctuations across the arctic. Environmental Pollution 261: 114186.
Lusher, A. L. , Tirelli, V. , O’Connor, I. , and Officer, R. (2015). Microplastics in Arctic polar waters: the first reported values of particles in surface and sub-surface samples. Scientific Reports, *5* (1): 1–9.
Lydersen, C. , Fisk, A.T. , and Kovacs, K.M. (2016) A review of Greenland shark (Somniosus microcephalus) studies in the Kongsfjorden area, Svalbard Norway. Polar Biology 39: 2169–2178.
Lyman, S.N. , and Jaffe, D.A. (2012) Formation and the fate of oxidized mercury in the upper troposphere and lower stratosphere. Nature Geoscience 5: 114–117.
Ma, J. , Hung, H. , Tian, C. , and Kallenborn, R. (2011) Revolatilization of persistent organic pollutants in the arctic induced by climate change. Nature Climate Change 1: 255–260.
Ma, Y. , Halsall, C.J. , Xie, Z. , Koetke, D. , Mi, W. , Ebinghaus, R. , and Gao, G. (2017) Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in ocean sediments from the North Pacific to the Arctic

Ocean. Environmental Pollution 227: 498–504.
Macdonald, R.W. , Wang, F. , Stern, G. , and Outridge, P. (2008) The overlooked role of the ocean in mercury cycling in the arctic. Marine Pollution Bulletin 56: 1963–1965.
Malehase, T. , Daso, A.P. , and Okonkwo, J.O. (2016) Determination of mercury and its fractionation products in samples from legacy use of mercury amalgam in gold processing in Randfontein, South Africa. Emerging Contaminants 2: 157–165.
Malmquist, C. , Bindler, R. , Renberg, I. , van Bavel, B. , Karlsson, E. , Anderson, N.J. , and Tysklind, M. (2003) Time trends of selected persistent organic pollutants in lake sediments from Greenland. Environmental Science & Technology 37: 4319–4324.
Mangano, M.C. , Sarà, G. , and Corsolini, S. (2017) Monitoring of persistent organic pollutants in the polar regions: knowledge gaps & gluts through evidence mapping. Chemosphere 172: 37–45.
Meng, W. , Wang, P. , Yang, R. , Sun, H. , Matsiko, J. , Wang, D. , et al. (2018) Altitudinal dependence of PCBs and PBDEs in soil along the two sides of Mt. Sygera, southeastern Tibetan Plateau. Scientific Reports 8: 1–7.
Möller, A. , Xie, Z. , Sturm, R. , and Ebinghaus, R. (2010) Large-scale distribution of dechlorane plus in air and seawater from the arctic to Antarctica. Environmental Science & Technology 44: 8977–8982.
Möller, A. , Xie, Z. , Sturm, R. , and Ebinghaus, R. (2011) Polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDEs) and alternative brominated flame retardants in air and seawater of the European arctic. Environmental Pollution 159: 1577–1583.
Monitoring, A. (2014) Trends in Stockholm Convention Persistent Organic Pollutants (POPs) in Arctic Air, Human media and Biota. In: Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP).
Muir, D. , and Lohmann, R. (2013). Water as a new matrix for global assessment of hydrophilic POPs. TrAC Trends in Analytical Chemistry 46: 162–172.
Muir, D. , Zhang, X. , de Wit, C.A. , Vorkamp, K. , and Wilson, S. (2019) Identifying further chemicals of emerging arctic concern based on ‘in silico’ screening of chemical inventories. Emerging Contaminants 5: 201–210.
Muir, D.C.G. , and de Wit, C.A. (2010) Trends of legacy and new persistent organic pollutants in the circumpolar arctic: overview, conclusions, and recommendations. Science of the Total Environment 408: 3044–3051.
Muir, D.C.G. , Wagemann, R. , Hargrave, B.T. , Thomas, D.J. , Peakall, D.B. , and Norstrom, R.J. (1992) Arctic marine ecosystem contamination. Science of the Total Environment 122: 75–134.
Mullins, M.D. , Pochini, C.M. , McCrindle, S. , Romkes, M. , Safe, S.H. , and Safe, L.M. (1984) High-resolution PCB analysis: synthesis and chromatographic properties of all 209 PCB congeners. Environmental Science & Technology 18: 468–476.
Muntean, M. , Janssens-Maenhout, G. , Song, S. , Giang, A. , Selin, N.E. , Zhong, H. , et al. (2018) Evaluating EDGARv4.tox2 speciated mercury emissions ex-post scenarios and their impacts on modelled global and regional wet deposition patterns. Atmospheric Environment 184: 56–68.
Murvoll, K.M. , Skaare, J.U. , Moe, B. , Anderssen, E. , and Jenssen, B.M. (2006) spatial trends and associated biological responses of organochlorines and brominated flame retardants in hatchlings of north Atlantic kittiwakes (Rissa tridactyla). Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 25: 1648.
Oehme, M. , and Stray, H. (1982) Quantitative determination of ultra-traces of chlorinated compounds in high-volume air samples from the Arctic using polyurethane foam as collection medium. Fresenius’ Zeitschrift für Analytische Chemie 311: 665–673.
Ortiz, J.M.C. (2016) Levels of Persistent Organic Pollutants (POPs) and Metals in Breeding Kittiwakes (Rissa tridactyla) from Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. In: Universitat de Barcelona (UB) & the Norwegian University of Science and Technology: 1–46
Overland, J.E. , and Wang, M. (2010) Large-scale atmospheric circulation changes are associated with the recent loss of arctic sea ice. Tellus A: Dynamic Meteorology and Oceanography 62: 1–9.
Pacyna, J. , and Keeler, G.J. (1995) Sources of Mercury in the Arctic. In Mercury as a Global Pollutant. Springer, pp. 621–632.
Pacyna, J. M. , Cousins, I. T. , Halsall, C. , Rautio, A. , Pawlak, J. , Pacyna, E. G. , et al. (2015). Impacts on human health in the Arctic owing to climate-induced changes in contaminant

cycling–The EU ArcRisk project policy outcome. Environmental Science & Policy 50: 200–213.
Pawlak, F. , Kozioł, K. , Ruman, M. , and Polkowska, Z· . (2019) Persistent organic pollutants (POPs) as an indicator of surface water quality in the vicinity of the Polish Polar Station, Horsund. Monatshefte für Chemie - Chemical Monthly 150: 1573–1578.
Pearce, J. , Caracciolo, J. , Greig, R. , Wenzloff, D. , and Steimle Jr, F. (1979) Benthic fauna and heavy metal burdens in marine organisms and sediments of a continental slope dumpsite off the northeast coast of the United States (Deepwater Dumpsite 106). Ambio Special Report 101–104.
Peeken, I. , Bergmann, M. , Gerdts, G. , Katlein, C. , Krumpen, T. , Primpke, S. , and Tekman, M. B. (2018). Microplastics in the Marine Realms of the Arctic with special emphasis on sea ice. Arctic Report Card 2018: 88.
Perron, T. , Chételat, J. , Gunn, J. , Beisner, B.E. , and Amyot, M. (2014) Effects of experimental thermocline and oxycline deepening on methylmercury bioaccumulation in a Canadian shield lake. Environmental Science & Technology 48: 2626–2634.
Pidwirny, M. (2006) Introduction to the Oceans. Retrieved from: http://wwwphysicalgeographynet/fundamentals/8ohtml.
Podar, M. , Gilmour, C.C. , Brandt, C.C. , Soren, A. , Brown, S.D. , Crable, B.R. , et al. (2015) Global prevalence and distribution of genes and microorganisms involved in mercury methylation. Science Advances 1: e1500675.
Pouch, A. , Zaborska, A. , and Pazdro, K. (2017) Concentrations and origin of polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) in sediments of western Spitsbergen fjords (Kongsfjorden, Hornsund, and Adventfjorden). Environmental Monitoring and Assessment 189: 175.
Poulain, A.J. , Garcia, E. , Amyot, M. , Campbell, P.G.C. , and Ariya, P.A. (2007a) Mercury distribution, partitioning and speciation in coastal vs. inland high arctic snow. Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta 71: 3419–3431.
Poulain, A.J. , Garcia, E. , Amyot, M. , Campbell, P.G.C. , Raofie, F. , and Ariya, P.A. (2007b) Biological and chemical redox transformations of mercury in fresh and salt waters of the high arctic during spring and summer. Environmental Science & Technology 41: 1883–1888.
Prather, M.J. , and Watson, R.T. (1990) Stratospheric ozone depletion and future levels of atmospheric chlorine and bromine. Nature 344: 729–734.
Pućko, M. , Stern, G.A. , Burt, A.E. , Jantunen, L.M. , Bidleman, T.F. , Macdonald, R.W. , et al. (2017) Current use pesticide and legacy organochlorine pesticide dynamics at the ocean-sea ice-atmosphere interface in a resolute passage, Canadian arctic, during the winter-summer transition. Science of the Total Environment 580: 1460–1469.
Pućko, M. , Stern, G.A. , Macdonald, R.W. , Barber, D.G. , Rosenberg, B. , and Walkusz, W. (2013) When will α-HCH disappear from the western arctic ocean? Journal of Marine Systems 127: 88–100.
Pućko, M. , Stern, G.A. , Macdonald, R.W. , Jantunen, L.M. , Bidleman, T.F. , Wong, F. , et al. (2015) The delivery of organic contaminants to the arctic food web: why sea ice matters. Science of the Total Environment 506–507: 444–452.
Qiu, C. , and Cai, M. (2010) Ultra trace analysis of 17 organochlorine pesticides in water samples from the Arctic based on the combination of solid-phase extraction and headspace solid-phase microextraction–gas chromatography-electron-capture detector. Journal of chromatography A 1217: 1191–1202.
Radke, L.F. , Friedli, H.R. , and Heikes, B.G. (2007) Atmospheric mercury over the NE Pacific during spring 2002: gradients, residence time, upper troposphere lower stratosphere loss, and long-range transport. Journal of Geophysical Research 112: D19305.
Ramlal, P.S. , Kelly, C.A. , Rudd, J.W.M. , and Furutani, A. (1993) Sites of methyl mercury production in remote Canadian shield. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 50: 972–979.
Rapsomanikis, S. , and Craig, P. (1991) Speciation of mercury and methylmercury compounds in aqueous samples by chromatography-atomic absorption spectrometry after ethylation with sodium tetraethyl borate. Analytica Chimica Acta 248: 563–567.
Ratcliffe, D.A. (1967) Decrease in eggshell weight in certain birds of prey. Nature 215: 208–210.
Ratcliffe, D.A. (1970) Changes attributable to pesticides in egg breakage frequency and eggshell thickness in some British birds. The Journal of Applied Ecology 7: 67.

Rayne, S. , and Forest, K. (2009) Perfluoroalkyl sulfonic and carboxylic acids: a critical review of physicochemical properties, levels and patterns in waters and wastewaters, and treatment methods. Journal of Environmental Science and Health Part A 44: 1145–1199.

Reppas-Chrysovitsinos, E. , Sobek, A. , and MacLeod, M. (2017) Screening-level exposure-based prioritization to identify potential POPs, vPvBs, and planetary boundary threats among Arctic contaminants. Emerging Contaminants 3: 85–94.

Rigét, F. , Bignert, A. , Braune, B. , Stow, J. , and Wilson, S. (2010) Temporal trends of legacy POPs in arctic biota, an update. Science of the Total Environment 408: 2874–2884.

Rotander, A. , van Bavel, B. , Polder, A. , Rigét, F. , Auðunsson, G.A. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , et al. (2012) Polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDEs) in marine mammals from arctic and north Atlantic regions, 1986–2009. Environment International 40: 102–109.

Rowland, F.S. (1990) Stratospheric ozone depletion by chlorofluorocarbons. Ambio 281–292.

Rudels, B. , Muench, R. D. , Gunn, J. , Schauer, U. , and Friedrich, H. J. (2000). Evolution of the Arctic Ocean boundary current north of the Siberian shelves. Journal of Marine Systems 25(1), 77–99.

Sakin, A.E. , Esen, F. , and Tasdemir, Y. (2017) Effects of sampling interval on the passive air sampling of atmospheric PCBs levels. Journal of Environmental Science and Health, Part A 52: 673–679.

Sanei, H. , Outridge, P.M. , Goodarzi, F. , Wang, F. , Armstrong, D. , Warren, K. , and Fishback, L. (2010) Wet deposition mercury fluxes in the Canadian sub-arctic and southern Alberta, measured using an automated precipitation collector adapted to cold regions. Atmospheric Environment 44: 1672–1681.

Savinov, V. , Muir, D.C.G. , Svetochev, V. , Svetocheva, O. , Belikov, S. , Boltunov, A. , et al. (2011) Persistent organic pollutants in ringed seals from the Russian arctic. Science of the Total Environment 409: 2734–2745.

Scheuhammer, A.M. , Meyer, M.W. , Sandheinrich, M.B. , and Murray, M.W. (2007) Effects of environmental methylmercury on the health of wild birds, mammals, and fish. AMBIO: A Journal of the Human Environment 36: 12–19.

Schroeder, W. , Anlauf, K. , Barrie, L. , Steffen, A. , and Lu, J. (1999) Depletion of mercury vapour in the arctic troposphere after polar sunrise. WIT Transactions on Ecology and the Environment 36.

Schroeder, W.H. , Anlauf, K. , Barrie, L. , Lu, J. , Steffen, A. , Schneeberger, D. , and Berg, T. (1998) Arctic springtime depletion of mercury. Nature 394: 331–332.

Schroeder, W.H. , Keeler, G. , Kock, H. , Roussel, P. , Schneeberger, D. , and Schaedlich, F. (1995) International Field Intercomparison of Atmospheric Mercury Measurement Methods. In Mercury as a Global Pollutant. Porcella, D.B. , Huckabee, J.W. , and Wheatley, B. (eds.), Dordrecht: Springer Netherlands, pp. 611–620.

Seki, O. , Kawamura, K. , Bendle, J.A. , Izawa, Y. , Suzuki, I. , Shiraiwa, T. , and Fujii, Y. (2015) Carbonaceous aerosol tracers in ice-cores record multi-decadal climate oscillations. Scientific Reports 5: 14450.

Semkin, R.G. , Mierle, G. , and Neureuther, R.J. (2005) Hydrochemistry and mercury cycling in a high arctic watershed. Science of the Total Environment 342: 199–221.

Shia, R.-L. , Seigneur, C. , Pai, P. , Ko, M. , and Sze, N.D. (1999) Global simulation of atmospheric mercury concentrations and deposition fluxes. Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres 104: 23747–23760.

Shiraiwa, M. , Li, Y. , Tsimpidi, A.P. , Karydis, V.A. , Berkemeier, T. , Pandis, S.N. , et al. (2017a) Global distribution of particle phase state in atmospheric secondary organic aerosols. Nature Communications 8: 1–7.

Shiraiwa, M. , Ueda, K. , Pozzer, A. , Lammel, G. , Kampf, C.J. , Fushimi, A. , et al. (2017b) Aerosol health effects from molecular to global scales. Environmental Science & Technology 51: 13545–13567.

Shrestha, R.A. , Pham, T.D. , and Sillanpää, M. (2009) Effect of ultrasound on removal of persistent organic pollutants (POPs) from different types of soils. Journal of Hazardous Materials 170: 871–875.

Skov, D.S. , Andersen, J. , Olsen, J. , Jacobsen, B. , Knudsen, M. , Jansen, J. , et al. (2020) Constraints from cosmogenic nuclides on the glaciation and erosion history of Dove Bugt, northeast Greenland. Geological Society of America Bulletin 132: 2282–2294.

Skyllberg, U. , Qian, J. , Frech, W. , Xia, K. , and Bleam, W.F. (2003) Distribution of mercury, methyl mercury and organic sulphur species in soil, soil solution and stream of a boreal forest catchment. Biogeochemistry 64: 53–76.

Sobolev, N. , Aksenov, A. , Sorokina, T. , Chashchin, V. , Ellingsen, D.G. , Nieboer, E. , et al. (2019) Essential and non-essential trace elements in fish consumed by indigenous peoples of the European Russian arctic. Environmental Pollution 253: 966–973.

Soerensen, A.L. , Jacob, D.J. , Schartup, A.T. , Fisher, J.A. , Lehnherr, I. , St. Louis, V.L. , et al. (2016) A mass budget for mercury and methylmercury in the arctic ocean: arctic ocean hg and mehg mass budget. Global Biogeochemical Cycles 30: 560–575.

Sonne, C. (2010) Health effects from long-range transported contaminants in arctic top predators: An integrated review based on studies of polar bears and relevant model species. Environment International 36: 461–491.

St. Pierre, K. , St. Louis, V. , Kirk, J. , Lehnherr, I. , Wang, S. , and La Farge, C. (2015) Importance of open marine waters to the enrichment of total mercury and monomethyl mercury in lichens in the Canadian high arctic. Environmental Science & Technology 49: 5930–5938.

Steffen, A. , Bottenheim, J. , Cole, A. , Ebinghaus, R. , Lawson, G. , and Leaitch, W.R. (2014a) Atmospheric mercury speciation and mercury in snow over time at alert, Canada. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 14: 2219–2231.

Steffen, A. , Bottenheim, J. , Cole, A. , Ebinghaus, R. , Lawson, G. , and Leaitch, W. (2014b) Atmospheric mercury speciation and mercury in snow over time at alert, Canada. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 14: 2219.

Steffen, A. , Douglas, T. , Amyot, M. , Ariya, P. , Aspmo, K. , Berg, T. , et al. (2008) A synthesis of atmospheric mercury depletion event chemistry in the atmosphere and snow. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 8: 1445–1482.

Steffen, A. , Lehnherr, I. , Cole, A. , Ariya, P. , Dastoor, A. , Durnford, D. , et al. (2015) Atmospheric mercury in the Canadian arctic. Part I: a review of recent field measurements. Science of the Total Environment 509–510: 3–15.

Steffen, K. , Emery, C.A. , Romiti, M. , Kang, J. , Bizzini, M. , Dvorak, J. , et al. (2013) High adherence to a neuromuscular injury prevention programme (FIFA 11+) improves functional balance and reduces injury risk in Canadian youth female football players: a cluster randomised trial. British Journal of Sports Medicine 47: 794–802.

Stern, G.A. , Halsall, C.J. , Barrie, L.A. , Muir, D.C.G. , Fellin, P. , Rosenberg, B. , et al. (1997) Polychlorinated biphenyls in arctic air. 1. Temporal and spatial trends: 1992−1994. Environmental Science & Technology 31: 3619–3628.

Stohl, A. (2006) Characteristics of atmospheric transport into the arctic troposphere. Journal of Geophysical Research 111: D11306.

Štrok, M. , Baya, P.A. , Dietrich, D. , Dimock, B. , and Hintelmann, H. (2019) Mercury speciation and mercury stable isotope composition in sediments from the Canadian arctic archipelago. Science of the Total Environment 671: 655–665.

Su, Y. , Hung, H. , Blanchard, P. , Patton, G.W. , Kallenborn, R. , Konoplev, A. , et al. (2008) A circumpolar perspective of atmospheric organochlorine pesticides (OCPs): results from six arctic monitoring stations in 2000–2003. Atmospheric Environment 42: 4682–4698.

Sweetman, A.J. , Dalla Valle, M. , Prevedouros, K. , and Jones, K.C. (2005) The role of soil organic carbon in the global cycling of persistent organic pollutants (POPs): interpreting and modelling field data. Chemosphere 60: 959–972.

Szczybelski, A.S. , van den Heuvel-Greve, M.J. , Kampen, T. , Wang, C. , van den Brink, N.W. , and Koelmans, A.A. (2016) Bioaccumulation of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, polychlorinated biphenyls and hexachlorobenzene by three Arctic benthic species from Kongsfjorden (Svalbard, Norway). Marine Pollution Bulletin 112: 65–74.

Temme, C. , Einax, J.W. , Ebinghaus, R. , and Schroeder, W.H. (2003) Measurements of atmospheric mercury species at a coastal site in the Antarctic and over the South Atlantic Ocean during polar summer. Environmental Science & Technology 37: 22–31.

Toyota, K. , Dastoor, A.P. , and Ryzhkov, A. (2013) Air-snowpack exchange of bromine, ozone, and mercury in the springtime arctic simulated by the 1-D model PHANTAS – Part 2: mercury and its speciation. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics Discussions 13: 22151–22220.

Toyota, K. , McConnell, J. , Staebler, R. , and Dastoor, A. (2014) Air–snowpack exchange of bromine, ozone, and mercury in the springtime arctic simulated by the 1-D model PHANTAS–Part 1: in-snow bromine activation and its impact on ozone. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 14: 4101–4133.

Turk, M. , Jakšić, J. , Vojinović Miloradov, M. , and Klanova, J. (2007) Post-war levels of persistent organic pollutants (POPs) in the air from Serbia determined by active and passive sampling methods. Environmental Chemistry Letters 5: 109–113.

Ubl, S. , Scheringer, M. , Stohl, A. , Burkhart, J.F. , and Hungerbuhler, K. (2012) Primary source regions of polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs) measured in the Arctic. Atmospheric Environment 62: 391–399.

Urba, A. , Kvietkus, K. , Sakalys, J. , Xiao, Z. , and Lindqvist, O. (1995) A new sensitive and portable mercury vapor analyzer Gardis-1A. In Mercury as a Global Pollutant. Springer, pp. 1305–1309.

Vieweg, I. , Hop, H. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , Brey, T. , and Huber, S. (2010) Persistent organic pollutants in four bivalve species from Kongsfjorden and Liefdefjorden, Svalbard. In.

Vorkamp, K. , Balmer, J. , Hung, H. , Letcher, R.J. , and Rigét, F.F. (2019a) A review of chlorinated paraffin contamination in arctic ecosystems. Emerging Contaminants 5: 219–231.

Vorkamp, K. , Balmer, J. , Hung, H. , Letcher, R.J. , Rigét, F.F. , and de Wit, C.A. (2019b) Current-use halogenated and organophosphorous flame retardants: a review of their presence in arctic ecosystems. Emerging Contaminants 5: 179–200.

Waite, D.T. , Hunter (Retired), F.G. , and Wiens, B.J. (2005) Atmospheric transport of lindane (γ-hexachlorocyclohexane) from the Canadian prairies—a possible source for the Canadian Great Lakes, Arctic, and Rocky mountains. Atmospheric Environment 39: 275–282.

Wang, K. , Munson, K.M. , Beaupré-Laperrière, A. , Mucci, A. , Macdonald, R.W. , and Wang, F. (2018) Subsurface seawater methylmercury maximum explains biotic mercury concentrations in the Canadian Arctic. Scientific Reports 8: 14465.

Wang, Z. , Na, G. , Ma, X. , Ge, L. , Lin, Z. , and Yao, Z. (2015) Characterizing the distribution of selected PBDEs in soil, moss, and reindeer dung at Ny-Ålesund of the arctic. Chemosphere 137: 9–13.

Wang-Andersen, G. , Utne Skaare, J. , Prestrud, P. , and Steinnes, E. (1993) Levels and congener pattern of PCBs in arctic fox, Alopex lagopus, in Svalbard. Environmental Pollution 82: 269–275.

Wania, F. , Hoff, J. , Jia, C. , and Mackay, D. (1998) The effects of snow and ice on the environmental behaviour of hydrophobic organic chemicals. Environmental Pollution 102: 25–41.

Warner, N.A. , Evenset, A. , Christensen, G. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , Borgå, K. , and Leknes, H. (2010) Volatile siloxanes in the European arctic: assessment of sources and spatial distribution. Environmental Science & Technology 44: 7705–7710.

Wiener, J.G. (2013) Mercury exposed: advances in environmental analysis and ecotoxicology of a highly toxic metal: advances in environmental mercury research. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry 32: 2175–2178.

Wittsiepe, J. , Schrey, P. , Lemm, F. , Eberwein, G. , and Wilhelm, M. (2008) Polychlorinated dibenzo-p-dioxins/polychlorinated dibenzofurans (PCDD/Fs), polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), and organochlorine pesticides in human blood of pregnant women from Germany. Journal of Toxicology and Environmental Health, Part A 71: 703–709.

Wong, F. , Jantunen, L.M. , Pućko, M. , Papakyriakou, T. , Staebler, R.M. , Stern, G.A. , and Bidleman, T.F. (2011) Air−water exchange of anthropogenic and natural organohalogens on International Polar Year (IPY) expeditions in the Canadian arctic. Environmental Science & Technology 45: 876–881.

Wu, X. , Lam, J.C.W. , Xia, C. , Kang, H. , Xie, Z. , and Lam, P.K.S. (2014) Atmospheric hexachlorobenzene determined during the third China arctic research expedition: sources and environmental fate. Atmospheric Pollution Research 5: 477–483.

Xiao, H. , Shen, L. , Su, Y. , Barresi, E. , DeJong, M. , Hung, H. , et al. (2012) Atmospheric concentrations of halogenated flame retardants at two remote locations: the Canadian High Arctic and the Tibetan Plateau. Environmental Pollution 61: 154–161.

Xie, Z. , Wang, Z. , Mi, W. , Möller, A. , Wolschke, H. , and Ebinghaus, R. (2015) Neutral poly-/perfluoroalkyl substances in air and snow from the arctic. Scientific Reports 5: 8912.

Ye, Z. , Mao, H. , Lin, C. J. , and Kim, S. Y. (2016) Investigation of processes controlling summertime gaseous elemental mercury oxidation at midlatitudinal marine, coastal, and inland sites. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 16(13): 8461–8478.

Zaborska, A. , Carroll, J. , Pazdro, K. , and Pempkowiak, J. (2011) Spatio-temporal patterns of PAHs, PCBs, and HCB in sediments of the western Barents Sea. Oceanologia 53: 1005–1026.

Zepp, R. , Wolfe, N. , Azarraga, L. , Cox, R. , and Pape, C. (1977) Photochemical transformation of the DDT and methoxychlor degradation products, DDE and DMDE, by sunlight. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 6: 305–314.

Zhang, H. (2006) Photochemical Redox Reactions of Mercury. In Recent Developments in Mercury Science. Atwood, D.A. (ed.), Berlin/Heidelberg: Springer-Verlag, pp. 37–79.

Zhang, H. , Yin, R.-S. , Feng, X.-B. , Sommar, J. , Anderson, C.W. , Sapkota, A. , et al. (2013) Atmospheric mercury inputs in montane soils increase with elevation: evidence from mercury isotope signatures. Scientific Reports 3: 1–8.

Zhang, Y. , Gao, T. , Kang, S. , and Sillanpää, M. (2019). Importance of atmospheric transport for microplastics deposited in remote areas. Environmental Pollution, 254: 112953.

Fate and Transport of Mercury in the Arctic Environmental Matrices under Varying Climatic Conditions

AMAP , 1997. AMAP Assessment Report: Heavy Metals. In Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP), Oslo, Norway.

AMAP , 1998. AMAP Assessment Report: Arctic Pollution Issues. In Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP), Oslo, Norway.

AMAP , 2005. AMAP Assessment: Heavy Metals in the Arctic. In Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP), Oslo, Norway.

AMAP , 2019. Arctic Climate Change Update 2019. In Arctic Monitoring and Assessment Programme (AMAP), Oslo, Norway.

Aubail, A. , Dietz, R. , Rigét, F. , Sonne, C. , Wiig, Ø. , & Caurant, F. (2012). Temporal trend of mercury in polar bears (Ursus maritimus) from Svalbard using teeth as a biomonitoring tissue. Journal of Environmental Monitoring 14(1), 56–63.

Bennett, M.M. (2014). North by Northeast: toward an Asian-Arctic region. Eurasian Geography and Economics 55(1), 71–93.

Bloom, N.S. , Preus, E. , Katon, J. , & Hiltner, M. (2003). Selective extractions to assess the biogeochemically relevant fractionation of inorganic mercury in sediments and soils. Analytica Chimica Acta 479(2), 233–248.

Boening, D.W. (2000). Ecological effects, transport, and the fate of mercury: a general review. Chemosphere 40(12), 1335–1351.

Budnik, L.T. , & Casteleyn, L. (2019). Mercury pollution in modern times and socio-medical consequences. Science of the Total Environment 654, 720–734.

Callaghan, T.V. , & Jonasson, S. (1995). Arctic terrestrial ecosystems and environmental change. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London. Series A: Physical and Engineering Sciences 352(1699), 259–276.

Constant, P. , Poissant, L. , Villemur, R. , Yumvihoze, E. , & Lean, D. (2007). The fate of inorganic mercury and methyl mercury within the snow cover in the low arctic tundra on the shore of Hudson Bay (Québec, Canada). Journal of Geophysical Research: Atmospheres 112(D8).

Dastoor, A.P. , & Durnford, D.A. (2013). Arctic Ocean: is it a sink or a source of atmospheric mercury? Environmental Science & Technology 48(3), 1707–1717.

Dietz, R. , Riget, F. , & Born, E.W. (2000). Geographical differences of zinc, cadmium, mercury and selenium in polar bears (Ursus maritimus) from Greenland. Science of the Total Environment 245(1–3), 25–47.

Dommergue, A. , Larose, C. , Faïn, X. , Clarisse, O. , Foucher, D. , Hintelmann, H. , Schneider, D. , & Ferrari, C.P. (2010). Deposition of mercury species in the Ny-Ålesund area (79 N) and their transfer during snowmelt. Environmental Science & Technology 44(3), 901–907.

Epa, U. (1998). Method 7473 (SW-846): mercury in solids and solutions by thermal decomposition, amalgamation, and atomic absorption spectrophotometry, Revision 0. Washington, DC, p. 17.

Fisk, A.T. , Hobbs, K. , & Muir, D.C.G. (2003). Contaminant levels, trends and effects in the biological environment. Canadian Arctic Contaminants Assessment Report II. Ottawa: Indian and Northern Affairs Canada.

Ford, J. , Landers, D. , Kugler, D. , Lasorsa, B. , Allen-Gil, S. , Crecelius, E. , & Martinson, J. (1995). Inorganic contaminants in Arctic Alaskan ecosystems: long-range atmospheric transport or local point sources? Science of the Total Environment 160, 323–335.
Fortin, C. , Beauchamp, G. , Dansereau, M. , Lariviere, N. , & Belanger, D. (2001). Spatial variation in mercury concentrations in wild mink and river otter carcasses from the James Bay Territory, Quebec, Canada. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 40(1), 121–127.
Gauthier, L. , Nault, R. , & Crête, M. (1989). Seasonal variation in the diet of George River Caribou Herd, Québec. Naturaliste Canadien 116, 101–112.
Givelet, N. , Roos-Barraclough, F. , Goodsite, M.E. , Cheburkin, A.K. , & Shotyk, W. (2004). Atmospheric mercury accumulation rates between 5900 and 800 calibrated years BP in the high arctic of Canada recorded by peat hummocks. Environmental Science & Technology 38(19), 4964–4972.
GMA , (2018). Global Mercury Assessment, 2018. UN-Environment Programme, Chemicals and Health Branch, Geneva, Switzerland. p. 59.
Gouin, T. , Mackay, D. , Jones, K.C. , Harner, T. , & Meijer, S.N. (2004). Evidence for the “grasshopper” effect and fractionation during long-range atmospheric transport of organic contaminants. Environmental Pollution 128(1–2), 139–148.
Hallanger, I.G. , Fuglei, E. , Yoccoz, N.G. , Pedersen, Å.Ø. , König, M. , & Routti, H. (2019). Temporal trend of mercury in relation to feeding habits and food availability in arctic foxes (Vulpes Lagopus) from Svalbard, Norway. Science of the Total Environment 670, 1125–1132.
Hui, A. , Takekawa, J.Y. , Baranyuk, V.V. , & Litvin, K.V. (1998). Trace element concentrations in two subpopulations of lesser snow geese from Wrangel Island, Russia. Archives of Environmental Contamination and Toxicology 34(2), 197–203.
Hwang, B. , Aksenov, Y. , Blockley, E. , Tsamados, M. , Brown, T. , Landy, J. , Stevens, D. , & Wilkinson, J. (2020). Impacts of climate change on arctic sea ice. MCCIP Science Review 2020, 208–227.
Iannilli, V. , Pasquali, V. , Setini, A. , & Corami, F. (2019). The first evidence of microplastics ingestion in benthic amphipods from Svalbard. Environmental Research 179, 108811.
Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (2013). Climate change 2013: The physical science basis. Working Group I Contribution to the Fifth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Jiang, S. , Liu, X. , & Chen, Q. (2011). Distribution of total mercury and methylmercury in lake sediments in Arctic Ny-Ålesund. Chemosphere 83(8), 1108–1116.
Jorgenson, M.T. , Shur, Y.L. , & Pullman, E.R. (2006). The abrupt increase in permafrost degradation in Arctic Alaska. Geophysical Research Letters 33(2).
Kallenborn, R. , & Herzke, D. (2001). Long-Range Transport of persistent pollutants in the northern hemisphere. Environmental Science and Pollution Research 8(3), 215–215.
Kim, M.K. , & Zoh, K.D. (2012). Fate and transport of mercury in environmental media and human exposure. Journal of Preventive Medicine and Public Health 45(6), 335.
Kirk, J.L. , St. Louis, V.L. , & Hintelmann, H. (2005). What Is the Source of Methyl Mercury in the Canadian Arctic Oceans? ArcticNet Annual Scientific Meeting. Banff, Alberta.
Klaminder, J. , Yoo, K. , Rydberg, J. , & Giesler, R. (2008). An explorative study of mercury export from a thawing palsa mire. Journal of Geophysical Research: Biogeosciences 113(G4).
Kofinas, G. , Forbes, B. , Beach, H. , Berkes, F. , Berman, M. , Chapin, T. , Csonka, Y. , Kjell, D. , Osherenko, G. , Semenova, T. , & Tetlichi, J. (2005). A research plan for the study of rapid change, resilience, and vulnerability in social-ecological systems of the Arctic. The Common Property Resource Digest 73, 1–10.
Kovacs, K. M. , Lydersen, C. , Overland, J. E. , & Moore, S. E. (2011). Impacts of changing sea-ice conditions on Arctic marine mammals. Marine Biodiversity 41(1), 181–194.
Larose, C. , Dommergue, A. , De Angelis, M. , Cossa, D. , Averty, B. , Marusczak, N. , Soumis, N. , Schneider, D. , & Ferrari, C. (2010). Springtime changes in snow chemistry lead to new insights into mercury methylation in the Arctic. Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta 74(22), 6263–6275.
Larter, N.C. , & Nagy, J.A. (2004). Seasonal changes in the composition of the diets of Peary caribou and muskoxen on Banks Island. Polar Research 23(2), 131–140.
Leitch, D.R. (2006). Mercury distribution in water and permafrost of the lower Mackenzie Basin, their contribution to the mercury contamination in the Beaufort Sea marine ecosystem, and

potential effects of climate variation.
Letcher, R.J. , Bustnes, J.O. , Dietz, R. , Jenssen, B.M. , Jørgensen, E.H. , Sonne, C. , Verreault, J. , Vijayan, M.M. , & Gabrielsen, G.W. (2010). Exposure and effects assessment of persistent organohalogen contaminants in arctic wildlife and fish. Science of the Total Environment 408(15), 2995–3043.
Loseto, L.L. , Siciliano, S.D. , & Lean, D.R. (2004). Methylmercury production in High Arctic wetlands. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry: An International Journal 23(1), 17–23.
Lyman, S.N. , Cheng, I. , Gratz, L. E. , Weiss-Penzias, P. , & Zhang, L. (2020). An updated review of atmospheric mercury. Science of the Total Environment 707, 135575.
Macdonald, R.W. , Harner, T. , & Fyfe, J. (2005). Recent climate change in the Arctic and its impact on contaminant pathways and interpretation of temporal trend data. Science of the Total Environment 342(1–3), 5–86.
Maggi, C. , Berducci, M.T. , Bianchi, J. , Giani, M. , & Campanella, L. (2009). Methylmercury determination in marine sediment and organisms by direct mercury analyzer. Analytica Chimica Acta 641(1–2), 32–36.
Maiti, S.K. (2003). Handbook of Methods in Environmental Studies, Vol. 2: Air, Noise, Soil, Overburden, Solid Waste and Ecology. Japur: ABD Publishers.
Mechirackal Balan, B. , Shini, S. , Krishnan, K.P. , & Mohan, M. (2018). Mercury tolerance and biosorption in bacteria isolated from Ny-Ålesund, Svalbard, arctic. Journal of Basic Microbiology 58(4), 286–295.
Moerlein, K.J. , & Carothers, C. (2012). Total environment of change: impacts of climate change and social transitions on subsistence fisheries in northwest Alaska. Ecology and Society 17(1).
Mohan, M. , Sreelakshmi, U. , Vishnu, S. , Gopikrishna, V.G. , Pandit, G.G. , Sahu, S.K. , Tiwari, M. , Ajmal, P.Y. , Kannan, V.M. , Abdul Shukur, M. , & Krishnan, K.P. (2018). Metal contamination profile and sediment accumulation rate of arctic fjords: implications from a sediment core. Kongsfjorden. Svalbard. Marine Pollution Bulletin 42, 131.
Moritz, R.E. , Bitz, C.M. , & Steig, E.J. (2002). Dynamics of recent climate change in the arctic. Science 297(5586), 1497–1502.
Muir, D.C.G. , Wang, X. , Yang, F. , Nguyen, N. , Jackson, T.A. , Evans, M.S. , Douglas, M. , Kock, G. , Lamoureux, S. , Pienitz, R. , & Smol, J.P. (2009). Spatial trends and historical deposition of mercury in eastern and northern Canada inferred from lake sediment cores. Environmental Science & Technology 43(13), 4802–4809.
Nevitt, M.P. , & Percival, R.V. (2018). Polar opposites: assessing the state of environmental law in the world’s polar regions. BCL Review 59, 1655.
Nghiem, S.V. , Rigor, I.G. , Perovich, D.K. , Clemente-Colón, P. , Weatherly, J.W. , & Neumann, G. (2007). Rapid reduction of Arctic perennial sea ice. Geophysical Research Letters 34(19).
O’Driscoll, N.J. , Rencz, A. , & Lean, D.R. (2005). The biogeochemistry and fate of mercury in the environment. Metal Ions in Biological Systems 43, 221–238.
O’Driscoll, N.J. , Vost, E. , Mann, E. , Klapstein, S. , Tordon, R. , & Lukeman, M. (2018). Mercury photoreduction and photooxidation in lakes: effects of filtration and dissolved organic carbon concentration. Journal of Environmental Sciences 68, 151–159.
Outridge, P.M. , Sanei, H. , Stern, G.A. , Hamilton, P.B. , & Goodarzi, F. (2007). Evidence for control of mercury accumulation rates in Canadian High Arctic lake sediments by variations of aquatic primary productivity. Environmental science & technology 41(15), 5259–5265.
Pirrone, N. , & Mason, R. (2009). Mercury Fate and Transport in the Global Atmosphere. Dordrecht, The Netherlands: Springer. 1–532.
Pistone, K. , Eisenman, I. , & Ramanathan, V. (2014). Observational determination of albedo decrease caused by vanishing Arctic sea ice. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences 111(9), 3322–3326.
Poulain, A.J. , Garcia, E. , Amyot, M. , Campbell, P.G. , & Ariya, P.A. (2007). Mercury distribution, partitioning and speciation in coastal vs. inland High Arctic snow. Geochimica et Cosmochimica Acta 71(14), 3419–3431.
Ramasamy, E. V. , Toms, A. , Shylesh, C. M. S. , Jayasooryan, K. K. , & Mahesh, M. (2012). Mercury fractionation in the sediments of Vembanad wetland, west coast of India. Environmental Geochemistry and Health 34(5), 575–586.
Ravichandran, M. (2004). Interactions between mercury and dissolved organic matter—a review. Chemosphere 55(3), 319–331.

Riget, F. , Dietz, R. , Johansen, P. , & Asmund, G. (2000). Lead, cadmium, mercury and selenium in Greenland marine biota and sediments during AMAP phase 1. Science of the Total Environment 245(1–3), 3–14.

Selin, N.E. (2009). Global biogeochemical cycling of mercury: a review. Annual Review of Environment and Resources 34, 43–63.

Semeena, V.S. , & Lammel, G. (2005). The significance of the grasshopper effect on the atmospheric distribution of persistent organic substances. Geophysical Research Letters 32(7).

Semkin, R.G. , Mierle, G. , & Neureuther, R.J. (2005). Hydrochemistry and mercury cycling in a High Arctic watershed. Science of the Total Environment 342(1–3), 199–221.

Serreze, M.C. , & Barry, R.G. (2011). Processes and impacts of Arctic amplification: A research synthesis. Global and Planetary Change 77(1–2), 85–96.

Skaar, J.S. , Ræder, E.M. , Lyche, J.L. , Ahrens, L. , & Kallenborn, R. (2019). Elucidation of contamination sources for poly-and perfluoroalkyl substances (PFASs) on Svalbard (Norwegian Arctic). Environmental Science and Pollution Research 26(8), 7356–7363.

Sommar, J. , Wängberg, I. , Berg, T. , Gårdfeldt, K. , Munthe, J. , Richter, A. , Urba, A. , Wittrock, F. , & Schroeder, W.H. (2004). Circumpolar transport and air-surface exchange of atmospheric mercury at Ny-Ålesund (79 N), Svalbard, Spring 2002. Atmospheric Chemistry and Physics 7(1), 151–166.

Sprovieri, F. , Pirrone, N. , Landis, M.S. , & Stevens, R.K. (2005). Atmospheric mercury behavior at different altitudes at Ny Alesund during Spring 2003. Atmospheric Environment 39(39), 7646–7656.

St. Louis, V.L. , Sharp, M.J. , Steffen, A. , May, A. , Barker, J. , Kirk, J.L. , Kelly, D.J. , Arnott, S.E. , Keatley, B. , & Smol, J.P. (2005). Some sources and sinks of monomethyl and inorganic mercury on Ellesmere Island in the Canadian High Arctic. Environmental Science & Technology 39(8), 2686–2701.

Steinnes, E. (1995). A critical evaluation of the use of naturally growing moss to monitor the deposition of atmospheric metals. Science of the Total Environment 160, 243–249.

Stern, G.A. , Macdonald, R.W. , Outridge, P.M. , Wilson, S. , Chetelat, J. , Cole, A. , Hintelmann, H. , Loseto, L.L. , Steffen, A. , Wang, F. , & Zdanowicz, C. (2012). How does climate change influence arctic mercury? Science of the Total Environment 414, 22–42.

Streets, D.G. , Horowitz, H.M. , Lu, Z. , Levin, L. , Thackray, C.P. , & Sunderland, E.M. (2019). Global and regional trends in mercury emissions and concentrations, 2010–2015. Atmospheric Environment 201, 417–427.

Stroeve, J.C. , Markus, T. , Boisvert, L. , Miller, J. , & Barrett, A. (2014). Changes in arctic melt season and implications for sea ice loss. Geophysical Research Letters 41(4), 1216–1225.

Svendsen, H. , Beszczynska-Møller, A. , Hagen, J.O. , Lefauconnier, B. , Tverberg, V. , Gerland, S. , BørreØrbæk, J. , Bischof, K. , Papucci, C. , Zajaczkowski, M. , & Azzolini, R. (2002). The physical environment of Kongsfjorden–Krossfjorden, an Arctic fjord system in Svalbard. Polar Research 21(1), 133–166.

Tabelin, C.B. , Igarashi, T. , Villacorte-Tabelin, M. , Park, I. , Opiso, E.M. , Ito, M. , & Hiroyoshi, N. (2018). Arsenic, selenium, boron, lead, cadmium, copper, and zinc in naturally contaminated rocks: a review of their sources, modes of enrichment, mechanisms of release, and mitigation strategies. Science of the Total Environment 645, 1522–1553.

UNEP , 2002. Global Mercury Assessment 2002. United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP), Geneva, Switzerland.

Walker, G. (2007). Climate change 2007: a world melting from the top down. Nature 446, 718–721.

Warner, N.A. , Sagerup, K. , Kristoffersen, S. , Herzke, D. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , & Jenssen, B.M. (2019). Snow buntings (Plectrophenax nivealis) as bio-indicators for exposure differences to legacy and emerging persistent organic pollutants from the Arctic terrestrial environment on Svalbard. Science of the Total Environment 667, 638–647.

Whalin, L. , Kim, E.H. , & Mason, R. (2007). Factors influencing the oxidation, reduction, methylation and demethylation of mercury species in coastal waters. Marine Chemistry 107(3), 278–294.

Witherow, R.A. , & Lyons, W.B. (2008). Mercury deposition in a polar desert ecosystem. Environmental Science & Technology 42(13), 4710–4716.

Yadav, J. , Kumar, A. , & Mohan, R. (2020). The dramatic decline of arctic sea ice linked to global warming. Natural Hazards: Journal of the International Society for the Prevention and

Mitigation of Natural Hazards 103, 1–5.

Increasing Presence of Non-Polar Isolates in the Tundra and Fjord Environment – A Pointer towards Warming Trends in the Arctic

Agouge, H. , Lamy, D. , Neal, P.R. , Sogin, M.L. and Herndl, G.J. (2011) Water mass specificity of bacterial communities in the North Atlantic revealed by massively parallel sequencing. Molecular Ecology 20(2): 258–274.

Bosshard, P.P. , Santini, Y. , Gruter, D. , Stettler, R. and Bachofen, R. (2000) Bacterial diversity and composition in the chemocline of the meromictic alpine lake Cadagnoa reveal by 16S rDNA analysis. FEMS Microbial Ecology 31: 173–182.

Brooke, J.S. (2012) *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*: an emerging global opportunistic pathogen. *Clinical Microbiology Reviews* 25(1): 2–41.

Chandran, A. and Hatha, A.A.M. (2005) Relative survival of *Escherichia coli* and *Salmonella typhimurium* in a tropical estuary. WaterResearch 39: 1397–1403.

Goethals, K. , Vereecke, D. , Jaziri, M. , Van Montagu, M. and Holsters, M. (2001) Leafy gall formation by *Rhodococcusfascians* . Annual Reviews in Phytopathology 39: 27–52.

Hoffman, H. , Stindle, S. , Stumpf, A. , Mehlen, A. , Monget, D. , Heeseman, J. , Sleifer, K.H. and Roggenkamp, A. (2005) Description of Enterobacterludwigii sp. Nov., a novel Enterobacter species of clinical significance. Systematic and Applied Bacteriology 28(3): 206–212.

Hop, H. , Pearson, T. , Hegseth, E.N. , Kovacs, K.M. , Wiencke, C. , Kwaniewski, S. , Eiane, K. , Mehlum, F. , Gulliksen, B. , Wlodarsk-Kowalczuk, M. , Lydersen, C. , Weslawski, J.M. , Cochrane, S. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , Leakey, R.J.G. , Lonee, O.J. , Zajaczkowski, M. , Falk-Petersen, S. , Kendall, M. , Wnagberg, S.A. , Bischof, K. , Voronkov, A.Y. , Kovaltchouk, N.A. , Wiktor, J. , Poltermann, M. , di Prisco, G. , Papucci, C. and Gerland, S. (2002) The marine ecosystem of Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Polar Research 21: 167–208.

Ito, H. and Kudoh, S. (1997) Characteristics of water in Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Proceedings of NIPR Symposium. Polar Meteorology and Glaciology 11: 211–232.

Jorgensen, B.B. , Glud, R.N. and Holby, O. (2005) Oxygen distribution and bioirrigation in Arctic fjord sediments (Svalbard, Barents Sea). Marine Ecology Progressive Series 292: 85–95.

Kirchman, D. L. , Moran, X. A.G. and Ducklow, H. (2009) Microbial growth in polar oceans – the role of temperature and potential impact of climate change. Nature Reviews in Microbiology 7: 451–459.

Kwa, A.L. , Low, J.G. , Lim, T.P. , Leow, P.C. , Kurup, A. and Tam, V.H. (2008) Independent predictors for mortality in patient with positive *Stenotrophomonasmaltophilia* cultures. Annals of Academy of Medicine Singapore 37(10): 826–830.

National Research Council (2015) Arctic Matters: The Global Connection to Changes in the Arctic. Washington DC. The National Academic Press, https://doi.org/10.17226/21717.

Orcutt, B.N. , Sylvan, J.B. , Knab, N.J. and Edwards, K.J. (2011) Microbial Ecology of the dark ocean above, at, and below the seafloor. Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews 75: 361–422.

Overland, J.E. , Wang, M. , Walsh, J.E. and Stroeve, J.C. (2014) Future arctic climate changes: Adaptation and mitigation time scales. Earths Future 2, 68–74.

Paez, J.I. , Tengan, F.M. , Barone, A.A. , Levine, A.S. and Costa, F.S. (2008) Factors associated with mortality in patients with bloodstream infection and pneumonia due to *Stenotrophomonasmaltophilia* . European Journal of Clinical Microbiology and Infectious Diseases 27(10): 901–906.

Perreault, N.N. , Greer, C.W. , Andersen, D.T. , Tille, S. , Couloume, G.L. , Lollar, B.S. and Whyte, L.G. (2008) Heterotrophic and autotrophic microbial populations in cold perennial springs of the high Arctic. Applied and Environmental Microbiology 74: 898–907.

Piontek, J. , Borchard, C. , Sperling, M. , Schulz, K.G. , Riebesell, U and Engel, A (2012) Response of bacterioplankton activity in an Arctic fjord system to elevated pCO 2 : results from a mesocosm perturbation study. BiogeosciencesDiscussion 9: 10467–10511.

Piquet, A.M.-T. , Scheepens, J.F. , Bolhuis, H. , Wiencke, C. and Buma, A.G.J. (2010) Variability of protistan and bacterial communities in two Arctic fjords (Spitsbergen). Polar Biology 33:1521–1536.

Piwosz, K. , Walkusz, W. , Hapter, R. , Wieczorek, P. , Hop, H. and Wiktor, J. (2009) Comparison of productivity and phytoplankton in a warm (Kongsfjorden) and a cold (Hornsund) Spitzbergen fjord in mid summer 2002. Polar Biology 32: 549–559.
Renaud, P.E. , Carrol, M.L. and Ambrose, W.G. Jr. (2008) Effect of global warming on Arctic seafloor communities and its consequences for higher trophic levels. In Impacts of Global Warming on Polar Ecosystems. C.M. Duarte (Ed.). Fundacion BBVA, Spain. ISBN 978–84–96515-74-1. pp. 1–39.
Sinha, R.K. , Krishnan, K.P. , Hatha, A.A.M. , Rahiman, K.M.M. , Thresyamma, D.D. and Kerkar, S. (2017) Diversity of retrievable heterotrophic bacteria in Kongsfjorden, an Arctic fjord. Brazilian Journal of Microbiology 48: 51–61.
Sjolund, M. , Bonnedhal, J. , Hernandez, J. , Bengtsson, S. , Cederbrant, G. , Pinhassi, J. , Kahlmeter, G. and Olssen, B. (2008) Dissemination of multidrug-resistant bacteria into the Arctic. Emerging Infectious Diseases 14, 70–72.
Srinivas, T.N.R. , Nageswara Rao, S.S.S. , Reddy, P.V.V. , Pratibha, M.S. , Sailaja, B. , Kavya, B. , Kishore, K.H. , Begum, Z. , Singh, S.M. and Shivaji, S. (2009) Bacterial diversity and bioprospecting for cold-active lipases, amylases and proteases, from culturable bacteria of Kongsfjorden and Ny-Alesund, Svalbard, Arctic. CurrentMicrobiology 59: 537–547.
Svendson, H. , Beszczynska-Møller, A. , Hagen, J. O. , Lefauconnier, B. , Tverberg, V. and Gerland, S. (2002) The physical environment of Kongsfjorden--Krossfjorden, an Arctic fjord system in Svalbard. Polar Research 21, 133–166.
Tamura, K. , Peterson, D. , Peterson, N. , Stecher, G. , Nei M. and Kumar, S. (2011) MEGA5: Molecular evolutionary genetics analysis using maximum likelihood, evolutionary distance and maximum parsimony methods. Molecular Biology and Evolution 28(10): 2731–2739.
Teske, A. , Durbin, A. , Ziervogel, K. , Cox, C. and Arnosti, C. (2011) Microbial community composition and function in permanently cold seawater and sediments from an Arctic fjord of Svalbard. Applied Environmental Microbiology 77(6): 2008–2018.
Vandeputte, O. , Oden, S. , Mol, A. , et al. (2005) Biosynthesis of auxin by the gram-positive phytopathogen *Rhodococcusfascians* is controlled by compounds specific to infected plant tissues. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology* 71(3): 1169–1177.
Walkusz, W. , Kwaniewski, S. , Falk-Petersen, S. , Hop, H. , Tverberg, V. , Wieczorek, P. and Weslawski, J.M. (2009) Seasonal and spatial changes in the zooplankton community in Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Polar Research 28: 254–281.
Wang, M. and Overland, J.E. (2009) A sea ice-free summer in the Arctic within 30 years? Geophysical Research Letters 36. doi: 10.1029/2009GL037820.
Winker, K. , McCracken, K.G. , Gibson, D.D. , Pruett, C.L. , Meier, R. , Huettmann, F. , Wege, M. , Kulikova, I.V. , Zhuravlev I.N. , Perdue, M.L. , Spackman, E. , Suarez, D.L. and Swayne, D.E. (2007) Movement of birds and avian influenza from Asia into Alaska. Emerging Infectious Diseases 13: 547–552.
Zajaczkowski, M. (2008) Sediment supply and fluxes in glacial and outwash fjords, Kongsfjorden and Adventfjorden, Svalbard. Polar Research 1: 59–72.
Zeng, Y. , Zou, Y. , Grebmeier, J.M. , He, J. and Zheng, T. (2009) Culture-independent and dependent methods to investigate the diversity of planktonic bacteria in the northern Bering Sea. Polar Biology 35: 117–129.
Zheng, Y. , Zheng, T. and Li, H. (2009) Community composition of the marine bacterioplankton in Kongsfjorden (Spitzbergen) as revealed by 16S rRNA gene analysis. Polar Biology 32: 1447–1460.
Zheng, Y. , Zou, Y. , Chen, B. , Grebmeir, J.M. , Li, H. , Yu, Y. and Zheng, T. (2011) Phylogenetic diversity of sediment bacteria in the northern Bering Sea. Polar Biology 34: 907–919.

Zooplankton of the Past, Present and Future

Aagaard, K. , & Carmack, E.C. (1989). The role of sea ice and other fresh water in the Arctic circulation. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 94(C10), 14485–14498.
Abe, Y. , Matsuno, K. , Fujiwara, A. , & Yamaguchi, A. (2020). Review of spatial and inter-annual changes in the zooplankton community structure in the western Arctic Ocean during

summers of 2008–2017. Progress in Oceanography 102391.
Ashjian, C.J. , Campbell, R.G. , Welch, H.E. , Butler, M. , & Van Keuren, D. (2003). The annual cycle in abundance, distribution, and size about hydrography of important copepod species in the western Arctic Ocean. Deep-Sea Research Part I 50, 1235–1261.
Astthorsson, O.S. , & Gislason, A. (1995). Long-term changes in zooplankton biomass in Icelandic waters in spring. ICES Journal of Marine Science 52(3–4), 657–668.
Auel, H. , & Hagen, W. (2002). Mesozooplankton community structure, abundance and biomass in the central Arctic Ocean. Marine Biology 140, 1013–1021.
Basedow, S.L. , Eiane, K. , Tverberg, V. , & Spindler, M. (2004). Advection of zooplankton in an Arctic fjord (Kongsfjorden, Svalbard). Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 60(1), 113–124.
Basedow, S.L. , Sundfjord, A. , von Appen, W.J. , Halvorsen, E. , Kwasniewski, S. , & Reigstad, M. (2018). Seasonal variation in the transport of zooplankton into the Arctic basin through the Atlantic gateway, Fram Strait. Frontiers in Marine Science, *5* , 194.
Berge, J. , Cottier, F. , Varpe, Ø. , Renaud, P.E. , Falk-Petersen, S. , Kwasniewski, S. , ... & Bjærke, O. (2014). Arctic complexity: a case study on diel vertical migration of zooplankton. Journal of Plankton Research 36(5), 1279–1297.
Blachowiak-Samolyk, K. , Kwasniewski, S. , Richardson, K. , Dmoch, K. , Hansen, E. , Hop, H. , ... & Mouritsen, L.T. (2006). Arctic zooplankton does not perform diel vertical migration (DVM) during periods of the midnight sun. Marine Ecology Progress Series 308, 101–116.
Borga˚ K , Gabrielsen GW , Skaare J.U. (2002). Differences in contamination load between pelagic and sympagic invertebrates in the Arctic marginal ice zone: Influence of habitat, diet, and geography. Marine Ecology Progress Series 235, 157–169.
Brodsky, K.A. , & Nikitin, M.N. (1955). Observational data of the scientific research drifting station of 1950–1951. Hydrobiological Work. Morskoy Transport 1, 404–410.
Brodsky, K.A. , & Pavshtiks, E.A. (1976). Plankton of the central part of the Arctic Basin. Polar Geography 1, 143–161.
Buesseler, K.O. , Lamborg, C.H. , Boyd, P.W. , Lam, P.J. , Trull, T.W. , Bidigare, R.R. , ... & Honda, M. (2007). Revisiting carbon flux through the ocean’s twilight zone. Science 316(5824), 567–570.
Carmack, E. , Barber, D.G. , Christensen, J.R. , Macdonald, R.W. , Rudels, B. , & Sakshaug, E. (2005). Climate variability and physical forcing of the food webs and the carbon budget on panarctic shelves. Progress in Oceanography 71, 145–181.
Carmack, E.C. , Aagaard, K. , Swift, J.H. , MacDonald, R.W. , McLaughlin, F.A. , Jones, E.P. , Perkin, R.G. , Smith, J.N. , Elis, K.M. , & Killius, L.R. (1997). Changes in temperature and tracer hdistributions within the Arctic Ocean results from the 1994 Arctic Ocean section. Deep-Sea Research Part II. Topical Studies in Oceanography 44, 1487–1502.
Comiso, J.C. , Parkinson, C.L. , Gersten, R. , & Stock, L. (2008). Accelerated decline in the Arctic sea ice cover. Geophysical Research Letters III 35, L01703. doi: 10.1029/2007GL031972.
Conover, R.J. , & Siferd, T.D. (1993). Dark-season survival strategies of coastal zone zooplankton in the Canadian Arctic. The Arctic 303–311.
Cottier, F.R. , Tarling, G.A. , Wold, A. , & Falk-Petersen, S. (2006). Unsynchronised and synchronised vertical migration of zooplankton in a high Arctic fjord. Limnology and Oceanography 51(6), 2586–2599.
Dalpadado, P. , Ingvaldsen, R. , & Hassel, A. (2003). Zooplankton biomass variation in relation to climatic conditions in the Barents Sea. Polar Biology 26(4), 233–241.
Dalpadado, P. , Ingvaldsen, R.B. , Stige, L.C. , Bogstad, B. , Knutsen, T. , Ottersen, G. , & Ellertsen, B. (2012). Climate effects on Barents Sea ecosystem dynamics. ICES Journal of Marine Science 69, 1303–1316.
Dam, H.G. , & Baumann, H. (2017). Climate change, zooplankton and fisheries. Climate Change Impacts on Fisheries and Aquaculture: A Global Analysis 2, 851–874.
Darnis, G. , & Fortier, L. (2012). Zooplankton respiration and the export of carbon at depth in the Amundsen Gulf (Arctic Ocean). Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 117(C4).
Darnis, G. , Hobbs, L. , Geoffroy, M. , Grenvald, J.C. , Renaud, P.E. , Berge, J. , ... & Wold, A. (2017). From polar night to midnight sun: diel vertical migration, metabolism and biogeochemical role of zooplankton in a high Arctic fjord (Kongsfjorden, Svalbard). Limnology and Oceanography 62(4), 1586–1605.

Dawson, J.K. (1978). Vertical distribution of *Calanus hyperboreus* in the central Arctic Ocean. Limnology and Oceanography 23, 950–957.
Ellingsen, I.H. , Dalpadado, P. , Slagstad, D. , & Loeng, H. (2008). Impact of climatic change on the biological production in the Barents Sea. Climatic Change 87(1–2), 155–175.
Falk-Petersen, S. , Leu, E. , Berge, J. , Kwasniewski, S. , Nygård, H. , Røstad, A. , ... & Gulliksen, B. (2008). Vertical migration in high Arctic waters during autumn 2004. Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 55(20–21), 2275–2284.
Feng, M. , Zhang, W. , & Xiao, T. (2014). Spatial and temporal distribution of tintinnid (Ciliophora: Tintinnida) communities in Kongsfjorden, Svalbard (Arctic), during summer. Polar Biology 37(2), 291–296.
Fischer, J. , & Visbeck, M. (1993). Seasonal variation of the daily zooplankton migration in the Greenland Sea. Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 40(8), 1547–1557.
Fisk, A.T. , Stern, G.A. , Hobson, K.A. , Strachan, W.J. , Loewen, M.D. , & Norstrom, R.J. (2001). Persistent organic pollutants (POPs) in a small, herbivorous, Arctic marine zooplankton (Calanus hyperboreus): trends from April to July and the influence of lipids and trophic transfer. Marine Pollution Bulletin 43(1–6), 93–101.
Garzke, J. , Ismar, S.M.H. , & Sommer, U. (2016). Climate change affects low trophic level marine consumers: warming decreases copepod size and abundance. Oecologia 177, 849–860.
Gislason, A. , & Astthorsson, O.S. (1998). Seasonal variations in biomass, abundance and composition of zooplankton in the subarctic waters north of Iceland. Polar Biology 20(2), 85–94.
Gluchowska, M. , Trudnowska, E. , Goszczko, I. , Kubiszyn, A. M. , Blachowiak-Samolyk, K. , Walczowski, W. , & Kwasniewski, S. (2017). Variations in the structural and functional diversity of zooplankton over vertical and horizontal environmental gradients en route to the Arctic Ocean through the Fram Strait. PloS One 12(2), e0171715.
Grainger, E.H. (1965). Zooplankton forms the Arctic Ocean and adjacent Canadian waters. Journal of the Fisheries Board of Canada 22(2), 543–564.
Grainger, E.H. (1989). Vertical distribution of zooplankton in the central Arctic Ocean. In *Proceedings of the sixth conference of the ComitéArctique International* . pp. 48–60.
Grebmeier, J.M. , Overland, J. , Moore, S.E. , Farley, E.V. , Carmack, E. , Cooper, L.W. , Frey, K. , Helle, J.H. , McLaughlin, F.A. , & McNutt, S.L. (2006). A major ecosystem shift in the Northern Bering Sea. Science 311, 1461–1464. doi: 10.1126/science.1121365.
Grenvald, J.C. , Callesen, T.A. , Daase, M. , Hobbs, L. , Darnis, G. , Renaud, P.E. , ... & Berge, J. (2016). Plankton community composition and vertical migration during polar night in Kongsfjorden. Polar Biology 39(10), 1879–1895.
Haakstad, M. , Kogeler, J.W. , & Dahle, S. (1994). Studies of sea surface temperatures in selected northern Norwegian fjords using Landsat TM data. Polar Research 13(1), 95–110.
Hagen, W. , & Auel, H. (2001). Seasonal adaptations and the role of lipids in oceanic zooplankton. Zoology 104(3–4), 313–326.
Haug, T. , Bogstad, B. , Chierici, M. , Gjøsæter, H. , Hallfredsson, E. H. , Høines, Å.S. , Hoel, A.H. , Ingvaldsen, R.B. , Jørgensen, L.L. , Knutsen, T. , Loeng, H. , Naustvoll, L.J. , Røttinger, I. , & Sunnanå, K. (2017). Future harvest of living resources in the Arctic Ocean north of the Nordic and Barents seas: a review of possibilities and constraints. Fisheries Research 188, 38–57.
Hays, G.C. , Kennedy, H. , & Frost, B.W. (2001). Individual variability in diel vertical migration of a marine copepod: why some individuals remain at depth when others migrate. Limnology and Oceanography 46(8), 2050–2054.
Hirche, H.J. , & Kosobokova, K.N. (2003). Early reproduction and development of dominant calanoid copepods in the ice zone of the Barents Sea – need for a change of paradigms? Marine Biology 143, 769–781.
Hirche, H.J. , & Kosobokova, K.N. (2007). Distribution of Calanus finmarchicus in the northern North Atlantic and Arctic Ocean – expatriation and potential colonization. Deep-Sea Research Part II 54, 2729–2747.
Hirche, H.J. , & Kosobokova, K.N. (2011). Winter studies on zooplankton in Arctic seas: the Storfjord (Svalbard) and adjacent ice-covered the Barents Sea. Marine Biology 158(10), 2359–2376.

Hirche, H.J. , & Mumm, N. (1992). Distribution of dominant copepods in the Nansen Basin, Arctic Ocean, in summer. Deep-Sea Research 39(Suppl. 2), S485–S505.
Hop, H. , Borga, K. , Gabrielsen, G.W. , Kleivane, L. , & Skaare, J.U. (2002). Food web magnification of persistent organic pollutants in poikilotherms and homeotherms from the Barents Sea. Environmental Science and Technology 36, 2589–2597.
Hop, H. , Pearson, T. , Hegseth, E.N. , Kovacs, K.M. , Wiencke, C. , Kwasniewski, S. , ... & Lydersen, C. (2002). The marine ecosystem of Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Polar Research 21(1), 167–208.
Hop, H. , Wold, A. , Vihtakari, M. , Daase, M. , Kwasniewski, S. , Gluchowska, M. , ... & Falk-Petersen, S. (2019). Zooplankton in Kongsfjorden (1996–2016) in Relation to Climate Change. In The Ecosystem of Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. pp. 229–300. Springer, Cham.
Hopcroft, R.R. , Clarke, C. , Nelson, R.J. , & Raskoff, K.A. (2005). Zooplankton communities of the Arctic's Canada Basin: the contribution by smaller taxa. Polar Biology 28(3), 198–206.
Hopcroft, R.R. , Kosobokova, K.N. , & Pinchuk, A.I. (2010). Zooplankton community patterns in the Chukchi Sea during summer 2004. Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 57(1–2), 27–39.
Hopkins, T.L. (1969a). Zooplankton standing crop in the Arctic Basin. Limnology and Oceanography 14(1), 80–85.
Hopkins, T.L. (1969b). Zooplankton biomass related to hydrography along the drift track of Arlis II in the Arctic Basin and the East Greenland Current. Journal of Fisheries Research Board of Canada 26, 305–310.
Hughes, K.H. (1968). Seasonal Vertical Distribution of Copepods in the Arctic Water in the Canadian Basin of the North Polar Sea. M.Sc. thesis, University of Washington.
Johnson, M.W. (1963). Zooplankton collections from the high polar basins with special reference to the Copepoda. Limnology and Oceanography 8, 89–102.
Kasyan, V.V. (2020). Variability and spatial distribution of zooplankton communities in the western Chukchi Sea during early fall. Polar Science 100508.
Kielhorn, W.V. (1952). The biology of the surface zone zooplankton of a boreo-arctic Atlantic Ocean area. Journal of the Fisheries Board of Canada 9(5), 223–264.
Klein Breteler, W.C.M. , & Schogt, N. (1994). Development of Acartiaclausi (Copepoda, Calanoida) cultured at different conditions of temperature and food. Hydrobiologia 292–293, 469–479.
Koplin, J. (2020). Community composition of epipelagic zooplankton in the Eurasian Basin 2017 determined by ZooScan image analysis (Doctoral dissertation, University of Hamburg).
Kordas, R.L. , Harley, C.D.G. , & O'Connor, M.I. (2011.) Community ecology in a warming world: the influence of temperature on interspecific interactions in marine systems. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 400, 218–226.
Kosobokova, K. , & Hirche, H.J. (2000). Zooplankton distribution across the Lomonosov Ridge, Arctic Ocean: species inventory, biomass and vertical structure. Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 47(11), 2029–2060.
Kosobokova, K. , & Hirche, H.J. (2001). Reproduction of Calanus glacialis in the Laptev Sea, Arctic Ocean. Polar Biology 24, 33–43.
Kosobokova, K. , & Hirche, H.J. (2009). Biomass of zooplankton in the eastern Arctic Ocean–a baseline study. Progress in Oceanography 82(4), 265–280.
Kosobokova, K.N. (1978). Diurnal vertical distribution of *Calanus hyperboreus* Kroyer and *Calanus glacialis* Jaschnov in the Central Polar Basin. Oceanology 18, 476–480.
Kosobokova, K.N. (1981). Zooplankton of the Arctic Ocean. PhD. Thesis, Institute of Oceanology, Academy of Sciences, Moscow, pp. 1–150.
Kosobokova, K.N. (1982). Composition and distribution of the biomass of zooplankton in the central Arctic Basin. Oceanology 22, 744–750.
Kosobokova, K.N. (1989). Vertical distribution of plankton animals in the eastern part of the central Arctic Basin. Explorations of the Fauna of the Seas, Marine Plankton, Leningrad 41(49), 24–31.
Kosobokova, K.N. , Hopcroft, R.R. , & Hirche, H.J. (2011). Patterns of zooplankton diversity through the depths of the Arctic's central basins. Marine Biodiversity 41(1), 29–50.
Kwasniewski, S. , Gluchowska, M. , Walkusz, W. , Karnovsky, N.J. , Jakubas, D. , Wojczulanis-Jakubas, K. , Harding, A.M.A. , Goszczko, I. , Cisek, M. , Beszczynska-Möller, A. , Walczowski, W. , Weslawski, J.M. , & Stempniewicz, L. (2012). Interannual changes in zooplankton on the

West Spitsbergen Shelf in relation to hydrography and their consequences for the diet of planktivorous seabirds. Journal of Marine Science 69, 890–901.
Kwasniewski, S. , Hop, H. , Falk-Petersen, S. , & Pedersen, G. (2003). Distribution of Calanus species in Kongsfjorden, a glacial fjord in Svalbard. Journal of Plankton Research 25(1), 1–20.
Kwasniewski, S. , Walkusz, W. , Cottier, F.R. , & Leu, E. (2013). Mesozooplankton dynamics in relation to food availability during spring and early summer in a high latitude glaciated fjord (Kongsfjorden), with a focus on Calanus. Journal of Marine Systems 111, 83–96.
Lampert, W. (1989). The adaptive significance of diel vertical migration of zooplankton. Functional Ecology 3(1), 21–27.
Lane, P.V.Z. , Llinás, L. , Smith, S.L. , & Pilz, D. (2008). Zooplankton distribution in the western Arctic during summer 2002: hydrographic habitats and implications for food chain dynamics. Journal of Marine Systems 70, 97–133.
Last, K.S. , Hobbs, L. , Berge, J. , Brierley, A.S. , & Cottier, F. (2016). Moonlight drives ocean-scale mass vertical migration of zooplankton during the Arctic winter. Current Biology 26(2), 244–251.
Lee, R.F. (1975). Lipids of Arctic zooplankton. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part B: Comparative Biochemistry 51(3), 263–266.
Maslanik, J.A. , Fowler, C. , Stroeve, J. , Drobot, S. , Zwally, J. , Emery, D. , & Yi, W. (2007). A younger, thinner Arctic ice cover: Increased potential for rapid, extensive sea-ice loss. Geophysical Research Letters 34, L24501. doi: 10.1029/2007GL032043.
Melnikov, I.A. , & Kolosova, E.G. (2001). The Canada Basin zooplankton in recent environmental changes in the Arctic. In Semiletov, I.P. (Ed.), Proceedings of the Arctic Regional Center, vol. 3. Pacific Institute of Oceanology, Vladivostok, pp. 165–176.
Minoda, T. (1967). Seasonal distribution of Copepoda in the Arctic Ocean from June to December 1964. Records of Oceanographic Works in Japan 9, 61–168.
Miquel, J.C. , Gasser, B. , Martín de Nascimento, J. , Marec, M. , Babin, M. , Fortier, L. , & Forest, A. (2015). Downward particle flux and carbon export in the Beaufort Sea, Arctic Ocean; the role of zooplankton.
Møller, E.F. , & Nielsen, T.G. (2020). Borealization of Arctic zooplankton—smaller and less fat zooplankton species in Disko Bay, Western Greenland. Limnology and Oceanography 65(6), 1175–1188.
Mumm, N. (1993). Composition and distribution of mesozooplankton in the Nansen Basin, Arctic Ocean, during summer. Polar Biology 13, 451–461.
Mumm, N. , Auel, H. , Hanssen, H. , Hagen, W. , Richter, C. , & Hirche, H.-J. (1998). Breaking the ice, large-scale distribution of mesozooplankton after a decade of Arctic and transpolar cruises. Polar Biology 20, 189–197.
Nelson, R.J. , Carmack, E.C. , McLaughlin, F.A. , & Cooper, G.A. (2009). Penetration of Pacific zooplankton into the western Arctic Ocean tracked with molecular population genetics. Marine Ecology Progress Series 381, 129–138.
NOAA National Centers for Environmental information, Climate at a Glance: Global Time Series , published November 2021, retrieved on November 25, 2021 from https://www.ncdc.noaa.gov/cag/
Ohman, M.D. (1990). The demographic benefits of diel vertical migration by zooplankton. Ecological Monographs 60(3), 257–281.
Olli, K. , Wassmann, P. , Reigstad, M. , Ratkova, T. , Arashkevich, E. , Pasternak, A. , Matrai, P.A. , Knulst, J. , Tranvik, L. , Klais, R. , & Jacobbsen, A. (2007). The fate of production in the central Arctic Ocean – top–downregulation by zooplankton expatriates? Progress in Oceanography 72, 84–113.
Ormańczyk, M.R. , Głuchowska, M. , Olszewska, A. , & Kwasniewski, S. (2017). Zooplankton structure in high latitude fjords with contrasting oceanography (Hornsund and Kongsfjorden, Spitsbergen). Oceanologia 59(4), 508–524.
Pautzke, C.G. (1979). Phytoplankton primary production below the Arctic Ocean pack ice, an ecosystems analysis. PhD. Thesis, University of Washington, p. 181.
Perovich, D.K. , Richter-Menge, J.A. , Jones, K.F. , & Light, B. (2008). Sunlight, water, and ice: Extreme Arctic sea ice melt during the summer of 2007. Geophysical Research Letters 35, L11501. doi: 10.1029/2008GL034007.
Raskoff, K.A. , Purcell, J. E. , & Hopcroft, R. R. (2005). Gelatinous zooplankton of the Arctic Ocean: in situ observations under the ice. Polar Biology 28(3), 207–217.

Richter, C. (1994). Regional and seasonal variability in the vertical distribution of mesozooplankton in the Greenland Sea. BerichtezurPolarforschung (Reports on Polar Research) 154.
Riser, C.W. , Wassmann, P. , Reigstad, M. , & Seuthe, L. (2008). Vertical flux regulation by zooplankton in the northern Barents Sea during Arctic spring. Deep-Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 55(20–21), 2320–2329.
Rudels, B. , Muench, R.D. , Gunn, J. , Schauer, U. , & Friedrich, H.J. (2000). Evolution of the Arctic boundary current north of the Siberian Shelves. Journal of Marine Systems 25, 77–99.
Saiz, E. , Calbet, A. , Isari, S. , Anto, M. , Velasco, E. M. , Almeda, R. , ... & Alcaraz, M. (2013). Zooplankton distribution and feeding in the Arctic Ocean during a Phaeocystispouchetii bloom. Deep-Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers 72, 17–33.
Schauer, U. , Muench, R.D. , Rudels, B. , & Timokhov, L. (1997). Impact of eastern shelf waters on the Nansen Basin intermediate layers. Journal of Geophysical Research 102(C2), 3371–3382.
Schmid, M.S. , Aubry, C. , Grigor, J. , & Fortier, L. (2016). The LOKI underwater imaging system and an automatic identification model for the detection of zooplankton taxa in the Arctic Ocean. Methods in Oceanography 15, 129–160.
Sherr, E.B. , Sherr, B.F. , Wheeler, P.A. , & Thompson, K. (2003). Temporal and spatial variation in stocks of autotrophic and heterotrophic microbes in the upper water column of the central Arctic Ocean. Deep-Sea Research Part I 50, 557–571.
Slagstad, D. , Ellingsen, I.H. , & Wassmann, P. (2011). Evaluating primary and secondary production in an Arctic Ocean void of summer sea ice: an experimental simulation approach. Progress in Oceanography 90, 117–131.
Sobek, A. , Reigstad, M. , & Gustafsson, Ö. (2006). Partitioning of polychlorinated biphenyls between Arctic seawater and size-fractionated zooplankton. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry: An International Journal 25(7), 1720–1728.
Taylor, A.H. , Allen, I. , & Clark, P.A. (2002). Extraction of a weak climatic signal by an ecosystem. Nature 416, 629–632.
Thibault, D. , Head, E.J.H. , & Wheeler, P.A. (1999). Mesozooplankton in the Arctic Ocean in summer. Deep-Sea Research Part I 46, 1391–1415.
Trudnowska, E. , Basedow, S. , & Blachowiak-Samolyk, K. (2014). Mid-summer mesozooplankton biomass, its size distribution, and estimated production within glacial Arctic fjord (Hornsund, Svalbard). Journal of Marine Systems 137, 55–66.
Trudnowska, E. , Dąbrowska, A. M. , Boehnke, R. , Zaj ą czkowski, M. , & Blachowiak-Samolyk, K. (2020). Particles, protists, and zooplankton in glacier-influenced coastal svalbard waters. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 106842.
Trudnowska, E. , Stemmann, L. , Błachowiak-Samołyk, K. , & Kwasniewski, S. (2020). Taxonomic and size structures of zooplankton communities in the fjords along the Atlantic water passage to the Arctic. Journal of Marine Systems 204, 103306.
Turner, J.T. (2015). Zooplankton fecal pellets, marine snow, phytodetritus and the ocean’s biological pump. Progress in Oceanography 130, 205–248.
Vihtakari, M. , Welcker, J. , Moe, B. , Chastel, O. , Tartu, S. , Hop, H. , Bech, C. , Descamps, S. , & Gabrielsen, G.W. (2018). Black-legged kittiwakes as messengers of Atlantification in the Arctic. Scientific Reports 8, 1178.
Vinogradov, M.E. , & Melnikov, I.A. (1980). Studies of the pelagic ecosystems of the central Arctic basin. In Vinogradov, M.E. (Ed.), BiologiyaTsentral’nogoArkicheskogobasseyna (Biology of the central Arctic Basin). Nauka, Moscow, pp. 5–14.
Virketis, M.A. (1959). Materials on the Zooplankton of the Central Part of the Arctic Ocean (in Russian). Results of Scientific Observations on the Drift Stations “North Pole 4” and North Pole 5”, 1955–1956, Moscow, 132–206.
Walkusz, W. , Kwasniewski, S. , Petersen, S.F. , Hop, H. , Tverberg, V. , Wieczorek, P. , & Weslawski, J.M. (2009). Seasonal and spatial changes in the zooplankton community of Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Polar Research 28(2), 254–281.
Wallace, M.I. , Cottier, F.R. , Berge, J. , Tarling, G.A. , Griffiths, C. , & Brierley, A.S. (2010). Comparison of zooplankton vertical migration in an ice-free and a seasonally ice-covered Arctic fjord: an insight into the influence of sea ice cover on zooplankton behavior. Limnology and Oceanography 55(2), 831–845.

Wassmann, P. , & others. (2015). The contiguous domains of Arctic Ocean advection: trails of life and death. Progress in Oceanography 139, 42–65.
Weydmann, A. , Carstensen, J. , Goszczko, I. , Dmoch, K. , Olszewska, A. , & Kwasniewski, S. (2014). Shift towards the dominance of boreal species in the Arctic: inter-annual and spatial zooplankton variability in the West Spitsbergen Current. Marine Ecology Progress Series 501, 41–52.
Weydmann, A. , Søreide, J.E. , Kwaśniewski, S. , Leu, E. , Falk-Petersen, S. , & Berge, J. (2013). Ice-related seasonality in zooplankton community composition in a high Arctic fjord. Journal of Plankton Research 35(4), 831–842.
Weydmann, A. , Walczowski, W. , Carstensen, J. , & Kwaśniewski, S. (2018) Warming of Subarctic waters accelerates the development of a key marine zooplankton Calanus finmarchicus. Global Change Biology 24, 172–183.
Wheeler, P.A. , Gosselin, M. , Sherr, E. , Thibault, D. , Kirchman, D.L. , Benner, R. , & Whitledge, T.E. (1996). Active cycling of organic carbon in the central Arctic Ocean. Nature 380, 697–699.
Willis, K. , Cottier, F. , Kwasniewski, S. , Wold, A. , & Falk-Petersen, S. (2006). The influence of advection on zooplankton community composition in an Arctic fjord (Kongsfjorden, Svalbard). Journal of Marine Systems 61(1–2), 39–54.

Spectroscopic Characterizations of Humic Acids Isolated from Diverse Arctic Environments

Anuradha, V. , Nair, S.M. , Kumar, N.C. , 2011. Humic acids from the sediments of three ecologically different estuarine systems: a comparison. Int. J. Environ. 2, 174–184. doi: 10.6088/ijes.00202010018.
APHA , 1995. Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater. Am. Public Health Assoc. 5, 47–48.
Aslbrecht, R. , Petit, J.L. , Terrom, G. , Perissol, C. , 2011. Comparison between UV spectroscopy and nirs to assess the humification process during sewage sludge and green wastes co-composting. Bioresour. Technol. 102, 4495–4500. doi: 10.1016/j.biortech.2010.12.053.
Bailly, V.R. , 1976. Spectroscopie infra-rouge de quelques fractions d'acideshumiquesobtenues. Plant Soil. 45, 95–111. doi: org/10.1007/BF00011132.
Barnes, H. , Blackstock, J. , 1973. Estimation of lipids in marine animals and tissues: detailed investigation of the sulphophosphovanilun method for 'total' lipids. J. Exp. Mar. Biol. Ecol. 12, 103–118. doi: 10.1016/0022-0981(73)90040-3.
Baruah, M.K. , 1983. Organo-geochemical aspects of the formation of pyrite and organic sulphur in coal. PhD Thesis. Gauhati University.
Baruah, M.K. , 1986. Assignment of the I.R. absorption band at 1050 cm -1 in lignite humic acid. Fuel 65, 1756–1759. doi: 10.1016/0016-2361(86)90281-4.
Ching, Y. , Aiken, G.R. , Danielsen, K.M. , 1997. Binding of pyrene to aquatic and commercial humic substances: the role of molecular weight and aromaticity. Environ. Sci. Technol. 31, 1630–1635. doi: org/10.1021/es960404k.
Christensen, J.P. , 1989. Sulphate reduction and carbon oxidation rates in continental shelf sediments, an examination of off-shelf carbon transport. Cont. Shelf Res. 9, 223–246. doi: 10.1016/0278-4343(89)90025-3.
Cividanes, S. , Incera, M. , Lopez, J. , 2002. Temporal variability in the biochemical composition of sedimentary organic matter in an intertidal flat of the Galician coast (NW Spain). Oceanol. Acta. 25, 1–12. doi: org/10.1016/S0399-1784(01)01178-1.
Colombo, J.C. , Silverberg, N. , Gearing, J.N. , 1996. Biogeochemistry of organic matter in the Laurentian Trough, II. Bulk composition of the sediments and relative reactivity of major components during early diagenesis. Mar. Chem. 51, 295–314. doi: org/10.1016/0304-4203(95)00060-7.
Cottier, F.R. , Nilsen, F. , Skogseth, R. , Tverberg, V. , Skardhamar, J. , Svendsen, H. , 2014. Arctic fjords: a review of the oceanographic environment and dominant physical processes. Geol. Soc. Spec. Publ. 344, 35–50. doi: org/10.1144/SP344.4.

Danovaro, R. , Fabiano, M. , Dell Croce, N. , 1993. Labile organic matter and microbial biomass in deep-sea sediments (Eastern Mediterranean Sea). Deep-Sea Res. Pt. I. 40, 953–965. doi: 10.1016/0967-0637(93)90083-F.

Davies, G. , Ghabbor, E.A. , 1998. Humic Substances: Structures, Properties and Uses. Royal Society of Chemistry, Cambridge.

Dell'Anno, A. , Fabiano, M. , Mei, M.L. , Danovaro, R. , 2000. Enzymatically hydrolyzed protein and carbohydrate pools in deep-sea sediments: estimates of the bioavailable fraction and methodological considerations. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 196, 15–23. doi: 10.3354/meps196015.

Dell'Anno, A. , Mei, M.L. , Pusceddu, A. , Danovaro, R. , 2002. Assessing the trophic state and eutrophication of coastal marine systems. A new approach based on the biochemical composition of sediment organic matter. Mar. Pollut. 44, 611–622. doi: 10.1016/s0025-326x(01)00302-2.

Dick, D.P. , Burba, P. , Herzog, H. , 1999. Influence of extractant and soil type on molecular characteristics of humic substances from two Brazilian soils. J. Braz. Chem. Soc. 10, 140–145. doi: 10.1590/S0103-50531999000200012.

Fabiano, M. , Danovaro, R. , 1998. Enzymatic activity, bacterial distribution and organic matter composition in sediments of the Ross Sea (Antarctica). App. Environ. Microbiol. 64, 3838–3845. doi: 10.1128/AEM.64.10.3838-3845.1998.

Fabiano, M. , Danovaro, R. , Fraschetti, S. , 1995. A three-year time-series of the elemental and biochemical composition of organic matter in sub-tidal sandy sediments of the Ligurian Sea (Northwestern Mediterranean). Cont. Shelf Res. 15, 1453–1469. doi: 10.1016/0278-4343(94)00088-5.

Fengler, G. , Grossman, D. , Kersten, M. , Liebezeit, G. , 1994. Trace metals in humic acids from recent Skagerrak sediments. Mar. Pollut. Bull. 28, 143–147. doi: org/10.1016/0025-326X(94)90389-1.

Field, J.A. , Lettinga, G. , 1987. The methanogenic toxicity and anaerobic degradability of a hydrolysable tannin. Wat. Res. 21, 367–374. doi: 10.1016/0043-1354(87)90217-X.

Finar, I.L. , 1976. Organic Chemistry, Volume I, Longman, Singapore.

Fong, S.S. , Lau, I.L. , Chong, W.N. , Asing, J. , Faizal, M. , Nor, M. , Satirawaty, A. , Pauzan, M. , 2006. Characterization of coal-derived humic acids from Mukah, Sarawak as a soil conditioner. J. Braz. Chem. Soc. 17, 582–587. doi: 10.1590/S0103-50532006000300023.

Galois, R. , Blanchard, G. , Seguignes, M. , Huet, V. , Joassard, L. , 2000. Spatial distribution of sediment particulate organic matter on two estuarine intertidal mudflats: a comparison between Marennes-Oleron Bay (France) and the Humber Estuary (UK). Cont. Shelf Res. 20, 1199–1217. doi: 10.1016/S0278-4343(00)00019-4.

Gerachov, S.M. , Hatcher, P.G. , 1972. Improved technique for analysis of carbohydrate in the sediment. Limnol. Oceanogr. 17, 938–943. doi: 10.4319/lo.1972.17.6.0938.

Ghosh, K. , Schnitzer, M. , 1979. UV and visible absorption spectroscopic investigations in relation to macromolecular characteristics of humic substances. J. Soil Sci. 30, 735–745. doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2389.1979.tb01023.x.

Giovanela, M. , Parlanti, E. , Soriano-Sierra, E.J. , Soldi, M.S. , Sierra, M.M.D. , 2004. Elemental compositions, FTIR spectra and thermal behaviour of sedimentary fulvic and humic acids from aquatic and terrestrial environments. Geochem. J. 38, 255–264. doi: 10.2343/geochemj.38.255.

Gremare, A. , Medernach, L. , deBovee, F. , Amouroux, J.M. , Vetion, G. , Albert, P. , 2002. Relationships between sedimentary organics and benthic meiofauna on the continental shelf and the upper slope of the Gulf of Lions (NW Mediterranean). Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 234, 85–94. doi: 10.3354/meps234085.

Hatcher, P.G. , Breger, I.A. , Mattingly, M. , 1980. A structural characterization of fulvic acids from continental shelf sediments. Nature 285, 560–562. doi: 10.1038/285560a0.

Henrichs, S.M. , 1992. Early diagenesis of organic matter in marine sediments: progress and perplexity. Mar. Chem. 39, 119–149. doi: org/10.1016/0304-4203(92)90098-U.

IHSS , 2010a. Natural organic matter research, Isolation of IHSS samples. http://www.humicsubstances.org/isolation.html.

IHSS , 2010b. Natural organic matter research, Elemental composition and stable isotopic ratios of IHSS samples. http://www.humicsubstances.org/elements.html.

Joseph, M.M. , Kumar, C.R.S. , Kumar, T.G.R. , Renjith K.R. , Chandramohanakumar, N. , 2008. Biogeochemistry of surficial sediments in the intertidal systems of a tropical environment. Chem. Ecol. 24, 247–258. doi: 10.1080/02757540802119871.

Kachari, M. , Belwar, P. , Dutta, K. , Sarmah, A. , Saikia, P.P. , Baruah, M.K. , 2015. Ultraviolet-visible and Infrared spectroscopic studies of soil humic acids. *Int. J. Plant Soil Sci* . 6, 194–202.
Kalesh, N.S. , Sujatha, C.H. , Nair, S.M. , 2001. Dissolved Folin phenol active substances (Tannin and Lignin) in the seawater along the west coast of India. J. Oceanogr. 57, 29–36. doi: 10.9734/IJPSS/2015/16032.
Klavins, M. , Purmalis, O. , Rodinov, V. , 2013. Peat humic acid properties and factors influencing their variability in a temperate bog ecosystem. Est. J. Ecol. 62, 35–52. doi: 10.3176/eco.2013.1.04.
Kononova, M.M. , 1966. Soil Organic Matter, Its Nature, Its Role in Soil Formation and Soil Fertility. Second English edition, Pergamon, Oxford.
Kumada, K. , 1987. Chemistry of Soil Organic Matter. Japan Scientific Societies Press, Tokyo.
Loring, D.H. , Rantala, R.T.T. , 1992. Manual for the geochemical analyses of marine sediments and suspended particulate matter. Earth Sci. Rev. 32, 235–283. doi: 10.1016/0012-8252(92)90001-A.
Lowry, O.H. , Rosebrough, N.J. , 1951. Protein measurement with the Folin phenol reagent. J. Biol. Chem. 193, 265–275.
Maccarthy, P. , 2001. The principles of humic substances. Soil Sci. 166, 738–751. doi: 10.1097/00010694-200111000-00003.
Naidja, A. , Huang, P.M. , Anderson, D.W. , Kessel, C.V. , 2002. Fourier Transform Infrared, UV-Visible, and X-ray Diffraction analyses of organic matter in humin, humic acid and fulvic acid fractions in soil exposed to elevated CO 2 and N fertilization. Appl. Spectrosc. 56, 318–324. doi: 10.1366/0003702021954908.
Nair, S.M. , Balchand, A.N. , Nambisan, P.N.K. , 1989. On the determination and distribution of hydroxylated aromatic compounds in estuarine waters. Toxicol. Environ. Chem. 23, 203–213. doi: 10.1080/02772248909357439.
Nissenbaum, A. , Swaine, D.J. , 1976. Organic matter-metal interactions in recent sediments: the role of humic substances. Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta 40, 809–816. doi: 10.1016/0016-7037(76)90033-8.
Perminova, I.V. , 1999. Size exclusion chromatography of humic substances: Complexities of data interpretation attributable to non-size exclusion effects. Soil Sci. 164, 834–840. doi: 10.1097/00010694-199911000-00008.
Peuravuori, J. , Pihlaja, K. , 1997. Molecular size distribution and spectroscopic properties of aquatic humic substances. Anal. Chim. Acta. 337, 133–149. doi: 10.1016/S0003-2670(96)00412-6.
Pusceddu, A. , Bianchelli, S. , Gambi, C. , Danovaro, R. , 2011. Assessment of the benthic trophic status of marine coastal ecosystems: Significance of nneiofaunal rare taxa. Estuar. Coast. Shelf Sci. 93, 420–430. doi: 10.1016/j.ecss.2011.05.012.
Pusceddu, A. , Dell Anno, A. , Fabiano, M. , 2000. Organic matter composition in coastal sediments at Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea) during summer 1995. Pol. Biol. 23, 288–293. doi: 10.1007/s003000050446.
Pusceddu, A. , Dell’Anno, A. , Fabiano, M. , Danovaro, R. , 2009. Quantity and bioavailability of sediment organic matter as signatures of benthic trophic status. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 375, 41–52. doi: 10.3354/meps07735.
Rashid, M.A. , 1972. Amino acids associated with marine sediments and humic compounds and their role in the solubility and complexing of metals. *Proc. 24th Int. Geol. Congr., Montreal 1972, Section 10 (Geochemistry)* . pp. 346–353.
Rashid, M.A. , 1985. Geochemistry of Marine Humic Compounds. Springer Verlag, New York.
Rashid, M.A. , King, L.H. , 1969. Molecular weight measurements on humic and fulvic acid fractions from marine clays on the Scotian Shelf. Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta 33, 147–151. doi: 10.1016/0016-7037(69)90099-4.
Rashid, M.A. , King, L.H. , 1971. Chemical characteristics of fractionated humic acids associated with marine sediments. Chem. Geol. 7, 37–43. doi: 10.1016/0009-2541(71)90030-1.
Renjith, K.R. , Joseph, M.M. , Ghosh, P. , Rahman, K.H. , Kumar, C.S.R. , Chandramohanakumar, N. , 2012. Biogeochemical facsimile of the organic matter quality and trophic status of a micro-tidal tropical estuary. Environ. Earth Sci. 70, 729–742. doi: 10.1007/s12665-012-2159-0.
Rice, J.A. , MacCarthy, P. , 1991. Statistical evaluation of the elemental composition of humic substances. Org. Geochem. 17, 635–648. doi: 10.1016/0146-6380(91)90006-6.

Saito, Y. , Hayano, S. , 1981. Characterization of humic and fulvic acids isolated from marine sediments of Sagami and Suruga Bays with C-13 and proton nuclear magnetic resonance. J. Oceanogr. Soc. Jpn. 36, 286–292. doi: 10.1007/BF02070157.
Sarma, B.K. , 2011. Spectroscopy. Goel Publishing House, Meerut.
Schnitzer, M. , 1971. Characterization of humic constituents by spectroscopy. In: McLaren, A.D. , Skujins, J. , (Eds.), Soil Biochemistry, Marcel Dekker, New York.
Schnitzer, M. , 1977. Recent findings on the characterization of humic substances extracted from soils from widely differing climatic zones. Soil Org. Matter Stud. 117–132.
Schnitzer, M. , Khan, S.U. , 1972. Humic Substances in the Environment. Marcel Dekker, New York.
Sierra, M.M.D. , Giovanel, M. , Parlanti, E. , Esteves, V.I. , Duarte, A.C. , Fransozo, A. , Soriano, S.E.J. , 2004. Structural description of humic substances from subtropical coastal environments using elemental analysis, FT-IR and 13Csolid-state NMR data. J. Coast. Res. 42, 219–231.
Silverstain, R.M. , Bassler, G.C. , Morrill, T.C. , 1981. Spectroscopic Identification of Organic Compounds, John Wiley & Sons, New York.
Solomon, D. , Lehmann, J. , Martinez, C.E. , 2003. Sulfur K-edge XANES spectroscopy as a tool for understanding sulfur dynamics in soil organic matter. Soil Sci. Soc. Am. J. 67, 1721–1731. doi: 10.2136/sssaj2003.1721.
Stevenson, F.J. , 1982. Extraction, Fraction and General Chemical Composition of Soil Organic Matter, In Stevenson, F.J. (Ed.), Humus Chemistry, Genesis, Composition, Reactions. John Wiley and Sons, New York.
Stevenson, F.J. , 1994. Humus Chemistry- Genesis, Composition, Reactions. 2nd edition, Wiley, New York.
Stevenson, F.J. , Goh, K.M. , 1971. Infra-red spectra of humic acids and related substances. Geochim. Cosmochim. Acta 35, 471–483. doi: 10.1016/0016-7037(71)90044-5.
Stevenson, I.L. , Schnitzer, M. , 1982. Transmission electron microscopy of extracted fulvic and humic acids. Soil Sci. 133, 179–185.
Stuermer, D.H. , Harvey, G.R. , 1978. Structural studies on marine humus: a new reduction sequence for carbon skeleton determination. Mar. Chem. 6, 55–70. doi: 10.1016/0304-4203(78)90006-3.
Stuermer, D.H. , Peters, K.E. , Kaplan, I.R. , 1978. Source indicators of humic substances and protokerogen: stable isotope ratios, elemental compositions and electron-spin resonance spectra. Gechim. Cosmochim. Acta 42, 989–997. doi: 10.1016/0016-7037(78)90288-0.
Uyguner, C.S. , Bekbolet, M. , 2004. Implementation of spectroscopic parameters for practical monitoring of natural organic matter. Desalination 176, 47–55. doi: 10.1016/j.desal.2004.10.027.

Arctic Phyto-Technology

Carlson PS , Smith HN , and Dearing R.D. 1972. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 69: 2292–2294.
Chaturvedi HC , and Mitra G.C. 1975. Ann. Bot. 39: 683–687.
Chaturvedi HC , and Sharma A.K. 1985. Planta 165: 142–144.
Chaturvedi HC , and Sharma A.K. 1988. Plant Tissue Culture, In: Proc. Natl. Seminar on Plant Tissue Culture, ICAR, New Delhi, pp. 36–46.
Chaturvedi HC , and Sharma M. 1990. Proc. VII Intl. Cong., Plant Tissue and Cell Culture, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, p. 247.
Chaturvedi HC , and Sinha M. 1979a. Indian J. Exp. Biol. 17: 153–157.
Chaturvedi HC , and Sinha M. 1979b. *Mass Propagation of Dioscorea floribunda by Tissue Culture. Extn. Bull. No. 6*, EBIS, NBRI, Lucknow, p. 12.
Chaturvedi HC , Prasad RN , Sharma AK , Mishra P , Sharma M , Jain M , and Bhattacharya A. 1995. Advances in Horticulture, In: vol. 12, Ornamental Plants. Eds. K.L. Chadha and S.K. Bhattacharjee , Malhotra Publishing House, New Delhi, pp. 562–581.
Chaturvedi HC , Sharma AK , Prasad RN , and Sharma M. 1988. Plant Tissue Culture, In: Proc. Natl. Seminar, ICAR, New Delhi, pp. 76–90.
Chaturvedi HC , Sharma AK , Sharma M , and Sane P.V. 1991. Conservation of Plant Genetic Resources through *In Vitro* Methods, In: FRIM/MNCPGR, Univ. Kebangsaan, Malaysia, pp.

29–41.
Chaturvedi HC , Sharma M , and Sharma A.K. 1994. Proc. 81st Ind. Sci. Cong. Pt. III (Bot.), p. 183.
Chaturvedi H.C. 1975. Curr. Sci. 44: 839–841.
Chaturvedi H.C. 1979. Progress in Plant Research, In: vol. 1. Eds. T.N. Khoshoo and P.K.K. Nair , Today and tomorrow's Printers and Publishers, New Delhi, pp. 265–288.
Chupeau Y , Missonier C , Hommel MC , and Goujaud J. 1979. Mol. Gen. Genet. 165: 239–245.
Dale PJ , Trwin JA , and Scheffler J.A. 1993. Plant Breed. 111: 1–22.
Dubey R.K. 2013, Indian J. Appl. Res. 3(11): 18–21.
Durzan D.J. 1985. Tissue Culture in Forestry and Agriculture. Eds. R.R. Henke , K.W. Hughes , M.J. Constantin and A. Hollaender , Plenum Press, NY, pp. 233–256.
Elliott F.C. 1958. Plant Breeding and Cytogenetics. McGraw Hill, NY.
Finnegan J , and McElory D. 1994. Bio/Technology 12: 883–888.
Gautheret R.J. 1948. C.R. Soc. Biol. 142: 807–808.
Gmitter FG, Jr. and Ling X. 1991. J. Am. Soc. Hort. Sci. 116: 317–321.
Haberlandt G. 1902. Sitzber. Kais Akad. WIss, Math-natur wiss I, 69–92.
Hazarika B.N. 2006. Sci. Hort. 108: 105–120.
Hu H. 1978. Proc. Symp. On Plant Tissue Culture. Science Press, Peking, pp. 3–10.
Hulse JH , and Spurgeon D. 1974. Sci. Am. 231: 72–80.
Jain M , Banerji R , Nigam SK , Scheffer JJC , and Chaturvedi H.C. 1991. Planta Medica 57: 122–124.
Jain, S.M. , Sopory, S.K. and Veilleux, R.E. (Eds.) 1996. *In Vitro* Haploid Production in Higher Plants, In: vol. 1, Fundamental Aspects and Methods, Kluwer Academic Publishers, The Netherlands, p. 356.
Johnson, I.S. 1983. Science 219: 632–637.
Kartha K.K. 1985. Cryopreservation of Plant Cells and Organs, CRC Press Inc., Boca Raton, pp. 116–134.
Kassanis B. 1957. Ann. Appl. Biol. 45: 422–427.
Kreuger M , and van Holst G. 1993. Planta 189: 243–248.
Kumar D.R. , and Kumar S.A. 2015, Eur. Acad. Res. III(6): 6134–6157.
Kumar D.R. , and Kumar S.A. 2015, Int. J. Innov. Res. Sci. Eng. Technol. 4(8): 7007–7007.
Laibach F. 1925. Z. Bot. 17: 417–559.
Larkin PJ , and Scowcroft W.R. 1981. Theor. Appl. Genet. 60: 197–214.
Lazar MD , Chen THH , Scoles GJ , and Kartha K.K. 1987. Plant Sci. 51: 77–81.
Liu C , Xu Z , and Chua N. 1993. The Plant Cell 5: 621–630.
Macilwain C. 1996. Nature 882: 289.
Meghwal PR , Sharma HC , Goswami AM , and Srivastava K.N. 2001. Indian J. Hort. 58: 328–331.
Miller CO , Skoog F , Okumura FS , von Saltza MH , and Strong F.M. 1955. J. Am. Chem. Soc. 77: 2662–2663.
Morel G , and Martin C. 1952. C.R. Acad. Sci. 235: 1324–1325.
Morel G. 1960. Am. Orchid Soc. Bull. 29: 495–497.
Morel G. 1964. Am. Orchid Soc. Bull. 31: 473–477.
Morris P , Scragg AM , Stafford A , and Fowler M.W. (Eds.) 1986. Secondary Metabolism in Plant Cell Cultures, Cambridge Univ. Press, Cambridge.
Mu S , Liu S , Zhou Y , Quan N , Zhang P , Xie H , Zhang F , and Yen Z. 1977. Sci. Sin. 55: 370–376.
Navarro L , and Juarez J. 1977. Acta Hortic. 78: 425–435.
Oelck MM , and Schieder O. 1983. Z. Pflanzenzucht. 91: 312–321.
Pospisilova J , Ticha I , Kadlecek P , Haisel D , and Plazakova S. 1999. Biol. Plant. 42: 481–489.
Redenbaugh K , Paasch BD , Nichol JW , Kossler ME , Viss PR , and Walker K.A. 1986. Bio/Technology 4: 797–801.
Redenbaugh K. 1993. Synseeds, Applications of Synthetic Seeds to Crop Improvement, CRC Press Inc., Boca Raton, p. 481.

Robbins WJ , and Bartley M.A. 1937. Science 86: 290–291.
Robbins WJ , and Bartley S.M. 1939. Prof. Natl. Acad. Sci. 25: 1–3.
Sahu J , and Sahu R.K. 2013. J. Pharm. Biosci. 1: 38–41.
Semal J , and Lepoivre P. 1990. Plant Tissue Culture: Applications and Limitations, Ed. S.S. Bhojwani , Elsevier Science Publishing Co. Inc., The Netherlands, pp. 301–315.
Shields R , Robinson SJ , and Anslow P.A. 1984. Plant Cell Rep. 3: 33–36.
Shuquiong L , and Jaiqu L. 1980. Acta Bot. Sin. 22: 198–199.
Skirvin RM , Motoike S , Norton MA , Ozgur M , Al–Juboory K , and McMeans O.M. 1999. In Vitro Cell. Dev. Biol.-Plant 35: 278–280.
Skoog F , and Miller C.O. 1957. Symp. Soc. Exp. Biol. 11: 118–131.
Smith HH , Kao KN , and Combatti N.C. 1976. J. Hered. 67: 123–128.
Srivastava P.S. 1973. Z. Pflanzenphysiol. 69: 270–273.
Steward F.C. 1958. Am. J. Bot. 45: 709–713.
Thorpe A. (Ed.) 1995. In Vitro Embryogenesis in Plants, Kluwer Academic Publishers, The Netehrlands, p. 558.
Tulecke W , and Nickell L.G. 1959. Science 130: 863–864.
Wang T , and Chang C. 1978. Proc. Symp. on Plant Tissue Cutlure, Science Press, Peking, pp. 463–467.
White P.R. 1934. Phytopath 24: 1003–1011.
Xiao Y , Niu G , and Kozai T. 2011. Plant Cell Tiss. Org. Cult. 105(2): 149–158.
Yang HY , and Zhou C. 1990. Plant Tissue Culture: Applications and Limitations, Ed. S.S. Bhojwani , Elsevier Sci. Publishing Co. Inc., The Netherlands.
Zenkteler M. 1984. Cell Culture and Somatic Cell Genetics of Plants, In: vol. 1, Laboratory Procedures and their Applications, Ed. I.K. Vasil , Acad. Press Inc., NY, pp. 269–275.

Bio-Optical Characteristics in Relation to Phytoplankton Composition and Productivity in a Twin Arctic Fjord Ecosystem during Summer

Aguilar-Maldonado J , Santamaría-del-Ángel E , González-Silvera A , Cervantes-Rosas O , López L , Gutiérrez-Magness A , Cerdeira-Estrada S , Sebastiá-Frasquet MT (2018) Identification of phytoplankton blooms under the index of Inherent Optical Properties (IOP index) in optically complex waters. Water 10(2), 129.
Alcântara E , Watanabe F , Rodrigues T , Bernardo N (2016) An investigation into the phytoplankton package effect on the chlorophyll-a specific absorption coefficient in Barra Bonita reservoir, Brazil. Remote Sensing Letters 7(8), 761–770.
Bhaskar JT , Parli BV , Tripathy SC (2020) Spatial and seasonal variations of dinoflagellates and ciliates in the Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Marine Ecology 41(3), 1–12.
Bhaskar JT , Tripathy SC , Sabu P , Laluraj CM , Rajan S (2016) Variation of phytoplankton assemblages of Kongsfjorden in early autumn 2012: a microscopic and pigment ratio-based assessment. Environmental Monitoring Assessment 188(4), 1–13.
Bischof K. et al. (2019) Kongsfjorden as Harbinger of the Future Arctic: Knowns, Unknowns and Research Priorities. In: Hop H. , Wiencke C. (eds.), The Ecosystem of Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Advances in Polar Ecology, Vol 2. Springer, Cham.
Bricaud A , Babin M , Morel A , Claustre H (1995) Variability in the chlorophyll-specific absorption coefficients of natural phytoplankton: analysis and parameterization. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 100(C7), 13321–13332.
Bricaud A , Claustre H , Ras J , Oubelkheir K (2004) Natural variability of phytoplanktonic absorption in oceanic waters: influence of the size structure of algal populations. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 109(C11).
Calleja ML , Kerhervé P , Bourgeois S , Kędra M , Leynaert A , Devred E , Babin M , Morata N (2017) Effects of increase glacier discharge on phytoplankton bloom dynamics and pelagic geochemistry in a high Arctic fjord, Progress in Oceanography doi.: 10.1016/j.pocean.2017.07.005.
Chakraborty S , Lohrenz SE , Gundersen K (2017) Photophysiological and lightabsorption properties of phytoplankton communities in the river-dominated margin of the northern Gulf of

Mexico. Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 122, 4922–4938.
Cleveland JS , Weidemann AD (1993) Quantifying absorption by aquatic particles: A multiple scattering correction for glassfiber filters. Limnology and Oceanography 38(6), 1321–1327.
Cohen JH , Screen JA , Furtado JC , Barlow M , Whittleston D , Coumou D , et al. (2014) Recent arctic amplification and extreme mid-latitude weather. Nature Geoscience 7, 627–637.
Darlington E (2015) Meltwater Delivery from the Tidewater Glacier Kronebreen to Kongsfjorden, Svalbard; Insights from in situ and Remote-Sensing Analyses of sediment plumes (PhD Thesis). Loughborough University.
David DT , Krishnan, KP (2017) Recent variability in the Atlantic water intrusion and water masses in Kongsfjorden, an Arctic fjord. Polar Science 11, 30–41.
Eilertsen HC , Taasen JP , Weslawski JM (1989) Phytoplankton studies in the fjords of West Spitzbergen: physical environment and production in spring and summer. Journal of Plankton Research 11, 1245–1260.
Ferrari GM (2000) The relationship between chromophoric dissolved organic matter and dissolved organic carbon in the European Atlantic coastal area and in the West Mediterranean Sea (Gulf of Lions). Marine Chemistry 70(4), 339–357.
Ferreira A , Ciotti AM , Mendes CRB , Uitz J , Bricaud A (2017) Phytoplankton light absorption and the package effect in relation to photosynthetic and Photoprotective pigments in the northern tip of Antarctic Peninsula Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 122, 7344–7363. doi: 10.1002/2017JC012964.
Halbach L , Vihtakari M , Duarte P , Everett A , Granskog MA , Hop H , Kauko HM , Kristiansen S , Myhre PI , Pavlov AK , Pramanik A , Tatarek A , Torsvik T , Wiktor JM , Wold A , Wulff A , Steen H , Assmy P (2019) Tidewater glaciers and bedrock characteristics control the phytoplankton growth environment in a fjord in the arctic. Frontiers in Marine Science 6, 254.
Harrison PJ , Conway HL , Holmes RW , Davis CO (1977) Marine diatoms in chemostats under silicate or ammonium limitation.III. Cellular chemical composition and morphology of three diatoms. Marine Biology 43, 19–31.
Hegseth EN , Assmy P , Wiktor J , Kristiansen S , Leu E , Piquet AMT , et al. (2019) Phytoplankton seasonal dynamics in Kongsfjorden, Svalbard and the adjacent shelf, In The Ecosystem of Kongsfjorden, Svalbard, Advances in Polar Ecology 2, H. Hop and C. Wiencke (eds.), Cambridge, Springer, pp. 173–228.
Hegseth EN , Tverberg V (2013) Effect of Atlantic water inflow on timing of the phytoplankton spring bloom in a high Arctic fjord (Kongsfjorden, Svalbard). Journal of Marine Systems 113–114, 94–105.
Hodal H , Falk-Petersen S , Hop H , Kristiansen S , Reigstad M (2012) Spring bloom dynamics in Kongsfjorden, Svalbard: nutrients, phytoplankton, protozoans and primary production. Polar Biology 35, 191–203.
Hop H , Falk–Petersen S , Svendsen H , Kwasniewski S , Pavlov V , Pavlova O , Søreide JE (2006) Physical and biological characteristics of the pelagic system across Fram Strait to Kongsfjorden. Progress in Oceanography 71, 182–231.
Hop H , Pearson TH , Hegset EN , Kovacs KM , Wiencke C , Kwasniewski S , et al. (2002) The marine ecosystemof Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Polar Research 21, 167–208.
JGOFS (1994) Protocols for the joint global ocean flux study (JGOFS) core measurements. IOC Manual and Guides 29, 181.
Johnsen G , Sakshaug E (2007) Bio-optical characteristics of PSII and psi in 33 species (13 pigment groups) of marine phytoplankton, and the relevance for pulse amplitude-modulated and fast-repetition-rate fluorometry. Journal of Phycology 43, 1236–1251.
Kerkar AU , Tripathy SC , David JH , Pandi SR , Sabu P , Tiwari M (2021) Characterization of phytoplankton productivity and bio-optical variability of a polar marine ecosystem. Progress in Oceanography 195, 102573.
Kerkar AU , Tripathy SC , Minu P , Baranval N , Sabu P , Patra S , Mishra RK , Sarkar A (2020) Variability in primary productivity and bio-optical properties in the Indian sector of the Southern Ocean during an austral summer. Polar Biology 43(10), 1469–1492.
Kirk JTO (1994) Light and Photosynthesis in Aquatic Ecosystems. Cambridge University Press, p. 509.
Kowalczuk P , Sagan S , Makarewicz A , Meler J , Borzycka K , Zabłocka M , et al. (2019) Bio-optical properties of surface waters in the Atlantic Water inflow region off Spitsbergen (Arctic Ocean). Journal of Geophysical Research: Oceans 124, 1964–1987.

Kulk G , van de Poll WH , Buma AGJ (2018) Photophysiology of nitrate limited phytoplankton communities in Kongsfjorden, *Spitsbergen Limnology and Oceanography* 63, 2606–2617.
Kurian S , Roy R , Repeta DJ , Gauns M , Shenoy DM , Suresh T. et al. (2012) Seasonal occurrence of anoxygenic photosynthesis in Tillari and Selaulim reservoirs, western India. Biogeosciences 9(7), 2485–2495. doi: 10.5194/bg-9-2485-2012.
Levasseur ME , Therriault JC (1987) Phytoplankton biomass and nutrient dynamics in a tidally induced upwelling: the role of NO 3 :SiO 4 ratio. Marine Ecology Progress Series 39, 87–97.
Lohrenz SD , Weidemann AD , Tuel M (2003) Phytoplankton spectral absorption as influenced by community size structure and pigment composition. Journal of Plankton Research 25(1), 35–61.
Matsuoka A , Larouche P , Poulin M , Vincent W , Hattori H (2009) Phytoplankton community adaptation to changing light levels in the southern Beaufort Sea, Canadian Arctic. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 82, 537–546.
Mendes CRB , Kerr R , Tavano V.M. et al. (2015) Cross-front phytoplankton pigments and chemotaxonomic groups in the Indian sector of the Southern Ocean. Deep-Sea Research II 118, 221–232.
Mitchell BG (1990) Algorithms for determining the absorption coefficient for aquatic particulates using the quantitative filter technique. In Ocean Optics X, Vol 1302, International Society for Optics and Photonics, pp. 137–148.
Mitchell BG , Kahru M , Wieland J , Stramska M (2002) Determination of spectral absorption coefficients of particles, dissolved material and phytoplankton for discrete water samples. In GS Fargion , JL Mueller (eds.), Ocean Optics Protocols For Satellite Ocean Color Sensor Validation, Revision 3, NASA Tech. Memo., Vol 2, Greenbelt, MD, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Goddard Space Flight Center, pp. 231–257.
Not F , Massana R , Latasa M. et al. (2005) Late summer community composition and abundance of photosynthetic picoeukaryotes in Norwegian and Barents Sea. Limnology Oceanography 50, 1677–1686.
Palmisano AC , SooHoo JB , SooHoo SL , Kottmeier ST , Craft LL , Sullivan CW (1986): Photoadaptation in *Phaeocystispouchetii* advected beneath annual sea ice in McMurdo Sound, Antarctica. Journal of Plankton Research 8(5), 891–906.
Para J , Coble PG , Charriere B , Tedetti M , Fontana C , Sempere R (2010) Fluorescence and absorption properties of chromophoric dissolved organic matter (CDOM) in coastal surface waters of the northwestern Mediterranean Sea, influence of the Rhone River. Biogeosciences 7, 4083–4103.
Pavlov AK , Silyakova A , Granskog MA , Bellerby RGJ , Engel A , Schulz KG , Brussaard, CPD (2014) Marine CDOM accumulation during a coastal Arctic mesocosm experiment: no reposne to elevated pCO 2 levels. Journal of Geophysical Research 119, 1216–1230.
Payne CM , Roesler CS (2019) Characterizing the influence of Atlantic water intrusion on water mass formation and phytoplankton distribution in Kongsfjorden, Svalbard. Continental Shelf Research 191, 104005. doi: 10.1016/j.csr.2019.104005.
Pettersen R , Johnsen G , Berge J , Hovland EK (2011) Phytoplankton chemotaxonomy in waters around the Svalbard archipelago reveals high amounts of Chl *b* and presence of gyroxanthin-diester. Polar Biology 34:627–635.
Pielou EC (1966) The measurement of diversity in different types of biological collections. Journal of Theoretical Biology 13, 131–144.
Piquet AMT , Scheepens JF , Bolhuis H , Wiencke C , Buma AGJ (2010) Variability of protistan and bacterial communities in two Arctic fjords (Spitsbergen). Polar Biology 33, 1521–1536. doi: 10.1007/s00300-010-0841-9.
Piquet AMT , van de Poll WH , Visser RJW , Wiencke C , Bolhuis H , Buma AGJ (2014) Springtime phytoplankton dynamics in Arctic Krossfjorden and Kongsfjorden (Spitsbergen) as a function of glacier proximity. Biogeosciences 11, 2263–2279.
Piwosz K , Walkusz W , Hapter R , Wieczorek P , Hop H , Wiktor J (2009) Comparison of productivity and phytoplankton in a warm (Kongsfjorden) and a cold (Hornsund) Spitsbergen fjord in mid-summer 2002. Polar Biology 32, 549–559. doi: 10.1007/s00300-008-0549-2.
Shannon C , Weaver W (1949) The Mathematical Theory of Communication. Urbana, IL, University of Illinois Press, p. 117.
Shuman FR , Lorenzen CJ (1975) Quantitative degradation of chlorophyll by a marine herbivore. Limnology and Oceanography 20(4), 580–586.

Singh A , Krishnan KP (2019) The spatial distribution of phytoplankton pigments in the surface sediments of the Kongsfjorden and Krossfjorden ecosystem of Svalbard, Arctic. Regional Studies in Marine Science 31, 100815. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.rsma.2019.100815.

Stedmon CA , Markager S (2001) The optics of chromophoric dissolved organic matter (CDOM) in the Greenland Sea: an algorithm for differentiation between marine and terrestrially derived organic matter. Limnology Oceanography 46(8), 2087–2093.

Stedmon CA , Markager S , Kaas H (2000) Optical properties and signatures of Chromophoric Organic Dissolved Matter (CDOM) in Danish Coastal waters. Estuarine, Coastal and Shelf Science 51, 267–278.

Stramska M , Stramski D , Hapter R , Kaczmarek S , Stoń J (2003) Bio-optical relationships and ocean color algorithms for the north polar region of the Atlantic. Journal of Geophysical Research 108(C5), 3143. doi: 10.1029/2001JC001195.

Stramski D , Bricaud A , Morel A (2001) Modeling the inherent optical properties of the ocean based on the detailed composition of the planktonic community, Applied Optics 40(18), 2929–2945.

Svendsen H , Beszczynska-Møller A , Hagen JO , Lefauconnier B , Tverberg V , Gerland S , Ørbæk JB , Bischof K , Papucci C , Zajaczkowski M , Azzolini R , Bruland O , Wiencke C , Winther J-G , Dallmann W (2002) The physical environment of Kongsfjorden-Krossfjorden, an Arctic fjord system in Svalbard. Polar Research 21, 133–166.

Tripathy SC , Pavithran S , Sabu P , Naik RK , Noronha SB , Bhaskar PV , Kumar NA (2014) Is primary productivity in the Indian Ocean sector of Southern Ocean affected by pigment packaging effect? Current Science 107(6), 00113891.

Uitz J , Claustre H , Morel A , Hooker SB (2006) Vertical distribution of phytoplankton communities in open ocean: an assessment based on surface chlorophyll. Journal of Geophysical Research 111, C08005. doi: 10.1029/2005JC003207.

van de Poll WH , Kulk G , Rozema PD , Brussaard CPD , Visser JW , Buma AGJ (2018) Contrasting glacial meltwater effects on post-bloom phytoplankton on temporal and spatial scales in Kongsfjorden, Spitsbergen. Elementa: Science of the Anthropocene 6, 50. doi: 10.1525/elementa.307.

van de Poll WH , Maat D , Fischer P , Rozema P , Daly O , Koppelle S , et al. (2016) Atlantic advection driven changes in glacial meltwater: effects on phytoplankton chlorophyll-a and taxonomic composition in Kongsfjorden, Spitsbergen. Frontiers Marine Science 3, 200.

Vihtakari M , Welcker, J , Moe, B , Chastel O , Tartu S , Hop H , Bech C , Descamps S. , Gabrielsen GW (2018) Blacklegged kittiwakes as messengers of Atlantification in the Arctic. Scientific Reports 8, 1178.

Walczowski W , Beszczynska-Möller A , Wieczorek P , Merchel M , Grynczel A (2017) Oceanographic observations in the Nordic sea and fram strait in 2016 under the IO PAN long-term monitoring program AREX. Oceanologia 59, 187–194.

Wang J , Cota GF , Ruble DA (2005) Absorption and backscattering in the Beaufort and Chukchi Seas. Journal of Geophysical Research 110, doi: 10.1029/2002JC001653.

Wang SQ , Ishizaka J , Yamaguchi H , Tripathy SC , Hayashi M , Xu YJ , Mino Y , Matsuno T , Watanabe Y , Yoo SJ (2014) Influence of the Changjiang River on the light absorption properties of phytoplankton from the East China Sea. Biogeosciences 11(7), 1759–1773.

Welschmeyer NA (1994) Fluorometric analysis of chlorophyll a in the presence of chlorophyll b and pheopigments. Limnology Oceanography 39(8), 1985–1992.

Welschmeyer NA , Lorenzen CJ (1985) Chlorophyll budgets: Zooplankton grazing and phytoplankton growth in a temperate fjord and the Central Pacific Gyres. Limnology Oceanography 30(1), 1–21.

Woźniak B , Dera J , Ficek D , Majchrowski R , Kaczmarek S , Ostrowska M , Koblentz-Mishke OI (1999) Modelling the influence of acclimation on the absorption properties of marine phytoplankton. Oceanologia 41(2), 187–210.

Recent Advances in Seismo-Geophysical Studies for the Arctic Region under Climate Change Scenario

Aadlandsvik, B. , Loeng, H. , 1991. A study of the climate system of the Barents Sea, Polar Research 10(1), 45–49.

Alvey A. , Gaina, C. , Kusznir, N.J. , Torsvik, T.H. , 2008. Integrated crustal thickness mapping and plate reconstructions for the high Arctic, Earth and Planetary Science Letters 274, 310–321.

Ananyin, L.V. , Mordvinova, V.V. , Gots, M.F. , Kanao, M. , Suvorov, V.D. , Tatkov, G.I. , Thubanov, T.A. , 2009. Velocity structure of the crust and upper mantle in the Baikal Rift Zone on the long-term observations of broad-band seismic stations, Doklady Earth Science 428, 1067–1071.

Antonovskaya, G. , Konechnaya, Y. , Kremenetskaya, E.O. , Asming, V. , Kværna, T. , Schweitzer, J. , Ringdal F. , 2015. Enhanced earthquake monitoring in the European Arctic. Polar Science 9, 158–167. doi: 10.1016/j.polar.2014.08.003.

Artemieva, I.M. , Thybo, H. , 2013. EUNAseis: a seismic model for Moho and crustal structure in Europe, Greenland, and the North Atlantic region, Tectonophysics doi: 10.1016/j.tecto.2013.1008.1004.

Beka, T.I. , Bergh, S.G. , Smirnov, M. , Birkelund, Y. 2017a. Magnetotelluric signatures of the complex tertiary fold–thrust belt and extensional fault architecture beneath Brøggerhalvøya, Svalbard, Polar Research 36(1):1409586. doi: 10.1080/17518369.2017.1409586.

Beka, T.I. , Senger, K. , Autio, U.A. , Smirnov, M. , Birkelund, Y. , 2017b Integrated electromagnetic data investigation of a Mesozoic CO 2 storage target reservoir-cap-rock succession, Svalbard, Journal of Applied Geophysics 136, 417–430.

Bense, V.F. , Ferguson, G. , Kooi, H. , 2009. Evolution of shallow groundwater flow systems in areas of degrading permafrost, Journal of Geophysical Research 2009, 36.

Bjerregaard, P. , 1995. Health and environment in Greenland and other circumpolar areas, Science of the Total Environment 160/161, 521–527.

Bliss, L.C. , 1981. North American and Scandinavian tundras and polar deserts. In: L.C. Bliss , O.W. Heal and J.J. Moore (eds.), Tundra Ecosystems: A Comparitive Analysis. pp. 8–24. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Bondár, I. , Storchak, D. , 2011. Improved location procedure at the International Seismological Centre, Geophysical Journal International 186, 1220–1244.

Butler, R. , Anderson, K. , 2008. Global Seismographic Network (GSN), IRIS Annual Report, pp. 6–7.

CAFF , 1996. Proposed protected areas in the circumpolar Arctic (1996). Conservation of Arctis Flora and Fauna, Directorate for Nature Management, Trondheim, Habitat Conservation Report No. 2.

Chalmers, J.A. , Laursen, K.H. , 1995. Labrador Sea — the extent of continental and oceaniccrust and the timing of the onset of sea-floor spreading, Marine and Petroleum Geology 12, 205–217.

Chiu, K. , Snyder, D.B. , 2015. Regional seismic wave propagation (Lg & Sn phases) in the Amerasia Basin and High Arctic, Polar Science 130–145.

Dahl-Jensen, T. , Larsen, T.B. , Voss, P.H. , the GLISN Group , 2010. Greenland Ice Sheet Monitoring Network (GLISN): A Seismological Approach. GEUS Report of Survey Activities (ROSA) for 2009, pp. 55–58.

Dziak, R.P. , Park, M. , Lee, W.S. , Matsumoto, H. , Bohnenstiehl, D.R. , Haxel, J.H. , 2009. Tectono-magmatic activity and ice dynamics in the Bransfield Strait back-arc basin, Antarctica, Proceedings of the International Symposium on Polar Sciences 16, 59–68.

Einarsson, T. , 1980. Geology (in Icelandic). Mal og Menning, Reykjavik. p. 240.

Elíasson, J. , 1994. Northern hydrology in Iceland. In: T.D. Prowse , C.S.L. Ommaney and L.E. Watson (eds.). Northern Hydrology: International Perspectives. pp. 41–80. Environment Canada, Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, NHRI Science Report No. 3.

Encyclopedia Britannica , 1990. The New Encyclopedia Britannica. Chicago. Vol. 14, pp. 288–292.

Everett, K.R. , Vassiljevskaya, V.D. , Brown, J. , Walker, B.D. , 1981. Tundra and analogous soils. In: L.C. Bliss , O.W. Heal and J.J. Moore (eds.). Tundra Ecosystems: A Comparative Analysis. pp. 139–179. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Forsberg, R. , Kenyon, S. , 2004. Gravity and geoid in the Arctic region—the northern polar gap now filled, in Proceedings of the GOCE Workshop, p. 6, ESA-ESRIN Frascati, Italy, ESA Publications Division, Noordwijk, http://earth.esa.int/workshops/goce04/goce_proceedings/57_forsberg.pdf.
Gaina, C. , Roest, W.R. , Muller, R.D. , 2002. Late Cretaceous–Cenozoic deformation of northeast Asia, Earth and Planetary Science Letters 197, 273–286.
Geological Survey of Canada , 1995. Generalized Geological Map of the World, and Linked Databases.
Glebovsky, V.Y. , Kovacs, L.C. , Maschenkov, S.P. , Brozena, J.M. , (1998). Joint compilation of Russian and US Navy aeromagnetic data in the central Arctic seas. In: N. Roland and F. Tessesnsons , (eds.). *ICAM III; Third International Conference on Arctic Margins* . Polarforshung, pp. 35–40.
Grad M. , Mjelde, R. , Krysinski, L. , Czuba, W. , Libak, A. , Guterch, A. , IPY Project Group , 2015. Geophysical investigations of the area between the Mid-Atlantic Ridge and the Barents Sea: from water to the lithosphere-asthenosphere system, Polar Science 9(1), 168–183.
Hardisty, P. , Schilder, V. , Dabrowski, T. , Wells, J. , 1991. Yukon and Northwest Territories groundwater database. In: T.D. Prowse , C.S.L. Ommaney and L.E. Watson (eds.). Northern Hydrology: International Perspectives. pp. 465–482. Environment Canada, Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, NHRI Science Report No. 3.
Harrison, J.C. , Brent, T.A. , 2005. Basins and fold belts of Prince Patrick Island and adjacent area, Canadian Arctic Islands, Geological Survey of Canada, Bulletin 560, 208. doi: 10.4095/220345. CDROM.
Graham, H.J. , 2020. On the use of electromagnetics for earth imaging of the polar regions, Surveys in Geophysics 5–45, doi: 10.1007/s10712-019-09570-8.
Ikeda, M. , 1990a. Decadal oscillation of the air-sea-ocean system in the northern hemisphere, Atmosphere-Ocean 28, 106–139.
Ikeda, M. , 1990b. Feedback mechanism among decadal oscillations in the northern hemisphere atmospheric circulation, sea ice and ocean circulation, Annals Glaciology 14, 120–123.
International Seismological Centre , 2011. On-line Bulletin, http://www.isc.ac.uk. (International Seismological Centre, Thatcham, United Kingdom).
IOC, IHO, BODC , 2003. Centenary Edition of GEBCO Digital Atlas, published on CD-ROM on behalf of the Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission and the International Hydrographic Organization as part of the General Bathymetric Cart of the Oceans British Oceanographic Data Centre, Liverpool, UK.
IPCC , 2007. Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), 2007. Climate Change 2007: The Physical Science Basis. Contributions of Working Group1 to the Fourth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Cambridge University Press, p. 996.
Ives, J.D. , 1974. Permafrost. In: J.D. Ives and R.G. Barry (eds.). Arctic and Alpine Environments. pp. 159–194. Methuen and Co. Ltd., London.
Jacob, A.W.B. , Vees, R. , Braile, L.W. , Criley, E. , 1994. Optimization of wide-angle seismic signal-to-noise ratios and P-wave transmission in Kenya, Tectonophysics 236, 61–79.
Jordan, T.A. , Martin, C. , Ferraccioli, F. , Matsuoka, K. , Corr, H. , Forsberg, R. , Olesen, A. , Siegert, M. , 2018a. Anomalously high geothermal fux near the South Pole, Scientific Reports 8, 16785. doi: 10..1038/s41598-018-35182-0.
Jordan, T.M. , Williams, C.N. , Schroeder, D.M. , Martos, Y.M. , Cooper, M.A. , Siegert, M.J. , Paden, J.D. , Huybrechts, P. , Bamber, J.L. , 2018b. A constraint upon the basal water distribution and thermal state of the Greenland Ice Sheet from radar bed echoes, Cryosphere 12, 2831–2854 https://doi.org/10.5194/tc-12-2831-2018.
Kanao, M. , 2018a. Studies on Seismicity in the Polar Region in Book ‘Polar Seismology - Advances and Impact’, doi: 10.5772/intechopen.78554.
Kanao, M. , 2018b. Introduction: Progress of Seismology in Polar Region in Book ‘Polar Seismology - Advances and Impact’, doi: 10.5772/intechopen.78550.
Kanao, M. , 2018c. Seismological Studies on the Deep Interiors of the Earth Viewed from the Polar Region in Book ‘Polar Seismology - Advances and Impact’, doi: 10.5772/intechopen.78552.
Kanao, M. , Tsuboi, S. , Butler, R. , Anderson, K. , Dahl-Jensen, T. , Larsen, T. , Nettles, M. , Voss, P. , Childs, D. , Clinton, J. , Stutzmann, E. , Himeno, T. , Toyokuni, G. , Tanaka, S. ,

Tono, Y. , 2012. Greenland ice sheet dynamics and glacial earthquake activities. In: J. Müller and L. Koch (eds.). Ice Sheets: Dynamics, Formation and Environmental Concerns. pp. 93–120. Nova Science Publishers, Inc., Hauppauge, NY. Chap. 4.
Kanao, M. , Zhao, D. , Wiens, D.A. , Stutzmann, É. , 2015. Recent advance in polar seismology: Global impact of the International Polar Year, Polar Science 9(1), 1–4.
Kanao, M. , Suvorov, V.D. , Toda, S. , Tsuboi, S. , 2015. Seismicity, structure and tectonics in the Arctic region, Geoscience Frontiers 665–677.
Kennett, B.L.N. , 1986. Lg waves and structural boundaries, Bulletin of the Seismological Society of America 76, 1133–1141.
Khare, N. , Mishra, O.P. , Taguchi, S. , 2018. Recent advances in climate science of polar region, Polar Science 18, 1–4.
Kozlovskaya, E. , 2013. Monitoring of slow seismic events from Arctics using the data of the POLENET/LAPNET broadband temporary array. In: IAHS-IASPO-IASPEI.IUGG Joint Assembly, S105S2.03, Gothenburg, Sweden.
Sebastian, S.A. , Pomeroy, J.W. , Marsh, P. , 2017. Diagnosis of the hydrology of a small Arctic basin at the tundra-taiga transition using a physically based hydrological model, Journal of Hydrology 550, 685–703.
Kumar, P. , Kind, R. , Priestley, K. , Dahl-Jensen, T. , 2007. Crustal structure of Iceland and Greenland from receiver function studies, Journal of Geophysical Research: Solid Earth 112.
Kyle, P.R. , Moore, J.A. , Thirlwall, M.F. , 1992. Petrologic evolution of anorthoclase phonolite lavas at Mount Erebus, Ross Island, Antarctica, Journal of Petrology 3, 849–875.
Laidler, G.J. , Treitz, P. , 2003. Biophysical remote sensing of arctic environments, Progress in Physical Geography 27(1), 44–68.
Laske, G. , Masters, T.G. , , 1997. A global digital map of sediment thickness. Eos, Transactions. American Geophysical Union, p. 483.
Lebedeva-Ivanova, N.N. , Zamansky, Y.Y. , Langinen, A.E. , Sorokin, M.Y. , 2006. Seismic profiling across the Mendeleev Ridge at 82 N: evidence of continental crust. Geophysical Journal International 165, 527–544.
Lecher, A.L. , 2017. Groundwater discharge in the arctic: a review of studies and implications for biogeochemistry. Hydrology 4, 41; doi: 10.3390/hydrology403004.
Lecher, A.L. , Chuang, P.-C. , Singleton, M. , Paytan, A. , 2017. Sources of methane to an Arctic lake in Alaska: an isotopic investigation, Journal of Geophysical Research: Biogeosciences 122, 753–766.
Linell, K.A. , Tedrow, J.C.F. , 1981. Soil and Permafrost Surveys in the Arctic. Clarendon Press, Oxford, p. 279.
Logatchev, N.A. , Zorin, Y.A. , Rogozhina, V.A. , 1983. Baikal rift: active or passive? E comparison of the Baikal and Kenya rift zones. Tectonophysics 94(1–4), 223–240.
Loshchicov, V.S. , 1965. Snow cover on the ice of the central Arctic. Probl. Arktiki 17: 36–45. (In Russian).
Luzin, G.P. , Pretes, M. , Vasiliev, V.V. , 1994. The Kola Peninsula: geography, history and resources. Arctic 47: 1–15.
Mackay, D.K. , Løken, O.H. , 1974. Arctic hydrology. In: J.D. Ives and R.G. Barry (eds.). Arctic and Alpine Environments. pp. 111–132. Methuen and Co. Ltd., London.
Melnik E.A. , Suvorov, V.D. , Pavlov, E.V. , Mishenkina, Z.R. , 2015. Seismic and density heterogeneities of lithosphere beneath Siberia: evidence from the Craton long-range seismic profile. Polar Science 119–129.
Mishra, O.P. , 2014. Intricacies of the Himalayan seismotectonics and seismogenesis: need for integrated research. Current Science 106(2).
Mishra, O.P. , Khare, N. , Das, S.B. , Kumar, V. , Singh, J. , Singh, P. , Ghatak, M. , Shekhar, S. , Tiwari, A. , Gera, S.K. , Mahto, R. , Gusain, P. , 2021. Glacial mass change induced earthquakes in the Himalayan region of South Asia: one of the proxies of climate change? In: N. Khare (eds.). Understanding Present and Past Arctic Environments. Elsevier.
Molnar, P. , Tapponnier, P. , 1975. Cenozoic tectonics of Asia: effects of a continental collision: features of recent continental tectonics in Asia can be interpreted as results of the India-Eurasia collision. Science 189(4201), 419–426.
Moore, J.J. , 1981. Mires. In: L.C. Bliss , O.W. Heal and J.J. Moore (eds.). Tundra Ecosystems: A Comparative Analysis. pp. 35–37. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge.

Murray, J.L. , Hacquebord, L. , Gregor, D.J. , Loeng, H. , 1998. Physical/geographical characteristics of the arctic. In: J.L. Murray (ed.). AMAP Assessment Report: Arctic Pollution. pp. 9–24. Oslo, AMAP.

Natural Resources Canada , 1994. Geology and Canada. Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa, p. 32.

Nettles, M. , Ekström, G. , 2010. Glacial earthquakes in Greenland and Antarctica. Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences 38, 467–491.

NOAA , 1988. Data Announcement 88-MGG-02, Digital relief of the surface of the Earth. NOAA, National Geophysical Data Center, Boulder, Colorado.

Nordic Council of Ministers , 1996. The Nordic Arctic Environment – Unspoilt, Exploited, Polluted? Nordic Council of Ministers, Copenhagen. Nord 26, 240.

Olivieri, M. , Spada, G. , 2015. Ice melting and earthquake suppression in Greenland. Polar Science 9, 94–106.

Prik, Z.M. , 1959. Mean position of surface pressure and temperature distribution in the Arctic. Tr. Arkticheskogo Nauch.-Issled, Inst. 217, 5–34.

Prowse, T.D. , 1990. Northern hydrology: an overview. In: T.D. Prowse and C.S.L. Ommanney (eds.). Northern Hydrology: Canadian Perspectives. pp. 1–36. Environment Canada, Saskatoon, Saskatchewan, NHRI Science Report No. 1.

Rieger, S. , 1974. Arctic soils. In: J.D. Ives and R.G. Barry (eds.). Arctic and Alpine Environments. pp. 749–769. Methuen and Co. Ltd., London.

Schlindwein, V. , Andrea, D. , Edith, K. , Christine, L. , Florian, S. , 2015. Seismicity of the Arctic mid-ocean Ridge system, *Polar Science* 146–157.

Shulgin, A. , Hans, T. , 2015. Seismic explosion sources on an ice cap – Technical considerations. Polar Science 107–118.

Sly, P.G. , 1995. Human impacts on the Hudson Bay region: present and future environmental concerns. In: M. Munawar and M. Luotola (eds.). The Contaminants in the Nordic Ecosystem: Dynamics, Processes and Fate, pp. 171–263. SPB Academic Publishing, Amsterdam.

Stonehouse, B. , 1989. Polar Ecology. Blackie, London, p. 222.

Storchak, D.A. , Masaki, K. , Emily, D. , James, H. , 2015. Long-term accumulation and improvements in seismic event data for the polar regions by the International Seismological Centre. Polar Science 5–16.

Toyokuni, G. , Takenaka, H. , Kanao, M. , Tsuboi, S. , Tono, Y. , 2015. Numerical modeling of seismic waves for estimating influence of the Greenland ice sheet on observed seismograms. Polar Science 9(1), pp 80–93.

van Everdingen, R.O. , 1990. Groundwater hydrology. In: T.D. Prowse and C.S.L. Ommanney (eds.). Northern Hydrology. Canadian Perspectives, pp. 77–101. National Hydrology Research Institute, Environment Canada, Saskatoon, NHRI Science Report No. 1.

Verhoef, J. , Roest, W.R. , Macnab, R. , Arkani-Hamed, J. , 1996. Magnetic anomalies of the Arctic and North Atlantic oceans and adjacent land areas.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.

Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.
Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.
Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and volumi-nous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Journal International 170, 580e604.
Voss, M. , Jokat, W. , 2007. Continent-ocean transition and voluminous magmatic underplating derived from P-wave velocity modelling of the East Greenland continental margin. Geophysical Research Letters 170, 580–604.

Wadhams, P. 2012. Arctic ice cover, ice thickness and tipping points. AMBIO 41, 23–33.

Wadhams, P. , Davis, N.R. , 2000. Further evidence of ice thinning in the Arctic Ocean. Geophysical Research Letters 27(24): 3973–3975, doi: 10.1029/2000GL011802.

Woo, M.K. , Gregor, D.J. , 1992. Arctic Environment: Past, Present and Future. McMaster University, Department of Geography, Hamilton, Ont, p. 164.

Wood, W. 2000. Attitude change: persuasion and social influence. Annual Review of Psychology 51: 539–570.

Wu, P. , Paul, J. , 2000. Can deglaciation trigger earthquakes in N. America? Geophysical Research Letters 27, 1323–1326.

Zhao, D. , Lei, J. , Inoue, T. , Yamada, A. , Gao, S.S. , 2006. Deep structure and origin of the Baikal Rift Zone. Earth and Planetary Science Letters 243, 681–691.

Zonenshain, L.P. , Savostin, L.L. , 1981. Geodynamics of the Baikal rift zone and plate tectonics of Asia. Tectonophysics 76, 1–45.
Zonenshain, L.P. , Savostin, L.L. , 1981. Geodynamics of the Baikal rift zone and plate tectonics of Asia. Tectonophysics 76, 1–45.
Zonenshain, L.P. , Savostin, L.L. , 1981. Geodynamics of the Baikal rift zone and plate tectonics of Asia. Tectonophysics 76, 1–45.

Decadal Arctic Sea Ice Variability and Its Implication in Climate Change

Årthun M , Eldevik T , Smedsrud LH , Skagseth Ø , Ingvaldsen RB , 2012. Quantifying the influence of Atlantic heat on Barents Sea ice variability and retreat. J. Clim. 25(13): 4736–4743. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-11-00466.1.

Årthun M , Schrum C , 2010. Ocean surface heat flux variability in the Barents Sea. J. Mar. Syst. 83: 88–98.

Aagaard K , Carmack EC , 1989. The role of sea ice and other fresh water in the Arctic circulation. J. Geophys. Res. 94. doi: 10.1029/JC094iC10p14485.

Agnew TA , Howell S , 2002. Comparison of digitized Canadian ice charts and passive microwave sea-ice concentrations. Geoscience and Remote Sensing Symposium, 2002. IGARSS ‘02. *2002 IEEE International.* pp. 231–233. doi: 10.1109/IGARSS.2002.1024996.

Cavalieri DJ , Parkinson CL , DiGirolamo N , Ivanoff A , 2012 Intersensor calibration between F13 SSMI and F17 SSMIS for global sea ice data records. IEEE Geosci. Remote Sens. Lett. 9: 233–236. doi: 10.1109/LGRS.2011.2166754.

Cavalieri DJ , Parkinson CL 2012 Arctic sea ice variability and trends, 1979–2010. Cryosphere 6: 881–889.

Cavalieri DJ , Parkinson CL , Gloersen P , Comiso JC , 1999. Zwally HJ1999Deriving long-term time series of sea ice cover from satellite passive-microwave multisensor data sets. J. Geophys. Res. 104(C7): 15803–15814. doi: 10.1029/1999JC900081.

Cavalieri DJ , Parkinson CL , Gloersen P , Zwally HJ , 1997. Arctic and Antarctic Sea Ice Concentrations from Multichannel Passive-Microwave Satellite Data Sets: October 1978-September 1995- User’s Guide. NASA TM 104647. Goddard Space Flight Center, Greenbelt, MD, p. 17.

Cavalieri DJ , St. Germain KM , Swift CT , 1995. Reduction of weather effects in the calculation of sea ice concentration with the DMSP SSM/I. J. Glaciol. 41: 455–464.

Cavalieri DJ , Gloersen P , Campbell WJ , 1984. Determination of sea ice parameters with the Nimbus 7 SMMR. J. Geophys. Res. 89: 5355–5369.
Chatterjee S , Raj RP , Bertino L , Skagseth Ø , Ravichandran M , Johannessen OM , 2018. Role of Greenland Sea gyre circulation on Atlantic Water temperature variability in the Fram Strait. Geophys. Res. Lett. 45: 8399–8406. doi: 10.1029/2018GL079174.
Clem KR , Renwick JA , 2015. Austral spring Southern Hemisphere circulation and temperature changes and links to the SPCZ. J. Clim. 28(18): 7371–7384. doi: 10.1175/JCLID150125.1.
Comiso JC , 2006. Abrupt decline in the Arctic winter sea ice cover. Geophys. Res. Lett. 33: L18504. doi: 10.1029/2006GL027341.
Comiso JC , 1995. SSM/I sea ice concentrations using the bootstrap algorithm. NASA Ref. Pub. 1380, 49.
Deser C , Teng H , 2008. Evolution of arctic sea ice concentration trends and the role of atmospheric circulation forcing, 1979–2007. Geophys. Res. Lett. 35: L02504, doi: 10.1029/2007GL032023.
Emery WJ , Fowler C , Maslanik J , 1994. Arctic sea ice concentrations from special sensor microwave imager and advanced very high-resolution radiometer satellite data. J. Geophys. Res. 99: 18329–18342. doi: 10.1029/94JC01413.
Fetterer F , Knowles K , Meier WN , Savoie M , Windnagel AK , 2017. Updated daily. Sea Ice Index, Version 3. Boulder, Colorado USA. NSIDC: National Snow and Ice Data Center. https://doi.org/10.7265/N5K072F8. Accessed on 20 February 2020 .
Figurkin AL , Zhigalov IA , 2008. Vanin NS2008 Oceanographic conditions in the Sea of Okhotsk in the early 2000s. Izvestiya TINRO 152, 240–252 (Russian).
Francis J , Vavrus S , 2012. Evidence linking Arctic amplification to extreme weather in mid-latitudes. Geophys. Res. Lett. 39: L06801. doi: 10.1029/2012GL051000.
Francis JA , Hunter E 2007 Drivers of declining sea ice in the Arctic winter: a tale of two seas. Geophys. Res. Lett. 34: L17503. doi: 10.1029/2007GL030995.
Gloersen P , 1995. Modulations of hemispheric sea ice cover by ENSO events. Nature 373: 503–506.
Graversen RG , Langen PG , Mauritsen T , 2014. Arctic amplification in CCSM4: Contributions from the lapse rate and surface albedo feedbacks. J. Clim. 27: 4433–4450 doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-13-00551.1.
Häkkinen S , Rhines PB , Worthen DL , 2011. Atmospheric blocking and Atlantic multidecadal ocean variability. Science 334(6056): 655–659. doi: 10.1126/science.1205683.
Häkkinen S , Cavalieri DJ 1989 A study of oceanic surface heat fluxes in the Greenland, Norwegian, and Barents Sea. J. Geophys. Res. 94(C5): 6145–6157.
Hall A , 2004. Role of surface albedo feedback in climate. J. Clim. 17: 1550–1568 doi: 10.1175/1520-0442(2004)017<1550:TROSAF>2.0.CO;2.
Hartmann DL , et al. 2013. Observations: atmosphere and surface. In Climate Change 2013: The Physical Science Basis, T. F. Stocker et al., Eds., Cambridge University Press, pp. 159–254.
Hersbach H , Dee D 2016, ERA5 reanalysis is in production, ECMWF Newsletter 147: 7. https://www.ecmwf.int/en/newsletter/147/news/era5-reanalysis-production (last access: 14 May 2020).
Hilmer M , Harder M , Lemke P , 1998. Sea ice transport: a highly variable link between the Arctic and North Atlantic. Geophys. Res. Lett. 25(17): 3359–3362.
Holland MM , Bitz CM , Tremblay B , 2006. Future abrupt reductions in the summer Arctic sea ice. Geophys. Res. Lett. 33: L23503. doi: 10.1029/2006GL028024.
Kidson J , Taschetto AS , Thompson DWJ , England MH , 2011. The influence of Southern Hemisphere sea-ice extent on the latitude of the mid-latitude jet stream. Geophys. Res. Lett. 38: L15804. doi: 10.1029/2011GL048056.
Kim ST , 2012. A review of the Sea of Okhotsk ecosystem response to the climate with special emphasis on fish populations. ICES J. Mar. Sci. 69(7): 1123–1133. doi: 10.1093/icesjms/fss107.
Kumar A , Yadav J , Mohan R , 2020. Global warming leading to alarming recession of the Arctic sea-ice cover: insights from remote sensing observations and model reanalysis. Heliyon 6(7): e04355. doi: 10.1016/j.heliyon.2020.e04355.
Kwok R , 2009. Outflow of Arctic Ocean sea ice into the Greenland and Barents Seas: 1979–2007. J. Clim. 22: 2438–2457.

Li F , Orsolini YJ , Wang HJ , Gao YQ , He SP , 2018. Modulation of the Aleutian–Icelandic low seesaw and its surface impacts by the Atlantic Multidecadal Oscillation. Adv. Atmos. Sci. 35(1): 95–105. doi: 10.1007/s00376-017-7028-z.
Liu J , Curry JA , Hu Y , 2004. Recent Arctic Sea Ice Variability: Connections to the Arctic Oscillation and the ENSO. Geophys. Res. Lett. 31: L09211. doi: 10.1029/2004GL019858.
Lindsay RW , Zhang J 2005. The thinning of Arctic sea ice, 1988–2003: have we passed a tipping point? J. Clim. 18(22): 4879–4894. doi: 10.1175/JCLI3587.1.
Martin S , Munoz E , Drucker R , 1997. Recent observations of a spring-summer surface warming over the Arctic Ocean. Geophys. Res. Lett. 24 (10): 1259–1262.
Maslanik J , Drobot S , Fowler C , Emery W , Barry R , 2007. On the Arctic climate paradox and the continuing role of atmospheric circulation in affecting sea ice conditions. Geophys. Res. Lett. 34: L03711. doi: 10.1029/2006GL028269.
Mantua NJ , Hare SR , Zhang Y , Wallace JM , Francis RC , 1997. A Pacific interdecadal climate oscillation with impacts on salmon production. Bull. Am. Meteor. Soc. 78: 1069–1079. doi: 10.1175/1520-0477(1997)078<1069:APICOW>2.0.CO;2.
Mätzler C , Ramseier RO , Svendsen E 1984 Polarization effects in sea-ice signatures. IEEE J. Oceanic Eng. 9: 333–338.
McDonald M , Arragutainaq L , Novalinga Z , eds. 1997. Voices from the Bay: Traditional Ecological Knowledge of Inuit and Cree in the Hudson Bay Bioregion. Ottawa: Canadian Arctic Resources Committee and Sanikiluaq, NWT.
Legendre L , Ackley SF , Dieckmann GS , GuUiksen B , Horner SR , Hoshiai T , Melnikov I , Reeburgh WS , Spindler M , Sullivan CW , 1992. Ecology of sea ice biota 2: global significance. Pol. Biol. 12: 429–444.
Miles MW , Divine DV , Furevik T , Jansen E , Moros M , Ogilvie AEJ , 2014. A signal of persistent Atlantic multidecadal variability in Arctic sea ice. Geophys. Res. Lett. 41: 463–469. doi: 10.1002/2013GL058084.
Molnár PK , Bitz CM , Holland MM , Kay JE , Penk SR , Amstrup S.C. 2020. Fasting season length sets temporal limits for global polar bear persistence. Nat. Clim. Change 10: 732–738.
Murray RJ , Simmonds I , 1995. Responses of climate and cyclones to reductions in Arctic winter sea ice. J. Geophys. Res. 100: 4791–4806.
Nihashi S , Ohshima KI , Saitoh S-I , 2017. Sea-ice production in the northern Japan Sea, Deep-Sea Res. Part I: Oceanogr. Res. Pap. 127: 65–76.
Nishii K , Nakamura H , Orsolini YJ , 2011. Geographical dependence observed in blocking high influence on the stratospheric variability through enhancement and suppression of upward planetary-wave propagation. J. Clim. 24(24): 6408–6423. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-10-05021.1.
Notz D , Stroeve J , 2016. Arctic sea ice loss directly follows cumulative anthropogenic CO_2 emissions. Science 354(6313): 747–750. doi: 10.1126/science.aag2345.
Ohshima KI , Nakanowatari T , Riser S , Wakatsuchi M , 2010. Seasonal variation in the in- and outflow of the Okhotsk Sea with the North Pacific. Deep-Sea Res. II 57: 1247–1256. doi: 10.1016/j.dsr2.2009.12.012.
Ohshima KI , Nihashi S , Hashiya E , Watanabe T , 2006. Interannual variability of sea ice area in the Sea of Okhotsk: the importance of surface heat flux in fall. J. Meteorol. Soc. Jpn. 874: 907–919. doi: 10.2151/jmsj.84.907.
Olonscheck D , Mauritsen T , Notz D , 2019. Arctic sea-ice variability is primarily driven by atmospheric temperature fluctuations. Nat. Geosci. 12: 430–434. doi: 10.1038/s41561-019-0363-1.
Onarheim IH , Smedsrud LH , Ingvaldsen RB , Nilsen F , 2014. Loss of sea ice during winter north of Svalbard. Tellus A 66(1): 23933. doi: 10.3402/tellusa.v66.23933.
Onarheim IH , Eldevik T , Smedsrud LH , Stroeve JC , 2018. Seasonal and regional manifestation of arctic sea ice loss. J. Clim. 31: 4917–4932. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-17-0427.1.
Osborne JM , Screen JA , Collins M , 2017. Ocean–atmosphere state dependence of the atmospheric response to Arctic sea ice loss. J. Clim. 30(5): 1537–1552. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-16-0531.1
Park W , Latif M 2008. Multidecadal and multi-centennial variability of the meridional overturning circulation. Geophys. Res. Lett. 35: L22703. doi: 10.1029/2008GL035779.
Parkinson CL , 2019. A 40-y record reveals gradual Antarctic sea ice increases followed by decreases at rates far exceeding the rates seen in the Arctic. PNAS 116(29): 14414–14423.

Parkinson CL , Cavalieri DJ , 1989. Arctic sea ice 1973–1987: seasonal, regional, and interannual variability. J. Geophys. Res. 94(C10): 14499–14523. doi: 10.1029/JC094iC10p14499.
Parkinson CL , Cavalieri DJ , 2008. Arctic sea ice variability and trends, 1979–2006. J. Geophys. Res. 113: C07003. doi: 10.1029/2007JC004558.
Partington K , Flynn T , Lamb D , Bertoia C , Dedrick K , 2003. Late twentieth-century Northern Hemisphere sea-ice record from U.S. National Ice Center ice charts. J. Geophys. Res. 108(C11): 3343. doi: 10.1029/2002JC001623.
Peings Y , Magnusdottir G , 2014. Response of the wintertime Northern Hemisphere atmospheric circulation to current and projected Arctic sea ice decline: a numerical study with CAM5. J. Clim. 27(1): 244–264. doi: 10.1175/JCLI-D-13-00272.1.
Peterson IK , Pettipas R , 2013. Trends In air temperature and sea ice in the Atlantic Large Aquatic Basin and adjoining areas. Can. Tech. Rep. Hydrogr. Ocean Sci. 290: 3–8.
Pistone K , Eisenman I , Ramanathan V , 2014. Observational determination of albedo decrease caused by vanishing Arctic sea ice. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 111: 3322–3326. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1318201111.
Post E , Bhatt US , Bitz CM , Brodie JF , Fulton TL , Hebblewhite M , Kerby J , Kutz SJ , Stirling I , Walker DA , 2013. Ecological consequences of sea-ice decline. Science 341(6145): 519–524.
Randall D , Curry J , Battisti D , Flato G , Grumbine R , Hakkinen S , Martinson D , Preller R , Walsh J , Weatherly J , 1998. Status of and outlook for large-scale modelling of atmosphere–ice-ocean interactions in the Arctic. Bull. Am. Meteor. Soc. 79: 197–219.
Rigor IG , Colony RL , Martin S , 2000. Variations in surface air temperature observations in the Arctic, 1979–97. J. Clim. 13(5): 896–914.
Rigor IG , Wallace JM , Colony RL , 2002. Response of sea ice to the Arctic Oscillation. J. Clim. 15: 2648–2663.
Rigor IG , Wallace JM , 2004. Variations in the age of Arctic sea-ice and summer sea-ice extent. Geophys. Res. Lett. L09401. doi: 10.1029/2004GL019492.
Rösel A , Kaleschke L , Kern S , 2012. Influence of melt ponds on microwave sensors' sea ice concentration retrieval algorithms, Conference: Geoscience and Remote Sensing Symposium (IGARSS), *2012 IEEE International* , p. 4. doi: 10.1109/IGARSS.2012.6350608.
Schlichtholz P , 2011. Influence of oceanic heat variability on sea ice anomalies in the Nordic Seas. Geophys. Res. Lett. 38: L05705. doi: 10.1029/2010G.
Schweiger A , Lindsay R , Zhang J , Steele M , Stern H , Kwok R , 2011. Uncertainty in modelled Arctic sea ice volume. J Geophys Res 116: C00D06. doi: 10.1029/2011JC007084.
Screen J , Francis J , 2016. Contribution of sea-ice loss to Arctic amplification is regulated by Pacific Ocean decadal variability. Nature Clim Change 6: 856–860. doi: 10.1038/nclimate3011.
Screen JA , Simmonds I , 2013. Exploring links between Arctic amplification and mid-latitude weather. Geophys Res Lett 40. doi: 10.1002/grl.50174.
Screen JA , Simmonds I , 2010. The central role of diminishing sea ice in recent Arctic temperature amplification. Nature 464:1334–1337.
Serreze MC , Barry RG 2011 Processes and impacts of Arctic amplification: a research synthesis. Glob. Planet Change 77: 85–96.
Simmonds I , Keay K 2009. Extraordinary September Arctic sea ice reductions and their relationships with storm behaviour over 1979–2008. Geophys. Res. Lett. 36: L19715, doi: 10.1029/2009GL039810.
Sorteberg A , Kvingedal B , 2006. Atmospheric forcing on the Barents Sea winter ice extent. J. Clim. 19: 4772–4784.
Steffen K , Schweiger A , 1991. NASA team algorithm for sea ice concentration retrieval from Defense Meteorological Satellite Program special sensor microwave imager: comparison with Landsat satellite imagery. J. Geophys. Res. 96(C12): 21971–21987.
Stroeve J , Notz D , 2018. Changing state of Arctic sea ice across all seasons. Environ. Res. Lett. 13 103001.
Stroeve JC , Markus T , Boisvert L , Miller J , Barrett A , 2014. Changes in Arctic melt season and implications for sea ice loss. Geophys. Res. Lett. 41: 1216–1225. doi: 10.1002/2013GL058951.
Stroeve JC , Serreze MC , Kay JE , Holland MM , Meier WN , BarrettAP2012The Arctic's rapidly shrinking sea ice cover: a research synthesis. Clim. Change 110: 1005–1027. doi:

10.1007/s1058401101011.
Stroeve J , Holland MM , Meier W , Scambos T , Serreze M , 2007. Arctic sea ice decline: faster than forecast. Geophys. Res. Lett. 34(9): L09501. doi:10.1029/2007GL029703.
Timmermans ML , 2015. The impact of stored solar heat on Arctic sea ice growth. Geophys. Res. Lett. 42: 6399–6406. doi: 10.1002/2015GL064541.
Thompson DW , Wallace JM 2000 Annular modes in extratropical circulation, Part II: Trends, J. Clim. 13: 1018–1036.
Vihma T , 2014. Effects of Arctic sea ice decline on weather and climate: a review. Surv. Geophys. 35: 1175–1214.
Vinje T , 2001. Anomalies and trends of sea-ice extent and atmospheric circulation in the Nordic Seas during the period 1864–1998. J. Clim. 14: 255–267.
Walsh JE , 2013. Melting ice: What is happening to Arctic sea ice, and what does it mean for us? Oceanography 26: 171–181. doi: 10.5670/oceanog.2013.19.
Zhang R , 2015. Mechanisms for low-frequency variability of summer Arctic sea ice extent. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 112(15): 4570–4575. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1422296112.
Zhang X , Sorteberg A , Zhang J , Gerdes R , Comiso JC , 2008. Recent radical shifts of atmospheric circulations and rapid changes in Arctic climate system. Geophys. Res. Lett. 35: L22701. doi: 10.1029/2008GL035607.
Zhang J , Rothrock DA 2003 Modeling global sea ice with a thickness and enthalpy distribution model in generalized curvilinear coordinates. Mon. Weather Rev. 131: 845–861.
Zhang Y , Maslowski W , Semtner AJ 1999 Impact of mesoscale ocean currents on sea ice in high-resolution Arctic ice and ocean simulations. J. Geophys. Res. 104: 18409–18429.
Zhang Y , Wallace JM , Battisti DS , 1997. ENSO-like interdecadal variability: 1900–93. J. Clim. 10:1004–1020.
Zwally HJ , Schutz B , Abdalati W , Abshire J , Bentley C , Brenner A , Bufton J , Dezio J , Hancock D , Harding D , Herring T , Minster B , Quinn K , Palm S , Spinhirne J , Thomas R , 2002. ICESat's laser measurements of polar ice, atmosphere, ocean, and land. J. Geodyn. 34: 405–445.

WILEY

Edited by Majeti Narasimha Vara Prasad

Handbook of Ecological and Ecosystem Engineering

Editor

Handbook of Ecological and

EY

Handbook of Ecological
and Ecosystem Engineering

Handbook of Ecological and Ecosystem Engineering

Edited by

Majeti Narasimha Vara Prasad
School of Life Sciences
University of Hyderabad (an Institution of Eminence)
Hyderabad, Telangana, India

WILEY

This edition first published 2021

Registered Offices
John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, USA
John Wiley & Sons Ltd, The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, UK

Editorial Office
The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, UK

For details of our global editorial offices, customer services, and more information about Wiley products visit us at www.wiley.com.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some content that appears in standard print versions of this book may not be available in other formats.

For general information on our other products and services or for technical support, please contact our Customer Care Department within the United States at (800) 762-2974, outside the United States at (317) 572-3993 or fax (317) 572-4002.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic formats. For more information about Wiley products, visit our web site at www.wiley.com.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Names: Prasad, M. N. V. (Majeti Narasimha Vara), 1953– editor.
Title: Handbook of ecological and ecosystem engineering / M.N.V. Prasad, University of Hyderabad, School of Life Sciences
Description: First edition. | Hoboken : Wiley, 2021. | Includes bibliographical references and index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2020051312 (print) | LCCN 2020051313 (ebook) | ISBN 9781119678533 (hardback) | ISBN 9781119678502 (adobe pdf) | ISBN 9781119678601 (epub)
Subjects: LCSH: Ecological engineering. | Sustainable engineering.
Classification: LCC GE350 .P73 2021 (print) | LCC GE350 (ebook) | DDC 628–dc23
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2020051312
LC ebook record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2020051313

Cover Design: Wiley
Cover Image: Courtesy of Maibam Meiti Dhanaraj

Set in 9.5/12.5pt STIXTwoText by Straive, Pondicherry, India

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Contents

List of Contributors

Nadeesh M. Adassooriya
Department of Food Science & Technology,
Wayamba University of Sri Lanka,
Makandura, Sri Lanka

Madhoolika Agrawal
Department of Botany, Institute of Science,
Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi,
Uttar Pradesh, India

S.B. Agrawal
Department of Botany, Institute of Science,
Banaras Hindu University, Varanasi,
Uttar Pradesh, India

Jitendra Ahirwal
Restoration Ecology Laboratory, Department
of Environmental Science and Engineering,
Indian Institute of Technology (Indian School
of Mines), Dhanbad, Jharkhand, India

J.R.B. Alfred
Nature Environment & Wildlife Society
(NEWS), Kolkata, West Bengal, India

H.A.D.B. Amarasiri
Department of Pharmacy, The Open
University of Sri Lanka, Nugegoda, Sri Lanka

Luís P. Azevedo
Materials Engineering Department, Federal
University of Ouro Preto, Ouro Preto, Minas
Gerais, Brazil

Bruno Barbosa
MEtRICS, Departamento de Ciências e
Tecnologia da Biomassa, Faculdade de
Ciências e Tecnologia, FCT, Universidade
Nova de Lisboa, Caparica, Portugal;
Universidade Feevale, Novo Hamburgo –
RS, Brazil

S.P. Biswas
Department of Life Sciences, Dibrugarh
University, Dibrugarh, Assam, India

E. Bocharnikova
Department of Functional Ecology,
Institute Basic Biological Problems,
Pushchino, Russia

Cláudia Cseko Nolasco de Carvalho
Department of Biology, State University of
Alagoas, Santana do Ipanema, Alagoas, Brazil

Udo Censkowsky
Bluesensus – Sustainability & Seafood
Consulting, Weilheim, Germany

S.B. Chaphekar
Homi Bhabha State University, Mumbai,
Maharashtra, India

Smita Chaudhry
Institute of Environmental Studies,
Kurukshetra University, Kurukshetra,
Haryana, India

Biswajit Roy Chowdhury
Nature Environment & Wildlife Society (NEWS), Kolkata, West Bengal, India

Ronan Courtney
Department of Biological Science, Faculty of Science & Engineering, Bernal Institute, University of Limerick, Limerick, Ireland

Sijagurumayum Geetanjali Devi
Department of Forestry and Environmental Science, Manipur University, Imphal, Manipur, India

Ajanta Dey
Nature Environment & Wildlife Society (NEWS), Kolkata, West Bengal, India

Bhupinder Dhir
School of Sciences, Indira Gandhi National Open University, New Delhi, India

Denise C.R. Espinosa
Polytechnic School of University of São Paulo, Chemical Engineering Department, São Paulo, Brazil

Mihail Eva
Department of Geography, Faculty of Geography and Geology, "Alexandru Ioan Cuza" University, Iasi, Romania

Ana Luísa Fernando
MEtRICS, Departamento de Ciências e Tecnologia da Biomassa, Faculdade de Ciências e Tecnologia, FCT, Universidade Nova de Lisboa, Caparica, Portugal

Seemaa S. Ghate
Women Scientist 'B', Department of Science and Technology, New Delhi, India; Knowhow Foundation, Pune, Maharashtra, India

Anu Gopinath
Department of Aquatic Environment Management, Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies, Kochi, Kerala, India

Anna Grobelak
Faculty of Infrastructure and Environment, Institute of Environmental Engineering, Czestochowa University of Technology, Czestochowa, Poland

Marta Jaskulak
Faculty of Infrastructure and Environment, Institute of Environmental Engineering, Czestochowa University of Technology, Czestochowa, Poland; LGCgE, Laboratoire de Génie Civil et géo-Environnement University of Lille, IMT Lille Douai, Univ. Artois, Yncrea Hauts-de-France, Lille, France

Lander de Jesus Alves
Postgraduate Program in Biology and Biotechnology of Microorganisms, State University of Santa Cruz (UESC), Ilhéus, Bahia, Brazil

Anu Joy
Department of Chemistry and Research Centre, St Albert's College, Ernakulam, Kerala, India

Atya Kapley
Director's Research Cell, National Environmental Engineering Research Institute, (CSIR: NEERI), Nagpur, Maharashtra, India

Rupinder Kaur
Soil Ecosystems and Restoration Ecology Lab, Department of Botany, Panjab University, Chandigarh, India

M.L. Khan
Department of Botany, Dr. Harisingh Gour Vishwavidyalaya (A Central University), Sagar, Madhya Pradesh, India

Nazmun Ara Khanom
Department of Chemistry, Jorhat Institute of Science & Technology (JIST), Jorhat, Assam, India

Amit Kumar
Department of Geoinformatics, Central University of Jharkhand, Ranchi, Jharkhand, India

Rima Kumari
Department of Environmental Science and Engineering, Indian Institute of Technology (Indian School of Mines), Dhanbad, Jharkhand, India

Carlos A.F. Lagarinhos
Polytechnic School of University of São Paulo, Metallurgical and Materials Department, São Paulo, Brazil

Suvha Lama
Director's Research Cell, National Environmental Engineering Research Institute (CSIR: NEERI), Nagpur, Maharashtra, India

R.P. Madav
Terracon Ecotech Pvt. Ltd., Mumbai, Maharashtra, India

D.N. Magana-Arachchi
National Institute of Fundamental Studies, Kandy, Sri Lanka

Subodh Kumar Maiti
Restoration Ecology Laboratory, Department of Environmental Science and Engineering, Indian Institute of Technology (Indian School of Mines), Dhanbad, Jharkhand, India

Thaís de Marchi Soares
Department of Soil Science, University of Sao Paulo, Piracicaba, São Paulo, Brazil

V. Matichenkov
Department of Ecology and Physiology of Autotrophic Organisms, Institute Basic Biological Problems, Pushchino, Russia

Maibam Dhanaraj Meitei
Department of Forestry and Environmental Science, Manipur University, Imphal, Manipur, India

Florin-Constantin Mihai
CERNESIM Center, Department of Sciences, Interdisciplinary Research Institute, "Alexandru Ioan Cuza" University, Iasi, Romania

Chanchal Kumar Mitra
Department of Biochemistry, University of Hyderabad, Hyderabad, Telangana, India

Akash Nag
Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand, Ranchi, Jharkhand, India

Fábio Carvalho Nunes
Academic Department, Federal Institute Baiano (IFBAIANO), Santa Inês, Bahia, Brazil

Rashmi Paliwal
Institute of Environmental Studies, Kurukshetra University, Kurukshetra, Haryana, India

Sara Pelaez Sanchez
Department of Biological Science, Faculty of Science & Engineering, Bernal Institute, University of Limerick, Limerick, Ireland

Marcin Pietrzykowski
Department of Forest Ecology and Silviculture, Faculty of Forestry, University of Agriculture in Krakow, Krakow, Poland

Majeti Narasimha Vara Prasad
School of Life Sciences, University of Hyderabad, Hyderabad, Telangana, India

Richa Rai
Plant Ecology and Climate Change Science Division, CSIR National Botanical Research Institute, Lucknow, Uttar Pradesh, India

Sanchayita Rajkhowa
Department of Chemistry, Jorhat Institute of Science & Technology (JIST), Jorhat, Assam, India

Purabi Saikia
Department of Environmental Sciences, Central University of Jharkhand, Ranchi, Jharkhand, India

Jyotirmoy Sarma
Department of Chemistry, Kaziranga University, Jorhat, Assam, India

Olaf Schmidt
School of Agriculture and Food Science, University College Dublin, Dublin, Ireland

Petra Schneider
Magdeburg-Stendal University of Applied Sciences, Magdeburg, Germany

L.R. Sendanayake
Postgraduate Institute of Science, University of Peradeniya, Peradeniya, Sri Lanka

Fernando G. da Silva Araújo
Materials Engineering Department, Federal University of Ouro Preto, Ouro Preto, Minas Gerais, Brazil

Anand Narain Singh
Soil Ecosystems and Restoration Ecology Lab, Department of Botany, Panjab University, Chandigarh, India

Gagan Preet Singh Sidhu
Centre for Applied Biology in Environment Sciences, Kurukshetra University, Kurukshetra, Haryana, India

José Rodrigues de Souza Filho
Academic Department, Federal Institute Baiano (IFBAIANO), Catu, Bahia, Brazil

Jorge A.S. Tenório
Polytechnic School of University of São Paulo, Chemical Engineering Department, São Paulo, Brazil

Niteshwori Thongam
Department of Forestry and Environmental Science, Manipur University, Imphal, Manipur, India

R.P. Wanigatunge
Department of Plant and Molecular Biology, Faculty of Science, University of Kelaniya, Kelaniya, Sri Lanka

Shailendra Yadav
Director's Research Cell, National Environmental Engineering Research Institute, (CSIR: NEERI), Nagpur, Maharashtra, India

Preface

There is a growing global concern about environment and sustainable development. The 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development was launched in 2015 to end poverty and set the world on a path of peace, prosperity and opportunity for all on a healthy planet (UN Sustainable development goals 2015). The 17 Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) demand nothing short of a transformation of the financial, economic and political systems that govern our societies today to guarantee the human rights of all. They require immense political will and ambitious action by all stakeholders. Global efforts to date have been insufficient to deliver the desired to current and future generations. Due to COVID-19, globally visible and an unprecedented health emergency, economic and social crisis, threatening lives and livelihoods jeopardizing the SDG's Agenda's promise to the current and future generations.

In this regard an integrated approach of management and restoration of ecosystems is a clear global concern. With increasing population explosion and exploitation of natural capital pressure on the planet earth is steeply increasing. In the last half century, the world human population has doubled, the consumption of natural resources has been multiplied by six, biodiversity has drastically decreased and the degradation of many ecosystems and global environmental modifications are glaring.

Odum H.T., used the term "ecological engineering" in 1960s, in several publications. Mitsch and Jøørgensen highlighted the necessity of ecological engineering in 1989.

Ecology and Ecosystems study is the only scientific field capable of providing the scientific bases necessary to implement ecosystem manipulations e.g. to mitigate the effect of global climatic changes. Such ecosystem manipulations could potentially have very negative impacts if not well designed.

Conversely, modern scientific ecology needs concrete examples of applied management Practitioners, stakeholders, and policy makers for ecosystem engineering are indeed good forcing processes to encompass the range of the studied ecological variables in terms of heterogeneity, limits and the occurring interactions between these variables.

In the same vein, the full development of ecological engineering requires stakeholders, scientists from engineering sciences, socio-economical sciences, and all environmental sciences to work together both to build a common general framework and to ground their work on concrete common projects.

Ecological engineering is also particularly relevant for developing countries. Indeed, the need for sustainable exploitation of ecosystems is very high in these countries where populations are still quickly growing and where individuals and institutions have often difficulties to develop practices based on high input rates (energy, water, mineral nutrients).

In this context this book assumes considerable significance. Thus, this book aimed at integrating multiple ecosystem services of the “Earth Ecosystem” resources (biotic and abiotic) keeping in view the UN 17 Sustainable Development Goals. **Phytobiome** and **microbiome** services that humans derive are focussed. Essentially Ecological and Ecosystem Engineering principles of the global ecosystem (Earth) for sustainable development will be dealt in this work

Goals of Ecological Engineering are

1) the restoration of ecosystems that have been substantially disturbed by human activities such as environmental pollution or land disturbance
2) the development of new sustainable ecosystems that have both human and ecosystems, and ecological value.
3) Ecological restoration - the return of an ecosystem to a close approximation of its condition prior to disturbance

Terms that are synonyms, subdisciplines, or fields similar to the crux of this books are: Bioengineering, biomanipulation, biospherics, ecohydrology, ecological engineering ecosystem rehabilitation, ecotechnology, engineering ecology, habitat reconstruction, nature cure, nature engineering, reclamation ecology, restoration ecology, river and lake restoration, solar aquatics, sustainable development, agroecology, synthetic ecology and wetland restoration.

Ecological Engineering - the design of sustainable ecosystems that integrate human ecosystems with its natural environment for the benefit of both. An attempt has been made and designed for the benefit of Environmental Engineers, Pollution Engineers and Energy Engineers, Researchers working in Water, Energy footprints, Carbon foot print, Environmental Biotechnologists etc. Researchers and academicians, undergraduate and graduate students in the broad area of Environmental Sciences, Ago-forestry and agronomy, Land scape engineers etc.

65 Authors from 9 countries viz., Brazil, Germany, India, Ireland, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Russia and Sri Lanka participated and contributed to various topics listed below:

1) Ecological engineering and ecosystem services - theory and practice
2) Ecological and ecosystem engineering for economic and environmental revitalization
3) Environmental issues and priority areas for ecological engineering initiatives
4) The role of Soil meso and macrofauna indicators for restoration assessment success in rehabilitated mine site
5) Urban Environmental issues – solutions by ecological and ecosystem engineering
6) Mitigation of Urban Environmental issues by applying ecological and ecosystem engineering
7) Soil fertility restoration, theory and practice
8) Extracellular soil enzymes act as moderator to restore carbon in the soil habitats
9) Ecological engineering for solid waste reduction and resource recovery
10) Urban floods and mitigation by applying ecological and ecosystem engineering
11) Ecological engineering and restoration of mine ecosystems
12) Restoration of abandoned mines
13) Wetland and watershed Lake restoration
14) Restoration of Riverine Health: An Ecohydrological Approach - Flow Regimes and Aquatic Biodiversity
15) Ecosystem services of phoomdi islands of Loktak, a dying Ramsar site in north-east India
16) The application of reefs in shoreline protection

17) Mangroves, as shore engineers, are nature-based solutions for ensuring coastal protection
18) Forests degradation prevention through nature-based solution: an Indian perspective
19) Restoring Ecosystem Services of Degraded Forest Ecosystems in a Changing Climate
20) Forest degradation prevention
21) Use of plants for air quality improvement
22) Phylloremediation for Mitigating Air Pollution
23) Air quality improvement using green cover
24) Air quality improvement using phytodiversity and plant architecture
25) Information explosion in digital science and ecosystems
26) Nanotechnology in Ecological and Ecosystem Engineering

Editor
22-10-2020

ELSEVIER TRADITIONAL AND ETHNIC FOOD SERIES

NUTRITIONAL AND HEALTH ASPECTS OF FOOD IN SOUTH ASIAN COUNTRIES

VOLUME EDITORS

Jamuna Prakash, Viduranga Waisundara, Vishweshwaraiah Prakash

SERIES EDITORS

Huub Lelieveld, Veslemøy Andersen, Vishweshwaraiah Prakash, Jamuna Prakash, and Bernd van der Meulen

Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier
125 London Wall, London EC2Y 5AS, United Kingdom
525 B Street, Suite 1650, San Diego, CA 92101, United States
50 Hampshire Street, 5th Floor, Cambridge, MA 02139, United States
The Boulevard, Langford Lane, Kidlington, Oxford OX5 1GB, United Kingdom

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress

ISBN: 978-0-12-820011-7

For Information on all Academic Press publications
visit our website at https://www.elsevier.com/books-and-journals

Publisher: Charlotte Cockle
Acquisitions Editor: Megan R. Ball
Editorial Project Manager: Sara Valentino
Production Project Manager: Omer Mukthar
Cover Designer: Greg Harris

Typeset by MPS Limited, Chennai, India

Contents

Therapeutic Applications of Honey and its Phytochemicals

Muneeb U. Rehman • Sabhiya Majid
Editors

Therapeutic Applications of Honey and its Phytochemicals

Volume II

Springer

Editors
Muneeb U. Rehman
Department of Clinical Pharmacy
King Saud University
Riyadh, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia

Department of Biochemistry
Govt. Medical College (GMC-Srinagar)
Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir, India

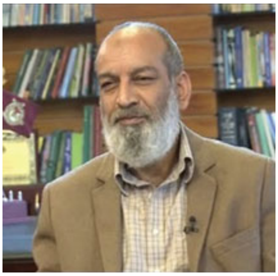
Sabhiya Majid
Department of Biochemistry
Govt. Medical College (GMC-Srinagar)
Srinagar, Jammu and Kashmir, India

ISBN 978-981-15-7304-0 ISBN 978-981-15-7305-7 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-7305-7

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

Dedicated to our Parents

Foreword



Honey is one of the nature's marvellous gifts to mankind finding mention in various valued ancient texts. This delicious edible substance produced by honey bees has been consumed by humans since times immemorial to supplement diet and cure various ailments. For its innumerable medicinal properties and health benefits, from ancient times honey has been used in traditional medicines to cure wounds, eye diseases, hiccups, constipation, piles, eczema, ulcers, etc. The various medicinal benefits of honey based on its antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, anti-cancerous, neuroprotective, anti-fibrotic and anti-diabetic properties are attributed to the presence of certain active ingredients in it. Flavonoids and polyphenols, the main bioactive compounds found in honey, are known potent antioxidants. Recent and modern studies have attributed the presence of these bioactive compounds to its therapeutic effects against illnesses related to nervous system, cardiovascular system, diabetes mellitus, gastrointestinal system and even the most dreaded cancers.

The book entitled *Therapeutic Applications of Honey and its Phytochemicals* (Volume II) is an in-depth compilation of recent research on this subject. The editors Dr. Muneeb U. Rehman and Prof. Sabhiya Majid have compiled the book splendidly shedding light on all the valuable research literature currently available on the topic. Volume II is based on prevention and treatment of various diseases by honey and its phytochemicals, providing finest details related to their possible mechanism of action. The main highlights of this volume are book chapters by collaborators from around the globe. Scientists from USA and Saudi Arabia have detailed the molecular mechanistic approach of anti-leukemic bioactive compounds in honey. Another chapter deals with the neuro-protective effect of honey and its mechanistic basis. A group from Saudi Arabia and UAE has discussed neuro-protection via NAD^+ pathway in various neuro-degenerative diseases. Collaborators from India and Saudi Arabia have discussed the molecular mechanisms underlying prevention and treatment of cancers by honey and its phytochemicals. Another group from India has elaborated upon the role of the phytochemicals from honey as MAP-kinase inhibitors. Besides these, the other major chapters included in this book are focussed on mechanistic basis of prevention and treatment of various diseases including fibrosis, diabetes, metabolic disorders, dermatitis, cardiovascular diseases, arthritis, wound healing and fatty liver disease by honey and its phytochemicals.

Therapeutic Applications of Honey and its Phytochemicals (Volume II) is an exhaustive and finest compilation of its kind. It specifically presents a holistic view of the available literature on honey and its medicinal value. The editors have incredibly provided solid foundation of the subject to meet the requirements of researchers, medical practitioners and entrepreneurs. For medical practitioners including those of alternative medicine, herbal therapists, and dieticians this book will be of immense clinical benefit. For academicians, scientists, teachers and students, this book will be a rich source of information from where they can satiate their quest for knowledge.

University of Kashmir
Srinagar, India

Khurshid Iqbal Andrabi

Contents

About the Editors

Muneeb U. Rehman PhD is a faculty member at College of Pharmacy, King Saud University, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia. He holds a doctorate in Toxicology (specialization in cancer biology and natural product research) from Jamia Hamdard, New Delhi, India Dr. Rehman has more than 10 years of research and teaching experience in the field of toxicology, biochemistry, cancer biology, natural product research and pharmacogenomics. He is the recipient of several national and international fellowships and awards. He has published 90 research papers in peer-reviewed, international journals, and 25 book chapters. Dr. Rehman is an on the editorial boards and is a reviewer of several high-impact, international scientific journals. He is also a life member of various international societies and organizations. Currently, Dr. Rehman is engaged in studying the molecular mechanisms of cancer prevention by natural products and the role of pharmacogenomics and toxicogenomics in evaluating the effectiveness and safety of drugs.

Sabhiya Majid PhD is a Professor and Chairperson of the Department of Biochemistry, Govt. Medical College (GMC-Srinagar), J&K, India. She is also the Nodal Officer of the Multi-disciplinary Research Unit (ICMR-MRU) funded by Indian Council of Medical Research. Prof. Majid has received numerous grants from various Government of India funding agencies, and has implemented various research projects and infrastructure development schemes, including FIST–DST-GOI (Department of Science & Technology, Fund for Improvement of Science &Technology Infrastructure, Govt. of India. She is a member of several scientific associations and Boards of Undergraduate, Postgraduate and Research Studies. Prof. Majid has 25 years of experience in teaching, research and supervision of diagnostic laboratories at the Govt. Medical College Srinagar, including teaching MBBS, BDS, nursing and medical laboratory technology students. Her current research focuses on identifying non-invasive markers for cancer diagnosis.

Muneeb U. Rehman
Sabhiya Majid *Editors*

Therapeutic Applications of Honey and its Phytochemicals

Volume II

Springer

IntechOpen

Nuts and Nut Products in Human Health and Nutrition

Edited by Venketeshwer Rao, Leticia Rao, Md Ahiduzzaman and A. K. M. Aminul Islam

Nuts and Nut Products in Human Health and Nutrition
http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.92282
Edited by Venketeshwer Rao, Leticia Rao, Md Ahiduzzaman and A. K. M. Aminul Islam

Contributors
Chiranjiv Pradhan, Nikhila Peter, Namitha Dileep, Selvi Subramanian, Muthulakshmi Chellamuthu, Manonmani Swaminathan, Modupeade C. Adetunji, Stephen A. Abiola Akinola, Nancy Nleya, Mulunda Mwanza, Jinu Madhi, Mohan Chandra Kalita, Venketeshwer Rao, Leticia Rao, Livio Torta, Patrizia Bella, Giulia Mirabile, Antonio Vella, Vincenzo Ferrantelli

First published in London, United Kingdom, 2021 by IntechOpen
IntechOpen is the global imprint of INTECHOPEN LIMITED, registered in England and Wales, registration number: 11086078, 5 Princes Gate Court, London, SW7 2QJ, United Kingdom
Printed in Croatia

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Additional hard and PDF copies can be obtained from orders@intechopen.com

Nuts and Nut Products in Human Health and Nutrition
Edited by Venketeshwer Rao, Leticia Rao, Md Ahiduzzaman and A. K. M. Aminul Islam
p. cm.
Print ISBN 978-1-78985-192-2
Online ISBN 978-1-78985-511-1
eBook (PDF) ISBN 978-1-78985-512-8

Contents

Saleena Mathew · Maya Raman
Manjusha Kalarikkathara Parameswaran
Dhanya Pulikkottil Rajan

Fish and Fishery Products Analysis

A Theoretical and Practical Perspective

Springer

Fish and Fishery Products Analysis

Saleena Mathew • Maya Raman
Manjusha Kalarikkathara Parameswaran
Dhanya Pulikkottil Rajan

Fish and Fishery Products Analysis

A Theoretical and Practical Perspective

Springer

Saleena Mathew
School of Industrial Fisheries
Cochin University of Science and Technology
Kochi, Kerala, India

Manjusha Kalarikkathara Parameswaran
School of Industrial Fisheries
Cochin University of Science and Technology
Kochi, Kerala, India

Maya Raman
Department of Food Science and Technology, School of Ocean Science and Technology
Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies
Kochi, Kerala, India

Dhanya Pulikkottil Rajan
Department of Aquaculture
M.E.S Asmabi College
Kochi, Kerala, India

ISBN 978-981-32-9573-5 ISBN 978-981-32-9574-2 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-32-9574-2

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Singapore Pte Ltd.
The registered company address is: 152 Beach Road, #21-01/04 Gateway East, Singapore 189721, Singapore

Contents

About the Authors

Saleena Mathew has got over 35 years of research experience of which 30 years of teaching at postgraduate level. She was Director, School of Industrial Fisheries, Cochin University of Science and Technology, for one term of 3 years from 2005 to 2008 and retired from the University as Professor in 2016. For the last 27 years of service, she was engaged in teaching and research in the field of fish processing technology and fish biochemistry at the School of Industrial Fisheries, Cochin University of Science and Technology, and catered trained personnel for the seafood industry. She is a Recognized Guide of Cochin University of Science and Technology for the last 25 years and served as Expert Member and Chairperson of various scientific and academic bodies of Cochin University of Science and Technology and as Expert Member for various programs of other universities and research institutes. She was appointed as Associate Member of The World Academy of Sciences (TWAS), Italy, in 1998, and has visited Argentina, Italy, and other foreign countries as part of her research work. She has coordinated and conducted various symposia, workshops, and training programs at the School in the field of fish processing, quality assurance, and food safety. She has got more than 50 research publications in the specialized areas of biochemistry, fish preservation, and bioactive substances from fish and fish discards.

Maya Raman is presently working as Associate Professor (Meat and Fish Processing), Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies, Cochin. She graduated in Botany and received her M.Sc. (Industrial Fisheries) and Ph.D. degrees from the School of Industrial Fisheries, Cochin University of Science and Technology, India, in 2006. Her doctoral research was in fish biochemistry and fish processing technology. She also worked as Postdoc at Applied Nutrition and Food Chemistry, Centre for Chemistry and Chemical Engineering, Lund University, with the scholarship from Erasmus Mundus External Cooperation Windows Lot 15 Program. She also worked as Women Scientist at Indian Institute of Technology Madras with the Women Scientist Scheme (WOS-A) funded by the Department of Science and Technology, India. She was selected as Young Student Speaker IFCON 2003 by the Association of Food Scientists and Technologists, India. She also worked as Faculty at the Department of Food Science and Technology, MACFAST, as Certified Technologist (Export Inspection Authority, India) at Koluthara Exports Limited, and as Research Officer at NGIL, India. She has 17 peer-reviewed publications to her credit and has published a book and 8 book chapters. She has also presented 14 papers at national and international symposia/conferences. Her area of expertise is fish biochemistry (collagen), fish processing technology, nutrition and health (cancer), nanotechnology, bioactive marine compounds, dietary fibers (cereal, vegetable, marine algae) and colon cancer (in vitro and in vivo), molecular modelling and dynamics, gut simulation techniques, drug encapsulation, hydrogels, antimicrobial biodegradable food wraps, etc. She is also Life Member of the AFST(I), SOFT(I), and SASNET, and member of ACS. She also qualified the National Eligibility Test (NET) conducted by the ASRB in 2001. A patent on hydrogel from cyclic beta-glucan for cosmetics/food applications has also been filed in 2016.

Manjusha Kalarikkathara Parameswaran graduated in Zoology at the St. Teresa's College Ernakulam and attained her M.Sc. in Biochemistry from School of Biosciences, Mahatma Gandhi University, in 2002. She qualified the joint UGC-CSIR National Eligibility Test (NET) in 2002 and was awarded Junior Research Fellowship (2004–2009). She has also qualified the NET (Plant Biochemistry) conducted by the ASRB-ICAR in 2018. She was awarded Ph.D. in Marine Sciences (Biochemistry) for the studies pertaining to the bioactive potential of glycosaminoglycan's in cephalopods from the School of Industrial Fisheries, Cochin University of Science and Technology (CUSAT), India, in 2011. She has worked as Faculty in Biochemistry at Mar Athanasius College, Kothamangalam; St. Mary's College for Women, Thiruvalla; School of Aquatic Food Products and Technology, Kerala University of Fisheries and Ocean Studies (KUFOS); and the Department of Marine Biology, Microbiology and Biochemistry, School of Marine Sciences, CUSAT. She is a Lifetime Member of the Society of Marine Biologists (SOMB) and Annual Member of the Society of Fishery Technologists India (SOFT-I). She has published three papers and presented six articles in various national and international conferences. Her research interests are marine bioactives and biopolymer hydrogels.

Dhanya Pulikkottil Rajan is presently working as Assistant Professor at MES Asmabi College, Thrissur. She also worked as Faculty at School of Industrial Fisheries, Cochin University of Science and Technology (CUSAT) and St. Albert's College, Ernakulam. She is a postgraduate in Industrial Fisheries from CUSAT and holds doctoral degree in Marine Sciences. Her doctoral study investigated the effects of spice oleoresins in microbial decontamination and their potential application in quality stabilization of tuna (*Euthynnus affinis*) during storage. She has qualified the National Eligibility Test under the Indian Council of Agricultural Research in 2013 and is a Lifetime Member of the Society of Fisheries Technologists (India). She has 5 years of teaching and 4 years of research experience in the field of fish processing. She had worked as Certified Technologist at CAP Seafoods, Kerala, before pursuing research. Her research interests include biopreservation, enhancement of safety and sensory qualities, value addition, and microbial spoilage of seafood products by psychrotrophic and histamine-forming bacteria. She has presented/published 14 research papers in various international and national journals/conferences and published 1 book chapter.

Abbreviations

°C	Degree Celsius
µg	Microgram
µl	Microliter
µm	Micrometer
^{1}H-NMR	Proton Nuclear magnetic resonance
AAS	Atomic absorption spectrometer
ACN	Acetonitrile
AFB	Aflatoxin
AGE	Agarose gel electrophoresis
AMPs	Antimicrobial peptides
APHA	American Public Health Association
a_w	Water activity
AWWA	American Water Works Association
BHC	Benzene hexachloride
BOD	Biological oxygen demand
BoNT	Botulinum toxin
BSA	Bovine serum albumin
CBB	Coomassie brilliant blue
CE	Capillary electrophoresis
CHNS-O	Carbon-hydrogen-nitrogen-sulfur-oxygen
CLLE	Continuous liquid/liquid extraction
COD	Chemical oxygen demand
CP	Cold plasma
CS	Chondroitin sulfate
CTX	Ciguatoxin
DCM	Dichloromethane
DDD	Dichlorodiphenyldichloroethane
DDE	Dichlorodiphenyldichloroethylene
DDT	Dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane
DGGE	Denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis
DO	Dissolved oxygen
DS	Double strength
DS	Dermatan sulfate

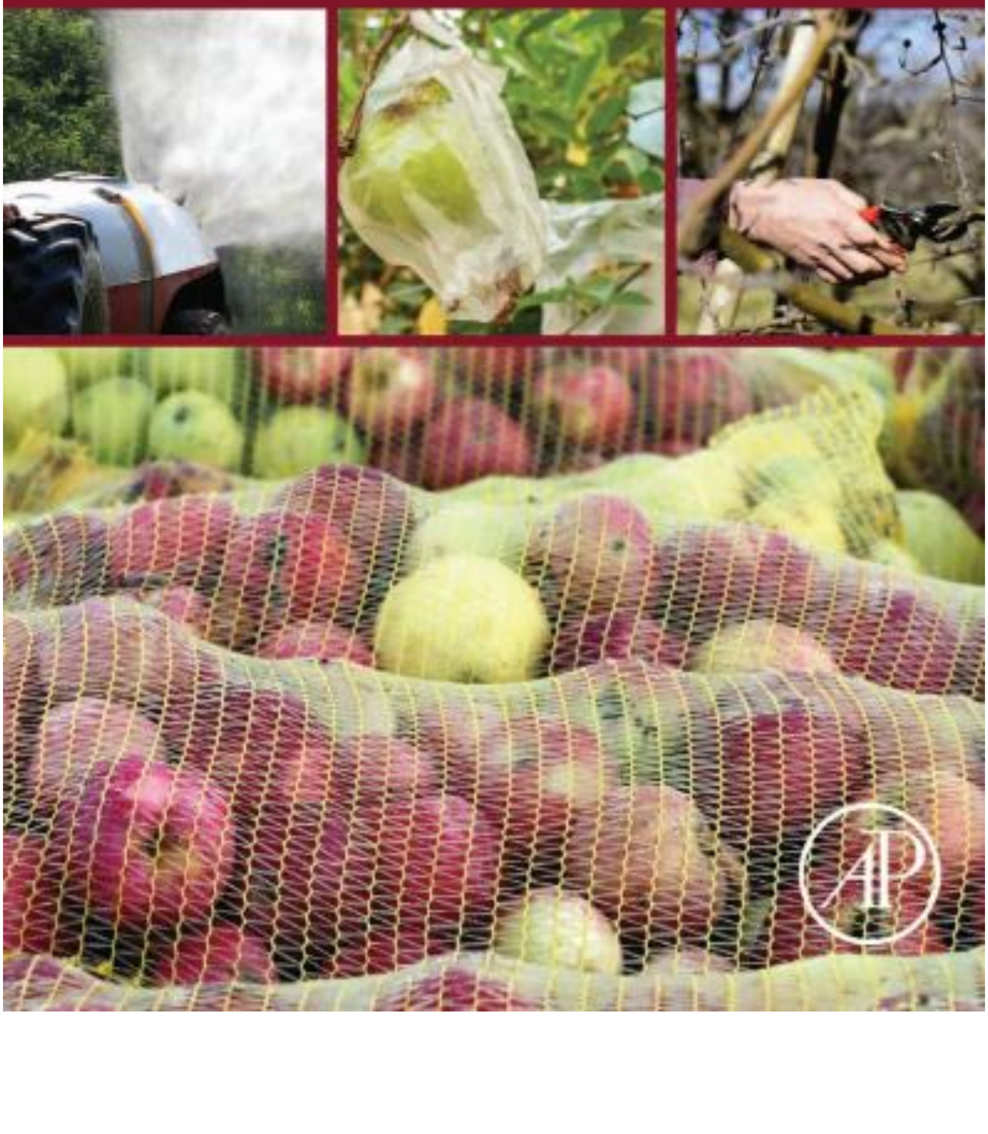
DSC	Differential scanning calorimeter
EC	Enzyme Commission
ECM	Extracellular matrix
EDTA	Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid
ELISA	Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
ETP	Effluent treatment plant
FBD	Fluidized bed drying
FBS	Fetal bovine serum
FFA	Free fatty acid
FID	Flame ionization detector
FTIR	Fourier transform infrared
FTU	Formazin Turbidity Unit
GAG	Glycosaminoglycan
Gal	Galactose
GalN	Galactosamine
GalNAc	N-acetylgalactosamine
GC	Gas chromatography
GlcA	Glucuronic acid
GlcN	Glucosamine
GlcNAc	N-acetylglucosamine
GM Counter	Geiger Muller counter
H_2SO_4	Sulfuric acid
HA	Hyaluronic acid
HACCP	Hazard Analysis Critical Control Point
HCB	Hexachlorobenzene
HCH	Hexachlorocyclohexane
HHP	High hydrostatic pressure processing
HMWM	High-molecular-weight markers
HPD	Heat pump drying
HPLC	High-performance liquid chromatography
HPTLC	High-performance thin layer chromatography
HRMS	High-resolution mass spectrometry
i.d.	Internal diameter
ICP	Inductively coupled plasma spectrophotometer
ICP-AES	Inductively Coupled Plasma - Atomic Emission Spectroscopy
IdoA	Iduronic acid
IF	Infrared
IQF	Individually quick frozen
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
JTU	Jackson Turbidity Unit
KS	Keratan sulfate
MPN	Most probable number
MT	Metallothioneins
MTX	Maitotoxin
NMR	Nuclear magnetic resonance

NTU	Nephelometric Turbidity Unit
PCB	Polychlorinated biphenyl
PEF	Pulsed electric field processing
PITC	Phenylisothiocyanate
PL	Pulsed light
ppm	Parts per million
RF	Radio frequency
rpm	Revolutions per minute
SDS	Sodium dodecyl sulfate
SEM	Scanning electron microscope
SFE	Solid funnel extraction
SS	Single strength
TDS	Total dissolved solids
TEMED	Tetramethylethylenediamine
TOC	Total organic carbon
TSS	Total suspended solids
TTX	Tetrodotoxin
UV	Ultraviolet
WHO	World Health Organization
WPCF	Water Pollution Control Facilities
YTX	Yessotoxin

Preharvest Modulation of Postharvest Fruit and Vegetable Quality

Edited by

Mohammed Wasim Siddiqui



Preharvest Modulation of POSTHARVEST FRUIT AND VEGETABLE QUALITY

Edited by

MOHAMMED WASIM SIDDIQUI

ELSEVIER

ACADEMIC PRESS
An imprint of Elsevier

Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier
125 London Wall, London EC2Y 5AS, United Kingdom
525 B Street, Suite 1800, San Diego, CA 92101-4495, United States
50 Hampshire Street, 5th Floor, Cambridge, MA 02139, United States
The Boulevard, Langford Lane, Kidlington, Oxford OX5 1GB, United Kingdom

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN: 978-0-12-809807-3

For information on all Academic Press publications visit our website at https://www.elsevier.com/books-and-journals

Publisher: Andre G. Wolff
Acquisition Editor: Patricia Osborn
Editorial Project Manager: Jaclyn Truesdell
Production Project Manager: Nicky Carter
Designer: Matthew Limbert

Typeset by Thomson Digital

CONTENTS

[1]Deceased

Biodiversity and Climate Change Adaptation in Tropical Islands

Edited by
Chandrakasan Sivaperuman
Ayyam Velmurugan
Awnindra Kumar Singh
Iyyappan Jaisankar

BIODIVERSITY AND CLIMATE CHANGE ADAPTATION IN TROPICAL ISLANDS

Edited by

CHANDRAKASAN SIVAPERUMAN
Zoological Survey of India, Andaman & Nicobar Regional Centre, Government of India, Ministry of Environment & Forests, Port Blair, India

AYYAM VELMURUGAN
ICAR-Central Island Agricultural Research Institute, Port Blair, India

AWNINDRA KUMAR SINGH
ICAR-Central Island Agricultural Research Institute, Port Blair, India

IYYAPPAN JAISANKAR
ICAR-Central Island Agricultural Research Institute, Port Blair, India

ELSEVIER

ACADEMIC PRESS
An imprint of Elsevier

Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier
125 London Wall, London EC2Y 5AS, United Kingdom
525 B Street, Suite 1800, San Diego, CA 92101-4495, United States
50 Hampshire Street, 5th Floor, Cambridge, MA 02139, United States
The Boulevard, Langford Lane, Kidlington, Oxford OX5 1GB, United Kingdom

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN: 978-0-12-813064-3

For information on all Academic Press publications visit our website at https://www.elsevier.com/books-and-journals

Publisher: Andre Gerhard Wolf
Acquisition Editor: Anna Valutkevich
Editorial Project Manager: Pat Gonzalez
Production Project Manager: Sreejith Viswanathan
Designer: Christian Bilbow

Typeset by Thomson Digital

Contents

5. Structure and Species Diversity of Mangrove Ecosystem

JOJU P. ALAPPATT

6. Coconut Biodiversity – Nature's Gift to the Tropical Islands

B.A. JERARD, V. DAMODARAN, IYYAPPAN JAISANKAR, AYYAM VELMURUGAN, T.P. SWARNAM

7 Habitat Ecology and Diversity of Rocky Shore Fauna

KUNAL SATYAM, GANESH THIRUCHITRAMBALAM

8. Marine Ecosystems of Andaman and Nicobar Islands – Species Abundance and Distribution

NAMBALI VALSALAN VINITHKUMAR, THADIKAMALA SATHISH, APURBA KUMAR DAS, CHANDRAKASAN SIVAPERUMAN, CHELLADURAI RAGHUNATHAN, GOPAL DHARANI, RAMALINGAM KIRUBAGARAN, NAMBALI VALSALAN SUJATHKUMAR

9. Invasive Species in Freshwater Ecosystems – Threats to Ecosystem Services

R. KIRUBA-SANKAR, J. PRAVEEN RAJ, K. SARAVANAN, K. LOHITH KUMAR, J. RAYMOND JANI ANGEL, AYYAM VELMURUGAN, S. DAM ROY

10. Avian Diversity of Bay Island and Its Assessment Tools

CHANDRAKASAN SIVAPERUMAN

11. Marine Fishery Resources and Species Diversity of Tropical Waters

PUNNAKULAM T. RAJAN

12. Rice Genetic Resources in Tropical Islands

P.K. SINGH, K. VENKATESAN, T.P. SWARNAM

III

CLIMATE CHANGE AND ITS IMPACTS ON TROPICAL ISLAND

13. Climate Change Projections and Addressing Intrinsic Uncertainties

RAMASAMY GOWTHAM, AMMAPET PALANISAMY RAMARAJ, VELLINGIRI GEETHALAKSHMI

14. Climate Resilient and Livelihood Security – Perspectives for Mauritius Island

B. LALLJEE, AYYAM VELMURUGAN, AWNINDRA K. SINGH

15. Livestock and People – The Intimate Relation Under Threat

T. SUJATHA, A. KANNAN, S. JEYAKUMAR, A. KUNDU, AYYAM VELMURUGAN, J. SUNDER, T.P. SWARNAM, A.K. DE

16. Shifting Equilibrium of Pest and Diseases in Agriculture

M. MOHAN, B. KARIYANNA

17. Uncertainties in Measuring Climate Change Impact on Marine Biodiversity

P.M. MOHAN, AYYAM VELMURUGAN

18. Biodiversity and Climate Change Impacts on the Lakshadweep Islands

AYYAM VELMURUGAN, V.M. ABDUL GAFOOR, IYYAPPAN JAISANKAR, T.P. SWARNAM, JOHN MATHAI

IV

ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT

19. Biodiversity Conservation: Issues and Strategies for the Tropical Islands

IYYAPPAN JAISANKAR, AYYAM VELMURUGAN, CHANDRAKASAN SIVAPERUMAN

20. Diversification of Island Agriculture – A Viable Strategy for Adaptation to Climate Change

T.P. SWARNAM, AYYAM VELMURUGAN, N. RAVISANKAR, AWNINDRA K. SINGH, S.K. ZAMIR AHMED

21. Land Shaping Methods for Climate Change Adaptation in Coastal and Island Region

AYYAM VELMURUGAN, S.K. AMBAST, T.P. SWARNAM, D. BURMAN, SUBHASIS MANDAL, T. SUBRAMANI

22. Harnessing Genetic Resources in Field Crops for Developing Resilience to Climate Change

AWNINDRA K. SINGH, R.M. SINGH, AYYAM VELMURUGAN, R. RAHUL KUMAR, UTPAL BISWAS

23. Coping with Climatic Uncertainties Through Improved Production Technologies in Tropical Island Conditions

SHRAWAN SINGH, D.R. SINGH, AYYAM VELMURUGAN, IYYAPPAN JAISANKAR, T.P. SWARNAM

24. Bioshield: An Answer to Climate Change Impact and Natural Calamities?

IYYAPPAN JAISANKAR, AYYAM VELMURUGAN, T.P. SWARNAM

21. Land Shaping Methods for Climate Change Adaptation in Coastal and Island Region

AYYAM VELMURUGAN, S.K. AMBAST, T.P. SWARNAM, D. BURMAN, SUBHASIS MANDAL, T. SUBRAMANI

22. Harnessing Genetic Resources in Field Crops for Developing Resilience to Climate Change

AWNINDRA K. SINGH, R.M. SINGH, AYYAM VELMURUGAN, R. RAHUL KUMAR, UTPAL BISWAS

23. Coping with Climatic Uncertainties Through Improved Production Technologies in Tropical Island Conditions

SHRAWAN SINGH, D.R. SINGH, AYYAM VELMURUGAN, IYYAPPAN JAISANKAR, T.P. SWARNAM

24. Bioshield: An Answer to Climate Change Impact and Natural Calamities?

IYYAPPAN JAISANKAR, AYYAM VELMURUGAN, T.P. SWARNAM

V

POLICY DECISIONS AND BIODIVERSITY CONSERVATIONS IN THE TROPICAL ISLANDS

NUTRITION AND DIET RESEARCH PROGRESS

Food for Huntington's Disease

Nova Medical & Health

M. Mohamed Essa • T. Manivasagam
A. Justin Thenmozhi • Qazi Hamid
Editors

NOVA